

# Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points Configuration Guide, IOS XE 17.15.x

**First Published:** 2024-08-14

**Last Modified:** 2024-12-02

**Americas Headquarters**
Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
http://www.cisco.com
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED “AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at www.cisco.com/go/offices.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/about/legal/trademarks.html. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2024 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



# CONTENTS


PREFACE

**Preface** xlvii

Document Conventions xlvii

Related Documentation xlix

Communications, services, and additional information xlix

Cisco Bug Search Tool xlix

Documentation feedback xlix

CHAPTER 1

**Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points** 1

New configuration model, tags, and profile 1

Configuration workflow 2

Initial Setup 4

Configuring the Controller Using Day 0 Wizard (GUI) 4

Configuring the Controller Using Day 0 Wizard (CLI) 5

Interactive help 9

Resetting Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points 9

Password Recovery 10

PART I

**System Configuration** 11

CHAPTER 2

**System Configuration** 13

Information About New Configuration Model 13

Configure a wireless profile policy (GUI) 15

Configure a wireless policy profile (CLI) 16

Configure a flex profile 17

Configure an AP profile (GUI) 18

Configure an AP profile (CLI) 22

Configure an RF profile (GUI) 23
Configure an RF profile (CLI) 23
Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing 25
Feature History for Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing 25
Enhanced site tag-based load balancing 25
Prerequisites for Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing 26
Use cases 26
Configure site load (CLI) 27
Verify enhanced site tag-based load balancing configuration 27
Configure policy tag (GUI) 28
Configure a policy tag (CLI) 29
Configure wireless RF tag (GUI) 30
Configure wireless RF tag (CLI) 30
Attach a policy tag and site tag to an AP (GUI) 31
Attach policy tag and site tag to an AP (CLI) 32
Time Management 33
AP Filter 33
AP filters 33
Set tag priority (GUI) 34
Set tag priority 34
Create an AP filter (GUI) 35
Create an AP filter (CLI) 36
Configure filter priority (GUI) 37
Configure filter priority (CLI) 37
Verify AP filter configuration 38
Configuring Access Point for Location Configuration 39
Location configuration 39
Restriction for location configuration 39
Configure a location for an AP (GUI) 39
Configure a location for an AP (CLI) 40
Add an AP to location (GUI) 41
Adding an Access Point to the Location (CLI) 42
Configuring SNMP in Location Configuration 42
SNMP 42

Verify location configuration 42
Verify location statistics 43

CHAPTER 3 Smart Licensing Using Policy 45
Smart Licensing Using Policy 45

CHAPTER 4 Conversion and Migration 47
Conversion and Migration in Embedded Wireless Controller Capable APs 47
Types of Conversion 47
Access Point Conversion 48
Converting a CAPWAP AP to an Embedded Wireless Controller Capable AP 48
Converting an Embedded Wireless Controller Capable AP to a CAPWAP AP 48
Converting a Single AP to CAPWAP or Embedded Wireless Controller Capable AP (CLI) 48
AP Conversion Deployment Scenarios 49
Network Conversion 51
Converting the Network (CLI) 51
Network Conversion Deployment Scenarios 52
SKU Conversion Scenarios 53
Converting AireOS Mobility Express Network to Embedded Wireless Controller Network 54

CHAPTER 5 Best Practices 55
Introduction 55

PART II Lightweight Access Points 57

CHAPTER 6 Country Codes 59
Information About Country Codes 59
Prerequisites for Configuring Country Codes 59
Configure country codes (GUI) 60
How to Configure Country Codes 60
Configuration examples for configuring country codes 62
View channel list for country codes 62
Regulatory compliance domain 63
Global country-level domains 63

CHAPTER 7 **Regulatory Compliance (Rest of the World) for Domain Reduction** 65

Regulatory compliance domain 65

Global country-level domains 65

CHAPTER 8 **AP Priority** 67

Failover priority for APs 67

Guidelines to configure AP failover priority 67

Set AP priority (GUI) 67

Set AP priority (CLI) 68

CHAPTER 9 **802.11 Parameters for Cisco Access Points** 69

2.4-GHz radio support 69

Configure 2.4-GHz radio support for the specified slot number (CLI) 69

5-GHz radio support 71

Configure 5-GHz radio support for the specified slot number (CLI) 71

Dual-band radios in Cisco AP models 73

Configure default XOR radio support (CLI) 74

Configure advanced settings (CLI) 75

Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (GUI) 76

Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (CLI) 77

Verify XOR radio support 78

Receiver only Dual-Band radio support 79

Receiver only dual-band radio support 79

Configure receiver only Dual-Band parameters for APs 79

Enable CleanAir with receiver Only dual-band radio on a Cisco AP (GUI) 79

Enabling CleanAir with receiver only dual-band radio on a Cisco AP (CLI) 79

Disable receiver only dual-band radio on a Cisco AP (GUI) 80

Disable receiver only dual-band radio on a Cisco AP (CLI) 80

Configure client steering (CLI) 81

Verify Cisco APs with dual-band radios 82

CHAPTER 10 **802.1x Support** 83

802.1X authentication 83

EAP-FAST protocol 84
EAP-TLS/EAP-PEAP Protocol 84
802.1X authentication limitations 84
Topology 85
Configuring 802.1X authentication type and LSC AP authentication type (GUI) 85
Configure 802.1X authentication type and LSC AP authentication type (CLI) 86
Configure the 802.1X username and password (CLI) 87
Configure the 802.1X username and password (CLI) 87
Enable 802.1X on the switch port (CLI) 88
Verify 802.1X on the switch port 90
Verify the authentication type 90

CHAPTER 11 **Real-Time Access Points Statistics** 93
Access point real-time statistics 93
Restrictions for AP radio monitoring statistics 94
Configure access point real time statistics (GUI) 94
Configure access point real-time statistics (CLI) 95
Configure the access point radio monitoring statistics (CLI) 97
Monitor access point real-time statistics (GUI) 98
Verify access point real-time statistics 99

CHAPTER 12 **Access Point Tag Persistency** 101
Access point tag persistency 101
Configure access point tag persistency (GUI) 101
Save tags on an access point (GUI) 102
Delete saved tags on an access point (GUI) 102
Configure access point tag persistency (CLI) 103
Verify access point tag persistency 104

CHAPTER 13 **LED States for Access Points** 105
LED states for access points 105
Configure the LED State on Access Points (GUI) 105
Configure LED state for access points (CLI) 106
Configure LED state in the access point profile 107

Verify LED state for access points 107

CHAPTER 14 Secure Data Wipe 109

Feature history 109

Secure data wipe 109

Restrictions 110

Supported AP models and software versions 110

Verify data wipe 111

CHAPTER 15 CAPWAP Message Aggregation 113

Control and provisioning of wireless APs message aggregation 113

Guidelines of CAPWAP message aggregation 113

Use cases of CAPWAP message aggregation 114

Configure CAPWAP message aggregation (CLI) 114

Verify CAPWAP message aggregation 114

CHAPTER 16 SuiteB-1X and SuiteB-192-1X Support in FlexConnect Mode for WPA2 and WPA3 117

Information about SuiteB-1X and SuiteB-192-1X Support in FlexConnect Mode for WPA2 and WPA3 117

Configuring SuiteB Ciphers (GUI) 118

Configuring Suite-B Ciphers (CLI) 119

Configuring GCMP-128, GCMP-256, or CCMP-256 (CLI) 119

Verifying SuiteB Cipher Status 120

PART III Radio Resource Management 123

CHAPTER 17 Radio Resource Management 125

Radio Resource Management 125

Radio resource monitors 126

Transmit power control 126

Overriding the TPC Algorithm with Minimum and Maximum Transmit Power Settings 127

Dynamic channel assignment 127

Coverage hole detection and correction 129

Restrictions 129

How to Configure RRM 129
Configure neighbor discovery type (CLI) 129
Configuring Transmit Power Control 130
Configure Tx-power control threshold (CLI) 130
Configure the Tx-power level (CLI) 131
Configuring 802.11 RRM Parameters 131
Configure 802.11 channel assignment parameters (CLI) 131
Configuring 802.11 Coverage Hole Detection (CLI) 133
Configuring 802.11 Event Logging (CLI) 135
Configuring 802.11 Statistics Monitoring (CLI) 136
Configuring the 802.11 Performance Profile (CLI) 137
Configuring Advanced 802.11 RRM 138
Enabling Channel Assignment (CLI) 138
Restarting DCA Operation 138
Update power assignment parameters (CLI) 139
Configuring Rogue Access Point Detection in RF Groups 139
Configuring Rogue Access Point Detection in RF Groups (CLI) 139
Monitoring RRM Parameters and RF Group Status 140
Monitor RRM parameters 140
Verify RF group status 141
Examples: RF group configuration 142
Information About ED-RRM 142
Configure ED-RRM on the controller (CLI) 142
Rogue PMF containment 143
Enable rogue PMF containment 144
Verify PMF containment 145
Rogue detection - rogue channel width 146
Configure rogue channel width (CLI) 146
Configure rogue classification rules (GUI) 148
Verify rogue channel width 150

CHAPTER 18 **Coverage Hole Detection** 153
Coverage hole detection and correction 153
Configure coverage hole detection (GUI) 153

Configure coverage hole detection (CLI) 154
Configure CHD for RF tag profile (GUI) 155
Configuring CHD for RF profile (CLI) 156

CHAPTER 19 Cisco Flexible Radio Assignment 159
Flexible radio assignments 159
FRA role selection by AP model and client capability 160
AP models and types of hardware managed by FRA 161
Configure FRA Radio (CLI) 161
Configure FRA radio (GUI) 163
Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) Action 164
Flexible radio assignment actions 164
Configure FRA action in default RF profile (CLI) 165
Configure FRA action in 2.4-GHz RF profile (CLI) 165
Verify FRA action configuration 166

CHAPTER 20 XOR Radio Support 167
Dual-band radios in Cisco AP models 167
Configure default XOR radio support (CLI) 168
Configure advanced settings (CLI) 169
Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (GUI) 170
Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (CLI) 171
Verify XOR radio support 173

CHAPTER 21 Cisco Receiver Start of Packet 175
Receiver start of packet detection threshold 175
Restrictions for Rx SOP 175
Permitted range for the Rx SOP threshold 175
Known behavior 176
Configure Rx SOP (CLI) 176
Customize RF profile (CLI) 177

CHAPTER 22 Client Limit 179
Client limits 179

Configure client limit per WLAN (GUI) 180
Configure client limit per WLAN (CLI) 180

CHAPTER 23 IP Theft 183
IP theft 183
Lower the idle timeout to prevent false IP theft 183
IP preference levels for IP theft detection 184
Configure IP theft (GUI) 184
Configure IP theft (CLI) 184
Configure the IP theft exclusion timer (CLI) 185
Verify IP theft configuration 185

CHAPTER 24 Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery 187
Unscheduled automatic power save delivery overview 187
View unscheduled automatic power save delivery 187

CHAPTER 25 Target Wake Time 189
Target wake time 189
Optimize power-saving with target wake time 190
Configure target wake time at radio level (CLI) 191
Configuring target wake time on WLAN 192
Enable target wakeup time on WLAN (CLI) 192
Disable target wakeup time on WLAN (CLI) 193
Configure target wake time (GUI) 194
Verify target wakeup time 194

CHAPTER 26 Enabling USB Port on Access Points 195
USB Port as Power Source for Access Points 195
Configuring an AP Profile (CLI) 196
Configuring USB Settings for an Access Point (CLI) 196
Monitoring USB Configurations for Access Points (CLI) 197

CHAPTER 27 Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection 199

Information About Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection 199
Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally (CLI) 199
Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally (GUI) 200
Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile (CLI) 200
Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile (GUI) 201
Verifying Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Configuration 201

PART IV **Network Management** 203

CHAPTER 28 **DHCP Option82** 205
Information About DHCP Option 82 205
Configuring DHCP Option 82 Global Interface 206
Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Server Override (CLI) 206
Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Different SVIs (GUI) 207
Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Different SVIs (CLI) 207
Configuring DHCP Option 82 Format 208
Configuring DHCP Option82 Through a VLAN Interface 209
Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through Option-Insert Command (CLI) 209
Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through the server-ID-override Command (CLI) 210
Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through a Subscriber-ID (CLI) 211
Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through server-ID-override and subscriber-ID Commands (CLI) 212
Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through Different SVIs (CLI) 213

CHAPTER 29 **RADIUS Realm** 215
Information About RADIUS Realm 215
Enabling RADIUS Realm 216
Configuring Realm to Match the RADIUS Server for Authentication and Accounting 216
Configuring the AAA Policy for a WLAN 217
Verifying the RADIUS-Realm Configuration 219

CHAPTER 30 **RADIUS Accounting** 223
RADIUS accounting of AP events 223
Configure accounting method-list for an AP profile 224
Verify the AP accounting information 225

Feature History for Device Ecosystem Data 225
Information About Device Ecosystem Data 225
Enable Device Ecosystem Data 226
Verify Device Ecosystem Data 227

CHAPTER 31 **Persistent SSID Broadcast** 229
Persistent SSID Broadcast 229
Configuring Persistent SSID Broadcast 229
Verifying Persistent SSID Broadcast 230

CHAPTER 32 **Network Monitoring** 231
Network Monitoring 231

PART V **System Management** 233

CHAPTER 33 **Network Mobility Services Protocol** 235
Information About Network Mobility Services Protocol 235
Enabling NMSP On-Premises Services 236
Modifying the NMSP Notification Interval for Clients, RFID Tags, and Rogues 236
Modifying the NMSP Notification Threshold for Clients, and Tags 237
Configure NMSP strong cipher (CLI) 237
Verify NMSP settings 238
Examples: NMSP settings configuration 240
Probe RSSI location 240
Configuring Probe RSSI 241
Verifying Probe RSSI 242
RFID tag support 242
Configure RFID tag support (CLI) 243
Verify RFID tag support 243

CHAPTER 34 **Application Visibility and Control** 247
Information About Application Visibility and Control 247
Prerequisites for Application Visibility and Control 248
Restrictions for Application Visibility and Control 248

AVC Configuration Overview 249
Create a Flow Monitor 249
Configuring a Flow Monitor (GUI) 250
Create a Flow Exporter 250
Verify the Flow Exporter 251
Configuring a Policy Tag 252
Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (GUI) 252
Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (CLI) 253
Attaching a Policy Profile to an AP 254
Verify the AVC Configuration 254
AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring 255
Restrictions for AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring 255
Configuring the Flow Exporter 256
Configuring the Flow Monitor 256
Configuring the AVC Reanchoring Profile 257
Configuring the Wireless WLAN Profile Policy 258
Verifying AVC Reanchoring 259

CHAPTER 35 **Flexible NetFlow Exporter on Embedded Wireless Controller** 263
Flexible NetFlow Exporter on Embedded Wireless Controller 263
AVC Configuration Limitations on EWC 263
Create a Flow Exporter 264
Create a Flow Monitor 264
Configuring the Wireless WLAN Profile Policy 265
Verifying Flow Exporter in Embedded Wireless Controller 266

CHAPTER 36 **Cisco Connected Mobile Experiences Cloud** 267
Configuring Cisco CMX Cloud 267
Verifying Cisco CMX Cloud Configuration 268

CHAPTER 37 **EDCA Parameters** 271
Enhanced Distributed Channel Access Parameters 271
Configuring EDCA Parameters (GUI) 271
Configuring EDCA Parameters (CLI) 272

CHAPTER 38 802.11 parameters and Band Selection 275

Information About Configuring Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters 275

Band Select 275

802.11 Bands 276

802.11n Parameters 276

802.11h Parameters 276

Restrictions for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters 276

How to Configure 802.11 Bands and Parameters 277

Configuring Band Selection (GUI) 277

Configuring Band Selection (CLI) 278

Configuring the 802.11 Bands (GUI) 279

Configuring the 802.11 Bands (CLI) 279

Configuring a Band-Select RF Profile (GUI) 282

Configuring 802.11n Parameters (GUI) 282

Configuring 802.11n Parameters (CLI) 283

Configuring 802.11h Parameters (CLI) 285

Monitoring Configuration Settings for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters 286

Verifying Configuration Settings Using Band Selection and 802.11 Bands Commands 286

Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 5-GHz Band 286

Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 2.4-GHz Band 288

Example: Viewing the status of 802.11h Parameters 290

Example: Verifying the Band-Selection Settings 290

Configuration Examples for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters 290

Examples: Band Selection Configuration 290

Examples: 802.11 Bands Configuration 291

Examples: 802.11n Configuration 291

Examples: 802.11h Configuration 292

CHAPTER 39 Image Download 293

Information About Image Download 293

Updates to the AP Image Predownload Status (GUI) 293

Image Download Scenarios 294

Image Download During AP Join 294

Network Software Upgrade (Pre-Download) 295
Methods Supported for Image Download 296
TFTP Image Download Method 296
SFTP Image Download Method 296
Desktop (HTTP) Image Download Method 296
Parallel Image Download 296
Prerequisites for Image Download 297
Configuring Image Download Profile 298
Configuring TFTP Image Download (GUI) 298
Configuring TFTP Image Download (CLI) 299
Configuring SFTP Image Download (GUI) 300
Configuring SFTP Image Download (CLI) 301
Configuring CCO Mode for Software Upgrade (GUI) 302
Configuring CCO Image Download (CLI) 303
Troubleshooting - CCO Image Download Error Messages 305
Configuring Desktop (HTTP) Image Download (GUI) 306
Initiating Pre-Download (CLI) 307
Verifying Image Download 308

CHAPTER 40 **Conditional Debug and Radioactive Tracing** 311
Introduction to Conditional Debugging 311
Introduction to Radioactive Tracing 311
Conditional Debugging and Radioactive Tracing 312
Location of Tracefiles 312
Configuring Conditional Debugging (GUI) 313
Configuring Conditional Debugging 313
Recommended Workflow for Trace files 315
Copying Tracefiles Off the Box 315
Configuration Examples for Conditional Debugging 316
Verifying Conditional Debugging 316
Example: Verifying Radioactive Tracing Log for SISF 317

CHAPTER 41 **Aggressive Client Load Balancing** 319
Information About Aggressive Client Load Balancing 319

Enabling Aggressive Client Load Balancing (GUI) 320
Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing (GUI) 320
Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing (CLI) 320

CHAPTER 42 **Accounting Identity List** 323
Configuring Accounting Identity List (GUI) 323
Configuring Accounting Identity List (CLI) 323
Configuring Client Accounting (GUI) 324
Configuring Client Accounting (CLI) 324

CHAPTER 43 **Volume Metering** 327
Configuring Volume Metering 327

CHAPTER 44 **AP Group NTP Server** 329
Feature History for AP Group NTP Server 329
Information About AP Group NTP Server 329
Configuring an AP Group NTP Server 330
Configuring AP Timezone 330
Verifying Cisco Hyperlocation 331

CHAPTER 45 **Enabling Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server** 335
Information About Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server 335
Configuring Message Logging in the IOS XE Controller 336
Configuring Syslog Server for the Controller (GUI) 337
Configuring Syslog Server for the Embedded Wireless Controller (CLI) 337
Configuring Message Logging in the Access Points 339
AP Logging to the In-Memory Buffer and Flash 339
AP Logging to Terminal 339
Configuring AP Logging to a Syslog Server 339
Configuring Syslog Server for an AP Profile 341
Configuring AP Syslog Settings (GUI) 342
Verifying Syslog Server Configurations 342

CHAPTER 46 **Software Maintenance Upgrade** 347

Software maintenance upgrade 347

Overview of Controller SMUs 349

Managing Controller Hot or Cold SMU Package 350

Configuration Examples for SMU 351

Rolling AP upgrade 353

Rolling AP upgrade process 354

Verifying AP Upgrade on the Controller 355

AP Device Pack (APDP) and AP Service Pack (APSP) 356

APSP and APDP 356

Managing APSP and APDP 357

Configuring the APSP and APDP Files (GUI) 357

Configuring the TFTP Server Directory 357

Configuring the SFTP Server Directory 358

Positive Workflow - APSP and APDP 360

Rollback and Cancel 361

Verify APDP on the Embedded Wireless Controller 362

CHAPTER 47 **Intelligent Capture Hardening** 363

Feature History for Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening 363

Information About Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening 363

Anomaly Detection 364

RF Statistics 364

Configuring Anomaly Detection in AP Profile (CLI) 364

Configuring Anomaly Detection in an Access Point (CLI) 365

Verifying Anomaly Detection and RF Statistics 366

CHAPTER 48 **Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade** 369

Feature History for Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade Support 369

Information About Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade 369

Configuring Minidump from Access Point (CLI) 370

Configuring Minidump from Controller (CLI) 371

Verifying Minidump Configuration 371

PART VI Security 373

CHAPTER 49 IPv4 ACLs 375

Information about Network Security with ACLs 375

ACL Overview 375

Access Control Entries 376

ACL Supported Types 376

ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic 376

ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic Examples 376

Standard and Extended IPv4 ACLs 377

IPv4 ACL Switch Unsupported Features 378

Access List Numbers 378

Numbered Standard IPv4 ACLs 379

Numbered Extended IPv4 ACLs 379

Named IPv4 ACLs 380

ACL Logging 380

Hardware and Software Treatment of IP ACLs 380

IPv4 ACL Interface Considerations 381

Restrictions for Configuring IPv4 Access Control Lists 381

How to Configure ACLs 382

Configuring IPv4 ACLs (GUI) 382

Configuring IPv4 ACLs 382

Creating a Numbered Standard ACL (GUI) 382

Creating a Numbered Standard ACL (CLI) 383

Creating a Numbered Extended ACL (GUI) 384

Creating a Numbered Extended ACL (CLI) 385

Creating Named Standard ACLs (GUI) 389

Creating Named Standard ACLs 389

Creating Extended Named ACLs (GUI) 390

Creating Extended Named ACLs 391

CHAPTER 50 DNS-Based Access Control Lists 393

Information About DNS-Based Access Control Lists 393

FlexConnect in Embedded Wireless Controller 394
Roaming 395
Restrictions on DNS-Based Access Control Lists 395
Flex Mode 396
Configuring the URL Filter List (CLI) 396
Configuring the URL Filter List (GUI) 396
Applying Custom Pre-Auth DNS ACL on WLAN 397
Applying Custom Post-Auth DNS ACL on Policy Profile 397
Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication (GUI) 398
Viewing DNS-Based Access Control Lists 399

CHAPTER 51 **Downloadable ACL** 403
Feature History for Downloadable ACL 403
Information About Downloadable ACL 403
Scale Considerations for Downloadable ACL 404
Guidelines and Restrictions for Downloadable ACL 404
Configuring dACL Name and Definition in Cisco ISE 404
Configuring dACL in a Controller (CLI) 404
Configuring Explicit Authorization Server List (CLI) 405
Verifying dACL Configuration 406

CHAPTER 52 **Allowed List of Specific URLs** 409
Allowed List of Specific URLs 409
Adding URL to Allowed List 409
Portal Resolving to Multiple IP Addresses 410
Verifying URLs on the Allowed List 411

CHAPTER 53 **Web-Based Authentication** 413
Authentication Overview 413
Device Roles 415
Authentication Process 415
Local Web Authentication Banner 416
Customized Local Web Authentication 419
Guidelines 420

Redirection URL for Successful Login Guidelines 421
How to Configure Local Web Authentication 421
Configuring Default Local Web Authentication 421
Configuring AAA Authentication (GUI) 422
Configuring AAA Authentication (CLI) 422
Configuring the HTTP/HTTPS Server (GUI) 423
Configuring the HTTP Server (CLI) 424
Allowing Special Characters for Serial Port 425
Allowing Special Characters for VTY Port 426
Creating a Parameter Map (GUI) 426
Configuring the Maximum Web Authentication Request Retries 427
Configuring a Local Banner in Web Authentication Page (GUI) 427
Configuring a Local Banner in Web Authentication Page (CLI) 428
Configuration Examples for Local Web Authentication 428
Example: Obtaining Web Authentication Certificate 428
Example: Displaying a Web Authentication Certificate 430
Example: Choosing the Default Web Authentication Login Page 430
Example: Choosing a Customized Web Authentication Login Page from an IPv4 External Web Server 431
Example: Choosing a Customized Web Authentication Login Page from an IPv6 External Web Server 431
Example: Assigning Login, Login Failure, and Logout Pages per WLAN 432
Example: Configuring Preauthentication ACL 432
Example: Configuring Webpassthrough 432
Verifying Web Authentication Type 433
External Web Authentication (EWA) 434
Configuring EWA with Single WebAuth Server Address and Default Ports (80/443) (CLI) 434
Configuring EWA with Multiple Web Servers and/or Ports Different than Default (80/443) 436
Configuring Wired Guest EWA with Multiple Web Servers and/or Ports Different than Default (80/443) 438
Authentication for Sleeping Clients 439
Information About Authenticating Sleeping Clients 439
Restrictions on Authenticating Sleeping Clients 439
Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (GUI) 440
Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (CLI) 440

Multi Authentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication 441
Feature History for Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication 441
Information About Multiauthentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication 441
Limitations for Multi Authentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication 442
Enabling the Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication (CLI) 442
Verifying Multiauthentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication 443

CHAPTER 54 **Central Web Authentication** 445
Information About Central Web Authentication 445
Prerequisites for Central Web Authentication 446
How to Configure ISE 446
Creating an Authorization Profile 446
Creating an Authentication Rule 447
Creating an Authorization Rule 447
How to Configure Central Web Authentication on the Controller 448
Configure WLAN (GUI) 448
Configuring WLAN (CLI) 449
Configuring Policy Profile (CLI) 451
Configuring a Policy Profile (GUI) 452
Creating Redirect ACL 453
Configuring AAA for Central Web Authentication 454
Configuring Redirect ACL in Flex Profile (GUI) 455
Configuring Redirect ACL in Flex Profile (CLI) 455
Troubleshooting Central Web Authentication 456
Authentication for Sleeping Clients 456
Information About Authenticating Sleeping Clients 456
Restrictions on Authenticating Sleeping Clients 457
Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (GUI) 457
Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (CLI) 458

CHAPTER 55 **ISE Simplification and Enhancements** 459

Utilities for Configuring Security 459
Configuring Multiple Radius Servers 460
Verifying AAA and Radius Server Configurations 461
Configuring Captive Portal Bypassing for Local and Central Web Authentication 461
Information About Captive Bypassing 461
Configuring Captive Bypassing for WLAN in LWA and CWA (GUI) 462
Configuring Captive Bypassing for WLAN in LWA and CWA (CLI) 463
Sending DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE 464
Information about DHCP Option 55 and 77 464
Configuration to Send DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE (GUI) 464
Configuration to Send DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE (CLI) 464
Configuring EAP Request Timeout (GUI) 465
Configuring EAP Request Timeout 466
Configuring EAP Request Timeout in Wireless Security (CLI) 466
Captive Portal 467
Captive Portal Configuration 467
Configuring Captive Portal (GUI) 467
Configuring Captive Portal 468
Captive Portal Configuration - Example 470

CHAPTER 56 **Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers** 473
Information About Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers 473
Configuring 802.1X Security for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers 474
Configuring Explicit Authentication and Authorization Server List (GUI) 474
Configuring Explicit Authentication Server List (GUI) 475
Configuring Explicit Authentication Server List (CLI) 475
Configuring Explicit Authorization Server List (GUI) 477
Configure Explicit Authorization Server List (CLI) 477
Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for 802.1X Security (GUI) 479
Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for 802.1X Security 480
Configuring Web Authentication for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers 481
Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for Web Authentication (GUI) 481
Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for Web Authentication 481
Verifying Split Authentication and Authorization Configuration 482

Configuration Examples 483

CHAPTER 57 Secure LDAP 485

Information About SLDAP 485

Prerequisite for Configuring SLDAP 487

Restrictions for Configuring SLDAP 487

Configuring SLDAP 487

Configuring an AAA Server Group (GUI) 488

Configuring a AAA Server Group 489

Configuring Search and Bind Operations for an Authentication Request 490

Configuring a Dynamic Attribute Map on an SLDAP Server 491

Verifying the SLDAP Configuration 491

CHAPTER 58 RADIUS DTLS 493

Information About RADIUS DTLS 493

Prerequisites 495

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Server 495

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Connection Timeout 496

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Idle Timeout 497

Configuring Source Interface for RADIUS DTLS Server 497

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Port Number 498

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Connection Retries 499

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Trustpoint 499

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Match-Server-Identity 500

Configuring DTLS Dynamic Author 500

Enabling DTLS for Client 501

Configuring Client Trustpoint for DTLS 502

Configuring DTLS Idle Timeout 502

Configuring Server Trustpoint for DTLS 503

Verifying the RADIUS DTLS Server Configuration 504

Clearing RADIUS DTLS Specific Statistics 504

CHAPTER 59 MAC Filtering 505

MAC Filtering 505

MAC Filtering Configuration Guidelines 505
Configuring MAC Filtering for Local Authentication (CLI) 506
Configuring MAC Filtering (GUI) 508
Configuring MAB for External Authentication (CLI) 508

CHAPTER 60 Dynamic Frequency Selection 511
Information About Dynamic Frequency Selection 511
Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection (GUI) 511
Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection 511
Verifying DFS 512

CHAPTER 61 Managing Rogue Devices 513
Rogue Detection 513
Rogue Devices 513
Information About Rogue Containment (Protected Management Frames (PMF) Enabled) 515
AP Impersonation Detection 515
Configuring Rogue Detection (GUI) 516
Configuring Rogue Detection (CLI) 516
Configuring RSSI Deviation Notification Threshold for Rogue APs (CLI) 518
Configuring Management Frame Protection (GUI) 518
Configuring Management Frame Protection (CLI) 518
Enabling Access Point Authentication 519
Verifying Management Frame Protection 520
Verifying Rogue Detection 520
Examples: Rogue Detection Configuration 522
Configuring Rogue Policies (GUI) 522
Configuring Rogue Policies (CLI) 523
Rogue Location Discovery Protocol (RLDP) 524
Rogue Location Discovery Protocol 524
Configuring RLDP for Generating Alarms (GUI) 526
Configuring an RLDP for Generating Alarms (CLI) 526
Configuring a Schedule for RLDP (GUI) 527
Configuring a Schedule for RLDP (CLI) 527
Configuring an RLDP for Auto-Contain (GUI) 528

Configuring an RLDP for Auto-Contain (CLI) 528
Configuring RLDP Retry Times on Rogue Access Points (GUI) 529
Configuring RLDP Retry Times on Rogue Access Points (CLI) 529
Verifying Rogue AP RLDP 529
Rogue Detection Security Level 530
Setting Rogue Detection Security-level 531
Wireless Service Assurance Rogue Events 532
Monitoring Wireless Service Assurance Rogue Events 532

CHAPTER 62 **Classifying Rogue Access Points** 535
Information About Classifying Rogue Access Points 535
Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs 536
Guidelines and Restrictions for Classifying Rogue Access Points 537
How to Classify Rogue Access Points 538
Classifying Rogue Access Points and Clients Manually (GUI) 538
Classifying Rogue Access Points and Clients Manually (CLI) 538
Configuring Rogue Classification Rules (GUI) 540
Configuring Rogue Classification Rules (CLI) 540
Monitoring Rogue Classification Rules 543
Examples: Classifying Rogue Access Points 543

CHAPTER 63 **Configuring Secure Shell** 545
Information About Configuring Secure Shell 545
SSH and Device Access 545
SSH Servers, Integrated Clients, and Supported Versions 545
SSH Configuration Guidelines 546
Secure Copy Protocol Overview 546
Secure Copy Protocol 547
SFTP Support 547
Prerequisites for Configuring Secure Shell 547
Restrictions for Configuring Secure Shell 548
How to Configure SSH 548
Setting Up the Device to Run SSH 548
Configuring the SSH Server 549

Monitoring the SSH Configuration and Status 551

CHAPTER 64 **Private Shared Key** 553

Private preshared keys 553

Limitations 553

How identity PSK authentication works 554

Configure a PSK in a WLAN 555

Configure a PSK in a WLAN using GUI 556

Apply a policy profile to a WLAN (GUI) 556

Apply a policy profile to a WLAN using CLI 557

Verify a private PSK 558

CHAPTER 65 **Multi-Preshared Key** 563

Multi-preshared key 563

Restrictions 565

Configure a multi-preshared key (GUI) 565

Configure a multi-preshared key (CLI) 568

Verify multi-PSK configurations 569

CHAPTER 66 **Multiple Authentications for a Client** 573

Information About Multiple Authentications for a Client 573

Information About Supported Combination of Authentications for a Client 573

Jumbo Frame Support for RADIUS Packets 574

Configuring Multiple Authentications for a Client 575

Configuring WLAN for 802.1X and Local Web Authentication (GUI) 575

Configuring WLAN for 802.1X and Local Web Authentication (CLI) 575

Configuring WLAN for Preshared Key (PSK) and Local Web Authentication (GUI) 576

Configuring WLAN for Preshared Key (PSK) and Local Web Authentication 577

Configuring WLAN for PSK or Identity Preshared Key (iPSK) and Central Web Authentication (GUI) 578

Configuring WLAN for PSK or Identity Preshared Key (iPSK) and Central Web Authentication 579

Configuring WLAN 579

Applying Policy Profile to a WLAN 580

Configuring 802.1x and Central Web Authentication on Controller (CLIs) 581

Creating AAA Authentication 581
Configuring AAA Server for External Authentication 581
Configuring AAA for Authentication 583
Configuring Accounting Identity List 584
Configuring AAA for Central Web Authentication 584
Defining an Access Control List for Radius Server 584
Configuration Example to Define an Access Control List for Radius Server 585
Configuring WLAN 585
Configuring Policy Profile 586
Mapping WLAN and Policy Profile to Policy Tag 587
Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication with Dot1x (GUI) 587
Defining Guest Portal 587
Defining Authorization Profile for a Client 588
Defining Authentication Rule 588
Defining Authorization Rule 589
Creating Rules to Match Guest Flow Condition 589
Verifying Multiple Authentication Configurations 590

CHAPTER 67 **Support for Hash-to-Element for Password Element in SAE Authentication** 593
Hash-to-Element (H2E) 593
YANG (RPC model) 593
Configuring WPA3 SAE H2E 594
Verifying WPA3 SAE H2E Support in WLAN 596

CHAPTER 68 **Cisco Umbrella WLAN** 603
Information About Cisco Umbrella WLAN 603
Registering Embedded Wireless Controller to Cisco Umbrella Account 604
Configuring Cisco Umbrella WLAN 605
Importing CA Certificate to the Trust Pool 605
Creating a Local Domain RegEx Parameter Map 606
Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN (GUI) 607
Configuring the Umbrella Parameter Map 607
Enabling or Disabling DNScrypt (GUI) 608
Enabling or Disabling DNScrypt 609

Configuring Timeout for UDP Sessions 609
Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN (GUI) 610
Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN 610
Verifying the Cisco Umbrella Configuration 611

CHAPTER 69 **Locally Significant Certificates** 613
Information About Locally Significant Certificates 613
Certificate Provisioning in Controllers 614
Device Certificate Enrollment Operation 614
Certificate Provisioning on Lightweight Access Point 614
Restrictions for Locally Significant Certificates 615
Provisioning Locally Significant Certificates 615
Configuring RSA Key for PKI Trustpoint 615
Configuring PKI Trustpoint Parameters 616
Authenticating and Enrolling a PKI Trustpoint (GUI) 617
Authenticating and Enrolling the PKI Trustpoint with CA Server (CLI) 617
Configuring AP Join Attempts with LSC Certificate (GUI) 619
Configuring AP Join Attempts with LSC Certificate (CLI) 619
Configuring Subject-Name Parameters in LSC Certificate 619
Configuring Key Size for LSC Certificate 620
Configuring Trustpoint for LSC Provisioning on an Access Point 620
Configuring an AP LSC Provision List (GUI) 621
Configuring an AP LSC Provision List (CLI) 622
Configuring LSC Provisioning for all the APs (GUI) 622
Configuring LSC Provisioning for All APs (CLI) 623
Configuring LSC Provisioning for the APs in the Provision List 624
Unprovisioning Local Significant Certificates 624
Configuring LSC Provisioning and Management Trustpoint 624
Removing FIPS and WLAN Common Criteria 625
Removal of LSC Provisioning 626
Importing a CA Certificate to the Trustpool (GUI) 627
Importing a CA Certificate to the Trustpool (CLI) 628
Cleaning the CA Certificates Imported in Trustpool (GUI) 628
Cleaning CA Certificates Imported in Trustpool (CLI) 629

Creating a New Trustpoint Dedicated to a Single CA Certificate 629
Verifying LSC Configuration 630
Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC (GUI) 631
Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC (CLI) 631
Information About MIC and LSC Access Points Joining the Controller 632
Overview of Support for MIC and LSC Access Points Joining the Controller 632
Recommendations and Limitations 632
Configuration Workflow 633
Configuring LSC on the Controller (CLI) 633
Enabling the AP Certificate Policy on the APs (CLI) 633
Configuring the AP Policy Certificate (GUI) 635
Configuring the Allowed List of APs to Join the Controller (CLI) 635
Verifying the Configuration Status 636
LSC Fallback Access Points 636
Information About LSC Fallback APs 636
Troubleshooting LSC Fallback State 636
Recovery Steps 637

CHAPTER 70 **Federal Information Processing Standard** 639
Federal Information Processing Standard 639
Guidelines and Restrictions for FIPS 639
FIPS Self-Tests 640
Configuring FIPS 641
Verifying FIPS Configuration 641

CHAPTER 71 **Certificate Management** 643
About Public Key Infrastructure Management (GUI) 643
Authenticating and Enrolling a PKI Trustpoint (GUI) 643
Generating an AP Self-Signed Certificate (GUI) 644
Adding the Certificate Authority Server (GUI) 644
Adding an RSA or EC Key for PKI Trustpoint (GUI) 645
Adding and Managing Certificates 645
646

CHAPTER 72 **User and Entity Behavior Analysis** 649

Information About User and Entity Behavior Analysis 649

Configuring User and Entity Behavior Analysis (Using UDP Collector) 649

Configuring User and Entity Behavior Analysis (Using Stealthwatch Cloud) 650

Configuring User and Entity Behavior Analysis Using Stealthwatch Cloud (GUI) 650

Configuring Stealthwatch Cloud (CLI) 650

Mapping Stealthwatch Cloud to Flow Measurements 651

Configuring Flow Exporter for Stealthwatch Cloud 651

Configuring Flow Monitor for Stealthwatch Cloud 652

Example: Stealthwatch Cloud Configuration 652

Verifying Stealthwatch Cloud Details 653

CHAPTER 73 **WPA3 Security Enhancements for Access Points** 655

Information about WPA3 Security Enhancements for Access Points 655

Guidelines and Limitations 657

GCMP-256 Cipher and SuiteB-192-1X AKM 657

Configuring SuiteB-192-1X AKM (GUI) 657

Configuring SuiteB-192-1X AKM (CLI) 658

SAE-EXT-KEY Support 659

Configuring SAE-EXT-KEY AKMs (GUI) 659

Configuring SAE-EXT-KEY AKMs (CLI) 661

Configuring FT-SAE-EXT-KEY AKMs (CLI) 662

AP Beacon Protection 663

Configuring AP Beacon Protection (GUI) 663

Configuring AP Beacon Protection (CLI) 663

Multiple Cipher Support per WLAN 665

Configuring Multiple Ciphers (GUI) 665

Configuring Multiple Ciphers (CLI) 666

Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE) Support with GCMP-256 Cipher 667

Configuring Opportunistic Wireless Encryption AKM (GUI) 667

Configuring Opportunistic Wireless Encryption AKM (CLI) 668

Verifying the SAE-EXT-KEY AKM Support 668

Verifying AP Beacon Protection 671

PART VII **Mobility** 673

CHAPTER 74 **NAT Support in Embedded Wireless Controllers** 675

Information About NAT Support 675

Restrictions for NAT Support 675

Enabling Centralized NAT on a VLAN 676

Verifying NAT Support 676

PART VIII **High Availability** 679

CHAPTER 75 **High Availability** 681

High Availability Active and Standby 681

Monitoring Redundancy between Active and Standby Access Points 681

Active Access Point election Process 682

Selecting the Active EWC Access Point 682

Selecting the Standby EWC Access Points 682

Selecting the Preferred Controller 683

PART IX **Quality of Service** 685

CHAPTER 76 **Quality of Service** 687

Wireless QoS Overview 687

Wireless QoS Targets 687

SSID Policies 687

Client Policies 688

Supported QoS Features on Wireless Targets 688

Precious Metal Policies for Wireless QoS 688

Prerequisites for Wireless QoS 689

Restrictions for QoS on Wireless Targets 689

Metal Policy Format 690

Metal Policy Format 690

Auto QoS Policy Format 694

Architecture for Voice, Video and Integrated Data (AVVID) 696

How to apply Bi-Directional Rate Limiting 697
Information about Bi-Directional Rate Limiting 697
Prerequisites for Bi-Directional Rate Limiting 698
Configure Metal Policy on SSID 698
Configure Metal Policy on Client 699
Configure Bi-Directional Rate Limiting for All Traffic 700
Configure Bi-Directional Rate Limiting Based on Traffic Classification 700
Apply Bi-Directional Rate Limiting Policy Map to Policy Profile 702
Apply Metal Policy with Bi-Directional Rate Limiting 703
How to apply Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting 704
Information About Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting 704
Prerequisites for Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting 705
Restrictions on Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting 705
Configuring Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting (GUI) 705
Verifying Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting 706
Configuring BDRL Using AAA Override 706
Verifying Bi-Directional Rate-Limit 707
How to Configure Wireless QoS 708
Configuring a Policy Map with Class Map (GUI) 708
Configuring a Class Map (CLI) 709
Configuring Policy Profile to Apply QoS Policy (GUI) 710
Configuring Policy Profile to Apply QoS Policy (CLI) 711
Applying Policy Profile to Policy Tag (GUI) 711
Applying Policy Profile to Policy Tag (CLI) 712
Attaching Policy Tag to an AP 712

CHAPTER 77 **Wireless Auto-QoS** 715
Information About Auto QoS 715
How to Configure Wireless AutoQoS 716
Configuring Wireless AutoQoS on Profile Policy 716
Disabling Wireless AutoQoS 716
Rollback AutoQoS Configuration (GUI) 717
Rollback AutoQoS Configuration 717
Clearing Wireless AutoQoS Policy Profile (GUI) 718

Clearing Wireless AutoQoS Policy Profile 718
Viewing AutoQoS on policy profile 719

CHAPTER 78 **Native Profiling** 721
Information About Native Profiling 721
Creating a Class Map (GUI) 722
Creating a Class Map (CLI) 722
Creating a Service Template (GUI) 724
Creating a Service Template (CLI) 725
Creating a Parameter Map 726
Creating a Policy Map (GUI) 726
Creating a Policy Map (CLI) 727
Configuring Native Profiling in Local Mode 729
Verifying Native Profile Configuration 729

PART X **IPv6** 731

CHAPTER 79 **IPv6 Client Address Learning** 733
Information About IPv6 Client Address Learning 733
Address Assignment Using SLAAC 733
Stateful DHCPv6 Address Assignment 734
Static IP Address Assignment 735
Router Solicitation 735
Router Advertisement 735
Neighbor Discovery 735
Neighbor Discovery Suppression 735
Router Advertisement Guard 736
Router Advertisement Throttling 736
Prerequisites for IPv6 Client Address Learning 736
Configuring IPv6 on Embedded Wireless Controller Interface 736
Native IPv6 737
Information About IPv6 737
Configuring IPv6 Addressing 738
Creating an AP Join Profile (GUI) 740

Creating an AP Join Profile (CLI) 740
Configuring the Primary and Backup Embedded Wireless Controller (GUI) 741
Configuring Primary and Backup Controller (CLI) 741
Verifying IPv6 Configuration 742

CHAPTER 80 IPv6 ACL 743
Information About IPv6 ACL 743
Understanding IPv6 ACLs 743
Types of ACL 743
Per User IPv6 ACL 743
Filter ID IPv6 ACL 744
Downloadable IPv6 ACL 744
Prerequisites for Configuring IPv6 ACL 744
Restrictions for Configuring IPv6 ACL 744
Configuring IPv6 ACLs 745
Default IPv6 ACL Configuration 745
Interaction with Other Features and Switches 745
How To Configure an IPv6 ACL 746
Creating an IPv6 ACL 746
Creating WLAN IPv6 ACL 749
Verifying IPv6 ACL 749
Displaying IPv6 ACLs 749
Configuration Examples for IPv6 ACL 750
Example: Creating an IPv6 ACL 750
Example: Displaying IPv6 ACLs 750

CHAPTER 81 IPv6 Ready Certification 753
Feature History for IPv6-Ready Certification 753
IPv6 Ready Certification 753
Configuring IPv6 Route Information 754
Verifying IPv6 Route Information 754

PART XI CleanAir 755

CHAPTER 82 **Cisco CleanAir** 757

Information About Cisco CleanAir 757

Cisco CleanAir-Related Terms 758

Cisco CleanAir Components 758

Interference Types that Cisco CleanAir can Detect 759

EDRRM and AQR Update Mode 760

Prerequisites for CleanAir 760

Restrictions for CleanAir 760

How to Configure CleanAir 761

Enabling CleanAir for the 2.4-GHz Band (GUI) 761

Enabling CleanAir for the 2.4-GHz Band (CLI) 761

Configuring Interference Reporting for a 2.4-GHz Device (GUI) 761

Configuring Interference Reporting for a 2.4-GHz Device (CLI) 762

Enabling CleanAir for the 5-GHz Band (GUI) 764

Enabling CleanAir for the 5-GHz Band (CLI) 764

Configuring Interference Reporting for a 5-GHz Device (GUI) 765

Configuring Interference Reporting for a 5-GHz Device (CLI) 765

Configuring Event Driven RRM for a CleanAir Event (GUI) 767

Configuring EDRRM for a CleanAir Event (CLI) 767

Verifying CleanAir Parameters 768

Monitoring Interference Devices 769

Configuration Examples for CleanAir 769

CleanAir FAQs 770

CHAPTER 83 **Spectrum Intelligence** 771

Spectrum Intelligence 771

Configuring Spectrum Intelligence 772

Verifying Spectrum Intelligence Information 772

PART XII **Mesh Access Points** 775

CHAPTER 84 **Mesh Access Points** 777

Introduction to Mesh 778

Restrictions and Limitations 779
Mesh Deployments 779
MAC Authorization 780
Configuring MAC Authorization (GUI) 780
Configuring MAC Authorization (CLI) 781
Preshared Key Provisioning 782
Configuring PSK Provisioning (GUI) 782
Configuring PSK Provisioning (CLI) 783
EAP Authentication 784
Bridge Group Names 785
Configuring a Bridge Group Name (GUI) 785
Configuring a Bridge Group Name (CLI) 786
Mesh Backhaul at 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz 786
Configuring Mesh Backhaul (CLI) 787
Information About Mesh Backhaul RRM 787
Configuring RRM Channel Assignment for an Access Point 787
Configuring RRM Channel Assignment for Root Access Points Globally 788
Verifying the RRM DCA Status 789
Dynamic Frequency Selection 789
Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection (GUI) 790
Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection (CLI) 790
Country Codes 791
Intrusion Detection System 791
Configuring the Intrusion Detection System (GUI) 791
Configuring the Intrusion Detection System (CLI) 791
Mesh Interoperability Between Controllers 792
Mesh Convergence 792
Noise-Tolerant Fast 793
Configuring Mesh Convergence (CLI) 793
Ethernet Bridging 793
Configuring Ethernet Bridging (GUI) 794
Configuring Ethernet Bridging (CLI) 795
Mesh Daisy Chaining 796
Restrictions for Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining 796

Prerequisites for Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining 797
Configuring Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining (CLI) 797
Multicast Over Mesh Ethernet Bridging Network 798
Configuring Multicast Modes Over Mesh (GUI) 798
Configuring Multicast Modes over Mesh 799
Radio Resource Management on Mesh 799
Configuring RRM on Mesh Backhaul (GUI) 800
Configuring RRM on Mesh Backhaul (CLI) 800
Mesh Leaf Node 800
Configuring the Mesh Leaf Node (GUI) 801
Configuring the Mesh Leaf Node (CLI) 801
Flex+Bridge Mode 801
Backhaul Client Access 802
Configuring Backhaul Client Access (GUI) 802
Configuring Backhaul Client Access (CLI) 802
Background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode (Concept) 803
Configure AP fast ancestor find mode (GUI) 803
Configuring Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Find Mode (Task) 804
Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul Per Access Point (GUI) 805
Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul in Mesh Profile (GUI) 805
Configuring Data Rate Per AP (CLI) 806
Configuring Data Rate Using Mesh Profile (CLI) 806
Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (GUI) 807
Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (CLI) 807
Configuring Wireless Backhaul Data Rate (CLI) 808
Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul (GUI) 809
Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul 809
Mesh CAC 809
Configuring Mesh CAC (CLI) 810
Speeding up Mesh Network Recovery Through Fast Detection of Uplink Gateway Reachability Failure 811
Fast Teardown for a Mesh Deployment 811
Enabling Wireless Mesh Profile 811
Associating Wireless Mesh to an AP Profile (CLI) 812

Configuring Fast Teardown for a Mesh AP Profile (GUI) 812
Configuring Fast Teardown for a Mesh AP Profile (CLI) 813
Verifying Fast Teardown with Default Mesh Profile 814
Configuring Subset Channel Synchronization 814
Selecting a Preferred Parent (GUI) 815
Selecting a Preferred Parent (CLI) 815
Changing the Role of an AP (GUI) 816
Changing the Role of an AP (CLI) 816
Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP (GUI) 817
Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP 817
Verifying Mesh Configuration in Embedded Wireless Controller 818
Verifying Mesh Configuration 818
Verifying Mesh Convergence 826
Verifying Mesh Backhaul 826
Verifying Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining 827
Verifying Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul 827
Verify background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find 828

PART XIII WLAN 829

CHAPTER 85 WLANs 831
Information About WLANs 831
Band Selection 831
Off-Channel Scanning Deferral 831
DTIM Period 832
Session Timeouts 832
Cisco Client Extensions 833
Peer-to-Peer Blocking 833
Diagnostic Channel 833
Prerequisites for WLANs 834
Restrictions for WLANs 834
How to Configure WLANs 835
Creating WLANs (GUI) 835
Creating WLANs (CLI) 836

Deleting WLANs (GUI) 836
Deleting WLANs 837
Searching WLANs (CLI) 837
Enabling WLANs (GUI) 837
Enabling WLANs (CLI) 838
Disabling WLANs (GUI) 838
Disabling WLANs (CLI) 839
Configuring General WLAN Properties (CLI) 839
Configuring Advanced WLAN Properties (CLI) 840
Configuring Advanced WLAN Properties (GUI) 842
Verifying WLAN Properties (CLI) 843

CHAPTER 86 **Network Access Server Identifier** 845
Information About Network Access Server Identifier 845
Creating a NAS ID Policy(GUI) 846
Creating a NAS ID Policy 846
Attaching a Policy to a Tag (GUI) 847
Attaching a Policy to a Tag (CLI) 848
Verifying the NAS ID Configuration 848

CHAPTER 87 **DHCP for WLANs** 851
DHCP for WLANs 851

CHAPTER 88 **WLAN Security** 853
Information About AAA Override 853
Prerequisites for Layer 2 Security 853
How to Configure WLAN Security 854
Configuring Static WEP Layer 2 Security Parameters (CLI) 854
Configuring WPA + WPA2 Layer 2 Security Parameters (CLI) 854

CHAPTER 89 **Workgroup Bridges** 857
Cisco Workgroup Bridges 857
Configuring Workgroup Bridge on a WLAN 859
Verifying the Status of Workgroup Bridges 860

Information About Simplifying WGB Configuration 860
Configuring Multiple WGBs (CLI) 861
Verifying WGB Configuration 862

CHAPTER 90 Device Analytics 865
Device Analytics 865
Information About Device Analytics 865
Restrictions for Device Analytics 865
Configuring Device Analytics (GUI) 866
Configuring Device Analytics (CLI) 866
Verifying Device Analytics Configuration 867
Adaptive 802.11r 868
Information About Adaptive 802.11r 868
Configuring Adaptive 802.11r (GUI) 869
Verifying Adaptive 802.11r 869

CHAPTER 91 Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support 871
Feature History for Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support 871
Information About Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support 872
Enabling Device Classifier (CLI) 875
Updating Dynamic XML File 875
Verifying TLV Values 876
Clearing Old Classification Cache 876

CHAPTER 92 Peer-to-Peer Client Support 879
Information About Peer-to-Peer Client Support 879
Configure Peer-to-Peer Client Support 879

CHAPTER 93 802.11r BSS Fast Transition 881
Information About 802.11r Fast Transition 881
Restrictions for 802.11r Fast Transition 882
Monitoring 802.11r Fast Transition (CLI) 883
Configuring 802.11r BSS Fast Transition on a Dot1x Security Enabled WLAN (CLI) 884
Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition in an Open WLAN (CLI) 885

Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on a PSK Security–Enabled WLAN (CLI) 886
Disabling 802.11r Fast Transition (GUI) 887
Disable 802.11r Fast Transition (CLI) 888

CHAPTER 94 Assisted Roaming 889
802.11k Neighbor List and Assisted Roaming 889
Restrictions for Assisted Roaming 890
How to Configure Assisted Roaming 890
Configuring Assisted Roaming (CLI) 890
Verifying Assisted Roaming 891
Configuration Examples for Assisted Roaming 891

CHAPTER 95 802.11v 893
Information About 802.11v 893
Enabling 802.11v Network Assisted Power Savings 893
Prerequisites for Configuring 802.11v 894
Restrictions for 802.11v 894
Enabling 802.11v BSS Transition Management 894
Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management (GUI) 895
Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management (CLI) 895

CHAPTER 96 802.11w 897
Information About 802.11w 897
Prerequisites for 802.11w 900
Restrictions for 802.11w 900
How to Configure 802.11w 901
Configuring 802.11w (GUI) 901
Configuring 802.11w (CLI) 901
Disabling 802.11w 902
Monitoring 802.11w 903

CHAPTER 97 802.11ax Per WLAN 905
Information About 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN 905
Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN (GUI) 905

Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN (CLI) 906
Verifying 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN 906

CHAPTER 98 **Deny Wireless Client Session Establishment Using Calendar Profiles** 909
Information About Denial of Wireless Client Session Establishment 909
Configuring Daily Calendar Profile 910
Configuring Weekly Calendar Profile 911
Configuring Monthly Calendar Profile 912
Mapping a Daily Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile 913
Mapping a Weekly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile 914
Mapping a Monthly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile 915
Verifying Calendar Profile Configuration 916
Verifying Policy Profile Configuration 916

CHAPTER 99 **Ethernet over GRE Tunnels** 919
Introduction to EoGRE 919
EoGRE Configuration Overview 920
Create a Tunnel Gateway 921
Configuring a Tunnel Domain 922
Configuring EoGRE Global Parameters 923
Configuring a Tunnel Profile 923
Associating WLAN to a Wireless Policy Profile 925
Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an AP 926
Verifying the EoGRE Tunnel Configuration 926

CHAPTER 100 **Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE** 935
Feature History for Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE 935
Information About Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE 935
Guidelines and Limitations for Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE 936
Enabling Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE 936
Configuring Wireless Profile Tunnel Under Wireless Profile Policy (CLI) 936
Configuring Central Forwarding (GUI) 937
Configuring Central Forwarding (CLI) 938
Configuring DHCP Required Under Policy Profile (CLI) 938

Configuration Examples of ACLs for Guest Clients 938
Verifying Centralized EoGRE Guest Clients 939

PART XIV Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour 941

CHAPTER 101 Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution Overview 943
About the Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution 943
Solution Components 944
Supported Platforms 945
Supported Network Design 946
Traditional Wired and Wireless Networks 947
Wired Networks 947
Wireless Networks 949
Cisco SD-Access Wired and Wireless Networks 950
BGP EVPN Networks 952

CHAPTER 102 Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller Access Point Mode 955
Overview of Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller - Access Point Mode 955
Restrictions for Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller - Access Point Mode 956
Prerequisites for Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller - Access Point Mode 956
Understanding EWC Mode mDNS Gateway Alternatives 957
Understanding Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller Access Point Mode 958
Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller Access Point Mode 959
Configuring mDNS Gateway Mode (CLI) 959
Configuring mDNS Service Policy (CLI) 961
Configuring mDNS Location-Filter (CLI) 964
Configuring Custom Service Definition (CLI) 967
Configuring Service-Routing on Service-Peer (CLI) 968
Configuring Location-Based mDNS 970
Configuring Service-Routing on SDG Agent (CLI) 970
Verifying Local Area Bonjour in Service-Peer Mode 973
Verifying Local Area Bonjour in SDG Agent Mode 974
Reference 976

PART XV Multicast Domain Name System 977

CHAPTER 103 Multicast Domain Name System 979

Introduction to mDNS Gateway 979
Enabling mDNS Gateway (GUI) 980
Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway (CLI) 980
Creating Custom Service Definition (GUI) 982
Creating Custom Service Definition 982
Creating Service List (GUI) 983
Creating Service List 983
Creating Service Policy (GUI) 985
Creating Service Policy 985
Configuring a Local or Native Profile for an mDNS Policy 986
Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (GUI) 987
Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (CLI) 987
Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (GUI) 988
Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (CLI) 988
Location-Based Service Filtering 989
Prerequisite for Location-Based Service Filtering 989
Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using SSID 989
Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using AP Name 990
Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using AP Location 990
Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Regular Expression 991
Configuring mDNS AP 992
Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy (GUI) 993
Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy 993
Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN (GUI) 995
Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN 995
Verifying mDNS Gateway Configurations 996



# Preface

This preface describes the conventions of this document and information on how to obtain other documentation. It also provides information on what's new in Cisco product documentation.


- Document Conventions , on page xlvii
- Related Documentation, on page xlix
- Communications, services, and additional information, on page xlix


## Document Conventions

This document uses the following conventions:

| Convention | Description |
|---|---|
| ^ or Ctrl | Both the ^ symbol and Ctrl represent the Control (Ctrl) key on a keyboard. For example, the key combination ^**D** or **Ctrl-D** means that you hold down the Control key while you press the D key. (Keys are indicated in capital letters but are not case sensitive.) |
| **bold** font | Commands and keywords and user-entered text appear in **bold** font. |
| *Italic* font | Document titles, new or emphasized terms, and arguments for which you supply values are in *italic* font. |
| `Courier` font | Terminal sessions and information the system displays appear in `courier` font. |
| **`Bold Courier`** font | **`Bold Courier`** font indicates text that the user must enter. |
| [x] | Elements in square brackets are optional. |
| ... | An ellipsis (three consecutive nonbolded periods without spaces) after a syntax element indicates that the element can be repeated. |
| \| | A vertical line, called a pipe, indicates a choice within a set of keywords or arguments. |
| [x \| y] | Optional alternative keywords are grouped in brackets and separated by vertical bars. |

| Convention | Description |
|---|---|
| {x \| y} | Required alternative keywords are grouped in braces and separated by vertical bars. |
| [x {y \| z}] | Nested set of square brackets or braces indicate optional or required choices within optional or required elements. Braces and a vertical bar within square brackets indicate a required choice within an optional element. |
| string | A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks. |
| < > | Nonprinting characters such as passwords are in angle brackets. |
| [ ] | Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets. |
| !, # | An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line. |

### Reader Alert Conventions

This document may use the following conventions for reader alerts:

**Note** Means *reader take note*. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to material not covered in the manual.

**Tip** Means *the following information will help you solve a problem.*

**Caution** Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might do something that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.

**Timesaver** Means *the described action saves time.* You can save time by performing the action described in the paragraph.

Take note of the following general safety warnings:

**Warning** IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

Before you work on any equipment, be aware of the hazards involved with electrical circuitry and be familiar with standard practices for preventing accidents. Read the installation instructions before using, installing, or connecting the system to the power source. Use the statement number at the beginning of each warning statement to locate its translation in the translated safety warnings for this device.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS



# Related Documentation

**Note** Before installing or upgrading the deviceCiscoEmbedded Wireless Controller, refer to the release notes.

# Communications, services, and additional information

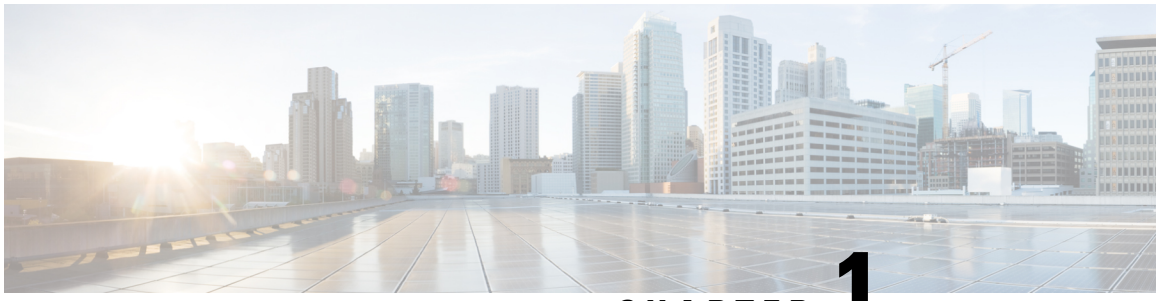
- To receive timely, relevant information from Cisco, sign up at Cisco Profile Manager.
- To get the business impact you're looking for with the technologies that matter, visit Cisco Services.
- To submit a service request, visit Cisco Support.
- To discover and browse secure, validated enterprise-class apps, products, solutions, and services, visit Cisco DevNet.
- To obtain general networking, training, and certification titles, visit Cisco Press.
- To find warranty information for a specific product or product family, access Cisco Warranty Finder.

## Cisco Bug Search Tool

Cisco Bug Search Tool (BST) is a gateway to the Cisco bug-tracking system, which maintains a comprehensive list of defects and vulnerabilities in Cisco products and software. The BST provides you with detailed defect information about your products and software.

## Documentation feedback

To provide feedback about Cisco technical documentation, use the feedback form available in the right pane of every online document.



CHAPTER 1

# Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points

Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points are the next generation wireless controllers that

- are IOS XE based and integrate the Radio Frequency (RF) performance excellence from Aironet systems,
- supports intent-based networking that are easy to adapt and scale, and
- are available in multiple physical and virtual form factors for flexible management options.

### Available form factors and deployment options

You can deploy the controllers as physical appliances .

### Management options

You can managed them the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points with:

- Cisco Catalyst Center
- NETCONF or YANG, or
- GUI or CLI.


- New configuration model, tags, and profile, on page 1
- Configuration workflow, on page 2
- Initial Setup, on page 4
- Interactive help, on page 9
- Resetting Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points, on page 9
- Password Recovery, on page 10


# New configuration model, tags, and profile

The new configuration model is a wireless network configuration approach that

- uses profiles to define feature-specific parameters
- uses tags to bundle and apply profiles to APs, and

- separates policy, site, RF, and WLAN definitions for modular deployment.

Profiles define attributes such as WLAN policy, RF behavior, and AP join characteristics. Tags are logical containers that map these profiles to APs, ensuring flexible and scalable configurations.

A tag is a logical container that

- is defined by the property of policies you associate with it
- maps multiple profiles—policy, site, and RF—to an AP or client, and determines that device's configuration and behavior, and
- enables modular and flexible deployment across sites.

Every tag has a default that is created when the system boots up.

A profile is a logical container that

- include feature-specific attributes and parameters applied to tags
- represent multiple attributes related to policy, site, and RF
- determine the configuration and behavior of applied APs and associated clients, and
- is a reusable entities that can be used across tags.

# Configuration workflow

Configuring wireless networks involves establishing profiles and tags that link configurations to APs for effective wireless management.

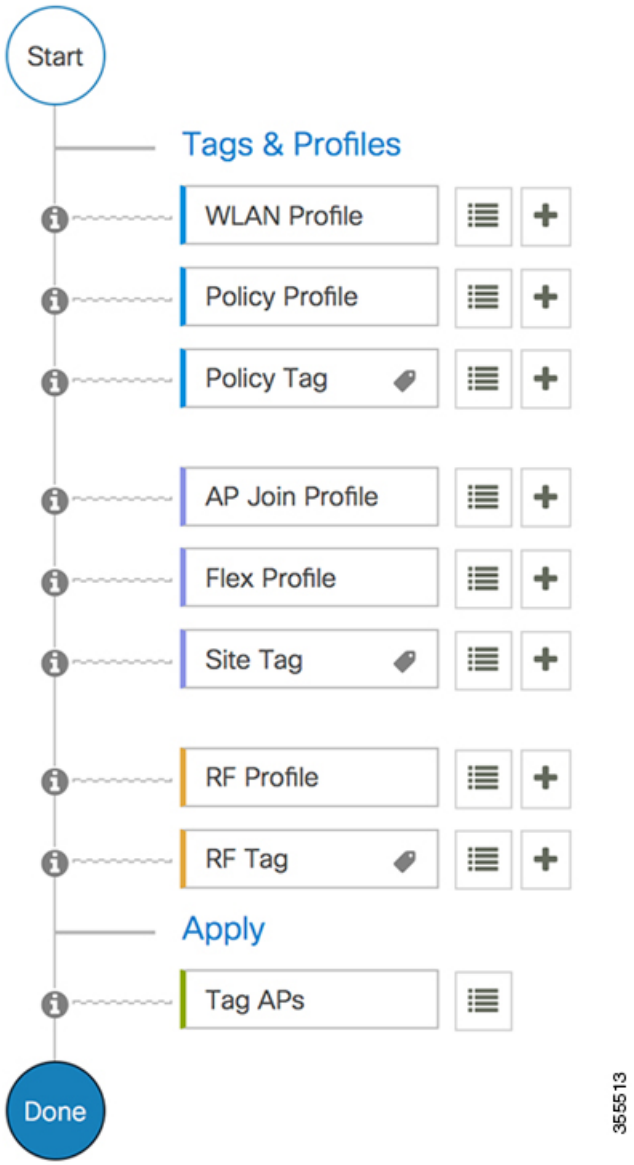
### Summary

The key components involved in the process are:

- **Profiles**: Logical groupings of settings (such as WLAN, Policy, AP Join, Flex, and RF) used to configure APs.
- **Tags**: Logical containers or labels (such as Policy, Site, Tag) that help link profiles with APs.
- **APs**: Devices that implement the configurations provided by profiles and tags to deliver wireless connectivity.

## Workflow

*Figure 1: Configuration workflow*




These are the stages of configuration:

1. **Profile creation** creates specific profiles:
    - WLAN profile for managing wireless network settings.
    - Policy profile for enforcing network rules.
    - AP Join profile for controlling AP associations.
    - Flex profile for handling local switching.
    - RF profile for optimizing radio frequency settings.

2. **Tag creation**: generates tags to complement profiles:
    - Policy tag to align with the Policy profile.
    - Site tag for specific location identification.
    - RF tag corresponding to the RF profile.
3. **Tag association**: associates the created tags with an AP to apply the configured settings and policies.

**Result**

The configuration workflow enables APs to be set up correctly with designated profiles and tags, resulting in efficient network operation and management.

# Initial Setup

### Setting Up the Controller

The initial configuration wizard in Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points is a simplified, out-of-the-box installation and configuration interface for the controller. This section provides instructions to set up a controller to operate in a small, medium, or large network wireless environment, where access points can join and together as a simple solution provide various services, such as corporate employee or guest wireless access on the network.

## Configuring the Controller Using Day 0 Wizard (GUI)

To confugure the controller using day 0 wizard, complete the following steps:

### Before you begin

When the AP has rebooted in the EWC mode, it broadcasts a provisioning SSID ending with the last digits of the MAC address. You can connect to provisioning SSID using the PSK **password**.

You can then open a browser and be redirected to mywifi.cisco.com, which takes you to the AP web UI. Enter the username as **webui** and password as **cisco**.

**Note**: The web redirection to the EWC configuration portal only works if you are connected to the provisioning SSID. It does not work if your laptop is connected to another wifi network or on the wired network. You cannot configure the AP from the wired network even if you enter the EWC IP address when it is in day0 wizard provisioning mode

### Procedure

**Step 1** Log on to the controller and in the **Configuration Setup Wizard**, go to the **General Settings** page.

**Step 2** In the **Configuration Mode** option, select one of the following:

a) **Non Mesh**: Complete the following fields:

1. **Host Name**: Enter the hostname.

2. **Country**: From the drop-down list, choose the appropriate country code.

   **Note**
   As required by the End User License Agreement, please ensure appropriate country code selection so that the unleashed network does not violate local and national regulatory restrictions. Improper country code assignment can disrupt wireless transmissions and may result in government imposed penalties and sanctions on operators of wireless networks utilizing devices set to improper country codes.

3. In the **Management User Settings** section, enter the username and password.
4. In the **Wireless Management Settings** section, check the **DHCP** check box, to display the DHCP server IP address.
5. In the **Wireless Network** section, click **Add** to create atleast one WLAN.

b) **Mesh**: Complete the following fields:

1. **Host Name**: Enter the hostname.
2. **Country**: Click the '+' icon to enter the appropriate country code.
3. In the **Management User Settings** section, enter the username and password.
4. In the **Wireless Management Settings** section, check the **DHCP** check box, to display the DHCP server IP address.
5. In the Wireless Mesh Settings section, complete the following fields:
   - Check the **Enable Wireless Bridge** check box to enable the feature.
   - In the **Mesh AP MAC Address** field, enter the MAC address or click the '+' icon select the MAC address from the list of Mesh AP MAC addresses that are displayed.
6. In the **Wireless Network** section, click **Add** to create atleast one WLAN.

**Step 3** Click **Finish**.

# Configuring the Controller Using Day 0 Wizard (CLI)

To configure the controller using the Day 0 wizard, follow the steps given below. The following steps are common for configuring mesh and non-mesh APs. The existing Day 0 workflow enables the configuration with the **factory-reset** command.

### Before you begin

- The available options in brackets after each configuration parameter. The default value in all uppercase letters.
- If you enter an incorrect response, the controller provides you with an appropriate error message, such as an invalid response, and returns you to the wizard prompt.
- Press the **hyphen** key to return to the previous command line.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the **wireless ewc-ap factory-reset** command to initiate the Day 0 workflow. This command reboots the device when you confirm the action.

**Step 2** When the device restarts and when you are prompted with the initial configuration dialog, enter **Yes** to start the dialog.

**Example:**

```
Would you like to enter the initial configuration dialog? [yes/no]: Yes
```

**Step 3** Enter valid inputs to the following questions that are prompted for mesh and non-mesh APs:

a) Enter the country code for the operation.

**Note**
Enter help to view the list of available country codes.

You can enter more than one country code if you want to manage APs in multiple countries from a single controller. To do so, separate the country codes with a comma (for example, US,CA,MX). After the configuration wizard runs, you must assign each AP joined to the controller to a specific country.

**Example:**

```
Configure country code(s) for wireless operation in ISO format [US]: US,CH,CN,GB
```

b) Enter the country code to configure the AP profile.

**Example:**

```
Configure default wireless AP profile country code in ISO format [US]:
```

c) Enter the hostname.

**Example:**

```
Enter the hostname [EWC]: EWC
```

d) Enter the details to configure credentials for management access on the APs.

**Example:**

```
Configure credentials for management access on Access Points? [yes]: yes
 [AP] Enter the management username: EWC_User
 [AP] Enter the management password: ********
 [AP] Reenter the password: ********
 [AP] Enter the privileged mode access password: ********
 [AP] Reenter the password: ********
```

e) Enter the management credentials.

**Example:**

```
Enter the management username: EWC_User
Enter the password: ********
Reenter the password: ********
```

f) Configure the DHCP interface.

**Example:**

```
Configure interface as DHCP [yes/no]? [no]: yes
```

g) Configure the wireless network settings.

**Example:**

```
Configure Wireless network settings? [yes]: yes
 Enter the network name or service set identifier (SSID): test
 Choose the network type
   1. Employee
   2. Guest
 Enter your selection [1]: 1
 Choose the security type
   1. WPA Personal
   2. WPA Enterprise
 Enter your selection [2]: 1
 Enter the pre-shared key: ****
```

For non-mesh APs, the configuration ends here. Save or discard the configuration.

**Step 4** To configure mesh capable APs, follow the steps given below:

a) Configure mesh mode on the AP.

**Example:**

```
Set Internal AP in mesh mode [yes/no]? [no]: yes
```

b) Configure additional mesh access points (MAPs).

**Example:**

```
Configure additional MAPs [yes/no]? [no]: yes
Enter a comma separated list of max 20 Mesh AP ethernet macs (format: 'aabbccddeeff' or
 'aabb.ccdd.eeff'): aabbccddeeff, 1122.3344.5566
```

c) Enable wireless bridging.

**Example:**

```
Enable wireless bridging [yes/no]? [no]: yes
```

---

### Example

The configuration for mesh APs is complete. The following configuration script is generated from the entered choices:

```
!

ap profile default-ap-profile
country US

!
hostname EWC
!
ap profile default-ap-profile
mgmtuser username EWC_User password 0 test secret 0 test

!
username EWC_User privilege 15 secret 9
$x$xxxxxxxxxx9xxxxxxxxxxjxxxxxxxxxxzxxxxxxxxxxOxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

!
wireless management interface GigabitEthernet0
```

```
!

interface GigabitEthernet0
ip address dhcp

!
wlan test 1 test
security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 test
no security wpa akm dot1x
security wpa akm psk
no shut

!

wireless tag policy default-policy-tag
wlan test policy default-policy-profile

!
end
wireless country US
wireless country CH
wireless country CN
wireless country GB
aaa new-model
aaa authentication login default local
aaa authorization credential-download default local
username 3C5731C58478 mac


!
ap profile default-ap-profile
ssid broadcast persistent
username aabbccddeeff mac
username 112233445566 mac


wireless mesh security psk provisioning
wireless mesh security psk provisioning default_psk

!
wireless profile mesh default-mesh-profile
security psk
ethernet-bridging
ethernet-vlan-transparent
```

### What to do next

Save or discard the configuration.

```
[0] Go to the IOS command prompt without saving this config.
[1] Return back to the setup without saving this config.
[2] Save this configuration to nvram and exit.

Enter your selection:

Example:
Enter your selection: 2
```

# Interactive help

Interactive help is a user interface feature that

- provides step-by-step guidance within the application
- adapts instructions and walk-throughs to the user's context, and
- assists users in completing complex configurations or navigating the system.

### Modes of starting the interactive Help

You can start the interactive help in the these ways.

- Hover over the blue flap at the right-hand corner of a window in the GUI and clicking **Interactive Help**.
- Click **Walk-me Thru** in the left pane of a window in the GUI.
- Click **Show me How** whenever displayed in the GUI. Clicking **Show me How** triggers a specific interactive help that is relevant to the context you are in.

  For example, **Show me How** in **Configure** > **AAA** walks you through the various steps for configuring a RADIUS server. Choose **Configuration> Wireless Setup** > **Advanced** and click **Show me How** to trigger the interactive help that walks you through the steps relating to various kinds of authentication.

### Additional troubleshooting information

If the WalkMe launcher is unavailable on Safari, modify the browser settings.

1. Choose **Preferences** > **Privacy**.
2. In the **Website tracking** section, uncheck the **Prevent cross-site tracking** check box to disable this action.
3. In the **Cookies and website data** section, uncheck the **Block all cookies** check box to disable this action.

# Resetting Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points

To reset the controller on Catalyst APs to factory defaults, follow the steps given below:

### Procedure

**Step 1** Unplug the Access Point from its power source.

**Step 2** Plug in the console cable and open serial session on your computer or laptop.

**Step 3** Press and hold the **Mode/Reset** button on the AP.

**Step 4** Plug in the AP back to its power source while still pressing the **Mode/Reset** button.

**Step 5** Continue holding the button until a prompt is displayed in the serial session on your computer or laptop.

**Note**
The console session also displays for how long the button has been pressed. At least 20 seconds of button press is required for a complete restart.

### What to do next

When the AP reboots, use the default credentials **Cisco/Cisco** to log in.

# Password Recovery

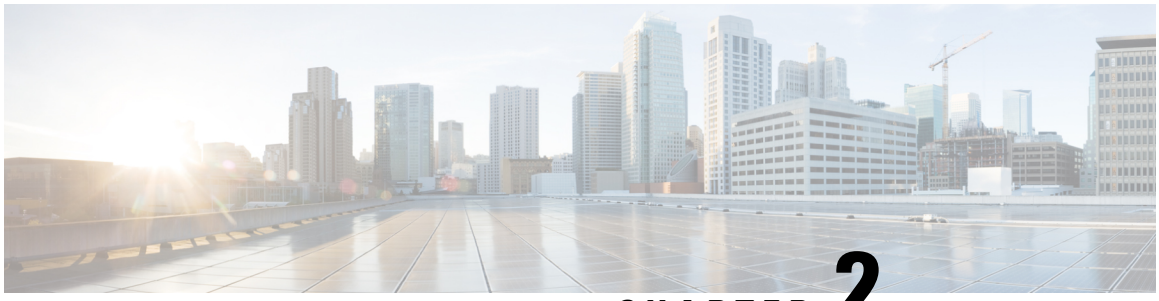
For password recovery, you must do a factory reset of the AP. For more information about resetting factory defaults, see the Resetting Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points section.



PART I

# System Configuration


- System Configuration, on page 13
- Smart Licensing Using Policy, on page 45
- Conversion and Migration, on page 47
- Best Practices, on page 55



CHAPTER 2

# System Configuration


- Information About New Configuration Model, on page 13
- Configure a wireless profile policy (GUI), on page 15
- Configure a wireless policy profile (CLI), on page 16
- Configure a flex profile, on page 17
- Configure an AP profile (GUI), on page 18
- Configure an AP profile (CLI), on page 22
- Configure an RF profile (GUI), on page 23
- Configure an RF profile (CLI), on page 23
- Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing, on page 25
- Configure policy tag (GUI), on page 28
- Configure a policy tag (CLI), on page 29
- Configure wireless RF tag (GUI), on page 30
- Configure wireless RF tag (CLI), on page 30
- Attach a policy tag and site tag to an AP (GUI), on page 31
- Attach policy tag and site tag to an AP (CLI), on page 32
- Time Management, on page 33
- AP Filter, on page 33
- Configuring Access Point for Location Configuration, on page 39


# Information About New Configuration Model

The configuration of Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points is simplified using different tags, namely rf-tag, policy-tag, and site-tag. The access points would derive their configuration from the profiles that are contained within the tags.

Profiles are a collection of feature-specific attributes and parameters applied to tags. The rf-tag contains the radio profiles, the policy-tag contains the WLAN profile and policy profile, and the site-tag contains the flex profile and ap-join profile.

### Policy Tag

The policy tag constitutes mapping of the WLAN profile to the policy profile. The WLAN profile defines the wireless characteristics of the WLAN. The policy profile defines the network policies and the switching policies for the client (Quality of Service [QoS] is an exception which constitutes AP policies as well).

The policy tag contains the map of WLAN policy profile. There can be a maximum of 16 such entries per policy tag. Changes to the map entries are effected based on the status of the WLAN profile and policy profile. For example, if a map (WLAN1 and Policy1) is added to the policy tag, and both the WLAN profile and the policy profile are enabled, the definitions are pushed to the APs using the policy tag. However, if one of them is in disabled state, the definition is not pushed to the AP. Similarly, if a WLAN profile is already being broadcast by an AP, it can be deleted using the no form of the command in the policy tag.

### Site Tag

The site tag defines the properties of a site and contains the flex profile and the AP join profile. The attributes that are specific to the corresponding flex or remote site are part of the flex profile. Apart from the flex profile, the site tag also comprises attributes that are specific to the physical site (and hence cannot be a part of the profile that is a reusable entity). For example, the list of primary APs for efficient upgrade is a part of a site tag rather than that of a flex profile.

If a flex profile name or an AP profile name is changed in the site tag, the AP is forced to rejoin the controller by disconnecting the Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) session. When a site tag is created, the AP and flex profiles are set to default values (default-ap-profile and default-flex-profile).

### RF Tag

The RF tag contains the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz RF profiles. The default RF tag contains the global configuration. Both these profiles contain the same default values for global RF profiles for the respective radios.

### Profiles

Profiles are a collection of feature-specific attributes and parameters applied to tags. Profiles are reusable entities that can be used across tags. Profiles (used by tags) define the properties of the APs or its associated clients.

### WLAN Profile

WLAN profiles are configured with same or different service set identifiers (SSIDs). An SSID identifies the specific wireless network for the controller to access. Creating WLANs with the same SSID allows to assign different Layer 2 security policies within the same wireless LAN.

To distinguish WLANs having the same SSID, create a unique profile name for each WLAN. WLANs with the same SSID must have unique Layer 2 security policies so that clients can select a WLAN based on the information advertised in the beacon and probe responses. The switching and network policies are not part of the WLAN definition.

### Policy Profile

Policy profile broadly consists of network and switching policies. Policy profile is a reusable entity across tags. Anything that is a policy for a client that is applied on an AP or controller is moved to the policy profile, for example, VLAN, ACL, QoS, session timeout, idle timeout, AVC profile, bonjour profile, local profiling, device classification, BSSID QoS, and so on. However, all the wireless-related security attributes and features on the WLAN are grouped under the WLAN profile.

### Flex Profile

Flex profile contains policy attributes and remote site-specific parameters. For example, the EAP profiles that can be used when the AP acts as an authentication server for local RADIUS server information, VLAN-ACL mapping, VLAN name-to-ID mapping, and so on.

### AP Join Profile

The default AP join profile values will have the global AP parameters and the AP group parameters. The AP join profile contains attributes that are specific to AP, such as CAPWAP, IPv4 and IPv6, UDP Lite, High Availability, Retransmit config parameters, Global AP failover, Hyperlocation config parameters, Telnet and SSH, 11u parameters, and so on.



**Note** Telnet is not supported for the following Cisco AP models: 1542D, 1542I, 1562D, 1562E, 1562I, 1562PS, 1800S, 1800T, 1810T, 1810W,1815M, 1815STAR, 1815TSN, 1815T, 1815W, 1832I, 1840I, 1852E, 1852I, 2802E, 2802I, 2802H, 3700C, 3800, 3802E, 3802I, 3802P, 4800, IW6300, ESW6300, 9105AXI, 9105AXW, 9115AXI, 9115AXE, 9117I, APVIRTUAL, 9120AXI, 9120AXE, 9124AXI, 9124AXD, 9130AXI, 9130AXE, 9136AXI, 9162I, 9164I, and 9166I.

### RF Profile

RF profile contains the common radio configuration for the APs. RF profiles are applied to all the APs that belong to an AP group, where all the APs in that group have the same profile settings.

### Association of APs

APs can be associated using different ways. The default option is by using Ethernet MAC address, where the MAC is associated with policy-tag, site tag, and RF tag.

In filter-based association, APs are mapped using regular expressions. A regular expression (regex) is a pattern to match against an input string. Any number of APs matching that regex will have policy-tag, site tag, and RF tag mapped to them, which is created as part of the AP filter.

In AP-based association, tag names are configured at the PnP server and the AP stores them and sends the tag name as part of discovery process.

In location-based association, tags are mapped as per location and are pushed to any AP Ethernet MAC address mapped to that location.

### Modifying AP Tags

Modifying an AP tag results in DTLS connection reset, forcing the AP to rejoin the controller. If only one tag is specified in the configuration, default tags are used for other types, for example, if only policy tag is specified, the default-site-tag and default-rf-tag will be used for site tag and RF tag.

# Configure a wireless profile policy (GUI)

Define and apply a wireless profile policy to manage network behavior and access for wireless clients.

Use this task to create or modify a policy profile, ensuring wireless network policies suit your organization's needs.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.

**Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Add Policy Profile** window, in **General** tab, enter a name and description for the policy profile. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces. Do not use spaces as it causes system instability.

**Step 4** To enable the policy profile, set **Status** as **Enabled**.

**Step 5** In the WLAN Switching Policy section, choose the following, as required:

- No Central Switching: Tunnels both the wireless user traffic and all control traffic via CAPWAP to the centralized controller where the user traffic is mapped to a dynamic interface/VLAN on the controller. This is the normal CAPWAP mode of operation.
- Central Authentication: Tunnels client data to the controller, as the controller handles client authentication.
- No Central DHCP: The DHCP packets received from AP are centrally switched to the controller and then forwarded to the corresponding VLAN based on the AP and the SSID.
- Central Association Enable: When central association is enabled, all switching is done on the controller.
- Flex NAT/PAT: Enables Network Address Translation(NAT) and Port Address Translation (PAT) mode.

**Step 6** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

The wireless profile policy is successfully created and applied. Devices use the updated policy settings for wireless client management.

# Configure a wireless policy profile (CLI)

Define and apply a wireless policy profile on your device using command-line interface commands.

Use this task to configure wireless profile policies on Cisco wireless controllers. Policy profiles specify settings such as VLAN mapping, idle timeouts, and accounting lists for wireless networks.



**Note** When a client moves from an old controller to a new controller (managed by Cisco Prime Infrastructure), the old IP address of the client is retained, if the IP address is learned by ARP or data gleaning. To avoid this scenario, ensure that you enable **ipv4 dhcp required** command in the policy profile. Otherwise, the IP address gets refreshed only after a period of 24 hours.

Follow the procedure given to configure a wireless profile policy:

**Before you begin**

- Ensure you have administrator privileges to access and configure the device.
- Have the required VLAN ID, idle timeout value, and accounting list details available, if applicable.

Follow these steps to configure a wireless profile policy:

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure the WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1
```

**Step 3** (Optional) Configure the duration of idle timeout in seconds.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-policy)# idle-timeout 1000
```

**Step 4** Configure the VLAN name or VLAN ID.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 24
```

**Step 5** Save the configuration, exit configuration mode, and return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown
```

**Step 6** (Optional) View detailed information about a policy profile, using the **show wireless profile policy detailed** *policy-profile-name* command.

**Example:**

```
Device# show wireless profile policy summary
```

The wireless policy profile is configured and enabled on the device. All specified settings are applied to the selected policy.

### What to do next

- Associate the policy profile with a WLAN as needed.
- Review and validate the applied settings by connecting a client device and confirming expected behavior.

# Configure a flex profile

Create or modify a flex profile to customize wireless network behavior for specific sites or device groups.

Use flex profiles within your network management system to define site-specific configurations such as VLANs, SSIDs, or access policies.

**Before you begin**

Identify the devices or sites to apply the flex profile.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure a flex profile and enter flex profile configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless profile flex rr-xyz-flex-profile
```

**Step 3** (Optional) Enable default parameters for the flex profile.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# description xyz-default-flex-profile
```

**Step 4** (Optional) Enable ARP caching.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# arp-caching
```

**Step 5** Save the configuration, exit configuration mode, and return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end
```

**Step 6** (Optional) View detailed parameters about the flex profile, use the **show wireless profile flex detailed** *flex-profile-name* command.

**Example:**

```
Device# show wireless profile flex summary
```

The flex profile is created or updated and available for assignment to devices or sites.

### What to do next

Assign the flex profile to the relevant site, device, or group as needed.

# Configure an AP profile (GUI)

Configure and customize AP join profiles for your wireless deployment.

Use this task to define, modify, or apply AP profile parameters such as country code, LED state, timers, VLAN tagging, security settings, management options, and advanced features, using the device's graphical interface.

**Before you begin**

- Review the default AP join profile to update parameters for your environment (For example, Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP), IPv4 or IPv6, UDP Lite, High Availability, retransmit configuration parameters, global AP failover, Hyperlocation configuration parameters, Telnet or SSH, 11u parameters, and so on.)
- Obtain required information, such as network-specific settings, controller addresses, credentials, and profile names.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **AP Join**.

**Step 2** On the **AP Join Profile** window, click **Add** .

The **Add AP Join Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter a name and description for the AP join profile.

**Step 4** Check the **LED State** check box to set the LED state of all APs connected to the device to blink, making them easier to locate.

**Step 5** In the **Client** tab and **Statistics Timer** section, enter the time in seconds that the AP sends its 802.11 statistics to the controller.

**Step 6** In the **TCP MSS Configuration** section, check the **Adjust MSS Enable** check box to enter value for Adjust MSS. You can enter or update the maximum segment size (MSS) for transient packets that traverse a router. TCP MSS adjustment enables the configuration of the maximum segment size (MSS) for transient packets that traverse a router, specifically TCP segments with the SYN bit set.

In a CAPWAP environment, a lightweight AP discovers a device by using CAPWAP discovery mechanisms, and then sends a CAPWAP join request to the device. The device sends a CAPWAP join response to the AP that allows the AP to join the device.

When the AP joins the device, the device manages its configuration, firmware, control transactions, and data transactions.

**Step 7** In the **AP** tab, you can configure various options:

- General

a) In the **General** tab, check the **Switch Flag** check box to enable switches.
b) Check the **Power Injector State** check box if power injector is being used. Use power injectors to provide flexible powering options for APs, such as local power, multiport switches with inline power, or multiport power patch panels.
c) From the **Power Injector Type** drop-down list, choose power injector type from the following options:

- Installed: If you want the AP to examine and remember the MAC address of the currently connected switch port. (This selection assumes that a power injector is connected.)
- Override: To enable the AP to operate in high-power mode without first verifying a matching MAC address.

d) In the **Injector Switch MAC** field, enter the MAC address of the switch.
e) From the **EAP Type** drop-down list, choose the EAP type as *EAP-FAST* , *EAP-TLS* , or *EAP-PEAP* .

f) From the **AP Authorization Type** drop-down list, choose the type as either *CAPWAP DTLS +* or *CAPWAP DTLS* .
g) In the **Client Statistics Reporting Interval** section, enter the interval for 5 GHz and 2.4 GHz radios in seconds.
h) Check the **Enable** check box to enable extended module.
i) From the **Profile Name** drop-down list, choose a profile name .
j) Click **Save & Apply to Device** .

- Hyperlocation: Cisco Hyperlocation is a location solution that allows to track the location of wireless clients with the accuracy of one meter. Selecting this option disables all other fields in the screen except for NTP Server.

a) In the **Hyperlocation** tab, check the **Enable Hyperlocation** check box.
b) Enter the **Detection Threshold** value to filter out packets with low RSSI. The valid range is –100 dBm to –50 dBm.
c) Enter the **Trigger Threshold** value to set the number of scan cycles before sending a BAR to clients. The valid range is 0 to 99.
d) Enter the **Reset Threshold** value to reset value in scan cycles after trigger. The valid range is 0 to 99.
e) Enter the **NTP Server** IP address.
f) Click **Save & Apply to Device** .

- BLE: If your APs are Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) enabled, they can transmit beacon messages that are packets of data or attributes transmitted over a low-energy link. These BLE beacons are used for health monitoring, proximity detection, asset tracking, and in-store navigation. You can customize BLE beacon settings for each AP, even if they are configured globally.

a) In the **BLE** tab, enter a value in the **Beacon Interval** field to indicate how often you want your APs to send out beacon advertisements to nearby devices. The range is from one to 10, with a default value of one.
b) In the **Advertised Attenuation Level** field, enter the attenuation level. The range is from 40 to 100, with a default of 59.
c) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

**Step 8** In the **Management** tab, you can configure the following:

- Device

a) In the **Device** tab, enter the **IPv4/IPv6 Address** of the TFTP server, **TFTP Downgrade** section.
b) In the **Image File Name** field, enter the name of the software image file.
c) From the **Facility Value** drop-down list, choose the appropriate facility.
d) Enter the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the host.
e) Choose the appropriate **Log Trap Value**.
f) Enable Telnet, SSH or both configurations, if required.
g) Enable core dump, if required.
h) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

- User

a) In the **User** tab, enter username and password details.
b) Choose the appropriate password type.
c) In the **Secret** field, enter a custom secret code.

d) Choose the appropriate secret type.
e) Choose the appropriate encryption type.
f) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

- Credentials

a) In the **Credentials** tab, enter local username and password details.
b) Choose the appropriate local password type.
c) Enter 802.1x username and password details.
d) Choose the appropriate 802.1x password type.
e) Enter the time in seconds after which the session should expire.
f) Enable local credentials, 802.1x credentials, or both as required.
g) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

a) In the **CDP Interface** tab, enable the CDP state, if required.
b) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

**Step 9** In the **Rogue AP** tab, check the **Rogue Detection** check box to enable rogue detection.

**Step 10** In the **Rogue Detection Minimum RSSI** field, enter the RSSI value.

This field specifies the minimum RSSI value for which a Rogue AP should be reported. All Rogue APs with RSSI lower than what is configured will not be reported to controller.

**Step 11** In the **Rogue Detection Transient Interval** field, enter the transient interval value.

This field indicates how long the Rogue AP should be seen before reporting the controller.

**Step 12** In the **Rogue Detection Report Interval** field, enter the report interval value.

This field indicates the frequency (in seconds) of Rogue reports sent from AP to controller.

**Step 13** Check the **Rogue Containment Automatic Rate Selection** check box to enable rogue containment automatic rate selection.

The AP selects the best rate for the target Rogue, based on its RSSI.

**Step 14** Check the **Auto Containment on FlexConnect Standalone** check box to enable the feature.

The AP continues containment if it moves to FlexConnect standalone mode.

**Step 15** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

---

The AP join profile is created or updated. Devices assigned to this profile use its configuration for network operation and management.

### What to do next

- Verify that APs have successfully joined and received the new settings by reviewing AP status.
- Adjust profile settings as necessary for site-specific needs or to resolve configuration issues.

# Configure an AP profile (CLI)

Set up and customize an AP profile using CLI commands to apply network-wide AP configurations.

Use this procedure when you need to define or modify an AP profile for your wireless controller, typically to standardize AP settings or apply feature-specific options.

**Before you begin**

Identify the name and required settings for your AP profile.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure an AP profile and enter AP profile configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile
```

**Note**

- In an AP profile, the **EAP-FAST** is the default EAP type.
- When you delete a named profile, the APs associated with that profile does not revert to the default profile.

**Step 3** Add a description for the AP profile.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# description "xyz ap profile"
```

**Step 4** Enable CDP for all Cisco APs.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# cdp
```

**Step 5** Save the configuration, exit configuration mode, and return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# end
```

**Step 6** (Optional) Display detailed information about an AP join profile.

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap profile name xyz-ap-profile detailed
```

The AP profile is created or updated with specified settings, and changes are active on the controller.

### What to do next

Assign APs to the new profile as required, and verify AP behavior matches the intended configuration.

# Configure an RF profile (GUI)

Create and enable an RF profile to optimize radio frequency settings for your wireless network.

Use this task to define an RF profile that sets parameters for radio bands and device operation. This ensures consistent performance across your wireless deployment.

### Before you begin

Use the same RF profile name when configuring the wireless RF tag. If the RF tag contains an RF profile that does not exist, the radios do not operate.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **RF**.

**Step 2** On the **RF Profile** window, click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter a name for the RF profile. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.

**Step 4** Choose the appropriate **Radio Band**.

**Step 5** To enable the profile, set the status as **Enable**.

**Step 6** Enter a **Description** for the RF profile.

**Step 7** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

The new RF profile is created, enabled, and applied to the device.

### What to do next

- Verify that the RF profile settings are visible and active on your device.
- Assign the profile to RF tags or APs, if required, to complete your configuration.

# Configure an RF profile (CLI)

Create and enable an RF profile to optimize radio frequency settings for your wireless network.

Use this task to define an RF profile that sets parameters for radio bands and device operation. This ensures consistent performance across your wireless deployment.

### Before you begin

Use the same RF profile name when configuring the wireless RF tag. If the RF tag contains an RF profile that does not exist, the radios do not operate.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure an RF profile, and enter RF profile configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile rfprof24_1
```

**Note**
Use the **24ghz** command to configure the 802.11b parameters. Use the **5ghz** command to configure the 802.11a parameters.

**Step 3** (Optional) Enable default parameters for the RF profile.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rf-profile)# default
```

**Step 4** Enable the RF profile on the device.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rf-profile)# no shutdown
```

**Step 5** Exit configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rf-profile)# end
```

**Step 6** (Optional) Display a summary of available RF profiles.

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap rf-profile summary
```

**Step 7** (Optional) Display detailed information about a particular RF profile.

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap rf-profile name rfprof24_1 detail
```

You have created and enabled a new RF profile, and applied it to the device.

### What to do next

- Verify that the RF profile settings are visible and active on your device.
- Assign the profile to RF tags or APs as required to complete your configuration.

# Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing

## Feature History for Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 1: Feature History for Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing***

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1 | Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing | The Site Tag-based load balancing is available from Cisco IOS-XE Gibraltar 16.10.1 release.<br>When the first AP from a site joins the controller, it takes the decision to load balance the entire site. However, this is done without knowing the site load.<br>The enhancement to load balancing feature introduced in Cisco IOS-XE 17.10.1 specifies a site load to help with better load balancing. |

## Enhanced site tag-based load balancing

A site tag-based load balancing is a controller mechanism that

- distributes APs across Wireless Network Control Daemon (WNCD) processes based on site tags,
- allows configuration of a site load for each site tag to optimize AP assignment considering site size, and
- automatically retains site tags in persistent memory and balances them during controller bootup in descending order of the configured site load.

The controller takes the load balancing decision for a site tag when the first AP from that site tag joins.

***Table 2: Feature History***

| Feature | Release | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing | Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1 | When the first AP from a site joins the controller, it takes the decision to load balance the entire site. However, this is done without knowing the site load. |

### How controllers functioned before load balancing

Previously, controllers did not consider the actual size of sites when making load balancing decisions. The system functioned optimally only when all sites were of approximately equal size. Unequal distribution caused some WNCDs to be overloaded while others remained underused.

The enhanced feature enables administrators to specify a site load for each site tag, ensuring the controller takes site size into account when distributing APs and thus resulting in improved load distribution among WNCDs.

#### Behavior during controller reboot

- After you configure site load balancing in one or more site tags and reboot the controller, The feature retains actively used site tags and balances them at bootup by prioritizing those with higher configured site load before any APs join.
- If load balancing is configured for a site tag with APs already joined, load balancing assignments remain unchanged unless all APs, including those not in the site tag, disconnect or the controller is rebooted.

#### assigning a higher site load to one site over the other

Suppose Site Tag X is assigned a higher site load than Site Tag Y. Upon controller bootup, APs from Site Tag X are distributed among WNCDs before those from Site Tag Y, helping prevent excessive load on any single WNCD even if Site Tag X contains many more APs than Site Tag Y.

#### Analogy: assigning classes to school buses

Think of enhanced site tag-based load balancing like assigning students from different-sized classes (site tags) to school buses (WNCDs). If you ignore class size, you might put all students from the largest class on a single bus, overloading it while leaving other buses half empty. By taking class sizes into account when assigning students, you distribute them more evenly and efficiently among the buses, preventing overcrowding and making better use of all resources. Similarly, by setting site load values, the controller assigns APs more fairly to WNCDs, balancing the work and avoiding overload.

## Prerequisites for Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing

- Ensure that you configure the site load.
- We recommended that you configure all the named sites with a load value.



**Note** The configured load is only an estimate. It will only be used for site load balancing. Specifically, it does not prevent APs, or clients from joining or associating.

## Use cases

The site load configuration uses a load factor instead of an absolute number to address different use cases. Although the load factor does not have to match the number of APs in a site, using the AP count often provides a practical approximation of the site load.

Here are the use cases:

- Sites with normal client density and roaming load can use AP count as a good approximation of site load. Examples include cubicle areas in offices and hospitals.

- For sites with high client density and roaming load, configure a load factor greater than the number of APs. For example, when a site has 200 APs, use a load factor of 300 or 400 to accommodate the increased client load. Examples include stadiums, cafeterias, and conference floors.

# Configure site load (CLI)

Assign a relative load value to a site tag using CLI. This helps the system optimize resource allocation and network performance for wireless deployments.

Use this task when you need to set or adjust the load recommendation for a specific site on your wireless controller. The load value influences how resources are distributed across sites.

**Before you begin**

Identify the name of the site tag you want to configure.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure site tag and enter site tag configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless tag site area1
```

**Step 3** Configure the site load.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-site-tag)# load 200
```

The *load* is the estimate of the relative load reserved for the site. Values range between zero to 1000. The default value zero means no load recommendation for the site.

**Step 4** Return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-site-tag)# end
```

The controller uses the configured load value for the specified site tag to optimize network resource allocation for that site

### What to do next

Optionally, verify your changes by displaying the site tag configuration and confirming the new load value.

# Verify enhanced site tag-based load balancing configuration

To view detailed information about a site, use the command:

```
Device# show wireless tag site detailed area1
Site Tag Name        : area1
Description          :
-------------------------------------
AP Profile           : default-ap-profile
Local-site           : Yes
Image Download Profile: default
Fabric AP DHCP Broadcast : Disabled
Fabric Multicast Group IPv4 Address : 239.1.1.1
Site Load            : 200
```

To view the default site tag type for Wireless Network Controller daemon (WNCD) instances, use the command:

```
Device# show wireless loadbalance tag affinity
Tag           Tag type    No of AP's Joined   Wncd Instance
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
area1         SITE TAG                  50         0
area2         SITE TAG                  50         0
area3         SITE TAG                  100        1
area4         SITE TAG                  150        2
```

# Configure policy tag (GUI)

Create and apply a policy tag to group wireless local area network (WLAN) and policy profiles for your network configuration.

Use this task when you need to define or update policy tags for your wireless network devices using the GUI.

**Before you begin**

- Prepare unique names for policy tags using ASCII characters (32 to 126, no leading or trailing spaces).
- Identify the WLAN and policy profiles you plan to map.

## Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags** > **Policy**.

**Step 2** Click **Add** to view the **Add Policy Tag** window.

**Step 3** Enter a name and description for the policy tag. You can use ASCII characters from 32 to 126, but do not include any leading or trailing spaces.

**Step 4** Click **Add** to map WLAN and policy.

**Step 5** Choose the WLAN profile to map with the appropriate policy profile, and click the tick icon.

**Step 6** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Your device has the new policy tag applied. The mapped WLAN and policy profiles are now active based on your configuration.

### What to do next

Verify that connected devices use the updated policy tag and that expected network policies are enforced.

# Configure a policy tag (CLI)

Create and apply a policy tag to group wireless local area network (WLAN) and policy profiles for your network configuration.

Use this task when you need to define or update policy tags for your wireless network devices using the CLI.

**Before you begin**

- Prepare unique names for policy tags using ASCII characters (32 to 126, no leading or trailing spaces).
- Identify the WLAN and policy profiles you plan to map.

## Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure policy tag and enter policy tag configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-policy-tag)# wireless tag policy default-policy-tag
```

**Note**
When performing local web authentication, the clients connected to a controller get disconnected intermittently before session timeout.

**Step 3** Add a description to a policy tag.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-policy-tag)# description "default-policy-tag"
```

**Step 4** Map a remote-LAN profile to a policy profile.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-policy-tag)# remote-lan rr-xyz-rlan-aa policy rr-xyz-rlan-policy1 port-id 2
```

**Step 5** Map a policy profile to a WLAN profile.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan rr-xyz-wlan-aa policy rr-xyz-policy-1
```

**Step 6** Exit policy tag configuration mode, and return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-policy-tag)# end
```

**Step 7** (Optional) Display the configured policy tags.

**Example:**

```
Device# show wireless tag policy summary
```

**Note**
To view detailed information about a policy tag, use the **show wireless tag policy detailed** *policy-tag-name* command.

Your device has the new policy tag applied. The mapped WLAN and policy profiles are now active based on your configuration.

### What to do next

Verify that connected devices use the updated policy tag and the expected network policies are applied.

# Configure wireless RF tag (GUI)

Create and apply an RF tag that defines radio frequency profiles for device groups.

### Procedure

**Step 1** a) Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags** > **RF**.

**Step 2** Click **Add** to view the **Add RF Tag** window.

**Step 3** Enter a name and description for the RF tag. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126 and must not include leading or trailing spaces.

**Step 4** Choose the required **5 GHz Band RF Profile**, **5 GHz Band RF Profile**, and **2.4 GHz Band RF Profile** to be associated with the RF tag.

**Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

The RF tag is created with the specified RF profiles and applied to the device.

# Configure wireless RF tag (CLI)

Assign and configure an radio frequency (RF) tag on your wireless device using the CLI, to manage radio profile settings per tag.

Perform this task to create or modify a wireless RF tag. This allows you to apply specific 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, or 6 GHz RF profiles to associated APs.

### Before you begin

- You can use only two profiles (2.4-GHz and 5-GHz band RF profiles) in an RF tag.
- Ensure you use the same AP tag name you created during the AP configuration task.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Create an RF tag to enter wireless RF tag configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless tag rf rftag1
```

**Step 3** Attach an IEEE 802.11b RF policy to the RF tag.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-rf-tag)# 24ghz-rf-policy rfprof24_1
```

To configure a dot11a policy, use the **5ghz-rf-policy** command.

**Step 4** Add a description for the RF tag.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-rf-tag)# description Test
```

**Step 5** Exit configuration mode to return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-rf-tag)# end
```

**Step 6** Display the available RF tags.

**Example:**

```
Device# show wireless tag rf summary
```

**Step 7** Display detailed information of a particular RF tag.

**Example:**

```
Device# show wireless tag rf detailed rftag1
```

You have configured the RF tag and it is now available for assignment.

#### What to do next

Assign the RF tag to the appropriate AP tag or APs if you have not already done so.

# Attach a policy tag and site tag to an AP (GUI)

Assign a policy tag and site tag to an AP using the GUI.

Use this procedure to associate specific network policies and locations with an AP in your Cisco wireless deployment.

**Before you begin**

Make sure you have the wired MAC address of the AP.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

The **All Access Points** section displays details of all the APs on your network.

**Step 2** To edit the configuration details of an AP, select the row for that AP.

The **Edit AP** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab and **Tags** section, specify the appropriate policy, site, and RF tags that you created on the **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags** window.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

The AP is now associated with the specified policy, site, and optionally RF tags you selected.

# Attach policy tag and site tag to an AP (CLI)

Assign a policy tag and site tag to an AP using the CLI.

Use this procedure to associate specific network policies and locations with an AP in your Cisco wireless deployment.

**Before you begin**

Make sure you have the wired MAC address of the AP.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure a Cisco AP and enters AP profile configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap F866.F267.7DFB
```

**Note**
The *mac-address* should be a wired mac address.

**Step 3** Map a policy tag to the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-tag)# policy-tag rr-xyz-policy-tag
```

**Step 4** Map a site tag to the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-tag)# site-tag rr-xyz-site
```

**Step 5** Associate the RF tag.

**Example:**

**Step 6** Save the configuration, exit configuration mode, and return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-tag)# end
```

**Step 7** (Optional) Display AP details and the tags associated to it.

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap tag summary
```

**Step 8** Display the AP name with tag information.

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap name "ap-name" tag info
```

**Step 9** (Optional) Display the AP name with tag details.

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap name ap-name tag detail
```

The AP is now associated with the specified policy, site, and optionally, RF tags you selected

# Time Management

The date and time of the system on EWC is configured when you run the initial wireless express setup wizard. You can change or configure the time from the GUI menu by choosing **Administration** > **Time**.

You can configure a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server to synchronize date and time, if it was not configured during the wireless express setup. Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) is used as the standard for setting the time zone on the controller. You can also update or add the specific NTP server to EWC.

**Note** EWC APs do not track time when powered off. Therefore, we recommned you to configure NTP to keep a proper time across reboots on the EWC.

# AP Filter

## AP filters

An AP filter is a global tagging mechanism that

- associates APs with specific tag sources based on defined filter criteria
- organizes and applies tag sources in priority order according to configuration, and
- enables flexible control over which tags are assigned to each AP throughout the device discovery and onboarding process.

### Additional reference information

AP filters function similarly to access control lists (ACLs) on the controller and operate at the global level. You can create AP filters based on AP names or other attributes, and incorporate filter criteria into discovery requests. Tag sources for APs can originate from static configuration, the AP filter engine, per-AP Plug and Play (PnP), or default configuration. The AP filter feature determines tag precedence, ensuring the correct tags are assigned according to organizational policies.

You cannot disable the AP filter feature. However, you can configure the priority of tag sources using the **ap filter-priority <priority> <filter-name>** command.

You can specify tag names at the PnP server (similarly to Flex groups or AP groups). During AP discovery and join requests, the AP stores and sends the allocated tag name as part of the request, allowing for automated and dynamic tag assignment.

### Analogy: ticket sorting gate

An AP filter is like a ticket sorting gate at an event venue. Each attendee (AP) presents information at the entrance, and the sorting gate (filter) checks their details to assign them to the right group or area (tag source) based on predefined criteria and priorities. Just as event organizers use sorting gates to efficiently direct attendees, network administrators use AP filters to efficiently assign tags and manage APs in large wireless environments.

# Set tag priority (GUI)

Set the order of priority for tag sources in AP configuration using the GUI

Use this task whenever you want to control which tag source is applied first to your AP configurations in the system. This helps ensure the desired tag assignment behavior.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags** > **AP** > **Tag Source**.

**Step 2** Drag and drop the tag sources to change priorities.

The system saves and applies the new tag source priority for AP configuration.

# Set tag priority

Resolve ambiguity in tag assignment by defining the priority of tag sources for access points.

- 

When an AP joins the wireless controller, it picks up tags from multiple sources. Setting tag source priorities ensures APs use tags from the preferred source. If you do not configure precedence, default priorities are used.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** (Optional) Configure AP tag source priority. Default priorities for Static, Filter, and PnP.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap tag-source-priority 2 source pnp
```

**Step 3** Exit configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

**Step 4** Revalidate AP tag sources. The priorities become active only after this command is run.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap tag-sources revalidate
```

**Note**
If you change the priorities for Filter and PnP, and need to verify the changes, run the **revalidate** command.

The controller applies the new tag source priorities, and APs assign tags based on your configured precedence.

# Create an AP filter (GUI)

Define an AP filter to automatically apply tags to APs that match specific naming patterns.

Use this task to organize and manage access points by creating filter rules based on AP names and assigning tags for policy, site, or RF profiles.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags** > **AP** > **Filter** .

**Step 2** Click **Add** .

**Step 3** In the **Associate Tags to AP** dialog box that is displayed, enter the **Rule Name** , the **AP name regex** , and the **Priority** .

**Step 4** (Optional) You can also choose the policy tag from the **Policy Tag Name** drop-down list, the site tag from the **Site Tag Name** drop-down list and the RF tag from the **RF Tag Name** drop-down list.

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device** .

The AP filter is created. Any AP that matches the specified pattern is automatically assigned the designated tags.

# Create an AP filter (CLI)

Configure an AP filter using the CLI to apply specific policy, RF, and site tags to APs matching a name pattern.

- Identify the regular expression pattern for the AP names you want to filter.
- Determine the appropriate policy, RF, and site tag names to use.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure an AP filter.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap filter filter-1
```

**Step 3** Configure the AP filter based on regular expression.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-filter)# ap name-regex testany
```

For example, if you have named an AP as **ap-lab-12**, then you can configure the filter with a regular expression, such as **ap-lab-\d+** , to match the AP name.

**Step 4** Configure a policy tag for this filter.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-filter)# tag policy pol-tag1
```

**Step 5** Configure an RF tag for this filter.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-filter)# tag rf rf-tag1
```

**Step 6** Configure a site tag for this filter.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-filter)# tag site site1
```

**Step 7** Exit configuration mode to return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-filter)# end
```

The AP filter is configured with the specified criteria and tag associations. APs with names matching your pattern will have the corresponding tags applied.

# Configure filter priority (GUI)

Configure and manage the priority of AP filters to control tag associations on APs.

Perform this task when you need to add a new AP filter or change the priority of an existing AP filter using the GUI.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags** > **AP** > **Filter**.

**Step 2** Choose:

a) To set up a new AP filter, click **Add**. In the **Associate Tags to AP** dialog box that is displayed, enter the **Rule Name**, the **AP name regex** and the **Priority**. Optionally, you can also select the **Policy Tag Name**, the **Site Tag Name** and the **RF Tag Name**. Click **Apply to Device**.

b) To update the priority of an existing AP filter, click on the filter and in the **Edit Tags** dialog box and change the **Priority**. In case the filter is inactive, you cannot configure a priority. Click **Update and Apply to Device**.

The AP filter priority is configured or updated and applied to the specified devices.

# Configure filter priority (CLI)

Configure and manage the priority of AP filters to control tag associations on APs.

Perform this task when you need to add a new AP filter or change the priority of an existing AP filter using the GUI.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure AP filter priority. Valid values range from zero to 1023. The value zero represents the highest priority.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap filter priority 10 filter-name test1
```

This step is necessary to activate the filter.

**Step 3** Exit configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap)# end
```

The AP filter priority is configured or updated and applied to the specified devices.

# Verify AP filter configuration

These **show** commands are used to display tag sources and filters, and their priorities.

To view the tag source priorities, use the command:

```
Device# show ap tag sources

Priority Tag source
--------------------------------
0 Static
1 Filter
2 AP
3 Default
```

To view the available filters, use the command:

```
Device# show ap filter all

Filter Name             regex             Policy Tag               RF Tag              Site
 Tag
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
first                    abcd              pol-tag1                 rf-tag1
site-tag1
test1                   testany                                                        site1

filter1                  testany
```

To view the list of active filters, use the command:

```
Device# show ap filters active

Priority   Filter Name       regex          Policy Tag              RF Tag
Site Tag
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10         test1             testany
site1
```

To view the source of an AP tag, use the command:

```
Device# show ap tag summary

Number of APs: 4

AP Name          AP Mac         Site Tag Name    Policy Tag Name    RF Tag Name
Misconfigured Tag Source
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
AP002A.1034.CA78 002a.1034.ca78 named-site-tag   named-policy-tag   named-rf-tag   No Filter

AP00A2.891C.2480 00a2.891c.2480 named-site-tag   named-policy-tag   named-rf-tag   No Filter
```

```
AP58AC.78DE.9946 58ac.78de.9946 default-site-tag default-policy-tag default-rf-tag No AP
AP0081.C4F4.1F34 0081.c4f4.1f34 default-site-tag default-policy-tag default-rf-tag No Default
```

# Configuring Access Point for Location Configuration

## Location configuration

This feature works in conjunction with the existing tag resolution scheme. The location is considered as a new tag source to the existing system.

A location is a network entity that

- represents a site or physical area where one or more APs are deployed
- associates a specific set of tags—policy, RF, and site tags—with those APs, and
- links each tag set to a collection of Ethernet MAC addresses corresponding to APs at that location.

### Location features and usage

Locations serve as a new tag source within the tag resolution scheme, functioning similarly to static tag sources. During location configuration, you can

- configure a site or location for an AP
- assign a set of tags for the location, and
- add APs to the location.

The combination of unique tags and associated MAC addresses distinguishes each location and enables organized network management.

## Restriction for location configuration

If you configure an AP in one location, you cannot configure the same AP in another location.

## Configure a location for an AP (GUI)

Create and classify a new location for an AP. Apply the appropriate type and client density settings.

Use this task when you need to add a location for AP deployment and associate location-specific policies or tags.

**Before you begin**

When you create local and remote sites in the basic setup workflow, the corresponding policies and tags are created automatically. Tags and policies created in the basic setup cannot be modified using the advanced workflow. Similarly, items created with the advanced workflow cannot be changed in the basic setup.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless Setup** > **Basic**.

**Step 2** On the **Basic Wireless Setup** window, click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter a name and description for the location.

**Step 4** Set the **Location Type** as either *Local* or *Flex*.

**Step 5** Use the slider to set **Client Density** as *Low*, *Typical*, or *High*.

**Step 6** Click **Apply**.

The new location is saved and ready for assignment and policy application.

# Configure a location for an AP (CLI)

Assign and configure a location for an AP using CLI commands.

Use this task to logically organize APs by location for better device management and policy assignment.
**Before you begin**

Confirm the AP is registered and operational.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure a location for an AP.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap location name location1
```

Run the **no** form of this command to remove location for an AP.

**Step 3** Configure tags for the location.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-location)# tag policy policy_tag

Device(config-ap-location)# tag rf rf_tag

Device(config-ap-location)# tag site site_tag
```

**Step 4** Add description to the location.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-location)# location description
```

**Step 5** Return to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-location)# end
```

The AP location is set and the associated tags and a description are configured.

# Add an AP to location (GUI)

Add an AP to a specific location using the GUI.

Use this task to associate APs with a defined location, which enables accurate AP count and location tagging in the GUI. Ensure the AP tag source is set to **location** for correct display—if needed, run the **no ap** *ap-mac* command on the controller to reset the AP tag source to default.

**Before you begin**

- Confirm you have the MAC address of the APs to be added.
- Optionally, prepare a CSV file with AP MAC addresses for bulk upload.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless Setup** > **Basic**.

**Step 2** In the **Basic Wireless Setup** window, click **Add** to configure these options:

- General
- Wireless Networks
- AP Provisioning

**Step 3** In the **AP Provisioning** tab and **Add/Select APs** section, enter the AP MAC address and click the right arrow to add the AP to the associated list.

You can also add a CSV file from your system. Ensure that the CSV has the MAC Address column.

**Step 4** Use the search option in the **Available AP List** to select the APs from the **Selected AP** list and click the right arrow to add the AP to the associated list.

**Step 5** Click **Apply**.

The selected APs are added to the specified location, and location tagging is updated in the GUI.

# Adding an Access Point to the Location (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap location name** *location_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap location name location1` | Configures a location for an access point. |
| **Step 3** | **ap-eth-mac** *ap_ethernet_mac*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-location)# ap-eth-mac 188b.9dbe.6eac` | Adds an access point to the location. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-location)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode.<br>**Note**<br>After adding an AP to a location, the AP may reset automatically to get the new configuration |

# Configuring SNMP in Location Configuration

# SNMP

EWC does not support SNMP and does not implement the SNMP MIBs of Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers, although EWC might respond to some of the object identifiers (OIDs).

# Verify location configuration

To view the summary of AP location configuration, use the command:

```
Device# show ap location summary

Location Name    Description     Policy Tag           RF Tag           Site Tag
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
first            first floor     default-policy-tag   default-rf-tag   default-site-tag
second           second floor    default-policy-tag   default-rf-tag   default-site-tag
```

To view the AP location configuration details for a specific location, use the command:

```
Device# show ap location details first
```

```
Location Name.....................: first
Location description..............: first floor
Policy tag........................: default-policy-tag
Site tag..........................: default-site-tag
RF tag............................: default-rf-tag

Configured list of APs
005b.3400.0af0
005b.3400.0bf0
```

To view the AP tag summary, use the command:

```
Device# show ap tag summary

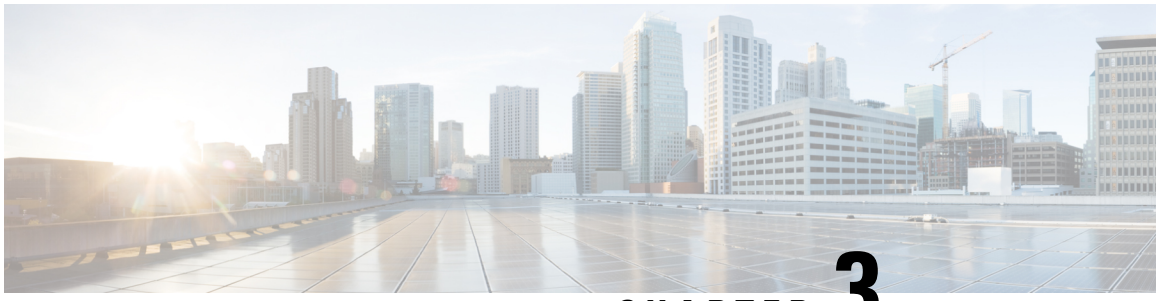
Number of APs: 4
AP Name      AP Mac           Site Tag Name      Policy Tag Name      RF Tag Name
Misconfigured  Tag Source
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Asim_5-1     005b.3400.02f0   default-site-tag   default-policy-tag   default-rf-tag   Yes
            Filter
Asim_5-2     005b.3400.03f0   default-site-tag   default-policy-tag   default-rf-tag   No
            Default
Asim_5-9     005b.3400.0af0   default-site-tag   default-policy-tag   default-rf-tag   No
            Location
Asim_5-10    005b.3400.0bf0   default-site-tag   default-policy-tag   default-rf-tag   No
            Location
```

# Verify location statistics

To view the AP location statistics, use the command:

```
Device# show ap location stats

Location name    APs joined     Clients joined     Clients on 11a     Clients on 11b
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
first             2              0                   3                  4
second            0              0                   0                  0
```



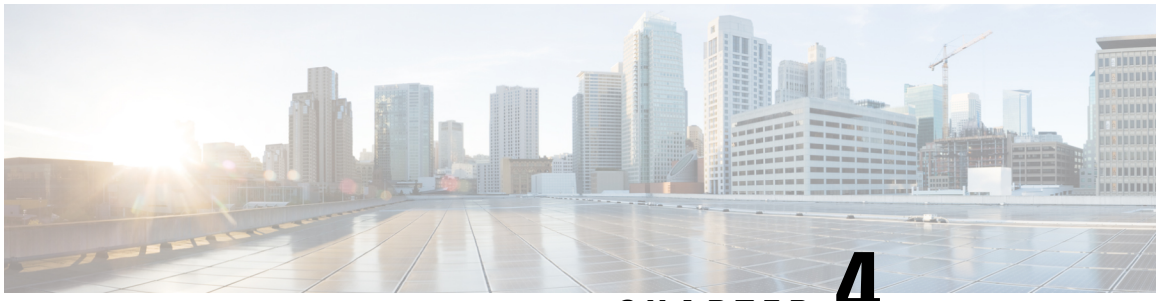
CHAPTER 3

# Smart Licensing Using Policy


• Smart Licensing Using Policy, on page 45


## Smart Licensing Using Policy

The Smart Licensing Using Policy feature is automatically enabled on the controller. This is also the case when you upgrade to this release. By default, your Smart Account and Virtual Account in Cisco Smart Software Manager (CSSM) are enabled for Smart Licensing Using Policy. For more information, see Smart Licensing Using Policy.



CHAPTER 4

# Conversion and Migration


- Conversion and Migration in Embedded Wireless Controller Capable APs , on page 47
- Types of Conversion, on page 47
- Access Point Conversion, on page 48
- Network Conversion, on page 51
- SKU Conversion Scenarios, on page 53
- Converting AireOS Mobility Express Network to Embedded Wireless Controller Network , on page 54


## Conversion and Migration in Embedded Wireless Controller Capable APs

The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points is not supported on any non-802.11ax (non-11ax) based access points (AP). It is only supported on 802.11ax (11ax) based APs. The embedded wireless controller is the only supported form of Cisco Mobility Express on 11ax based APs.

The conversion enables you to convert the 11ax APs running CAPWAP to embedded wireless controller and vice-versa.

## Types of Conversion

The types of conversion scenarios supported are:

- AP Conversion – The following AP conversions are supported:
  - Converting a CAPWAP AP to Embedded Wireless Controller - This conversion is required when you have an AP with a CAPWAP image, and you want to use the AP to deploy a embedded wireless controller based network. In order to do this, you must convert the CAPWAP AP to a embedded wireless controller.
  - Converting an Embedded Wireless Controller AP to a CAPWAP AP – This conversion is required if you want to migrate the APs from an embedded wireless controller network to a non-embedded wireless controller network; or if you do not want the APs to participate in the primary AP election process.
- Network Conversion

- SKU Conversion

**Note** The request for conversion of an EWC non-capable AP, (for example, Cisco Aironet 1830 Series Access Points), to the EWC mode, is now verified and rejected, because the AP cannot be converted.

# Access Point Conversion

This section gives the details of converting a CAPWAP access point to anembedded wireless controller.

## Converting a CAPWAP AP to an Embedded Wireless Controller Capable AP

**Note** Before converting from CAPWAP to embedded wireless controller (EWC), ensure that you upgrade the corresponding AP with the CAPWAP image in Cisco AireOS Release 8.10.105.0. If this upgrade is not performed, the conversion will fail.

To convert an 802.11ax AP with a CAPWAP image to an embedded wireless controller capable image, either download the controller image based on the automated image download process, use the conversion command, or convert through the WebUI.

**Note** When the AP is embedded wireless controller capable, the AP can participate in the primary AP election process. Only if the AP is elected as a primary, can it perform the controller functionality.

## Converting an Embedded Wireless Controller Capable AP to a CAPWAP AP

To convert an 802.11ax AP from the embedded wireless controller network to a non-embedded wireless controller network, set the AP type to CAPWAP using the conversion command or the WebUI, respectively, and then plug it on to the controller network so that it joins the controller. If the image on the controller is different from the image on the AP, a new CAPWAP image is requested from the controller.

## Converting a Single AP to CAPWAP or Embedded Wireless Controller Capable AP (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:** | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `>enable` | |
| **Step 2** | **wireless ewc ap ap-type** *ap-name* {**capwap** \| **ewc**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device#wireless ewc-ap ap ap-type ap-name capwap` | Changes the AP to CAPWAP type or to the embedded controller type. |

### Example

```
wireless ewc-ap ap ap-type ap-name {capwap | ewc}
```

# AP Conversion Deployment Scenarios

1. Standalone 802.11ax CAPWAP AP to start an embedded wireless controller network:

| 802.11ax AP | Embedded Wireless Controller Capable APs | Use-Case | Automatic Conversion |
|---|---|---|---|
| Standalone 802.11ax CAPWAP AP | Network does not exist. | To use a the standalone 802.11ax CAPWAP AP as the first AP for setting up the embedded wireless controller network. | Automatic conversion is not possible.<br>You must download both the controller and the AP image using the supported image transfer protocols with AP command:<br>`ap-type {capwap \| ewc-ap} [<sftp/tftp>://<server ip>/<AP imagepath> <sftp/tftp>://<server ip> Controller ImagePath>]` |

2. Non-802.11ax CAPWAP AP joining an existing embedded wireless controller network:

| CAPWAP AP | Embedded Wireless Controller Capable APs | Use-Case | Automatic Conversion |
|---|---|---|---|
| CAPWAP AP - Neither AireOS-Mobility Express capable, or, embedded wireless controller capable AP, or, AireOS-Mobility Express capable Wave 2 APs. | Existing network | To bring in a CAPWAP AP which is not embedded wireless controller capable, into an existing embedded wireless controller network, to add one more AP to the existing network. | Yes, automatic conversion is possible.<br>This is automatically taken care through the AP Join image download process. |

3. 802.11ax AP joining an existing embedded wireless controller network:

| Embedded Wireless Controller Capable AP | Embedded Wireless Controller Network | Use-Case | Automatic Conversion |
|---|---|---|---|
| 802.11ax AireOS-CAPWAP AP or 802.11ax Catalyst CAPWAP AP or 802.11ax embedded wireless controller capable AP | Existing network | To bring in an 802.11ax AP from an AireOS-CAPWAP network, or, a CAPWAP network, or, from another embedded wireless controller network into an existing embedded wireless controller network, to add one more AP to the existing network. | Yes, automatic conversion takes place.<br>This is automatically taken care through the AP Join image download process.<br>If the AP type is explicitly set to CAPWAP, then the AP continues to act as a CAPWAP AP unless it is converted back again to embedded wireless controller AP using the AP command, Controller command, or the WebUI.<br>The following command is used for conversion as well as AP image download:<br>`ap-type {capwap \| ewc-ap} [<sftp/tftp>://<server ip>/<AP imagepath> <sftp/tftp>://<server ip>Controller ImagePath>]`<br>The following command is used to convert a specific AP to CAPWAP or embedded wireless controller:<br>`wireless ewc-ap ap ap-type` *`ap-name`* `{capwap \| ewc-ap}` |

4. 802.11ax embedded wireless controller AP joining an AireOS CAPWAP network or a CAPWAP network:

| 802.11 AX Embedded Wireless Controller Capable AP | Embedded Wireless Controller Network | Use-Case | Automatic Conversion |
|---|---|---|---|
| 802.11ax AP which was earlier an embedded wireless controller AP | Existing network | To bring an existing 802.11ax embedded wireless controller AP and add it to the CAPWAP network or the AireOS-CAPWAP network to add one more AP to the existing network. | It is recommended to convert the AP to CAPWAP type before bringing it to the CAPWAP network. This conversion can be done manually by using the AP command, the Controller command, Controller WebUI, or by using the DHCP option.<br>After conversion, the normal image download process should be followed.<br>`ap-type {capwap \| ewc-ap} [<sftp/tftp>://<server ip>/<AP imagepath> <sftp/tftp>://<server ip>Controller ImagePath>]`<br>`wireless ewc-ap ap ap-type` *`ap-name`* `{capwap \| ewc-ap}` |

# Network Conversion

This section describes network conversion thorugh the conversion command and the network conversion deployment scenarios.

## Converting the Network (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`>enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **Wireless ewc-ap ap capwap** *primary-controller-name* {**A:B:C:D** \| **X:X:X:X::X**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device#wireless ewc-ap ap capwap wlc-name 10.0.0.0` | Specifies the wireless controller name and IP address to which all the APs currently connected to the embedded wireless controller network should join. |

# Network Conversion Deployment Scenarios

1. Converting an existing centralized CAPWAP network or AireOS CAPWAP network to the embedded wireless controller network

| Existing Network | Embedded Wireless Controller Network | Use-Case | Automatic Conversion |
|---|---|---|---|
| CAPWAP Network: Centralized CAPWAP network or AireOS-CAPWAP network with at least one 802.11ax AP. | Network does not exist. | To convert the existing centralized CAPWAP network or the AireOS-CAPWAP network to theembedded wireless controller network. | No, automatic conversion does not take place.<br>You need to pick one 802.11ax AP to download both the controller and AP image using the supported image transfer protocols with the AP command.<br>`ap-type {capwap \| ewc-ap} <sftp/tftp>://<server ip>/<AP imagepath> <sftp/tftp>://<server ip> Controller ImagePath>]` |

2. Converting an existing embedded wireless controller network to an AireOS CAPWAP network or to a centralized CAPWAP network

| Existing Network | Embedded Wireless Controller Network | Use-Case | Automatic Conversion |
|---|---|---|---|
| Embedded wireless controller network with many APs. | Existing network | To convert the existing embedded wireless controller network to an AireOS-CAPWAP network or to a centralized CAPWAP network. | No automatic conversion.<br>You must convert all the APs or one AP at a time using the controller command to specify the IP address of the controller to which the AP has to join.<br>You can also use the WebUI to convert the selected APs or all the APs by specifying the IP address of the controller to which the AP has to join. |

# SKU Conversion Scenarios

1. 802.11ax Embedded Wireless Controller SKU instead of CAPWAP SKU

| SKU | Network | Use-Case | Automatic Conversion |
|---|---|---|---|
| 802.11ax embedded wireless controller SKU instead of CAPWAP SKU | Network does not exist. | For an order placed for 802.11ax embedded wireless controller SKU instead of CAPWAP SKU, it should be converted to CAPWAP SKU. | No automatic conversion available.<br>You can use **DHCP option 43** to point to the Catalyst 9800 controller so that the APs join the Catalyst 9800 controller as a CAPWAP AP. |

| | SKU | Network | Use-Case | Automatic Conversion |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2. | 802.11ax CAPWAP SKU instead of the embedded wireless controller SKU. | Network does not exist. | For an order placed for the 802.11ax CAPWAP SKU instead of the embedded wireless controller SKU and now would like to convert it to embedded wireless controller SKU. | No automatic conversion available.<br>You should pick one 802.11ax AP to download both the controller and AP image using the supported image transfer protocols with AP command.`ap-type ewc-ap <sftp/tftp>://<server ip>/<AP imagepath> <sftp/tftp>://<server ip> Controller ImagePath>` |

# Converting AireOS Mobility Express Network to Embedded Wireless Controller Network

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Remove the **Next Preferred Master** configuration from the existing AireOS Mobility Express network and save the configuration.

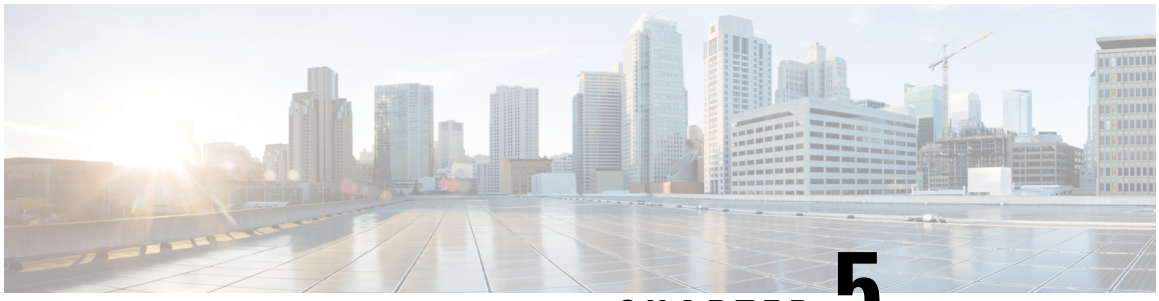
**Step 2** Power down all the APs in the AireOS Mobility Express network including the primary AP.

**Step 3** Power-on the 11 AX AP with the embedded wireless controller SKU so that it launches the controller.

**Step 4** Provision the 11 AX AP with the required configuration (if the box is in Day-0, provision the mandatory configuration to get to Day-1).

**Step 5** Copy, Translate, and Apply all the AireOS Mobility Express configurations to the 11 AX embedded wireless controller AP, add image download configuration.

**Step 6** Power-on all the APs in the AireOS Mobility Express network. All the APs from the earlier AireOS Mobility Express network will join as regular APs in the embedded wireless controller network.



CHAPTER 5

# Best Practices


- Introduction, on page 55


## Introduction

This chapter covers the best practices recommended for configuring a typical Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series wireless infrastructure. The objective is to provide common settings that you can apply to most wireless network implementations. However, not all networks are the same. Therefore, some of the tips might not be applicable to your installation. Always verify them before you perform any changes on a live network.

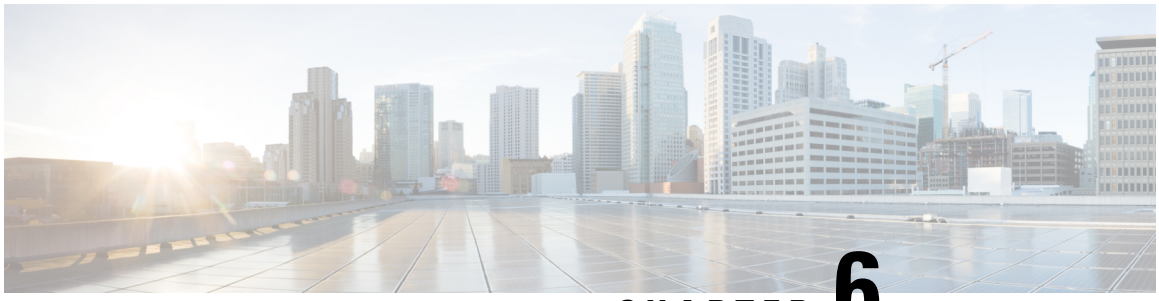
For more information, see Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Configuration Best Practices guide.



PART II

# Lightweight Access Points


- Country Codes, on page 59
- Regulatory Compliance (Rest of the World) for Domain Reduction, on page 65
- AP Priority, on page 67
- 802.11 Parameters for Cisco Access Points, on page 69
- 802.1x Support, on page 83
- Real-Time Access Points Statistics, on page 93
- Access Point Tag Persistency, on page 101
- LED States for Access Points, on page 105
- Secure Data Wipe, on page 109
- CAPWAP Message Aggregation, on page 113
- SuiteB-1X and SuiteB-192-1X Support in FlexConnect Mode for WPA2 and WPA3, on page 117



CHAPTER 6

# Country Codes


- Information About Country Codes, on page 59
- Prerequisites for Configuring Country Codes, on page 59
- Configure country codes (GUI), on page 60
- How to Configure Country Codes , on page 60
- Configuration examples for configuring country codes, on page 62
- Regulatory compliance domain, on page 63


## Information About Country Codes

Controllers and access points are designed for use in many countries with varying regulatory requirements. The radios within the access points are assigned to a specific regulatory domain at the factory (such as -E for Europe), but the country code enables you to specify a particular country of operation within that regulatory domain (such as FR for France or ES for Spain). Configuring a country code ensures that each radio's broadcast frequency bands, interfaces, channels, and transmit power levels are compliant with country-specific regulations.

### Information About Japanese Country Codes

Country codes define the channels that can be used legally in each country. These country codes are available for Japan:

- JP: Allows only –J radios to join the controller
- J2: Allows only –P radios to join the controller
- J3: Uses the –U frequencies, but allows –U, –P, and –Q radios to join the controller
- J4: Allows 2.4G JPQU and 5G PQU to join the controller.

See the Channels and Maximum Power Settings for Cisco Aironet Lightweight Access Points document for the list of channels and power levels supported by access points in the Japanese regulatory domains.

## Prerequisites for Configuring Country Codes

- Generally, you should configure one country code per device; you configure one code that matches the physical location of the device and its access points. You can configure up to 20 country codes per device.

This multiple-country support enables you to manage access points in various countries from a single device.

- When the multiple-country feature is used, all the devices that are going to join the same RF group must be configured with the same set of countries, configured in the same order.
- Access points are capable of using all the available legal frequencies. However, access points are assigned to the frequencies that are supported in their relevant domains.
- The country list configured on the RF group leader determines which channels the members will operate on. This list is independent of which countries have been configured on the RF group members.
- For devices in the Japan regulatory domain, you must have at least one access point with a -J regulatory domain joined to your device.
- You cannot delete any country code using the configuration command **wireless country country-code** if the specified country was configured using the **ap country list** command and vice-versa.

# Configure country codes (GUI)

Set the allowed country codes on wireless APs to comply with local regulations.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points** > **Country**.

**Step 2** On the **Country** page, check the check box for each country where your APs are installed. If you select more than one check box, a message displays that RRM channels and power levels are limited to common channels and power levels.

**Step 3** Click **Apply**.

# How to Configure Country Codes

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **show wireless country supported**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wireless country supported` | Displays a list of all the available country codes. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **ap dot11 24ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz shutdown` | Disables the 802.11b/g network. |
| **Step 5** | **ap dot11 5ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown` | Disables the 802.11a network. |
| **Step 6** | **ap dot11 6ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz shutdown` | Disables the 802.11 6 GHz network. |
| **Step 7** | **ap country** *country_code*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap country IN` | |
| **Step 8** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |
| **Step 9** | **show wireless country channels**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wireless country channels` | Displays the list of available channels for the country codes configured on your device.<br>**Note**<br>Perform Steps 9 through 17 only if you have configured multiple country codes in Step 6. |
| **Step 10** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 11** | **no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown` | Enables the 802.11a network. |
| **Step 12** | **no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown` | Enables the 802.11b/g network. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 13** | **no ap dot11 6ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap dot11 6ghz shutdown` | Enables the 802.11 6GHz network. |
| **Step 14** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |
| **Step 15** | **ap name** *cisco-ap* **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name AP02 shutdown` | Disables the access point.<br>**Note** Ensure that you disable only the access point for which you are configuring country codes. |
| **Step 16** | **ap name** *cisco-ap* **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name AP02 no shutdown` | Enables the access point. |

# Configuration examples for configuring country codes

## View channel list for country codes

These examples show how to display the list of available channels for the country codes on your devicedevice:

```
DeviceDevice# show wireless country channels

Configured Country.....................: US - United States
KEY: * = Channel is legal in this country and may be configured manually.
     A = Channel is the Auto-RF default in this country.
     . = Channel is not legal in this country.
     C = Channel has been configured for use by Auto-RF.
     x = Channel is available to be configured for use by Auto-RF.
  (-,-) = (indoor, outdoor) regulatory domain allowed by this country.
-----------------:+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-
802.11bg         :
Channels         :                 1 1 1 1 1
                  1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4
-----------------:+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-
(-A ,-AB ) US    : A * * * * A * * * * A . . .
Auto-RF          : . . . . . . . . . . . . . .
-----------------:+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-
802.11a          :                       1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
Channels         :3 3 3 4 4 4 4 4 5 5 6 6 0 0 0 1 1 2 2 2 3 3 4 4 5 5 6 6
                  4 6 8 0 2 4 6 8 2 6 0 4 0 4 8 2 6 0 4 8 2 6 0 9 3 7 1 5
-----------------:+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-
(-A ,-AB ) US    : . A . A . A . A A A A A * * * * * . . . * * * A A A A*
Auto-RF          : . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .
-----------------:+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-
4.9GHz 802.11a   :
Channels         :                 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2
```

```
                  1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6
-----------------:+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-
US (-A ,-AB )     : * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * A * * * * * A
Auto-RF           : . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Device# show wireless country configured

Configured Country..... US - United States
Configured Country Codes
US - United States 802.11a Indoor,Outdoor/ 802.11b Indoor,Outdoor/ 802.11g Indoor,Outdoor
```

# Regulatory compliance domain

A regulatory domain is a set of country-specific rules that

- are designed for use in multiple countries with varying regulatory requirements
- enables you to specify a particular country of operation, such as FR for France or ES for Spain, and
- ensures that each radio's broadcast frequency bands, interfaces, channels, and transmit power levels comply with country-specific regulations.

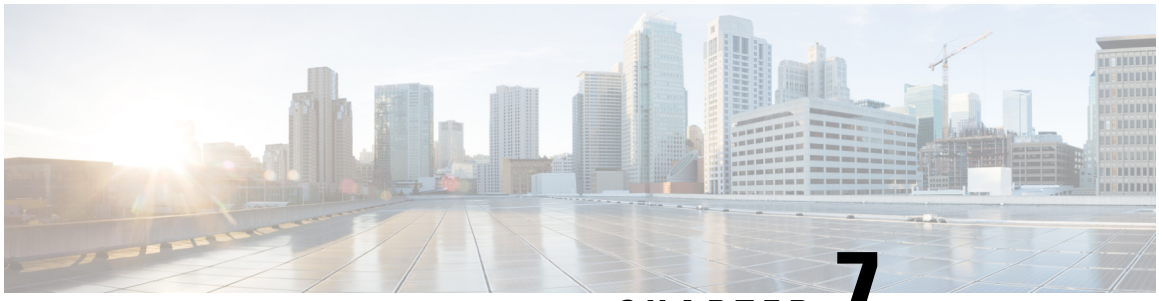
This feature reduces the number of regulatory domains by updating the pre-provisioned domains workflow. It determines the regulatory domain at runtime for each country code. The new Rest of World (RoW) domain includes the nine earlier domains. Each AP selects its regulatory domain from these options by referencing the regulated power table and allowed radio channels.

The transmission power value in the TPC IE of the beacon may differ from the AP's transmission power value, value by up to 2 dB. You can check this difference by using the **show controllers dot11radio** command. The maximum allowed deviation in the TPC IE of the beacon is two dB.

# Global country-level domains

This topic lists detailed information about the power table and supported channels of countries in the global domain for 2.4GHz, 5GHz, 6GHz, and Rest of World domains.

- Use this information to determine the allowed configurations for each region.
- For additional technical details and Rest of World/6GHz support, see the Cisco Catalyst 9100AX Access Points Technical Reference.



CHAPTER 7

# Regulatory Compliance (Rest of the World) for Domain Reduction


- Regulatory compliance domain, on page 65


## Regulatory compliance domain

A regulatory domain is a set of country-specific rules that

- are designed for use in multiple countries with varying regulatory requirements
- enables you to specify a particular country of operation, such as FR for France or ES for Spain, and
- ensures that each radio's broadcast frequency bands, interfaces, channels, and transmit power levels comply with country-specific regulations.

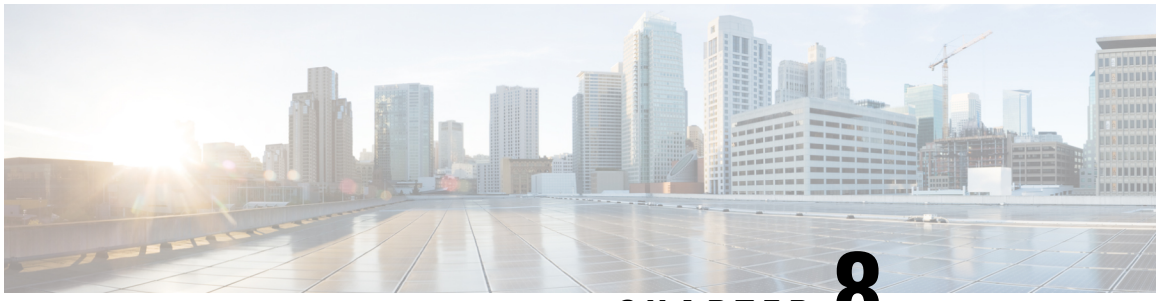
This feature reduces the number of regulatory domains by updating the pre-provisioned domains workflow. It determines the regulatory domain at runtime for each country code. The new Rest of World (RoW) domain includes the nine earlier domains. Each AP selects its regulatory domain from these options by referencing the regulated power table and allowed radio channels.

The transmission power value in the TPC IE of the beacon may differ from the AP's transmission power value, value by up to 2 dB. You can check this difference by using the **show controllers dot11radio** command. The maximum allowed deviation in the TPC IE of the beacon is two dB.

## Global country-level domains

This topic lists detailed information about the power table and supported channels of countries in the global domain for 2.4GHz, 5GHz, 6GHz, and Rest of World domains.

- Use this information to determine the allowed configurations for each region.
- For additional technical details and Rest of World/6GHz support, see the Cisco Catalyst 9100AX Access Points Technical Reference.



CHAPTER 8

# AP Priority


- Failover priority for APs, on page 67
- Guidelines to configure AP failover priority, on page 67
- Set AP priority (GUI), on page 67
- Set AP priority (CLI), on page 68


## Failover priority for APs

A failover priority for APs is a configuration setting that:

- assigns priority levels to APs for controller association
- determines which APs will be favored when controller capacity is limited, and
- allows administrators to ensure high-priority devices maintain connectivity during failover scenarios

Each controller supports a set number of AP connections. If you deploy multiple controllers on the network and one fails, your APs can automatically connect to another available controller.

## Guidelines to configure AP failover priority

Use these guidelines to configure AP failover priority:

- Failover priority does not impact normal wireless operation. It only applies when AP connection requests exceed the controller's available capacity.
- The system checks AP priority as each AP connects. When capacity is full, or the primary controller fails, APs connect to the secondary controller.
- Enable failover priority and set priority levels for APs that need them.
- By default, all APs have priority level one (lowest). Assign higher levels only where needed.

## Set AP priority (GUI)

Assign a failover priority to an AP to ensure high availability in the event of a controller failure.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.
**Step 2** Click the Access Point.
**Step 3** In the **Edit AP** dialog box, go to the **High Availability** tab.
**Step 4** Select the priority from the **AP failover priority** drop-down list.
**Step 5** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.

# Set AP priority (CLI)

Assign a priority level to an AP to determine the order in which APs connect and operate using commands.



**Note** Priority of APs ranges from one to four, with four being the highest.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Specify the priority of an AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name AP44d3.ca52.48b5 priority 1
```

**Step 2** Display common information for all APs.

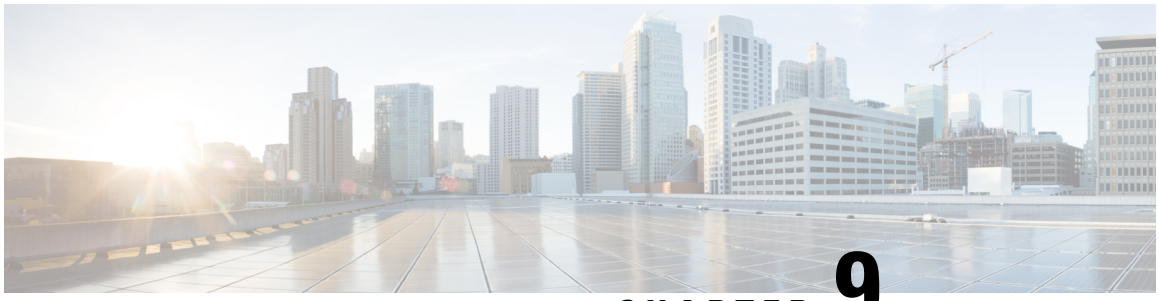
**Example:**

```
Device# show ap config general
```

**Step 3** Display the configuration of a particular AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap name ap-name AP44d3.ca52.48b5 config general
```



CHAPTER 9

# 802.11 Parameters for Cisco Access Points


- 2.4-GHz radio support, on page 69
- 5-GHz radio support, on page 71
- Dual-band radios in Cisco AP models, on page 73
- Configure default XOR radio support (CLI), on page 74
- Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (GUI), on page 76
- Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (CLI), on page 77
- Verify XOR radio support, on page 78
- Receiver only Dual-Band radio support, on page 79
- Configure client steering (CLI), on page 81
- Verify Cisco APs with dual-band radios, on page 82


# 2.4-GHz radio support

## Configure 2.4-GHz radio support for the specified slot number (CLI)

Enable and configure 2.4-GHz radio features for a specified AP slot using commands.

**Note** The term **802.11b radio** or **2.4-GHz radio** are used interchangeably.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# enable
```

**Step 2** Enable Spectrum Intelligence (SI) for the dedicated 2.4-GHz radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 SI
```

For more information, see the *Spectrum Intelligence* section in this guide. In this context, ***0*** refers to the Slot ID.

**Step 3** Configure 802.11b antenna hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 antenna {ext-ant-gain antenna_gain_value |
selection [ internal | external ]}
```

- **ext-ant-gain** : configures the 802.11b external antenna gain. *antenna_gain_value* : the external antenna gain value, specified in multiples of 0.5 dBi units. The valid range is from zero to 40, with a maximum gain of 20 dBi.
- **selection** : configures the 802.11b antenna to use either the internal or external option.

**Note**

- For APs that support self-identifying antennas (SIA), the gain depends on the antenna and not the AP model. The AP automatically learns the gain, so no controller configuration is necessary.
- For APs that do not support SIA, the AP sends the antenna gain in the configuration payload. The default antenna gain depends on the AP model.
- Cisco Catalyst 9120E and 9130E APs support self-identifying antennas (SIA). Cisco Catalyst 9115E APs do not support SIA antennas. Although Cisco Catalyst 9115E APs work with SIA antennas, they do not automatically detect SIA antennas or apply the correct external gain.

**Step 4** Configure beamforming for the 2.4-GHz radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 beamforming
```

**Step 5** Configure advanced 802.11 channel assignment parameters for the 2.4-GHz radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 channel {channel_number | auto}
```

**Step 6** Enable CleanAir for 802.11b radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 cleanair
```

**Step 7** Configure 802.11n antenna for 2.4-GHz radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 dot11n antenna {A | B | C | D}
```

Here, are the descriptions of various options:

**A** : A is the antenna port A.

**B** : B is the antenna port B.

**C** : C is the antenna port C.

**D** : D is the antenna port D.

**Step 8** Disable 802.11b radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 shutdown
```

**Step 9** Configure transmit power level for 802.11b radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 txpower {tx_power_level | auto}
```

- *tx_power_level* : is the transmit power level in dBm. The valid range is from one to eight.
- **auto** : enables auto-RF.

# 5-GHz radio support

## Configure 5-GHz radio support for the specified slot number (CLI)

Enable and configure 5-GHz radio features on a selected AP slot.

**Note** The term **802.11a radio** or **5-GHz radio** are used interchangeably in this document.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enable Spectrum Intelligence (SI) for the dedicated 5-GHz radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 SI
```

Here, ***1*** refers to the Slot ID.

**Step 2** Configure external antenna gain for 802.11a radios for a specific AP hosted on slot 1.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 antenna ext-ant-gain antenna_gain_value
```

*antenna_gain_value* : refers to the external antenna gain value in multiples of .5 dBi units. The valid range is from zero to 40, with the maximum gain of 20 dBi.

**Note**

- For APs supporting self-identifying antennas (SIA), the gain depends on the antenna, not on the AP model. The AP learns the gain, so controller configuration is not required.
- For APs that do not support SIA, the AP sends the antenna gain in the configuration payload. The default antenna gain depends on the AP model.
- Cisco Catalyst 9120E and 9130E APs support self-identifying antennas (SIA). Cisco Catalyst 9115E APs do not support SIA antennas. Although Cisco Catalyst 9115E APs work with SIA antennas, these APs do not automatically detect SIA antennas or add the correct external gain.

**Step 3** Configure the antenna mode for 802.11a radios for a specific AP hosted on slot 1.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 antenna mode {omni | sectorA | sectorB}
```

**Step 4** Configure the antenna selection for 802.11a radios for a specific AP hosted on slot 1.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 antenna selection {internal | external}
```

**Step 5** Configure beamforming for the 5-GHz radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 beamforming
```

**Step 6** Configure advanced 802.11 channel assignment parameters for the 5-GHz radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 channel {channel_number | auto | width [20 |
 40 | 80 | 160]}
```

Here,

*channel_number* : refers to the channel number. The valid range is from one to 173.

**Step 7** Enable CleanAir for 802.11a radio hosted on slot 1 for a given or specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 cleanair
```

**Step 8** Configure 802.11n for 5-GHz radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 dot11n antenna {A | B | C | D}
```

Here, are the descriptions of various options:

**A** : A is the antenna port A.

**B** : B is the antenna port B.

**C** : C is the antenna port C.

**D** : D is the antenna port D.

Change the channel hosted on slot 1 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 rrm channel 2
```

Here, *channel*: refers to the new channel created using 802.11h channel announcement. The valid range is from one to 173, provided 173 is a valid channel in the country where the AP is deployed.

**Step 9** Disable 802.11a radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific AP and configure 802.11a radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 shutdown
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 txpower {tx_power_level | auto}
```

- *tx_power_level* : is the transmit power level in dBm. The valid range is from one to eight.
- **auto** : enables auto-RF.

# Dual-band radios in Cisco AP models

A dual-band radio is a device category that

- offers connectivity on more than one frequency band (such as 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz)
- provides flexibility in network configuration, and
- is used in multiple Cisco AP models like the 2800, 3800, 4800, and 9120 series.

### Feature history table

***Table 3: Feature history table for dual-band radios in Cisco AP models***

| Feature name | Release information | Feature description |
|---|---|---|
| Dual-band (XOR) radio support | Cisco IOS XE 16.10.1 | The Dual-band (XOR) radio support offers the ability to serve 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz bands or passively monitor both the bands on the same AP.<br>These APs can be configured to serve clients in 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands, or serially scan both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands on the flexible radio while the main 5 GHz radio serves clients. |

### Key features of dual-band radios in Cisco APs

The XOR radio support can be steered manually or automatically.

- Manual steering of a band on a radio: The band on the XOR radio can only be changed manually.
- Automatic client and band steering on the radios is managed by the Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) feature that monitors and changes the band configurations as per site requirements.

### Client steering

When a radio moves between bands (from 2.4 GHz to 5 GHz and vice versa), clients need to be steered to get an optimal distribution across radios. When an AP has two radios in the 5 GHz band, client steering algorithms contained in the FRA algorithms are used to steer a client between the same band co-resident radios

### Cisco APs and dual-band radios

Cisco 2800, 3800, 4800, and 9120 series AP models are equipped with dual-band (XOR) radios. These models have

- radios that operate on either 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz bands, or
- the ability to assively monitor both the bands on the same AP.

These APs can be configured to serve clients in 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands, or serially scan both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands on the flexible radio while the main 5 GHz radio serves clients.

Cisco AP models up to the Cisco 9120 APs are designed to support dual 5 GHz band operations with the *i* model supporting a dedicated Macro or Micro architecture and the *e* and *p* models supporting Macro or Macro. The Cisco 9130AXI APs support dual 5 GHz operations as Macro or Micro cell.

# Configure default XOR radio support (CLI)

Complete this task to configure the basic settings for XOR radio support.

### Before you begin

**Note** The default radio points to the XOR radio hosted on slot 0.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enable the priviledged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device> enable
```

**Step 2** Configure the 802.11 dual-band external antenna gain on the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band antenna ext-ant-gain antenna_gain_value
```

Enter external antenna gain value in multiple of .5 dBi units (that is, an integer value 4 means 4 x 0.5 = 2 dBi of gain).

**Step 3** Shut down the default dual-band radio.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band shutdown
```

Use the **no** form of the command to enable the radio.

**Step 4** Switch to the client-serving mode of the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band role manual client-serving
```

**Step 5** Switch to the 2.4 GHz radio band.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band band 24ghz
```

The basic configuration of the XOR radio is completed.

### Example

```
Device> enable
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band antenna ext-ant-gain 2
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band shutdown
Device# Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band role manual client-serving
Device# Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band band 24ghz
```

### What to do next

Continue with the configuration steps listed in the "Configure advanced settings" to complete the configuration.

## Configure advanced settings (CLI)

Complete this task to configure the advanced settings for XOR radio support, such as, transmit power, channel, channel width, CleanAir settings and so on.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Configure the transmit power for the radio on the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band txpower {transmit_power_level | auto}
```

**Note**
When an FRA-capable radio (slot 0 on 9120 AP[for instance]) is set to Auto, you cannot configure static channel and Txpower on this radio.

If you want to configure static channel and Txpower on this radio, you will need to change the radio role to Manual Client-Serving mode.

**Step 2** Configure the channel number for the dual band.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band channel 40
```

The range of the *channel-number* is from 1 to 173.

**Step 3** (Optional) Enable the auto channel assignment for the dual-band.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band channel auto
```

**Step 4** Configure the channel width for the dual band.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band channel width {20 MHz | 40 MHz | 80 MHz | 160 MHz}
```

**Step 5** Enable the Cisco CleanAir management on the dual-band radio.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band cleanair
```

**Step 6** Configure a band for the Cisco CleanAir feature.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name [no] dot11 dual-band cleanair band 5 GHz
```

Selects a band for the Cisco CleanAir feature.

Use the **no** form of this command to disable the Cisco CleanAir feature.

**Step 7** Configure the 802.11n dual-band antenna and antenna ports selection for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band dot11n antenna {A | B | C | D}
```

Here, A, B, C, and D are the antenna ports.

---

The configuration of the additional features for dual-band (XOR) radios are completed.

**Example**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band txpower auto
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band channel 40
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band channel width 40 MHz
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band cleanair
Device# ap name ap-name [no] dot11 dual-band cleanair band 5 GHz
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band dot11n antenna A
```

# Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (GUI)

Complete this task to configure XOR radio for the specified slot number.

**Procedure**

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** In the **Dual-Band Radios** section, select the AP for which you want to configure dual-band radios.

The AP name, MAC address, CleanAir capability and slot information for the AP are displayed. If the Hyperlocation method is HALO, it displays the antenna PID and antenna design specifics.

**Step 3** Click **Configure**.

**Step 4** In the **General** tab, set the **Admin Status** as required.

**Step 5** Set the **CleanAir Admin Status** field to Enable or Disable.

**Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

---

The XOR radio support for the specified slot number has been configured.

# Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (CLI)

Complete this task to configure XOR radio for a specified slot number.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enable the priviledged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device> enable
```

**Step 2** Configure dual-band antenna for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 antenna ext-ant-gain
external_antenna_gain_value
```

Here, *external_antenna_gain_value* is the external antenna gain value in multiples of .5 dBi unit. The range is from zero to 40.

**Note**

- For APs supporting self-identifying antennas (SIA), the gain depends on the antenna, and not on the AP model. The gain is learned by the AP and there is no need for controller configuration.
- For APs that do not support SIA, the APs send the antenna gain in the configuration payload, where the default antenna gain depends on the AP model.

**Step 3** Configure the current band for XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 band {24ghz | 5ghz}
```

**Step 4** Configures dual-band channel for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 channel {channel-number | auto | width [160
 | 20 | 40 | 80]}
```

The range of the *channel_number* is from one to 165.

**Step 5** Enable the Cisco CleanAir feature for dual-band radios hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 cleanair band {24Ghz | 5ghz}
```

**Step 6** Configure 802.11n dual-band parameters hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 dot11n antenna {A | B | C | D}
```

Here are the antenna configurations.

**A** : Enables antenna port A.

**B** : Enables antenna port B.

**C** : Enables antenna port C.

**D** : Enables antenna port D.

**Step 7** Configure dual-band role for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 role {auto | manual [client-serving | monitor]}
```

Here are the dual-band roles.

- **auto** : refers to the automatic radio role selection.
- **manual** : refers to the manual radio role selection.

**Step 8** Disable dual-band radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name [no] dot11 dual-band slot 0 shutdown
```

Use the **no** form of this command to enable the dual-band radio.

**Step 9** Configure dual-band transmit power for XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 txpower {tx-power-level | auto}
```

Here,

- *tx_power_level* : is the transmit power level in dBm. The range is from 1 to 8.
- **auto** : enables auto-RF.

---

The XOR radio for the specified slot number is configured.

**Example**

```
Device> enable
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 antenna ext-ant-gain 2
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 band 24ghz
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 channel 3
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 cleanair band 24Ghz
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 dot11n antenna A
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 [no] dot11 dual-band slot 0 shutdown
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 txpower 2
```

# Verify XOR radio support

To verify the XOR radio support parameters, use these **show** commands:

### Verify auto-RF information

To display the auto-RF information for a Cisco AP, use the **show ap name** *ap-name* **auto-rf dot11 dual-band** command.

```
Device# show ap name cisco-ap-name auto-rf dot11 dual-band
```

### Verify the list of BSSIDs

To display the list of BSSIDs for a Cisco AP, use the **show ap name** *ap-name* **wlan dot11 dual-band** command.

# Receiver only Dual-Band radio support

## Receiver only dual-band radio support

A receiver only dual-band radio is a WLAN radio type that

- configures the dual-band Rx-only radio features for an AP with dual-band radios
- serves dedicated functions such as analytics, hyperlocation, wireless security monitoring, and BLE Angle of Arrival (AoA), and
- continually remains in monitor mode, preventing any *tx-rx* configuration for client or data traffic.

## Configure receiver only Dual-Band parameters for APs

### Enable CleanAir with receiver Only dual-band radio on a Cisco AP (GUI)

Enable CleanAir functionality on a Cisco AP that is configured with a receiver only dual-band radio through the GUI.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** In the **Dual-Band Radios** settings, click the AP for which you want to configure the dual-band radios.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enable the **CleanAir** toggle button.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

### Enabling CleanAir with receiver only dual-band radio on a Cisco AP (CLI)

Enable CleanAir spectrum analysis for a dual-band receiver-only radio on a specified Cisco AP.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# enable
```

**Step 2** Enable CleanAir with receiver only (Rx-only) dual-band radio on a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 rx-dual-band slot 2 cleanair band 24Ghz
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 [no] dot11 rx-dual-band slot 2 cleanair band 24Ghz
```

Here, 2 refers to the slot ID. Use the ***no*** form of this command to disable CleanAir.

## Disable receiver only dual-band radio on a Cisco AP (GUI)

Prevent the AP from operating a receiver-only dual-band radio by using the GUI.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** In the **Dual-Band Radios** settings, click the AP for which you want to configure the dual-band radios.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, disable the **CleanAir Status** toggle button.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

## Disable receiver only dual-band radio on a Cisco AP (CLI)

Disable the receiver only dual-band radio function on a specific Cisco AP using commands.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# enable
```

**Step 2** Disable receiver only dual-band radio on a specific Cisco AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 rx-dual-band slot 2 shutdown
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 [no] dot11 rx-dual-band slot 2 shutdown
```

Here, 2 refers to the slot ID. Use the ***no*** form of this command to enable receiver only dual-band radio.

# Configure client steering (CLI)

Enable and customize client steering on a wireless device to optimize client distribution between macro (5 GHz) and micro (2.4 GHz) radios, improving wireless network performance and load balancing.

### Before you begin

Enable Cisco CleanAir on the corresponding dual-band radio.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Configure the macro-micro client load–balancing window for a set number of clients.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold balancing-window
number-of-clients(0-65535) 10
```

**Step 2** Configure the macro-micro client parameters for a minimum client count for transition.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold client count
number-of-clients(0-65535) 10
```

**Step 3** Configure the macro-to-micro transition RSSI.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold macro-to-micro RSSI-in-dBm(
 –128—0) -100
```

**Step 4** Configure the micro–to–macro transition RSSI.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold micro-to-macro
RSSI-in-dBm(–128—0) -110
```

**Step 5** Configure the number of probe cycles to be suppressed.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression aggressiveness
number-of-cycles(–128—0) -110
```

**Step 6** Configure the macro-to-micro probe in RSSI.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression hysteresis RSSI-in-dBm -5
```

The range is between –6 to –3.

**Step 7** Enable probe suppression mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression probe-only
```

**Step 8** Enable probe and single authentication suppression mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression probe-auth
```

**Step 9** Display the wireless client steering information.

**Example:**

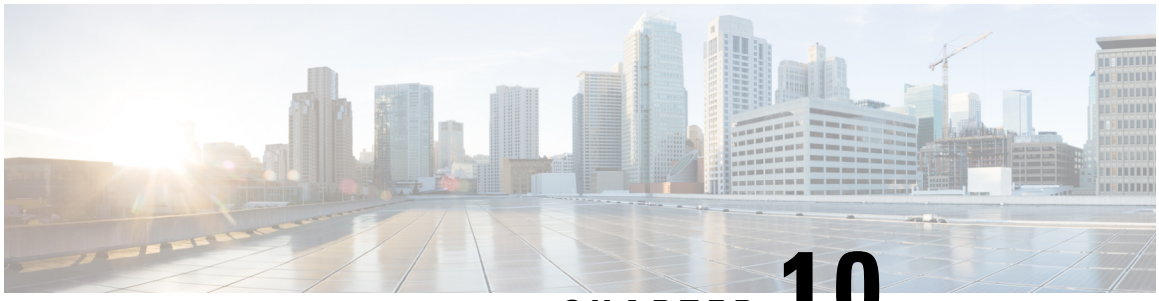
```
Device# show wireless client steering
```

# Verify Cisco APs with dual-band radios

To verify the APs with dual-band radios, use the command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 dual-band summary


AP Name Subband Radio      Mac   Status Channel Power Level Slot ID Mode
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
4800   All 3890.a5e6.f360 Enabled (40)* *1/8     (22 dBm)      0   Sensor
4800   All 3890.a5e6.f360 Enabled N/A    N/A       2               Monitor
```



CHAPTER 10

# 802.1x Support


- 802.1X authentication, on page 83
- 802.1X authentication limitations, on page 84
- Topology, on page 85
- Configuring 802.1X authentication type and LSC AP authentication type (GUI), on page 85
- Configure 802.1X authentication type and LSC AP authentication type (CLI), on page 86
- Enable 802.1X on the switch port (CLI), on page 88
- Verify 802.1X on the switch port, on page 90
- Verify the authentication type, on page 90


# 802.1X authentication

IEEE 802.1X port-based authentication is a network security protocol that

- prevents unauthorized devices from accessing the network
- utilizes EAP authentication models to ensure secure communication, and
- integrates with devices like routers, switches, and access points based on configuration.

### Feature history

*Table 4: Feature history for 802.1X authentication*

| Feature name | Release information | Feature description |
|---|---|---|
| 802.1X authentication | Cisco IOS XE 16.9.1 | IEEE 802.1X port-based authentication is a network security protocol that utilizes EAP authentication models to ensure secure communication, and integrates with devices like routers, switches, and access points based on configuration. |
| Access ports with dual port authentication | Cisco IOS XE 17.17.1 | The access ports with dual port authentication feature supports dual Ethernet ports on Cisco Catalyst 9136 APs and Cisco Wireless 9178I APs. |

Currently, Cisco Wave 2 and Wi-Fi 6 (802.11AX) APs support 802.1X authentication with switch ports for EAP-FAST, EAP-TLS, and EAP-PEAP methods. Configuration and credential provision to APs can be done through the controller.



**Note** If the AP is dot1x EAP-FAST, upon reboot, it should perform an anonymous PAC provision using ADH cipher suites to establish an authenticated tunnel. Authentication will fail if RADIUS servers do not support ADH cipher suites.

## EAP-FAST protocol

In the EAP-FAST protocol developed by Cisco, to establish a secured TLS tunnel with RADIUS, the AP requires a strong shared key (PAC), provided via in-band or manual out-band provisioning.

- The EAP-FAST type configuration requires 802.1x credentials configuration for AP, since AP will use EAP-FAST with MSCHAP Version 2 method.
- Cisco 7925 phones do not support Local EAP.
- In Cisco Wave 2 APs, for 802.1x authentication using EAP-FAST after PAC provisioning (caused by the initial connection or after AP reload), ensure that you configure the switch port to trigger re-authentication using **authentication timer restart** *num* or **authentication timer reauthenticate** *num*.

## EAP-TLS/EAP-PEAP Protocol

The EAP-TLS protocol or EAP-PEAP protocol provides certificate based mutual EAP authentication.

In EAP-TLS, both the server and the client side certificates are required, where the secured shared key is derived for the particular session to encrypt or decrypt data. In EAP-PEAP, only the server-side certificate is required, and the client authenticates using a password-based protocol in a secured channel.

The EAP-PEAP type configuration requires Dot1x credentials configuration for the AP, and the AP also needs to go through LSC provisioning. AP uses the PEAP protocol with MSCHAP Version 2 method.

# 802.1X authentication limitations

The 802.1X authentication limitations are:

- 802.1X is not supported on dynamic ports or Ethernet Channel ports.
- 802.1X is not supported in a mesh AP scenario.
- There is no recovery from the embedded controller on credential mismatch or the expiry/invalidity of the certificate on AP. The 802.1X authentication has to be disabled on the switch port to connect the AP back to fix the configurations.
- There are no certificate revocation checks implemented on the certificates installed in AP.
- You can provision only one Locally Significant Certificate (LSC) for the AP. Use the same certificate for both CAPWAP DTLS session establishment and 802.1X authentication with the switch. If you disable the global LSC configuration on the controller, the AP deletes the already provisioned LSC.

- If the AP has clear configurations applied, it will lose the 802.1X EAP Type configuration and the LSC Certificates. The AP should undergo the staging process again if 802.1X is required.
- 802.1X for trunk port APs on multi-host authentication mode is supported. Network Edge Authentication Topology (NEAT) is not supported on COS APs.

# Topology

This topic explains how an AP acts as an 802.1X supplicant and how a switch uses a RADIUS server that supports EAP-FAST, EAP-TLS, and EAP-PEAP to authenticate it.

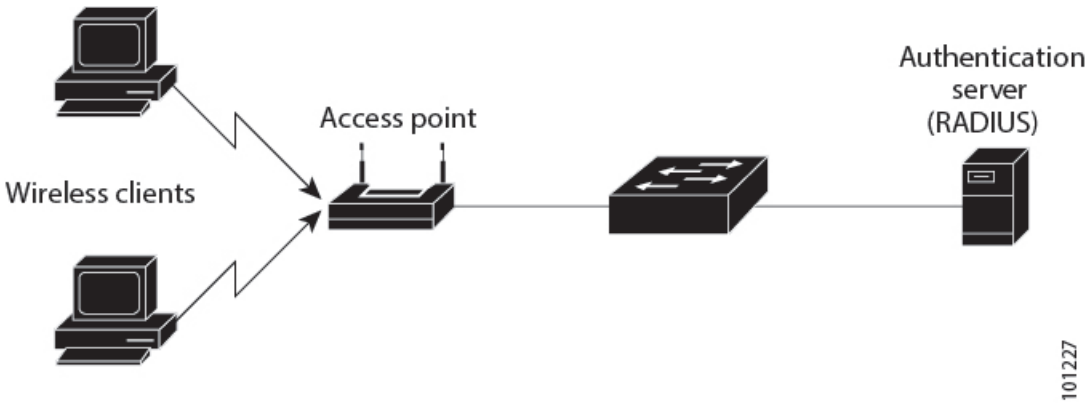
### Summary

When dot1x authentication is enabled on a switch port, the connected device must authenticate itself to send and receive data other than 802.1X traffic.

- For EAP-FAST authentication, configure the RADIUS server's credentials at the controller and pass them to the AP through a configuration update request.
- For EAP-TLS or EAP-PEAP, the APs use certificates provided by the local CA server.

### Workflow

***Figure 2: Topology for 802.1X authentication***




# Configuring 802.1X authentication type and LSC AP authentication type (GUI)

Complete this task to configure 802.1X authentication type and LSC AP authentication type.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **AP Join**.

**Step 2** On the **AP Join Profile** page, click **Add**.

The **Add AP Join Profile** page is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **AP** > **General** tab, navigate to **AP EAP Auth Configuration**.

**Step 4** From the **EAP Type** drop-down list, choose the EAP type as **EAP-FAST**, **EAP-TLS**, or **EAP-PEAP** to configure the dot1x authentication type.

**Step 5** From the **AP Authorization Type** drop-down list, choose either **CAPWAP DTLS +** or **CAPWAP DTLS**.

**Step 6** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

The 802.1X authentication type and LSC AP authentication type are configured.

# Configure 802.1X authentication type and LSC AP authentication type (CLI)

Complete this task to configure 802.1X authentication type and LSC AP authentication type.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Specify a profile name.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name
```

**Step 3** Configure the dot1x authentication type.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x {max-sessions | username | eap-type | lsc-ap-auth-state}
```

Here

- **max-sessions**: Configures the maximum 802.1X sessions initiated per AP.
- **username**: Configures the 802.1X username for all APs.
- **eap-type:**: Configures the dot1x authentication type with the switch port.
- **lsc-ap-auth-state**: Configures the LSC authentication state on the AP.

**Step 4** Configure the dot1x authentication type as EAP-FAST, EAP-TLS, or EAP-PEAP.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x eap-type {EAP-FAST | EAP-TLS | EAP-PEAP}
```

**Step 5** Configure the LSC authentication state on the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x lsc-ap-auth-state {CAPWAP-DTLS | Dot1x-port-auth | Both}
```

Here

- **CAPWAP-DTLS**: Uses LSC only for CAPWAP DTLS.
- **Dot1x-port-auth**: Uses LSC only for dot1x authentication with port.
- **Both**: Uses LSC for both CAPWAP-DTLS and Dot1x authentication with port.

**Step 6** Exit the AP profile configuration mode and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# end
```

---

The 802.1X authentication type and LSC AP authentication type have been configured.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name
Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x eap-type
Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x eap-type EAP-TLS
Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x lsc-ap-auth-state Dot1x-port-auth
Device(config-ap-profile)# end
```

# Configure the 802.1X username and password (CLI)

Complete these steps to configure the 802.1X username and password.

**Procedure**

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **AP Join**.

**Step 2** On the **AP Join** page, click the name of the AP Join profile or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Step 3** Click the **Management** tab and then click **Credentials**.

**Step 4** Enter the local username, password details, and choose the appropriate local password type.

**Step 5** Enter 802.1X username and password details.

**Step 6** Choose the appropriate 802.1X password type.

**Step 7** Enter the time in seconds after which the session should expire.

**Step 8** Enable local credentials or 802.1X credentials, or both, as required.

**Step 9** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

---

The configuration of the 802.1X username and password is complete.

# Configure the 802.1X username and password (CLI)

Complete these steps to configure the 802.1X username and password.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Specify a profile name for the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name
```

**Step 3** Configure the dot1x authentication type.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x {max-sessions | username | eap-type | lsc-ap-auth-state}
```

Here

- **max-sessions**: Configures the maximum 802.1X sessions initiated per AP.
- **username**: Configures the 802.1X username for all APs
- **eap-type:**: Configures the dot1x authentication type with the switch port.
- **lsc-ap-auth-state**: Configures the LSC authentication state on the AP.

**Step 4** Configure the dot1x password for all the APs.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x username username password {0 | 8} password
```

Here

- **0**: Specifies an unencrypted password will follow.
- **8**: Specifies an AES encrypted password will follow.

The configuration of the 802.1X username and password is complete.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name
Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x eap-type
Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x username username password 0 password
```

# Enable 802.1X on the switch port (CLI)

Complete these steps to enable 802.1X on the switch port.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Enable AAA.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# aaa new-model
```

**Step 3** Create authentication methods to determine user privilege for accessing the privileged command level, enabling the device to communicate with the AAA server.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x {default | listname} method1[method2...]
```

**Step 4** Enable AAA authorization for network services on 802.1X.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# aaa authorization network group
```

**Step 5** Enable 802.1X port-based authentication, globally.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# dot1x system-auth-control
```

**Step 6** Enter the interface configuration mode and specify the interface to be enabled for 802.1X authentication.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# interface type slot/port
```

**Step 7** Enable 802.1X port-based authentication on the interface.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# authentication port-control {auto | force-authorized | force-unauthorized}
```

Here are the options:

- **auto**: Enables IEEE 802.1X authentication and causes the port to begin in the unauthorized state, allowing only EAPOL frames to be sent and received through the port. The authentication process begins when the link state of the port changes from down to up or when an EAPOL-start frame is received. The Device requests the identity of the supplicant and begins relaying authentication messages between the supplicant and the authentication server. Each supplicant attempting to access the network is uniquely identified by the Device by using the supplicant MAC address.
- **force-authorized**: Disables IEEE 802.1X authentication and causes the port to change to the authorized state without any authentication exchange required. The port sends and receives normal traffic without IEEE 802.1X-based authentication of the client. This is the default setting.
- **force-unauthorized**: Causes the port to remain in the unauthorized state, ignoring all attempts by the supplicant to authenticate. The Device cannot provide authentication services to the supplicant through the port.

**Step 8** Enable 802.1X authentication on the port with default parameters.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# dot1x pae [supplicant | authenticator | both]
```

**Step 9** Enter the privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# end
```

802.1X is enabled on the switch port.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
Device(config)# aaa authorization network group
Device(config)# dot1x system-auth-control
Device(config)# interface fastethernet2/1
Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto
Device(config-if)# dot1x pae authenticator
Device(config-if)# end
```

# Verify 802.1X on the switch port

To display the authentication state of 802.1X on the switch port, use the following command:

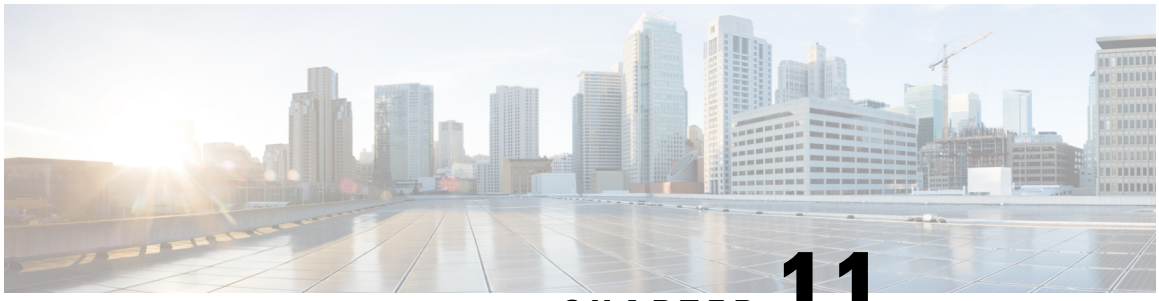
```
Device# show dot1x all
Sysauthcontrol              Enabled
Dot1x Protocol Version      2
Dot1x Info for FastEthernet1
-----------------------------------
PAE                         = AUTHENTICATOR
PortControl                 = AUTO
ControlDirection            = Both
HostMode                    = MULTI_HOST
ReAuthentication            = Disabled
QuietPeriod                 = 60
ServerTimeout               = 30
SuppTimeout                 = 30
ReAuthPeriod                = 3600 (Locally configured)
ReAuthMax                   = 2
MaxReq                      = 2
TxPeriod                    = 30
RateLimitPeriod             = 0
```

# Verify the authentication type

To display the authentication state of an AP profile, use the following command:

```
Device#show ap profile default-ap-profile detailed
        AP Profile Name        : default-ap-profile
        Description            : default ap profile
        …
        Dot1x EAP Method       : [EAP-FAST/EAP-TLS/EAP-PEAP/Not-Configured]
        LSC AP AUTH STATE      : [CAPWAP DTLS / DOT1x port auth / CAPWAP DTLS + DOT1x port
```

```
auth
```



CHAPTER 11

# Real-Time Access Points Statistics


•
• Access point real-time statistics, on page 93
• Restrictions for AP radio monitoring statistics, on page 94
• Configure access point real time statistics (GUI), on page 94
• Configure access point real-time statistics (CLI), on page 95
• Configure the access point radio monitoring statistics (CLI), on page 97
• Monitor access point real-time statistics (GUI), on page 98
• Verify access point real-time statistics, on page 99


## Access point real-time statistics

An access point real-time statistic is a tool that

- allows tracking of CPU utilization and memory usage of an AP,
- monitors the health of an AP, and
- generates real-time statistics from an AP.

Starting from Cisco IOS XE 17.5.1, you can monitor both CPU utilization and memory usage to assess the health of an AP through generated real-time statistics.

### Feature history for real time access point statistics

*Table 5: Feature history*

| Release | Feature | Feature information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE 17.7.1 | Real time access point statistics | The system implements this feature with AP threshold values between 0 and 50. |

- SNMP Traps: SNMP traps are notifications sent out when thresholds are crossed for specific statistics like CPU and memory usage in both the APs and the controller.
- Sampling Period and Statistics Interval: These parameters can be configured using SNMP, YANG, and CLI to manage how frequently statistics are sampled and reported.

### Supporting reference information

SNMP traps are sent out when the threshold is crossed. The sampling period and statistics interval can be configured using SNMP, YANG, and CLI.

From Cisco IOS XE 17.7.1 release onwards, for radio monitoring, you can reset the radios based on the statistics sent by the AP for a sampling period. When you configure the radios in the controller, if there is no increment in the Tx or Rx statistics when the radio is up, then the radio reset is triggered.

# Restrictions for AP radio monitoring statistics

You cannot reset the radio firmware from the controller. The controller will shut and then restart the radio if the Rx or Tx count does not increase for a radio slot within a specified period.

# Configure access point real time statistics (GUI)

This task helps you configure real-time statistics for access points using a graphical user interface, allowing you to effectively monitor and manage AP behavior.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**. The **Add AP Join Profile** page is displayed.

**Step 3** Under the **AP** tab, click the **AP Statistics** tab.

**Step 4** In the **System Monitoring** section:

- Enable **Monitor Real Time Statistics** to get calculated statistics and alarms of the AP.
- To receive an alarm when the upper threshold is surpassed for parameters such as CPU utilization and memory, enable **Trigger Alarm for AP**.
- Enter the threshold percentage for CPU and memory usage in the **CPU Threshold to Trigger Alarm** field and **Memory Threshold to Trigger Alarm** fields, respectively. The valid range is between 0 and 50. An SNMP trap is sent out when this threshold is crossed.
- In the **Interval to Hold Alarm** field, enter the time for which the alarm is held before it gets triggered. The range is between 0 and 3600 seconds.
- In the **Trap Retransmission Time** field, enter the time between retransmissions of the alarm. The range is between 0 and 65,535 seconds.
- To define how often data should be collected from the AP, enter a value in the **Sampling Interval** field. The range is between 720 and 3600 seconds.
- To define the interval at which AP statistics are to be calculated, enter a value in the **Statistics Interval** field. The range is between 2 and 900 seconds.
- To automatically reload the AP when there is high CPU and memory usage in the defined sampling interval, select the **Reload the AP** check box.

**Step 5** Under the **Radio Monitoring** section:

- Select the **Monitoring of AP Radio stuck** check box to verify that the Tx and Rx statistics of the AP are updated each time the payloads are coming in from the AP to the controller.
- To generate an alarm for the radio of the AP when there is no increment in the Tx and RX statistics for the payloads, select the **Alarms for AP Radio stuck** check box.
- Select the **Reset the stuck AP Radio** check box to recover the radio from the bad state. A radio admin state payload will be sent from the controller to toggle the radio and the radio will be shut when there is no increment in the Tx and Rx statistics.
- To define how often data should be collected from the radio, enter a value in the **Sampling Interval** field. The valid range is between 720 and 3600 seconds.

**Step 6** Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.

The AP monitors real-time statistics and triggers alarms based on defined thresholds to aid you in efficiently managing AP resources.

# Configure access point real-time statistics (CLI)

This task provides instructions on how to configure real-time statistics for an access point using CLI commands.

This task is intended for network administrators who need to monitor and configure various system parameters on a Cisco access point, particularly real-time statistics related to performance monitoring.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure the AP profile. The default AP join profile name is *default-ap-profile*.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap profile doc-test
```

**Step 3** (Optional) Configure the statistics timer.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# stats-timer 60
```

This step configures the interval for the statistics reports coming from the AP, with values ranging from 0 to 65535 seconds.

**Step 4** (Optional) Enable monitoring for AP system.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring enable
```

**Step 5** Enable alarms for AP system monitoring.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-enable
```

**Step 6** Define the hold time for system monitoring alarms on the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-hold-time 400
```

The values range from 0 to 3600 seconds.

**Step 7** Define the retransmission interval for the trap alarms.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-retransmit-time 100
```

Set the interval, with values from 0 to 65535 seconds, for retransmitting trap alarms when conditions persist.

**Step 8** Define the CPU usage threshold for the AP to trigger alarms.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring cpu-threshold 90
```

**Note**
From Cisco IOS XE 17.7.1 release onwards, the threshold value for triggering alarms is from 0 to 100%.

**Step 9** Define the memory usage threshold on the AP to trigger alarms.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring mem-threshold 90
```

The percentage threshold for memory usage on the AP to trigger is from 0 to 100%.

**Note**
From Cisco IOS XE 17.7.1 release onwards, the memory usage threshold to trigger alarms ranges from 0 to 100%.

**Step 10** (Optional) Configure the statistics sampling interval.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring sampling-interval 600
```

The interval can range from 2 to 65535 seconds.

**Step 11** Exit from AP profile configuration mode and return to global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# exit
```

**Step 12** Enable sending AP-related trap flags for statistics that exceed set thresholds.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# trapflags ap ap-stats
```

Traps are sent when statistics exceed the configured thresholds, enabling alerts and automated responses.

The statistics of the access point have been configured, enabling real-time monitoring and alarm triggering for system performance parameters.

```
                Device(config)# ap profile default-policy-profile
                Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring enable
               Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring sampling-interval
 600
                Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-enable
                Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-hold-time
3
                Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring
alarm-retransmit-time 10
                Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring cpu-threshold 90
                Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring mem-threshold 90
                Device(config)# trapflags ap ap-stats
```

# Configure the access point radio monitoring statistics (CLI)

Learn how to configure monitoring statistics for AP radios to enable stuck radio statistics, alarms, and actions for optimal performance.

These steps help configure AP radio monitoring statistics:

## Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure an AP profile and enter the AP profile configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap profile test1
```

**Step 3** Enable the monitoring of AP radio stuck statistics.

**Example:**

```
(config-ap-profile)#statistic ap-radio-monitoring enable
```

**Step 4** Enable the alarm for AP radio stuck statistics.

**Example:**

```
(config-ap-profile)#statistic ap-radio-monitoring alarm-enable
```

**Step 5** Specify the sampling interval in seconds.

**Example:**

```
(config-ap-profile)# statistic ap-radio-monitoring action reload-ap interval850
```

The values range from 720 to 3,600 seconds.

**Step 6** Generate an alarm and reset the radio if the radio is stuck.

**Example:**

```
(config-ap-profile)# statistic ap-radio-monitoring action radio-reset
```

**Step 7** Reload the AP.

**Example:**

```
(config-ap-profile)# statistic ap-system-monitoring action reload-ap
```

The AP radio monitoring statistics help identify stuck radios and automatically take corrective actions to ensure optimal performance.

```
Device(config)# ap profile test1
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-radio-monitoring enable
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistic ap-radio-monitoring alarm-enable
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistic ap-radio-monitoring sampling-interval 750
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistic ap-radio-monitoring action radio-reset
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistic ap-system-monitoring action reload-ap
```

# Monitor access point real-time statistics (GUI)

This task enables network administrators to monitor access point performance and diagnose potential issues by viewing real-time statistics.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Monitoring** > **Wireless** > **AP Statistics**.

**Step 2** Click the **General** tab.

**Step 3** Click an AP name. The **General** window is displayed.

**Step 4** To view the AP Statistics data, click the **AP Statistics** tab.

These types of information are displayed:

- **Memory alarm last send time**: Displays the time of the last memory trap sent.
- **Memory Alarm Status**: Displays the state of the memory alarm. An alarm can be **ACTIVE**, **INACTIVE**, **INACTIVE_SOAKING**, **ACTIVE_SOAKING**. An alarm is soaked until the configured hold time has passed.
- **Memory alarm raise time**: Displays the last time the memory alarm was active.
- **Memory alarm clear time**: Displays the last time the memory alarm was inactive.
- **Last statistics received**: Displays the time of the last statistics report received from the AP.
- **Current CPU Usage**: Displays the latest percentage of CPU usage reported.
- **Average CPU Usage**: Displays the average CPU usage calculated.
- **Current Memory Usage**: Displays the latest percentage of memory usage reported.
- **Average Memory Usage**: Displays the average memory usage calculated.

- **Current window size**: Displays the window size. The window size is calculated by dividing the statistics interval by the sampling interval. The average CPU and memory usage is calculated by the window size.
- **CPU alarm last send time**: Displays the time of the last CPU trap sent.
- **CPU Alarm Status**: Displays the state of the CPU alarm. An alarm can be **ACTIVE**, **INACTIVE**, **INACTIVE_SOAKING**, **ACTIVE_SOAKING**. An alarm is soaked until the configured hold time has passed.
- **CPU alarm raise time**: Displays the last time the CPU alarm was active.
- **CPU alarm clear time**: Displays the last time the CPU alarm was inactive.

**Step 5** Click **OK**.

The current statistics for the selected access point are displayed, allowing for comprehensive monitoring and analysis of AP performance metrics.

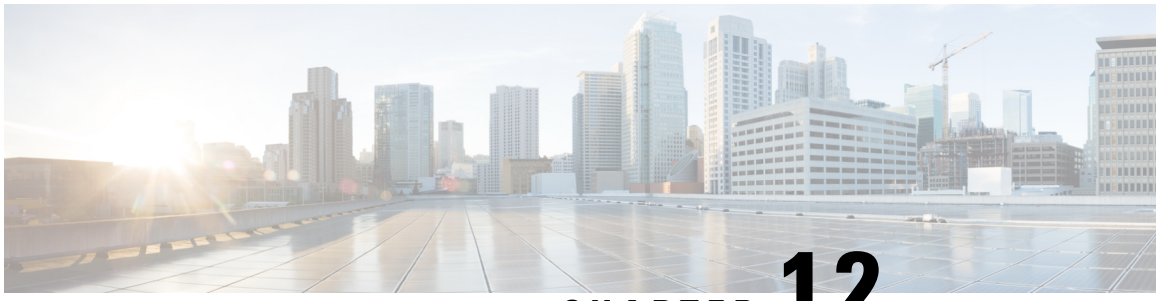
# Verify access point real-time statistics

To verify AP real-time statistics, run this command:

```
Device# show ap config general | section AP statistics
!Last Statistics
AP statistics : Enabled
Current CPU usage : 4
Average CPU usage : 49
Current memory usage : 35
Average memory usage : 35
Last statistics received : 03/09/2021 15:25:08
!Statistics Configuration
Current window size : 1
Sampling interval : 30
Statistics interval : 300
AP statistics alarms : Enabled
!Alarm State - Active, Inactive, Inactive_Soaking, Inactive_Soaking
Memory alarm status : Active
Memory alarm raise time : 03/09/2021 15:24:29
Memory alarm clear time : NA
Memory alarm last send time : 03/09/2021 15:24:59
CPU alarm status : Inactive
CPU alarm raise time : 03/09/2021 15:24:25
CPU alarm clear time : 03/09/2021 15:25:05
CPU alarm last send time : 03/09/2021 15:25:05
!Alarm Configuration
Alarm hold time : 6
Alarm retransmission time : 30
Alarm threshold cpu : 30
Alarm threshold memory : 32
```

To verify that the statistics reporting period is accurate, run this command:

```
Device# show ap config general | i Stats Reporting Period
Stats Reporting Period : 10
```



CHAPTER 12

# Access Point Tag Persistency


- Access point tag persistency, on page 101
- Configure access point tag persistency (GUI), on page 101
- Configure access point tag persistency (CLI), on page 103
- Verify access point tag persistency, on page 104


## Access point tag persistency

Access point tag persistency allows mapped tags to be saved on the APs.

- Enabled globally on the controller from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1 onwards.
- Eliminates the need to write tag configurations individually on each AP.

### Supporting reference information

Access point tag persistency is disabled by default. When APs join a controller with tag persistency enabled, the mapped tags are saved on the APs.

## Configure access point tag persistency (GUI)

The purpose of this task is to enable tag persistency on access points, allowing them to retain their tag mapping information without requiring individual configuration after reconnection.

Follow these steps to configure AP Tag Persistency using GUI

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags**.

**Step 2** Click the **AP** tab.

**Step 3** In the **Tag Source** tab, check the **Enable AP Tag Persistency** check box to configure AP Tag persistency globally.

When APs join a controller with the tag persistency enabled, the mapped tags are saved on the AP without having to write the tag configurations on each AP individually.

**Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.

The AP tag persistency is enabled, allowing access points to retain their tag configurations even after disconnections.

### What to do next

Save tags on an AP.

# Save tags on an access point (GUI)

This task guides you on how to save tags, including policy, site, and RF tags, on an access point using the graphical user interface (GUI). Saving tags ensures the access point remembers its configuration across different controllers.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** Click an AP from the list.
The **Edit AP** page is displayed.

**Step 3** Click the **General** tab.

**Step 4** In the **Tags** section, specify the appropriate policy, site, and RF tags that you created in the **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags** page.

**Step 5** From the **Policy** drop-down list, select a value.

**Step 6** From the **Site** drop-down list, select a value.

**Step 7** From the **RF** drop-down list, select a value.

**Step 8** Check the **Write Tag Config to AP** check box to push the tags to the AP so that the AP can save and remember this information even when the AP is moved from one controller to another.

**Step 9** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Upon completion, the access point will have saved the specified tags and configurations, allowing seamless operation even if the AP is transferred between controllers.

# Delete saved tags on an access point (GUI)

The purpose of this task is to guide you to delete saved tags on an access point through the GUI.

Use these steps to delete saved tags on an access point:

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** Click an AP from the list of APs.

The **Edit AP** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Edit AP** window, choose the **Advanced** tab.

**Step 4** In the **Set to Factory Default** section, check the **Clear Resolved Tag Config** check box to clear the saved tags on an AP.

**Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

The access point is updated and all saved tags are cleared.

# Configure access point tag persistency (CLI)

The purpose of this task is to configure access point tag persistency to ensure APs maintain their assigned tags when connecting to different controllers, which aids in redundancy scenarios.

**Before you begin**

For an AP to preserve its policy tag, site tag, and RF tag configured from the primary controller, these tags must also exist on the other controllers to which the AP connects. If all the three tags do not exist, the AP applies the default policy tag, site tag, and RF tag. Similarly, the tag policy is applicable even if one or two tags exist. AP tag persistency helps in priming an AP in N+1 redundancy scenarios. For more information about configuring tags, see "*New Configuration Model*" chapter in *Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Software Configuration Guide*.

**Note** Once enabled, AP tag persistency takes effect during the AP joining process. Therefore, if there are any APs that are already joined to the controller, those APs must rejoin the controller.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure AP tag persistency

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap tag persistency enable
```

**Step 3** Exit configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

After completing these steps, the AP tag persistency feature will be enabled on the controller, ensuring APs keep their tag assignments when moving to different controllers.

# Verify access point tag persistency

To verify AP tag persistency in the primary controller, use this command:

```
Device# show ap tag summary
Number of APs: 1

AP Name          AP Mac            Site Tag Name          Policy Tag Name         RF Tag Name
           Misconfigured    Tag Source
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Cisco01_AP      xxxx.xxxx.xxxx   default-site-tag      OpenRoaming           default-rf-tag
          No               Static
```



**Note** If the Tag Source displays **Static** or **Filter**, it means that the AP tag mappings were configured on the primary controller. If the source displays **Default**, it means that the AP received the default tags when joining the controller.

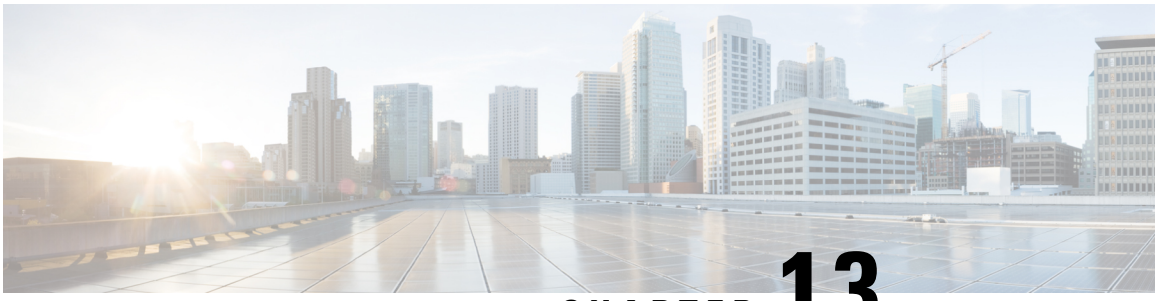
To verify the AP tag persistency in the secondary controller, use this command:

```
Device# show ap tag summary
Number of APs: 1

AP Name       AP Mac           Site Tag Name        Policy Tag Name     RF Tag Name
Misconfigured   Tag Source
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Cisco01_AP   xxxx.xxxx.xxxx    default-site-tag     OpenRoaming         default-rf-tag
 No              AP
```



**Note** If the Tag Source displays **AP**, it means that the policy tag, site tag, and RF tag match what was configured on the primary controller, indicating that the AP tags have persisted across controllers.



CHAPTER 13

# LED States for Access Points


- LED states for access points, on page 105
- Configure the LED State on Access Points (GUI), on page 105
- Configure LED state for access points (CLI), on page 106
- Configure LED state in the access point profile, on page 107
- Verify LED state for access points, on page 107


## LED states for access points

A LED state for access points is a configuration that

- allows the identification of specific access points in a LAN network,
- can be configured globally or for individual APs, and
- prioritizes global configurations over individual AP settings.

**Note** When disabling the LED on an access point, note that the LED state that is controlled by the AP-Join profile.

To maintain the LED in a disabled state, it is recommended to create a separate AP-Join profile and Site Tag specifically for APs with the LED disabled.

**Note** For APs that have Ethernet LEDs in addition to the main system LED, the Ethernet LEDs are enabled or disabled (switched ON or OFF) as per the system LED. For example, if the system LED is ON, the Ethernet LED will also be ON.

## Configure the LED State on Access Points (GUI)

Configure the LED state on access points to optimize visibility and performance using the GUI.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** Click an AP from the AP list.
The **Edit AP** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, under the General section, click the box adjacent to the **LED State** field to enable or disable the LED state.

**Step 4** From the **LED Brightness Level** drop-down list, choose a value from 1 to 8.

**Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

The LED state and related settings on the access points are configured according to your selections, enhancing network device visibility or conserving energy.

# Configure LED state for access points (CLI)

Configure the LED state for APs in the global configuration mode using commands.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enable privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device> enable
```

Enter your password if prompted.

**Step 2** Enable the LED state for APs, globally.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name Cisco-AP-name led
```

**Step 3** Configure the LED brightness level.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name Cisco-AP-name led-brightness-level 4
```

The brightness value ranges from 1 to 8.

The LED state is successfully configured with adjusted brightness and flash settings according to commands executed.

# Configure LED state in the access point profile

The task enables the LED state for all APs, ensuring active visual indicators across the network.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Enter the AP profile configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)#ap profile default-ap-profile
```

**Step 3** Enable the LED-state for all APs.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# led
```

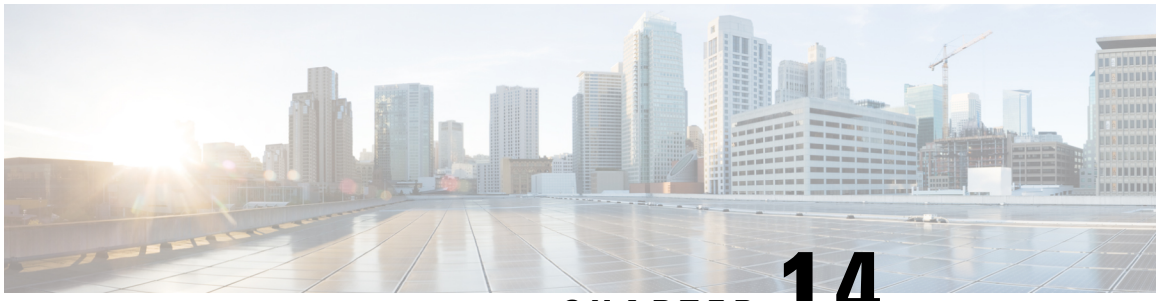
Verify that the LED status is visible on the access point, confirming successful configuration.

# Verify LED state for access points

To verify the LED state of the access points, use this command

```
Device# show ap name AXXX-APXXXX.bdXX.f2XX config general
Cisco AP Name : AXXX-APXXXX.bdXX.f2XX
=====================================================
Cisco AP Identifier : 0cXX.bdXX.65XX
Country Code : Multiple Countries : FR,IN,US
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-AE 802.11a:-ABDEN
AP Country Code : US - United States
AP Regulatory Domain
802.11bg : -A
802.11a : -B
.
.
.
CAPWAP Preferred mode : IPv4
CAPWAP UDP-Lite : Not Configured
AP Submode : WIPS
Office Extend Mode : Disabled
Dhcp Server : Disabled
Remote AP Debug : Disabled
Logging Trap Severity Level : information
Logging Syslog facility : kern
Software Version : 17.X.0.XXX
Boot Version : 1.1.X.X
Mini IOS Version : 0.0.0.0
Stats Reporting Period : 180
```

```
LED State : Enabled
MDNS Group Id : 0
.
```



CHAPTER 14

# Secure Data Wipe


- Feature history, on page 109
- Secure data wipe, on page 109
- Supported AP models and software versions, on page 110
- Verify data wipe, on page 111


## Feature history

*Table 6: Feature history for secure data wipe*

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1 | Secure data wipe | The Secure Data Wipe feature allows you to securely erase files from the file system of Cisco APs by using the **clear ap config** command. |

## Secure data wipe

Secure data wipe is a feature that

- securely erases files from the file system of Cisco APs using the **clear ap config** command
- stores basic information about the wipeout and its status, and
- helps verify and troubleshoot erased files.

### Types of files securely erased

These files are securely erased, without possibility of recovery:

- Configuration and backup configuration files
- Crash files
- Log files
- Boot variables

- Package logs

## Restrictions

Restriction for secure data wipe is as follows:

Data wipe for APs in Work Group Bridge mode can be done only through the mode button, which needs to be pressed for 20 to 60 seconds to remove storage content.

# Supported AP models and software versions

### Supported software versions

| Cisco APs | Supported versions |
|---|---|
| **Cisco Wave 1 APs** | Cisco IOS XE 17.3, Cisco IOS XE 17.9.3 and its later versions, and Cisco IOS XE 17.12. |
| **Cisco Wave 2 APs** | Cisco IOS XE 17.11, Cisco IOS XE 17.12, and Cisco IOS XE 17.13. |



**Note** Cisco Wave 1 APs are not supported in 17.4, 17.5, 17.6, 17.7, 17.8, 17.10 and later releases.

### Supported AP models

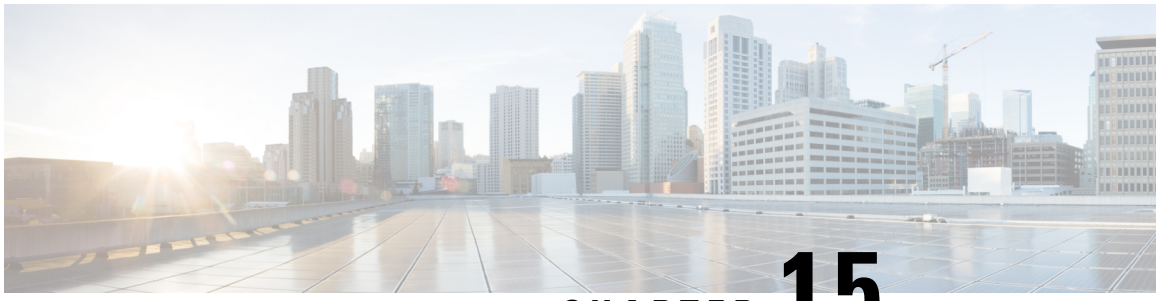
| Cisco IOS APs | Cisco COS APs | Cisco Catalyst APs |
|---|---|---|
| **3700 (I/E/P)** | 3800 (I/E/P) | 9162I<br>9164I<br>9166I<br>9166D1<br>9163E |
| **2700 (I/E)** | 2800 (I/E) | 9124AX (I/D/E) |
| **1700I** | 1815 (I/W) | 9136I |
| **702W** | 1840 (I) | 9130AX (I/E) |
| **1532I/E** | 1850 (I/E) | 9120AX (I/E) |
| **1570** | 1830 (I/W) | 9117AXI |
| — | 1810 | 9115AX (I/E) |
| — | 1800I | 9105AX (I/W) |

| Cisco IOS APs | Cisco COS APs | Cisco Catalyst APs |
|---|---|---|
| — | 1540 | — |
| — | 1560 | — |
| — | 4800 | — |

# Verify data wipe

To verify the output of the data wipe, run the **show flash wipeout-log** AP command:

```
Cisco-AP# show flash wipeout-log
DATA SANITATION LOGS
Filesystem Name    :    Flash
Filesystem size    :    519 M (bytes)
Total Files        :    95
Data Wipe Time     :    Fri Mar  8 09:50:49 UTC 2024
Data Wipe method   :    CLEAR
Files cleared      :    92
Bytes cleared      :    5484544 (bytes)
Total Free byte    :    458846208 (bytes)
Device PID         :    C9130AXI-E
Serial number      :    KWC233202MN
Data Wipe Status   :    SUCCESS
```



CHAPTER 15

# CAPWAP Message Aggregation


- Control and provisioning of wireless APs message aggregation, on page 113
- Guidelines of CAPWAP message aggregation, on page 113
- Use cases of CAPWAP message aggregation, on page 114
- Configure CAPWAP message aggregation (CLI), on page 114
- Verify CAPWAP message aggregation, on page 114


# Control and provisioning of wireless APs message aggregation

A CAPWAP message aggregation is a wireless communication optimization feature that

- combines multiple CAPWAP control messages of the same type into a single transmission
- temporarily stores messages in the controller when APs are busy processing packets, and
- limits the aggregated message size to the configured Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) to maximize transmission efficiency.

### Feature history

*Table 7: Feature history for CAPWAP message aggregation*

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---|---|
| CAPWAP Message Aggregation | Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1 | This feature aggregates the CAPWAP control messages of the same type waiting in the queue to be transmitted to the AP. |

# Guidelines of CAPWAP message aggregation

## Guidelines

- Applicable to all AP modes.
- The CAPWAP message aggregation feature is disabled by default.

# Use cases of CAPWAP message aggregation

FlexConnect deployment

You can expect a round-trip delay when packets are sent over wide area network (WAN) in FlexConnect deployments.

- With the CAPWAP message aggregation, round-trip time decreases significantly.
- In addition, client join and roam operations complete more quickly.

# Configure CAPWAP message aggregation (CLI)

Enable CAPWAP message aggregation to optimize wireless network performance by reducing message overhead between APs and the controller.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure an AP profile and enter the AP profile configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile
```

**Step 3** Enable CAPWAP message aggregation.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# capwap aggregation
```

This feature is disabled by default.

**Step 4** Exit the configuration mode and return to the privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# end
```

# Verify CAPWAP message aggregation

To view the total number of aggregated CAPWAP control packets for the controller, use the command:

```
Device# show wireless stats ap packet

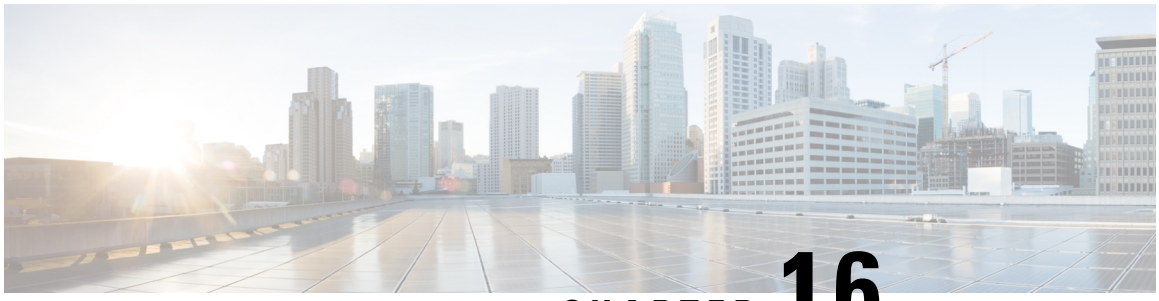
Packet stats
```

```
Capwap Control Packets Received* : 11183016
Capwap Data Keep Alive Packets Received : 160399
Capwap Data DOT1X EAP Packets Received: 549
Capwap Data DOT1X Mgmt Packets Received: 6003
Capwap Data DOT1X Key Type Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data DOT1X Control Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data ARP Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data IP Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data IPV6 Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data RRM Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data DHCP Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data RFID Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data IAPP Packets Received: 2531939
Capwap Dgram Input Errors : 0
Capwap Discovery Packets Received : 22299
Capwap Discovery Dgram Input Errors : 0
Aggregated Capwap Control Packets Sent: 119337
**** Note: Capwap control packets exclude discovery/primary discovery packets ****
```

To verify the status of the CAPWAP message aggregation feature, use the command:

```
Device# show ap profile name default-ap-profile detailed

AP Profile Name               : default-ap-profile
Description                   : default custom profile
Country code                  : Not configured
Stats Timer                   : 180
Link Latency                  : ENABLED
Data Encryption               : DISABLED
LED State                     : ENABLED
NTP server                    : 0.0.0.0
NTP Authentication            : DISABLED
Jumbo MTU                     : ENABLED
24ghz Report Interval         : 90
5ghz Report Interval          : 90
bssid stats status            : ENABLED
bssid stats frqncy interval   : 120
bssid neighbor stats status   : ENABLED
bssid neighbor stats interval : 120
CAPWAP Control Aggregation    : ENABLED
```



CHAPTER 16

# SuiteB-1X and SuiteB-192-1X Support in FlexConnect Mode for WPA2 and WPA3


- Information about SuiteB-1X and SuiteB-192-1X Support in FlexConnect Mode for WPA2 and WPA3, on page 117
- Configuring SuiteB Ciphers (GUI), on page 118
- Configuring Suite-B Ciphers (CLI), on page 119
- Verifying SuiteB Cipher Status, on page 120


# Information about SuiteB-1X and SuiteB-192-1X Support in FlexConnect Mode for WPA2 and WPA3

### Support for SuiteB-192-1X and SuiteB-1X Ciphers in FlexConnect Mode

From Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1 onwards, Cisco WLAN FlexConnect mode supports enterprise authentication key management (AKM) — SuiteB-192-1X (AKM 12) and SuiteB-1X (AKM 11). These AKMs are already supported in the Local mode. This section describes the configuration for SuiteB-192-1X and SuiteB-1X in FlexConnect mode, and also the requirements to support Galois Counter Mode Protocol 128 (GCMP-128), GCMP-256, and Counter Cipher Mode with Block Chaining Message Authentication Code Protocol 256 (CCMP-256) ciphers for pairwise transport keys (PTK) and group temporal key (GTK) derivation in FlexConnect Local Authentication mode and FlexConnect Central Authentication mode.

### Authentication Types and Ciphers in FlexConnect Mode During PTK and GTK Derivation

- In WPA2 FlexConnect mode:
  - SUITEB192-1X ciphers are CCMP-256 and GCMP-256.
  - SUITEB-1X cipher is GCMP-128.
- In WPA3 FlexConnect mode:
  - SUITEB192-1X cipher is GCMP-256.
  - SUITEB-1X cipher is GCMP-128.

### Wi-Fi 7 WPA3 Security Constraints

In Cisco IOS XE 17.15.2, the Wi-Fi 7 standard dictates the following security constraints, which are applicable for Wi-Fi 7 compliant APs:

- Open authentication as Wi-Fi 7 is not permitted.
- WPA1 as Wi-Fi 7 is not permitted.
- WPA2 as Wi-Fi 7 is not permitted.
- WPA3 is permitted with the following restrictions:
  - SAE(24/25) is permitted with GCMP-256.
  - SAE(8/9) is permitted. (It is beaconed as a Wi-Fi 7 client. This is a deviation from the actual security constraint.)
  - WPA2 with PMF is permitted.
  - 802.1x-SHA256 with PMF is permitted.
  - Suite-B-192 with PMF is permitted.



**Note** When multi-ciphers (GCMP-128 + GCMP-256) and multi-AKMs (SuiteB + SuiteB-192) are enabled on a WLAN, clients that are compatible with WPA3 security will not support GCMP-128 encryption. Clients supporting GCMP-128 encryption, will not be able to join the GCMP-128 + GCMP-256 cipher with SuiteB and SuiteB-192 AKMs.

# Configuring SuiteB Ciphers (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

The **Add WLAN** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**.

**Step 4** Choose **Security** > **Layer2**, select one of the following options:

- **WPA + WPA2**
- **WPA2 + WPA3**
- **WPA3**

The **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section will be populated with the possible AKMs supported by the cipher that is selected in the **WPA2/WPA3 Encryption** section. Valid cipher and AKM combinations are displayed in the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section.

**Step 5** In the **WPA2 Encryption** section, select one of the following ciphers:

- **CCMP256**
- **GCMP128**
- **GCMP256**

**Note**
The **AES(CCMP128)** cipher is selected by default. Multiple ciphers are not currently supported. Clear the **AES(CCMP128)** cipher check box and then select the desired cipher.

Valid cipher and AKM combinations are displayed in the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section.

**Step 6** In the **Fast Transition** section and in the **Status** drop-down list, select **Disabled**.

**Note**
Disable **Fast Transition** when Suite-B cipher (GCMP256/CCMP256/GCMP128) is configured.

**Step 7** In the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section, check the **SUITEB-1X** check box.

**Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Suite-B Ciphers (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-profile-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan suiteb-profile 17 suiteb-ssid01` | Configures the WLAN profile and SSID. Enters the WLAN configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **security wpa wpa2 ciphers** {**aes** \| **ccmp256** \| **gcmp128** \| **gcmp256**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes` | Configures the CCMP-128 support by default. |

## Configuring GCMP-128, GCMP-256, or CCMP-256 (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **security wpa wpa2**<br>**Example:** | Configures the WPA2 support for a WLAN profile. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2` | |
| **Step 2** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for 802.1X. |
| **Step 3** | **no security wpa wpa2 ciphers ccmp128**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers ccmp128` | Disables the SuiteB CCMP-128 cipher. |
| **Step 4** | **security wpa wpa2 ciphers** {**aes** \| **ccmp256** \| **gcmp128** \| **gcmp256**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers gcmp256` | Configures either the CCMP-256 cipher, the GCMP-128 cipher, or the GCMP-256 cipher. |
| **Step 5** | **security dot1x authentication-list** *authlist-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list suiteb-authlist` | Sets the authentication list for IEEE 802.1X. |

# Verifying SuiteB Cipher Status

### Verifying SuiteB Cipher in a WLAN Profile

To verify the SuiteB cipher status in a WLAN profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan id 3
saurabh-vwlc#show wlan id 3
WLAN Profile Name     : FIPS
================================================
Identifier                                       : 3
Network Name (SSID)                              : FIPS
Status                                           : Enabled
.
.
.
Security
    802.11 Authentication                        : Open System
    Static WEP Keys                              : Disabled
    802.1X                                       : Disabled
    Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2)            : Enabled
        WPA (SSN IE)                             : Disabled
        WPA2 (RSN IE)                            : Enabled
            AES Cipher                           : Enabled
            CCMP256 Cipher                       : Enabled
            GCMP128 Cipher                       : Disabled
            GCMP256 Cipher                       : Disabled
        Auth Key Management
```

```
            802.1x                                  : Enabled
            PSK                                     : Disabled
            CCKM                                    : Disabled
            FT dot1x                                : Disabled
            FT PSK                                  : Disabled
            PMF dot1x                               : Disabled
            PMF PSK                                 : Disabled
            SUITEB-1X                               : Disabled
            SUITEB192-1X                            : Enabled
.
.
.
```

### Verifying SuiteB Cipher Status using MAC Address

To verify the SuiteB cipher status using a MAC address, use the following command:

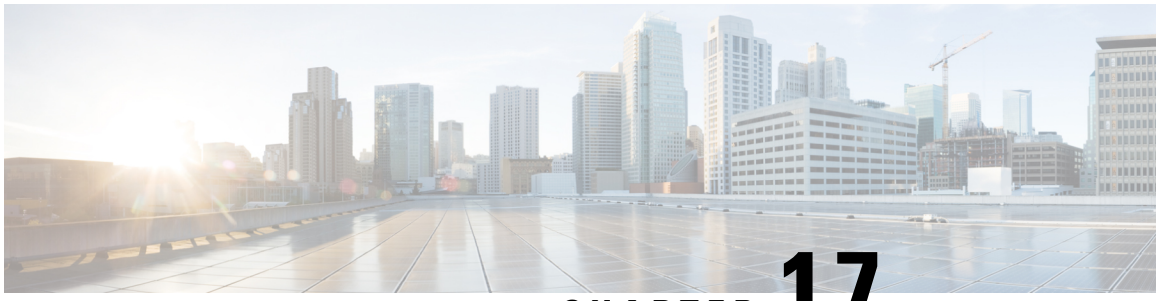
```
Device# show wireless client mac-address H.H.H detail
Client MAC Address : a8XX.ddXX.05XX
Client IPv4 Address : 169.254.175.214
…….
…….
Policy Type : WPA2
Encryption Cipher : CCMP256
Authentication Key Management : SUITEB192-1X
```



PART III

# Radio Resource Management


- Radio Resource Management, on page 125
- Coverage Hole Detection, on page 153
- Cisco Flexible Radio Assignment, on page 159
- XOR Radio Support, on page 167
- Cisco Receiver Start of Packet, on page 175
- Client Limit, on page 179
- IP Theft, on page 183
- Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery, on page 187
- Target Wake Time, on page 189
- Enabling USB Port on Access Points, on page 195
- Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection, on page 199



CHAPTER 17

# Radio Resource Management


- Radio Resource Management, on page 125
- Restrictions, on page 129
- How to Configure RRM, on page 129
- Monitoring RRM Parameters and RF Group Status, on page 140
- Examples: RF group configuration, on page 142
- Information About ED-RRM, on page 142
- Rogue PMF containment, on page 143
- Enable rogue PMF containment, on page 144
- Verify PMF containment, on page 145
- Rogue detection - rogue channel width, on page 146
- Configure rogue channel width (CLI), on page 146
- Configure rogue classification rules (GUI), on page 148
- Verify rogue channel width, on page 150


# Radio Resource Management

A Radio Resource Management (RRM) is a system that

- consistently manages real-time RF parameters of a wireless network
- monitors associated APs for traffic load, interference, noise, coverage, and other metrics,
- performs critical functions like radio resource monitoring, power control transmission, dynamic channel assignment, and coverage hole detection and correction.

### Functions of radio resource management

- Radio Resource Monitoring: Ensures optimal allocation of network resources.
- Power Control Transmission: Adjusts power levels to maintain network performance.
- Dynamic Channel Assignment: Allocates channels dynamically to reduce interference and optimize network performance.
- Coverage Hole Detection and Correction: Identifies and rectifies gaps in coverage to ensure consistent connectivity.

- RF Grouping: Groups RF resources effectively to manage interference and optimize performance.

# Radio resource monitors

Radio resource monitor is a system that

- detects and configures new devices and APs automatically
- adjusts associated APs for optimal coverage and capacity, and
- supports noise and interference monitoring.

- APs scan all the valid channels for the country of operation as well as for channels available in other locations.
- The APs in local mode go *offchannel* for a period not greater than 70 ms to monitor these channels for noise and interference.
- Packets collected during this time are analyzed to detect rogue APs, rogue clients, ad-hoc clients, and interfering APs.
- In the presence of voice traffic or other critical traffic (in the last 100 ms), APs can defer off-channel measurements. The APs also defer off-channel measurements based on the WLAN scan priority configurations.
- Each AP spends only 0.2 percent of its time off channel. This activity is distributed across all the APs so that adjacent APs are not scanning at the same time, which could adversely affect wireless LAN performance.

### Mobility controller and mobility agent

# Transmit power control

A transmit power control is an automation algorithm that:

- increases and decreases an access point's power dynamically
- responds to changes in the RF coverage environment, and
- provides enough RF power to achieve the required coverage levels while avoiding channel interference.

This feature is different from coverage hole detection, which is primarily concerned with clients.

- TPC provides enough RF power to achieve the required coverage levels while avoiding channel interference between APs. We recommend that you select TPCv1; TPCv2 option is deprecated.
- With TPCv1, you can select the channel aware mode; we recommend that you select this option for 5 GHz, and leave it unchecked for 2.4 GHz.

# Overriding the TPC Algorithm with Minimum and Maximum Transmit Power Settings

The TPC algorithm balances RF power in many diverse RF environments. However, it is possible that automatic power control will not be able to resolve some scenarios in which an adequate RF design was not possible to implement due to architectural restrictions or site restrictions, for example, when all the access points must be mounted in a central hallway, placing the access points close together, but requiring coverage to the edge of the building.

In these scenarios, you can configure maximum and minimum transmit power limits to override TPC recommendations. The maximum and minimum TPC power settings apply to all the access points through RF profiles in a RF network.

To set the Maximum Power Level Assignment and Minimum Power Level Assignment, enter the maximum and minimum transmit power used by RRM in the fields in the **Tx Power Control** window. The range for these parameters is -10 to 30 dBm. The minimum value cannot be greater than the maximum value; the maximum value cannot be less than the minimum value.

If you configure a maximum transmit power, RRM does not allow any access point attached to the controller, to exceed this transmit power level (whether the power is set by RRM TPC or by coverage hole detection). For example, if you configure a maximum transmit power of 11 dBm, no access point will transmit above 11 dBm, unless the access point is configured manually.

# Dynamic channel assignment

A dynamic channel assignment (DCA) is a wireless LAN management technique that

- automatically evaluates radio frequency (RF) conditions and network utilization
- dynamically allocates channels among APs to minimize interference and maximize performance, and
- continuously updates channel assignments based on system-wide RF analytics and policies.

### Features of DCA

Features of DCA are:

- **Dynamic channel allocation**: DCA dynamically assigns channels to APs to avoid conflicts and interference, improving network capacity and performance. Two adjacent APs on the same channel can cause signal contention or collision. In a collision, data is not received by the AP. For example, reading an e-mail in a café can affect the performance of an AP in a neighboring business.

  Even though these are separate networks, someone sending traffic to the café on channel 1 can disrupt communication in an enterprise using the same channel. Devices can dynamically allocate AP channel assignments to avoid conflict and increase capacity and performance.

- **Channel reuse**: Efficiently reuses channels by assigning the same channel to APs that are physically far apart, maximizing scarce RF resources. In other words, channel 1 is allocated to a different AP far from the café, which is more effective than not using channel 1 altogether.

- **Adjacent channel separation**: The device's DCA capabilities are also useful in minimizing adjacent channel interference between APs.

  For example, two overlapping channels in the 802.11b/g band, such as 1 and 2, cannot simultaneously use 11 or 54 Mbps. By effectively reassigning channels, the device keeps adjacent channels separated.

### Channel assignments

The device examines a variety of real-time RF characteristics to efficiently handle channel assignments.

- AP received energy: The received signal strength measured between each AP and its nearby neighboring AP. Channels are optimized to give you the highest network capacity.
- Noise: Noise can limit signal quality for your devices and APs. Increased noise reduces cell size and degrades user experience. By optimizing channels to avoid noise sources, the device helps you maintain coverage and system capacity. If a channel is unusable due to excessive noise, that channel can be avoided.
- 802.11 interference: Interference is any 802.11 traffic that is not a part of your wireless LAN, including rogue APs and neighboring wireless networks. Lightweight APs automatically scan all channels to detect interference sources. If the amount of 802.11 interference exceeds a predefined configurable threshold (the default is 10 percent), the AP sends an alert to the device. Using the RRM algorithms, the device may then dynamically rearrange channel assignments to increase system performance in the presence of the interference. Such an adjustment could result in adjacent lightweight APs being on the same channel, but this setup provides better performance than keeping APs on a channel made unusable by interference.

  In addition, if other wireless networks are present, the device shifts the usage of channels to complement the other networks. For example, if one network is on channel 6, an adjacent wireless LAN is assigned to channel 1 or 11. This arrangement increases the capacity of the network by limiting the sharing of frequencies. If a channel has virtually no capacity remaining, the device may choose to avoid this channel. In huge deployments in which all nonoverlapping channels are occupied, the device does its best, but you must consider RF density when setting expectations.
- Load and utilization: When utilization monitoring is enabled, capacity calculations can consider that some APs are deployed in ways that carry more traffic than other APs, for example, a lobby versus an engineering area. The device can then assign channels to improve the AP that has performed the worst. The load is taken into account when changing the channel structure to minimize the impact on the clients that are currently in the wireless LAN. This metric keeps track of every AP's transmitted and received packet counts to determine how busy the APs are. New clients avoid an overloaded AP and associate to a new AP. This *Load and utilization* parameter is disabled by default.

The device combines this RF characteristic information with RRM algorithms to make system-wide decisions. Conflicting demands are resolved using soft-decision metrics that guarantee the best choice for minimizing network interference. The result is optimal channel configuration across three dimensions. APs located on different floors play an important role in your wireless LAN configuration.

### RRM startup mode

The RRM startup mode is invoked under these conditions:

- In a single- device environment, the RRM startup mode is invoked after the device is upgraded and rebooted.
- In a multiple- device environment, the RRM startup mode is invoked after an RF Group leader is elected.
- You can trigger the RRM startup mode from the CLI.

The RRM startup mode runs for 100 minutes (ten iterations at ten-minute intervals). The duration of the RRM startup mode is independent of the DCA interval, sensitivity, and network size. The startup mode consists of ten DCA runs with high sensitivity (making channel changes easy and sensitive to the environment) to converge to a steady-state channel plan. DCA continues to run at the specified interval and sensitivity after the startup mode is finished.

## Coverage hole detection and correction

A coverage hole detection and correction algorithm is a wireless LAN management mechanism that

- identifies areas with insufficient radio coverage for reliable performance
- alerts administrators when access points fail to provide adequate coverage, and
- adjusts AP transmit power to mitigate correctable coverage holes.

If clients on a lightweight AP are detected at threshold levels such as RSSI, failed client count, percentage of failed packets, and number of failed packets that are lower than those specified in the RRM configuration, the AP sends a "coverage hole" alert to the device. The alert indicates that clients cannot connect to a usable AP because of poor signal coverage.

The device discriminates between coverage holes that can and cannot be corrected. For coverage holes that can be corrected, the device mitigates the coverage hole by increasing the transmit power level for that specific AP.

The device does not mitigate coverage holes caused by clients that are unable to increase their transmit power or are statically set to a power level. Increasing downstream transmit power could increase interference in the network.

# Restrictions

The restrictions for RRM are:

- If an AP tries to join the RF-group that already holds the maximum number of APs it can support, the device rejects the application and throws an error.
- RRM grouping does not occur when an AP operates in a static channel that is not in the DCA channel list. The Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) is sent only on DCA channels; therefore, when a radio operates on a non-DCA channel, it does not receive NDP on the channel.

# How to Configure RRM

## Configure neighbor discovery type (CLI)

Specify how neighbor discovery packets are handled on each radio band.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure the neighbor discovery type for the desired radio band.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm ndp-type {protected | transparent}
```

The NDP types are:

- **protected**: Use **protected** to encrypt discovery packets.
- **transparent**: Use **transparent** to send packets as is (default).

**Step 3** Return to privileged EXEC mode by ending the configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode.

---

The neighbor discovery type for the specified band is set.

# Configuring Transmit Power Control

## Configure Tx-power control threshold (CLI)

Set the Tx-power control threshold to define the minimum received signal strength at which the device adjusts its transmit power.

**Procedure**

---

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure the Tx-power control threshold used by RRM for auto power assignment.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} rrm tpc-threshold threshold_value
```

The range is from –80 dBm to –50 dBm.

**Step 3** Return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

You can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode.

---

The Tx-power control threshold is updated, enabling the device to adjust its transmit power according to the specified threshold.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm tpc-threshold -60
Device(config)# end
```

## Configure the Tx-power level (CLI)

Set the transmit power level of the wireless AP to improve wireless coverage and signal strength.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure the 802.11 Tx-power level.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm txpower {trans_power_level | auto | max | min
| once}
```

The Tx-power parameters are:

- **trans_power_level**: Sets the transmit power level.
- **auto**: Enables auto-RF.
- **max**: Configures the maximum auto-RF Tx-power.
- **min**: Configures the minimum auto-RF Tx-power.
- **once**: Enables one-time auto-RF.

**Step 3** **end**

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

Return to privileged EXEC mode.

# Configuring 802.11 RRM Parameters

## Configure 802.11 channel assignment parameters (CLI)

Configure DCA and related parameters on 802.11 radios.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure CleanAir event-driven RRM parameters.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event sensitivity {high | low
 | medium}
```

The types of sensitivity are:

- **High** : Specifies the most sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference as indicated by the air quality (AQ) value.
- **Low** : Specifies the least sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value.
- **Medium** : Specifies medium sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value.

**Step 3** Configure DCA algorithm parameters for the 802.11 band.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel dca {add channel-number | anchor-time
| global {auto | once} | interval | min-metric | remove channel-number | sensitivity {high
 | low | medium}}
```

The DCA algorithm parameters include:

- : Enter a channel number to be added to the DCA list.
- **anchor-time**: Configures the anchor time for DCA. The range is from 0 to 23 hours.
- **global**: Configures the DCA mode for all 802.11 Cisco APs.
  - **auto**: Enables auto-RF.
  - **once**: Enables auto-RF only once.
- **interval**: Configures the DCA interval value. The values are 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 12 and 24 hours, and the default value 0 denotes 10 minutes.
- **min-metric**: Configures the DCA minimum RSSI energy metric. The range is from -100 to -60.
- **sensitivity**: Configures the DCA sensitivity level to changes in the environment.
  - **high**: Specifies the most sensitivity.
  - **low**: Specifies the least sensitivity.
  - **medium**: Specifies medium sensitivity.

**Step 4** Configure the DCA channel bandwidth for all 802.11 radios in the 5-GHz band.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel dca chan-width {20 | 40 | 80}
```

The channel bandwidth can be set to 20 MHz, 40 MHz, or 80 MHz, . The default value for channel bandwidth is 20 MHz (80 MHz is the default value for Best). Set the channel bandwidth to Best before configuring the constraints.

The 802.11 channel assignment parameters are configured.

### What to do next

Configure the advanced channel assignment parameters.

*Configure the advanced channel assignment parameters (CLI)*

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Configure the persistent non-Wi-Fi device avoidance in the 802.11 channel assignment.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel device
```

**Step 2** Configure the foreign AP 802.11 interference avoidance in the channel assignment.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel foreign
```

**Step 3** Configure the Cisco AP 802.11 load avoidance in the channel assignment.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel load
```

**Step 4** Configure noise avoidance in 802.11 channel assignment.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel noise
```

**Step 5** Return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

You can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode.

The 802.11 advanced channel assignment parameters are configured.

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel noise
  Device(config)# end
```

## Configuring 802.11 Coverage Hole Detection (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 {24ghz \| 5ghz} rrm coverage data**{**fail-percentage \| packet-count \| rssi-threshold**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage`<br>`data fail-percentage 60` | Configures the 802.11 coverage hole detection for data packets.<br>• **fail-percentage**: Configures the 802.11 coverage failure-rate threshold for uplink data packets as a percentage that ranges from 1 to 100%.<br>• **packet-count**: Configures the 802.11 coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplink data packets that ranges from 1 to 255.<br>• **rssi-threshold**: Configures the 802.11 minimum receive coverage level for data packets that range from –90 to –60 dBm. |
| **Step 3** | **ap dot11 {24ghz \| 5ghz} rrm coverage exception global** *exception level*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage`<br>`exception global 50` | Configures the 802.11 Cisco AP coverage exception level as a percentage that ranges from 0 to 100%. |
| **Step 4** | **ap dot11 {24ghz \| 5ghz} rrm coverage level global** *cli_min exception level*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage`<br>`level global 10` | Configures the 802.11 Cisco AP client minimum exception level that ranges from 1 to 75 clients. |
| **Step 5** | **ap dot11 {24ghz \| 5ghz} rrm coverage voice**{**fail-percentage \| packet-count \| rssi-threshold**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage`<br>`voice packet-count 10` | Configures the 802.11 coverage hole detection for voice packets.<br>• **fail-percentage**: Configures the 802.11 coverage failure-rate threshold for uplink voice packets as a percentage that ranges from 1 to 100%.<br>• **packet-count**: Configures the 802.11 coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplink voice packets that ranges from 1 to 255.<br>• **rssi-threshold**: Configures the 802.11 minimum receive coverage level for voice packets that range from –90 to –60 dBm. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

## Configuring 802.11 Event Logging (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 24ghz \| 5ghz rrm logging**{**channel \| coverage \| foreign \| load \| noise \| performance \| txpower**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging channel`<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging coverage`<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging foreign`<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging load`<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging noise`<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging performance`<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging txpower` | Configures event-logging for various parameters.<br>• **channel**—Configures the 802.11 channel change logging mode.<br>• **coverage**—Configures the 802.11 coverage profile logging mode.<br>• **foreign**—Configures the 802.11 foreign interference profile logging mode.<br>• **load**—Configures the 802.11 load profile logging mode.<br>• **noise**—Configures the 802.11 noise profile logging mode.<br>• **performance**—Configures the 802.11 performance profile logging mode.<br>• **txpower**—Configures the 802.11 transmit power change logging mode. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring 802.11 Statistics Monitoring (CLI)

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 24ghz \| 5ghz rrm monitor channel-list**{**all \| country \| dca**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor channel-list all` | Sets the 802.11 monitoring channel-list for parameters such as noise/interference/rogue.<br>• **all**— Monitors all channels.<br>• **country**— Monitor channels used in configured country code.<br>• **dca**— Monitor channels used by dynamic channel assignment. |
| **Step 3** | **ap dot11 24ghz \| 5ghz rrm monitor coverage** *interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor coverage 600` | Configures the 802.11 coverage measurement interval in seconds that ranges from 60 to 3600. |
| **Step 4** | **ap dot11 24ghz \| 5ghz rrm monitor load** *interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor load 180` | Configures the 802.11 load measurement interval in seconds that ranges from 60 to 3600. |
| **Step 5** | **ap dot11 24ghz \| 5ghz rrm monitor noise** *interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor noise 360` | Configures the 802.11 noise measurement interval (channel scan interval) in seconds that ranges from 60 to 3600. |
| **Step 6** | **ap dot11 24ghz \| 5ghz rrm monitor signal** *interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor signal 480` | Configures the 802.11 signal measurement interval (neighbor packet frequency) in seconds that ranges from 60 to 3600. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

## Configuring the 802.11 Performance Profile (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **rrm profile clients** *cli_threshold_value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm profile clients 20` | Sets the threshold value for 802.11 Cisco AP clients that range between 1 and 75 clients. |
| **Step 3** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**}**rrm profile foreign** *int_threshold_value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm profile foreign 50` | Sets the threshold value for 802.11 foreign interference that ranges between 0 and 100%. |
| **Step 4** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **rrm profile noise** *for_noise_threshold_value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm profile noise -65` | Sets the threshold value for 802.11 foreign noise ranges between –127 and 0 dBm. |
| **Step 5** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **rrm profile throughput** *throughput_threshold_value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm profile throughput 10000` | Sets the threshold value for 802.11 Cisco AP throughput that ranges between 1000 and 10000000 bytes per second. |
| **Step 6** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **rrm profile utilization** *rf_util_threshold_value*<br>**Example:** | Sets the threshold value for 802.11 RF utilization that ranges between 0 to 100%. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm profile utilization 75` | |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring Advanced 802.11 RRM

## Enabling Channel Assignment (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **rrm channel-update**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel-update` | Enables the 802.11 channel selection update for each of the Cisco access points.<br>**Note**<br>After you enable **ap dot11 {24ghz \| 5ghz} rrm channel-update**, a token is assigned for channel assignment in the DCA algorithm. |

## Restarting DCA Operation

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **rrm dca restart**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap dot11 24ghz rrm dca restart` | Restarts the DCA cycle for 802.11 radio. |

## Update power assignment parameters (CLI)

Adjust the wireless transmit power settings for APs to optimize coverage and performance.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# enable
```

**Step 2** Update the 802.11 transmit power for each of the APs.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm txpower update
```

The system updates the transmit power configuration for the specified APs.

```
Device# enable
Device# ap dot11 24ghz rrm txpower update
Device# ap dot11 6ghz rrm txpower update
```

# Configuring Rogue Access Point Detection in RF Groups

## Configuring Rogue Access Point Detection in RF Groups (CLI)

### Before you begin

Ensure that each embedded controller in the RF group has been configured with the same RF group name.

**Note** The name is used to verify the authentication IE in all beacon frames. If the embedded controller have different names, false alarms will occur.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **Example:**<br>`Device#` | Perform this step for every access point connected to the embedded controller.<br>• **monitor**: Sets the AP mode to monitor mode.<br>• **clear**: Resets AP mode to local or remote based on the site.<br>• **sensor**: Sets the AP mode to sensor mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | • **sniffer**: Sets the AP mode to wireless sniffer mode. |
| **Step 2** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **wireless wps ap-authentication**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device (config)# wireless wps ap-authentication` | Enables rogue access point detection. |
| **Step 5** | **wireless wps ap-authentication threshold** *value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device (config)# wireless wps ap-authentication threshold 50` | Specifies when a rogue access point alarm is generated. An alarm occurs when the threshold value (which specifies the number of access point frames with an invalid authentication IE) is met or exceeded within the detection period.<br>The valid threshold range is from 1 to 255, and the default threshold value is 1. To avoid false alarms, you may want to set the threshold to a higher value.<br>**Note**<br>Enable rogue access point detection and threshold value on every embedded controller in the RF group.<br>**Note**<br>If rogue access point detection is not enabled on every embedded controller in the RF group, the access points on the embedded controller with this feature disabled are reported as rogues. |

# Monitoring RRM Parameters and RF Group Status

## Monitor RRM parameters

Provide a quick reference to the commands used for monitoring Radio Resource Management (RRM) parameters, enabling users to efficiently assess and troubleshoot wireless network performance.

*Table 8: Commands for monitoring Radio Resource Management*

| Commands | Description |
|---|---|
| **show ap dot11 24ghz channel** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b monitoring. |
| **show ap dot11 24ghz coverage** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b coverage. |
| **show ap dot11 24ghz group** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b grouping. |
| **show ap dot11 24ghz logging** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b event logging. |
| **show ap dot11 24ghz monitor** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b monitoring. nnn |
| **show ap dot11 24ghz profile** | Displays 802.11b profiling information for all APs. |
| **show ap dot11 24ghz summary** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a APs. |
| **show ap dot11 24ghz txpower** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b transmit power control. |
| **show ap dot11 5ghz channel** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a channel assignment. |
| **show ap dot11 5ghz coverage** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a coverage. |
| **show ap dot11 5ghz group** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a grouping. |
| **show ap dot11 5ghz logging** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a event logging. |
| **show ap dot11 5ghz monitor** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a monitoring. |
| **show ap dot11 5ghz profile** | Displays 802.11a profiling information for all APs. |
| **show ap dot11 5ghz summary** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a APs. |
| **show ap dot11 5ghz txpower** | Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a transmit power control. |

# Verify RF group status

This section describes the new commands for RF group status.

These commands are used to verify RF group status on the .

This table lists the commands for verifying aggressive load balancing.

*Table 9: Aggressive load balancing verification commands*

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show ap dot11 5ghz group** | Displays the controller name that is the group leader for the 802.11a RF network. |
| **show ap dot11 24ghz group** | Displays the controller name that is the group leader for the 802.11b/g RF network. |

# Examples: RF group configuration

These are examples of RF group name configuration.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless rf-network test1
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz shutdown
Device(config)# end
Device# show network profile 5
```

This example demonstrates how to configure rogue access point detection within RF groups.

```
Device#
Device# end
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless wps ap-authentication
Device(config)# wireless wps ap-authentication threshold 50
Device(config)# end
```

# Information About ED-RRM

A ED-RRM feature is a radio frequency management solution that

- continuously monitors air quality metrics
- automatically triggers channel changes when interference exceeds a set threshold, and
- blocks affected channels for a specified duration to prevent immediate reselection.

Spontaneous interference is interference that appears suddenly on a network, perhaps jamming a channel or a range of channels completely. The Cisco CleanAir spectrum event-driven RRM feature allows you to set a threshold for air quality (AQ) that, if exceeded, triggers an immediate channel change for the affected AP.

Most RF management systems can avoid interference, but this information takes time to propagate through the system. Cisco CleanAir relies on AQ measurements to continuously evaluate the spectrum and can trigger a move within 30 seconds. For example, if an AP detects interference from a video camera, it can recover by changing channels within 30 seconds of the camera becoming active.

# Configure ED-RRM on the controller (CLI)

Configure Event-Driven Radio Resource Management (ED-RRM) on the controller using CLI commands.

Trigger spectrum event-driven RRM to run when a Cisco CleanAir-enabled AP detects a significant level of interference by entering these commands.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure CleanAir driven RRM parameters for the 802.11 APs.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event
```

**Step 3** Configure CleanAir driven RRM sensitivity for the 802.11 APs.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event sensitivity {low
 | medium | high | custom}
```

Default selection is Medium.

**Step 4** Trigger the ED-RRM event at the set threshold value.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event custom-threshold
 custom-threshold-value
```

The custom threshold range is from 1 to 99.

**Step 5** Enable rogue contribution.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event rogue-contribution
```

**Step 6** Configure threshold value for rogue contribution.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event rogue-contribution
 duty-cycle thresholdvalue
```

The range is from 1 to 99, with 80 as the default.

**Step 7** Save your changes.

**Example:**

```
Device# write memory
```

**Step 8** (Optional) Verify the CleanAir configuration for the 802.11a/n/ac or 802.11b/g/n network.

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz}cleanair config
```

The output is displayed.

---

The Event-Driven Radio Resource Management (ED-RRM) on the controller is configured.

# Rogue PMF containment

Rogue PMF containment is a wireless security feature that

- uses 802.11w Protected Management Frames (PMF) to contain rogue APs and clients
- operates on centrally switched WLANs when the radio channel of the detecting AP matches the rogue AP's channel, and

- activates only when certain mode and channel conditions are met to secure the network against unauthorized devices.

### Feature history

*Table 10: Feature history table for rogue PMF containment*

| Feature name | Release information | Feature description |
|---|---|---|
| Rogue PMF containment | Cisco IOS XE 17.12.1 | Starting with Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1, the controller contains a rogue AP with 802.11w Protected Management Frame (PMF) on centrally switched wireless LANs. Containment occurs if the client-serving radio channel of a rogue-detecting AP matches the channel of the corresponding rogue AP. |

### Operational scenarios

PMF containment occurs in these scenarios:

- You can use PMF containment only in the local mode.
- You can perform PMF containment only for rogue clients that have not joined a rogue AP.
- You can use PMF containment only if a rogue-detecting AP shares the same primary channel with a rogue client.
- You cannot use PMF containment on DFS channels, even if a DFS channel serves as the client-serving channel.
- PMF containment works only if at least one WLAN operates on the serving radio.

For information about APs that support the Rogue PMF Containment feature, see Cisco AP Feature Matrix.

# Enable rogue PMF containment

Enable PMF containment to protect your wireless network from rogue APs.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure an AP profile and enter AP profile configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile
```

**Step 3** Enable PMF-denial rogue AP containment.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# rogue detection containment pmf-denial
```

**Step 4** Enable PMF-denial type deauthentication rogue AP containment.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-pmf-denial)# pmf-deauth
```

**Step 5** Return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# end
```

---

Rogue AP PMF containment is enabled for the specified AP profile.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap profile pmf-ap-profile
Device(config-ap-profile)# rogue detection containment pmf-denial
Device(config-pmf-denial)# pmf-deauth
Device(config-ap-profile)# end
```

# Verify PMF containment

To verify PMF containment and the relevant statistics, use these commands.

To view the summary of containment details for all AP radios, use this command

```
Device# show wireless wps rogue containment summary

Rogue Containment activities for each managed AP

AP: 687d.b45f.2ae0  Slot: 1
  Active Containments   : 3
   Containment Mode     : DEAUTH_PMF
   Rogue AP MAC         : 687d.b45f.2a2d
   Containment Channels : 40
```

To verify the rogue statistics, use this command:

```
Device# show wireless wps rogue stats
.
.
.
 States
  Alert                          : 256
  Internal                       : 0
  External                       : 0
  Contained                      : 1
  Containment-pending            : 0
  Threat                         : 0
  Pending                        : 0
```

```
Rogue Clients
  Total/Max Scale               : 20/16000
  Contained                     : 0
  Containment-pending           : 0
.
.
.
```

# Rogue detection - rogue channel width

A rogue detection configuration is a security measure that

- allows specifying channel width and band for detecting unauthorized APs, and
- filters rogue APs based on matching channel width criteria and band.

The **condition chan-width** command is introduced in Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1 allows you to set the minimum or maximum channel width for rogue detection.

# Configure rogue channel width (CLI)

Complete this task to configure rogue channel width.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Create or enable a rule.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule-name priority priority
```

**Step 3** Configure channel width and band for rogue detection.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rule)# condition chan-width {160MHz | 20MHz | 40MHz | 80MHz} band {24ghz |
5ghz | 6ghz}
```

If the classification is **Friendly**, this is the minimum channel width.

If the classification is **Custom**, **Malicious**, or **Delete**, this is the maximum channel width.

**Step 4** Use Step 4, 5, 6, or 7.

**Note**
Use only one of the Steps: 4, 5, 6, or 7 as required to classify rogue devices. Do not use all of them.

**Step 5** (Optional) Classify devices matching this rule as friendly.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rule)# classify friendly state {alert | external | internal}
```

The options are:

- **alert**: Sets the malicious rogue access point to alert mode.
- **external**: Acknowledges the presence of a rogue access point.
- **internal**: Trusts a foreign access point.

**Step 6** (Optional) Classify devices matching this rule as malicious.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rule)# classify malicious state {alert | contained}
```

The options are:

- **alert**: Sets the malicious rogue AP to alert mode.
- **contained**: Contains the rogue AP.

**Step 7** (Optional) Classify devices matching this rule as custom.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rule)# classify custom severity-score severity-score [name name] state {alert
 | contained}
```

Here the options are:

- *severity-score* : Custom classification severity score. The range is from 1 to 100.
- **name**: Defines the name for custom classification.
- *name* : Specifies the custom classification name.
- **state**: Defines the final state if rule is matched.
- **alert**: Sets the rogue AP to alert mode.
- **contained**: Contains the rogue AP.

**Step 8** Ignore the devices matching this rule.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rule)# classify delete
```

**Step 9** Return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rule)# end
```

---

The rogue channel width is configured.

```
Device# configure terminal
                Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule 1 priority 1
                Device(config-rule)# condition chan-width 20MHz band 5ghz
                Device(config-rule)# classify friendly state internal
```

```
                Device(config-rule)# classify malicious state alert
                Device(config-rule)# classify custom severity-score 12 name rule1 state
alert
                Device(config-rule)# classify delete
                Device(config-rule)# end
```

# Configure rogue classification rules (GUI)

Complete this task to configure rogue classification rules.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Wireless Protection Policies** > **Rogue AP Rules** to open the **Rogue Rules** window.

Rules that have already been created are listed in priority order. The name, type, status, state, match, and hit count of each rule is provided.

**Note**
To delete a rule, select the rule and click **Delete**.

**Step 2** Create a new rule with these steps:

a) Click **Add**.

b) In the **Add Rogue AP Rule** window, enter a name for the new rule, in the **Rule Name** field. Ensure that the name does not contain any spaces.

c) From the **Rule Type** drop-down list, choose one of these options to classify rogue APs matching this rule:

- **Friendly**
- **Malicious**
- **Unclassified**
- **Custom**

d) From the **State** drop-down list, configure the state of the rogue AP. This is the state when the rule matches the conditions for the rogue APs.

- **Alert**: A trap is generated when an ad hoc rogue is detected.
- **Internal**: A foreign ad hoc rogue is trusted.
- **External**: The presence of an ad hoc rogue is acknowledged.
- **Contain**: The ad hoc rogue is contained.
- **Delete**: The ad hoc rogue is removed.

**Note**
The **State** field is not displayed if you select **Unclassified** as the **Rule Type**.

e) If you chose the **Rule Type** as **Custom**, enter the **Severity Score** and the **Custom Name**.

f) Click **Apply to Device** to add this rule to the list of existing rules, or click **Cancel** to discard this new rule.

**Step 3** (Optional) Edit a rule using these steps:

a) Click the name of the rule that you want to edit.

b) In the **Edit Rogue AP Rule** page that is displayed, from the **Type** drop-down list, choose one of these options to classify rogue APs matching this rule:

- **Friendly**
- **Malicious**
- **Custom**

c) Configure the notification from the **Notify** drop-down list to **All**, **Global**, **Local**, or **None** after the rule is matched.

d) Configure the state of the rogue AP from the **State** drop-down list after the rule is matched.

e) From the **Match Operation** field, choose one of these options:

- **Match All**: The detected rogue AP must meet all of the conditions specified by the rule for the rule to be matched and the rogue AP to adopt the classification type of the rule.
- **Match Any**: The detected rogue AP must meet any of the conditions specified by the rule for the rule to be matched and the rogue AP to adopt the classification type of the rule. This is the default value.

f) To enable this rule, check the **Enable Rule** check box. The default is unchecked.

g) If you chose the **Rule Type** as **Custom**, enter the **Severity Score** and the **Classification Name**.

h) From the **Add Condition** drop-down list, choose one or more of the conditions that the rogue AP must meet:

- **None**: No condition is set for rogue AP detection.
- **client-count**: Condition requires that a minimum number of clients be associated to the rogue AP. For example, if the number of clients associated to the rogue AP is greater than or equal to the configured value, then the AP can be classified as malicious. If you choose this option, enter the minimum number of clients to be associated with the rogue AP in the **Minimum Number of Rogue Clients** field. The valid range is 1 to 10 (inclusive), and the default value is 0.
- **duration**: Condition requires that the rogue AP be detected for a minimum period of time. If you choose this option, enter a value for the minimum detection period in the **Time Duration** field. The valid range is 0 to 86400 seconds (inclusive), and the default value is 0 seconds.
- **encryption**: Condition requires that the advertised WLAN have specified encryption. Requires that the rogue AP's advertised WLAN does not have encryption enabled. If a rogue AP has encryption disabled, it is likely that more clients will try to associate with it. No further configuration is required for this option.
- **infrastructure**: Condition requires that the rogue AP's SSID (the SSID configured for the WLAN) be known to the controller. Select the **Manage SSID** check box to enable this configuration.
- **rssi**: Condition requires that the rogue AP have a minimum received signal strength indication (RSSI) value. For example, if the rogue AP has an RSSI that is greater than the configured value, then the AP could be classified as malicious. If you choose this option, enter the minimum RSSI value in the **Maximum RSSI** field. The valid range is 0 to –128 dBm (inclusive).

- **channel-width**: Condition requires that the rogue AP use the specified radio spectrum channel width for the specified radio band, as defined. The valid channel widths are 20, 40, 80, and 160MHz.
  - For APs to be classified as **Malicious**, **Custom** or **Delete**, it must match the value (equal or more) set in the **Minimum Channel Width** drop-down list.
  - For APs to be classified as **Friendly**, it must match the value (equal or less) set using an option from the **Maximum Channel Width** drop-down list.
- **ssid**: Condition requires that the rogue AP have a specific user-configured SSID. If you choose this option, enter the SSID in the **User Configured SSID** text field, and click **+** to add the SSID.
- **substring-ssid**: Condition requires that the rogue AP have a substring of the specific user-configured SSID. The controller searches the substring in the same occurrence pattern and returns a match if the substring is found in the SSID string.

**Step 4** Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.

**Step 5** Click **OK**.

The rogue classification rules are configured.

# Verify rogue channel width

To view channel width and band information of a classification rule, use these commands.



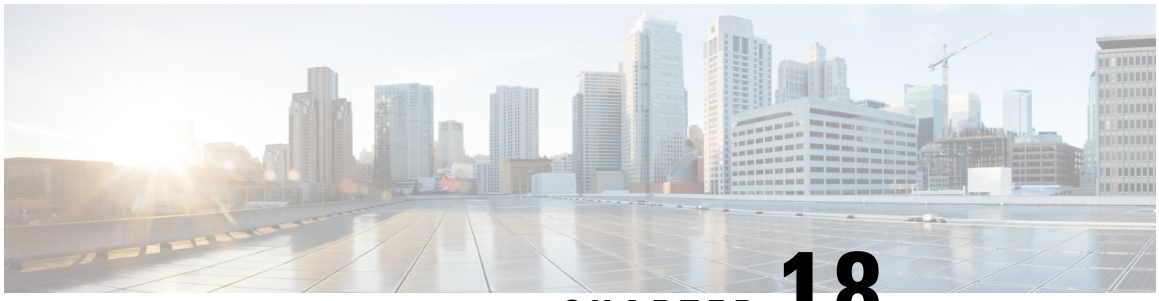
**Note** When the same BSSID is beaconing on multiple bands (2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, 6 GHz), the **show wireless wps rogue ap summary** command output displays information for the band with the highest RSSI.

```
Device# show wireless wps rogue rule detailed 1
Priority                                        : 1
Rule Name                                       : 1
Status                                          : Enabled
Type                                            : Friendly
State                                           : Alert
Match Operation                                 : Any
Notification                                    : Enabled
Hit Count                                       : 117
Condition :
  type                                          : chan-width
  Max value (MHz)                               : 40
  Band (GHz)                                    : 5GHz


Device# wireless wps rogue ap summary
.
.
.

MAC Address     Classification  State  #APs  #Clients  Last Heard
Highest-RSSI-Det-AP  RSSI  Channel  Ch.Width  GHz
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
002c.c849.9f00  Unclassified    Alert  2     0         10/18/2022 16:50:18  0cd0.f895.efc0
       -31        11        20  2.4
```

```
0062.ecf3.e73f  Unclassified    Alert  1     0         10/18/2022 16:50:16  0cd0.f895.efc0
       -46        36        80  5
4ca6.4d22.cbaf  Unclassified    Alert  3     0         10/18/2022 16:50:46  0cd0.f895.efc0
       -62        36       160  5
```



CHAPTER 18

# Coverage Hole Detection


- Coverage hole detection and correction, on page 153
- Configure coverage hole detection (GUI), on page 153
- Configure coverage hole detection (CLI), on page 154
- Configure CHD for RF tag profile (GUI), on page 155
- Configuring CHD for RF profile (CLI), on page 156


## Coverage hole detection and correction

A coverage hole detection and correction algorithm is a wireless LAN management mechanism that

- identifies areas with insufficient radio coverage for reliable performance
- alerts administrators when access points fail to provide adequate coverage, and
- adjusts AP transmit power to mitigate correctable coverage holes.

If clients on a lightweight AP are detected at threshold levels such as RSSI, failed client count, percentage of failed packets, and number of failed packets that are lower than those specified in the RRM configuration, the AP sends a “coverage hole” alert to the device. The alert indicates that clients cannot connect to a usable AP because of poor signal coverage.

The device discriminates between coverage holes that can and cannot be corrected. For coverage holes that can be corrected, the device mitigates the coverage hole by increasing the transmit power level for that specific AP.

The device does not mitigate coverage holes caused by clients that are unable to increase their transmit power or are statically set to a power level. Increasing downstream transmit power could increase interference in the network.

## Configure coverage hole detection (GUI)

Enable Coverage hole detection (CHD) to configure client accounting using the GUI.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **RRM**.

**Step 2** Configure the Radio Resource Management parameters for 802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz) and 802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz) radios, and flexible radio assignment parameters.

**Step 3** Check the **Enable Coverage Hole Detection** check box to activate the feature.

CHD is enabled. The system identifies and reports wireless coverage gaps.

# Configure coverage hole detection (CLI)

CHD is based on upstream RSSI metrics observed by the AP. Enable CHD on your wireless device using CLI commands.

**Note** To revert back radios from 5-GHz to 24-GHz for CHD, ensure that the 5-GHz radio is UP and client network preference value is other than the default.

### Before you begin

Disable the 802.11 network before applying the configuration.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Configure the 802.11 coverage level for data packets.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} rrm coverage data {fail-percentage |
packet-count | rssi-threshold} 60
```

The options are:

- **fail-percentage**: Configures 802.11b coverage failure rate threshold for uplink data packets.
- **packet-count**: Configures 802.11b coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplinkvoice packets.
- **rssi-threshold**: Configures 802.11b minimum receive coverage level for voice packets.

**Step 2** Configure the 802.11 Cisco AP coverage exception level as a percentage that ranges from zero to 100%.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage exception global 50
```

**Step 3** Configure the 802.11 Cisco AP client minimum exception level that ranges from one to 75 clients.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage level global 10
```

**Step 4** Configure the 802.11 coverage hole detection for voice packets.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage voice {fail-percentage | packet-count |
rssi-threshold} 10
```

The options are:

- **fail-percentage**: Configures 802.11b coverage failure rate threshold for uplink data packets.
- **packet-count**: Configures 802.11b coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplinkvoice packets.
- **rssi-threshold**: Configures 802.11b minimum receive coverage level for voice packets.

**Step 5** Save the configuration and return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

**Step 6** Verify the CHD details.

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} coverage
```

This displays CHD status and statistics.

**Note** If both the number and percentage of failed packets exceed the values entered in the **packet-count** and **fail-percentage** commands for a five-second period, the client enters a pre-alarm condition. The controller uses this information to distinguish between real and false coverage holes. False positives typically result from poor roaming logic implemented on most clients.

A coverage hole is detected if both the number and percentage of failed clients meet or exceed the values entered in the coverage level global and coverage exception global commands over a 90-second period. The controller determines if the coverage hole can be corrected and, if appropriate, increases the transmit power level for that specific AP.

# Configure CHD for RF tag profile (GUI)

Enable and configure CHD parameters for an RF tag profile using the GUI to ensure optimal wireless coverage.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **RRM**.

**Step 2** On the **Coverage** tab, select the **Enable Coverage Hole Detection** check box.

**Step 3** In the **Data Packet Count** and **Data Packet Percentage** fields, enter the number and percentage of data packets.

**Step 4** In the **Data RSSI Threshold** field, enter the actual value in dBm. The valid value ranges from -60 dBm to -90 dBm; the default value is –80 dBm.

**Step 5** In the **Voice Packet Count** and **Voice Packet Percentage** fields, enter the number and percentage of voice data packets.

**Step 6** In the **Voice RSSI Threshold** field, enter the actual value in dBm. The valid value ranges from -60 dBm to -90 dBm; the default value is –80 dBm.

**Step 7** In the **Minimum Failed Client per AP** field, enter the minimum number of clients on an AP with a signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) below the coverage threshold. The valid value ranges from one to 75 and the default value is three.

**Step 8** In the **Percent Coverage Exception Level per AP** field, enter the maximum desired percentage of clients on an AP's radio operating below the desired coverage threshold and click Apply. The valid value ranges from zero to 100% and the default value is 25%.

**Step 9** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring CHD for RF profile (CLI)

Enable CHD for a specified RF profile on your wireless device using CLI commands.

### Before you begin

Ensure that the RF profile is already created.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure the 802.11 coverage hole detection for data packets.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile alpha-rfprofile-24ghz
```

**Step 3** Configure the minimum RSSI value for data packets received by the AP. The valid values range is from -90 to -60 in dBm.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rf-profile)# coverage data rssi threshold -80
```

**Step 4** Save the configuration and return to privileged EXEC mode.

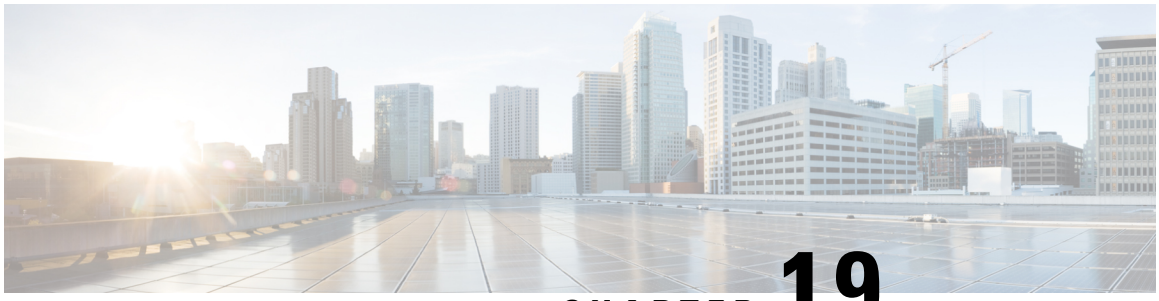
**Example:**

```
Device(config-rf-profile)# end
```

**Step 5** Verify the summary of the available RF profiles.

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile summary
```



CHAPTER 19

# Cisco Flexible Radio Assignment


- Flexible radio assignments, on page 159
- FRA role selection by AP model and client capability, on page 160
- Configure FRA Radio (CLI), on page 161
- Configure FRA radio (GUI), on page 163
- Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) Action, on page 164


## Flexible radio assignments

A flexible radio assignment is a configuration management feature that

- adapts AP radio hardware for multiple roles
- manages various Cisco AP models such as Cisco Aironet 2800 series, Cisco Aironet 3800 series, and Catalyst series, and
- optimizes client experience by adapting radio roles based on client capabilities.

### Feature history

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE 17.11.1 | Convert Redundant 2.4-GHz Radios to Monitor Mode | From this release, you can select the redundant dual-band radios in a network to operate in monitor only mode. |
| Cisco IOS XE 17.9.1 | Support for Cisco Catalyst 9166I Series Wi-Fi 6E Access Points | From this release onwards, the dual-band radio in Cisco Catalyst 9166I Series Wi-Fi 6E Access Points offers the ability to serve either in 5-GHz or 6-GHz band, as monitor or sniffer on the same AP. |
| Cisco IOS XE 16.10.1 | Flexible Radio Assignment | This feature was introduced. |

# FRA role selection by AP model and client capability

FRA performs multiple roles depending on the AP model and capabilities. FRA dynamically adjusts radio roles to optimize client performance and network coverage.

### FRA configuration modes

All FRA-capable models support these configuration options:

- Automatic: Allows FRA to manage role selection automatically.
- Client Serving: Manual role selection of 2.4-GHz, 5-GHz, or 6-GHz. FRA is not engaged.
- Monitor: Manual role selection. FRA is not engaged.
- Sniffer: Manual role selection. FRA is not engaged.

### 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz XOR models

FRA establishes the required 2.4-GHz coverage, identifies redundant radios, and converts them to either 5-GHz or a monitor role.

### Tri-radio and 5/6-GHz XOR models

FRA determines the 2.4-GHz coverage, and the redundant radios are converted to a monitor role.

### Role selection based on client capabilities

**5-GHz Tri-Radio**: FRA determines the best operating role for the 5-GHz tri-radio (as either a single 8x8 or a dual 4x4), based on connected client capabilities.

**5/6-GHz XOR Radios**: For the 5/6-GHz XOR radio, the band that the radios should operate on is based on the availability of 6-GHz client presence in the regulatory domain.

### FRA client steering and load balancing

FRA works with client steering to optimize how clients connect across available radios.

FRA also manages the resulting configurations of the radios to optimize client experience across flexible roles. Client Steering is responsible for load balancing client connections. For instance, from Cisco Aironet 2800 APs through Cisco Catalyst 9120 Series APs, all the internal antenna AP models perform dual 5-GHz roles as a Macro-Micro cell (a cell within a cell). The antennas on these models are built to support the directionality needed for the micro cell. FRA client steering helps to steer clients to the appropriate radio based on their position within the cell (closer clients are put on the micro cell).

### Macro-macro radio layouts

The FRA APs that support external antennas operate as Macro-Macro, which allows full control over power and channels.

### FRA on Cisco Catalyst 9130

In Cisco Catalyst 9130 APs , FRA also manages the operating mode of the band-locked 8x8 5-GHz tri-radio by monitoring client capabilities of connected clients. Mode selection depends on the client types.

**Wi-Fi 5 clients**: For instance, if the attached clients are largely Wi-Fi 5-capable clients, then, beam forming should be multi-user MIMO (MU-MIMO), ensuring better capacity with dual 4x4 5-GHz cells.

**Wi-Fi 6 clients**:

#### FRA on CW9166 AP

# AP models and types of hardware managed by FRA

To provide comprehensive details on the AP models and types of hardware managed by Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) technology, enabling users to identify the appropriate access points for their specific wireless network needs and configurations.

| AP Model | FRA Radios | Functions |
|---|---|---|
| **Cisco Aironet 2800 Series Access Points** | 2.4/5 XOR | 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz or dual 5-GHz operations |
| **Cisco Aironet 3800 Series Access Points** | 2.4/5 XOR | 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz or dual 5-GHz operations |
| **Cisco Aironet 4800 Series Access Points** | 2.4/5 XOR | 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz or dual 5-GHz operations |
| **Cisco Catalyst 9120 Series Access Points** | 2.4/5 XOR | 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz or dual 5-GHz operations |
| **Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series Access Points** | 5-GHz Tri-Radio | 2.4-GHz 4x4 and single 5-GHz 8x8, or 2.4-GHz 4x4 and dual 5-GHz 4x4 |

# Configure FRA Radio (CLI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enable privileged EXEC mode

**Example:**

```
Device# enable
```

Enters privileged EXEC mode.

**Step 2** Enter configuration mode

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 3** Enable or disable FRA

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# [no] ap fra
```

Enables or disables FRA on the AP.

**Step 4** Configure FRA interval

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap fra interval 3
```

Configures the FRA interval in hours. The range is 1 to 24 hours.

**Note**
The FRA interval has to be more than the configured RRM interval.

**Step 5** Configure the FRA sensitivity

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap fra sensitivity high
```

Configures the FRA sensitivity.

- **high**: Sets the FRA Coverage Overlap Sensitivity to **high**.
- **medium**: Sets the FRA Coverage Overlap Sensitivity to **medium**.
- **low**: Sets the FRA Coverage Overlap Sensitivity to **low**.

**Step 6** Exit global configuration mode

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode.

**Step 7** Reverts to XOR radio state

**Example:**

```
Device# ap fra revert all auto
```

Rolls back the XOR Radio state.

- **all**: Reverts all XOR Radios
- **auto-only**: Revert only XOR radios currently in automatic band selection.
- **auto**: Sets the XOR radios in automatic band selection.
- **static**: Sets the XOR radio in static 2.4-GHz band.

**Step 8** View the configuration and statistics of 802.11 APs

```
Device# show ap dot11 5ghz summary
```

Shows the configuration and statistics of 802.11 Cisco APs

**Step 9** View the current FRA configuration

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap fra

FRA State                                                 : Disabled
FRA Sensitivity                                           : medium (95%)
FRA Interval                                              : 1 Hour(s)

AP Name              MAC Address       Slot ID  Current-Band      COF %      Suggested Mode
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
AP00A6.CA36.295A     006b.f09c.8290    0        2.4GHz            None       2.4GHz

COF : Coverage Overlap Factor

test_machine#
```

Shows the current FRA configuration.

**Step 10** View the current 802.11 dual-band parameters

**Example:**

```
Device# show ap name config dot11 dual-band
```

Shows the current 802.11 dual-band parameters in a given AP.

# Configure FRA radio (GUI)

The purpose of configuring the FRA radio is to optimize the radio assignment for overlapping coverage areas, improving network efficiency and performance. This includes enabling the Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) status, setting intervals, and adjusting sensitivity levels to ensure optimal coverage.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **RRM** > **FRA**.

**Step 2** In the **Flexible Radio Assignment** window, enable FRA status and determine the overlapping 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz coverage for each AP, choose **Enabled** in the **FRA Status** field. By default, the FRA status is disabled.

**Step 3** Under the From the **FRA Interval** drop-down list, choose the FRA run interval. The interval values range from 1 hour to 24 hours. Choose the FRA run interval value only after you enable the FRA status.

**Step 4** From the **FRA Sensitivity** drop-down list, choose the percentage of Coverage Overlap Factor (COF) required to consider a radio as redundant. You can select the supported value only after you enable the FRA status.

The supported values are as follows:

- Low: 100 percent
- Medium (default): 95 percent
- High: 90 percent

The **Last Run** and **Last Run Time** fields will show the time FRA was run last and the time it was run.

**Step 5** Check the **Client Aware** check box to take decisions on redundancy.

When enabled, the **Client Aware** feature monitors the dedicated 5-GHz radio and when the client load passes a pre-set threshold, automatically changes the Flexible Radio assignment from a monitor role into a 5-GHz role, effectively doubling the capacity of the cell on demand. Once the capacity crisis is over and Wi-Fi load returns to normal, the radios resume their previous roles.

**Step 6** In the **Client Select** field, enter a value for client selection. The valid values range between 0 and 100 percent. The default value is 50 percent.

This means that if the dedicated 5-GHz interface reaches 50% channel utilization, this will trigger the monitor role dual-band interface to transition to a 5-GHz client-serving role.

**Step 7** In the **Client Reset** field, enter a reset value for the client. The valid values range between 0 and 100 percent. The default value is 5 percent.

Once the AP is operating as a dual 5-GHz AP, this setting indicates the reduction in the combined radios' overall channel utilization required to reset the dual-band radio to monitor role.

**Step 8** Click **Apply** to save the configuration.

After completing the configuration, the FRA system will be active, improving the radio coverage efficiency by managing overlapping frequencies and enhancing redundancy decisions. This results in better utilization of network resources and coverage optimization.

# Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) Action

## Flexible radio assignment actions

Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) evaluates 2.4-GHz radio coverage to identify overlapping coverage causing radio interference. If there is an overlapping coverage, the dual-band radio moves to either 5-GHz client serving or monitor role.

### Feature history for flexible radio assignment action

*Table 11: Feature history for FRA Action*

| Release | Feature | Feature information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1 | Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) Action | In Cisco IOS-XE 17.10.1 and earlier releases, the FRA moves the redundant dual-band radios to either 5-GHz client-serving role or monitor role. |
| Cisco IOS XE Dublin17.11.1 | Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) Action | From Cisco IOS-XE 17.11.1 onwards, you can select the redundant dual-band radios in a network to operate in monitor only mode. |

### Release Information

In Cisco IOS-XE 17.10.1 and earlier releases, the FRA moves the redundant dual-band radios to either 5-GHz client-serving role or monitor role. From Cisco IOS-XE 17.11.1 onwards, you can set redundant dual-band radios in a network to operate in monitor-only mode.

**Note** The FRA action feature is disabled by default.

# Configure FRA action in default RF profile (CLI)

Configure the FRA action in the default RF profile to optimize radio frequency management.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Configure terminal

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 2** Configure the FRA action

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz fra action monitor
```

Configures the FRA action to monitor mode, moving all redundant dual-band APs solely to the monitor role.

**Step 3** Exit configuration mode

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Upon completion, the FRA action is set, redundancy in dual-band radios is handled efficiently, and the system returns to privileged EXEC mode.

# Configure FRA action in 2.4-GHz RF profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Configure terminal

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

Enters global configuration mode

**Step 2** Configure the RF profile name

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile alpha-rfprofile-24ghz
```

Configures the RF profile name and enters RF profile configuration mode.

**Step 3** Configure the FRA action as monitor

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rf-profile)# fra action monitor
```

Configures the FRA action as monitor, and moves all redundant dual-band radios to monitor role only.

**Step 4** Exit configuration mode

**Example:**

```
Device(config-rf-profile)# end
```

Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

# Verify FRA action configuration

To view the selected FRA action, use the following command:

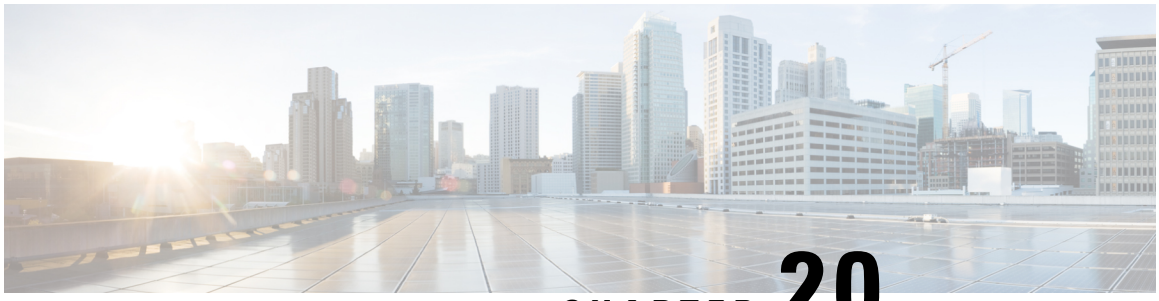
```
Device# show ap fra
FRA State              : Enabled
FRA Freeze             : Disabled
FRA Operation State    : Up
FRA Sensitivity        : higher (85%)
FRA Interval           : 1 Hour(s)
Service Priority       : Coverage
Client Aware FRA       : Enabled
  Client Select        : 25%
  Client Reset         : 5%
FRA Action             : 2.4GHz/Monitor
  Last Run             : 3069 seconds ago
```

To view the FRA action details in an AP RF profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap rf-profile name madhu-rf-profile-24 detail | sec FRA
Client Aware FRA                 : Disabled
FRA Action                       : 2.4GHz/Monitor
```

To view the radio mode and role in an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP7872.5DED.CB74 config slot 0 | sec Attribute
Attributes for Slot 0
  Radio Type                                    : 802.11n - 2.4/5 GHz
  Radio Mode                                    : Monitor
  Radio Role                                    : Monitor
    Assignment Method                           : Auto
    Monitor Mode Reason                         : Automatically Switched by FRA
```



CHAPTER 20

# XOR Radio Support


- Dual-band radios in Cisco AP models, on page 167
- Configure default XOR radio support (CLI), on page 168
- Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (GUI), on page 170
- Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (CLI), on page 171
- Verify XOR radio support, on page 173


# Dual-band radios in Cisco AP models

A dual-band radio is a device category that

- offers connectivity on more than one frequency band (such as 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz)
- provides flexibility in network configuration, and
- is used in multiple Cisco AP models like the 2800, 3800, 4800, and 9120 series.

### Feature history table

*Table 12: Feature history table for dual-band radios in Cisco AP models*

| Feature name | Release information | Feature description |
|---|---|---|
| Dual-band (XOR) radio support | Cisco IOS XE 16.10.1 | The Dual-band (XOR) radio support offers the ability to serve 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz bands or passively monitor both the bands on the same AP.<br>These APs can be configured to serve clients in 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands, or serially scan both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands on the flexible radio while the main 5 GHz radio serves clients. |

### Key features of dual-band radios in Cisco APs

The XOR radio support can be steered manually or automatically.

- Manual steering of a band on a radio: The band on the XOR radio can only be changed manually.
- Automatic client and band steering on the radios is managed by the Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) feature that monitors and changes the band configurations as per site requirements.

### Client steering

When a radio moves between bands (from 2.4 GHz to 5 GHz and vice versa), clients need to be steered to get an optimal distribution across radios. When an AP has two radios in the 5 GHz band, client steering algorithms contained in the FRA algorithms are used to steer a client between the same band co-resident radios

### Cisco APs and dual-band radios

Cisco 2800, 3800, 4800, and 9120 series AP models are equipped with dual-band (XOR) radios. These models have

- radios that operate on either 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz bands, or
- the ability to assively monitor both the bands on the same AP.

These APs can be configured to serve clients in 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands, or serially scan both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands on the flexible radio while the main 5 GHz radio serves clients.

Cisco AP models up to the Cisco 9120 APs are designed to support dual 5 GHz band operations with the *i* model supporting a dedicated Macro or Micro architecture and the *e* and *p* models supporting Macro or Macro. The Cisco 9130AXI APs support dual 5 GHz operations as Macro or Micro cell.

# Configure default XOR radio support (CLI)

Complete this task to configure the basic settings for XOR radio support.

### Before you begin

**Note** The default radio points to the XOR radio hosted on slot 0.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enable the priviledged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device> enable
```

**Step 2** Configure the 802.11 dual-band external antenna gain on the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band antenna ext-ant-gain antenna_gain_value
```

Enter external antenna gain value in multiple of .5 dBi units (that is, an integer value 4 means 4 x 0.5 = 2 dBi of gain).

**Step 3** Shut down the default dual-band radio.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band shutdown
```

Use the **no** form of the command to enable the radio.

**Step 4** Switch to the client-serving mode of the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band role manual client-serving
```

**Step 5** Switch to the 2.4 GHz radio band.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band band 24ghz
```

The basic configuration of the XOR radio is completed.

**Example**

```
Device> enable
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band antenna ext-ant-gain 2
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band shutdown
Device# Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band role manual client-serving
Device# Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band band 24ghz
```

**What to do next**

Continue with the configuration steps listed in the "Configure advanced settings" to complete the configuration.

## Configure advanced settings (CLI)

Complete this task to configure the advanced settings for XOR radio support, such as, transmit power, channel, channel width, CleanAir settings and so on.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Configure the transmit power for the radio on the AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band txpower {transmit_power_level | auto}
```

**Note**
When an FRA-capable radio (slot 0 on 9120 AP[for instance]) is set to Auto, you cannot configure static channel and Txpower on this radio.

If you want to configure static channel and Txpower on this radio, you will need to change the radio role to Manual Client-Serving mode.

**Step 2** Configure the channel number for the dual band.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band channel 40
```

The range of the *channel-number* is from 1 to 173.

**Step 3** (Optional) Enable the auto channel assignment for the dual-band.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band channel auto
```

**Step 4** Configure the channel width for the dual band.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band channel width {20 MHz | 40 MHz | 80 MHz | 160 MHz}
```

**Step 5** Enable the Cisco CleanAir management on the dual-band radio.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band cleanair
```

**Step 6** Configure a band for the Cisco CleanAir feature.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name [no] dot11 dual-band cleanair band 5 GHz
```

Selects a band for the Cisco CleanAir feature.

Use the **no** form of this command to disable the Cisco CleanAir feature.

**Step 7** Configure the 802.11n dual-band antenna and antenna ports selection for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band dot11n antenna {A | B | C | D}
```

Here, A, B, C, and D are the antenna ports.

---

The configuration of the additional features for dual-band (XOR) radios are completed.

**Example**

```
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band txpower auto
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band channel 40
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band channel width 40 MHz
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band cleanair
Device# ap name ap-name [no] dot11 dual-band cleanair band 5 GHz
Device# ap name ap-name  dot11 dual-band dot11n antenna A
```

# Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (GUI)

Complete this task to configure XOR radio for the specified slot number.

**Procedure**

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** In the **Dual-Band Radios** section, select the AP for which you want to configure dual-band radios.

The AP name, MAC address, CleanAir capability and slot information for the AP are displayed. If the Hyperlocation method is HALO, it displays the antenna PID and antenna design specifics.

**Step 3** Click **Configure**.

**Step 4** In the **General** tab, set the **Admin Status** as required.

**Step 5** Set the **CleanAir Admin Status** field to Enable or Disable.

**Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

The XOR radio support for the specified slot number has been configured.

# Configure XOR radio support for the specified slot number (CLI)

Complete this task to configure XOR radio for a specified slot number.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enable the priviledged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device> enable
```

**Step 2** Configure dual-band antenna for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 antenna ext-ant-gain
external_antenna_gain_value
```

Here, *external_antenna_gain_value* is the external antenna gain value in multiples of .5 dBi unit. The range is from zero to 40.

**Note**

- For APs supporting self-identifying antennas (SIA), the gain depends on the antenna, and not on the AP model. The gain is learned by the AP and there is no need for controller configuration.
- For APs that do not support SIA, the APs send the antenna gain in the configuration payload, where the default antenna gain depends on the AP model.

**Step 3** Configure the current band for XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 band {24ghz | 5ghz}
```

**Step 4** Configures dual-band channel for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 channel {channel-number | auto | width [160
 | 20 | 40 | 80]}
```

The range of the *channel_number* is from one to 165.

**Step 5** Enable the Cisco CleanAir feature for dual-band radios hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 cleanair band {24Ghz | 5ghz}
```

**Step 6** Configure 802.11n dual-band parameters hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 dot11n antenna {A | B | C | D}
```

Here are the antenna configurations.

**A** : Enables antenna port A.

**B** : Enables antenna port B.

**C** : Enables antenna port C.

**D** : Enables antenna port D.

**Step 7** Configure dual-band role for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 role {auto | manual [client-serving | monitor]}
```

Here are the dual-band roles.

- **auto** : refers to the automatic radio role selection.
- **manual** : refers to the manual radio role selection.

**Step 8** Disable dual-band radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name [no] dot11 dual-band slot 0 shutdown
```

Use the **no** form of this command to enable the dual-band radio.

**Step 9** Configure dual-band transmit power for XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific AP.

**Example:**

```
Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band slot 0 txpower {tx-power-level | auto}
```

Here,

- *tx_power_level* : is the transmit power level in dBm. The range is from 1 to 8.
- **auto** : enables auto-RF.

---

The XOR radio for the specified slot number is configured.

### Example

```
Device> enable
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 antenna ext-ant-gain 2
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 band 24ghz
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 channel 3
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 cleanair band 24Ghz
```

```
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 dot11n antenna A
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 [no] dot11 dual-band slot 0 shutdown
Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 txpower 2
```

# Verify XOR radio support

To verify the XOR radio support parameters, use these **show** commands:

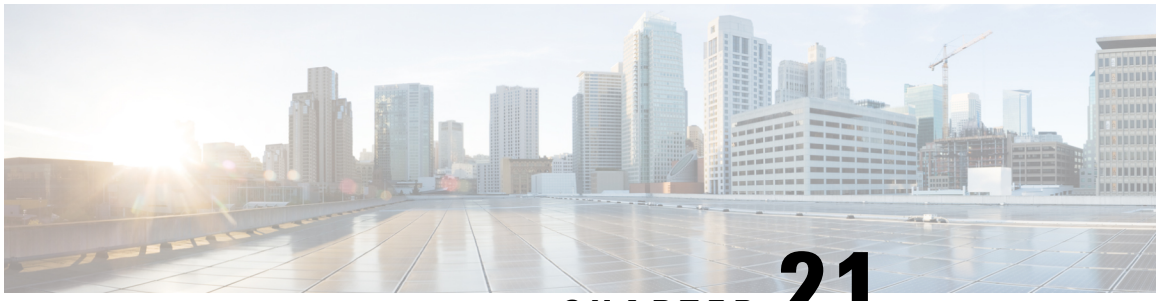
### Verify auto-RF information

To display the auto-RF information for a Cisco AP, use the **show ap name** *ap-name* **auto-rf dot11 dual-band** command.

```
Device# show ap name cisco-ap-name auto-rf dot11 dual-band
```

### Verify the list of BSSIDs

To display the list of BSSIDs for a Cisco AP, use the **show ap name** *ap-name* **wlan dot11 dual-band** command.



CHAPTER 21

# Cisco Receiver Start of Packet


- Receiver start of packet detection threshold, on page 175
- Restrictions for Rx SOP, on page 175
- Permitted range for the Rx SOP threshold, on page 175
- Known behavior, on page 176
- Configure Rx SOP (CLI), on page 176
- Customize RF profile (CLI), on page 177


## Receiver start of packet detection threshold

A receiver start of packet (Rx SOP) detection threshold is a wireless radio configuration setting that

- determines the Wi-Fi signal level (measured in dBm) at which an APs radio demodulates and decodes a received packet
- affects radio sensitivity and the effective size of the receiver cell, and
- influences how clients are distributed across APs within a wireless network.

Rx SOP is used to address clients with weak RF links, sticky clients, and to support client load balancing across APs. Rx SOP helps optimize network performance in high-density deployments, such as stadiums and auditoriums. In these environments, APs need to prioritize the nearest and strongest clients.

## Restrictions for Rx SOP

- Rx SOP configuration does not apply to the third radio module pluggable on Cisco Aironet Series APs.
- Rx SOP configurations are supported only in Local, FlexConnect, Bridge, and Flex+Bridge modes.
- Rx SOP configurations are not supported in the FlexConnect+PPPoE, FlexConnect+PPPoE-wIPS, and FlexConnect+OEAP submodes.

## Permitted range for the Rx SOP threshold

This table shows the allowed Rx SOP (Receiver Start of Packet) threshold settings.

- It is for different radio bands and threshold levels.

*Table 13: Rx SOP Threshold*

| Radio Band | Threshold High | Threshold Medium | Threshold Low |
|---|---|---|---|
| **2.4 GHz** | -79 dBm | -82 dBm | -85 dBm |
| **5 GHz** | -76 dBm | -78 dBm | -80 dBm |

# Known behavior

Regardless of the radio mode, the controller sets the radio with the specified RX-SOP value. The AP then decides whether to use this value.

- For the XOR radio (Slot 0), when the AP is in monitor mode, the RX-SOP value sent to the AP depends on the frequency band used before switching to monitor mode. If the radio operated in the 2.4 GHz band, the RX-SOP parameters are selected from the 2.4 GHz RF profile or the default RF profile. If it operated in the 5 GHz band, the RX-SOP parameters are chosen from the 5 GHz RF profile or the default RF profile configured for the AP.

# Configure Rx SOP (CLI)

Adjust the Rx SOP threshold for high-density Wi-Fi environments.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
DeviceDevice# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure the 802.11bg or 802.11a radio Rx SOP threshold.

**Example:**

```
DeviceDevice(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rx-sop threshold {auto | custom | high | low
 | medium}
```

**Step 3** Return to the privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# end
```

**Step 4** Display the 802.11bg or 802.11a high-density parameters.

**Example:**

```
DeviceDevice# show ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} high-density
```

**Step 5** Display the summary of all the connected Cisco APs.

**Example:**

```
DeviceDevice# show ap summary
```

# Customize RF profile (CLI)

Customize 802.11 RF profile parameters.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
DeviceDevice# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure the 802.11a and 11b parameters.

**Example:**

```
DeviceDevice(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} rf-profile profile-name AHS_2.4ghz
```

**Step 3** **Example:**

```
DeviceDevice(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} rf-profile profile-name AHS_2.4ghz
```

**Step 4** Configure the 802.11bg, 802.11a high-density parameters.

**Example:**

```
DeviceDevice(config-rf-profile)# high-density rx-sop threshold {auto | custom | high | low
 | medium}
```

**Step 5** Display the summary of all the connected Cisco APs.

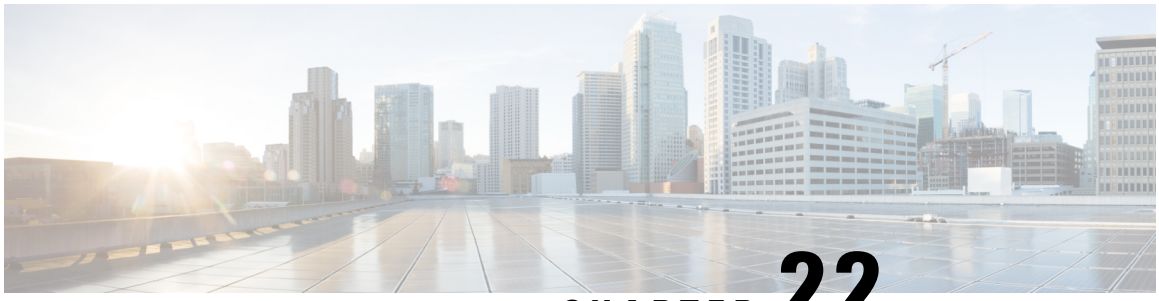
**Example:**

```
DeviceDevice# show ap summary
```

**Step 6** Return to the privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# end
```



CHAPTER 22

# Client Limit


- Client limits, on page 179
- Configure client limit per WLAN (GUI), on page 180
- Configure client limit per WLAN (CLI), on page 180


# Client limits

A client limit is a wireless network feature that

- enforces a maximum number of client devices that can connect to an AP, and
- allows you to configure the client cap per AP radio or per WLAN.

### Feature history

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 14: Feature history for client limits***

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Client Limit and Delete** | Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.8.x | From this release, client limiting is supported per AP, per radio, and per AP-radio per WLAN. Client limiting is supported on the Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series APs in FlexConnect mode. The following commands are introduced:<br>• association-limit<br>• high-density clients count |
| **Client limits** | Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.x | This feature enforces a maximum number of client devices per AP, supporting per-AP, per-radio, and per-WLAN configurations. |

# Configure client limit per WLAN (GUI)

Restrict the number of client devices that can connect to a specific WLAN.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click a WLAN from the list of WLANs.

**Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.

**Step 4** Under the **Max Client Connections** settings, enter the client limit for **Per WLAN**, **Per AP Per WLAN**, and **Per AP Radio Per WLAN**.

**Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configure client limit per WLAN (CLI)

Set the maximum number of clients permitted to associate with a specific WLAN, AP, or AP radio using CLI commands.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the privileged EXEC and the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# enable
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Specify the WLAN name.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wlan wlan-name ramban
```

**Step 3** Configure the maximum number of clients that is associated to the given WLAN.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wlan)# client association limit maximum-clients-per-WLAN 110
```

**Note**
Depending on the primary AP in the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network, the maximum number of clients supported varies. For more information about the client count limit per WLAN in a Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network, see #unique_218 unique_218_Connect_42_table_akg_qkj_lz

*Table 15: Scale Supported in a Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller Network*

**Step 4** Configure the maximum number of clients that is associated to an AP radio in the WLAN.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wlan)# client association limit radio max-clients-per-AP-radio-per-WLAN 100
```

**Step 5** Return to the privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode.

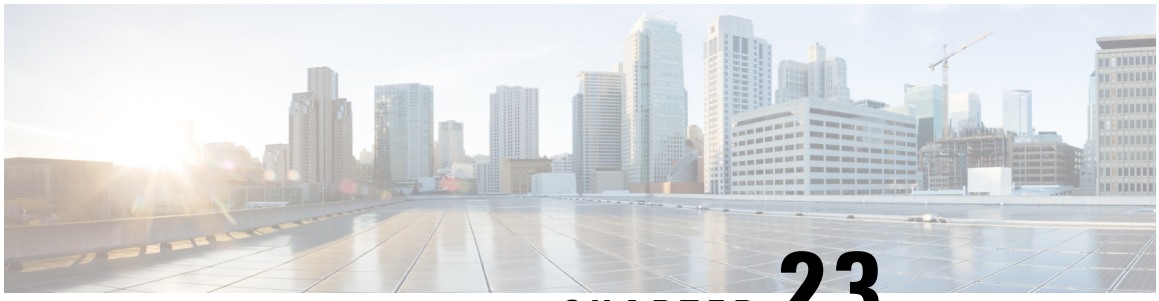
**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

**Step 6** Verify the current configuration of the WLAN and the corresponding client association limits.

**Example:**

```
Device# show wlan id wlan-id 2
```



CHAPTER 23

# IP Theft


- IP theft, on page 183
- Lower the idle timeout to prevent false IP theft, on page 183
- IP preference levels for IP theft detection, on page 184
- Configure IP theft (GUI), on page 184
- Configure IP theft (CLI), on page 184
- Configure the IP theft exclusion timer (CLI), on page 185
- Verify IP theft configuration, on page 185


## IP theft

An IP Theft feature is a wireless controller security mechanism that

- detects duplicate IP address usage among connected clients
- assigns precedence to clients based on a defined preference order, and
- blocks or excludes clients attempting to use IP addresses already assigned to others.

The IP Theft feature is enabled by default on the controller. If a wireless client tries to use an IP address assigned to a wired client, the controller marks it as a theft attempt.

## Lower the idle timeout to prevent false IP theft

Lower the idle timeout for devices that may switch WLANs while out of range to prevent incorrect IP theft events.

When a device moves between WLANs while out of range of APs, it may retain the same IPv6 link-local address but present a different MAC address. Because the controller cannot immediately detect the move, it may interpret the reuse of the same IP address as an IP theft event.

To avoid this, lower the idle timeout value so the controller can promptly remove stale client entries from the original WLAN. This helps ensure that address reuse by legitimate roaming devices is not mistakenly treated as a theft attempt.

# IP preference levels for IP theft detection

The controller uses IP preference levels to resolve conflicts when multiple clients claim the same IP address. These levels determine which client has priority based on the method used to learn the IP address. Preference order for IPv4 clients:

- DHCPv4
- ARP
- Data packets

Preference order for IPv6 clients:

- DHCPv6
- NDP (Neighbor Discovery Protocol)
- Data packets

Additional rules:

- Static wired clients always receive higher preference than dynamically assigned clients.
- Wired clients are prioritized over wireless clients when IP conflicts occur.

# Configure IP theft (GUI)

Prevent unauthorized use or reuse of IP addresses by configuring IP theft protections.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Wireless Protection Policies** > **Client Exclusion Policies**.

**Step 2** Check the **IP Theft or IP Reuse** check box.

**Step 3** Click **Apply**.

# Configure IP theft (CLI)

Enable IP theft detection and configure client exclusion policies using CLI.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure the client exclusion policy.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless wps client-exclusion ip-theft
```

# Configure the IP theft exclusion timer (CLI)

Set the exclusion timer to temporarily block IP addresses suspected of theft on a WLAN.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure a WLAN policy profile and enter the wireless policy configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless profile policy profile-policy default-policy-profile
```

**Step 3** Specify the timeout, in seconds.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-policy)# exclusionlist timeout time-in-seconds 5
```

The valid range is from zero-2147483647. Enter zero for no timeout.

# Verify IP theft configuration

Use the command to check if the IP theft feature is enabled or not:

```
Device# show wireless wps summary

Client Exclusion Policy
  Excessive 802.11-association failures   : Enabled
  Excessive 802.11-authentication failures: Enabled
  Excessive 802.1x-authentication         : Enabled
  IP-theft                                : Enabled
  Excessive Web authentication failure    : Enabled
  Cids Shun failure                       : Enabled
  Misconfiguration failure                : Enabled
  Failed Qos Policy                       : Enabled
  Failed Epm                              : Enabled
```

Use the commands to view additional details about the IP theft feature:

```
Device# show wireless client summary

Number of Local Clients: 1

MAC Address    AP Name                WLAN State              Protocol Method     Role
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
000b.bbb1.0001 SimAP-1                2    Run                11a      None       Local


Number of Excluded Clients: 1

MAC Address    AP Name                WLAN State              Protocol Method
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10da.4320.cce9 charlie2               2    Excluded           11ac     None


Device# show wireless device-tracking database ip

IP                              VLAN  STATE       DISCOVERY   MAC
  ------------------------------------------------------------------------
  20.20.20.2                     20    Reachable   Local       001e.14cc.cbff
  20.20.20.6                     20    Reachable   IPv4 DHCP   000b.bbb1.0001

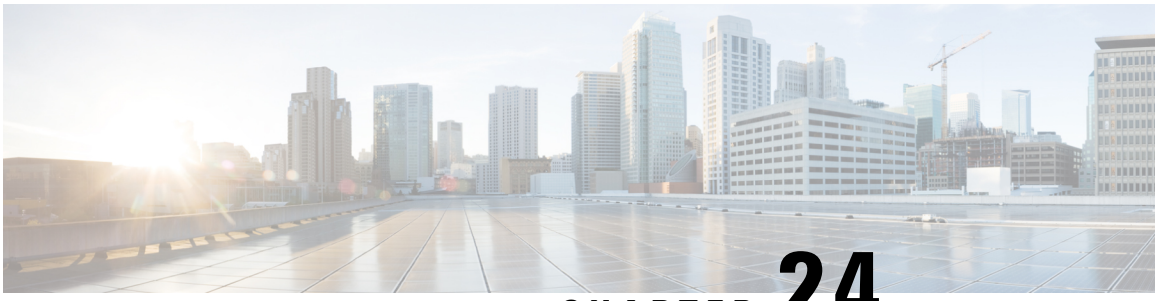

Device# show wireless exclusionlist

Excluded Clients

MAC Address       Description          Exclusion Reason               Time Remaining
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10da.4320.cce9                         IP address theft                   59


Device# show wireless exclusionlist client mac 12da.4820.cce9 detail

Client State : Excluded
Client MAC Address : 12da.4820.cce9
Client IPv4 Address: 20.20.20.6
Client IPv6 Address: N/A
Client Username: N/A
Exclusion Reason : IP address theft
Authentication Method : None
Protocol: 802.11ac
AP MAC Address : 58ac.780e.08f0
AP Name: charlie2
AP slot : 1
Wireless LAN Id : 2
Wireless LAN Name: mhe-ewlc
VLAN Id : 20
```



CHAPTER 24

# Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery


- Unscheduled automatic power save delivery overview, on page 187
- View unscheduled automatic power save delivery, on page 187


## Unscheduled automatic power save delivery overview

Unscheduled automatic power save delivery (U-APSD) is a power-saving mechanism that

- is defined as a QoS facility in IEEE 802.11e standards
- delivers multiple downlink packets in response to a single uplink trigger, and
- reduces wireless latency and extends mobile device battery life

### Additional information

- U-APSD activates automatically when WMM (Wi-Fi Multimedia) is enabled.
- U-APSD eliminates the need for polling individual packets at the access point.

Possible sequence for U-APSD operation:

A client device sends a single uplink trigger packet. In response, the access point delivers multiple queued downlink packets based on that single trigger.

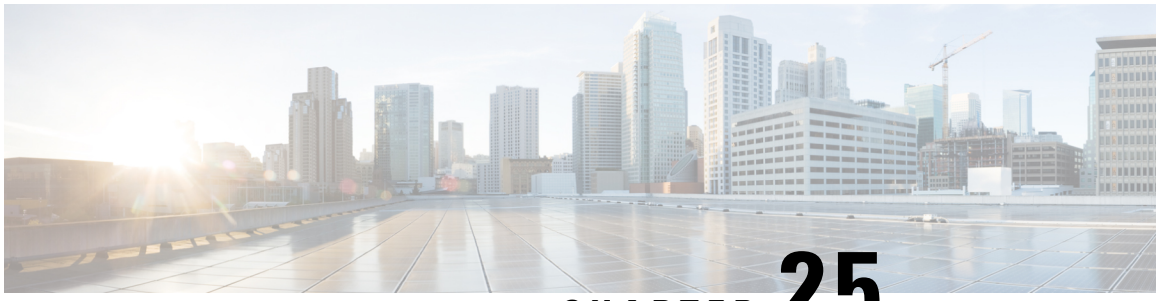
## View unscheduled automatic power save delivery

Show detailed information of a client by MAC address.

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 2B:5B:B3:18:56:E9 detail
Output Policy State : Unknown
Output Policy Source : Unknown
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Enabled
U-APSD value : 15
APSD ACs    : BK(T/D), BE, VI(T/D), VO(T/D)
Power Save : OFF
Current Rate :
```

```
--------------------------
BK : Background
BE : Best Effort
VI : Video
VO : Voice.

T: UAPSD Trigger Enabled
D: UAPSD Delivery Enabled
T/D : UAPSD Trigger and Delivery Enabled
```



CHAPTER 25

# Target Wake Time


- Target wake time, on page 189
- Configure target wake time at radio level (CLI), on page 191
- Configuring target wake time on WLAN, on page 192
- Configure target wake time (GUI), on page 194
- Verify target wakeup time, on page 194


## Target wake time

Target wakeup time (TWT) is a power-saving mechanism that

- allows an AP to schedule specific times for devices or stations (STAs) to wake up and communicate
- enables those devices to remain in a power-saving state for longer periods, and
- reduces overall network congestion.

### Feature history

*Table 16: Feature history for target wake time*

| Feature name | Release information | Feature description |
|---|---|---|
| Target wake time | Cisco IOS XE 17.2.1 | Target wake time (TWT) allows an AP to manage activity in the Wi-Fi network, in order to minimize medium contention between Stations (STAs), and to reduce the required amount of time that an STA in the power-save mode needs to be awake.<br><br>This is achieved by allocating STAs to operate at non-overlapping times, and/or frequencies, and concentrate the frame exchanges in predefined service periods. |

With 802.11e, the new power-saving mechanism was introduced that helps voice-capable Wi-Fi devices, as voice packets are transmitted at short time intervals, typically 20 ms/sec.

The existing Wi-Fi client power-saving mechanisms have been in use since 802.11b, where the client devices sleep between AP beacons or multiple beacons, waking up only when they have data to transmit (they can transmit at any time, as AP does not sleep).

### Delivery traffic indication map

A Delivery Traffic Indication Map (DTIM) is a bit-map that

- is contained within beacons
- indicates an AP has buffered downlink traffic, and
- specifies which particular clients are awaiting transmission.

If a client has a DTIM bit set, it can retrieve data from the AP by sending a Power-Save Poll (PS-Poll) frame to the AP. This power-save scheme is effective but only allows clients to doze for a small beacon interval. Clients still need to wake up several times per second to read DTIM from the beacon frame of the AP.

### Unscheduled automatic power-save delivery

Unscheduled automatic power-save delivery (U-APSD) allows a power-save client to sleep at intervals within a beacon period. AP buffers the downlink traffic until the client wakes up and requests its delivery.

**Note** By default Target Wake Time (TWT) is disabled on the controller. To enable TWT, run the **ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} dot11ax twt-broadcast** command.

# Optimize power-saving with target wake time

TWT capable STA can either negotiate an individual TWT agreement with TWT-scheduling AP, or it can elect to be part or member of Broadcast TWT agreement existing on the AP. An STA does not need to be aware that a TWT service period can be used to exchange frames with other STAs.

Any frame exchanges that occur during a TWT service period can use any Physical Protocol Data Unit (PPDU) format that is supported by both the AP and STA involved in that TWT agreement. This includes formats such as High Efficiency Multi-User PPDU (HE MU PPDU) and High Efficiency Trigger-Based PPDU (HE TB PPDU).

The TWT agreement types are:

- **Individual TWT**: An individual TWT session is established through negotiation between the AP and a single STA. This arrangement provides a dedicated service period for both downlink and uplink communication between the AP and that specific STA. The expected traffic is highly concentrated within the negotiated service period, achieving up to 99% accuracy. Each service period begins at a defined offset from the Target Beacon Transmission Time (TBTT), lasts for the agreed-upon duration, and then repeats at regular intervals.
- **Solicited TWT**: In a solicited TWT agreement, the STA initiates the TWT session by sending a request to the AP.
- **Unsolicited TWT** : In an unsolicited TWT agreement, the AP initiates the TWT agreement with the STA. The AP sends a TWT response specifying the service period, which the STA then accepts.
- **Broadcast TWT**: In a broadcast TWT agreement, a High-Efficiency AP invites the STA to join a broadcast TWT operation, which may involve participating in an existing broadcast service period or a newly established service period.

TWT requesting STA communicates the wake scheduling information to its TWT responding AP, which then devises a schedule and delivers the TWT values to the TWT requesting STA when a TWT agreement has been established between them.

# Configure target wake time at radio level (CLI)

Complete this task to configure target wake time at the radio level.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Disable the 802.11a or 802.11b network.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} shutdown
```

**Step 3** Configure the 802.11ax parameters.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} dot11ax
```

**Step 4** Configure the 802.11ax target wake-up time.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# [no] ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} dot11ax target-wakeup-time
```

**Step 5** Configure the 802.11ax target waste-time.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)#ap dot11 {24ghz | 5gh} dot11ax target waste-time
```

**Step 6** Enable the 802.11a or 802.11b network.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# no ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} shutdown
```

**Step 7** Display and verify the 802.11ax network configuration details, which includes information about Target Wakeup Time and Target Wakeup Broadcast.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# show ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} network
```

The target wakeup time at the radio level is configured.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz dot11ax
Device(config)# [no] ap dot11 24ghz dot11ax target-wakeup-time
```

```
Device(config)# [no] ap dot11 24ghz dot11ax twt-broadcast
Device(config)# no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown
```

# Configuring target wake time on WLAN

## Enable target wakeup time on WLAN (CLI)

Complete this task to enable target wakeup time on the WLAN.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Enter the WLAN configuration submode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile-name
```

The *wlan-profile-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN.

**Step 3** Disable the WLAN network.

**Example:**

```
Device(conf-wlan)# shutdown
```

**Step 4** Configure target wake time mode on WLAN.

**Example:**

```
Device(conf-wlan)# dot11ax target-waketime
```

**Step 5** Configure the TWT broadcast support on WLAN.

**Example:**

```
Device(conf-wlan)# dot11ax twt-broadcast-support
```

**Step 6** Enable WLAN.

**Example:**

```
Device(conf-wlan)# no shutdown
```

**Step 7** Display the details of the configured WLAN, including Target Wakeup Time and Target Wakeup Broadcast Time.

**Example:**

```
Device# show wlan {all | id | name | summary}
```

The target wakeup time is enabled on the WLAN.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile-name
Device(conf-wlan)# shutdown
Device(conf-wlan)# dot11ax target-waketime
Device(conf-wlan)# dot11ax twt-broadcast-support
Device(conf-wlan)# no shutdown
```

# Disable target wakeup time on WLAN (CLI)

Complete this task to disable target wakeup time on WLAN.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Enter the WLAN configuration submode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile-name
```

The *wlan-profile-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN.

**Step 3** Disable the WLAN.

**Example:**

```
Device(conf-wlan)# shutdown
```

**Step 4** Disable the target wake time mode on WLAN.

**Example:**

```
Device(conf-wlan)# no dot11ax target-waketime
```

**Step 5** Disable the TWT broadcast support on WLAN.

**Example:**

```
Device(conf-wlan)# no dot11ax twt-broadcast-support
```

**Step 6** Enable WLAN.

**Example:**

```
Device(conf-wlan)# no shutdown
```

The target wakeup time is disabled on the WLAN.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile-name
Device(conf-wlan)# shutdown
Device(conf-wlan)# no dot11ax target-waketime
```

```
Device(conf-wlan)# no dot11ax twt-broadcast-support
Device(conf-wlan)# no shutdown
```

# Configure target wake time (GUI)

Complete this task to configure the target wakeup time and the broadcast for target wakeup time.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **Parameters**.

The parameters page is displayed where you can configure global parameters for 5 GHz band and 2.4 GHz band radios.

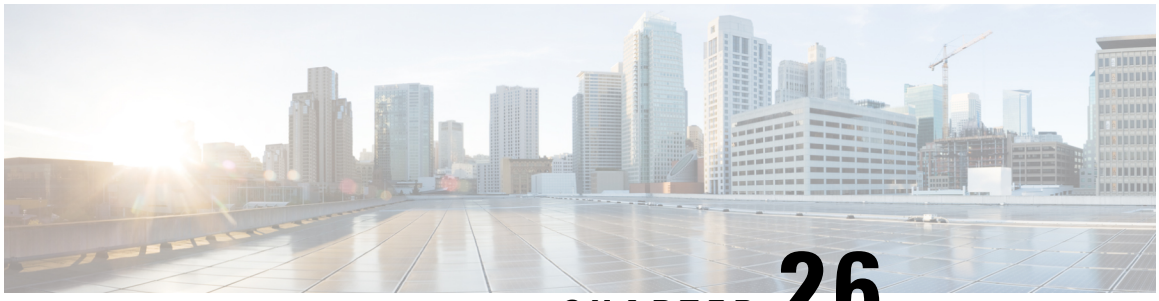
**Step 2** In the **11ax Parameters** section, check the **Target Wakeup Time** check box and the **Target Wakeup Time Broadcast** check box to configure target wakeup time and broadcast target wakeup time.

The target wakeup time and the target wakeup time broadcast are configured.

# Verify target wakeup time

To verify Target Wakeup Time and Target Wakeup Time Broadcast, use this command

```
Device#show ap dot11 24ghz network
.
.
.
802.11ax                                : Enabled
Target Wakeup Time                      : Enabled
Target Wakeup Time Broadcast            : Enabled
.
.
.
```



CHAPTER 26

# Enabling USB Port on Access Points


- USB Port as Power Source for Access Points, on page 195
- Configuring an AP Profile (CLI), on page 196
- Configuring USB Settings for an Access Point (CLI), on page 196
- Monitoring USB Configurations for Access Points (CLI), on page 197


## USB Port as Power Source for Access Points

Some Cisco APs have a USB port that can act as a source of power for some USB devices. The power can be up to 2.5W; if a USB device draws more than 2.5W of power, the USB port shuts down automatically. The port is enabled when the power draw is 2.5W and lower. Refer to the datasheet of your AP to check if the AP has a USB port that can act as a source of power.

**Note** The controller records the last five power-overdrawn incidents in its logs.

**Caution** When unsupported USB device is connected to the Cisco AP, the following message is displayed:

```
The inserted USB module is not a supported device. The behavior of this
USB device and the impact to the Access Point is not guaranteed. If Cisco
determines that a fault or defect can be isolated due to the use of
third-party USB modules installed by a customer or reseller, Cisco may
withhold support under warranty or support program under contract. In the
course of providing support for Cisco networking products, the end user
may be required to install Cisco-supported USB modules in the event Cisco
determines that removing third-party parts will assist Cisco in diagnosing
root cause for troubleshooting purposes. Cisco also reserves the right
to charge the customer per then-current time and material rates for
services provided to the customer when Cisco determines, after having
provided such services, that an unsupported device caused the root cause
of the defective product
```

# Configuring an AP Profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *ap-profile*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile` | Configures an AP profile and enters the AP profile configuration mode.<br>**Note** When you delete a named profile, the APs associated with that profile will not revert to the default profile. |
| **Step 3** | **usb-enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# usb-enable` | Enables USB for each AP profile.<br>**Note** By default, the USB for each AP profile is enabled.<br>Use the **no usb-enable** command to disable USB for each AP profile. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring USB Settings for an Access Point (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *ap-name* **usb-module**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name AP44d3.xy45.69a1 usb-module` | Enables the USB port on the AP.<br>Use the **ap name** *ap-name* **no usb-module** command to disable the USB port on the AP. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **ap name** *ap-name* **usb-module override**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name AP44d3.xy45.69a1 usb-module override` | Overrides USB status of the AP profile and considers the local AP configuration.<br>Use the **ap name** *ap-name* **no usb-module override** command to override USB status of the AP and consider the AP profile configuration.<br>**Note**<br>You can configure the USB status for an AP only if you enable USB override for it. |

# Monitoring USB Configurations for Access Points (CLI)

- To view the inventory details of APs, use the following command:

  **show ap name** *ap-name* **inventory**

  The following is a sample output:

```
Device# show ap name AP500F.8059.1620  inventory
NAME: AP2800    , DESCR: Cisco Aironet 2800 Series (IEEE 802.11ac) Access Point
PID: AIR-AP2802I-D-K9  ,  VID: 01,  SN: XXX1111Y2ZZZZ2800
NAME: SanDisk    , DESCR: Cruzer Blade
PID: SanDisk  ,  SN: XXXX1110010, MaxPower: 224
```

- To view the summary of an AP module, use the following command:

  **show ap module summary**

  The following is a sample output:

```
Device# show ap module summary
AP Name               External Module       External Module PID   External Module
Description
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
AP500F.1111.2222      Enable                SanDisk               Cruzer Blade
```

- To view the USB configuration details for each AP, use the following command:

  **show ap name** *ap-name* **config general**

  The following is a sample output:

```
Device# show ap name AP500F.111.2222 config general

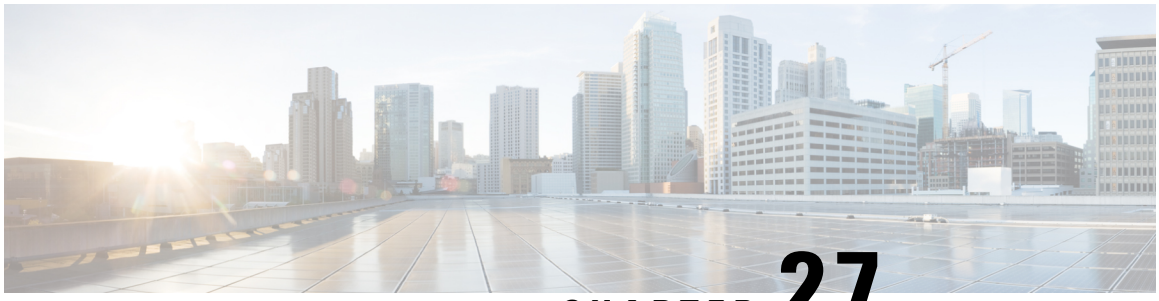
.
.
.
USB Module Type.................................. USB Module
USB Module Status................................ Disabled
USB Module Operational State..................... Enabled
USB Override ……..... Enabled
```

- To view status of the USB module, use the following command:

  **show ap profile name** *xyz* **detailed**

The following is a sample output:

```
Device# show ap profile name xyz detailed
USB Module                : ENABLED
```



CHAPTER 27

# Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection


- Information About Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection, on page 199
- Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally (CLI), on page 199
- Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally (GUI), on page 200
- Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile (CLI), on page 200
- Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile (GUI), on page 201
- Verifying Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Configuration, on page 201


## Information About Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection

Access points (APs) monitor and perform Channel Availability Check (CAC) on a potential channel for 60 seconds when AP moves to Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) channels. Further, the AP ensures that there is no radar operating in the same frequency range before advertising beacons and serving clients. When the AP moves to a DFS, there is a service outage for a minute. This outage can be higher and extend up to 10 minutes. The Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature helps to avoid the service outage in regulatory domains. As of now, U.S. and Europe are the only supported domains.

## Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel zero-wait-dfs**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel zero-wait-dfs` | Enables the Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature. By default, the feature is disabled. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | Use the **no** form of this command to disable the feature.<br>**Note** The Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature is only available on a 5-GHz radio. |

# Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM**.

**Step 2** In the **RRM** page, click the **5 GHz Band** tab.

**Step 3** Click the **DCA** tab.

**Step 4** Select the **Zero Wait DFS** check box to allow the AP to change to DFS without a service outage.

**Step 5** Click **Apply**.

# Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 5ghz rf-profile** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rf-profile test-dfs` | Configures a radio frequency (RF) profile and enters RF profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **channel zero-wait-dfs**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-rf-profile)# channel zero-wait-dfs` | Enables the Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature for the RF profile.<br>Use the **no** form of this command to disable the feature. |

# Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF/Radio**.

**Step 2** In the **RF** tab, click **Add**.

The **Add RF Profile** page is displayed.

**Step 3** Enter the name for the RF profile.

**Step 4** From the **Radio Band** drop-down, choose the **5 GHz** band.

**Step 5** Click the **RRM** tab.

**Step 6** Click the **DCA** tab.

**Step 7** Select the **Zero Wait DFS** check box to allow the AP to change to DFS without a service outage.

**Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Verifying Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the DFS configuration.

To display the Zero Wait DFS configuration on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap1 config slot 1 | inc Zero

  Zero Wait DFS Parameters
    Zero Wait DFS Capable                       : Yes
    CAC Domain                                  : None
```

To display the global configuration related to the Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 5ghz channel | inc Zero

  Zero Wait DFS Parameters
    Zero Wait DFS Capable                       : Yes
    CAC Domain                                  : None
```

To display the RF profile configuration related to the Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap rf-profile name test detail | sec Zero

Description                     :
RF Profile Name                 : test
Band                            : 5 GHz
Transmit Power Threshold v1     : -70 dBm
Min Transmit Power              : -10 dBm
Max Transmit Power              : 30 dBm
```

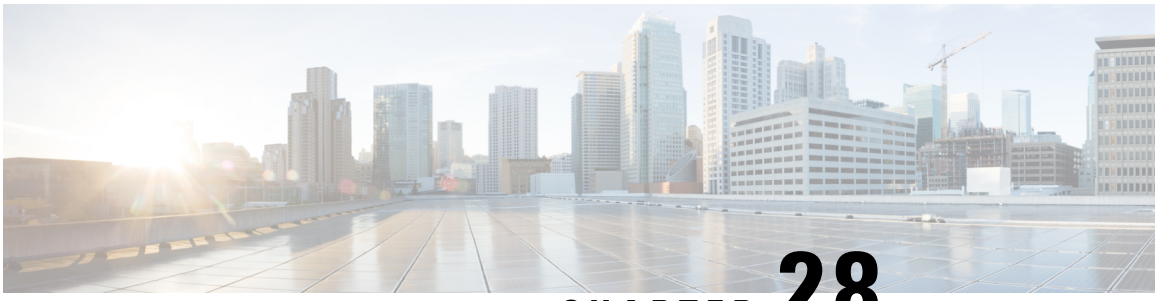
```
.
.
.
Guard Interval                    : default
Zero Wait DFS                     : Enabled
```



PART IV

# Network Management


- DHCP Option82, on page 205
- RADIUS Realm, on page 215
- RADIUS Accounting, on page 223
- Persistent SSID Broadcast, on page 229
- Network Monitoring, on page 231



CHAPTER 28

# DHCP Option82


- Information About DHCP Option 82, on page 205
- Configuring DHCP Option 82 Global Interface, on page 206
- Configuring DHCP Option 82 Format, on page 208
- Configuring DHCP Option82 Through a VLAN Interface, on page 209


## Information About DHCP Option 82

The embedded wireless controller can be configured to add Option 82 information to DHCP requests from clients before forwarding the requests to a DHCP server. The DHCP server can then be configured to allocate IP addresses to the wireless client based on the information present in DHCP Option 82.

DHCP provides a framework for passing configuration information to hosts on a TCP/IP network. Configuration parameters and other control information are carried in tagged data items that are stored in the Options field of the DHCP message. The data items themselves are also called options. Option 82 contains information known by the relay agent.

The Relay Agent Information option is organized as a single DHCP option that contains one or more suboptions that convey information known by the relay agent. Option 82 was designed to allow a DHCP Relay Agent to insert circuit−specific information into a request that is being forwarded to a DHCP server. This option works by setting two suboptions:

- Circuit ID
- Remote ID

The Circuit ID suboption includes information that is specific to the circuit the request came in on. This suboption is an identifier that is specific to the relay agent. Thus, the circuit that is described will vary depending on the relay agent.

The Remote ID suboption includes information on the remote host–end of the circuit. This suboption usually contains information that identifies the relay agent. In a wireless network, this would likely be a unique identifier of the wireless access point.

**Note** IP MAC binding is required for DHCP Option 82 to work in some situations.

You can configure the following DHCP Option 82 options in a embedded wireless controller:

- DHCP Enable
- DHCP Opt82 Enable
- DHCP Opt82 Ascii
- DHCP Opt82 RID
- DHCP Opt Format
- DHCP AP MAC
- DHCP SSID
- DHCP AP ETH MAC
- DHCP AP NAME
- DHCP Site Tag
- DHCP AP Location
- DHCP VLAN ID



**Note** The controller includes the SSID in ASCII and the VLAN-ID in hexadecimal format within the remote-ID sub-option of option 82 in the outgoing DHCP packets to the server for the following configurations:

```
ipv4 dhcp opt82 format ssid
ipv4 dhcp opt82 format vlan-id
```

However, if *ipv4 dhcp opt82 ascii* configuration is also present, the controller adds VLAN-ID and SSID in ASCII format.

For Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Configuration Best Practices, see the following link: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/products/collateral/wireless/catalyst-9800-series-wireless-controllers/guide-c07-743627.html

# Configuring DHCP Option 82 Global Interface

## Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Server Override (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ip dhcp-relay information option server-override**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip dhcp-relay information option server-override` | Inserts global server override and link selection suboptions. |

# Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Different SVIs (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **VLAN**.

**Step 2** Choose a VLAN from the drop-down list.

The **Edit SVI** window appears.

**Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.

**Step 4** Choose an option from the **IPv4 Inbound ACL** drop-down list.

**Step 5** Choose an option from the **IPv4 Outbound ACL** drop-down list.

**Step 6** Choose an option from the **IPv6 Inbound ACL** drop-down list.

**Step 7** Choose an option from the **IPv6 Outbound ACL** drop-down list.

**Step 8** Enter an IP address in the **IPv4 Helper Address** field.

**Step 9** Set the status to **Enabled** if you want to enable the **Relay Information Option** setting.

**Step 10** Enter the **Subscriber ID**.

**Step 11** Set the status to **Enabled** if you want to enable the **Server ID Override** setting.

**Step 12** Set the status to **Enabled** if you want to enable the **Option Insert** setting.

**Step 13** Choose an option from the **Source-Interface Vlan** drop-down list.

**Step 14** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Different SVIs (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ip dhcp-relay source-interface vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip dhcp-relay source-interface vlan 74` | Sets global source interface for relayed messages. |

# Configuring DHCP Option 82 Format

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy pp3` | Enables configuration for the specified profile policy. |
| **Step 3** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown` | Shuts down the profile policy. |
| **Step 4** | **vlan** *vlan-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 72` | Assigns the profile policy to a VLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **session-timeout** *value-btwn-20-86400*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# session-timeout 300` | (Optional) Sets the session timeout value in seconds. The range is between 20-86400. |
| **Step 6** | **idle-timeout** *value-btwn-15-100000*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# idle-timeout 15` | (Optional) Sets the idle timeout value in seconds. The range is between 15-100000. |
| **Step 7** | **central switching**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching` | Enables central switching. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 8** | **ipv4 dhcp opt82**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82` | Enables DHCP Option 82 for the wireless clients. |
| **Step 9** | **ipv4 dhcp opt82 ascii**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 ascii` | (Optional) Enables ASCII on the DHCP Option 82 feature. |
| **Step 10** | **ipv4 dhcp opt82 rid**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 rid` | (Optional) Supports the addition of Cisco 2 byte Remote ID (RID) for the DHCP Option 82 feature. |
| **Step 11** | **ipv4 dhcp opt82 format** {**ap_ethmac**\|**ap_location**\|**apmac**\|**apname**\|**policy_tag**\|**ssid**\|**vlan_id**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 format apmac` | Enables DHCP Option 82 on the corresponding AP.<br>For information on the various options available with the command, see Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Command Reference. |
| **Step 12** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Enables the profile policy. |

# Configuring DHCP Option82 Through a VLAN Interface

## Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through Option-Insert Command (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **interface vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# interface vlan 72` | Configures a VLAN ID. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **ip dhcp relay information option-insert**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information option-insert` | Inserts relay information in BOOTREQUEST. |
| **Step 4** | **ip address** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip address 9.3.72.38 255.255.255.0` | Configures the IP address for the interface. |
| **Step 5** | **ip helper-address** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip helper-address 9.3.72.1` | Configures the destination address for UDP broadcasts. |
| **Step 6** | **[no] mop enabled**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# no mop enabled` | Disables the MOP for an interface. |
| **Step 7** | **[no] mop sysid**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-apgroup)# [no] mop sysid` | Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages. |

# Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through the server-ID-override Command (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ip dhcp compatibility suboption server-override cisco**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip dhcp compatibility suboption server-override cisco` | Configures the server-id override suboption to an RFC or Cisco specific value. |
| **Step 3** | **ip dhcp compatibility suboption link-selection cisco**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip dhcp compatibility suboption link-selection cisco` | Configures the link-selection suboption to an RFC or Cisco specific value. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **interface vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# interface vlan 72` | Configures a VLAN ID. |
| **Step 5** | **ip dhcp relay information option server-id-override**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information option server-id-override` | Inserts the server id override and link selection suboptions. |
| **Step 6** | **ip address** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip address 9.3.72.38 255.255.255.0` | Configures the IP address for the interface. |
| **Step 7** | **ip helper-address** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip helper-address 9.3.72.1` | Configures the destination address for UDP broadcasts. |
| **Step 8** | **[no] mop enabled**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# no mop enabled` | Disables MOP for an interface. |
| **Step 9** | **[no] mop sysid**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# [no] mop sysid` | Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages. |

# Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through a Subscriber-ID (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **interface vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# interface vlan 72` | Configures a VLAN ID. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **ip dhcp relay information option subscriber-id** *subscriber-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information option subscriber-id test10` | Inserts the subscriber identifier suboption. |
| **Step 4** | **ip address** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip address 9.3.72.38 255.255.255.0` | Configures the IP address for the interface. |
| **Step 5** | **ip helper-address** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip helper-address 9.3.72.1` | Configures the destination address for UDP broadcasts. |
| **Step 6** | **[no] mop enabled**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# no mop enabled` | Disables MOP for an interface. |
| **Step 7** | **[no] mop sysid**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-apgroup)# [no] mop sysid` | Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages. |

# Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through server-ID-override and subscriber-ID Commands (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **interface vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# interface vlan 72` | Configures a VLAN ID. |
| **Step 3** | **ip dhcp relay information option server-id-override**<br>**Example:** | Inserts server ID override and link selection suboptions. |

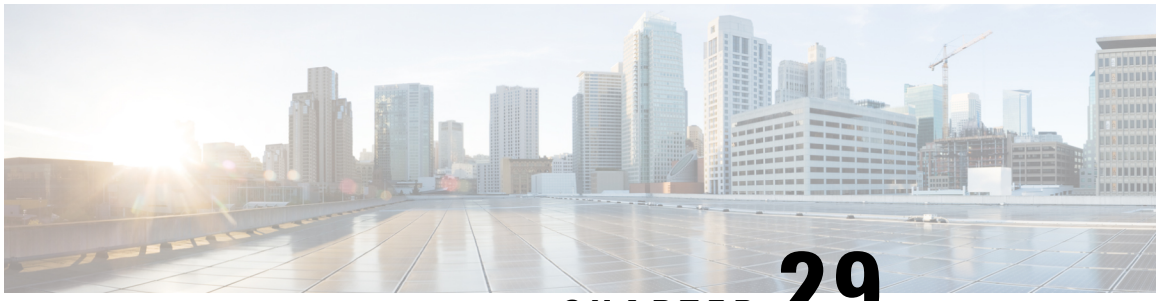
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information option server-id-override` | |
| **Step 4** | **ip dhcp relay information option subscriber-id** *subscriber-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information option subscriber-id test10` | Inserts the subscriber identifier suboption. |
| **Step 5** | **ip address** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip address 9.3.72.38 255.255.255.0` | Configures the IP address for the interface. |
| **Step 6** | **ip helper-address** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip helper-address 9.3.72.1` | Configures the destination address for UDP broadcasts. |
| **Step 7** | **[no] mop enabled**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# no mop enabled` | Disables the MOP for an interface. |
| **Step 8** | **[no] mop sysid**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-apgroup)# [no] mop sysid` | Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages. |

# Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through Different SVIs (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **interface vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# interface vlan 72` | Configures a VLAN ID. |
| **Step 3** | **ip dhcp relay source-interface vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip dhcp relay source-interface vlan 74` | Configures a source interface for relayed messages on a VLAN ID. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **ip address** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip address 9.3.72.38 255.255.255.0` | Configures the IP address for the interface. |
| **Step 5** | **ip helper-address** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip helper-address 9.3.72.1` | Configure the destination address for UDP broadcasts. |
| **Step 6** | **[no] mop enabled**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# no mop enabled` | Disables the MOP for an interface. |
| **Step 7** | **[no] mop sysid**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-apgroup)# [no] mop sysid` | Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages. |



CHAPTER 29

# RADIUS Realm


- Information About RADIUS Realm, on page 215
- Enabling RADIUS Realm, on page 216
- Configuring Realm to Match the RADIUS Server for Authentication and Accounting, on page 216
- Configuring the AAA Policy for a WLAN, on page 217
- Verifying the RADIUS-Realm Configuration, on page 219


## Information About RADIUS Realm

The RADIUS Realm feature is associated with the domain of the user. Using this feature, a client can choose the RADIUS server through which authentication and accounting is to be processed.

When mobile clients are associated with a WLAN, RADIUS realm is received as a part of Extensible Authentication Protocol Method for UMTS Authentication and Key Agreement (EAP-AKA) identity response request in the authentication request packet. The Network Access Identifier (NAI) format (EAP-AKA) for WLAN can be specified as *username@domain.com*. The realm in the NAI format is represented after the @ symbol, which is specified as domain.com. If vendor-specific attributes are added as *test*, the NAI format is represented as test@domain.com.

The RADIUS Realm feature can be enabled and disabled on a WLAN. If Realm is enabled on a WLAN, the corresponding user should send the username in the NAI format. The embedded wireless controller sends the authentication request to the AAA server only when the realm, which is in the NAI format and is received from the client, is compiled as per the given standards. Apart from authentication, accounting requests are also required to be sent to the AAA server based on realm filtering.

### Realm Support on a WLAN

Each WLAN is configured to support NAI realms. After the realm is enabled on a particular SSID, the lookup is done to match the realms received in the EAP identity response against the configured realms on the RADIUS server. If the client does not send a username with the realm, the default RADIUS server that is configured on the WLAN is used for authentication. If the realm that is received from the client does not match the configured realms on the WLAN, the client is deauthenticated and dropped.

If the RADIUS Realm feature is not enabled on a WLAN, the username that is received as part of the EAP identity request is directly used as the username and the configured RADIUS server is used for authentication and accounting. By default, the RADIUS Realm feature is disabled on WLANs.

- **Realm Match for Authentication**: In dot1x with EAP methods (similar to EAP AKA), the username is received as part of an EAP identity response. A realm is derived from the username and are matched

with the realms that are already configured in the corresponding RADIUS authentication server. If there is a match, the authentication requests are forwarded to the RADIUS server. If there is a mismatch, the client is deauthenticated.

- **Realm Match for Accounting**: A client's username is received through an access-accept message. When accounting messages are triggered, the realm is derived from the corresponding client's username and compared with the accounting realms configured on the RADIUS accounting server. If there is a match, accounting requests are forwarded to the RADIUS server. If there is a mismatch, accounting requests are dropped.

# Enabling RADIUS Realm

Follow the procedure given below to enable RADIUS realm:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless aaa policy** *aaa-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless aaa policy policy-1` | Creates a new AAA policy. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa-realm enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-aaa-policy)# aaa-realm enable` | Enables AAA RADIUS realm selection.<br>**Note**<br>Use the **no aaa-realm enable** or the **default aaa-realm enable** command to disable the RADIUS realm. |

# Configuring Realm to Match the RADIUS Server for Authentication and Accounting

Follow the procedure given below to configure the realm to match the RADIUS server for authentication and accounting:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **aaa new-model**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa new-model` | Creates a AAA authentication model. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa authorization network default group** *radius-server-group*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group aaa_group_name` | Sets the authorization method. |
| **Step 4** | **aaa authentication dot1x** *realm* **group** *radius-server-group*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x cisco.com group cisco1` | Indicates that dot1x must use the realm group RADIUS server. |
| **Step 5** | **aaa authentication login** *realm* **group** *radius-server-group*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa authentication login cisco.com group cisco1` | Defines the authentication method at login. |
| **Step 6** | **aaa accounting identity** *realm* **start-stop group** *radius-server-group*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa accounting identity cisco.com start-stop group cisco1` | Enables accounting to send a start-record accounting notice when a client is authorized, and a stop-record at the end. |

# Configuring the AAA Policy for a WLAN

Follow the procedure given below to configure the AAA policy for a WLAN:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:** | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device# configure terminal` | |
| **Step 2** | **wireless aaa policy** *aaa-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless aaa policy aaa-policy-1` | Creates a new AAA policy for wireless. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa-realm enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-aaa-policy)# aaa-realm enable` | Enables AAA RADIUS server selection by realm. |
| **Step 4** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-aaa-policy)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |
| **Step 5** | **wireless profile policy** *wlan-policy-profile*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy wlan-policy-a` | Configures a WLAN policy profile. |
| **Step 6** | **aaa-policy** *aaa-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-policy aaa-policy-1` | Maps the AAA policy. |
| **Step 7** | **accounting-list** *acct-config-realm*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# accounting-list cisco.com` | Sets the accounting list. |
| **Step 8** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |
| **Step 9** | **wlan** *wlan-name wlan-id ssid*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan2 14 wlan-aaa` | Configures a WLAN. |
| **Step 10** | **security dot1x authentication-list** *auth-list-realm*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list cisco.com` | Enables the security authentication list for IEEE 802.1x. |
| **Step 11** | **exit**<br>**Example:** | Returns to global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit` | |
| **Step 12** | **wireless tag policy** *policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless tag policy tag-policy-1` | Configures a policy tag. |
| **Step 13** | **wlan** *wlan-name* **policy** *policy-profile*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan Abc-wlan policy wlan-policy-a` | Maps a policy profile to the WLAN. |
| **Step 14** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |

# Verifying the RADIUS-Realm Configuration

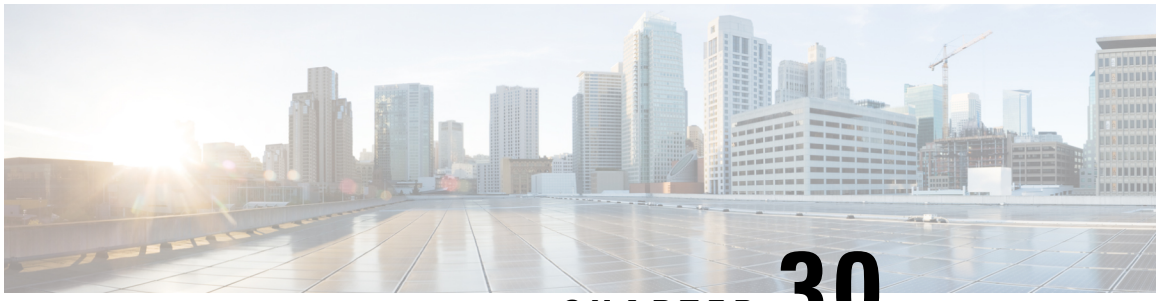
Use the following command to verify the RADIUS-realm configuration:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 14bd.61f3.6a24 detail


Client MAC Address : 14bd.61f3.6a24
Client IPv4 Address : 9.4.113.103
Client IPv6 Addresses : fe80::286e:9fe0:7fa6:8f4
Client Username : sacthoma@cisco.com
AP MAC Address : 4c77.6d79.5a00
AP Name: AP4c77.6d53.20ec
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : name-policy-profile
Flex Profile : N/A
Wireless LAN Id : 3
Wireless LAN Name: ha_realm_WLAN_WPA2_AES_DOT1X
BSSID : 4c77.6d79.5a0f
Connected For : 26 seconds
Protocol : 802.11ac
Channel : 44
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000001
Association Id : 1
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Client CCX version : No CCX support
Re-Authentication Timeout : 1800 sec (Remaining time: 1775 sec)
Input Policy Name  : None
Input Policy State : None
Input Policy Source : None
Output Policy Name  : None
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Enabled
  U-APSD value : 0
  APSD ACs    : BK, BE, VI, VO
```

```
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Power Save : OFF
Supported Rates : 9.0,18.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
Mobility:
  Move Count                  : 0
  Mobility Role               : Local
  Mobility Roam Type          : None
  Mobility Complete Timestamp : 06/12/2018 19:52:35 IST
Policy Manager State: Run
NPU Fast Fast Notified : No
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 25 seconds
Policy Type : WPA2
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : 802.1x
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Management Frame Protection : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : No
EAP Type : PEAP
VLAN : 113
Multicast VLAN : 0
Access VLAN : 113
Anchor VLAN : 0
WFD capable : No
Managed WFD capable : No
Cross Connection capable : No
Support Concurrent Operation : No
Session Manager:
  Interface        : capwap_9040000f
  IIF ID           : 0x9040000F
  Authorized       : TRUE
  Session timeout  : 1800
  Common Session ID: 097704090000000DF4607B3B
  Acct Session ID  : 0x00000fa2
  Aaa Server Details
  Server IP        : 9.4.23.50
  Auth Method Status List
       Method : Dot1x
              SM State         : AUTHENTICATED
              SM Bend State    : IDLE
  Local Policies:
       Service Template : wlan_svc_name-policy-profile_local (priority 254)
              Absolute-Timer   : 1800
              VLAN             : 113
  Server Policies:
  Resultant Policies:
              VLAN             : 113
              Absolute-Timer   : 1800
DNS Snooped IPv4 Addresses : None
DNS Snooped IPv6 Addresses : None
Client Capabilities
  CF Pollable : Not implemented
  CF Poll Request : Not implemented
  Short Preamble : Not implemented
  PBCC : Not implemented
  Channel Agility : Not implemented
  Listen Interval : 0
Fast BSS Transition Details :
  Reassociation Timeout : 0
11v BSS Transition : Not implemented
FlexConnect Data Switching : Central
FlexConnect Dhcp Status : Central
FlexConnect Authentication : Central
FlexConnect Central Association : No
```

```
.
.
.
Fabric status : Disabled
Client Scan Reports
Assisted Roaming Neighbor List
```



CHAPTER 30

# RADIUS Accounting


- RADIUS accounting of AP events, on page 223
- Configure accounting method-list for an AP profile, on page 224
- Verify the AP accounting information, on page 225
- Feature History for Device Ecosystem Data, on page 225
- Information About Device Ecosystem Data, on page 225
- Enable Device Ecosystem Data, on page 226
- Verify Device Ecosystem Data, on page 227


# RADIUS accounting of AP events

RADIUS accounting of AP events is a network monitoring mechanism that

- Tracks the status transitions of APs within a wireless controller environment
- Records AP join and disjoin events
- Provides historical visibility into AP downtime and uptime through accounting messages sent to a RADIUS server.

### Feature History

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 17: Feature history table***

| Feature Name | Release | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Device Ecosystem Data | Cisco IOS XE 17.10.1 | This feature sends device analytics data that is present in the RADIUS accounting request to Cisco ISE to profile endpoints<br>The command is introduced:<br>• dot11-tlv-accounting |

| Feature Name | Release | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Chargeable User Identity in RADIUS Accounting | Cisco IOS XE 17.9.1 | Chargeable User Identity (CUI) is a unique identifier for a client visiting a network. This attribute can be used as an alternative for the client's username as part of the authentication process.<br>The command is introduced:<br>• dot11-tlv-accounting |
| Improved Logging in RADIUS Accounting | Cisco IOS XE 17.1.1 | Prior to Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1 release, the controller did not send accounting messages for AP join and disjoin events during network issues. From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1 Release and later, the RADIUS server keeps a record of all APs that were down and have come up. |

# Configure accounting method-list for an AP profile

Define an accounting method list within an access point (AP) profile to enable or disable accounting for AP operations.

Use this task to specify how accounting is managed for an AP profile on your device. This allows tracking of AP events and assists with auditing and troubleshooting

### Before you begin

- Identify the AP profile name you want to configure. The default AP profile name is `default-ap-profile`.
- Determine the accounting method list name you wish to apply.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device#configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configures the AP profile. The default AP join profile name is default-ap-profile.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name
```

**Step 3** Configures the accounting method list for the AP profile.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] accounting method-list method-list-name
```

Use the **no** form of this command to disable the accounting method list.

The system associates the specified accounting method list with the AP profile, enabling or disabling accounting

# Verify the AP accounting information

Verify the AP accounting information including MAC address, packets sent, packets received, and the method list.

```
Device#show wireless stats ap accounting
Base MAC       Total packet Send    Total packet Received Methodlist
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
00b0.e192.0f20     4        3     abc
38ed.18cc.5788     8        8     ML_M
70ea.1ae0.af08     0        0     ML_A
```

View the details of a method list that is configured for an AP profile.

```
Device#show ap profile name Method-list detailed
AP Profile Name               : test-profile
Description                   :
.
.
.
Method-list name              : Method-list
Packet Sequence Jump DELBA    : ENABLED
Lag status                    : DISABLED
.
Client RSSI Statistics
  Reporting                   : ENABLED
  Reporting Interval          : 30 seconds
```

# Feature History for Device Ecosystem Data

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 18: Feature History for Device Ecosystem Data***

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1 | Device Ecosystem Data | This feature sends device analytics data in the RADIUS accounting request to Cisco ISE to profile the endpoints. |

# Information About Device Ecosystem Data

Edge analytics is the process of collecting, processing, and analyzing data from devices in a network. The controller learns about endpoint attributes, such as model number, operating system version, and other

information from a set of endpoints using device analytics. The device analytics data is further shared with Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) to profile the endpoints. This information sharing is in addition to the DHCP and HTTP attributes already being shared with Cisco ISE using RADIUS accounting messages.

# Enable Device Ecosystem Data

**Note** Before proceeding with the configuration, ensure that device classifier and accounting features are enabled.

### Procedure

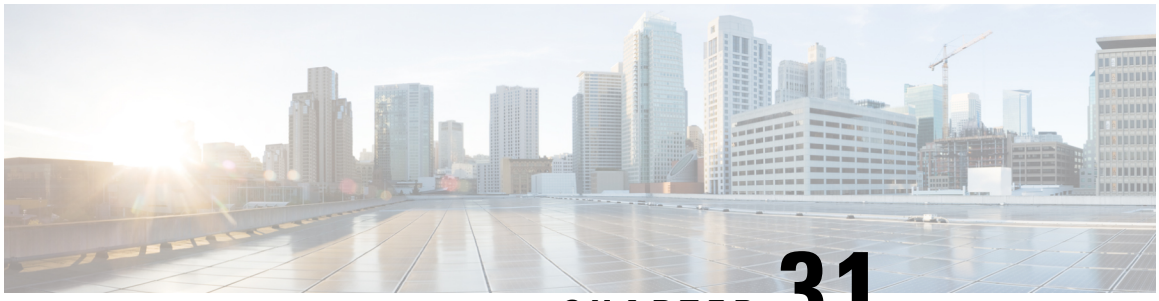
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Configures a wireless policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown` | Disables the wireless policy profile. |
| **Step 4** | **radius-profiling**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# radius-profiling` | Configures client radius profiling. |
| **Step 5** | **dot11-tlv-accounting**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# dot11-tlv-accounting` | Configures the controller to send device analytics data that is found in the RADIUS accounting request to Cisco ISE in order to profile the endpoints. The **no** form of this command disables the feature. |
| **Step 6** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Enables the wireless policy profile. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Verify Device Ecosystem Data

Use the following command to verify device ecosystem data in RADIUS accounting configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed <name>

.
.
.
WLAN Local Profiling
  Subscriber Policy Name            : Not Configured
  RADIUS Profiling                  : ENABLED
  HTTP TLV caching                  : DISABLED
  DHCP TLV caching                  : DISABLED
  DOT11 TLV accounting              : ENABLED
.
.
.
```



CHAPTER 31

# Persistent SSID Broadcast


- Persistent SSID Broadcast, on page 229
- Configuring Persistent SSID Broadcast, on page 229
- Verifying Persistent SSID Broadcast, on page 230


## Persistent SSID Broadcast

Access Points within a mesh network work as Root Access Points (RAP) or Mesh Access Points (MAP). RAPs have wired connection to the embedded wireless controller and MAPs have wireless connection to the embedded wireless controller. This feature is applicable only to the Cisco Aironet 1542 Access Points in the Flex+Bridge mode.

This feature is about the Root Access Points (RAPs) and Mesh Access Points (MAPs) broadcasting the SSID even when the WAN connectivity is down. This is required in order to isolate the responsibility; whether the fault is with backhaul or with the access wireless network, since there can be different operators owning each part of the network.

RAPs and MAPs broadcast SSID while in standalone mode, as long as the default gateway is reachable.

Also refer Mesh Deployment Guide for Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers.

## Configuring Persistent SSID Broadcast

### Procedure

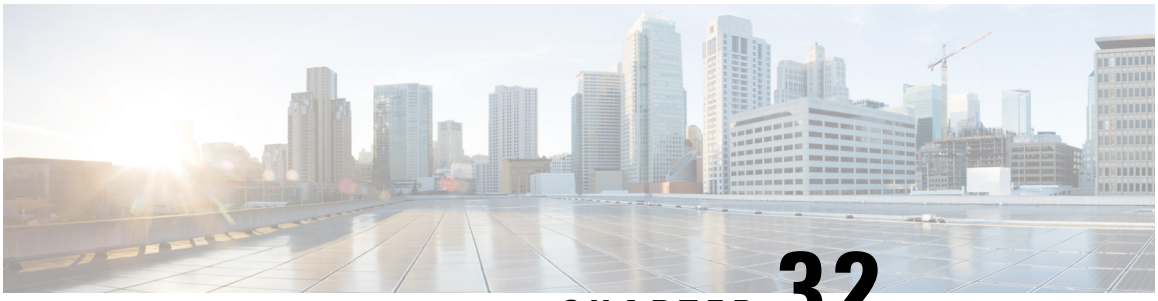
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *ap-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name` | Configures the AP profile. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **[no]ssid broadcast persistent**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] ssid broadcast persistent` | The **ssid broadcast** command configures the SSID broadcast mode. The **persistent** keyword enables a persistent SSID broadcast, where the associated APs will re-join. Use the **[no]** form of the command to disable the feature.<br>**Note**<br>Enabling or disabling this feature causes the AP to re-join. |

# Verifying Persistent SSID Broadcast

To view the configuration of all Cisco APs, use the following **show** command:

```
Device#show ap config general
Cisco AP Name   : AP4C77.6DF2.D598
================================================
Office Extend Mode                              : Disabled
Persistent SSID Broadcast                       : Enabled
Remote AP Debug                                 : Disabled
```



CHAPTER 32

# Network Monitoring


• Network Monitoring, on page 231


## Network Monitoring

The only network monitoring supported on the Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC) is through Cisco Digital Network Architecture (DNA) Center. This is done through NETCONF using a propietary protocol for push and pull of configuration or status information.

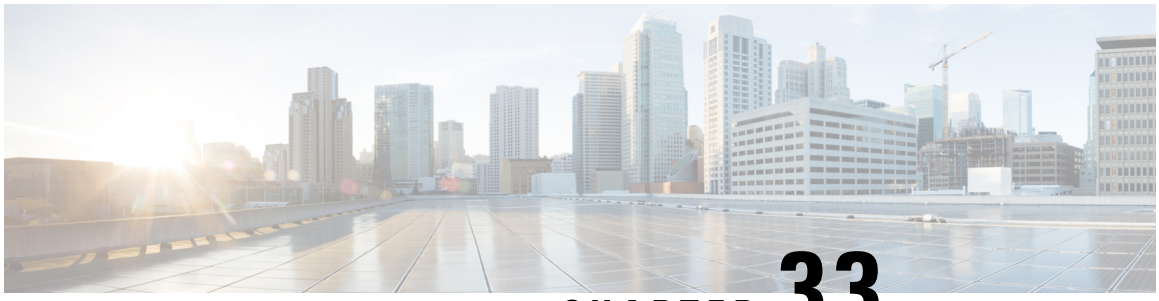
**Note** Although you can run telemetry commands on EWC, monitoring is only supported through DNA, which is done through NETCONF.



PART V

# System Management


- Network Mobility Services Protocol, on page 235
- Application Visibility and Control, on page 247
- Flexible NetFlow Exporter on Embedded Wireless Controller, on page 263
- Cisco Connected Mobile Experiences Cloud, on page 267
- EDCA Parameters, on page 271
- 802.11 parameters and Band Selection, on page 275
- Image Download, on page 293
- Conditional Debug and Radioactive Tracing, on page 311
- Aggressive Client Load Balancing, on page 319
- Accounting Identity List, on page 323
- Volume Metering, on page 327
- AP Group NTP Server, on page 329
- Enabling Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server, on page 335
- Software Maintenance Upgrade, on page 347
- Intelligent Capture Hardening, on page 363
- Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade, on page 369



CHAPTER 33

# Network Mobility Services Protocol


- Information About Network Mobility Services Protocol, on page 235
- Enabling NMSP On-Premises Services, on page 236
- Modifying the NMSP Notification Interval for Clients, RFID Tags, and Rogues , on page 236
- Modifying the NMSP Notification Threshold for Clients, and Tags, on page 237
- Configure NMSP strong cipher (CLI), on page 237
- Verify NMSP settings, on page 238
- Examples: NMSP settings configuration, on page 240
- Probe RSSI location, on page 240
- Configuring Probe RSSI , on page 241
- Verifying Probe RSSI, on page 242
- RFID tag support, on page 242
- Configure RFID tag support (CLI), on page 243
- Verify RFID tag support, on page 243


## Information About Network Mobility Services Protocol

Cisco Network Mobility Services Protocol (NMSP) is a secure two-way protocol that can be run over a connection-oriented (TLS) or connection-less (DTLS) transport. The wireless infrastructure runs the NMSP server and Cisco Connected Mobile Experiences (Cisco CMX) acts as an NMSP client. The embedded wireless controller supports multiple services and multiple Cisco CMXs can connect to the NMSP server to get the data for the services (location of wireless devices, probe RSSI, hyperlocation, wIPS, and so on.) over the NMSP session.

NMSP defines the intercommunication between Cisco CMX and the embedded wireless controller. Cisco CMX communicates to the embedded wireless controller over a routed IP network. Both publish-subscribe and request-reply communication models are supported. Typically, Cisco CMX establishes a subscription to receive services data from the embedded wireless controller in the form of periodic updates. The embedded wireless controller acts as a data publisher, broadcasting services data to multiple CMXs. Besides subscription, Cisco CMX can also send requests to the embedded wireless controller, causing the embedded wireless controller to send a response back.

NMSP essentially provides a way to the applications in the embedded wireless controller to talk to the outside world. The NMSP in the embedded wireless controller also provides the flexibility to change the protocol to talk to the outside world.

The following is a list of the Network Mobility Services Protocol features:

- NMSP is disabled by default.
- NMSP communicates with Cisco CMX using TCP, and uses TLS for encryption.



**Note** HTTPS is not supported for data transport between embedded wireless controller and Cisco CMX.

# Enabling NMSP On-Premises Services

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **nmsp enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# nmsp enable` | Enables NMSP on premises services.<br>**Note**<br>By default, the NMSP is disabled on the embedded wireless controller. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Modifying the NMSP Notification Interval for Clients, RFID Tags, and Rogues

NMSP manages communication between the Cisco Connected Mobile Experiences (Cisco CMX) and the embedded wireless controller for incoming and outgoing traffic. If your application requires more frequent location updates, you can modify the NMSP notification interval (to a value between 1 and 180 seconds) for clients, active RFID tags, and rogue access points and clients.



**Note** The TCP port (16113) that the embedded wireless controller and Cisco CMX communicate over must be open (not blocked) on any firewall that exists between the embedded wireless controller and the Cisco CMX for NMSP to function.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Modifying the NMSP Notification Threshold for Clients, and Tags

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **location notify-threshold** {**clients** \| **tags** } *threshold*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# location notify-threshold clients 5` | Configures the NMSP notification threshold for clients, and tags.<br>*threshold*- RSSI threshold value in db. Valid range is from 0 to 10. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configure NMSP strong cipher (CLI)

Enable strong cipher suites for NMSP server to enhance security for device communication.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Enable strong ciphers for NMSP server.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# nmsp strong-cipher
```

Strong ciphers for NMSP server contains, "ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256:, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256:, AES256-SHA256:AES256-SHA:, and AES128-SHA256:AES128-SHA".

Normal cipher suite contains, "ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256:, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256:, and AES128-SHA".

**Step 3** Return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

Alternatively, press ***Ctrl-Z*** to exit global configuration mode.

# Verify NMSP settings

To view the NMSP capabilities of the embedded wireless controller, use the command:

```
Device# show nmsp capability
Service            Subservice
----------------------------
RSSI               Rogue, Tags, Mobile Station,
Spectrum           Aggregate Interferer, Air Quality, Interferer,
Info               Rogue, Mobile Station,
Statistics         Rogue, Tags, Mobile Station,
AP Monitor         Subscription
On Demand Services Device Info
AP Info            Subscription
```

To view the NMSP notification intervals, use the command:

```
Device# show nmsp notification interval
NMSP Notification Intervals
---------------------------

RSSI Interval:
Client              : 2 sec
RFID                : 50 sec
Rogue AP            : 2 sec
Rogue Client        : 2 sec
Spectrum            : 2 sec
```

To view the connection-specific statistics counters for all CMX connections, use the command:

```
Device# show nmsp statistics connection
NMSP Connection Counters
------------------------
 CMX IP Address: 10.22.244.31, Status: Active
 State:
 Connections : 1
```

```
Disconnections : 0
Rx Data Frames : 13
Tx Data Frames : 99244
Unsupported messages : 0
Rx Message Counters:
ID  Name                                  Count
---------------------------------------------
1  Echo Request                          6076
7  Capability Notification                  2
13  Measurement Request                     5
16  Information Request                     3
20  Statistics Request                      2
30  Service Subscribe Request               1

Tx Message Counters:
ID  Name                                  Count
---------------------------------------------
2  Echo Response                          6076
7  Capability Notification                   1
14  Measurement Response                    13
15  Measurement Notification              91120
17  Information Response                      6
18  Information Notification               7492
21  Statistics Response                       2
22  Statistics Notification                 305
31  Service Subscribe Response                1
67  AP Info Notification                    304
```

To view the common statistic counter of the embedded wireless controller's NMSP service, use the command:

```
Device# show nmsp statistics summary
NMSP Global Counters
--------------------
Number of restarts                :

SSL Statistics
--------------------
Total amount of verifications      : 6
Verification failures              : 6
Verification success               : 0
Amount of connections created      : 8
Amount of connections closed       : 7
Total amount of accept attempts    : 8
Failures in accept                 : 0
Amount of successful accepts       : 8
Amount of failed registrations     : 0

AAA Statistics
--------------------
Total amount of AAA requests       : 7
Failed to send requests            : 0
Requests sent to AAA               : 7
Responses from AAA                 : 7
Responses from AAA to validate     : 7
Responses validate error           : 6
Responses validate success         : 1
```

To view the overall NMSP connections, use the command:

```
Device# show nmsp status
NMSP Status
-----------

CMX IP Address   Active    Tx Echo Resp  Rx Echo Req   Tx Data     Rx Data     Transport
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
127.0.0.1        Active    6             6             1           2           TLS
```

To view all mobility services subscribed by all CMXs, use the command:

```
Device# show nmsp subscription detail
CMX IP address 127.0.0.1:
Service            Subservice
-----------------------------
RSSI               Rogue, Tags, Mobile Station,
Spectrum
Info               Rogue, Mobile Station,
Statistics         Tags, Mobile Station,
AP Info            Subscription
```

To view all mobility services subscribed by a specific CMX, use the command:

```
Device# show nmsp subscription detail
CMX IP address 127.0.0.1:
Service            Subservice
-----------------------------
RSSI               Rogue, Tags, Mobile Station,
Spectrum
Info               Rogue, Mobile Station,
Statistics         Tags, Mobile Station,
AP Info            Subscription

Device# show nmsp subscription summary
Service            Subservice
-----------------------------
RSSI               Rogue, Tags, Mobile Station,
Spectrum
Info               Rogue, Mobile Station,
Statistics         Tags, Mobile Station,
AP Info            Subscription
```

# Examples: NMSP settings configuration

This example shows how to configure the NMSP notification interval for RFID tags:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# nmsp notification interval rssi rfid 50
Device(config)# end
Device# show nmsp notification interval
```

This example shows how to configure the NMSP notification interval for clients:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# nmsp notification interval rssi clients 180
Device(config)# end
Device# show nmsp notification interval
```

# Probe RSSI location

A probe RSSI location is a wireless networking feature that

- allows wireless controllers and Cisco CMX to collect and use the received signal strength indication (RSSI) from client probe requests associated with the identified Service Set Identifiers (SSIDs)
- enables functions such as load balancing, coverage hole detection, and location updates, and
- supports the precise tracking of wireless clients as they move within the network.

After connecting to an AP, the client scans in the background and keeps a list of strong APs. If it loses connection, the client uses this list to reconnect. The APs in the WLAN gather probe requests, RSSI data, and MAC addresses of wireless clients, then forward this information to the wireless embedded wireless controllers. Cisco CMX receives this data from the embedded wireless controller and calculates the client's updated location.

# Configuring Probe RSSI

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless probe filter**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless probe filter` | Enables filtering of unacknowledged probe requests from AP to improve the location accuracy.<br>Use the **no** form of the command to disable the feature. This will forward both acknowledged and unacknowledged probe requests to the embedded wireless controller. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless probe limit** *limit-value interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless probe limit 10 100` | Configures the number of probe request reported to the wireless embedded wireless controller from the AP for the same client on a given interval.<br>Use the **no** form of the command to revert to the default limit, which is 2 probes at an interval of 500 ms. |
| **Step 4** | **wireless probe locally-administered-mac**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless probe locally-administered-mac` | Enables the reporting of probes from clients having locally administered MAC address. |
| **Step 5** | **location algorithm rssi-average**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# location algorithm rssi-average` | Sets the probe RSSI measurement updates to a more accurate algorithm but with more CPU overhead. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 6** | **location algorithm simple**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# location algorithm simple` | (Optional) Sets the probe RSSI measurement updates to a faster algorithm with smaller CPU overhead, but less accuracy.<br>Use the **no** form of the command to revert the algorithm type to the default one, which is *rssi-average*. |
| **Step 7** | **location expiry client** *interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# location expiry client 300` | Configures the timeout for RSSI values.<br>The **no** form of the command sets it to a default value of 15. |
| **Step 8** | **location notify-threshold client** *threshold-db*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# location notify-threshold client 5` | Configures the notification threshold for clients.<br>The **no** form of the command sets it to a default value of 0. |
| **Step 9** | **location rssi-half-life client** *time-in-seconds*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# location rssi-half-life client 20` | Configures half life when averaging two RSSI readings.<br>To disable this option, set the value to 0. |

### What to do next

Use the **show wireless client probing** command to view each probing client (associated and probing only) by batch of 10 mac addresses.

# Verifying Probe RSSI

To view the details of the AP the associated client was detected with, and with which RSSI:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 4.4.4 detail
****snippet of the output****
Nearby AP Statistics:
TEST_AP-1 (slot 0)
antenna 0: 0 s ago ........ -77 dBm
antenna 1: 0 s ago ........ -88 dBm
TEST_AP-5 (slot 0)
antenna 0: 0 s ago ........ -64 dBm
antenna 1: 0 s ago ........ -36 dBm
TEST_AP-6 (slot 0)
antenna 0: 0 s ago ........ -69 dBm
antenna 1: 0 s ago ........ -79 dBm
```

# RFID tag support

An RFID tag is a small wireless battery-powered tracking device that

- broadcasts its own signal for real-time location tracking, and
- operates using special 802.11 packets processed by APs, wireless controllers, and Cisco CMX.

The embedded wireless controller enables you to configure radio frequency identification (RFID) tag tracking. Only active RFIDs are supported. A combination of active RFID tags and wireless embedded wireless controller allows you to track the current location of equipment. Use *Active* tags to track high-value assets in *closed-loop* systems. These tags remain within the control premises of the owner.

### General guidelines

- You can verify the RFID tags on the embedded wireless controller.
- The controller supports high availability for RFID tags.

# Configure RFID tag support (CLI)

Enable and configure RFID tag tracking features for WLANs managed by the device using commands.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Enable RFID tag tracking.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless rfid
```

The default value is enabled.

Use the **no** form of this command to disable RFID tag tracking.

**Step 3** Configure the RFID tag data timeout value to cleanup the table.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless rfid timeout timeout-value 90
```

The timeout value is the amount of time that the embedded wireless controller maintains tags before expiring them. For example, if a tag is configured to beacon every 30 seconds, we recommend that you set the timeout value to 90 seconds (approximately three times the beacon value). The default value is 1200 seconds.

# Verify RFID tag support

To view the summary of RFID tags that are clients, use the command:

```
Device# show wireless rfid client
```

To view the detailed information for an RFID tag, use the command:

```
Device# show wireless rfid detail rfid-mac-address

RFID address  000c.cc96.0001
Vendor Cisco
Last Heard 6 seconds  ago
Packets Received 187
Bytes Received 226

Content Header
==============
  CCX Tag Version 0
  Tx power: 12
  Channel: 11
  Reg Class: 4
CCX Payload
==============
  Last Sequence Control 2735
  Payload length 221
  Payload Data Hex Dump:
  00000000  00 02 00 00 01 09 00 00  00 00 0c b8 ff ff ff 02  |................|
  00000010  07 42 03 20 00 00 0b b8  03 4b 00 00 00 00 00 00  |.B. .....K......|
  00000020  00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................|
  00000030  00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................|
  00000040  00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................|
```

To view the summary information for all known RFID tags, use the command:

```
Device# show wireless rfid summary

Total RFID entries: : 16
Total Unique RFID entries : 16
RFID ID VENDOR Closet AP RSSI Time Since Last Heard
0012.b80a.c791 Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -31 3 minutes 30 seconds ago
0012.b80a.c953 Cisco 7069.5a63.0460 -33 4 minutes 5 seconds ago
0012.b80b.806c Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -46 15 seconds ago
0012.b80d.e9f9 Cisco 7069.5a63.0460 -38 4 minutes 28 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ea03 Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -43 4 minutes 29 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ea6b Cisco 7069.5a63.0460 -39 4 minutes 26 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ebe8 Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -43 3 minutes 21 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ebeb Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -43 4 minutes 28 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ec48 Cisco 7069.5a63.0460 -42 4 minutes 7 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ec55 Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -41 1 minute 52 seconds ago
```

To view the location-based system RFID statistics, use the command:

```
Device# show wireless rfid stats

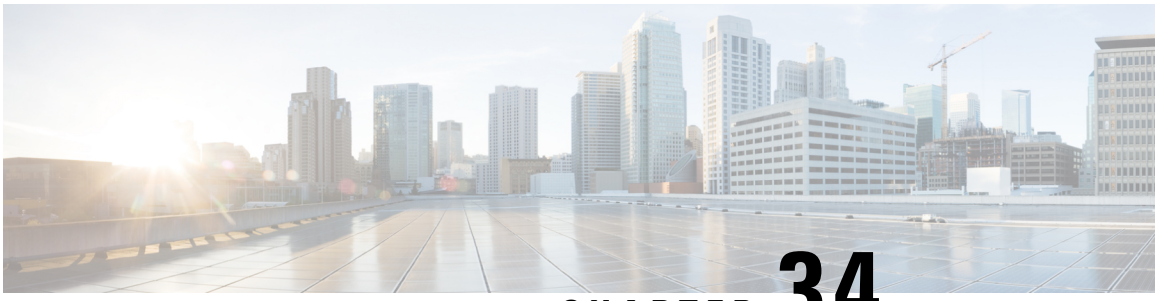
RFID stats :
==============
RFID error db full : 0
RFID error invalid paylod : 0
RFID error invalid tag : 0
RFID error dot11 hdr : 0
RFID error pkt len : 0
RFID error state drop : 0
RFID total pkt received : 369
RFID populated error value : 0
RFID error insert records : 0
RFID error update records : 0
RFID total insert record : 16
RFID ccx payload error : 0
RFID total delete record : 0
RFID error exceeded ap count : 0
```

```
RFID error record remove : 0
RFID old rssi expired count: 0
RFId smallest rssi expireed count : 0
RFID total query insert : 0
RFID error invalid rssi count : 0
```

To view the NMSP notification interval, use the command:

```
Device# show nmsp notification interval
NMSP Notification Intervals
---------------------------

RSSI Interval:
  Client              : 2 sec
  RFID                : 50 sec
  Rogue AP            : 2 sec
  Rogue Client        : 2 sec
  Spectrum            : 2 sec
```



CHAPTER 34

# Application Visibility and Control


- Information About Application Visibility and Control, on page 247
- Create a Flow Monitor, on page 249
- Configuring a Flow Monitor (GUI), on page 250
- Create a Flow Exporter , on page 250
- Verify the Flow Exporter, on page 251
- Configuring a Policy Tag, on page 252
- Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (GUI), on page 252
- Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (CLI), on page 253
- Attaching a Policy Profile to an AP, on page 254
- Verify the AVC Configuration, on page 254
- AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring, on page 255
- Restrictions for AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring, on page 255
- Configuring the Flow Exporter, on page 256
- Configuring the Flow Monitor, on page 256
- Configuring the AVC Reanchoring Profile, on page 257
- Configuring the Wireless WLAN Profile Policy , on page 258
- Verifying AVC Reanchoring, on page 259


# Information About Application Visibility and Control

Application Visibility and Control (AVC) is a subset of the entire Flexible NetFlow (FNF) package that can provide traffic information. The AVC feature employs a distributed approach that benefits from NBAR running on the access point (AP) or embedded wireless controller whose goal is to run deep packet inspection (DPI) and reports the results using FNF messages.

AVC enables you to perform real-time analysis and create policies to reduce network congestion, costly network link usage, and infrastructure upgrades. Traffic flows are analyzed and recognized using the NBAR2 engine. The specific flow is marked with the recognized protocol or application. This per-flow information can be used for application visibility using FNF. After the application visibility is established, a user can define control rules with policing mechanisms for a client.

Using AVC rules, you can limit the bandwidth of a particular application for all the clients joined on the WLAN. These bandwidth contracts coexist with per-client downstream rate limiting that takes precedence over the per-application rate limits.

FNF feature is supported in wireless, and relies on the NetFlow enablement on the embedded wireless controller for flex mode.

The behavior of the AVC solution changes based on the wireless deployments. The following sections describe the commonalities and differences in all scenarios:

### Flex Mode

- NBAR is enabled on an AP
- AVC pushes the FNF configuration to the APs.
- Supports context transfer for roaming in AVC-FNF.
- Supports NetFlow exporter.

## Prerequisites for Application Visibility and Control

- The access points should be AVC capable.
- For the control part of AVC (QoS) to work, the application visibility feature with FNF has to be configured.

## Restrictions for Application Visibility and Control

- Layer 2 roaming is not supported across embedded wireless controllercontrollers.
- Multicast traffic is not supported.
- AVC is supported only on the following access points:
  - Cisco Aironet 1800 Series Access Points
  - Cisco Aironet 2700 Series Access Point
  - Cisco Aironet 2800 Series Access Point
  - Cisco Aironet 3700 Series Access Points
  - Cisco Aironet 3800 Series Access Points
  - Cisco Aironet 4800 Series Access Points
- AVC is not supported on Cisco Aironet 702W, 702I (128 M memory), and 1530 Series access points.
- Only the applications that are recognized with App visibility can be used for applying QoS control.
- Data link is not supported for NetFlow fields in AVC.
- You cannot map the same WLAN profile to both the AVC-not-enabled policy profile and the AVC-enabled policy profile.
- NBAR-based QoS policy configuration is allowed at client level and BSSID level, configured on policy profile.
- NBAR is not able to classify traffic accurately when SaaS applications use end-to-end encryption, QUIC, or DoH due to the encryption's impact on classification. In such a case, the encrypted traffic, including

DoH and QUIC without SNI, limits the NBAR's ability to send the correct Protocol ID, causing issues with traffic classification.

When AVC is enabled, the AVC profile supports only up to 23 rules, which includes the default DSCP rule. The AVC policy will not be pushed down to the AP, if rules are more than 23.

## AVC Configuration Overview

To configure AVC, follow these steps:

1. Create a flow monitor using the **record wireless avc basic** command.
2. Create a wireless policy profile.
3. Apply the flow monitor to the wireless policy profile.
4. Create a wireless policy tag.
5. Map the WLAN to the policy profile
6. Attach the policy tag to the APs.

# Create a Flow Monitor

The NetFlow configuration requires a flow record, a flow monitor, and a flow exporter. This configuration should be the first step in the overall AVC configuration.

**Note** In Flex mode, the default values for **cache timeout active** and **cache timeout inactive** commands are not optimal for AVC. We recommend that you set both the values to 60 in the flow monitor.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **flow monitor** *monitor-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# flow monitor fm_avc` | Creates a flow monitor. |
| **Step 3** | **record wireless avc basic**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-monitor)# record wireless`<br>`avc basic` | Specifies the basic wireless AVC flow template.<br>**Note**<br>The **record wireless avc basic** command is same as **record wireless avc ipv4 basic** command. However, **record wireless avc ipv4 basic** command is not supported in Flex or |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | Fabric modes. In such scenarios, use the **record wireless avc basic** command. |

# Configuring a Flow Monitor (GUI)

### Before you begin

You must have created a flow exporter to export data from the flow monitor.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Services** > **Application Visibility** and go to the **Flow Monitor** tab .

**Step 2** In the **Monitor** area, click **Add** to add a flow monitor.

**Step 3** In the **Flow Monitor** window, add a flow monitor and a description.

**Step 4** Select the Flow exporter from the drop-down list to export the data from the flow monitor to a collector.

**Note**
To export wireless netflow data, use the templates below:

- ETA (Encrypted Traffic Analysis)
- wireless avc basic
- wireless avc basic IPv6

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.

# Create a Flow Exporter

You can create a flow exporter to define the export parameters for a flow. This is an optional procedure for configuring flow exporter parameters.

**Note** For the AVC statistics to be visible at the embedded wireless controller, you should configure a local flow exporter using the following commands:

- **flow exporter** *my_local*
- **destination local wlc**

Also, your flow monitor must use this local exporter for the statistics to be visible at the embedded wireless controller.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **flow exporter** *flow-export-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# flow exporter export-test` | Creates a flow monitor. |
| **Step 2** | **description** *string*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-exporter)# description IPv4flow` | Describes the flow record as a maximum 63-character string. |
| **Step 3** | **Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-exporter)# destination local wlc` | Specifies the local WLC to which the exporter sends data. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-exporter)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 5** | **show flow exporter**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show flow exporter` | (Optional) Verifies your configuration. |

# Verify the Flow Exporter

To verify the flow exporter description, use the following command:

For example, to verify the flow exporter description for the flow exporter named *my-flow-exporter*, see the example below:

```
Device# show flow exporter
Flow Exporter my-flow-exporter:
  Description:              User defined
  Export protocol:          NetFlow Version 9
  Transport Configuration:
    Destination type:       Local (1)
    Destination IP address: 0.0.0.0
    Source IP address:      10.0.0.1
    Transport Protocol:     UDP
    Destination Port:       9XXX
    Source Port:            5XXXX
    DSCP:                   0x0
    TTL:                    255
    Output Features:        Not Used
```

**Note** A flow exporter with no destination is marked as an UNKNOWN type. The following are the two ways the exporter is marked as UNKNOWN:

1. When you configure the flow exporter using the CLI commands without a destination.
2. EWC supports a maximum of one external and one internal flow exporter. If you attempt to configure more than one flow exporter per type, this results in the destination to be rejected and the flow exporter will be considered as UNKNOWN.

# Configuring a Policy Tag

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless tag policy** *policy-tag-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# wireless tag policy rr-xyz-policy-tag` | Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# end` | Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags**.
**Step 2** On the **Manage Tags** page, click **Policy** tab.
**Step 3** Click **Add** to view the **Add Policy Tag** window.
**Step 4** Enter a name and description for the policy tag.
**Step 5** Click **Add** to map WLAN and policy.
**Step 6** Choose the WLAN profile to map with the appropriate policy profile, and click the tick icon.

**Step 7** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (CLI)

### Before you begin

- Do not attach different AVC policy profiles on the same WLAN across different policy tags.

  The following is an example of incorrect configuration:

```
wireless profile policy avc_pol1
   ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc1 input
   ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc1 output
   no shutdown
  wireless profile policy avc_pol2
   ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc2 input
   ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc2 output
   no shutdown
  wireless tag policy avc-tag1
   wlan wlan1 policy avc_pol1
  wireless tag policy avc-tag2
   wlan wlan1 policy avc_pol2
```

  This example violates the restriction stated earlier, that is, the WLAN *wlan1* is mapped to 2 policy profiles, *avc_pol1* and *avc_pol2*. This configuration is, therefore, incorrect because the WLAN *wlan1* should be mapped to either *avc_pol1* or *avc_pol2* everywhere.

- Conflicting policy profiles on the same WLAN are not supported. For example, policy profile (with and without AVC) applied to the same WLAN in different policy tags.

  The following is an example of an incorrect configuration:

```
wireless profile policy avc_pol1
   no shutdown
  wireless profile policy avc_pol2
   ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc2 input
   ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc2 output
   no shutdown
  wireless tag policy avc-tag1
   wlan wlan1 policy avc_pol1
  wireless tag policy avc-tag2
   wlan wlan1 policy avc_pol2
```

  In this example, a policy profile with and without AVC is applied to the same WLAN in different tags.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **wireless tag policy** *avc-tag*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless tag policy avc-tag` | Creates a policy tag. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-avc* **policy** *avc-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan wlan_avc policy avc_pol` | Attaches a policy profile to a WLAN profile. |

**What to do next**

- Run the **no shutdown** command on the WLAN after completing the configuration.
- If the WLAN is already in **no shutdown** mode, run the **shutdown** command, followed by **no shutdown** command.

# Attaching a Policy Profile to an AP

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **ap** *ap-ether-mac*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap 34a8.2ec7.4cf0` | Enters AP configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **policy-tag** *policy-tag*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# policy-tag avc-tag` | Specifies the policy tag that is to be attached to the access point. |

# Verify the AVC Configuration

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **show avc wlan** *wlan-name* **top** *num-of-applications* **applications {aggregate \| downstream \| upstream}**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show avc wlan wlan_avc top 2 applications aggregate` | Displays information about top applications and users using these applications.<br>**Note**<br>Ensure that wireless clients are associated to the WLAN and generating traffic, and then wait for 90 seconds (to ensure the availability of statistics) before running the command. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **show avc client** *mac* **top** *num-of-applications* **applications {aggregate \| downstream \| upstream}**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show avc client 9.3.4 top 3 applications aggregate` | Displays information about the top number of applications.<br>**Note** Ensure that wireless clients are associated to the WLAN and generating traffic, and then wait for 90 seconds (to ensure the availability of statistics) before running the command. |
| **Step 3** | **show avc wlan** *wlan-name* **application** *app-name* **top** *num-of-clients* **aggregate**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show avc wlan wlan_avc application app top 4 aggregate` | Displays information about top applications and users using these applications. |
| **Step 4** | **show ap summary**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show ap summary` | Displays a summary of all the access points attached to the embedded wireless controller. |
| **Step 5** | **show ap tag summary**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show ap tag summary` | Displays a summary of all the access points with policy tags. |

# AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring

The AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring feature is designed to reanchor clients when they roam from one embedded wireless controller to another. Reanchoring of clients prevents the depletion of IP addresses available for new clients in Cisco WLC. The AVC profile-based statistics are used to decide whether a client must be reanchored or deferred. This is useful when a client is actively running a voice or video application defined in the AVC rules.

The reanchoring process also involves deauthentication of anchored clients. The clients get deauthenticated when they do not transmit traffic for the applications listed in the AVC rules while roaming between WLCs.

# Restrictions for AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring

- This feature is supported only in local mode. FlexConnect and fabric modes are not supported.
- This feature is not supported in guest tunneling and export anchor scenarios.
- The old IP address is not released after reanchoring, until IP address' lease period ends.

# Configuring the Flow Exporter

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **flow exporter** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# flow exporter avc-reanchor` | Creates a flow exporter and enters flow exporter configuration mode.<br>**Note**<br>You can use this command to modify an existing flow exporter too. |
| **Step 3** | **destination local wlc**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-exporter)# destination local wlc` | Sets the exporter as local. |

# Configuring the Flow Monitor

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **flow monitor** *monitor-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# flow monitor fm_avc` | Creates a flow monitor and enters Flexible NetFlow flow monitor configuration mode.<br>**Note**<br>You can use this command to modify an existing flow monitor too. |
| **Step 3** | **exporter** *exporter-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-monitor)# exporter avc-reanchor` | Specifies the name of an exporter. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **record wireless avc basic**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-monitor)# record wireless avc basic` | Specifies the flow record to use to define the cache. |
| **Step 5** | **cache timeout active** *value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-monitor)# cache timeout active 60` | Sets the active flow timeout, in seconds. |
| **Step 6** | **cache timeout inactive** *value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-monitor)# cache timeout inactive 60` | Sets the inactive flow timeout, in seconds. |

# Configuring the AVC Reanchoring Profile

### Before you begin

- Ensure that you use the AVC-Reanchor-Class class map. All other class-map names are ignored by Selective Reanchoring.
- During boot up, the system checks for the existence of the AVC-Reanchor-Class class map. If it is not found, default protocols, for example, jabber-video, WiFi-calling, and so on, are created. If AVC-Reanchor-Class class map is found, configuration changes are not made and updates to the protocols that are saved to the startup configuration persist across reboots.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **class-map** *cmap-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# class-map AVC-Reanchor-Class` | Configures the class map. |
| **Step 3** | **match any**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-cmap)# match any` | Instructs the device to match with any of the protocols that pass through it. |
| **Step 4** | **match protocol jabber-audio** | Specifies a match to the application name. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | **Example:**<br>`Device(config-cmap)# match protocol jabber-audio` | You can edit the class-map configuration later, in order to add or remove protocols, for example, jabber-video, wifi-calling, and so on, if required. |

# Configuring the Wireless WLAN Profile Policy

Follow the procedure given below to configure the WLAN profile policy:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Configures the WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown` | Disables the policy profile. |
| **Step 4** | **central switching**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching` | Enables central switching. |
| **Step 5** | **ipv4 flow monitor** *monitor-name* **input**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 flow monitor fm_avc input` | Specifies the name of the IPv4 ingress flow monitor. |
| **Step 6** | **ipv4 flow monitor** *monitor-name* **output**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 flow monitor fm_avc output` | Specifies the name of the IPv4 egress flow monitor. |
| **Step 7** | **reanchor class** *class-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# reanchor class AVC-Reanchor-Class` | Configure a class map with protocols for the Selective Reanchoring feature. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 8** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Enables the policy profile. |

# Verifying AVC Reanchoring

Use the following commands to verify the AVC reanchoring configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed avc_reanchor_policy

Policy Profile Name           : avc_reanchor_policy
Description                   :
Status                        : ENABLED
VLAN                          : 1
Wireless management interface VLAN        : 34
!
.
.
.
AVC VISIBILITY                : Enabled
Flow Monitor IPv4
  Flow Monitor Ingress Name   : fm_avc
  Flow Monitor Egress Name    : fm_avc
Flow Monitor IPv6
  Flow Monitor Ingress Name   : Not Configured
  Flow Monitor Egress Name    : Not Configured
NBAR Protocol Discovery       : Disabled
Reanchoring                   : Enabled
Classmap name for Reanchoring
  Reanchoring Classmap Name   : AVC-Reanchor-Class
!
.
.
.
  ------------------------------------------------------


Device# show platform software trace counter tag wstatsd chassis active R0 avc-stats debug

Counter Name Thread ID Counter Value
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
Reanch_deassociated_clients 28340 1
Reanch_tracked_clients 28340 4
Reanch_deleted_clients 28340 3

Device# show platform software trace counter tag wncd chassis active R0 avc-afc debug

Counter Name Thread ID Counter Value
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
Reanch_co_ignored_clients 30063 1
Reanch_co_anchored_clients 30063 5
Reanch_co_deauthed_clients 30063 4


Device# show platform software wlavc status wncd

Event history of WNCD DB:
```

```
AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,N/A,Reanc,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Reanchoring
Flow-mon-name : N/A
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL

Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx
------------------------- ------------------- -------------------------- ---- ----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.630342 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822780 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822672 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:15.172073 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:12.738367 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:12.738261 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:01.162689 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757643 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757542 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:04.468749 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:02.18857 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:02.18717 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:38:20.164304 2 :READY 3 :FSM_AFM_SWEEP 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:20.163877 2 :READY 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:18.593257 1 :INIT 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:18.593152 1 :INIT 24:CREATE_FSM 0 0

AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,fm_avc,v4-In,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Flow monitor IPv4 Ingress
Flow-mon-name : fm_avc
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL

Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx
------------------------- ------------------- -------------------------- ---- ----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.664772 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822499 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822222 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:15.207605 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:12.738105 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:12.737997 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:01.164225 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757266 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757181 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:04.472778 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:02.15413 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:02.15263 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:38:20.164254 2 :READY 3 :FSM_AFM_SWEEP 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:20.163209 1 :INIT 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:20.163189 1 :INIT 24:CREATE_FSM 0 0

AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,fm_avc,v4-Ou,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Flow monitor IPv4 Egress
Flow-mon-name : fm_avc
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL
```

```
Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx
------------------------- ------------------- -------------------------- ---- ----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.630764 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822621 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822574 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:15.172357 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:12.738212 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:12.738167 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:01.164048 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757403 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757361 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:04.472561 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:02.18660 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:02.18588 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:38:20.164293 2 :READY 3 :FSM_AFM_SWEEP 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:20.163799 1 :INIT 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:20.163773 1 :INIT 24:CREATE_FSM 0 0


Device# show platform software wlavc status wncmgrd

Event history of WNCMgr DB:

AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,N/A,Reanc,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Reanchoring
Flow-mon-name : N/A
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL
Policy-profile : AVC_POL_PYATS

Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx
------------------------- ------------------- -------------------------- ---- ----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629278 3 :WLAN_READY 24:BIND_WNCD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629223 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629179 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510867 2 :PLUMB_READY 22:BIND_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510411 2 :PLUMB_READY 2 :FSM_WLAN_UP 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510371 2 :PLUMB_READY 1 :FSM_WLAN_FM_PLUMB 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.886377 2 :PLUMB_READY 20:UNBIND_ACK_IOSD 0 0
!

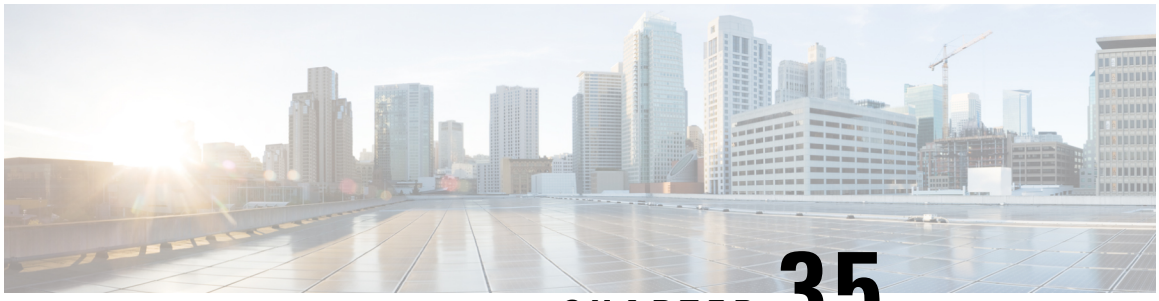
AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,fm_avc,v4-In,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Flow monitor IPv4 Ingress
Flow-mon-name : fm_avc
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL
Policy-profile : AVC_POL_PYATS

Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx
------------------------- ------------------- -------------------------- ---- ----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.664032 3 :WLAN_READY 24:BIND_WNCD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.663958 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.663921 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.511151 2 :PLUMB_READY 22:BIND_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510624 2 :PLUMB_READY 2 :FSM_WLAN_UP 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510608 2 :PLUMB_READY 1 :FSM_WLAN_FM_PLUMB 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.810867 2 :PLUMB_READY 20:UNBIND_ACK_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.807239 4 :READY 25:UNBIND_WNCD 0 0
```

```
06/12/2018 16:45:28.807205 4 :READY 23:UNBIND_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.806734 4 :READY 3 :FSM_WLAN_DOWN 0 0
!

AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,fm_avc,v4-Ou,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Flow monitor IPv4 Egress
Flow-mon-name : fm_avc
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL
Policy-profile : AVC_POL_PYATS

Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx
------------------------- ------------------- -------------------------- ---- ----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629414 3 :WLAN_READY 24:BIND_WNCD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629392 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629380 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510954 2 :PLUMB_READY 22:BIND_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510572 2 :PLUMB_READY 2 :FSM_WLAN_UP 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510532 2 :PLUMB_READY 1 :FSM_WLAN_FM_PLUMB 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.886293 2 :PLUMB_READY 20:UNBIND_ACK_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.807844 4 :READY 25:UNBIND_WNCD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.807795 4 :READY 23:UNBIND_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.806990 4 :READY 3 :FSM_WLAN_DOWN 0 0
!
```



CHAPTER 35

# Flexible NetFlow Exporter on Embedded Wireless Controller


- Flexible NetFlow Exporter on Embedded Wireless Controller , on page 263
- Create a Flow Exporter , on page 264
- Create a Flow Monitor, on page 264
- Configuring the Wireless WLAN Profile Policy , on page 265
- Verifying Flow Exporter in Embedded Wireless Controller , on page 266


# Flexible NetFlow Exporter on Embedded Wireless Controller

Flexible Netflow (FnF) Exporter on Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC) is supported from Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1 onwards.

NetFlow is a Cisco IOS technology that provides statistics on packets flowing on the network. NetFlow is the standard for acquiring IP operational data from IP networks. NetFlow provides data to support network and security monitoring, network planning, traffic analysis, and IP accounting.

Flexible NetFlow improves on original NetFlow by adding the capability to customize the traffic analysis parameters for your specific requirements. Flexible NetFlow facilitates the creation of more complex configurations for traffic analysis and data export through the use of reusable configuration components.

FnF Exporter in EWC is supported only in the flex mode.

This feature is part of the AVC solution in EWC. For more information about AVC, refer to the *Application Visibility and Control* chapter.

## AVC Configuration Limitations on EWC

- Only one local exporter (statistics collector on EWC) is supported.
- FnF supports only one per IP-type and direction in Flex mode, for Flow Monitor.
- Support of only UDP transport protocol.
- AVC cache is not supported.
- The **option** command and the command related to DP statistics are not supported on EWC.
- Support of only Wireless AVC Basic template.

- Support for only Netflow Version 9.
- IP address 0.0.0.0 is a valid destination address. However, if you use it, the Flexible NetFlow data will be discarded and not collected by any collector.

# Create a Flow Exporter

The following procedure shows how to create a flow exporter in EWC:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **flow exporter** *flow-export-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# flow exporter export-test` | Creates a flow exporter. |
| **Step 3** | **description** *string*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-exporter)# description IPv4flow` | (Optional) Describes the flow exporter as a maximum 63-character string. |
| **Step 4** | **Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-exporter)# destination 10.0.1.0` | |

# Create a Flow Monitor

The NetFlow configuration requires a flow record, a flow monitor, and a flow exporter. This configuration should be the first step in the overall AVC configuration.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **flow monitor** *monitor-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# flow monitor monitor-test` | Creates a flow monitor. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **exporter** *exporter-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-monitor)# exporter export-test` | Binds this flow monitor with an already defined flow exporter. |
| **Step 4** | **record wireless avc basic**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-monitor)# record wireless avc basic` | Specifies the basic wireless AVC flow template. |

# Configuring the Wireless WLAN Profile Policy

This configuration maps the flow-monitor or exporter constructs with wireless WLANs, thereby making APs collect FnF measurements.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Configures the WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown` | Disables the policy profile. |
| **Step 4** | {**ipv4** \| **ipv6**} **flow monitor** *monitor-name* **input**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 flow monitor monitor-test input` | Specifies the name of the IPv4 or IPv6 ingress flow monitor. |
| **Step 5** | {**ipv4** \| **ipv6**} **flow monitor** *monitor-name* **output**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 flow monitor monitor-test output` | Specifies the name of the IPv4 or IPv6 egress flow monitor. |

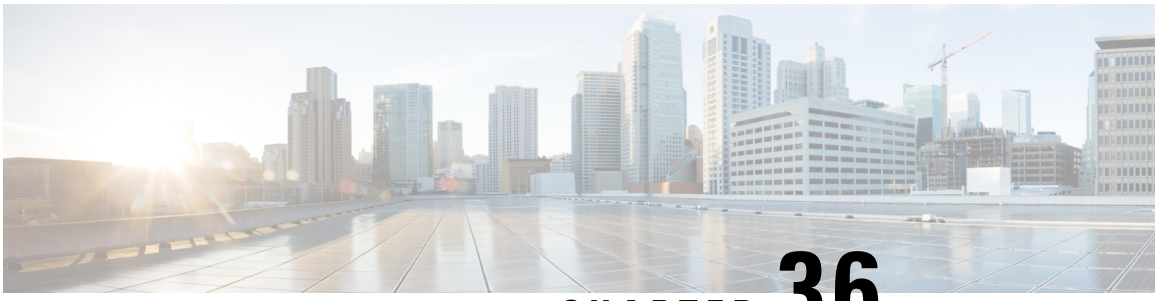
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 6** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Enables the policy profile. |

# Verifying Flow Exporter in Embedded Wireless Controller

To view the flow exporter details in the Embedded Wireless Controller, use the following command:

**show platform software wlavc status cp-exporter**

```
show platform software wlavc status cp-exporter
AVC FNF Exporter status
IP: 10.10.1.1
connection statistics
        Sent bytes : 5672
        Sent packets : 569
        Sent records : 240
        Received packets : 800
        Received records : 564
Socket statistics
        New sockets : 3
        Closed sockets : 0
Library statistics  AVC
        cache errors : 0
        Unexpected Flow Monitor ID : 0
        Socket creation error : 0
```



CHAPTER 36

# Cisco Connected Mobile Experiences Cloud

Cisco Connected Mobile Experiences (CMX) communicates with the Cisco wireless embedded wireless controller using the Network Mobility Services Protocol (NMSP), which runs over a connection-oriented (TLS) transport. This transport provides a secure 2-way connectivity and is convenient when both the embedded wireless controller and CMX are on-premise and there is direct IP connectivity between them.

Cisco CMX Cloud is a cloud-delivered version of the on-premise CMX. To access Cisco CMX Cloud services, HTTPS is used as a transport protocol.


- Configuring Cisco CMX Cloud , on page 267
- Verifying Cisco CMX Cloud Configuration, on page 268


# Configuring Cisco CMX Cloud

Follow the procedure given below to configure CMX Cloud:

### Before you begin

- **Configure DNS**—To resolve fully qualified domain names used by NMSP cloud-services, configure a **DNS** using the **ip name-server** *server_address* configuration command as shown in Step 2.
- **Import 3rd party root CAs**—The controller verifies the peer and the host based on the certificate that is sent by the CMX when a connection is established. However, root CAs are not preinstalled on the controller. You have to import a set of root CAs trusted by Cisco to the trustpool of the crypto PKI by using the **crypto pki trustpool import url <url>** configuration command as shown in Step 3.
- A successful registration to Cisco Spaces is required to enable **server url** and **server token** parameters configuration which is needed to complete this setup.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ip name-server** *namesvr-ip-addr*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ip name-server 10.10.10.205` | Configures the DNS on the controller to resolve the FQDN names used by the NMSP cloud-services. |
| **Step 3** | **crypto pki trustpool import url** *url*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#crypto pki trustpool import url http://www.cisco.com/security/pki/trs/ios.p7b` | Imports the 3rd party root CA. The controller verifies the peer using the imported certificate. |
| **Step 4** | **[no] nmsp cloud-services server url** *url*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# nmsp cloud-services server url https://cisco.com` | Configures the URL used for cloud services. Use the **no** form of the command to delete the server url from the configuration. |
| **Step 5** | **[no] nmsp cloud-services server token** *token*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# nmsp cloud-services server token test` | Configures the authentication token for the NMSP cloud service. Use the **no** form of the command to delete the server token from the configuration. |
| **Step 6** | **[no] nmsp cloud-services http-proxy** *proxy-server port*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# nmsp cloud-services http-proxy 10.0.0.1 10` | (Optional) Configures HTTP proxy details for the NMSP cloud service. Use the **no** form of the command to disable the use of a HTTP proxy. |
| **Step 7** | **[no] nmsp cloud-services enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# nmsp cloud-services enable` | Enables NMSP cloud services. Use the **no** form of the command to disable the feature. |

# Verifying Cisco CMX Cloud Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the CMX Cloud configuration.

To view the status of active NMSP connections, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmsp status

MSE IP Address   Tx Echo Resp  Rx Echo Req   Tx Data     Rx Data   Transport
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
9.9.71.78        0             0             1           1         TLS
64.103.36.133    0             0             1230        2391      HTTPs
```

To view the NMSP cloud service status, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmsp cloud-services summary

CMX Cloud-Services Status
```

```
-------------------------

   Server:                                 https://yenth8.cmxcisco.com
   IP Address:                             64.103.36.133
   Cmx Service:                            Enabled
   Connectivity:                           https: UP
   Service Status:                         Active
   Last Request Status:                    HTTP/1.1 200 OK
   Heartbeat Status:                       OK
```

To view the NMSP cloud service statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmsp cloud-services statistics

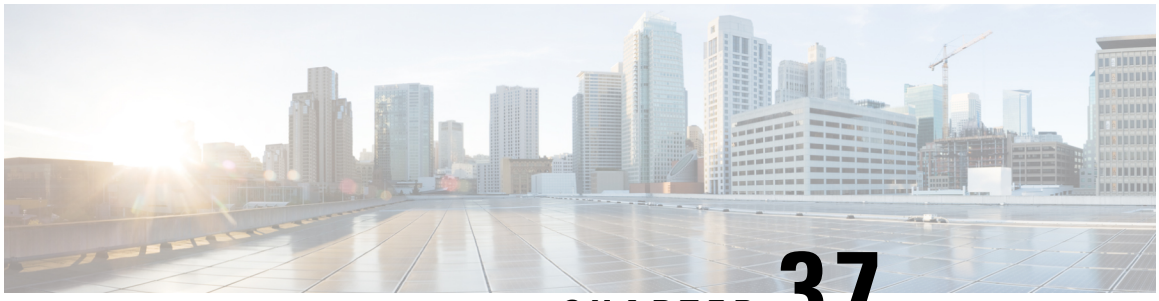
CMX Cloud-Services Statistics
-----------------------------

   Tx DataFrames:                           3213
   Rx DataFrames:                           1606
   Tx HeartBeat Req:                       31785
   Heartbeat Timeout:                          0
   Rx Subscr Req:                           2868
   Tx DataBytes:                           10069
   Rx DataBytes:                           37752
   Tx HeartBeat Fail:                          2
   Tx Data Fail:                               0
   Tx Conn Fail:                               0
```

To view the mobility services summary, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmsp subscription summary

Mobility Services Subscribed:
Index Server IP Services
----- --------- --------
1 209.165.200.225 RSSI, Info, Statistics, AP Monitor, AP Info
2 209.165.200.225 RSSI, Statistics, AP Info
```



CHAPTER 37

# EDCA Parameters


- Enhanced Distributed Channel Access Parameters, on page 271
- Configuring EDCA Parameters (GUI), on page 271
- Configuring EDCA Parameters (CLI), on page 272


## Enhanced Distributed Channel Access Parameters

Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) parameters are designed to provide preferential wireless channel access for voice, video, and other quality of service (QoS) traffic.

This section contains the following subsections:

## Configuring EDCA Parameters (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > Parameters**. Using this page, you can configure global parameters for 802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz) and 802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz) radios.

**Note**
You cannot configure or modify parameters, if the radio network is enabled. Disable the network status on the Configuration > Radio Configurations > Network page before you proceed. For the EDCA to take effect on the WLANs, you must disable and then re-enable the WLANs.

**Step 2** In the **EDCA Parameters** section, choose an EDCA profile from the **EDCA Profile** drop-down list. Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) parameters are designed to provide preferential wireless channel access for voice, video, and other quality-of-service (QoS) traffic.

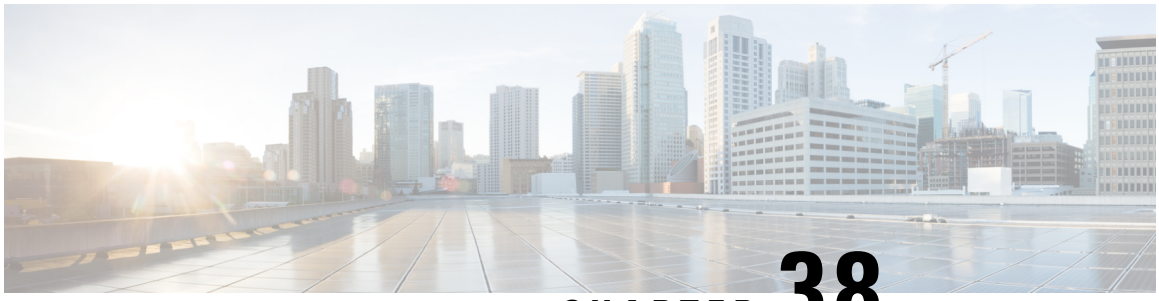
**Step 3** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring EDCA Parameters (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz } shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown` | Disables the radio network. |
| **Step 3** | **ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz} edca-parameters {custom-voice \| fastlane \| optimized-video-voice \| optimized-voice \| svp-voice \| wmm-default}**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz edca-parameters optimized-voice` | Enables specific EDCA parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network.<br>• **custom-voice**: Enables custom voice parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network.<br>• **fastlane**: Enables the fastlane parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network.<br>• **optimized-video-voice**: Enables EDCA voice-optimized and video-optimized parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network. Choose this option when both voice and video services are deployed on your network.<br>• **optimized-voice**: Enables non-SpectraLink voice-optimized profile parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network. Choose this option when voice services other than SpectraLink are deployed on your network.<br>• **svp-voice**: Enables SpectraLink voice-priority parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network. Choose this option if SpectraLink phones are deployed on your network to improve the quality of calls.<br>• **wmm-default**: Enables the Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) default parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network. This is the default option. Choose this option when voice or video services are not deployed on your network. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **no ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz} shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown` | Re-enables the radio network. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 6** | **show ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz} network**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show ap dot11 5ghz network` | Displays the current status of MAC optimization for voice. |



CHAPTER 38

# 802.11 parameters and Band Selection


- Information About Configuring Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters, on page 275
- Restrictions for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters, on page 276
- How to Configure 802.11 Bands and Parameters, on page 277
- Monitoring Configuration Settings for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters, on page 286
- Configuration Examples for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters, on page 290


# Information About Configuring Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters

## Band Select

Band select enables client radios that are capable of dual-band (2.4 and 5-GHz) operations to move to a less congested 5-GHz access point. The 2.4-GHz band is often congested. Clients on this band typically experience interference from Bluetooth devices, microwave ovens, and cordless phones as well as co-channel interference from other access points because of the 802.11b/g limit of 3 nonoverlapping channels. To prevent these sources of interference and improve overall network performance, configure band selection on the device.

Band select works by regulating probe responses to clients and it can be enabled on a per-WLAN basis. It makes 5-GHz channels more attractive to clients by delaying probe responses to clients on 2.4-GHz channels. In an access point, the band select table can be viewed by running the **show dot11 band-select** command. It can also be viewed by running the **show cont d0/d1 | begin Lru** command.

### Band Select Algorithm

The band select algorithm affects clients that use 2.4-GHz band. Initially, when a client sends a probe request to an access point, the corresponding client probe's Active and Count values (as seen from the band select table) become 1. The algorithm functions based on the following scenarios:

- Scenario1: Client RSSI (as seen from the **show cont d0/d1** | **begin RSSI**command output) is greater than both Mid RSSI and Acceptable Client RSSI.
  - Dual-band clients: No 2.4-GHz probe responses are seen at any time; 5-GHz probe responses are seen for all 5-GHz probe requests.
  - Single-band (2.4-GHz) clients: 2.4-GHz probe responses are seen only after the probe suppression cycle.

- After the client's probe count reaches the configured probe cycle count, the algorithm waits for the Age Out Suppression time and then marks the client probe's Active value as 0. Then, the algorithm is restarted.

- Scenario2: Client RSSI (as seen from **show cont d0/d1** | **begin RSSI**) lies between Mid-RSSI and Acceptable Client RSSI.
  - All 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz probe requests are responded to without any restrictions.
  - This scenario is similar to the band select disabled.



**Note** The client RSSI value (as seen in the **sh cont d0** | **begin RSSI** command output) is the average of the client packets received, and the Mid RSSI feature is the instantaneous RSSI value of the probe packets. As a result, the client RSSI is seen as weaker than the configured Mid RSSI value (7-dB delta). The 802.11b probes from the client are suppressed to push the client to associate with the 802.11a band.

## 802.11 Bands

You can configure the 802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz) and 802.11a/n (5 GHz) bands for the controller to comply with the regulatory requirements in your country. By default, both 802.11b/g/n and 802.11a/n are enabled.

This section contains the following subsections:

## 802.11n Parameters

This section provides instructions for managing 802.11n access points on your network. The 802.11n devices support the 2.4 and 5-GHz bands and offer high throughput data rates.

The 802.11n high throughput rates are available on all the 802.11n access points for the WLANs using WMM with no Layer 2 encryption or with WPA2/AES encryption enabled.



**Note** To disable MCS rates for 802.11n, 802.11ac and 802.11ax, ensure that at least one MCS rate is enabled. To disable 802.11n on the controller to force APs to use only legacy 802.11a/b/g rates, first disable 802.11ax and 802.11ac on the controller for a particular band. Irrespective of the APs mapped to a Custom-RF-Profile, disabling 802.11n globally on the controller applies to all the APs.

## 802.11h Parameters

802.11h informs client devices about channel changes and can limit the transmit power of those client devices.

# Restrictions for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters

- Band selection-enabled WLANs do not support time-sensitive applications such as voice and video because of roaming delays.

- Band selection is supported only on Cisco Wave 2 and 802.11ax APs.

  For more information about support on specific APs, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.

- Band selection operates only on APs that are connected to a controller. A FlexConnect AP without a controller connection does not perform band selection after a reboot.
- The band-selection algorithm directs dual-band clients only from the 2.4-GHz radio to the 5-GHz radio of the same AP, and it only runs on an AP when both the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz radios are up and running.
- It is not possible to enable or disable band selection and client load balancing globally through the controller GUI or CLI. You can, however, enable or disable band selection and client load balancing for a particular WLAN. Band selection and client load balancing are enabled globally by default.

# How to Configure 802.11 Bands and Parameters

## Configuring Band Selection (GUI)

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an AP Join Profile prior to configuring the primary and backup controllers.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless Advanced** > **Band Select**.

**Step 2** In the **Cycle Count** field, enter a value between 1 and 10. The cycle count sets the number of suppression cycles for a new client. The default cycle count is 2.

**Step 3** In the **Cycle Threshold (milliseconds)** field, enter a value between 1 and 1000 milliseconds for the scan cycle period threshold. This setting determines the time threshold during which new probe requests from a client come from a new scanning cycle. The default cycle threshold is 200 milliseconds.

**Step 4** In the **Age Out Suppression (seconds)** field, enter a value between 10 and 200 seconds. Age-out suppression sets the expiration time for pruning previously known 802.11b/g/n clients. The default value is 20 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.

**Step 5** In the **Age Out Dual Band (seconds)** field, enter a value between 10 and 300 seconds. The age-out period sets the expiration time for pruning previously known dual-band clients. The default value is 50 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.

**Step 6** In the Client RSSI (dbm) field, enter a value between -90 to -20. This is the average of the client packets received.

**Step 7** In the Client Mid RSSI (dbm) field, enter a value between -90 to -20. This the instantaneous RSSI value of the probe packets.

**Step 8** On the **AP Join Profile** page, click the AP Join Profile name.

**Step 9** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring Band Selection (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless client band-select cycle-count** *cycle_count*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless client band-select cycle-count 3` | Sets the probe cycle count for band select. Valid range is between 1 and 10. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless client band-select cycle-threshold** *milliseconds*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless client band-select cycle-threshold 5000` | Sets the time threshold for a new scanning cycle period. Valid range is between 1 and 1000. |
| **Step 4** | **wireless client band-select expire suppression** *seconds*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless client band-select expire suppression 100` | Sets the suppression expire to the band select. Valid range is between 10 and 200. |
| **Step 5** | **wireless client band-select expire dual-band** *seconds*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless client band-select expire dual-band 100` | Sets the dual band expire. Valid range is between 10 and 300. |
| **Step 6** | **wireless client band-select client-rssi** *client_rssi*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless client band-select client-rssi 40` | Sets the client RSSI threshold. Valid range is between 20 and 90. |
| **Step 7** | **wlan** *wlan_profile_name wlan_ID SSID_network_name* **band-select**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12`<br>`Device(config-wlan)# band-select` | Configures band selection on specific WLANs. Valid range is between 1 and 512. You can enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for *SSID_network_name* parameter. |

# Configuring the 802.11 Bands (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **Network**.

**Step 2** Click either **5 GHz Band** or **2.4 GHz Band**.

**Step 3** Uncheck the **Network Status** check box to disable the network in order to be able to configure the network parameters.

**Step 4** In the **Beacon Interval** field, enter the rate at which the SSID is broadcast by the APs, from 100 to 600 milliseconds. The default is 100 milliseconds.

**Step 5** For 802.11b/g/n (2.4-GHz) radios, to enable short preamble on the radio, check the **Short Preamble** check box. A short preamble improves throughput performance.

**Step 6** In the **Fragmentation Threshold (in bytes)** field, enter a value between 256 to 2346 bytes. Packets larger than the size you specify here will be fragmented.

**Step 7** Check the **DTPC Support** check box to advertise the transmit power level of the radio in the beacons and the probe responses. Client devices using dynamic transmit power control (DTPC) receive the channel and power level information from the access points and adjust their settings automatically. For example, a client device used primarily in Japan could rely on DTPC to adjust its channel and power settings automatically when it travels to Italy and joins a network there. You cannot configure a power constraint value on your 802.11a/n/ac (5-GHz) radio network if the **DTPC Support** check box is checked.

**Step 8** Click **Apply**.

**Step 9** In the **CCX Location Measurement** section, check the **Mode** check box to globally enable CCX radio management for the network. This parameter causes the APs connected to this device to issue broadcast radio measurement requests to clients running CCX v2 or later releases.

**Step 10** In the **Interval** field, enter a value to specify how often the APs must issue broadcast radio measurement requests.

**Step 11** Click **Apply**.

**Step 12** In the **Data Rates** section, choose a value to specify the rates at which data can be transmitted between the access point and the client:

- Mandatory: Clients must support this data rate in order to associate to an access point on the controller embedded wireless controller.
- Supported: Any associated clients that support this data rate may communicate with the access point using that rate.
- Disabled: The clients specify the data rates used for communication.

**Step 13** Click **Apply**.

**Step 14** Save the configuration.

# Configuring the 802.11 Bands (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure 802.11 bands and parameters:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 5ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown` | Disables the 802.11a band.<br>**Note** You must disable the 802.11a band before configuring the 802.11a network parameters. |
| **Step 3** | **ap dot11 24ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz shutdown` | Disables the 802.11b band.<br>**Note** You must disable the 802.11b band before configuring the 802.11b network parameters. |
| **Step 4** | **ap dot11** {**5ghz** \| **24ghz** } **beaconperiod** *time_unit*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz beaconperiod 500` | Specifies the rate at which the SSID is broadcast by the corresponding access point.<br>The beacon interval is measured in time units (TUs). One TU is 1024 microseconds. You can configure the access point to send a beacon every 20 to 1000 milliseconds. |
| **Step 5** | **ap dot11** {**5ghz** \| **24ghz** } **fragmentation** *threshold*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz fragmentation 300` | Specifies the size at which packets are fragmented.<br>The threshold is a value between 256 and 2346 bytes (inclusive). Specify a low number for areas where communication is poor or where there is a great deal of radio interference. |
| **Step 6** | **[no] ap dot11** {**5ghz** \| **24ghz** } **dtpc**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dtpc`<br>`Device(config)# no ap dot11 24ghz dtpc` | Enables access points to advertise their channels and transmit the power levels in beacons and probe responses.<br>The default value is enabled. Client devices using dynamic transmit power control (DTPC) receive the channel-level and power-level information from the access points and adjust their settings automatically. For example, a client device used primarily in Japan can rely on DTPC to adjust its channel and power settings automatically when it travels to Italy and joins a network there.<br>The **no** form of the command disables the DTPC setting. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 7** | **wireless client association limit** *number* **interval** *milliseconds*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless client association limit 50 interval 1000` | Specifies the maximum allowed clients that can be configured.<br>You can configure the maximum number of association requests on a single access point slot at a given interval. The range of association limit that you can configure is from 1 to 100.<br>The association request limit interval is measured between 100 to 10000 milliseconds. |
| **Step 8** | **ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz} rate** *rate* {**disable** \| **mandatory** \| **supported**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rate 36 mandatory` | Specifies the rate at which data can be transmitted between the controller embedded wireless controller and the client.<br>• **disable**: Defines that the clients specify the data rates used for communication.<br>• **mandatory**: Defines that the clients support this data rate in order to associate to an access point on the controller embedded wireless controller.<br>• **supported**: Any associated clients that support this data rate can communicate with the access point using that rate. However, the clients are not required to use this rate in order to associate.<br>• *rate*: Specifies the rate at which data is transmitted. For the 802.11a and 802.11b bands, the data is transmitted at the rate of 1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, or 54 Mbps. |
| **Step 9** | **no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown` | Enables the 802.11a band.<br>**Note**<br>The default value is enabled. |
| **Step 10** | **no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown` | Enables the 802.11b band.<br>**Note**<br>The default value is enabled. |
| **Step 11** | **ap dot11 24ghz dot11g**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz dot11g` | Enables or disables 802.11g network support.<br>The default value is enabled. You can use this command only if the 802.11b band is enabled. If you disable this feature, the 802.11b band is enabled without 802.11g support. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 12** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring a Band-Select RF Profile (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Advanced**.

**Step 2** In the **Band Select** tab, enter a value between 1 and 10 in the **Cycle Count** field. The cycle count sets the number of suppression cycles for a new client. The default cycle count is 2.

**Step 3** In the **Cycle Threshold** field, enter a value between 1 and 1000 milliseconds for the scan cycle period threshold. This setting determines the time threshold during which new probe requests from a client come from a new scanning cycle. The default cycle threshold is 200 milliseconds.

**Step 4** In the **Age Out Suppression** field, enter a value between 10 and 200 seconds. Age-out suppression sets the expiration time for pruning previously known 802.11b/g/n clients. The default value is 20 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.

**Step 5** In the **Age Out Dual Band** field, enter a value between 10 and 300 seconds. The age-out period sets the expiration time for pruning previously known dual-band clients. The default value is 50 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.

**Step 6** In the **Client RSSI** field, enter a value between -90 dBm and -20 dBm. This is the minimum RSSI for a client to respond to a probe.

**Step 7** In the **Client Mid RSSI** field, enter a value between –20 dBm and –90 dBm. This parameter sets the mid-RSSI, whose value can be used for toggling 2.4 GHz probe suppression based on the RSSI value.

**Step 8** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring 802.11n Parameters (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **RF**.

**Step 2** Click **Add** to view the **Add RF Profile** window.

**Step 3** In the **802.11** tab, proceed as follows:

a) Choose the required operational rates.

b) Select the required **802.11n MCS Rates** by checking the corresponding check boxes.

**Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring 802.11n Parameters (CLI)

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz} dot11n**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n` | Enables 802.11n support on the network.<br>The **no** form of this command disables the 802.11n support on the network. |
| **Step 3** | **ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz} dot11n mcs tx** *rtu*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n mcs tx 20` | Specifies the modulation and coding scheme (MCS) rates at which data can be transmitted between the access point and the client.<br>*rtu*-The valid range is between 0 and 23.<br>The **no** form of this command disables the MCS rates that are configured. |
| **Step 4** | **wlan***wlan_profile_name wlan_ID SSID_network_name* **wmm require**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12`<br>`Device(config-wlan)# wmm require` | Enables WMM on the WLAN and uses the 802.11n data rates that you configured.<br>The **require** keyword requires client devices to use WMM. Devices that do not support WMM cannot join the WLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz} shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown` | Disables the network. |
| **Step 6** | **{ap \| no ap} dot11 {5ghz \| 24 ghz} dot11n a-mpdu tx priority {all \| 0-7}**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n a-mpdu tx priority all` | Specifies the aggregation method used for 802.11n packets.<br>Aggregation is the process of grouping packet data frames together, rather than transmitting them separately. Two aggregation methods are available: Aggregated MAC Protocol Data Unit (A-MPDU) and Aggregated MAC Service Data Unit (A-MSDU). Both A-MPDU and A-MSDU are performed in the software.<br>You can specify the aggregation method for various types of traffic from the access point to the clients.<br>The list defines the priority levels (0-7) assigned per traffic type. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | • 0—Best effort<br>• 1—Background<br>• 2—Spare<br>• 3—Excellent effort<br>• 4—Controlled load<br>• 5—Video, less than 100-ms latency and jitter<br>• 6—Voice, less than 100-ms latency and jitter<br>• 7—Network control<br><br>You can configure each priority level independently, or you can use the all the parameters to configure all the priority levels at once. You can configure priority levels so that the traffic uses either A-MPDU transmission or A-MSDU transmission.<br>• When you use the **ap** command along with the other options, the traffic associated with that priority level uses A-MPDU transmission.<br>• When you use the **no ap** command along with the other options, the traffic associated with that priority level uses A-MSDU transmission.<br><br>Configure the priority levels to match the aggregation method used by the clients. By default, A-MPDU is enabled for priority level 0, 4, and 5, and the rest are disabled. By default, A-MPDU is enabled for all priorities except 6 and 7.<br><br>**Note**<br>The change in tracking the TX retries value from the whole PPDU to the internal MSDUs in Cisco IOS XE 17.12 onwards reflects a more accurate representation of an AP's retry count. This adjustment has led to a notable increase in retry count values because multiple MSDUs are contained within a single PPDU. This change is intentional and will be implemented in all future versions of Cisco IOS XE. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 7** | **no ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz} shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown` | Re-enables the network. |
| **Step 8** | **ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz} dot11n guard-interval {any \| long}**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n guard-interval long` | Configures the guard interval for the network. |
| **Step 9** | **ap dot11 {5ghz \| 24ghz} dot11n rifs rx**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n rifs rx` | Configures the Reduced Interframe Space (RIFS) for the network. |
| **Step 10** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring 802.11h Parameters (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **ap dot11 5ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown` | Disables the 802.11 network. |
| **Step 2** | **{ap \| no ap} dot11 5ghz channelswitch mode** *switch_mode*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz channelswitch mode 0` | Enables or disables the access point to announce when it is switching to a new channel.<br>*switch_mode*--Enter 0 or 1 to specify whether transmissions are restricted until the actual channel switch (**0**) or are not restricted (**1**). The default value is disabled. |
| **Step 3** | **ap dot11 5ghz power-constraint** *value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz power-constraint 200` | Configures the 802.11h power constraint value in dB. The valid range is from 0 to 255.<br>The default value is 3. |
| **Step 4** | **no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown**<br>**Example:** | Re-enables the 802.11a network. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown` | |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Monitoring Configuration Settings for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters

## Verifying Configuration Settings Using Band Selection and 802.11 Bands Commands

The following commands can be used to verify band selection, 802.11 bands, and parameters on the embedded wireless controller.

***Table 19: Monitoring Configuration Settings Using Band Selection and 802.11 Band Commands***

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show ap dot11 5ghz network** | Displays 802.11a band network parameters, 802.11a operational rates, 802.11n MCS settings, and 802.11n status information. |
| **show ap dot11 24ghz network** | Displays 802.11b band network parameters, 802.11b/g operational rates, 802.11n MCS settings, and 802.11n status information. |
| **show wireless dot11h** | Displays 802.11h configuration parameters. |
| **show wireless band-select** | Displays band-select configuration settings. |

## Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 5-GHz Band

```
Device# show ap dot11 5ghz network
802.11a Network : Enabled
11nSupport : Enabled
  802.11a Low Band : Enabled
  802.11a Mid Band : Enabled
  802.11a High Band : Enabled

802.11a Operational Rates
  802.11a 6M : Mandatory
  802.11a 9M : Supported
  802.11a 12M : Mandatory
  802.11a 18M : Supported
  802.11a 24M : Mandatory
  802.11a 36M : Supported
  802.11a 48M : Supported
```

```
  802.11a 54M : Supported
802.11n MCS Settings:
  MCS 0 : Supported
  MCS 1 : Supported
  MCS 2 : Supported
  MCS 3 : Supported
  MCS 4 : Supported
  MCS 5 : Supported
  MCS 6 : Supported
  MCS 7 : Supported
  MCS 8 : Supported
  MCS 9 : Supported
  MCS 10 : Supported
  MCS 11 : Supported
  MCS 12 : Supported
  MCS 13 : Supported
  MCS 14 : Supported
  MCS 15 : Supported
  MCS 16 : Supported
  MCS 17 : Supported
  MCS 18 : Supported
  MCS 19 : Supported
  MCS 20 : Supported
  MCS 21 : Supported
  MCS 22 : Supported
  MCS 23 : Supported
802.11n Status:
  A-MPDU Tx:
    Priority 0 : Enabled
    Priority 1 : Disabled
    Priority 2 : Disabled
    Priority 3 : Disabled
    Priority 4 : Enabled
    Priority 5 : Enabled
    Priority 6 : Disabled
    Priority 7 : Disabled
  A-MSDU Tx:
    Priority 0 : Enabled
    Priority 1 : Enabled
    Priority 2 : Enabled
    Priority 3 : Enabled
    Priority 4 : Enabled
    Priority 5 : Enabled
    Priority 6 : Disabled
    Priority 7 : Disabled
Guard Interval : Any
  Rifs Rx : Enabled
Beacon Interval : 100
CF Pollable mandatory : Disabled
CF Poll Request Mandatory : Disabled
CFP Period : 4
CFP Maximum Duration : 60
Default Channel : 36
Default Tx Power Level : 1
DTPC Status : Enabled
Fragmentation Threshold : 2346
Pico-Cell Status : Disabled
Pico-Cell-V2 Status : Disabled
TI Threshold : 0
Legacy Tx Beamforming setting : Disabled
Traffic Stream Metrics Status : Disabled
Expedited BW Request Status : Disabled
EDCA profile type check : default-wmm
Call Admision Control (CAC) configuration
```

```
Voice AC
  Voice AC - Admission control (ACM) : Disabled
  Voice Stream-Size : 84000
  Voice Max-Streams : 2
  Voice Max RF Bandwidth : 75
  Voice Reserved Roaming Bandwidth : 6
  Voice Load-Based CAC mode : Enabled
  Voice tspec inactivity timeout : Enabled
CAC SIP-Voice configuration
  SIP based CAC : Disabled
  SIP Codec Type : CODEC_TYPE_G711
  SIP call bandwidth : 64
  SIP call bandwidth sample-size : 20
Video AC
  Video AC - Admission control (ACM) : Disabled
  Video max RF bandwidth : Infinite
  Video reserved roaming bandwidth : 0
```

# Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 2.4-GHz Band

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz network
802.11b Network : Enabled
11gSupport : Enabled
11nSupport : Enabled

  802.11b/g Operational Rates
  802.11b 1M : Mandatory
  802.11b 2M : Mandatory
  802.11b 5.5M : Mandatory
  802.11g 6M : Supported
  802.11g 9M : Supported
  802.11b 11M : Mandatory
  802.11g 12M : Supported
  802.11g 18M : Supported
  802.11g 24M : Supported
  802.11g 36M : Supported
  802.11g 48M : Supported
  802.11g 54M : Supported
802.11n MCS Settings:
  MCS 0 : Supported
  MCS 1 : Supported
  MCS 2 : Supported
  MCS 3 : Supported
  MCS 4 : Supported
  MCS 5 : Supported
  MCS 6 : Supported
  MCS 7 : Supported
  MCS 8 : Supported
  MCS 9 : Supported
  MCS 10 : Supported
  MCS 11 : Supported
  MCS 12 : Supported
  MCS 13 : Supported
  MCS 14 : Supported
  MCS 15 : Supported
  MCS 16 : Supported
  MCS 17 : Supported
  MCS 18 : Supported
  MCS 19 : Supported
  MCS 20 : Supported
  MCS 21 : Supported
  MCS 22 : Supported
```

```
  MCS 23 : Supported
802.11n Status:
  A-MPDU Tx:
    Priority 0 : Enabled
    Priority 1 : Disabled
    Priority 2 : Disabled
    Priority 3 : Disabled
    Priority 4 : Enabled
    Priority 5 : Enabled
    Priority 6 : Disabled
    Priority 7 : Disabled
  A-MSDU Tx:
    Priority 0 : Enabled
    Priority 1 : Enabled
    Priority 2 : Enabled
    Priority 3 : Enabled
    Priority 4 : Enabled
    Priority 5 : Enabled
  Priority 6 : Disabled
    Priority 7 : Disabled
  Guard Interval : Any
  Rifs Rx : Enabled
Beacon Interval : 100
CF Pollable Mandatory : Disabled
CF Poll Request Mandatory : Disabled
CFP Period : 4
CFP Maximum Duration : 60
Default Channel : 11
Default Tx Power Level : 1
DTPC Status : true
Call Admission Limit : 105
G711 CU Quantum : 15
ED Threshold : -50
Fragmentation Threshold : 2346
PBCC Mandatory : Disabled
Pico-Cell Status : Disabled
Pico-Cell-V2 Status : Disabled
RTS Threshold : 2347
Short Preamble Mandatory : Enabled
Short Retry Limit : 7
Legacy Tx Beamforming setting : Disabled
Traffic Stream Metrics Status : Disabled
Expedited BW Request Status : Disabled
EDCA profile type : default-wmm
Call Admision Control (CAC) configuration
Voice AC
  Voice AC - Admission control (ACM) : Disabled
  Voice Stream-Size : 84000
  Voice Max-Streams : 2
  Voice Max RF Bandwidth : 75
  Voice Reserved Roaming Bandwidth : 6
  Voice Load-Based CAC mode : Enabled
  Voice tspec inactivity timeout : Enabled
CAC SIP-Voice configuration
  SIP based CAC : Disabled
  SIP Codec Type : CODEC_TYPE_G711
  SIP call bandwidth : 64
  SIP call bandwidth sample-size : 20
Video AC
  Video AC - Admission control (ACM) : Disabled
  Video max RF bandwidth : Infinite
  Video reserved roaming bandwidth : 0
```

## Example: Viewing the status of 802.11h Parameters

```
Device# show wireless dot11
Power Constraint: 0
Channel Switch : Enabled
Channel Switch Mode : Quiet
Smart DFS : Enabled
```

## Example: Verifying the Band-Selection Settings

The following example displays a band-select configuration:

```
Device# show wireless band-select

Band Select Probe Response   : per WLAN enabling
Cycle Count                  : 2
Cycle Threshold (millisec)   : 200
Age Out Suppression (sec)    : 20
Age Out Dual Band (sec)      : 60
Client RSSI (dBm)            : -80
Client Mid RSSI (dBm)        : -80
```

# Configuration Examples for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters

## Examples: Band Selection Configuration

This example shows how to set the probe cycle count and time threshold for a new scanning cycle period for band select:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless client band-select cycle-count 3
Device(config)# wireless client band-select cycle-threshold 5000
Device(config)# end
```

This example shows how to set the suppression expiry time to the band select:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless client band-select expire suppression 100
Device(config)# end
```

This example shows how to set the dual-band expiry time for the band select:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless client band-select expire dual-band 100
Device(config)# end
```

This example shows how to set the client RSSI threshold for the band select:

```
Device# configure terminal
```

```
Device(config)# wireless client band-select client-rssi 40
Device(config)# end
```

This example shows how to configure band selection on specific WLANs:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12
Device(config-wlan)# band-select
Device(config)# end
```

# Examples: 802.11 Bands Configuration

This example shows how to configure 802.11 bands using beacon interval, fragmentation, and dynamic transmit power control:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz beaconperiod 500
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz fragmentation 300
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dtpc
Device(config)# wireless client association limit 50 interval 1000
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rate 36 mandatory
Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz dot11g
Device(config)#end
```

# Examples: 802.11n Configuration

This example shows how to configure 802.11n parameters for 5-GHz band using aggregation method:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n mcs tx 20
Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12
Device(config-wlan)# wmm require\
Device(config-wlan)# exit
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n a-mpdu tx priority all
Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)#exit
```

This example shows how to configure the guard interval for 5-GHz band:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n mcs tx 20
Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12
Device(config-wlan)# wmm require\
Device(config-wlan)# exit
Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n guard-interval long
Device(config)#end
```

This example shows how to configure the RIFS for 5-GHz band:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n mcs tx 20
Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12
Device(config-wlan)# wmm require\
Device(config-wlan)# exit
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n rifs rx
Device(config)#end
```

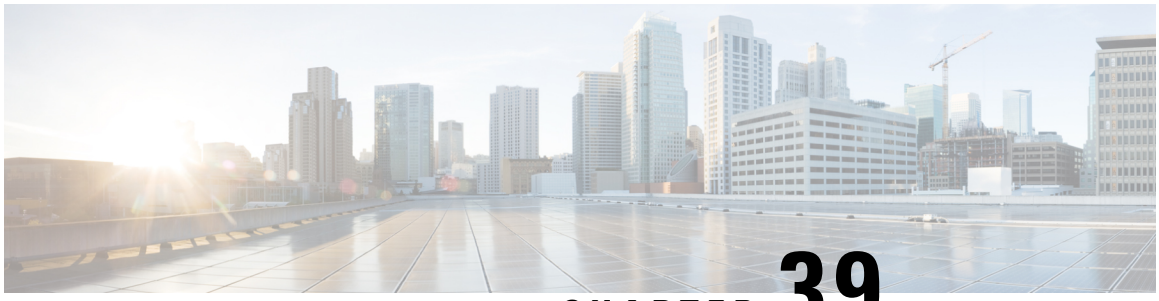
# Examples: 802.11h Configuration

This example shows how to configure the access point to announce when it is switching to a new channel using restriction transmission:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz channelswitch mode 0
Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)#end
```

This example shows how to configure the 802.11h power constraint for 5-GHz band:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz power-constraint 200
Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)#end
```



CHAPTER 39

# Image Download


- Information About Image Download, on page 293
- Prerequisites for Image Download, on page 297
- Configuring Image Download Profile, on page 298
- Initiating Pre-Download (CLI), on page 307
- Verifying Image Download, on page 308


## Information About Image Download

Software updates ensure that all the access points in the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network are running the latest software. The software update or image download can be performed using both the GUI and the CLI.

A typical Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network contains the following components:

- Cisco Catalyst APs acting as controller (embedded wireless controller)
- Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller-capable APs (Other Cisco Catalyst series APs that participate in the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)-based election process)
- Subordinate APs (Cisco Catalyst Series or Cisco Aironet Series Wave 2 APs)
- External TFTP and SFTP server.

**Note** For best user experience when using the GUI, view the browser at 100% resolution. The lines may break if the resolution is greater than 100%.

## Updates to the AP Image Predownload Status (GUI)

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam, Release 17.3.1 onwards, during an access point (AP) image download, the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points calculates the current percentage of the download and the estimated completion time of the download. (You can view these values in the CLI output by running the **show wireless ewc-ap ap image predownload status** command.)

To access the **Software Upgrage** window, from the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points home page, choose **Administration** > **Software Management** > **Software Upgrade**.

The **Software Update Status** section in the GUI displays the update status bar that shows the progress of a software update, such as, **Initiate**, **Controller Image Download**, **AP Image Download**, **Network Upgrade**, **Activate**, and **Reload**.

To view the logs, click the **Show Install Logs** link.

The **Status** field displays the current status of the upgrade and indicates further action, if any, that you should perform.

The other details displayed in the window are - **Total Number of APs**, **Initiated**, **Predownloading AP Image**, **Predownloading Controller Image**, **Completed Predownloading AP Image**, **Completed Predownloading Controller Image**, **Failed to Predownload AP Image**, **Failed to Predownload Controller Image**.

The currently active AP, the AP on standby, and the preferred active AP are also displayed.

# Image Download Scenarios

In a Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network, image download from the embedded wireless controller to the subordinate AP takes place in the following scenarios:

- During AP join
- During network software upgrade (pre-download)



**Note** The following is recommended for EWC deployments:

In a normal EWC (EWC on AP) network, the controller image is transferred to all EWC capable APs. However, in a mesh topology, it adds additional traffic flow on the wireless backhaul when there are EWC capable MAPs. This could make the image download procedure slow and error prone. To elevate the issue, an option has been added, where the controller image is not copied to the EWC capable MAPs, when they are in CAPWAP mode. Changing the EWC capable MAPs to CAPWAP APs, does not impact the EWC network redundancy design, as MAPs do not spawn the controller.

## Image Download During AP Join

APs with older software trying to join the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network are automatically upgraded to match the latest software version on the embedded wireless controller. The embedded wireless controller compares the software version on the new AP with that on itself. If there is a mismatch, the AP requests the controller for a software upgrade and image download is triggered. The embedded wireless controller facilitates the transfer of the latest software from an external TFTP server or SFTP server, to the new AP.

Depending on the new AP joining the network, there are two image downloads that take place:

- **AP software image download:** This applies to all new APs joining the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller.
- **Controller software image download:** This applies only to Cisco Catalyst series APs, capable of becoming a controller, trying to join the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network.

### AP Software Image Download

Any Cisco Catalyst Series AP or Cisco Aironet Series Wave 2 AP can only join an embedded wireless controller if its AP software image version matches that of the controller.

During the AP join process, the embedded wireless controller first checks the AP software image version on the new AP and if it does not match what is on the controller, the latest AP software is downloaded from the controller to the new AP. Once the AP software image on the new AP is upgraded to match the version that is on the embedded wireless controller in the network, the new AP reloads. Once the new AP is back up with the upgraded AP software image, it joins the embedded wireless controller.

### Controller Software Image Download

If the new AP joining the network is a CiscoCatalyst Series AP capable of becoming an embedded wireless controller, first the controller checks the AP software image on the new AP and if outdated, it is upgraded to match the AP software version on the controller. The AP then reloads with the new AP software image and joins theembedded wireless controller in the network.

Next, the embedded wireless controller does a similar check to compare the controller software version on the embedded wireless controller-capable AP. Similar to the AP software upgrade, if there is a mismatch, the controller software on this CiscoCatalyst Series AP is also upgraded to the latest version on the embedded wireless controller. The AP reloads again, this time with the upgraded controller software image.

### Efficient AP Join

If the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controllerr network contains an AP of the same image type as the newly joining AP, then the new AP downloads the AP software image from this AP. For example, if a CiscoCatalyst 9130AX Series AP is newly joining the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network and another CiscoCatalyst 9130AX Series AP already exists in the network, then the new AP gets its AP software image from the already joined AP.

This method, known as efficient AP join, enables homogenous APs to get the software locally (within the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network) rather than downloading it from an external server. This improves software download efficiency.

The first AP of a series that joins the network and downloads the software from the embedded wireless controller is called a primary image. The other APs of the same series are known as image subordinates.

## Network Software Upgrade (Pre-Download)

In the pre-download scenario, image download in the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network occurs to upgrade the software on all the APs from one software version to another. However, these APs continue to serve existing as well as new clients and there is no network disruption.

For pre-download, all the APs should be connected to the embedded wireless controller in a stable join state. Once image download is initiated during pre-download, new APs are not allowed to join the embedded wireless controller.

### Efficient AP Upgrade

In this method, the first AP of an AP series to get the image from the embedded wireless controller becomes the primary image. The remaining APs of the same AP series, the image subordinates, then download the software image locally from this primary image. This method is also known as efficient AP upgrade.

# Methods Supported for Image Download

In a Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network, there are four ways in which the software image can be downloaded from the embedded wireless controller. These methods are based on the location from where the controller transfers the software image to the subordinate AP:

- From an external TFTP server
- From an external SFTP server
- From the desktop (via HTTP)

## TFTP Image Download Method

In the TFTP method, the AP and controller software images are stored on a TFTP server. To download the software images from the TFTP server, you need to specify the IP address of the TFTP server and the path to the software image bundle on the TFTP server.

The TFTP image download method can be triggered using both the GUI and CLI.

## SFTP Image Download Method

In the SFTP method, the AP and controller software images are stored on an SFTP server. To download the software images from the SFTP server, in addition to the IP address of the SFTP server and the software image bundle path, you need to specify the SFTP server credentials.

The SFTP image download method also can be triggered using both the GUI and CLI.

## Desktop (HTTP) Image Download Method

Image download through desktop (HTTP) is applicable only in the network software upgrade (pre-download) scenario.

For the desktop (HTTP) method, download the software image bundle for the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller to your computer or laptop desktop. This downloaded bundle contains the AP and controller software images which need to be extracted to the computer or laptop desktop before they can be uploaded to the embedded wireless controller.

Note that the desktop (HTTP) method works only for a homogenous network. A homogenous Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network is one which contains APs that have the same AP software image type. For example, the Cisco Catalyst 9115AX series AP and the Cisco Catalyst 9120AX series AP use the ap1g7 AP software image file. So, the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network in this example containing Cisco Catalyst 9115AX series and 9120AX series APs is a homogenous network.

The embedded wireless controller CLI can only be used to set the mode for image download as desktop (HTTP). The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller GUI has to be used to configure and trigger network software upgrade (pre-download) using the desktop (HTTP) image download method.

# Parallel Image Download

Software and network updates ensure that all the access points in the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network are running the latest software. The methods supported for image download are from an external TFTP server, or from an external SFTP server, or from the desktop (via HTTP), or via CCO.

In the Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1 Release, the image download procedure for mesh networks (subtree level-by-level download) was adapted, and the overall process of flex EWC networks is enhanced for TFTP and SFTP. This new method of downloading the image is called parallel download. With this enhancement, the gains seen are significant.

The image download process typically involves the following steps:

1. Fetch the controller image for active and standby APs.
2. Fetch AP image for each AP type once from external image server.
3. Distribute it to the other APs of the same type, from the AP mentioned above.

The new image download procedure is as follows:

1. Fetch the controller image for active and standby APs.
2. Fetch all the AP images from an external image server, such as TFTP and SFTP, in parallel.



**Note** In the Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.x and earlier releases, the image was first copied to an active EWC, and then the image was sent to the image master via CAPWAP. With the parallel download method, the image master receives the image directly.

For TFTP, the AP must have direct connectivity to the image server. Direct connectivity is not required for SFTP.

With the introduction of the parallel download method, Step 2 finishes quickly and Step 3 is initiated sooner than before.



**Note** The command for parallel image download, in a EWC mesh topology, takes into consideration the topology hierarchy and distributes or predownloads the image level by level starting with the RAPs. This increases the possibility that an AP predownloading the image over the mesh link, could find an AP one hop away that could provide the image to it.

3. Distribute it to the other APs of the same type, from the AP mentioned above.

# Prerequisites for Image Download

- Connectivity to an external (TFTP or SFTP) server is required for image download during AP join in a Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network.
- Connectivity to a PC or laptop is required for image download during network software upgrade in a Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network.
- All APs should be connected to the embedded wireless controller for image download in the network software upgrade (pre-download) scenario.
- For image upgrade, you must not configure a preferred-master. If you configure a preferred-master, ensure that it points to the currently active AP, which is displayed in the **show wireless ewc-ap redundancy summary** command.

If a different AP is configured as the preferred-master, the upgrade process will not take place in the **install activate** step. If the upgrade does not take place, you should either remove the preferred-master configuration, or re-configure the preferred-master to match the AP that is currently active, and then run the **install activate** command, again.

•

# Configuring Image Download Profile

You need to configure the image download profile for both the AP join image download and pre-download scenarios. The only profile supported is *default*. In a Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network, only one site tag is supported, the *default-site-tag*. The *default* image download profile is attached to the *default-site-tag*.

**Note** When an AP of a different type tries to join a homogenous network that had earlier used the HTTP mode for image upgrade, the AP join fails. To avoid this failure, you must update the **image-download-mode** to **tftp** in the **wireless profile image-download default** configuration step.

# Configuring TFTP Image Download (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Administration** > **Software Management**.

**Step 2** On the **Software Management** page, under the **Software Upgrade** tab, select the **Mode** as TFTP.

**Step 3** In the **Image Server** field, enter the TFTP server IP address.

**Step 4** In the **Image Path** field, enter the absolute or relative path to the software image bundle.

**Step 5** Choose one of the following:

- **Save:** Choose this option to save the image download profile and enable image download for new APs joining the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network.
- **Save & Download:** Choose this option to save the configuration and enable network software upgrade (pre-download). The image download profile is saved (even if no change is made to the configuration) and the latest image is downloaded in the background. This allows the APs to continue serving the clients.
- **Activate:** Choose this option to enable the APs in the network to swap to the latest image and reboot. The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network is activated once the APs come up with the new image file.
- **Cancel:** Choose this option to cancel any changes made to the image download profile.

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Save | Choose this option to save the image download profile and enable image download for new APs joining the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network. |

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Save & Download | Choose this option to save the configuration and enable network software upgrade (pre-download). The image download profile is saved (even if no change is made to the configuration) and the latest image is downloaded in the background. This allows the APs to continue serving the clients. |
| Activate | Choose this option to enable the APs in the network to swap to the latest image and reboot. The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network is activated once the APs come up with the new image file. |
| Cancel | Choose this option to cancel any changes made to the image download profile. |

# Configuring TFTP Image Download (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | (Optional) **wireless ewc-ap image-download parallel**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device (config)# wireless ewc-ap image-download parallel` | Enables parallel AP image download, during network upgrade. This command is required for a level-by-level image download on mesh networks. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless profile image-download default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device (config)# wireless profile image-download default` | Configures the default AP profile. |
| **Step 4** | **image-download-mode tftp**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile)# image-download-mode tftp` | Configure image download using TFTP. |
| **Step 5** | **tftp-image-server** *server-ip*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-tftp)# tftp-image-server 10.1.1.1` | Configure the TFTP server for image download by specifying the IPv4 or IPv6 *server-ip* address. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 6** | **tftp-image-path** *server-path*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-tftp)# tftp-image-path /download/object/stream/images/ap-images` | Configure the absolute or relative path to the software image on the TFTP server. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-tftp)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring SFTP Image Download (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Administration** > **Software Management**.

**Step 2** On the **Software Management** page, under the **Software Upgrade** tab, select the **Mode** as SFTP.

The SFTP port is not configurable and is fixed at 22.

**Step 3** In the **Image Server** field, enter the SFTP server IP address.

**Step 4** In the **Image Path** field, enter the path to the software image bundle.

**Step 5** In the **User Name** field, enter the SFTP server username.

**Step 6** Choose the appropriate **Password Type** from Unencrypted or AES Encrypted.

**Step 7** In the **Password** field, enter the SFTP server password.

**Step 8** Choose one of the following:

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Save | Choose this option to save the image download profile and enable image download for new APs joining the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network. |
| Save & Download | Choose this option to save the configuration and enable network software upgrade (pre-download). The image download profile is saved (even if no change is made to the configuration) and the latest image is downloaded in the background. This allows the APs to continue serving the clients. |
| Activate | Choose this option to enable the APs in the network to swap to the latest image and reboot. The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network is activated once the APs come up with the new image file. |
| Cancel | Choose this option to cancel any changes made to the image download profile. |

# Configuring SFTP Image Download (CLI)

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | (Optional) **wireless ewc-ap image-download parallel**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device (config)# wireless ewc-ap image-download parallel` | Enables parallel AP image download, during network upgrade. This command is required for a level-by-level image download on mesh networks. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless profile image-download default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device (config)# wireless profile image-download default` | Configures the default AP profile. |
| **Step 4** | **image-download-mode sftp**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile)# image-download-mode sftp` | Configure image download using SFTP. |
| **Step 5** | **sftp-image-server** *server-ip*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-sftp)# sftp-image-server 10.1.1.1` | Configure the SFTP server for image download by specifying the IPv4 or IPv6 *server-ip* address. |
| **Step 6** | **sftp-image-path** *server-path*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-sftp)# sftp-image-path /download/object/stream/images/ap-images` | Configure the path to the software image on the SFTP server. |
| **Step 7** | **sftp-username** *username*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-sftp)# sftp-username test` | Specify the username to log in to the SFTP server for image download. |
| **Step 8** | **sftp-password** {**0** \| **8**} *password*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-sftp)# sftp-password 0 password1` | Specify the password associated with the above username to download the image from the SFTP server. You need to re-enter the password to confirm the entry. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | To configure an AES encrypted password, specify `8`, else specify `0` to configure an unencrypted password. |
| **Step 9** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-tftp)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring CCO Mode for Software Upgrade (GUI)

### Before you begin

The CCO account must have a physical address entered at the CCO Profile Manager. The account must have EULA and K9 acknowledged. For more information about creating a CCO account, refer to https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/about/help/registration-benefits-help.html.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Administration** > **Software Management**.

**Step 2** On the **Software Management** page, under the **Software Upgrade** tab, select the **Mode** as CCO.

**Step 3** In the **User Name** field, enter the CCO username.

**Step 4** In the **Password** field, enter the password to access the CCO server.

**Step 5** Choose the appropriate **Password Type** from Unencrypted or AES Encrypted.

**Step 6** Choose either Enabled or Disabled from the **Automatically Check for Updates** field. If you enable this option, the system automatically checks for software updates.

The interval is for 30 days. After the interval expires, the controller automatically checks and updates for the latest or recommend software version information in the controller configuration.

**Step 7** In the **Software Check** field, click the **Check now** button and retrieve up-to-date information about the **Latest software release** (the latest version available on the CCO website) and the **Recommended software release** (the recommended software version for the currently running software) version numbers.

**Step 8** The **Last CCO Response** field displays the error messages encountered when configuring the CCO image download method. For example, if you have entered a wrong username and password, the following error message is displayed: `HTTP 400 Error: 400 Client Error: Bad Request for url: https://cloudsso.cisco.com/as/token.oauth2 Please check your username/password and try again.` For more information about the **Last CCO Response** error messages, refer to Troubleshooting - CCO Image Download Error Messages, on page 305.

**Step 9** From the **Version** drop-down list, choose either **Recommended** or **Latest**. After fetching the latest and the recommended software versions, you can choose the version to upgrade.

**Step 10** Choose one of the following:

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Save | Choose this option to save the image download profile and enable image download for new APs joining the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network. |
| Save & Download | Choose this option to save the configuration and enable network software upgrade (pre-download). The image download profile is saved (even if no change is made to the configuration) and the latest image is downloaded in the background. This allows the APs to continue serving the clients. |
| Activate | Choose this option to enable the APs in the network to swap to the latest image and reboot. The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network is activated once the APs come up with the new image file. |
| Cancel | Choose this option to cancel any changes made to the image download profile. |

# Configuring CCO Image Download (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile image-download default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device (config)# wireless profile image-download default` | Configures the default AP profile. |
| **Step 3** | **image-download-mode cco**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile)# image-download-mode cco` | Configure image download using CCO. |
| **Step 4** | **cco-username** *username*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-cco)# cco-username username` | Specify the username to log in to the CCO server for image download. |
| **Step 5** | **cco-password** {**0** \| **8**} *password*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-cco)# cco-password 0 password1` | Specify the password associated with the above username to download the image from the CCO server. You need to re-enter the password to confirm the entry. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | To configure an AES encrypted password, specify `8`, else specify `0` to configure an unencrypted password. |
| **Step 6** | **cco-version** {**latest** \| **suggested**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-cco)# cco-version latest` | Specify the **latest** or the **suggested** version to be downloaded from the CCO server. By default the **suggested** version is downloaded. |
| **Step 7** | **cco-auto-check**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-cco)# cco-auto-check` | Enables or disables automatic check of new software versions at CCO every 30 days. This is applicable to Image Upgrade or Predownload only. By default, **cco-auto-check** is enabled. To disable the command use the **no** form of the command. |
| **Step 8** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-cco)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |
| **Step 9** | **wireless ewc-ap predownload poll-cco**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wireless ewc-ap predownload poll-cco` | Polls the CCO server to check for the latest software version. |
| **Step 10** | **clear ap predownload statistics**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# clear ap predownload statistics` | Clears the AP predownload statistics. |
| **Step 11** | **install remove profile default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install remove profile default` | Removes the image download profile.<br>Choose **Y** to remove the profile or choose **N** to cancel. |
| **Step 12** | **install add profile default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install add profile default` | Downloads the controller and AP software image from the embedded wireless controller.<br>The controller image is sent to all Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller-capable APs. The AP image is downloaded to all APs sharing the same image type |
| **Step 13** | **install activate**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install activate` | Activates the network after upgrade.<br>All the subordinate APs get the new AP image and reboot. Once all APs are rebooted, the embedded wireless controller also reboots. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | **Note** The network can also be activated if the controller image is downloaded but all APs have not received the AP image via predownload.<br><br>**Important** If the network is activated during partial predownload success, and a Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller-capable AP with old controller software becomes the controller, then the network will not get upgraded to the new image. |
| **Step 14** | **install commit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install commit` | Commits the current software image once the embedded wireless controller comes up after rebooting.<br>**Note** While upgrading, you must not use the **add**, **active**, **commit** keywords in a single command, as the activation process fails. |

# Troubleshooting - CCO Image Download Error Messages

Following are the expected error messages and the causes, which will be displayed at the **Last CCO Response** field:

### DNS resolution or connectivity issue

Connection Error: HTTPSConnectionPool(host='cloudsso.cisco.com', port=443): Max retries exceeded with url: /as/token.oauth2 (Caused by NewConnectionError('<urllib3.connection.VerifiedHTTPSConnection object at 0xf6170250>: Failed to establish a new connection: [Errno -3] Temporary failure in name resolution',))

### CCO username/password error

HTTP 400 Error: 400 Client Error: Bad Request for url: https://cloudsso.cisco.com/as/token.oauth2 Please check your username/password and try again

### Address missing exception

Thank you for registering with Cisco.com. In order to consume software or services we require your full address. Please follow <a href="https://rpfa.cloudapps.cisco.com/rpfa/profile/profile_management.do" target="_blank">this link</a> to return to profile manager to complete your profile.

### EULA form missing exception

Eula form have not been accepted or rejected to continue download. Please go tohttps://software.cisco.com/download/eula.

### K9 form missing exception

K9 form have not been accepted or rejected to continue download. Please go to https://software.cisco.com/download/k9

# Configuring Desktop (HTTP) Image Download (GUI)

- Image download using desktop (HTTP) is only enabled in a homogeneous network, that is a network containing APs that have the same image type.
- Image download using desktop (HTTP) can only be configured from the GUI.
- The CLI can only be used to set the image download mode to desktop (HTTP).

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Administration** > **Software Management**.

**Step 2** On the **Software Management** page, under the **Software Upgrade** tab, select the **Mode** as Desktop (HTTP).

**Step 3** In the **Controller Image** field, navigate to the embedded wireless controller software image on your computer or laptop desktop.

**Step 4** In the **AP Image** field, navigate to the AP software image on your computer or laptop desktop.

The GUI displays the name of the AP image to be used. Depending on the AP model, the name of the AP image varies.

**Step 5** Choose one of the following:

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Save | Choose this option to save the image download profile and enable image download for new APs joining the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network. |
| Save & Download | Choose this option to save the configuration and enable network software upgrade (pre-download). The image download profile is saved (even if no change is made to the configuration) and the latest image is downloaded in the background. This allows the APs to continue serving the clients. |
| Activate | Choose this option to enable the APs in the network to swap to the latest image and reboot. The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller network is activated once the APs come up with the new image file. |
| Cancel | Choose this option to cancel any changes made to the image download profile. |

# Initiating Pre-Download (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **wireless ewc-ap predownload poll-cco** | Check the latest and recommended version for image upgrade. |
| **Step 2** | **clear ap predownload statistics** | Clear AP predownload statistics. |
| **Step 3** | **install remove profile default** | Remove the image download profile.<br>Choose **Y** to remove the profile or choose **N** to cancel. |
| **Step 4** | **install add profile default** | Download the controller and AP software image from the embedded wireless controller.<br>The controller image is sent to all Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller-capable APs. The AP image is downloaded to all APs sharing the same image type. |
| **Step 5** | **show wireless ewc-ap predownload status** | Monitor the overall software download status.<br>The download is successful when the status message is `Controller Image Predownload to EWC Capable APs Complete`. |
| **Step 6** | **install activate** | Activate the network after upgrade.<br>All the subordinate APs get the new AP image and reboot. Once all APs are rebooted, the embedded wireless controller also reboots.<br>**Note**<br>The network can also be activated if the controller image is downloaded but all APs have not received the AP image via predownload.<br>**Important**<br>If the network is activated during partial predownload success, and a Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller-capable AP with old controller software becomes the controller, then the network will not get upgraded to the new image. |
| **Step 7** | **show install summary** | Verify the current image status after rebooting. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | If the status is `Activated and Uncommitted`, proceed to Step 7, else wait. |
| **Step 8** | **install commit** | Commits the current software image once the embedded wireless controller comes up after rebooting.<br>**Note**<br>While upgrading, you must not use the **add**, **active**, **commit** keywords in a single command, as the activation process fails. |

During the image upgrade process, the image predownload status is shown in various stages such as Controller Image Download In Progress, AP Image Predownload in Progress, Controller Image Predownload to EWC Capable APs In Progress, and so on. Sometimes, the image upgrade might fail due to various reasons. In such a case, you can either continue with the **install activate** operation or cancel it, based on the output of the **show wireless ewc-ap ap image predownload status** command, which displays the individual predownload status for each AP.

# Verifying Image Download

To monitor the overall progress of the software download process during predownload, run the following command.

```
Device# show wireless ewc-ap predownload status
```

The following are the various status messages indicating the status of the predownload operation. These are displayed when you run the **show wireless ewc-ap predownload status** command:

- None
- Controller Image Download Initiated
- Controller Image Download In Progress
- Controller Image Download Complete
- Controller Image Download Failed
- AP Image Predownload Initiated
- AP Image Predownload In Progress
- AP Image Predownload Complete
- AP Image Predownload Unsupported
- AP Image Predownload Failed
- Controller Image Predownload to EWC Capable APs In Progress
- Controller Image Predownload to EWC Capable APs Complete
- Controller Image Predownload to EWC Capable APs Failed

- Image Activation Succeeded
- Image Activation Failed
- Invalid State

To view the AP image predownload statistics, run the following command:

```
Device# show wireless ewc-ap ap image predownload status
Total number of APs                          : 5
Total number of EWC capable APs              : 4
Number of APs
        Initiated                            : 0
        Predownloading AP image              : 0
        Predownloading Controller image      : 1
        Completed predownloading AP          : 5
        Completed predownloading Controller : 0
        Failed to Predownload AP             : 0
        Failed to Predownload Controller     : 0
AP Name                Primary Image (AP/Controller)          Backup Image (AP/Controller)
           Predownload Status         Predownload Version                    AP Image
Role    Retries  AP image       Controller image

                                                                                  Type
                ETA/Percent    ETA/Percent
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
APXXXX.9XXX.8FXX       17.3.0.85      /17.3.01.0.XXXX         17.2.2.2       /17.2.02.0.XXXX
         Complete                  17.2.2.2       /17.2.02.0.2XXX         ap1g7       Slave
   0        00:00:00/100%  00:00:00/  0%
APXXXX.5XXX.71XX       17.3.0.85      /                       17.2.2.2       /
          Complete                   17.2.2.2       /                        ap1g5
Master  0        00:00:00/100%  00:00:00/  0%
APXXXX.8XXX.59XX       17.3.0.85      /17.3.01.0.XXXX         17.2.2.2       /17.2.02.0.XXXX
         Complete                  17.2.2.2       /                       ap1g7       Slave
   0        00:00:00/100%  00:00:00/  0%
APXXXX.8XXX.5AXX       17.3.0.85      /17.3.01.0.XXXX         17.2.2.2       /17.3.01.0.XXX
          Controller Predownloading  17.2.2.2       /                        ap1g7
Master  0        00:00:00/100%  00:00:00/  0%
APXXXX.8XXX.5BXX       17.3.0.85      /17.3.01.0.XXXX         17.2.2.2       /
          Complete                   17.2.2.2       /                        ap1g7
Slave   0        00:00:00/100%  00:00:00/  0%
```

To view details of the AP acting as the primary image , use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless ewc-ap image-master
Image Master List
Image Name: ap1g7
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Master AP MAC               AP                        AP                Controller
         Controller
                Predownload In Progress   Predownload Complete     Predownload In Progress
  Predownload Complete
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
c0XX.eXXX.90XX    No                          No                      No
   Yes
Image Name: ap1g5
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Master AP MAC               AP                        AP                Controller
         Controller
                Predownload In Progress   Predownload Complete     Predownload In Progress
  Predownload Complete
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
70XX.1XXX.4bXX    No                          No                      No
   Yes
```

To check the image download status on all the APs, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap image
```

To check AP status during image download, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap summary
```

To monitor efficient AP join status, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap master list
```

To view the details of the last AP image download attempt, run the following command:

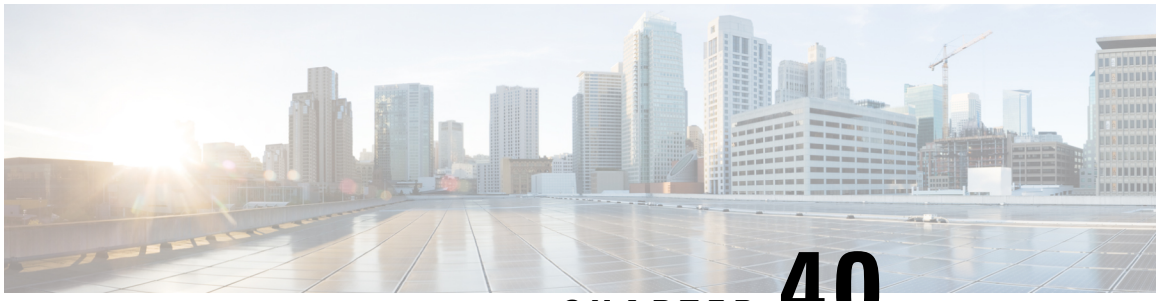
```
Device# show wireless stats ap image-download
```

To check the current status of the upgraded image, run the following command:

```
Device# show install summary
```

To check the download status from external servers (TFTP or SFTP), run the following command:

```
Device# show install log
```



CHAPTER 40

# Conditional Debug and Radioactive Tracing


- Introduction to Conditional Debugging, on page 311
- Introduction to Radioactive Tracing, on page 311
- Conditional Debugging and Radioactive Tracing, on page 312
- Location of Tracefiles, on page 312
- Configuring Conditional Debugging (GUI), on page 313
- Configuring Conditional Debugging, on page 313
- Recommended Workflow for Trace files, on page 315
- Copying Tracefiles Off the Box, on page 315
- Configuration Examples for Conditional Debugging, on page 316
- Verifying Conditional Debugging, on page 316
- Example: Verifying Radioactive Tracing Log for SISF, on page 317


## Introduction to Conditional Debugging

The Conditional Debugging feature allows you to selectively enable debugging and logging for specific features based on the set of conditions you define. This feature is useful in systems where a large number of features are supported.

The Conditional debug allows granular debugging in a network that is operating at a large scale with a large number of features. It allows you to observe detailed debugs for granular instances within the system. This is very useful when we need to debug only a particular session among thousands of sessions. It is also possible to specify multiple conditions.

A condition refers to a feature or identity, where identity could be an interface, IP Address, or a MAC address and so on.

This is in contrast to the general debug command, that produces its output without discriminating on the feature objects that are being processed. General debug command consumes a lot of system resources and impacts the system performance.

## Introduction to Radioactive Tracing

Radioactive tracing (RA) provides the ability to stitch together a chain of execution for operations of interest across the system, at an increased verbosity level. This provides a way to conditionally print debug information (up to DEBUG Level or a specified level) across threads, processes and function calls.

**Note**

- The radioactive tracing supports First-Hop Security (FHS).
- The radioactive tracing filter does not work, if the certificate is not valid.
- For effective debugging of issues on mesh features, ensure that you add both Ethernet and Radio MAC address as conditional MAC for RA tracing, while collecting logs.
- To enable debug for wireless IPs, use the **debug platform condition feature wireless ip** *ip-address* command.

# Conditional Debugging and Radioactive Tracing

Radioactive Tracing when coupled with Conditional Debugging, enable us to have a single debug CLI to debug all execution contexts related to the condition. This can be done without being aware of the various control flow processes of the feature within the box and without having to issue debugs at these processes individually.

**Note** Use the **clear platform condition all** command to remove the debug conditions applied to the platform.

# Location of Tracefiles

By default the tracefile logs will be generated for each process and saved into either the **/tmp/rp/trace** or **/tmp/fp/trace** directory. In this temp directory, the trace logs are written to files, which are of 1 MB size each. You can verify these logs (per-process) using the **show platform software trace message** *process_name* **chassis active R0** command. The directory can hold up to a maximum of 25 such files for a given process. When a tracefile in the **/tmp** directory reaches its 1MB limit or whatever size was configured for it during the boot time, it is rotated out to an archive location in the **/crashinfo** partition under **tracelogs** directory.

The **/tmp** directory holds only a single tracefile for a given process. Once the file reaches its file size limit it is rotated out to **/crashinfo/tracelogs**. In the archive directory, up to 25 files are accumulated, after which the oldest one is replaced by the newly rotated file from **/tmp**. File size is process dependent and some processes uses larger file sizes (upto 10MB). Similarly, the number of files in the **tracelogs** directory is also decided by the process. For example, WNCD process uses a limit of 400 files per instance, depending on the platform.

The tracefiles in the crashinfo directory are located in the following formats:

1. Process-name_Process-ID_running-counter.timestamp.gz

   Example: IOSRP_R0-0.bin_0.14239.20151101234827.gz

2. Process-name_pmanlog_Process-ID_running-counter.timestamp.bin.gz

   Example: wncmgrd_R0-0.27958_1.20180902081532.bin.gz

# Configuring Conditional Debugging (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Troubleshooting** > **Radioactive Trace**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

**Step 3** Enter the **MAC/IP Address**.

**Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.

**Step 5** Click **Start** to start or **Stop** to stop the conditional debug.

**Step 6** Click **Generate** to create a radioactive trace log.

**Step 7** Click the radio button to set the time interval.

**Step 8** Click the **Download Logs** icon that is displayed next to the trace file name, to download the logs to your local folder.

**Step 9** Click the **View Logs** icon that is displayed next to the trace file name, to view the log files on the GUI page. Click **Load More** to view more lines of the log file.

**Step 10** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Conditional Debugging

Follow the procedure given below to configure conditional debugging:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **debug platform condition feature wireless mac** {*mac-address*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# debug platform condition feature wireless mac b838.61a1.5433` | Configures conditional debugging for a feature using the specified MAC address.<br>**Note** This is supported with AP or client MAC/IP and also on CMX IP address and mobility peer IP. |
| **Step 2** | **debug platform condition start**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# debug platform condition start` | Starts conditional debugging (this will start radioactive tracing if there is a match on one of the conditions above).<br>**Note** This is supported with AP or client MAC/IP and also on CMX IP address and mobility peer IP. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **show platform condition** OR **show debug**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show platform condition`<br>`Device# show debug` | Displays the current conditions set. |
| **Step 4** | **debug platform condition stop**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# debug platform condition stop` | Stops conditional debugging (this will stop radioactive tracing).<br>**Note** This is supported with AP or client MAC/IP and also on CMX IP address and mobility peer IP. |
| **Step 5** | **show logging profile wireless** [**counter** \| **[last]**{*x days/hours*} \| **filter mac**{<*mac address*>} **[to-file]**{<*destination*>}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show logging profile wireless start last 20 minutes to-file bootflash:logs.txt` | Displays the logs from the latest wireless profile.<br>**Note** You can use either the *show logging profile wireless* command or *show logging process* command to collect the logs. |
| **Step 6** | **show logging process** <*process name*><br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show logging process wncd to-file flash:wncd.txt` | Displays the logs collection specific to the process. |
| **Step 7** | **clear platform condition all**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# clear platform condition all` | Clears all conditions. |

### What to do next

**Note** The command **request platform software trace filter-binary wireless** {*mac-address*} generates 3 flash files:

- *collated_log_<.date..>*
- *mac_log <..date..>*
- *mac_database .. file*

Of these, *mac_log <..date..>* is the most important file, as it gives the messages for the MAC address we are debugging. The command **show platform software trace filter-binary** also generates the same flash files, and also prints the mac_log on the screen.

# Recommended Workflow for Trace files

1. To request the tracelogs for a specific time period.

   EXAMPLE 1 day.

   Use the command:

   Device#**show logging process wncd to-file flash:wncd.txt**

2. The system generates a text file of the tracelogs in the location /flash:
3. Copy the file off the device. By copying the file, the tracelogs can be used to work offline. For more details on copying files, see section below.
4. Delete the tracelog file (.txt) file from /flash: location. This will ensure enough space on the device for other operations.

# Copying Tracefiles Off the Box

An example of the tracefile is shown below:

```
Device# dir flash:/tracelogs
Directory of crashinfo:/tracelogs/

50664 -rwx 760 Sep 22 2015 11:12:21 +00:00 plogd_F0-0.bin_0.gz
50603 -rwx 991 Sep 22 2015 11:12:08 +00:00 fed_pmanlog_F0-0.bin_0.9558.20150922111208.gz
50610 -rw- 11 Nov 2 2015 00:15:59 +00:00 timestamp
50611 -rwx 1443 Sep 22 2015 11:11:31 +00:00
auto_upgrade_client_sh_pmanlog_R0-.bin_0.3817.20150922111130.gz
50669 -rwx 589 Sep 30 2015 03:59:04 +00:00 cfgwr-8021_R0-0.bin_0.gz
50612 -rwx 1136 Sep 22 2015 11:11:46 +00:00 reflector_803_R0-0.bin_0.1312.20150922111116.gz
50794 -rwx 4239 Nov 2 2015 00:04:32 +00:00 IOSRP_R0-0.bin_0.14239.20151101234827.gz
50615 -rwx 131072 Nov 2 2015 00:19:59 +00:00 linux_iosd_image_pmanlog_R0-0.bin_0
```

The trace files can be copied using one of the various options shown below:

```
Device# copy flash:/tracelogs ?
  crashinfo: Copy to crashinfo: file system
  flash: Copy to flash: file system
  ftp: Copy to ftp: file system
  http: Copy to http: file system
  https: Copy to https: file system
  null: Copy to null: file system
  nvram: Copy to nvram: file system
  rcp: Copy to rcp: file system
  running-config Update (merge with) current system configuration
  scp: Copy to scp: file system
  startup-config Copy to startup configuration
  syslog: Copy to syslog: file system
  system: Copy to system: file system
  tftp: Copy to tftp: file system
  tmpsys: Copy to tmpsys: file system
```

The general syntax for copying onto a TFTP server is as follows:

```
Device# copy source: tftp:
Device# copy crashinfo:/tracelogs/IOSRP_R0-0.bin_0.14239.20151101234827.gz tftp:
Address or name of remote host []? 2.2.2.2
Destination filename [IOSRP_R0-0.bin_0.14239.20151101234827.gz]?
```

**Note** It is important to clear the generated report or archive files off the switch in order to have flash space available for tracelog and other purposes.

# Configuration Examples for Conditional Debugging

The following is an output example of the *show platform condition* command.

```
Device# show platform condition
Conditional Debug Global State: Stop
Conditions Direction
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------
MAC Address 0024.D7C7.0054 N/A
Feature Condition Type Value
----------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------
Device#
```

The following is an output example of the *show debug* command.

```
Device# show debug
IOSXE Conditional Debug Configs:
Conditional Debug Global State: Start
Conditions Direction
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------
MAC Address 0024.D7C7.0054 N/A
Feature Condition Type Value
----------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------
Packet Infra debugs:
Ip Address Port
------------------------------------------------------|----------
Device#
```

# Verifying Conditional Debugging

The table shown below lists the various commands that can be used to verify conditional debugging:

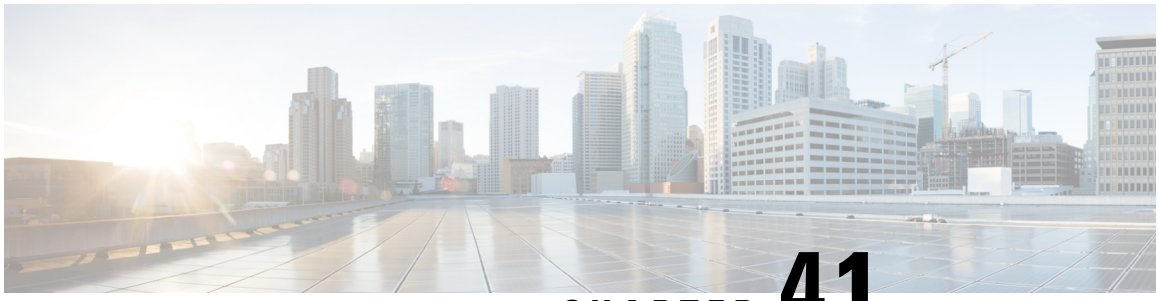
| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show platform condition** | Displays the current conditions set. |
| **show debug** | Displays the current debug conditions set. |
| **show platform software trace filter-binary** | Displays logs merged from the latest tracefile. |
| **request platform software trace filter-binary** | Displays historical logs of merged tracefiles on the system. |

# Example: Verifying Radioactive Tracing Log for SISF

The following is an output example of the *show platform software trace message ios chassis active R0 | inc sisf* command.

```
Device# show platform software trace message ios chassis active R0 | inc sisf

2017/10/26 13:46:22.104 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [parser]: [5437]:  UUID: 0, ra: 0 (note):  CMD:
'show platform software trace message ios switch active R0 | inc sisf' 13:46:22 UTC Thu Oct
 26 2017
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
   FF8E802918 semaphore system unlocked
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Unlocking, count is now 0
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
   FF8E802918 semaphore system unlocked
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Unlocking, count is now 1
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Gi1/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Setting State to 2
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Gi1/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Start timer 0
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Gi1/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc  Timer value/granularity for 0 :299998/1000
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Gi1/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Updated Mac Timer : 299998
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Gi1/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Before Timer :  350000
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Gi1/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Timer 0, default value is 350000
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
   Allocating timer wheel for 0
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Gi1/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc No timer running
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Granularity for timer MAC_T1  is 1000
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]:  UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
  Gi1/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Current State :MAC-STALE, Req Timer : MAC_T1  Current Timer
 MAC_T1
```



CHAPTER 41

# Aggressive Client Load Balancing


- Information About Aggressive Client Load Balancing, on page 319
- Enabling Aggressive Client Load Balancing (GUI), on page 320
- Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing (GUI), on page 320
- Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing (CLI), on page 320


## Information About Aggressive Client Load Balancing

The Aggressive Client Load Balancing feature allows lightweight access points to load balance wireless clients across access points.

When a wireless client attempts to associate to a lightweight access point, the associated response packets are sent to a client with an 802.11 response packet including status code 17. This code 17 indicates that the corresponding AP is busy. The AP does not respond with the response 'success' if the AP threshold is not met, and with code 17 (AP busy) if the AP utilization threshold is exceeded, and another less busy AP hears the client request.

For example, if the number of clients on AP1 is more than the number of clients on AP2 and the load-balancing window, then AP1 is considered to be busier than AP2. When a client attempts to associate to AP1, the client receives an 802.11 response packet with status code 17, indicating that the access point is busy, and the client attempts to associate to a different access point.

You can configure the embedded wireless controller to deny client associations up to 10 times (if a client attempts to associate 11 times, it will be allowed to associate on the 11th try). You can also enable or disable load balancing on a particular WLAN, which is useful if you want to disable load balancing for a select group of clients, such as time-sensitive voice clients.

**Note** For a FlexConnect AP, the association is locally handled. The load-balancing decisions are taken at the controller. A FlexConnect AP sends an initial response to the client before knowing the result of the calculations in the controller. Load-balancing does not take effect when the FlexConnect AP is in standalone mode.

A FlexConnect AP does not send (re)association response with status 17 for load balancing the way local-mode APs do; instead, it first sends (re)association with status 0 (success) and then deauth with reason 5.

# Enabling Aggressive Client Load Balancing (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > WLANs > Wireless Networks**.

**Step 2** Select a **WLAN** to view the **Edit WLAN** window.

**Step 3** Click **Advanced** tab.

**Step 4** Select the **Load Balance** check box to enable the feature.

**Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Advanced**.

The **Load Balancing** window is displayed.

**Step 2** In the **Aggressive Load Balancing Window (clients)** field, enter the number of clients for the aggressive load balancing client window.

**Step 3** In the **Aggressive Load Balancing Denial Count** field, enter the load balancing denial count.

**Step 4** Click **Apply**.

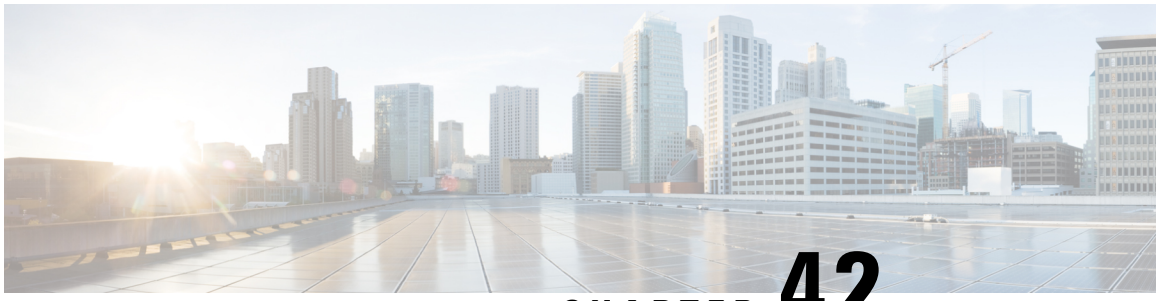
# Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **wlan** *wlan-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan test-wlan` | Specifies the WLAN name. |
| **Step 4** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# shutdown` | Disables the WLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **load-balance**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# load-balance` | Configures a guest embedded wireless controller as mobility controller, in order to enable client load balance to a particular WLAN.<br>Configure the WLAN security settings as the WLAN requirements. |
| **Step 6** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables WLAN. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |
| **Step 8** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 9** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **load-balancing denial** *denial-count*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz load-balancing denial 10` | Configures the load balancing denial count. |
| **Step 10** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **load-balancing window** *number-of-clients*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz load-balancing window 10` | Configures the number of clients for the aggressive load balancing client window. |
| **Step 11** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 12** | **show running-config \| section** *wlan-name*<br>**Example:** | Displays a filtered section of the current configuration. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device# show running-config \| section test-wlan` | |



CHAPTER 42

# Accounting Identity List


- Configuring Accounting Identity List (GUI), on page 323
- Configuring Accounting Identity List (CLI), on page 323
- Configuring Client Accounting (GUI), on page 324
- Configuring Client Accounting (CLI), on page 324


## Configuring Accounting Identity List (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **AAA**.

**Step 2** In the **AAA Method List** tab, go to the **Accounting** section, and click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Quick Setup: AAA Accounting** window that is displayed, enter a name for your method list.

**Step 4** Choose the type of authentication as identity, in the **Type** drop-down list.

**Step 5** Choose the server groups you want to use to authenticate access to your network, from the **Available Server Groups** list and click > icon to move them to the **Assigned Server Groups** list.

**Step 6** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

## Configuring Accounting Identity List (CLI)

Accounting is the process of logging the user actions and keeping track of their network usage. Whenever a user successfully executes an action, the RADIUS accounting server logs the changed attributes, the user ID of the person who made the change, the remote host where the user is logged in, the date and time when the command was executed, the authorization level of the user, and a description of the action performed and the values provided.

Follow the procedure given below to configure accounting identity list.

### Before you begin

Configure the RADIUS server and AAA group server.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **aaa accounting identity** *named-list* **start-stop group** *server-group-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa accounting identity user1 start-stop group aaa-test` | Enables accounting to send a start-record accounting notice when a client is authorized and a stop-record at the end.<br>**Note** You can also use the default list, instead of a named list. |

Whenever there is a change in the client attribute, for example, change in IP address, client roaming, and so on, an accounting interim update is sent to the RADIUS server.

# Configuring Client Accounting (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.

**Step 2** Click the **Policy Profile Name** and in the **Edit Policy Profile** window, go to the **Advanced** tab.

**Step 3** From the **Accounting List** drop-down, select the appropriate accounting list for this policy profile. This will ensure that the policy profile undergoes that type of accounting you want to perform, before allowing it access to the network.

**Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Client Accounting (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure client accounting.

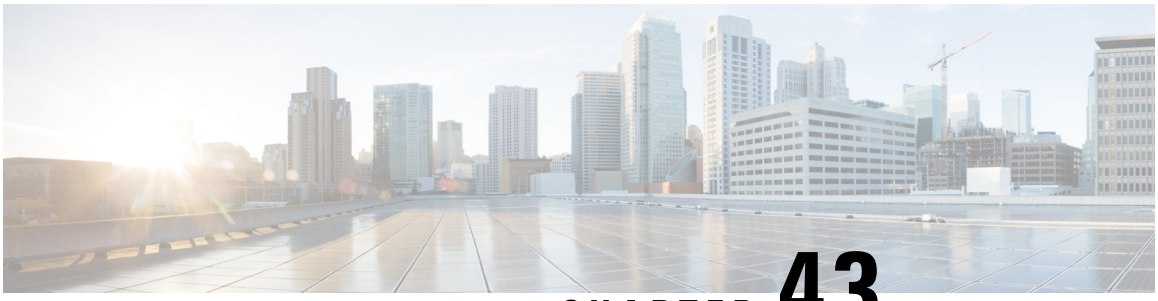
**Before you begin**

Ensure that RADIUS accounting is configured.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown` | Disables the policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **accounting-list** *list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# accounting-list user1` | Sets the accounting list. |
| **Step 4** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Enables the policy profile. |



CHAPTER 43

# Volume Metering

The Volume Metering feature allows you to configure the interval at which an access point (AP) updates client accounting statistics to the embedded wireless controller and in turn to the RADIUS server. Currently, the report is sent from an AP to the controller every 90 seconds. With this feature, you can configure the time from 5 to 90 seconds. This helps reduce the delay in accounting data usage by a device.

• Configuring Volume Metering, on page 327

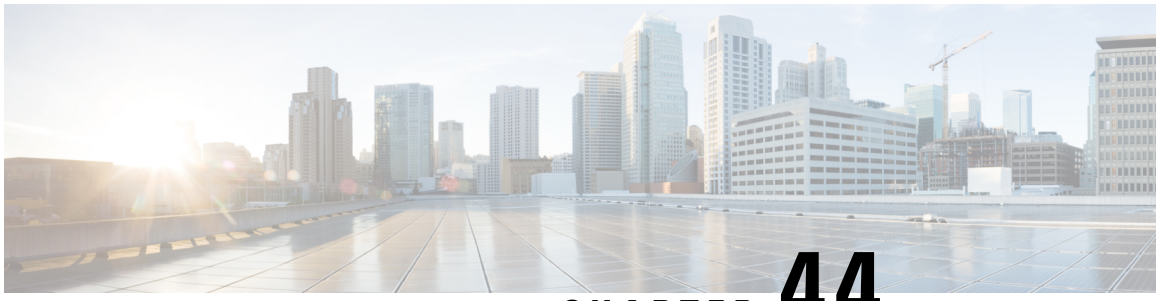
# Configuring Volume Metering

Follow the procedure given below to configure volume metering:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile yy-ap-profile` | Configures an AP profile and enters ap profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **dot11 24ghz reporting-interval** *reporting-interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# dot11 24ghz reporting-interval 60` | Configures the dot11 parameters. |
| **Step 4** | **dot11 5ghz reporting-interval** *reporting-interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# dot11 5ghz reporting-interval 60` | Configures the dot11 parameters. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 5** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |
| **Step 6** | **aaa accounting update periodic** *interval-in-minutes*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa accounting update periodic 75` | Sets the time interval (in minutes) at which the embedded wireless controller sends interim accounting updates of the client to the RADIUS server. |
| **Step 7** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# exit` | Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |



CHAPTER 44

# AP Group NTP Server


- Feature History for AP Group NTP Server, on page 329
- Information About AP Group NTP Server, on page 329
- Configuring an AP Group NTP Server, on page 330
- Configuring AP Timezone, on page 330
- Verifying Cisco Hyperlocation, on page 331


## Feature History for AP Group NTP Server

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which it is introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 20: Feature History for AP Group NTP Server***

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1 | AP Group NTP Server | From this release, the global NTP server configuration is replaced with the per-AP group NTP server configuration. Now, you cannot configure the Cisco Hyperlocation feature without the per-AP group NTP server. |

## Information About AP Group NTP Server

Features such as Cisco Hyperlocation, BLE Angle of Arrival (AoA), and Intelligent Capture (iCAP) require precise time across APs within an AP group to achieve location accuracy. Because the controller and controller global NTP server are configured on the WAN, they might have large synchronization delays from the APs, and this might compromise location accuracy.

If all the APs in an AP group synchronize with the same NTP server, accurate data can be obtained to calculate the location. Configuring the NTP server locally for all the APs in an AP group helps achieve better synchronization among APs.

# Configuring an AP Group NTP Server

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile profile-name` | Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **[no] ntp ip** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] ntp ip 9.0.0.4` | Sets the IP address of the NTP server. The **no** form of this command removes the NTP server. |

# Configuring AP Timezone

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile test` | Configures the AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **timezone** {**use-controller** \| **delta hour** *offset-hour* **minute** *offset-minute*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# timezone delta hour -12 minute 2` | Configures the timezone offset for AP.<br>You can configure the AP timezone only for each AP profile. You cannot configure timezone for each AP.<br>To configure the timezone, either apply the current controller timezone or the time difference. By default, timezone is disabled. |

# Verifying Cisco Hyperlocation

To display the hyperlocation status values and parameters for all the AP profiles, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap hyperlocation summary

Profile Name: custom-profile

Hyperlocation operational status: Down
Reason: Hyperlocation is administratively disabled
Hyperlocation NTP server: 209.165.200.224
Hyperlocation admin status: Disabled
Hyperlocation detection threshold (dBm): -100
Hyperlocation trigger threshold: 10
Hyperlocation reset threshold: 8


Profile Name: default-ap-profile

Hyperlocation operational status: Up
Reason: N/A
Hyperlocation NTP server: 209.165.200.224
Hyperlocation admin status: Enabled
Hyperlocation detection threshold (dBm): -90
Hyperlocation trigger threshold: 22
Hyperlocation reset threshold: 8
```

To display both the overall and the per-AP configuration values and operational status, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap hyperlocation detail

Profile Name: house24

Hyperlocation operational status: Up
 Reason: NTP server is not properly configured
Hyperlocation NTP server: 198.51.100.1
Hyperlocation admin status: Enabled
Hyperlocation detection threshold (dBm): -90
Hyperlocation trigger threshold: 8
Hyperlocation reset threshold: 7

AP Name                 Radio MAC         Method      CMX IP            AP Profile
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
APe865.49d9.bfe0        e865.49ea.a4b0    WSM2+Ant    198.51.100.2        house24

APa89d.21b9.69d0        a89d.21b9.69d0    Local       198.51.100.3        house24

APe4aa.5d3f.d750        e4aa.5d5f.3630    WSM         198.51.100.4        house24
```

To display the overall (profile specific) configuration values and operational status for a given profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile profile-name hyperlocation summary

Profile Name: profile-name
Hyperlocation operational status: Up
   Reason: N/A
Hyperlocation NTP server: 209.165.200.224
```

```
Hyperlocation admin status: Enabled
Hyperlocation detection threshold (dBm): -100
Hyperlocation trigger threshold: 10
Hyperlocation reset threshold: 8
```

To display both the overall (profile specific) and per-AP configuration values and operational status for a given profile, use the following command. The APs listed are only those APs that belong to the specified join profile.

```
Device# show ap profile profile-name hyperlocation detail

Profile Name: profile-name
Hyperlocation operational status: Up
 Reason: N/A
Hyperlocation NTP server: 209.165.200.224
Hyperlocation admin status: Enabled
Hyperlocation detection threshold (dBm): -90
Hyperlocation trigger threshold: 8
Hyperlocation reset threshold: 7

AP Name                 Radio MAC         Method      CMX IP
-----------------------------------------------------------------
APf07f.0635.2d40        f07f.0635.2d40    WSM2+Ant    198.51.100.2
APf07f.0635.2d41        f07f.0635.2d41    Local       198.51.100.3
APf07f.0635.2d42        f07f.0635.2d42    WSM         198.51.100.4
```

To display configuration values for an AP profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile profile-name detailed

Hyperlocation :
  Admin State             : ENABLED
  PAK RSSI Threshold Detection: -100
  PAK RSSI Threshold Trigger  : 10
  PAK RSSI Threshold Reset    : 8
.
.
.
```

To display the Cisco CMXs that are correctly joined and used by hyperlocation, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap hyperlocation cmx summary

Hyperlocation-enabled CMXs

IP            Port Dest MAC        Egress src MAC Egress VLAN Ingress src MAC Join time

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
198.51.100.4  2003 aaaa.bbbb.cccc  aabb.ccdd.eeff 2           0000.0001.0001  12/14/18
09:27:14
```

To display the hyperlocation client statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp
feature wireless wlclient cpp-client summary

Client Type Abbreviations:
  RG - REGULAR BL - BLE
  HL - HALO    LI - LWFL INT
Auth State Abbreviations:
```

```
  UK - UNKNOWN IP - LEARN IP IV - INVALID
  L3 - L3 AUTH RN - RUN
Mobility State Abbreviations:
  UK - UNKNOWN IN - INIT
  LC - LOCAL   AN - ANCHOR
  FR - FOREIGN MT - MTE
  IV - INVALID
EoGRE Abbreviations:
  N - NON EOGRE Y - EOGRE
 CPP IF_H     DPIDX      MAC Address    VLAN  CT  MCVL  AS  MS  E  WLAN POA
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
   0X32     0XF0000001  0000.0001.0001   9    HL   0    RN  LC  N       NULL
```

To display the interface handle value statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active
qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath cpp-if-handle 0x32 statistics start
```

To display the recorded flow, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active
qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath cpp-if-handle 0X32 statistics

                  Pkts                Bytes
Rx                 26                 3628
```

To stop statistics capture, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active
qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath cpp-if-handle 0x32 statistics stop
```

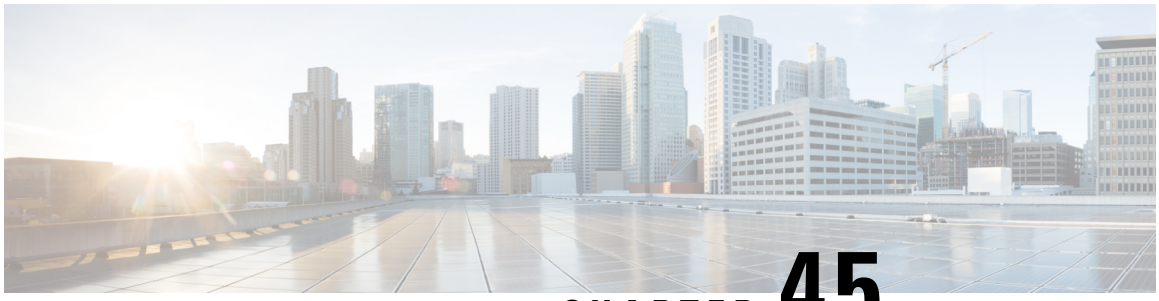
To view the APs requested by Cisco CMX with AP groups' support, use the following commands:

```
Device# show nmsp subscription group summary

CMX IP address: 198.51.100.4
  Groups subscribed by this CMX server:
  Group name: CMX_1198.51.100.4

Device# show nmsp subscription group detail ap-list CMX_198.51.100.1 198.51.100.1

CMX IP address: 198.51.100.1
CMX Group name: CMX_198.51.100.1
CMX Group AP MACs:
: aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:01 aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:02 aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:03 aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:03
```



CHAPTER 45

# Enabling Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server


- Information About Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server, on page 335
- Configuring Message Logging in the IOS XE Controller, on page 336
- Configuring Message Logging in the Access Points, on page 339


## Information About Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server

Access points and controllers generate log messages and send them to various destinations, such as the in-memory logging buffer, terminal sessions, files stored in the device's flash memory, or an external syslog server. These messages help administrators monitor and troubleshoot the network. The syslog configurations for APs and controllers remain independent, which allow administrators to configure logging separately for each device to meet specific network needs.

Log messages are transmitted with one of eight severity levels.

| Message Logging Level Keywords | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Level Keyword** | **Level** | **Description** | **Syslog Definition** |
| Emergencies | 0 | System unstable | LOG_EMERG |
| Alerts | 1 | Immediate action needed | LOG_ALERT |
| Critical | 2 | Critical conditions | LOG_CRIT |
| Errors | 3 | Error conditions | LOG_ERR |
| Warnings | 4 | Warning conditions | LOG_WARNING |
| Notifications | 5 | Normal but significant condition | LOG_NOTICE |
| Informational | 6 | Informational messages only | LOG_INFO |
| Debugging | 7 | Debugging messages | LOG_DEBUG |

Each log message is associated with one of 24 facility codes, which indicate the application or subsystem that issued the message.

| Facility Code | Keyword | IOS Keyword | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | kern | kern | Kernel messages |
| 1 | user | user | User-level messages |
| 2 | mail | mail | Mail system |
| 3 | daemon | daemon | System daemons |
| 4 | auth | auth | Security/authentication messages |
| 5 | syslog | syslog | Messages generated internally by syslogd |
| 6 | lpr | lpr | Line printer subsystem |
| 7 | news | news | Network news subsystem |
| 8 | uucp | uucp | UUCP subsystem |
| 9 | cron | sys9 | Clock daemon |
| 10 | authpriv | sys10 | Security/authentication messages |
| 11 | ftp | sys11 | FTP daemon |
| 12 | ntp | sys12 | NTP subsystem |
| 13 | security | sys13 | Log audit |
| 14 | console | sys14 | Log alert |
| 15 | solaris-cron | cron | Scheduling daemon |
| 16-23 | local0 – local7 | local0 - local7 | Locally-used facilities |

# Configuring Message Logging in the IOS XE Controller

System Message Logging in Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Controllers is a platform-independent IOS and IOS XE feature. For more information on message logging, see:

- System Message Logging
- Configuration Logger Persistency chapter in *System Management Configuration Guide*
- Logging to Local Nonvolatile Storage chapter in *System Management Configuration Guide*
- Embedded Syslog Manager (ESM) chapter in *System Management Configuration Guide*
- Configuration Change Notification and Logging chapter in *System Management Configuration Guide*

# Configuring Syslog Server for the Controller (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Troubleshooting** > **Logs**.

**Step 2** Click **Manage Syslog Servers** button.

**Step 3** In **Log Level Settings**, from the **Syslog** drop-down list, choose a security level.

**Step 4** From the **Message Console** drop-down list, choose a logging level.

**Step 5** In **Message Buffer Configuration**, from the **Level** drop-down list, choose a server logging level.

**Step 6** In **IP Configuration** settings, click **Add**.

**Step 7** Choose the **Server Type**, from the **IPv4 / IPv6** or **FQDN** option.

**Step 8** For Server Type **IPv4 / IPv6**, enter the **IPv4 / IPv6 Server Address**. For Server Type **FQDN**, enter the **Host Name**, choose the IP type and the appropriate **VRF Name** from the drop-down lists.

To delete a syslog server, click 'x' next to the appropriate server entry, under the **Remove** column.

**Note**
When creating a host name, spaces are not allowed.

**Step 9** Click **Apply to Device**.

**Note**
When you click on **Apply to Device**, the changes are configured. If you click on **Cancel**, the configurations are discarded.

# Configuring Syslog Server for the Embedded Wireless Controller (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **logging host** {*hostname* \| *ipv6*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# logging host 124.3.52.62` | Enables Syslog server IP address and parameters. |
| **Step 3** | **logging facility** {**auth** \| **cron** \| **daemon** \| **kern** \| **local0** \| **local1** \| **local2** \| **local3** \| **local4** \| **local5** \| **local6** \| **local7** \| **lpr** \| **mail** \| **news** \| **sys10** \| | Enables facility parameter for the Syslog messages.<br>You can enable the following facility parameter for the Syslog messages: |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | **sys11** \| **sys12** \| **sys13** \| **sys14** \| **sys9** \| **syslog** \| **user** \| **uucp**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# logging facility syslog` | • **auth**—Authorization system.<br>• **cron**—Cron facility.<br>• **daemon**—System daemons.<br>• **kern**—Kernel.<br>• **local0** to **local7**—Local use.<br>• **lpr**—Line printer system.<br>• **mail**—Mail system.<br>• **news**—USENET news.<br>• **sys10** to **sys14** and **sys9**—System use.<br>• **syslog**—Syslog itself.<br>• **user**—User process.<br>• **uucp**—Unix-to-Unix copy system. |
| **Step 4** | **logging trap** {*severity-level* \| **alerts** \| **critical** \| **debugging** \| **emergencies** \| **errors** \| **informational** \| **notifications** \| **warnings**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# logging trap 2` | Enables Syslog server logging level.<br>*severity-level*- Refers to the logging severity level. The valid range is from 0 to 7.<br>The following are the Syslog server logging levels:<br>• **emergencies**—Signifies severity 0. Implies that the system is not usable.<br>• **alerts**—Signifies severity 1. Implies that an immediate action is required.<br>• **critical**—Signifies severity 2. Implies critical conditions.<br>• **errors**—Signifies severity 3. Implies error conditions.<br>• **warnings**—Signifies severity 4. Implies warning conditions.<br>• **notifications**—Signifies severity 5. Implies normal but significant conditions.<br>• **informational**—Signifies severity 6. Implies informational messages.<br>• **debugging**—Signifies severity 7. Implies debugging messages.<br>**Note** |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | To know the number of Syslog levels supported, you need to select a Syslog level. Once a Syslog level is selected, all the levels below it are also enabled.<br>If you enable *critical* Syslog level then all levels below it are also enabled. So, all three of them, namely, *critical*, *alerts*, and *emergencies* are enabled. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Message Logging in the Access Points

•

## AP Logging to the In-Memory Buffer and Flash

Access points always log messages to an in-memory buffer. Once the buffer reaches 40 KB, its contents are automatically written to flash memory, and a new buffer is created. This process ensures that logs are periodically stored for persistent access.

Administrators can manage and view these logs using AP commands.

- **show logging** command to display the contents of the in-memory logging buffer
- **show flash syslogs** command to list all log files stored in flash, along with other diagnostic files
- **<filename>** command to display the contents of an individual log file stored in flash
- **copy syslogs <filename>** command to transfer a specific syslog file to an external server. To see available options for this command, use **copy syslogs <filename>**

## AP Logging to Terminal

Access points support real-time logging of messages to an active SSH terminal session. Administrators can enable this feature using the **terminal monitor** command. To disable real-time logging to the session, use the **terminal monitor disable** command.

In addition to SSH terminal sessions, APs send a subset of log messages to the serial console, which provide another method for real-time monitoring.

## Configuring AP Logging to a Syslog Server

The **syslog** command under the AP join profile is used to configure the destination IP address for syslog messages and manage which messages are sent based on severity and facility levels.

### Configuring the Syslog Host

- Use the **syslog host <IP address>** command to specify the destination IP address for syslog messages.
- By default, the syslog host is set to **255.255.255.255**, which is the IPv4 limited broadcast address. To forward these broadcasts to one or more syslog servers, configure IP helper addresses on the AP subnet's router.
- To reset the syslog host to **255.255.255.255**, use either the **default syslog host** or **no syslog host**t command.
- To prevent the AP from sending syslog messages entirely, use **syslog host 0.0.0.0**.
- If a subnet contains more than 20 access points, avoid logging to the broadcast address to prevent flooding the broadcast domain with log messages. Configure a specific syslog destination IP address. If the AP syslog feature is not in used, set the syslog host to **0.0.0.0** using the **syslog host 0.0.0.0** command

### Filtering Messages by Severity

- Use the **syslog level <levelname>** command to filter messages based on severity level.
- By default, the severity level is set to **informational** (**severity=6**), meaning all messages except debugging logs are sent to the server.

### Filtering Messages by Facility

- Use the **syslog facility <facilityname>** command to filter messages based on facility code. Only messages with a facility code value less than or equal to the configured facility name are sent to the server.
- By default, the facility is set to **kern** (**code=0**), so only kernel-related messages are sent.
- To send messages from all facilities, configure the facility as **local7**.
- Additionally, the configured facility name is included in the facility field of transmitted syslog messages.



**Note** Most AP log messages use the **kern** facility, while terminal access logs (e.g., SSH and console) use the **auth** facility.

### Secured Syslog Transmission

- The **syslog secured** command enables the use of Transport Layer Security (TLS) as defined in RFC 5425 to transmit syslog messages securely, instead of using UDP.
- TLS-based syslog transmission is supported starting with software versions 17.9.6 and 17.12.1.

### Viewing Syslog Settings

- To display the AP's current syslog settings, use the **show capwap client configuration** command.

# Configuring Syslog Server for an AP Profile

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *ap-profile*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile` | Configures an AP profile and enters the AP profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **syslog facility**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# syslog facility` | Configures the facility parameter for Syslog messages. |
| **Step 4** | **syslog host** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# syslog host 9.3.72.1` | Configures the Syslog server IP address and parameters. |
| **Step 5** | **syslog level** {**alerts** \| **critical** \| **debugging** \| **emergencies** \| **errors** \| **informational** \| **notifications** \| **warnings**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# syslog level` | Configures the Syslog server logging level.<br>The following are the Syslog server logging levels:<br>• **emergencies**—Signifies severity 0. Implies that the system is not usable.<br>• **alerts**—Signifies severity 1. Implies that an immediate action is required.<br>• **critical**—Signifies severity 2. Implies critical conditions.<br>• **errors**—Signifies severity 3. Implies error conditions.<br>• **warnings**—Signifies severity 4. Implies warning conditions.<br>• **notifications**—Signifies severity 5. Implies normal but significant conditions.<br>• **informational**—Signifies severity 6. Implies informational messages.<br>• **debugging**—Signifies severity 7. Implies debugging messages. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | **Note** To know the number of Syslog levels supported, you need to select a Syslog level. Once a Syslog level is selected, all the levels below it are also enabled.<br>If you enable *critical* Syslog level then all levels below it are also enabled. So, all three of them, namely, *critical*, *alerts*, and *emergencies* are enabled. |
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring AP Syslog Settings (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **AP Join**.

**Step 2** Select the APs from the AP list.

The **Edit AP Join Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 3** Click the **Management** tab.

**Step 4** Select the **Device** tab.

**Step 5** In the **System Log** section:

a) From the **Facility Value** drop-down list, select a value.
b) Enter the IP address in the **Host IPv4/IPv6 Address** field.
c) From the **Log Trap Value** drop-down list, select a value.
d) Check or uncheck the box to enable or disable **Secured**.

**Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**

# Verifying Syslog Server Configurations

### Verifying Global Syslog Server Settings for all Access Points

To view the global Syslog server settings for all access points that joins the controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general
Cisco AP Name : APA0F8.4984.5E48
================================================
```

```
Cisco AP Identifier : a0f8.4985.d360
Country Code : IN
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-A 802.11a:-DN
AP Country Code : IN - India
AP Regulatory Domain
Slot 0 : -A
Slot 1 : -D
MAC Address : a0f8.4984.5e48
IP Address Configuration : DHCP
IP Address : 9.4.172.111
IP Netmask : 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address : 9.4.172.1
Fallback IP Address Being Used :
Domain :
Name Server :
CAPWAP Path MTU : 1485
Telnet State : Disabled
SSH State : Disabled
Jumbo MTU Status : Disabled
Cisco AP Location : default location
Site Tag Name : ST1
RF Tag Name : default-rf-tag
Policy Tag Name : PT3
AP join Profile : default-ap-profile
Primary Cisco Controller Name : WLC2
Primary Cisco Controller IP Address : 9.4.172.31
Secondary Cisco Controller Name : Not Configured
Secondary Cisco Controller IP Address : 0.0.0.0
Tertiary Cisco Controller Name : Not Configured
Tertiary Cisco Controller IP Address : 0.0.0.0
Administrative State : Enabled
Operation State : Registered
AP Certificate type : Manufacturer Installed Certificate
AP Mode : Local
AP VLAN tagging state : Disabled
AP VLAN tag : 0
CAPWAP Preferred mode : Not Configured
AP Submode : Not Configured
Office Extend Mode : Disabled
Remote AP Debug : Disabled
Logging Trap Severity Level : notification
Software Version : 16.10.1.24
Boot Version : 1.1.2.4
Mini IOS Version : 0.0.0.0
Stats Reporting Period : 180
LED State : Enabled
PoE Pre-Standard Switch : Disabled
PoE Power Injector MAC Address : Disabled
Power Type/Mode : PoE/Full Power (normal mode)
Number of Slots : 3
AP Model : AIR-AP1852I-D-K9
IOS Version : 16.10.1.24
Reset Button : Disabled
AP Serial Number : KWC212904UB
Management Frame Protection Validation : Disabled
AP User Mode : Automatic
AP User Name : Not Configured
AP 802.1X User Mode : Global
AP 802.1X User Name : Not Configured
Cisco AP System Logging Host : 9.4.172.116
AP Up Time : 11 days 1 hour 15 minutes 52 seconds
AP CAPWAP Up Time : 6 days 3 hours 11 minutes 6 seconds
Join Date and Time : 09/05/2018 04:18:52
Join Taken Time : 3 minutes 1 second
```

```
Join Priority : 1
Ethernet Port Duplex : Auto
Ethernet Port Speed : Auto
AP Link Latency : Disable
AP Lag Configuration Status : Disabled
AP Lag Operational Status : Disabled
Lag Support for AP : Yes
Rogue Detection : Enabled
Rogue Containment auto-rate : Disabled
Rogue Containment of standalone FlexConnect APs : Disabled
Rogue Detection Report Interval : 10
Rogue AP minimum RSSI : -90
Rogue AP minimum transient time : 0
AP TCP MSS Adjust : Enabled
AP TCP MSS Size : 1250
AP IPv6 TCP MSS Adjust : Enabled
AP IPv6 TCP MSS Size : 1250
Hyperlocation Admin Status : Disabled
Retransmit count : 5
Retransmit interval : 3
Fabric status : Disabled
FIPS status : Disabled
WLANCC status : Disabled
USB Module Type : USB Module
USB Module State : Enabled
USB Operational State : Disabled
USB Override : Disabled
Lawful-Interception Admin status : Disabled
Lawful-Interception Oper status : Disabled
```

### Verifying Syslog Server Settings for a Specific Access Point

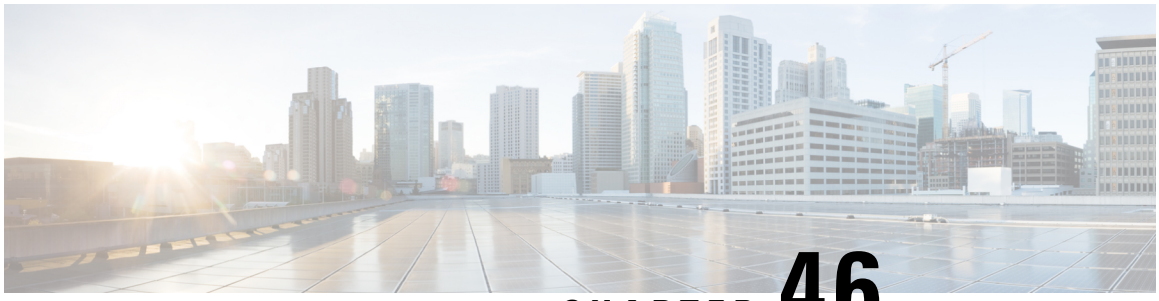
To view the Syslog server settings for a specific access point, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name <ap-name> config general
show ap name APA0F8.4984.5E48 config general
Cisco AP Name : APA0F8.4984.5E48
================================================

Cisco AP Identifier : a0f8.4985.d360
Country Code : IN
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-A 802.11a:-DN
AP Country Code : IN - India
AP Regulatory Domain
Slot 0 : -A
Slot 1 : -D
MAC Address : a0f8.4984.5e48
IP Address Configuration : DHCP
IP Address : 9.4.172.111
IP Netmask : 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address : 9.4.172.1
Fallback IP Address Being Used :
Domain :
Name Server :
CAPWAP Path MTU : 1485
Telnet State : Disabled
SSH State : Disabled
Jumbo MTU Status : Disabled
Cisco AP Location : default location
Site Tag Name : ST1
RF Tag Name : default-rf-tag
Policy Tag Name : PT3
AP join Profile : default-ap-profile
Primary Cisco Controller Name : WLC2
```

```
Primary Cisco Controller IP Address : 9.4.172.31
Secondary Cisco Controller Name : Not Configured
Secondary Cisco Controller IP Address : 0.0.0.0
Tertiary Cisco Controller Name : Not Configured
Tertiary Cisco Controller IP Address : 0.0.0.0
Administrative State : Enabled
Operation State : Registered
AP Certificate type : Manufacturer Installed Certificate
AP Mode : Local
AP VLAN tagging state : Disabled
AP VLAN tag : 0
CAPWAP Preferred mode : Not Configured
AP Submode : Not Configured
Office Extend Mode : Disabled
Remote AP Debug : Disabled
Logging Trap Severity Level : notification
Software Version : 16.10.1.24
Boot Version : 1.1.2.4
Mini IOS Version : 0.0.0.0
Stats Reporting Period : 180
LED State : Enabled
PoE Pre-Standard Switch : Disabled
PoE Power Injector MAC Address : Disabled
Power Type/Mode : PoE/Full Power (normal mode)
Number of Slots : 3
AP Model : AIR-AP1852I-D-K9
IOS Version : 16.10.1.24
Reset Button : Disabled
AP Serial Number : KWC212904UB
Management Frame Protection Validation : Disabled
AP User Mode : Automatic
AP User Name : Not Configured
AP 802.1X User Mode : Global
AP 802.1X User Name : Not Configured
Cisco AP System Logging Host : 9.4.172.116
AP Up Time : 11 days 1 hour 15 minutes 52 seconds
AP CAPWAP Up Time : 6 days 3 hours 11 minutes 6 seconds
Join Date and Time : 09/05/2018 04:18:52
Join Taken Time : 3 minutes 1 second
Join Priority : 1
Ethernet Port Duplex : Auto
Ethernet Port Speed : Auto
AP Link Latency : Disable
AP Lag Configuration Status : Disabled
AP Lag Operational Status : Disabled
Lag Support for AP : Yes
Rogue Detection : Enabled
Rogue Containment auto-rate : Disabled
Rogue Containment of standalone FlexConnect APs : Disabled
Rogue Detection Report Interval : 10
Rogue AP minimum RSSI : -90
Rogue AP minimum transient time : 0
AP TCP MSS Adjust : Enabled
AP TCP MSS Size : 1250
AP IPv6 TCP MSS Adjust : Enabled
AP IPv6 TCP MSS Size : 1250
Hyperlocation Admin Status : Disabled
Retransmit count : 5
Retransmit interval : 3
Fabric status : Disabled
FIPS status : Disabled
WLANCC status : Disabled
USB Module Type : USB Module
USB Module State : Enabled
```

```
USB Operational State : Disabled
USB Override : Disabled
Lawful-Interception Admin status : Disabled
Lawful-Interception Oper status : Disabled
```



CHAPTER 46

# Software Maintenance Upgrade


- Software maintenance upgrade, on page 347
- Rolling AP upgrade, on page 353
- AP Device Pack (APDP) and AP Service Pack (APSP), on page 356


## Software maintenance upgrade

A software maintenance upgrade (SMU) is a software package that

- is installed on a system to provide a patch or a security fix resolution to a released image, and
- is specific to the corresponding platform.

### Feature history

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

*Table 21: Feature history for Software maintenance upgrade*

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Software maintenance upgrade** | Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1b | This feature provides network administrators with targeted, platform-specific patches and security fixes for released images, applicable either on a per-component basis or for the entire corresponding platform. |

A SMU offers significant benefits over classic Cisco IOS software. It lets you address network issues promptly and reduces required testing time and scope. The Cisco IOS XE platform validates SMU compatibility internally and prevents installation of non-compatible SMUs.

All SMUs are also integrated into subsequent Cisco IOS XE software maintenance releases. A SMU is an independent and self-sufficient package without prerequisites or dependencies. You can choose which SMUs to install or uninstall in any order.

**Note** SMUs are supported only on Extended Maintenance releases and throughout the full lifecycle of the underlying software release.

**Note** Activate the file using the **install add file** command only from the filesystems of the active device. If you use a file from the standby or member filesystems, the **install add file** command fails.

**Note** When the SMU file is deleted and the device is rebooted, the device may display an error message such as:

```
--- Starting SMU Add operation ---
Performing SMU_ADD on all members
    FAILED: Improper State./bootflash/<previously-installed-smu-filename>.smu.bin not
present. Please restore file for stability.
Checking status of SMU_ADD on [1/R0]
SMU_ADD: Passed on []. Failed on [1/R0]
Finished SMU Add operation
FAILED: add_activate_commit /bootflash/<tobeinstalled-wlc-smu-filename>.smu.bin Wed Aug 02
 08:30:18 UTC 2023.
```

This error occurs because the previous SMU file was not properly removed from the controller. As a result, you may not be able to install new SMU or APSP files.

Use the **install remove file** command to remove previous instances of APSP or SMU files from the bootflash.

You can use SMU infrastructure to meet these requirements in wireless contexts:

- Controller SMU: Embedded Wireless Controller bug fixes or Cisco Product Security Incident Response information (PSIRT).
- These fixes or features do not require any changes to the embedded wireless controller.
- APDP: APDP supports new AP models without introducing new hardware or software capabilities.

**Note** The **show ap image** command displays cumulative statistics for AP images in the controller. Clear the statistics using the **clear ap predownload statistics** command, before using the **show ap image** command, to ensure correct data is displayed.

### SMU Workflow

Begin the SMU process by requesting approval from the SMU committee. Contact customer support to raise an SMU request. During the release, the SMU package is posted on the Cisco Software Download page. You can then download and install it.

### Warning: Commit changes within six hours of activation or deactivation to avoid rollback

Always run the **install commit** command within 6 hours after executing either **install activate** or **install deactivate** .

If you do not commit changes within this window

- the system automatically reverts to the previous commit state
- this reversion can lead to service interruption, especially over low-bandwidth links where image transfers may not complete in time, and
- remote deployments with slow transfer rates are particularly vulnerable.

To reduce these risks

- run **install commit** after activation or deactivation
- monitor image transfer progress proactively, and
- plan for available bandwidth and duration at remote sites.

### SMU Package

An SMU package contains the metadata and the fix for the reported issue that prompted the request.

### SMU Reload

The SMU type describes the effect to a system after installing the SMU. SMUs can be non-traffic affecting or can result in device restart, reload, or switchover.

Controller hot patching support allows SMU to be effective immediately after activation without reloading the system. Other controller SMUs require a cold reload of the system during activation. A cold reload is the complete reload of the operating system.

This action affects the traffic for the duration of the following two phases:

- The reload of the wireless controller.
- The time it takes for all the access points to rejoin the controller, receive the new image from the controller, and upgrade to the new SMU patch. This reload ensures that all processes are started with the correct libraries and files that are installed as part of the SMU.

After the SMU is committed, the activation changes are persistent across reloads.

# Overview of Controller SMUs

The following table describes the SMU types supported in the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller:

***Table 22: Supported SMU Types in the Embedded Wireless Controller***

| Package Type | Use Case | SMU Type | Supported on EWC |
|---|---|---|---|
| Controller SMU - Cold Patch | Replace impacted binaries, libraries, or subpackages. | Reload | Limited support (Patch size < 20 MB). No support for IOSD. |
| Controller SMU - Hot Patch | Replace impacted functions. | Nonreload | Yes |

| Package Type | Use Case | SMU Type | Supported on EWC |
|---|---|---|---|
| APSP | AP fix by replacing the AP image (does not impact the AP running the active controller). | Nonreload | Yes |
| APSP | AP fix by replacing the AP image (impacts the AP that is running the active controller). | Reload | Yes (EWC specific variation) |
| APDP | New AP model support without upgrading the controller. | Nonreload | Yes |

# Managing Controller Hot or Cold SMU Package

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **install add file tftp:**`//<server-ip>/<path>/<smu-filename>`<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install add file tftp://<server-ip>/<path>/<smu-filename>` | The `install add` command copies the file from the external server to the backup_image directory on the embedded wireless controller. |
| **Step 2** | **install activate file backup_image:** *smu-filename*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install activate file backup_image:<smu-filename>` | This command is used to activate the patch. The `install activate` causes the controller reload only for a cold patch. There is no reload for a hot patch. |
| **Step 3** | **install auto-abort-timer stop**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install auto-abort-timer stop` | (Optional) Stops the auto cancel timer in case of activated or deactivated SMUs. |
| **Step 4** | **install commit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install commit` | Commits the activation changes to be persistent across reloads.<br>The commit can be done after activation while the system is up, or after the first reload. If a patch is activated and not committed, the auto cancel timer automatically cancels the activation of the patch in six hours . |
| **Step 5** | **show install rollback**<br>**Example:** | Displays the list of rollback IDs that are available. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device# show install rollback` | |
| **Step 6** | **install rollback to** {**base** \| **committed** \| **id** \| **label** } *specific-rollback-point*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install rollback to base` | Rolls back a committed patch. The committed patch can be deactivated and the commit for deactivation can be done using the single install rollback command. |
| **Step 7** | **install deactivate file backup_image:** *smu-filename*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install deactivate file backup_image:<Smu-Filename>` | Deactivates a comitted patch. The `install deactivate` command causes the reload of the controller in case of a cold patch. There is no reload of the controller in case of a hot patch. |
| **Step 8** | **install auto-abort-timer stop**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install auto-abort-timer stop` | (Optional) Stops the auto cancel timer in case of activated or deactivated SMUs. |
| **Step 9** | **install commit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install commit` | Commits the deactivation changes to be persistent across reloads. |
| **Step 10** | **install remove file backup_image:** *smu-filename*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install remove file backup_image:<smu-filename>` | Removes a patch that is in the inactive state. This command also removes the file physically from `backup-image:` |
| **Step 11** | **install abort**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install abort` | Cancels the upgrade by resetting the APs in rolling fashion. |
| **Step 12** | **show install summary**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show install summary` | Displays information about the active package.<br>The output of this command varies based on the packages, and the package states that are installed. |
| **Step 13** | **show install package backup_image:** *smu-filename*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show install package backup-image: <smu_filename>` | Displays information about the SMU package. |

# Configuration Examples for SMU

The following is sample of the SMU configuration:

**Device# install add file tftp://10.1.1.2/auto/tftpboot/user1/ewc/ewc-apsp1.bin**

```
install_add: START Tue Jun 4 15:08:26 UTC 2019
Downloading file tftp://10.1.1.2/auto/tftpboot/user1/ewc/ewc-smu.bin
Finished downloading file tftp://10.1.1.2/auto/tftpboot/user1/ewc/ewc-smu.bin to
backup_image:ewc-smu.bin
install_add: Adding SMU
install_add: Checking whether new add is allowed ....
install_add: ap image predownload is allowed.

--- Starting initial file syncing ---
Info: Finished copying backup_image: ewc-smu.bin to the selected chassis
Finished initial file syncing

--- Starting SMU Add operation ---
Performing SMU_ADD on all members
[1] SMU_ADD package(s) on chassis 1
MEWLC response success sync_successCumulative SMU Size: 24 KB
Cumulative size of all SMU's will not exceed 20000 KB
Available Memory in /backup_image is 251480 KB
Available memory 251480 KB is greater than available memory required 2000 KB
[1] Finished SMU_ADD on chassis 1
Checking status of SMU_ADD on [1]
SMU_ADD: Passed on [1]
Finished SMU Add operation

SUCCESS: install_add
```

**Device# install activate file backup_image:ewc-apsp1.bin**

```
install_activate: START Tue Jun 4 15:18:58 UTC 2019
install_activate: Activating SMU
Cumulative SMU Size: 24 KB
Cumulative size of all SMU's will not exceed 20000 KB
Available Memory in /backup_image is 250984 KB
Available memory 250984 KB is greater than available memory required 2000 KB
MEWLC response success sync_successExecuting pre scripts....
Executing pre sripts done.

--- Starting SMU Activate operation ---
Performing SMU_ACTIVATE on all members
ls: cannot access '/tmp/sw/fp/*/*/*/mount/.pkginfo': No such file or directory
ls: cannot access '/tmp/sw/fp/*/*/*/mount/.pkginfo': No such file or directory
[1] SMU_ACTIVATE package(s) on chassis 1
valid
install_activate: FP fp error skipping. Platform to fix this in Fru List
[1] Finished SMU_ACTIVATE on chassis 1
Checking status of SMU_ACTIVATE on [1]
SMU_ACTIVATE: Passed on [1]
Finished SMU Activate operation

Executing post scripts....
Executing post scripts done.
Executing post scripts....
Executing post scripts done.
SUCCESS: install_activate /backup_image/ewc-apsp1.bin
```

**Device#install commit**

```
install_commit: START Tue Jun 4 16:15:25 UTC 2019
install_commit: Committing SMU
Executing pre scripts....
install_commit:
Executing pre sripts done.
--- Starting SMU Commit operation ---
Performing SMU_COMMIT on all members
```

```
ls: cannot access '/tmp/sw/fp/*/*/*/mount/.pkginfo': No such file or directory
ls: cannot access '/tmp/sw/fp/*/*/*/mount/.pkginfo': No such file or directory
[1] SMU_COMMIT package(s) on chassis 1
valid
[1] Finished SMU_COMMIT on chassis 1
Checking status of SMU_COMMIT on [1]
SMU_COMMIT: Passed on [1]
Finished SMU Commit operation

Waiting for the platform to set the SMU sync timerSMU sync status is sync_successSMU sync
to AP's success
/tmp/rp/chasfs/wireless/wlc_notify
SUCCESS: install_commit /backup_image/ewc-apsp1.bin
```

**Device#install rollback to base**

```
install_rollback: START Tue Jun 4 16:42:24 UTC 2019
install_rollback: Rolling back SMU
Executing pre scripts....
install_rollback:
Executing pre sripts done.

--- Starting SMU Rollback operation ---
Performing SMU_ROLLBACK on all members
ls: cannot access '/tmp/sw/fp/*/*/*/mount/.pkginfo': No such file or directory
ls: cannot access '/tmp/sw/fp/*/*/*/mount/.pkginfo': No such file or directory
[1] SMU_ROLLBACK package(s) on chassis 1
[1] Finished SMU_ROLLBACK on chassis 1
Checking status of SMU_ROLLBACK on [1]
SMU_ROLLBACK: Passed on [1]
Finished SMU Rollback operation

Executing post scripts....
Executing post scripts done.
Waiting for the platform to set the SMU sync timerSMU sync status is sync_successSMU sync
to AP's success
/tmp/rp/chasfs/wireless/wlc_notifyExecuting post scripts....
Executing post scripts done.
SUCCESS: install_rollback /backup_image/ewc-apsp1.bin Tue Jun 4 16:43:01 UTC 2019
```

**Device# install deactivate file backup_image: ewc-apsp1.bin**

**install remove file backup_image:ewc-apsp1.bin**

**Device#show install sum**

```
[ Chassis 1 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Type St Filename/Version
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
APSP C backup_image:ewc-apsp1.bin
IMG C 17.1.1.0.69043

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Auto abort timer: inactive
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

# Rolling AP upgrade

A rolling AP upgrade is an upgrade method that

- updates APs in staggered batches such that some APs are always up in the network and provide seamless coverage to clients while the other APs are selected to be upgraded, and
- requires preloading the image in advance to ensure that all APs scheduled for upgrade have the new version.

# Rolling AP upgrade process

### Summary

Rolling AP upgrade is done on a per controller basis. The number of APs to be upgraded at a given time is a percentage of the total number of APs connected to the controller. The percentage is capped at a user configured value. The default percentage is 15. Upgrade all non-client APs before upgrading any client APs.

The key components involved in the process are:

- Controller
- APs
- Clients

### Workflow

The process involves the following stages:

1. Candidate AP set selection:

   In this stage, a set of AP candidates is selected based on neighboring AP information. For example, if you identify an AP for upgrade, a certain number (N) of its neighbors are excluded from candidate selection. The N values are generated in the following manner:

   If the user configurable capped percentage is 25%, then N=6 (Expected number of iterations =5)

   If the user configurable capped percentage is 15%, then N=12 (Expected number of iterations=12)

   If the user configurable capped percentage is 5%, then N=24 (Expected number of iterations =22)

   If you cannot select candidates using neighboring AP information, select candidates from indirect neighbors. If this still fails, the AP is upgraded without failure.



**Note** If you have more candidate APs than the configured percentage allows, remove the extra candidates to maintain the percentage cap.

2. Client steering:

   Move clients connected to candidate APs to other APs before rebooting the candidate APs. Each AP sends a request to its associated clients, providing a list of the best available APs (excluding candidate APs). The system marks candidate APs as unavailable for neighbor lists and resets these markings during the AP rejoin and reload process.

3. AP rejoin and reload process:

After steering clients, if any clients remain connected to the candidate AP, de-authorize those clients and reload the AP so it restarts with a new image. Set a three-minute timer for the APs to rejoin. When the timer expires, check if all candidate APs have joined the controller or mobility peer. If 90% have joined, end the iteration. If not, extend the timer by three minutes and check again. After three attempts, start the next iteration. Each iteration usually lasts about 10 minutes.

You only need to configure the number of APs to upgrade at a time as a percentage of the total APs in the network. The default is 15 percent.

```
Device(config)# ap upgrade staggered {25 | 15 | 5}
```

# Verifying AP Upgrade on the Controller

Use the following **show** command to verify the AP upgrade on the controller:

```
Device# show ap upgrade
AP upgrade is in progress

From version: 17.1.0.6
To version: 17.1.0.99

Started at: 06/04/2019 15:19:32 UTC
Configured percentage: 15
Percentage complete: 0
Expected time of completion: 06/04/2019 16:39:32 UTC

Progress Report
---------------
Iterations
----------
Iteration Start time End time AP count
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0 06/04/2019 15:19:33 UTC 06/04/2019 15:19:33 UTC 1
1 06/04/2019 15:19:33 UTC ONGOING 1

Upgraded
--------
Number of APs: 1
AP Name Ethernet MAC Iteration Status Site
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
AP7069.5A74.7604 7069.5a78.5580 0 Not Impacted default-site-tag

In Progress
-----------
Number of APs: 1
AP Name Ethernet MAC
-------------------------------------------------
APB4DE.3169.7842 4c77.6dc4.a220

Remaining
---------
Number of APs: 0

AP Name Ethernet MAC
-------------------------------------------------

APs not handled by Rolling AP Upgrade
-------------------------------------
AP Name Ethernet MAC Status Reason for not handling by Rolling AP Upgrade
```

# AP Device Pack (APDP) and AP Service Pack (APSP)

## APSP and APDP

**AP Service Pack (APSP)** - APSP rolls out fixes to AP images for one or more AP models. Pre-download the AP images and activate (through rolling upgrade) these images to a subset of AP models.

- Patched APs run a different CAPWAP version than the rest of the APs. For e.g. 17.1.0.100 and 17.1.0.0.
- Per site APSP rollout is not supported. In embedded wireless controller APSP all APs must be in a single default site.

**AP Device Pack (APDP) -**

Currently, when a new AP hardware model is introduced, those get shipped along with the corresponding embedded wireless controller related major software version. Then you need to wait for the release of a corresponding embedded wireless controller version relative to the new AP model and upgrade the entire network.

APDP allows you introduce the new AP model into your wireless network using the SMU infrastructure without the need to upgrade to the new embedded wireless controller version.

**AP Image Changes -**

When new AP models are introduced, there may or may not be corresponding new AP images. This means that AP images are mapped to the AP model families. If a new AP model belongs to an existing AP model family then you will have existing AP image entries (Example: ap3g3, ap1g5, and so on). For instance, if an AP model belongs to either ap3g3 or ap1g5, the respective image file is bundled with APDP SMU zip file. The corresponding metadata file is updated with the new AP model capability information including the AP image that it requires.

If a new AP model belongs to a new AP model family, a new image file would be bundled in the APDP SMU zip file. The corresponding metadata file is updated with the new AP model capability information including the AP image that it requires.

**Information about APSP and APDP**

SMU AP images are not part of the SMU binary, and the AP images are hosted outside the contoller.

- Only SFTP and TFTP methods are supported for SMU AP image download.
- HTTP, HTTP, and CCO methods are not supported for APSP or APDP.

A SMU package contains the metadata that carry AP model and its capability related details.

**Note** All the zipped files are required in order to successfully proceed with the upgrade. All the contained files in the zip folder are made accessible through the download method.

Following are the pre-requisites for TFTP/SFTP software upgrade:

- A TFTP/SFTP server is reachable from the management IP address of the embedded wireless controller.
- The upgrade bundle with the AP images (ap1g6, ap1g6a, ap1g7, ap3g3, and so on) and the controller image (C9800-AP-iosxe-wlc.bin) that is downloaded from the website is unzipped and copied onto the TFTP/SFTP server.

# Managing APSP and APDP

AP images are hosted outside the wireless controller. In the embedded wireless controller, only TFTP or SFTP is supported for SMU AP image download.

## Configuring the APSP and APDP Files (GUI)

Follow the steps given below to add APSP or APDP files:

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Administration** > **Software Management** > **AP Service Package (APSP)** or **AP Device Package (APDP)**.
The **Add an AP Device Package** or **Add an AP Service Package** window is displayed.

**Step 2** From the **Transport Type** drop-down list,

- **TFTP**: Specify the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **File Path**, **File Name**, and **File System**.
- **SFTP**: Specify the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **Port Number** (Default port number is 22), SFTP username and password, **File Path**, **File Name**, and **File System**.

**Step 3** Click **Add File**.

## Configuring the TFTP Server Directory

To set up the TFTP server directory, complete the following steps:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device#configure terminal` | Enter the configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile image-download default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#wireless profile image-download default` | Configures EWC-AP image download parameters. Use only default as the image download profile name. |
| **Step 3** | **image-download-mode** {**tftp** \| **sftp**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile)#image-download-mode tftp` | Configures image download using TFTP. |
| **Step 4** | **tftp-image-path** *tftp-image-path*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-tftp)#tftp-image-path /tftpboot/cisco/ewc/` | Configures the TFTP server root directory for the AP images. |
| **Step 5** | **tftp-image-server** {**A.B.C.D** \| **X:X:X:X::X**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-tftp)#tftp-image-server 5.5.5.5` | Configures the TFTP server address. |

### What to do next

- Set up the remote server directory: When you receive the complete bundle in a zip file, copy the zip file to a root directory, for example, `/tftpboot/user/ewc`. Example of the complete bundle - `/tftpboot/user/ewc/17.1.zip`.
- Unzip the file. The following are the examples of the files that will be present in the root directory: `ap3g3, ap1g4, C9800-AP-iosxe-wlc.bin`, and so on.

**Note** When there is an issue and you want to patch an APSP SMU based on the 17.1 patch file `C9800_AP.17_1.22.CSCvr11111.apsp.zip` is pasted in the same root folder, that is, `/tftproot/user/ewc/C9800_AP.17_1.22.CSCvr11111.apsp.zip`. When you unzip the file, a sub-directory, for example, `/tftpboot/user/ewc/17_1.22.CSCvr11111/` is created automatically. The AP images (for example, `ap3g3`) and SMU binary (`apsp_CSCvr11111.bin`) are present in that sub-directory.

## Configuring the SFTP Server Directory

To set up the SFTP server directory, complete the following steps:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:** | Enter the configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device#configure terminal` | |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile image-download default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#wireless profile image-download default` | Configures EWC-AP image download parameters. Use only default as the image download profile name. |
| **Step 3** | **image-download-mode** {**tftp** \| **sftp**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile)#image-download-mode sftp` | Configures image download using SFTP. |
| **Step 4** | **sftp-image-path** *sftp-image-path*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-sftp)#sftp-image-path /sftpboot/cisco/ewc/` | Configures the SFTP server root directory for the AP images. |
| **Step 5** | **sftp-image-server** {**A.B.C.D** \| **X:X:X:X::X**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-sftp)#sftp-image-server 5.5.5.5` | Configures the SFTP server address. |
| **Step 6** | **sftp-password** {**0** \| **8**} *password re-enter password*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-sftp)#sftp-password 0 admin` | Configures the SFTP password. |
| **Step 7** | **sftp-username** *username*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-image-download-profile-sftp)#sftp-username admin` | Configures the SFTP username. |

### What to do next

- Set up the remote server directory: When you receive the complete bundle in a zip file, copy the zip file to a root directory, for example, `/sftpboot/user/ewc`. Example of the complete bundle - `/sftpboot/user/ewc/17.1.zip`.
- Unzip the file. The following are the examples of the files that will be present in the root directory: `ap3g3, ap1g4, C9800-AP-iosxe-wlc.bin`, and so on.

**Note** When there is an issue and you want to patch an APSP SMU based on the 17.1 patch file `C9800_AP.17_1.22.CSCvr11111.apsp.zip` is pasted in the same root folder, that is, `/sftproot/user/ewc/C9800_AP.17_1.22.CSCvr11111.apsp.zip`. When you unzip the file, a sub-directory, for example, `/sftpboot/user/ewc/17_1.22.CSCvr11111/` is created automatically, and the AP images (for example, `ap3g3`) and SMU binary (`apsp_CSCvr11111.bin`) are present in that sub-directory.

# Positive Workflow - APSP and APDP

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **install add file** {**tftp:** \| **sftp:** \| **backup_image:**} `apsp.bin`<br>**Example:**<br>TFTP and Backup Image -<br>`Device# install add file tftp://server_path/auto/tftpboot/user/ewc/17_1.22.CSCvr11111/apsp_CSCvr11111.bin`<br>`Device#install add file backup-image:apsp_CSCvr11111.bin` | The `install add` command copies the file from the external server to the backup_image directory on the embedded wireless controller. |
| **Step 2** | **ap image predownload**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap image predownload` | This command is optional. The command predownloads the AP image. If the predownload has started, ensure that it completes before step 3 is initiated. |
| **Step 3** | **install activate file backup-image:** *apsp.bin*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install activate file backup-image:apsp.bin` | This command starts the rolling AP upgrade.<br>**Note**<br>For APDP, after activate, the EWC Controller allows APs of the new AP model to join, and get the newly installed SMU AP image. |
| **Step 4** | **install commit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install commit` | Commits the activation changes to be persistent across reloads.<br>The commit can be done after activation while the system is up, or after one reload. If a patch is activated and not committed, the auto abort timer automatically cancels the activation of the patch in six hours . |

# Rollback and Cancel

## One-Shot Rollback

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **show install rollback**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show install rollback` | Displays the possible rollback points. |
| **Step 2** | **install rollback to** {**base** \| **committed** \| **id** \| **label** } *specific-rollback-point*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install rollback to base` | This command triggers the Rolling AP upgrade. Rolling upgrade works for all APs that have the required image. Rest of the APs are rebooted together.<br>Rolls back a committed patch. The committed patch can be deactivated and the commit for deactivation can be done using the single install rollback command. |

## Multi-Step Rollback

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **show install profile**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show install profile` | The `show install profile` command displays the profiles corresponding to the rollback points. |
| **Step 2** | **install add profile** *profile-rollback-point*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install add profile profile-rollback-point` | This command prepares the wireless module for the predownload step corresponding to the rollback point. |
| **Step 3** | **install rollback to** {**base** \| **committed** \| **id** \| **label** } *specific-rollback-point*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# install rollback to base` | This command triggers the Rolling AP upgrade. Rolling upgrade works for all APs that have the required image. Rest of the APs are rebooted together.<br>Rolls back a committed patch. The committed patch can be deactivated and the commit for deactivation can be done using the single install rollback command. |

## One-Shot Cancel

The following command is used for the One-Shot manual cancel:

**Procedure**

- **install abort**

  **Example:**

  ```
  Device# install abort
  ```

  This command triggers rolling AP upgrade. Cancel is allowed only if commit is not yet completed. With One-Shot Cancel there is no predownload step. Rolling AP upgrade works for all APs which have the required image. Rest are rebooted together.

Automatic Timer-Based One-Shot Cancel

After activation, a default 6-hour cancel timer is started. The cancel timer can be set to a different value when the **activate** command is issued, through the **auto-abort-timer** parameter. When the cancel timer expires, cancellation is performed the same way as the manual cancellation.

### Configuring Rollback (GUI)

Follow the steps given below to configure rollback for APSP and APDP:

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Administration** > **Software Management** .

**Step 2** Select either **AP Service Pack (APSP)** or **AP Device Pack (APDP)**.

**Step 3** From the **Rollback to** drop-down list, choose the Rollback type as *Base* or *Committed*.

**Step 4** Click **Submit**.

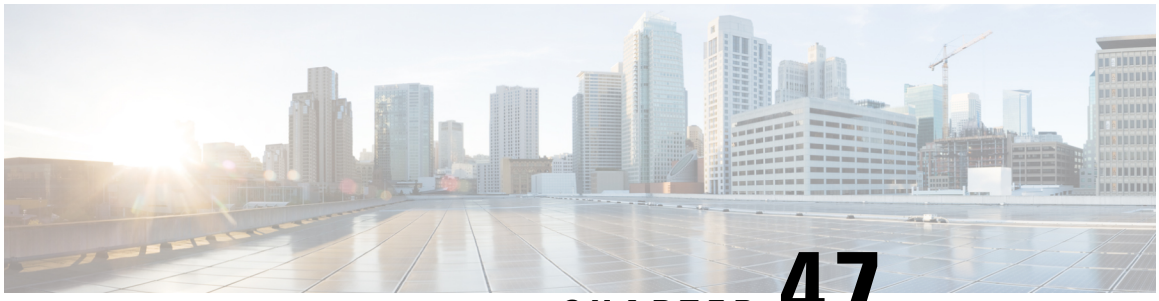
# Verify APDP on the Embedded Wireless Controller

To verify the status of APDP packages on the embedded wireless controller, use the command:

```
Device# show install summary

[ Chassis 1 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted, C - Activated & Committed, D -
Deactivated & Uncommitted
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Type  St   Filename/Version
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
APDP  I    bootflash:apdp_CSCvp12345.bin
IMG   C    17.1.0.0
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Auto abort timer: inactive
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

**Note** The output of this command varies based on the packages, and the package states that are installed.



CHAPTER 47

# Intelligent Capture Hardening


- Feature History for Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening, on page 363
- Information About Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening, on page 363
- Configuring Anomaly Detection in AP Profile (CLI), on page 364
- Configuring Anomaly Detection in an Access Point (CLI), on page 365
- Verifying Anomaly Detection and RF Statistics, on page 366


## Feature History for Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 23: Feature History for Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening***

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1 | Cisco Intelligent Capture (iCAP) Hardening | The following enhancements are made to the iCAP feature:<br>• Anomaly Detection<br>• RF Statistics |

## Information About Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening

The Cisco Intelligent Capture (iCAP) feature aims at making troubleshooting for wireless clients and APs easier. When there are onboarding issues for wireless clients or AP transmission issues, network operators can find out the cause by using the Cisco Catalyst CenterGUI. The Cisco Catalyst Center gathers data from the wireless controller and APs, and displays an aggregated view.

The following enhancements are made to the iCAP feature:

- Anomaly Detection
- RF Statistics

# Anomaly Detection

Anomaly Detection is the capability of Cisco APs to detect possible anomalies in the lifecycle of wireless clients and APs.

This functionality is crucial as it allows you to determine if there is an issue in the network, to identify what happened, and avoid the same problem in the future.

APs send individual anomalies to Cisco Catalyst Center every time an anomaly is detected. To prevent Cisco Catalyst Center from getting bombarded with anomaly events of the same type and from the same client, enhancements are made to collapse repeated events, and multiple events are aggregated for the same client if the events occur within a certain time frame.

Anomaly-detection configurations are enhanced on the controller to provision and display the iCAP status.

# RF Statistics

The Cisco Catalyst Center receives RF statistics of connected APs. Until Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1, the data received was basic statistical information. However, from Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1 onwards, per AP statistical information is directly sent from the wireless controller through iCAP subscription to specific APs.

# Configuring Anomaly Detection in AP Profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# onfigure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *ap-profile*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile` | Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable` | Enables individual reports for client anomaly-detection subscription. |
| **Step 4** | **icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable aggregate**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable aggregate` | Enables individual reports aggregation for client anomaly-detection subscription. This command is disabled by default. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 5** | **icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-client throttle** *number-of-event-reports*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-client throttle 20` | Configures event reports per client, every five minutes. The value of an event report ranges from 0 to 50 reports. The default value is five reports. |
| **Step 6** | **icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-type throttle** *number-of-event-reports*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-type throttle 50` | Configures event reports per type, every five minutes. The value of an event report ranges from 0 to 100 reports. The default value is five reports. |

# Configuring Anomaly Detection in an Access Point (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *ap-name* **icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable` | Enables individual reports for client anomaly-detection subscription for a single AP. |
| **Step 3** | **ap name** *ap-name* **icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable aggregate**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable` | Enables individual reports aggregation for client anomaly-detection subscription, for a single AP. |
| **Step 4** | **ap name** *ap-name* **icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-client throttle** *number-of-event-reports*<br>**Example:** | Configures event reports per client, every five minutes, for a single AP. The value of an event report ranges from 0 to 50 reports. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device# ap name ap1 icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-client throttle 20` | |
| **Step 5** | **ap name** *ap-name* **icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-type throttle** *number-of-event-reports*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-type throttle 50` | Configures event reports per type, every five minutes, for a single AP. The value of an event report ranges from 0 to 100 reports. |

# Verifying Anomaly Detection and RF Statistics

To verify the current status of the anomaly-detection subscription of an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name cisco-AP icap subscription client anomaly-detection chassis active R0
Per-AP ICap configuration

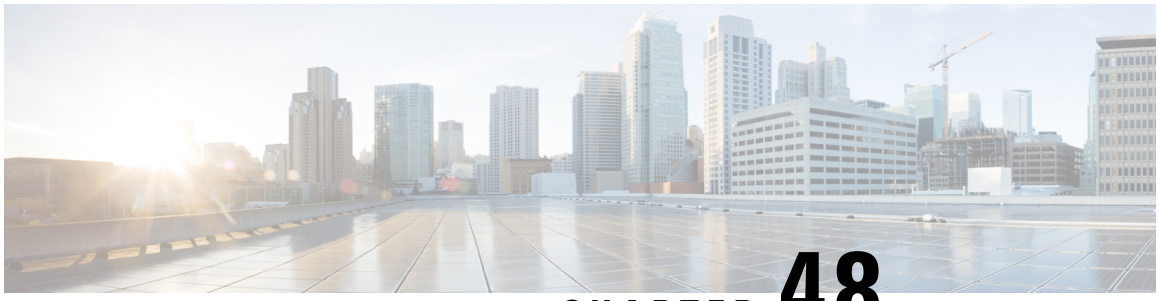
Anomaly detection subscription
  State                     : enabled
  Client filter             : 006b.f107.a520
  Client filter             : 006b.f107.a521
  DHCP timeout (seconds)    : 5
  Trigger AP packet trace   : enabled
  Report Individual         : enabled
  Report Individual aggregate : enabled
  Report Individual throttled events (per 5 minute) : 5
  Report Individual per type throttled events (per 5 minute) : 14
  Report Individual per client throttled events (per 5 minute) : 15
  Report Summary            : disabled
  Report Summary frequency (minutes) : 5
```

To verify RF statistics, use the following command:

**Note** The controller **show** command is enhanced to display data from the **txTotalDrops** counter.

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 00XX.ecXX.7aXX detail
.
.
.
Client Statistics:
  Number of Bytes Received from Client : 62861
  Number of Bytes Sent to Client : 6754
  Number of Packets Received from Client : 455
  Number of Packets Sent to Client : 65
  Number of Data Retries : 0
  Number of RTS Retries : 0
  Number of Tx Total Dropped Packets: x
  Number of Duplicate Received Packets : 0
  Number of Decrypt Failed Packets : 0
  Number of Mic Failured Packets : 0
  Number of Mic Missing Packets : 0
  Number of Policy Errors : 0
```

```
  Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -21 dBm
  Signal to Noise Ratio : 73 dB
.
.
.
```



CHAPTER 48

# Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade


- Feature History for Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade Support, on page 369
- Information About Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade, on page 369
- Configuring Minidump from Access Point (CLI), on page 370
- Configuring Minidump from Controller (CLI), on page 371
- Verifying Minidump Configuration, on page 371


## Feature History for Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade Support

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 24: Feature History for Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade Support***

| Release | Feature Information |
|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1 | Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature offers a more effective method for diagnosing kernel issues.<br>The following command is introduced:<br>• **core-dump kernel type** |

## Information About Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade

When a kernel crash occurs on 802.11AX APs, only AP console logs are accessible for identifying the cause of the crash. However, these logs often do not provide sufficient information to pinpoint the exact reason for the crash. From Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1 release, the Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature offers a more effective method for diagnosing kernel crashes.

The Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature helps to collect specific sections and data structures containing essential information for debugging kernel crashes within the driver. When you enable this feature, it stores references to crucial kernel or driver data structures and data in a TLV structure within kernel memory.

Subsequently, after the AP crash and reboot process, the TLV-referenced data structures are saved to the flash memory and can be exported for further analysis. The TLV data is stored in the */storage/cores* directory

### Trust Zone Upgrade

In APs with Qualcomm Software Development Kit (QSDK) version 11.3, the trust zone collects CPU registers following a crash and saves them in memory for later retrieval during kernel crash dump process. To facilitate the kernel crash dump, the trust zone is updated automatically to the latest version for those APs that have the Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature enabled.

**Note** The trust zone upgrade is a one-time activity. Disabling the Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature or downgrading the controller software to a previous release from Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1 does not roll back the trust zone upgrade.

In Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1, the Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature is supported only on the following APs:

- Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series Access Points

# Configuring Minidump from Access Point (CLI)

### Before you begin

- Ensure that clients are not connected to the AP.
- Keep the AP in standalone mode to prevent the AP from receiving conflicting payloads from the controller.
- Configuration pushed from the controller always overrides the value configured on the AP.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure boot minidump enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure boot minidump enable` | Enables kernel coredump collection on the AP. |

# Configuring Minidump from Controller (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile` | Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **core-dump kernel limit** *limit*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# core-dump kernel limit 4` | Configures the maximum number of kernel core dumps to be collected on an AP. Valid range is from 0 to 5. |
| **Step 4** | **core-dump kernel type mini-dump**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# core-dump kernel type mini-dump` | Configures the type of kernel core dump to be collected on the AP.<br>Use the **core-dump kernel type disable** command to disable kernel core dump.<br>**Note**<br>Changing the core dump type from disabled to full-dump or mini-dump or vice versa will cause the APs to reboot.<br>When you enable the full-dump option, the Kernel Minidump feature gets deactivated. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# end` | Returns to global configuration mode. |

# Verifying Minidump Configuration

To view the mini-dump configuration on the controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP3C57.31C5.99D0 config general  | sec Kernel core dump

Kernel core dump :
  Configured limit                          : 3
  Kernel core dumps collected on AP         : 1
  Kernel core dump type                     : Mini dump
```

To view the mini-dump configuration on the AP, use the following command:

```
AP# show boot

--- Boot Variable Table ---
BOOT path-list:      part1
Console Baudrate:    115200
Enable Break:        yes
Manual Boot:         yes
Memory Debug:        no
Crashkernel:         no
Minidump:            yes # Indicates Minidump is enabled.
SCRUB_LIMIT:         40 (default)
Kdump Limit:         5 # Configured limit. (this came from WLC via payload)
Kdump Collected:     0 # Number of times the feature ran after it was enabled.
Debug init:          0
```

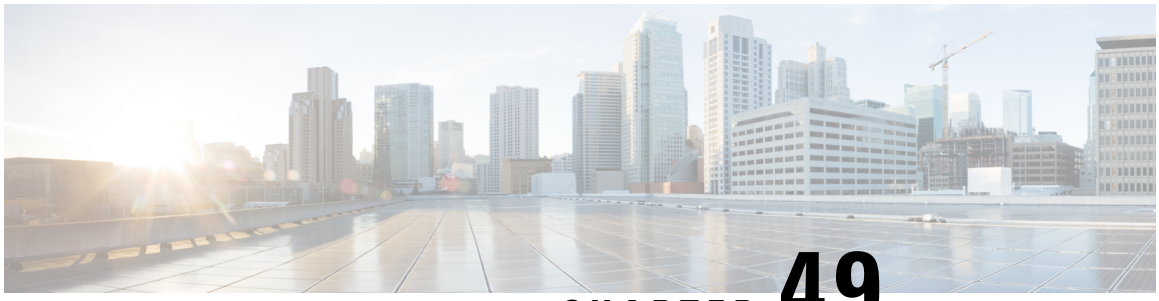


# PART VI

# Security


- IPv4 ACLs , on page 375
- DNS-Based Access Control Lists, on page 393
- Downloadable ACL, on page 403
- Allowed List of Specific URLs, on page 409
- Web-Based Authentication , on page 413
- Central Web Authentication, on page 445
- ISE Simplification and Enhancements, on page 459
- Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers, on page 473
- Secure LDAP, on page 485
- RADIUS DTLS, on page 493
- MAC Filtering, on page 505
- Dynamic Frequency Selection, on page 511
- Managing Rogue Devices, on page 513
- Classifying Rogue Access Points, on page 535
- Configuring Secure Shell , on page 545
- Private Shared Key, on page 553
- Multi-Preshared Key, on page 563
- Multiple Authentications for a Client, on page 573
- Support for Hash-to-Element for Password Element in SAE Authentication, on page 593
- Cisco Umbrella WLAN, on page 603
- Locally Significant Certificates, on page 613
- Federal Information Processing Standard, on page 639
- Certificate Management, on page 643
- User and Entity Behavior Analysis , on page 649

• WPA3 Security Enhancements for Access Points, on page 655



CHAPTER 49

# IPv4 ACLs


- Information about Network Security with ACLs, on page 375
- Restrictions for Configuring IPv4 Access Control Lists, on page 381
- How to Configure ACLs, on page 382


# Information about Network Security with ACLs

This chapter describes how to configure network security on the switch by using access control lists (ACLs), which in commands and tables are also referred to as access lists.

## ACL Overview

Packet filtering can help limit network traffic and restrict network use by certain users or devices. ACLs filter traffic as it passes through a controller and permit or deny packets crossing specified interfaces. An ACL is a sequential collection of permit and deny conditions that apply to packets. When a packet is received on an interface, the switch compares the fields in the packet against any applied ACLs to verify that the packet has the required permissions to be forwarded, based on the criteria specified in the access lists. One by one, it tests packets against the conditions in an access list. The first match decides whether the controller accepts or rejects the packets. Because the controller stops testing after the first match, the order of conditions in the list is critical. If no conditions match, the controller rejects the packet. If there are no restrictions, the controller forwards the packet; otherwise, the controller drops the packet. The controller can use ACLs on all packets it forwards. There is implcit any host deny deny rule.

You configure access lists on a controller to provide basic security for your network. If you do not configure ACLs, all packets passing through the switch could be allowed onto all parts of the network. You can use ACLs to control which hosts can access different parts of a network or to decide which types of traffic are forwarded or blocked at router interfaces. For example, you can allow e-mail traffic to be forwarded but not Telnet traffic.

**Note** EWC does not support ACL on the Gi0 port as EWC does not support interface or port ACLs.

## Access Control Entries

An ACL contains an ordered list of access control entries (ACEs). Each ACE specifies *permit* or *deny* and a set of conditions the packet must satisfy in order to match the ACE. The meaning of *permit* or *deny* depends on the context in which the ACL is used.

**Note** The maximum number of ACEs that can be applied under an access policy (ACL) for central switching is 256 ACEs. The maximum number of ACEs applicable for Flex Mode Local Switching is 64 ACEs.

## ACL Supported Types

The switch supports IP ACLs and Ethernet (MAC) ACLs:

- IP ACLs filter IPv4 traffic, including TCP, User Datagram Protocol (UDP), Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP), and Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP).
- Ethernet ACLs filter non-IP traffic.

This switch also supports quality of service (QoS) classification ACLs.

# ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic

IP packets can be fragmented as they cross the network. When this happens, only the fragment containing the beginning of the packet contains the Layer 4 information, such as TCP or UDP port numbers, ICMP type and code, and so on. All other fragments are missing this information.

Some access control entries (ACEs) do not check Layer 4 information and therefore can be applied to all packet fragments. ACEs that do test Layer 4 information cannot be applied in the standard manner to most of the fragments in a fragmented IP packet. When the fragment contains no Layer 4 information and the ACE tests some Layer 4 information, the matching rules are modified:

- Permit ACEs that check the Layer 3 information in the fragment (including protocol type, such as TCP, UDP, and so on) are considered to match the fragment regardless of what the missing Layer 4 information might have been.

**Note** For TCP ACEs with L4 Ops, the fragmented packets will be dropped per RFC 1858.

- Deny ACEs that check Layer 4 information never match a fragment unless the fragment contains Layer 4 information.

## ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic Examples

Consider access list 102, configured with these commands, applied to three fragmented packets:

```
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 10.1.1.1 eq smtp
Device(config)# access-list 102 deny tcp any host 10.1.1.2 eq telnet
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 10.1.1.2
```

```
Device(config)# access-list 102 deny tcp any any
```

**Note** In the first and second ACEs in the examples, the *eq* keyword after the destination address means to test for the TCP-destination-port well-known numbers equaling Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) and Telnet, respectively.

- Packet A is a TCP packet from host 10.2.2.2., port 65000, going to host 10.1.1.1 on the SMTP port. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the first ACE (a permit) as if it were a complete packet because all Layer 4 information is present. The remaining fragments also match the first ACE, even though they do not contain the SMTP port information, because the first ACE only checks Layer 3 information when applied to fragments. The information in this example is that the packet is TCP and that the destination is 10.1.1.1.
- Packet B is from host 10.2.2.2, port 65001, going to host 10.1.1.2 on the Telnet port. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the second ACE (a deny) because all Layer 3 and Layer 4 information is present. The remaining fragments in the packet do not match the second ACE because they are missing Layer 4 information. Instead, they match the third ACE (a permit).

  Because the first fragment was denied, host 10.1.1.2 cannot reassemble a complete packet, so packet B is effectively denied. However, the later fragments that are permitted will consume bandwidth on the network and resources of host 10.1.1.2 as it tries to reassemble the packet.
- Fragmented packet C is from host 10.2.2.2, port 65001, going to host 10.1.1.3, port ftp. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the fourth ACE (a deny). All other fragments also match the fourth ACE because that ACE does not check any Layer 4 information and because Layer 3 information in all fragments shows that they are being sent to host 10.1.1.3, and the earlier permit ACEs were checking different hosts.

# Standard and Extended IPv4 ACLs

This section describes IP ACLs.

An ACL is a sequential collection of permit and deny conditions. One by one, the switch tests packets against the conditions in an access list. The first match determines whether the switch accepts or rejects the packet. Because the switch stops testing after the first match, the order of the conditions is critical. If no conditions match, the switch denies the packet.

The software supports these types of ACLs or access lists for IPv4:

- Standard IP access lists use source addresses for matching operations.
- Extended IP access lists use source and destination addresses for matching operations and optional protocol-type information for finer granularity of control.

**Note** Only extended ACLs are supported while the standard ACLs are not supported.

# IPv4 ACL Switch Unsupported Features

Configuring IPv4 ACLs on the switch is the same as configuring IPv4 ACLs on other Cisco switches and routers.

The following ACL-related features are not supported:

- Non-IP protocol ACLs
- IP accounting
- Reflexive ACLs, URL Redirect ACLs and Dynamic ACLs are not supported.

# Access List Numbers

The number you use to denote your ACL shows the type of access list that you are creating.

This lists the access-list number and corresponding access list type and shows whether or not they are supported in the switch. The switch supports IPv4 standard and extended access lists, numbers 1 to 199 and 1300 to 2699.

***Table 25: Access List Numbers***

| Access List Number | Type | Supported |
|---|---|---|
| 1–99 | IP standard access list | Yes |
| 100–199 | IP extended access list | Yes |
| 200–299 | Protocol type-code access list | No |
| 300–399 | DECnet access list | No |
| 400–499 | XNS standard access list | No |
| 500–599 | XNS extended access list | No |
| 600–699 | AppleTalk access list | No |
| 700–799 | 48-bit MAC address access list | No |
| 800–899 | IPX standard access list | No |
| 900–999 | IPX extended access list | No |
| 1000–1099 | IPX SAP access list | No |
| 1100–1199 | Extended 48-bit MAC address access list | No |
| 1200–1299 | IPX summary address access list | No |
| 1300–1999 | IP standard access list (expanded range) | Yes |
| 2000–2699 | IP extended access list (expanded range) | Yes |

In addition to numbered standard and extended ACLs, you can also create standard and extended named IP ACLs by using the supported numbers. That is, the name of a standard IP ACL can be 1 to 99; the name of

an extended IP ACL can be 100 to 199. The advantage of using named ACLs instead of numbered lists is that you can delete individual entries from a named list.

## Numbered Standard IPv4 ACLs

When creating an ACL, remember that, by default, the end of the ACL contains an implicit deny statement for all packets that it did not find a match for before reaching the end. With standard access lists, if you omit the mask from an associated IP host address ACL specification, 0.0.0.0 is assumed to be the mask.

The switch always rewrites the order of standard access lists so that entries with **host** matches and entries with matches having a *don't care* mask of 0.0.0.0 are moved to the top of the list, above any entries with non-zero *don't care* masks. Therefore, in **show** command output and in the configuration file, the ACEs do not necessarily appear in the order in which they were entered.

After creating a numbered standard IPv4 ACL, you can apply it to terminal lines (virtual teletype (VTY) lines), or to interfaces.

## Numbered Extended IPv4 ACLs

Although standard ACLs use only source addresses for matching, you can use extended ACL source and destination addresses for matching operations and optional protocol type information for finer granularity of control. When you are creating ACEs in numbered extended access lists, remember that after you create the ACL, any additions are placed at the end of the list. You cannot reorder the list or selectively add or remove ACEs from a numbered list.

The switch does not support dynamic or reflexive access lists. It also does not support filtering based on the type of service (ToS) minimize-monetary-cost bit.

Some protocols also have specific parameters and keywords that apply to that protocol.

You can define an extended TCP, UDP, ICMP, IGMP, or other IP ACL. The switch also supports these IP protocols:

These IP protocols are supported:

- Authentication Header Protocol (**ahp**)
- Encapsulation Security Payload (**esp**)
- Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (**eigrp**)
- generic routing encapsulation (**gre**)
- Internet Control Message Protocol (**icmp**)
- Internet Group Management Protocol (**igmp**)
- any Interior Protocol (**ip**)
- IP in IP tunneling (**ipinip**)
- KA9Q NOS-compatible IP over IP tunneling (**nos**)
- Open Shortest Path First routing (**ospf**)
- Payload Compression Protocol (**pcp**)
- Protocol-Independent Multicast (**pim**)
- Transmission Control Protocol (**tcp**)

- User Datagram Protocol (**udp**)

## Named IPv4 ACLs

You can identify IPv4 ACLs with an alphanumeric string (a name) rather than a number. You can use named ACLs to configure more IPv4 access lists in a router than if you were to use numbered access lists. If you identify your access list with a name rather than a number, the mode and command syntax are slightly different. However, at times, not all commands that use IP access lists accept a named access list.

**Note** The name you give to a standard or extended ACL can also be a number in the supported range of access list numbers. That is, the name of a standard IP ACL can be 1 to 99 and . The advantage of using named ACLs instead of numbered lists is that you can delete individual entries from a named list.

Consider these guidelines before configuring named ACLs:

- Numbered ACLs are also available.
- A standard ACL and an extended ACL cannot have the same name.

## ACL Logging

The controller software can provide logging messages about packets permitted or denied by a standard IP access list. That is, any packet that matches the ACL causes an informational logging message about the packet to be sent to the console. The level of messages logged to the console is controlled by the **logging console** commands controlling the syslog messages.

**Note** Because routing is done in hardware and logging is done in software, if a large number of packets match a *permit* or *deny* ACE containing a **log** keyword, the software might not be able to match the hardware processing rate, and not all packets will be logged.

The first packet that triggers the ACL causes a logging message right away, and subsequent packets are collected over 5-minute intervals before they appear or logged. The logging message includes the access list number, whether the packet was permitted or denied, the source IP address of the packet, and the number of packets from that source permitted or denied in the prior 5-minute interval.

**Note** The logging facility might drop some logging message packets if there are too many to be handled or if there is more than one logging message to be handled in 1 second. This behavior prevents the router from crashing due to too many logging packets. Therefore, the logging facility should not be used as a billing tool or an accurate source of the number of matches to an access list.

# Hardware and Software Treatment of IP ACLs

ACL processing is performed in hardware. If the hardware reaches its capacity to store ACL configurations, all packets on that interface are dropped.

The ACL scale for controllers is as follows:

- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller (small and medium) support 128 ACLs with 128 Access List Entries (ACEs).
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller and Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller (large) support 256 ACLs and 256 ACEs.
- FlexConnect and Fabric mode APs support 96 ACLs.



**Note** If an ACL configuration cannot be implemented in the hardware due to an out-of-resource condition on the controller, then only the traffic in that VLAN arriving on that controller is affected.

When you enter the **show ip access-lists** privileged EXEC command, the match count displayed does not account for packets that are access controlled in hardware. Use the  privileged EXEC command to obtain some basic hardware ACL statistics for switched and routed packets.

# IPv4 ACL Interface Considerations

For inbound ACLs, after receiving a packet, the controller checks the packet against the ACL. If the ACL permits the packet, the controller continues to process the packet. If the ACL rejects the packet, the controller discards the packet.

For outbound ACLs, after receiving and routing a packet to a controlled interface, the controller checks the packet against the ACL. If the ACL permits the packet, the controller sends the packet. If the ACL rejects the packet, the controller discards the packet.

If an undefined ACL has nothing listed in it, it is an empty access list.

# Restrictions for Configuring IPv4 Access Control Lists

The following are restrictions for configuring network security with ACLs:

### General Network Security

The following are restrictions for configuring network security with ACLs:

- A standard ACL and an extended ACL cannot have the same name.
- Though visible in the command-line help strings, **AppleTalk** is not supported as a matching condition for the **deny** and **permit** MAC access-list configuration mode commands.
- DNS traffic is permitted by default with or without ACL entries for clients that are awaiting web authentication.

### IP Access List Entry Sequence Numbering

- This feature does not support dynamic, reflexive, or firewall access lists.

# How to Configure ACLs

## Configuring IPv4 ACLs (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **ACL**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** dialog box, enter the following parameters.

- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL.
- **ACL Type:** IPv4 Standard.
- **Sequence:** Enter the sequence number.
- **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** the packet flow from the drop-down list.
- **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** from which the packet is sent.
- **Log:** Enable or disable logging.

**Step 4** Click **Add**.

**Step 5** Add the rest of the rules and click **Apply to Device**.

## Configuring IPv4 ACLs

Follow the procedure given below to use IP ACLs on the switch:

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Create an ACL by specifying an access list number or name and the access conditions.

**Step 2** Apply the ACL to interfaces or terminal lines..

## Creating a Numbered Standard ACL (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **ACL**.

**Step 2** On the **ACL** page, click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** window, enter the following parameters.

- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL.
- **ACL Type:** IPv4 Standard.
- **Sequence:** Enter the sequence number.
- **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** access from the drop-down list.
- **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network**
- **Log:** Enable or disable logging, this is limited to ACLs associated to Layer 3 interface only.

**Step 4** Click **Add**.

**Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Creating a Numbered Standard ACL (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to create a numbered standard ACL:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **access-list** *access-list-number* {**deny** \| **permit**} *source source-wildcard* ]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# access-list 2 deny your_host` | Defines a standard IPv4 access list by using a source address and wildcard.<br>The *access-list-number* is a decimal number from 1 to 99 or 1300 to 1999.<br>Enter **deny** or **permit** to specify whether to deny or permit access if conditions are matched.<br>The *source* is the source address of the network or host from which the packet is being sent specified as: |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | • The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format.<br>• The keyword **any** as an abbreviation for *source* and *source-wildcard* of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255. You do not need to enter a source-wildcard.<br>• The keyword **host** as an abbreviation for source and *source-wildcard* of *source* 0.0.0.0.<br>(Optional) The *source-wildcard* applies wildcard bits to the source.<br>**Note** Logging is supported only on ACLs attached to Layer 3 interfaces. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 5** | **show running-config**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show running-config` | Verifies your entries. |
| **Step 6** | **copy running-config startup-config**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# copy running-config startup-config` | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. |

# Creating a Numbered Extended ACL (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **ACL**.

**Step 2** On the **ACL** page, click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** window, enter the following parameters.

- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL.

- **ACL Type:** IPv4 Extended.
- **Sequence:** Enter the sequence number.
- **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** the packet flow from the drop-down list.
- **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** from which the packet is sent.
- **Destination Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** to which the packet is sent.
- **Protocol:** Choose a protocol from the drop-down list.
- **Log:** Enable or disable logging.
- **DSCP:** Enter to match packets with the DSCP value

**Step 4** Click **Add**.

**Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Creating a Numbered Extended ACL (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to create a numbered extended ACL:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **access-list** *access-list-number* {**deny** \| **permit**} *protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard* [**precedence** *precedence*] [**tos** tos] [**fragments**] [**time-range** *time-range-name*] [**dscp** *dscp*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# access-list 101 permit ip host 10.1.1.2 any precedence 0 tos 0 log` | Defines an extended IPv4 access list and the access conditions.<br>The *access-list-number* is a decimal number from 100 to 199 or 2000 to 2699.<br>Enter **deny** or **permit** to specify whether to deny or permit the packet if conditions are matched.<br>For *protocol*, enter the name or number of an P protocol: **ahp**, **eigrp**, **esp**, **gre**, **icmp**, **igmp**, **igrp**, **ip**, **ipinip**, **nos**, **ospf**, **pcp**, **pim**, **tcp**, or **udp**, or an integer in the range 0 to 255 representing an IP protocol number. To match any Internet protocol (including ICMP, TCP, and UDP), use the keyword **ip**.<br>**Note** |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | This step includes options for most IP protocols. For additional specific parameters for TCP, UDP, ICMP, and IGMP, see the following steps.<br><br>The *source* is the number of the network or host from which the packet is sent.<br><br>The *source-wildcard* applies wildcard bits to the source.<br><br>The *destination* is the network or host number to which the packet is sent.<br><br>The *destination-wildcard* applies wildcard bits to the destination.<br><br>Source, source-wildcard, destination, and destination-wildcard can be specified as:<br><br>• The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format.<br><br>• The keyword **any** for 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 (any host).<br><br>• The keyword **host** for a single host 0.0.0.0.<br><br>The other keywords are optional and have these meanings:<br><br>• **precedence**—Enter to match packets with a precedence level specified as a number from 0 to 7 or by name: **routine** (0), **priority** (1), **immediate** (2), **flash** (3), **flash-override** (4), **critical** (5), **internet** (6), **network** (7).<br><br>• **fragments**—Enter to check non-initial fragments.<br><br>• **tos**—Enter to match by type of service level, specified by a number from 0 to 15 or a name: **normal** (0), **max-reliability** (2), **max-throughput** (4), **min-delay** (8).<br><br>• **time-range**—Specify the time-range name.<br><br>• **dscp**—Enter to match packets with the DSCP value specified by a number from 0 to 63, or use the question mark (?) to see a list of available values.<br><br>**Note** |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | Your embedded controller must support the ability to:<br>• Mark DCSP<br>• Mark UP<br>• Map DSCP and UP<br>For more information on **DSCP-to-UP Mapping**, see:<br>https://tools.ietf.org/html/draft-ietf-tsvwg-ieee-802-11-01<br>**Note** If you enter a **dscp** value, you cannot enter **tos** or **precedence**. You can enter both a **tos** and a **precedence** value with no **dscp**. |
| **Step 3** | **access-list** *access-list-number* {**deny** \| **permit**} **tcp** *source source-wildcard* [*operator port*] *destination destination-wildcard* [*operator port*] [**precedence** *precedence*] [**tos** *tos*] [**fragments**] [**time-range** *time-range-name*] [**dscp** *dscp*] [*flag*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# access-list 101 permit tcp any any eq 500` | Defines an extended TCP access list and the access conditions.<br>The parameters are the same as those described for an extended IPv4 ACL, with these exceptions:<br>(Optional) Enter an *operator* and *port* to compare source (if positioned after *source source-wildcard*) or destination (if positioned after *destination destination-wildcard*) port. Possible operators include **eq** (equal), **gt** (greater than), **lt** (less than), **neq** (not equal), and **range** (inclusive range). Operators require a port number (range requires two port numbers separated by a space).<br>Enter the *port* number as a decimal number (from 0 to 65535) or the name of a TCP port. Use only TCP port numbers or names when filtering TCP.<br>The other optional keywords have these meanings:<br>• *flag*—Enter one of these flags to match by the specified TCP header bits: **ack** (acknowledge), **fin** (finish), **psh** (push), **rst** (reset), **syn** (synchronize), or **urg** (urgent). |
| **Step 4** | **access-list** *access-list-number* {**deny** \| **permit**} **udp** *source source-wildcard* [*operator port*] | (Optional) Defines an extended UDP access list and the access conditions. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | *destination destination-wildcard* [*operator port*] [**precedence** *precedence*] [**tos** *tos*] [**fragments**] [**time-range** *time-range-name*] [**dscp** *dscp*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# access-list 101 permit udp any any eq 100` | The UDP parameters are the same as those described for TCP except that the [operator [port]] port number or name must be a UDP port number or name, and the **flag** not valid for UDP. |
| **Step 5** | **access-list** *access-list-number* {**deny** \| **permit**} **icmp** *source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard* [*icmp-type* \| [[*icmp-type icmp-code*] \| [*icmp-message*]] [**precedence** *precedence*] [**tos** *tos*] [**fragments**] [**time-range** *time-range-name*] [**dscp** *dscp*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# access-list 101 permit icmp any any 200` | Defines an extended ICMP access list and the access conditions.<br>The ICMP parameters are the same as those described for most IP protocols in an extended IPv4 ACL, with the addition of the ICMP message type and code parameters. These optional keywords have these meanings:<br>• *icmp-type*—Enter to filter by ICMP message type, a number from 0 to 255.<br>• *icmp-code*—Enter to filter ICMP packets that are filtered by the ICMP message code type, a number from 0 to 255.<br>• *icmp-message*—Enter to filter ICMP packets by the ICMP message type name or the ICMP message type and code name. |
| **Step 6** | **access-list** *access-list-number* {**deny** \| **permit**} **igmp** *source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard* [*igmp-type*] [**precedence** *precedence*] [**tos** *tos*] [**fragments**] [**time-range** *time-range-name*] [**dscp** *dscp*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# access-list 101 permit igmp any any 14` | (Optional) Defines an extended IGMP access list and the access conditions.<br>The IGMP parameters are the same as those described for most IP protocols in an extended IPv4 ACL, with this optional parameter.<br>*igmp-type*—To match IGMP message type, enter a number from 0 to 15, or enter the message name: **dvmrp**, **host-query**, **host-report**, **pim**, or **trace**. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Creating Named Standard ACLs (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Click **Configuration** > **Security** > **ACL**.

**Step 2** Click **Add** to create a new ACL setup.

**Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** window, enter the following parameters.

- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL
- **ACL Type:** IPv4 Standard
- **Sequence:** The valid range is between 1 and 99 or 1300 and 1999
- **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** access from the drop-down list.
- **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network**
- **Log:** Enable or disable logging, this is limited to ACLs associated to Layer 3 interface only.

**Step 4** Click **Add** to add the rule.

**Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Creating Named Standard ACLs

Follow the procedure given below to create a standard ACL using names:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **ip access-list standard** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip access-list standard` | Defines a standard IPv4 access list using a name, and enter access-list configuration mode.<br>The name can be a number from 1 to 99. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `20` | |
| **Step 4** | Use one of the following:<br>• **deny** {*source* [*source-wildcard*] \| **host** *source* \| **any**} [**log**]<br>• **permit** {*source* [*source-wildcard*] \| **host** *source* \| **any**} [**log**]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-std-nacl)# deny 192.168.0.0 0.0.255.255 255.255.0.0 0.0.255.255`<br>or<br>`Device(config-std-nacl)# permit 10.108.0.0 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.0 0.0.0.0` | In access-list configuration mode, specify one or more conditions denied or permitted to decide if the packet is forwarded or dropped.<br>• **host** *source*—A source and source wildcard of *source* 0.0.0.0.<br>• **any**—A source and source wildcard of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-std-nacl)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 6** | **show running-config**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show running-config` | Verifies your entries. |
| **Step 7** | **copy running-config startup-config**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# copy running-config startup-config` | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. |

# Creating Extended Named ACLs (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **ACL**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** window, enter the following parameters.

- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL.
- **ACL Type:** IPv4 Extended.
- **Sequence:** Enter the sequence number.
- **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** the packet flow from the drop-down list.
- **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** from which the packet is sent.
- **Destination Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** to which the packet is sent.
- **Protocol:** Choose a protocol from the drop-down list.
- **Log:** Enable or disable logging.
- **DSCP:** Enter to match packets with the DSCP value

**Step 4** Click **Add**.

**Step 5** Add the rest of the rules and click **Apply to Device**.

# Creating Extended Named ACLs

Follow the procedure given below to create an extended ACL using names:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **ip access-list extended** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip access-list extended 150` | Defines an extended IPv4 access list using a name, and enter access-list configuration mode.<br>The name can be a number from 100 to 199. |
| **Step 4** | {**deny** \| **permit**} *protocol* {*source* [*source-wildcard*] \| **host** *source* \| **any**} | In access-list configuration mode, specify the conditions allowed or denied. Use the **log** |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | {*destination* [*destination-wildcard*] \| host *destination* \| **any**} [**precedence** *precedence*] [**tos** *tos*] [**log**] [**time-range** *time-range-name*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit 0 any any` | keyword to get access list logging messages, including violations.<br>• **host** *source*—A source and source wildcard of *source* 0.0.0.0.<br>• **host** *destintation*—A destination and destination wildcard of *destination* 0.0.0.0.<br>• **any**—A source and source wildcard or destination and destination wildcard of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ext-nacl)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 6** | **show running-config**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show running-config` | Verifies your entries. |
| **Step 7** | **copy running-config startup-config**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# copy running-config startup-config` | (Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file. |

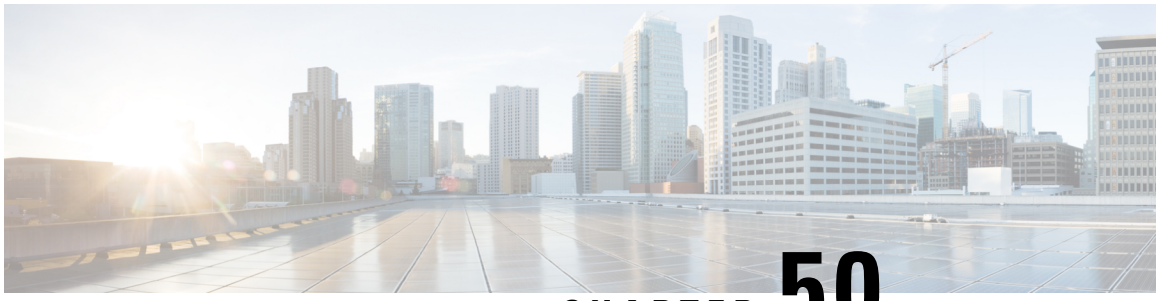
When you are creating extended ACLs, remember that, by default, the end of the ACL contains an implicit deny statement for everything if it did not find a match before reaching the end. For standard ACLs, if you omit the mask from an associated IP host address access list specification, 0.0.0.0 is assumed to be the mask.

After you create an ACL, any additions are placed at the end of the list. You cannot selectively add ACL entries to a specific ACL. However, you can use **no permit** and **no deny** access-list configuration mode commands to remove entries from a named ACL.

Being able to selectively remove lines from a named ACL is one reason you might use named ACLs instead of numbered ACLs.

### What to do next

After creating a named ACL, you can apply it to interfaces or to VLANs.



CHAPTER 50

# DNS-Based Access Control Lists


- Information About DNS-Based Access Control Lists, on page 393
- Restrictions on DNS-Based Access Control Lists, on page 395
- Flex Mode, on page 396
- Viewing DNS-Based Access Control Lists, on page 399


## Information About DNS-Based Access Control Lists

The DNS-based ACLs are used for wireless client devices. When using these devices, you can set pre-authentication ACLs on the embedded wireless controller to determine the data requests that are allowed or blocked.

To enable DNS-based ACLs on the embedded wireless controller, you need to configure the allowed URLs or denied URLs for the ACLs. The URLs need to be pre-configured on the ACL.

With DNS-based ACLs, the client when in registration phase is allowed to connect to the configured URLs. The embedded wireless controller is configured with the ACL name that is returned by the AAA server. If the ACL name is returned by the AAA server, then the ACL is applied to the client for web-redirection.

At the client authentication phase, the AAA server returns the pre-authentication ACL (url-redirect-acl, which is the attribute name given to the AAA server). The DNS snooping is performed on the AP for each client until the registration is complete and the client is in SUPPLICANT PROVISIONING state. When the ACL configured with the URLs is received on the embedded wireless controller, the CAPWAP payload is sent to the AP enabling DNS snooping for the URLs to be snooped.

With URL snooping in place, the AP learns the IP address of the resolved domain name in the DNS response. If the domain name matches the configured URL, then the DNS response is parsed for the IP address. The AP adds the IP address to the allowed list of IP addresses and thus the client can access the URLs configured.

During pre-authentication or post-authentication, DNS ACL is applied to the client in the access point. If the client roams from one AP to another AP, the DNS learned IP addresses on the old AP is valid on the new AP as well.

This feature supports:

- A maximum of 32 URL lists.
- A maximum of 32 URLs per URL list.
- Up to 30 IP addresses per URL.

- A maximum of 16 URL lists with wild-cards.
- A maximum of 10 URLs per wild-card URL.

**Note** When configuring wild-card based URLs, generic wild-card URLs are not allowed; wild-cards cannot be present between the domain name; multiple wild-cards are not allowed in a URL. Wild-card specification in a URL can only be at a third-degree level or a higher level.

**Note** Conflicting or invalid configurations are not allowed. The same URL cannot have different actions. For example, Deny and Allow cannot be configured on www.yahoo.com.

**Note** URL filter needs to be attached to a policy profile in case of the local mode. In the flex mode, the URL filter is attached to the flex profile and it is not need to be attached to a policy profile.

**Note** DNS based URLs work with active DNS query from the client. Hence, for URL filtering, the DNS should be setup correctly.

**Note** URL filter takes precedence over punt or redirect ACL, and over custom or static pre-auth ACL.s

# FlexConnect in Embedded Wireless Controller

FlexConnect is a wireless solution for branch office and remote office deployments. It enables customers to configure and control access points in a branch or remote office from the corporate office through a wide area network (WAN) link without deploying a embedded wireless controller in each branch office.

The FlexConnect access points can switch client data traffic locally while carrying the authentication centrally. Also, FlexConnect APs perform client authentication locally when their connection to the controller is lost. When they are connected back to the controller, they can also send authentication/policy details back to the embedded wireless controller.

The embedded wireless controller network comprises of at least one 802.11ax Wave 2 Cisco Aironet Series access point (AP) with a software-based embedded wireless controller managing other APs in the network. The AP acting as the embedded wireless controller is referred to as the primary AP while the other APs in the network, which are managed by this primary AP, are referred to as subordinate APs. In addition to acting as an embedded wireless controller, the primary AP also operates as an AP to serve clients along with the subordinate APs.

Pre-Auth DNS ACL feature is also known as Walled Garden feature. The walled garden is a list of web sites or domains that you can visit without being authenticated. DNS snooping is performed on the AP for each client and configured rule is applied to client traffic after matching the Source or Destination IP.

# Roaming

During Roaming, the support clients roam from one AP to the other using the existing roaming support. DNS ACLs are retained at the target AP even after roaming. For Roaming with DNS Pre-Auth ACL and Post-Auth ACL, the target AP learns the client-resolved IP from the serving AP.

# Restrictions on DNS-Based Access Control Lists

The restriction for DNS-based ACLs is as follows:

- Only supported for FlexConnect local switching APs with Central Authorization.
- Post-Auth DNS based ACL is not supported for FlexConnect with local Authorization when AP is in FlexConnect local switching mode.
- Fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or DNS based ACLs are not supported on Cisco Wave 1 Access Points.
- The URL filter considers only the first 20 URLs, though you can add more.
- The URL filter employs regular regex patterns and permits wildcard characters only at the beginning or at the end of an URL.
- The URL ACLs are defined and added to the FlexConnect policy profile in which they associate with a WLAN. The URL ACL creation follows a similar mechanism as that of local mode URL ACLs.
- In FlexConnect mode, the URL domain ACL works only if they are connected to a FlexConnect policy profile.
- The ACL can be attached to a WLAN by associating a policy profile with a WLAN or local policies. However, you can override it using "url-redirect-acl".
- For the Cisco AV pair received from ISE, the policy that needs to be applied for a particular client is pushed as part of ADD MOBILE

  message.
- When an AP joins or when an existing URL ACL is modified and applied on FlexConnect profile, the ACL definition along with mapped URL filter list is pushed to the AP.
- The AP stores the URL ACL definition with mapped ACL name and snoops the DNS packets for learning the first IP address for each URL in the ACL. When the AP learns the IP addresses, it updates the controller of the URL and IP bindings. The controller records this information in the client database for future use.
- When a client roams to another AP during the pre-authentication state, the learned IP addresses are pushed to a new AP. Otherwise, these learned IP addresses are purged when a client moves to a post-authentication state or when the TTL for the learned IP address expires.
-

# Flex Mode

## Configuring the URL Filter List (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile flex** *custom-flex-profile*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile flex custom-flex-profile` | Configures a wireless flex profile and enters wireless flex profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **acl-policy** *acl-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)#acl-policy acl-policy-name` | Configures the ACL policy description |
| **Step 4** | **urlfilter list** *url-filterlist-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# urlfilter list url-filterlist-name` | Configures and applies the name of the URL filter list to the flex profile.<br>This is the Flex URL filter configuration command for ACL binding. |

## Configuring the URL Filter List (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **URL Filters**.
The **URL Filters** page is displayed.

**Step 2** Click the **Add** button.
The **Add URL Filters** window is displayed.

**Step 3** From the **Type** drop-down list, choose either **PRE-AUTH** or **POST-AUTH**.

a) **POST-AUTH**: Specify the **Redirect Servers** for **IPv4** and **IPv6**.

**Step 4** Use the slider to **Permit** or **Deny** the **Action**.

**Step 5** Specify the URLs in the **URLs** field. Enter every URL on a new line.

**Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Applying Custom Pre-Auth DNS ACL on WLAN

For pre-auth, this configuration should be on a web-auth WLAN.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan***wlan-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-name wlan-id ssid-name` | Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.<br>1. wlan-name — Enter the profile name. The range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>2. wlan-id—Enter the WLANID. The range is from 1 to 512.<br>3. SSID-name—Enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) for this WLAN. If the SSID is not specified, the WLAN profile name is set as the SSID. If you have already configured WLAN, enter wlan wlan-name command. |
| **Step 3** | **ip access-group web** *access-list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)#ip access-group web preauth-acl-wlan` | Maps the ACL to the web auth WLAN. access-list-name is the IPv4 ACL name or ID. |

# Applying Custom Post-Auth DNS ACL on Policy Profile

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **Wireless profile policy** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy custom-policy-profile` | Creates policy profile for the WLAN. |
| **Step 3** | {**ipv4** \| **ipv6**} **acl** *post-acl-name*<br>**Example:** | Creates ACL configuration for wireless IPv4 or IPv6 configuration. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wireless-policy)#ipv4 acl post-acl` | |

# Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication (GUI)

Perform the following steps to configure ISE for Central Web Authentication.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).

**Step 2** Click **Policy** and then click **Policy Elements**.

**Step 3** Click **Results**.

**Step 4** Expand **Authorization** and click **Authorization Profiles**.

**Step 5** Click **Add** to create a new authorization profile for URL filter.

**Step 6** Enter a name for the profile in the **Name** field. For example, CentralWebauth.

**Step 7** Choose **ACCESS_ACCEPT** option from the **Access Type** drop-down list.

**Step 8** Alternatively, in the **Common Tasks** section, check **Web Redirection**..

**Step 9** Choose the **Centralized Web Auth** option from the drop-down list.

**Step 10** Specify the ACL and choose the ACL value from the drop-down list.

**Step 11** In the **Advanced Attributes Setting** section, choose **Cisco:cisco-av-pair** from the drop-down list.

**Note**
Multiple ACL can be applied on the controller based on priority. In L2 Auth + webauth multi-auth scenario, if the ISE returns ACL during L2 Auth then ISE ACL takes precedence over the default webauth redirect ACL. This leads to traffic running in webauth pending state, if ISE ACL has permit rule. To avoid this scenario, you need to set the precedence for L2 Auth ISE returned ACL. The default webauth redirect ACL priority is 100. To avoid traffic issue, you need to configure the redirect ACL priority above 100 for ACL returned by ISE.

**Step 12** Enter the following one by one and click (+) icon after each of them:

- url-redirect-acl=<sample_name>
- url-redirect=<sample_redirect_URL>

  For example,

```
Cisco:cisco-av-pair = priv-lvl=15
Cisco:cisco-av-pair = url-redirect-acl=ACL-REDIRECT2
Cisco:cisco-av-pair = url-redirect=
https://9.10.8.247:port/portal/gateway?
sessionId=SessionIdValue&portal=0ce17ad0-6d90-11e5-978e-005056bf2f0a&daysToExpiry=value&action=cwa
```

**Step 13** Verify contents in the **Attributes Details** section and click **Save**.

# Viewing DNS-Based Access Control Lists

To view the URL Lists, use the following command:

```
Device #show wireless urlacl-enhanced summary
URL-List
--------------------------------
urllist_ut
urllist_max1
urllist_max2
urllist_max3
urllist_max4
urllist_max5
```

To view the details of a particular URL List, use the following command:

```
Device#show wireless urlacl-enhanced details urllist_ut
List Name..................... : urllist_ut
Configured List of URLs
URL                  Preference Action Validity Invalidated URL
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
url1.dns.com         1                PERMIT         VALID 0
url2.dns.com         2                DENY           VALID 0
url3.dns.com         3                PERMIT         VALID 0
url4.dns.com         4                DENY           VALID 0
url11.dns.com        6                DENY           VALID 0
url12.dns.com        7                PERMIT         VALID 0
url13.dns.com        8                DENY           VALID 0
www.example.com      14               PERMIT         VALID 0
```

To view the flex profile details, use the following command:

```
Device# sh wireless profile flex detailed custom-flex-profile
Flex Profile Name : custom-flex-profile
Description : custom flex profile
Local Auth :
        AP:
                Radius Enable            : ENABLED
                PEAP                     : DISABLED
                LEAP                     : DISABLED
                TLS                      : DISABLED
                EAP fast profile         : Not Configured
                User List                : Not Configured
        RADIUS:
                RADIUS server group name : Not Configured
        Fallback Radio shut              : DISABLED
        ARP caching                      : ENABLED
        Efficient Image Upgrade          : ENABLED
        OfficeExtend AP                  : DISABLED
        Join min latency                 : DISABLED
        Policy ACL :
                ACL Name                          URL Filter List
        Name                 Central Webauth
        ------------------------------------------------------------
        post-acl               urllist_ut        DISABLED
        pre_v4              urllist_pre_cwa   DISABLED
        ACL-REDIRECTTTTTTT2     urllist_ut        DISABLED
        VLAN Name - VLAN ID mapping       : Not Configured
```

To view client details, use the following command:

```
Device#sh wireless client mac-address <Mac-address> detail
```

### Verifying the Access Point

To view the ACL configuration on the AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip access-lists
Extended IP access list pre_v4
        1 permit udp any range 0 65535 any eq 53
        2 permit tcp any range 0 65535 any eq 53
        3 permit udp any dhcp_server any range 0 65535
        4 permit udp any range 0 65535 any eq 68
        5 permit udp any dhcp_client any range 0 65535
        6 deny ip any any
```

To view the URL List configuration, use the following command:

```
Device#show flexconnect url-acl
ACL-NAME         ACTION         URL-LIST
pre_v4
                 allow          test.dns.com
                 allow          url2.dns.com
                 allow          url3.dns.com
                 allow          url10.dns.com
                 allow          url11.dns.com
                 allow          www.cwapre.com
                 allow          www.google.com
                 allow          oldconfig.dns.com
                 allow          *.cisco.com
```

To view pre-auth client configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show client access-lists pre-auth all C0:C1:C0:70:58:2F
Pre-Auth URL ACLs for Client: C0:C1:C0:70:58:2F
IPv4 ACL: pre_v4
IPv6 ACL:
ACTION         URL-LIST
allow          url1.dns.com
deny           url2.dns.com
allow          url3.dns.com
deny           url4.dns.com
allow          www.example.com
deny           url11.dns.com
allow          url12.dns.com
deny           url13.dns.com

Resolved IPs for Client: C0:C1:C0:70:58:2F
HIT-COUNT         URL         ACTION         IP-LIST
post-acl
        rule 0:   allow true
No IPv6 ACL found
```

To view post-auth client configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show client access-lists post-auth all C0:C1:C0:70:58:2F
Post-Auth URL ACLs for Client: C0:C1:C0:70:58:2F
IPv4 ACL: post-acl
IPv6 ACL:
ACTION         URL-LIST
allow          url1.dns.com
deny           url2.dns.com
allow          url3.dns.com
deny           url4.dns.com
allow          www.example.com
deny           url11.dns.com
allow          url12.dns.com
deny           url13.dns.com
```

```
Resolved IPs for Client: C0:C1:C0:70:58:2F
HIT-COUNT         URL         ACTION         IP-LIST
post-acl
        rule 0: allow true
No IPv6 ACL found
```

To view the IPs learnt in pre-auth, use the following command:

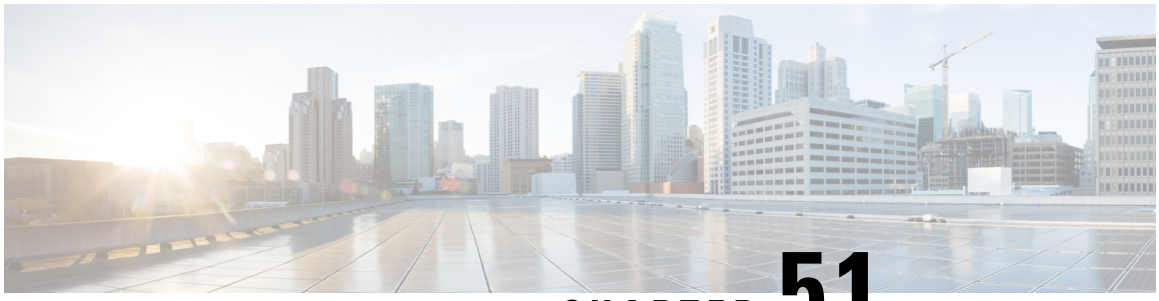
```
Device#show client access-lists pre-auth all 60:14:B3:AA:C6:FB
Pre-Auth URL ACLs for Client: 60:14:B3:AA:C6:FB
IPv4 ACL: acl_1
IPv6 ACL:
ACTION         URL-LIST
allow          url1.dns.com
deny           url2.dns.com

Resolved IPs for Client: 60:14:B3:AA:C5:FB
HIT-COUNT         URL                ACTION         IP-LIST
10                url1.dns.com       allow          9.10.8.1
```

To view the IPs learnt in post-auth, use the following command:

```
Device#show client access-lists post-auth all 60:14:B3:AA:C6:FB
Post-Auth URL ACLs for Client: 60:14:B3:AA:C5:FB
IPv4 ACL: post_acl
IPv6 ACL:
ACTION         URL-LIST
deny           url1.dns.com
allow          url2.dns.com

Resolved IPs for Client: 60:14:B3:AA:C5:FB
HIT-COUNT         URL                ACTION         IP-LIST
16                url2.dns.com       allow          9.10.9.1
postauth_acl
          rule 0: allow true
```



CHAPTER 51

# Downloadable ACL


- Feature History for Downloadable ACL, on page 403
- Information About Downloadable ACL, on page 403
- Guidelines and Restrictions for Downloadable ACL, on page 404
- Configuring dACL Name and Definition in Cisco ISE, on page 404
- Configuring dACL in a Controller (CLI), on page 404
- Configuring Explicit Authorization Server List (CLI), on page 405
- Verifying dACL Configuration, on page 406


## Feature History for Downloadable ACL

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 26: Feature History for Downloadable ACL***

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1 | Downloadable ACL | The Downloadable ACL (dACL) feature defines and updates access control lists (ACLs) in one place (Cisco ISE) and allows ACL download to all the applicable controllers.<br><br>In Cisco IOS-XE 17.8 and earlier releases, you had to configure the name in Cisco ISE and define the ACL individually in each of the controllers. |

## Information About Downloadable ACL

ACLs are used to restrict network access to some users or devices based on predefined criteria. These criteria are specified as a list of Access Control Entries (ACEs).

Each ACE has a matching condition based on packet header fields as follows:

- IP addresses

- ports
- protocols
- combination of IP addresses, ports, and protocols
- Result (permit or deny)

ACLs are applied to a controller on a per wireless client basis. Typically, you can configure ACLs in a controller itself. However, you can also configure ACLs to a connected Cisco ISE server and download them to the controller when a wireless client joins. Such ACLs are referred to as downloadable ACLs, per-user Dynamic ACLs, or dACLs.

Downloadable ACLs are easy to maintain because they define or update ACLs in Cisco ISE and can be downloaded to all the applicable controllers. (In Cisco IOS-XE 17.8 and earlier releases, you had to configure the name in Cisco ISE and define the ACL individually in each of the controllers.)

## Scale Considerations for Downloadable ACL

The following table provides the ACL scale numbers for controllers.

***Table 27: ACL Scale for Controllers***

| Controllers | ACL Scale |
|---|---|
| Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller (small or medium) | Supports 128 ACLs with 128 ACEs. |
| Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller (large) | Supports 256 ACLs and 256 ACEs. |

# Guidelines and Restrictions for Downloadable ACL

- dACL does not support FlexConnect local switching.
- IPv6 dACLs are supported only in Cisco ISE 3.0 or a later release.

# Configuring dACL Name and Definition in Cisco ISE

Before you configure a dACL in a controller, you must configure the dACL name and definition in Cisco ISE. For more information, see Configure Per-User Dynamic Access Control Lists in ISE.

# Configuring dACL in a Controller (CLI)

### Before you begin

- You should have configured the RADIUS server.

- You should have configured the **aaa-override** command in the policy profile. For more information, see **Configuring AAA for Local Authentication (CLI)**.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy named-policy-profile_4` | Configures the wireless profile policy. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa-override**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override` | Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the Cisco ISE servers. |
| **Step 4** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Enables the profile policy. |

# Configuring Explicit Authorization Server List (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **radius server** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius server Test-SERVER2` | Specifies the RADIUS server name. |
| **Step 3** | **address ipv4** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 124.3.52.62` | Specifies the RADIUS server parameters. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **pac key** *key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# pack key cisco` | Specify the authorization and encryption key used between the Device and the key string RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. |
| **Step 5** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# exit` | Returns to the configuration mode. |
| **Step 6** | **aaa group server radius** *server-group-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa group server radius authz-server-group` | Creates a radius server-group identification.<br>**Note**<br>*server-group* refers to the server group name. The valid range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. |
| **Step 7** | **aaa authorization network** *authorization-list* **group** *server-group-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa authorization network authZlist group authz-server-group` | Creates an authorization method list for web-based authorization.<br>**Note**<br>You must use the already created authorization method list. |
| **Step 8** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Verifying dACL Configuration

To verify the dACL, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address <client_mac> detail
Local Policies:
   Service Template : wlan_svc_named-policy-profile_1_local (priority 254)
    VLAN             : 16
    Absolute-Timer   : 1800
  Server Policies:
    ACS ACL          : xACSACLx-IP-tftpv4_2-62de6299
    ACS ACL          : xACSACLx-IPV6-tftpv6_2-62de8087
  Resultant Policies:
    ACS ACL          : xACSACLx-IP-tftpv4_2-62de6299
    ACS ACL          : xACSACLx-IPV6-tftpv6_2-62de8087
    VLAN Name        : VLAN0016
    VLAN             : 16
    Absolute-Timer   : 1800
```

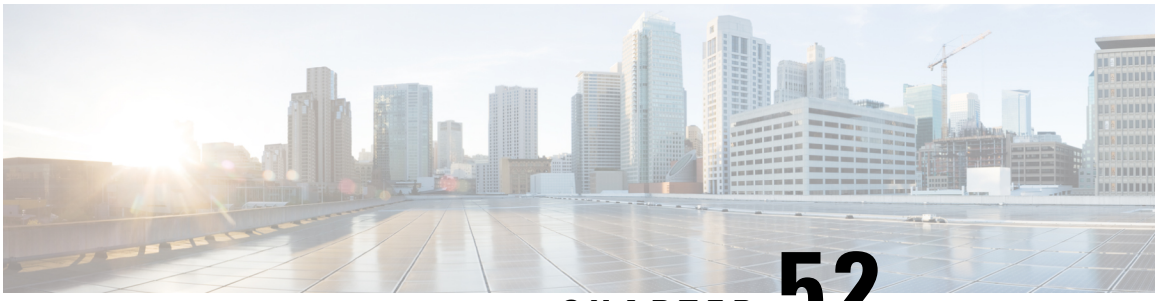
To verify dACLs, use the following commands:

```
Device# show ip access-lists xACSACLx-IP-tftpv4_2-62de6299
Extended IP access list xACSACLx-IP-tftpv4_2-62de6299
    1 deny ip any host 9.8.29.13
    2 permit ip any any (58 matches)
```

```
Device# show ipv6 access-list xACSACLx-IPV6-tftpv6_2-62de8087
IPv6 access list xACSACLx-IPV6-tftpv6_2-62de8087
    deny ipv6 any host 2001:9:8:29:3AAD:A27A:973A:97CC sequence 1
    permit ipv6 any any (2 matches) sequence 2
```

To view all the downloaded dACLs, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip access-lists
```



CHAPTER 52

# Allowed List of Specific URLs


- Allowed List of Specific URLs, on page 409
- Adding URL to Allowed List, on page 409
- Portal Resolving to Multiple IP Addresses, on page 410
- Verifying URLs on the Allowed List, on page 411


## Allowed List of Specific URLs

This feature helps you to add specific URLs to allowed list on the embedded wireless controller or the AP so that those specific URLs are available for use, even when there is no connectivity to the internet. You can add URLs to allowed list for web authentication of captive portal and walled garden. Authentication is not required to access the allowed list of URLs. When you try to access sites that are not in allowed list, you are redirected to the Login page.

## Adding URL to Allowed List

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **urlfilter list** *<urlfilter-name>*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# urlfilter list url-allowedlist-nbn` | Configures the URL filter profile. |
| **Step 3** | **action** [**deny** \| **permit**]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-urlfilter-params)# action permit` | Configures the list as allowed list. The **permit** command configures the list as allowed list and the **deny** command configures the list as blocked list. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | {**redirect-server-ipv4** \| **redirect-server-ipv6**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-urlfilter-params)# redirect-server-ipv4 X.X.X.X` | Configures the IP address of the redirect servers to which the user requests will be redirected in case of denied requests. |
| **Step 5** | **url** *url-to-be-allowed*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-urlfilter-params)# url www.cisco.com` | Configures the URL to be allowed. |

**Note** **redirect-server-ipv4** and **redirect-server-ipv6** is applicable only in the local mode, specifically in post-authentication. For any further tracking or displaying any warning messages, the denied user request is redirected to the configured server.

But the **redirect-server-ipv4** and **redirect-server-ipv6** configurations do not apply to pre-authentication scenario as you will be redirected to the controller for the redirect login URL for any denied access.

You can associate the allowed URL with the ACL policy in flex profile.

### Example

Associating the allowed URL with the ACL policy in flex profile:

```
Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy user_v4_acl
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# urlfilter list url_allowedlist_nbn
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# exit
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# description "default flex profile"

Device(config)# urlfilter enhanced-list urllist_pre_cwa
Device(config-urlfilter-enhanced-params)# url url1.dns.com preference 1 action permit
Device(config-urlfilter-enhanced-params)# url url2.dns.com preference 2 action deny
Device(config-urlfilter-enhanced-params)# url url3.dns.com preference 3 action permit

Device(config)# wlan wlan5 5 wlan5
Device(config-wlan)#ip access-group web user_v4_acl
Device(config-wlan)#no security wpa
Device(config-wlan)#no security wpa
Device(config-wlan)#no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes
Device(config-wlan)#no security wpa akm dot1x
Device(config-wlan)#security web-auth
Device(config-wlan)#security web-auth authentication-list default
Device(config-wlan)#security web-auth parameter-map global
Device(config-wlan)#no shutdown
```

# Portal Resolving to Multiple IP Addresses

The controller uses two IP addresses, and the Web Auth Parameter Map only provides pre-authentication access to a single IP address. When an externally hosted portal resolves to multiple IP addresses (such as

Cisco Spaces resolving to two IP addresses), or, if additional HTTP resources require pre-authentication access, the URL filter must be used. The URL filter permits traffic to the configured URLs by dynamically adding the resolved IP address into intercept (redirect) and security (pre-auth) ACLs. This is achieved by snooping the DNS requests, thus permitting client access.

In a FlexConnect local switching deployment, an additional step is required to ensure that the URL Filter is applied to the client at the AP.

Configuring the Web Auth Parameter Map automatically creates two ACLs:

- a redirect or intercept ACL (WA-v4-int), and
- a security ACL (WA-sec-).

The security ACL permits pre-auth access to HTTP/HTTPS, DNS, DHCP, and so on. It is this ACL that should be applied along with the URL filter on the flex profile for DNS snooping to function properly. Without this step, the AP may fail to dynamically snoop DNS requests and add the appropriate IP addresses to the ACLs, resulting in the client being unable to redirect to the portal page when trying to send a request to the secondary IP address.

Associating the allowed URL with the ACL policy in flex profile:

```
Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy WA-v4-<ip> (security ACL)
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# urlfilter list url_allowedlist_nbn
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# exit
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# description "default flex profile‟
```

# Verifying URLs on the Allowed List

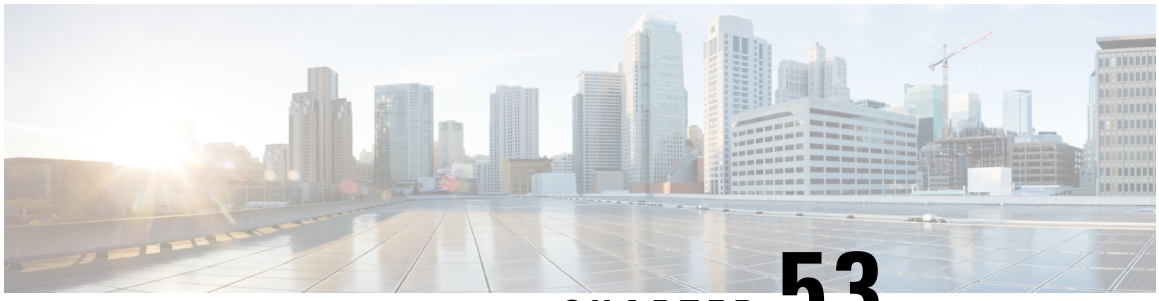
Verify URLs on the Allowed List.

```
Device# show wireless urlfilter summary
Black-list    - DENY
White-list    - PERMIT
Filter-Type   - Specific to Local Mode

URL-List                          ID  Filter-Type  Action   Redirect-ipv4  Redirect-ipv6
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
url-whitelist                     1    PRE-AUTH     PERMIT   1.1.1.1

Device#

Device# show wireless urlfilter details url-whitelist
List Name.................. : url-whitelist
Filter ID.............. : : 1
Filter Type................ : PRE-AUTH
Action..................... : PERMIT
Redirect server ipv4...... : 1.1.1.1
Redirect server ipv6...... :
Configured List of URLs
   URL..................... : www.cisco.com
```



CHAPTER 53

# Web-Based Authentication

This chapter describes how to configure web-based authentication on the device. It contains these sections:


- Authentication Overview, on page 413
- How to Configure Local Web Authentication, on page 421
- Configuration Examples for Local Web Authentication, on page 428
- External Web Authentication (EWA), on page 434
- Authentication for Sleeping Clients, on page 439
- Multi Authentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication, on page 441


## Authentication Overview

Web authentication is a Layer 3 security solution designed for providing easy and secure guest access to hosts on WLAN with open authentication or appropriate layer 2 security methods. Web authentication allows users to get authenticated through a web browser on a wireless client, with minimal configuration on the client side. It allows users to associate with an open SSID without having to set up a user profile. The host receives an IP address and DNS information from the DHCP server, however cannot access any of the network resources until they authenticate successfully. When the host connects to the guest network, the WLC redirects the host to an authentication web page where the user needs to enter valid credentials. The credentials are authenticated by the WLC or an external authentication server and if authenticated successfully is given full access to the network. Hosts can also be given limited access to particular network resources before authentication for which the pre-authentication ACL functionality needs to be configured.

The following are the different types of web authentication methods:

- Local Web Authentication (LWA): Configured as Layer 3 security on the controller, the web authentication page and the pre-authentication ACL are locally configured on the controller. The controller intercepts htttp(s) traffic and redirects the client to the internal web page for authentication. The credentials entered by the client on the login page is authenticated by the controller locally or through a RADIUS or LDAP server.

- External Web Authentication (EWA): Configured as Layer 3 security on the controller, the controller intercepts htttp(s) traffic and redirects the client to the login page hosted on the external web server. The credentials entered by the client on the login page is authenticated by the controller locally or through a RADIUS or LDAP server. The pre-authentication ACL is configured statically on the controller.

- Central Web Authentication (CWA): Configured mostly as Layer 2 security on the controller, the redirection URL and the pre-authentication ACL reside on ISE and are pushed during layer 2 authentication

to the controller. The controller redirects all web traffic from the client to the ISE login page. ISE validates the credentials entered by the client through HTTPS and authenticates the user.

Use the authentication feature, known as web authentication proxy, to authenticate end users on host systems that do not run the IEEE 802.1x supplicant.

When a client initiates an HTTP session, authentication intercepts ingress HTTP packets from the host and sends an HTML login page to the users. The users enter their credentials, which the authentication feature sends to the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server for authentication.

If authentication succeeds, authentication sends a Login-Successful HTML page to the host and applies the access policies returned by the AAA server.

If authentication fails, authentication forwards a Login-Fail HTML page to the user, prompting the user to retry the login. If the user exceeds the maximum number of attempts, authentication forwards a Login-Expired HTML page to the host, and the user is .



**Note** The traceback that you receive when webauth client tries to do authentication does not have any performance or behavioral impact. It happens rarely when the context for which FFM replied back to EPM for ACL application is already dequeued (possibly due to timer expiry) and the session becomes ‘unauthorized’.



**Note** When command authorization is enabled as a part of AAA Authorization configuration through TACACS and the corresponding method list is not configured as a part of the HTTP configuration, WebUI pages will not load any data. However, some wireless feature pages may work as they are privilege based and not command based.

Based on where the web pages are hosted, the local web authentication can be categorized as follows:

- *Internal*—The internal default HTML pages (Login, Success, Fail, and Expire) in the embedded wireless controller are used during the local web authentication.
- *Customized*—The customized web pages (Login, Success, Fail, and Expire) are downloaded onto the embedded wireless controller and used during the local web authentication.
- *External*—The customized web pages are hosted on the external web server instead of using the in-built or custom web pages.

Based on the various web authentication pages, the types of web authentication are as follows:

- *Webauth*—This is a basic web authentication. Herein, the embedded wireless controller presents a policy page with the user name and password. You need to enter the correct credentials to access the network.
- *Consent or web-passthrough*—Herein, the controller presents a policy page with the Accept or Deny buttons. You need to click the Accept button to access the network.
- *Webconsent*—This is a combination of webauth and consent web authentication types. Herein, the embedded wireless controller presents a policy page with Accept or Deny buttons along with user name or password. You need to enter the correct credentials and click the Accept button to access the network.

**Note**

- You can view the webauth parameter-map information using the **show running-config** command output.
- The wireless Web-Authentication feature does not support the bypass type.
- Change in web authentication parameter map redirect login URL does not occur until a AP rejoin happens. You must enable and disable the WLAN to apply the new URL redirection.

**Note** We recommend that you follow the Cisco guidelines to create a customized web authentication login page. If you have upgraded to the latest versions of Google Chrome or Mozilla Firefox browsers, ensure that your webauth bundle has the following line in the *login.html* file:

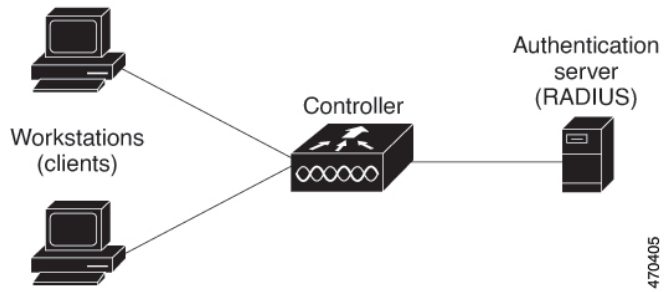
```
<body onload="loadAction();">
```

# Device Roles

With local web authentication, the devices in the network have these specific roles:

- *Client*—The device (workstation) that requests access to the network and the controller and responds to requests from the controller. The workstation must be running an HTML browser with Java Script enabled.
- *Authentication server*—Authenticates the client. The authentication server validates the identity of the client and notifies the controller that the client is authorized to access the network and the controller services or that the client is denied.
- *Controller*—Controls the physical access to the network based on the authentication status of the client. The controller acts as an intermediary (proxy) between the client and the authentication server, requesting identity information from the client, verifying that information with the authentication server, and relaying a response to the client.

***Figure 3: Local Web Authentication Device Roles***




# Authentication Process

When the page is hosted on the controller, the controller uses its virtual IP (a non-routable IP like 192.0.2.1 typically) to serve the request. If the page is hosted externally, the web redirection sends the client first to the virtual IP, which then sends the user again to the external login page while it adds arguments to the URL,

such as the location of the virtual IP. Even when the page is hosted externally, the user submits its credentials to the virtual IP.

When you enable local web authentication, these events occur:

- The user initiates an HTTP session.
- The HTTP traffic is intercepted, and authorization is initiated. The controller sends the login page to the user. The user enters a username and password, and the controller sends the entries to the authentication server.
- If the authentication succeeds, the controller downloads and activates the user's access policy from the authentication server. The login success page is sent to the user.
- If the authentication fails, the controller sends the login fail page. The user retries the login. If the maximum number of attempts fails, the controller sends the login expired page, and the host is placed in a watch list. After the watch list times out, the user can retry the authentication process.
- If authentication server is not available, after the web authentication retries, the client moves to the excluded state and the client receives an Authentication Server is Unavailable page.
- The controller reauthenticates a client when the host does not respond to an ARP probe on a Layer 2 interface, or when the host does not send any traffic within the idle timeout on a Layer 3 interface.
- Web authentication sessions can not apply new VLAN as part of the authorization policy, as the client already has been assigned an IP address and you will not be able to change the IP address in the client, in case the VLAN changes.
- If the terminate action is default, the session is dismantled, and the applied policy is removed.



**Note** Do not use semicolons (;) while configuring username for GUI access.

# Local Web Authentication Banner

With Web Authentication, you can create a default and customized web-browser banners that appears when you log in to the controller.

The banner appears on both the login page and the authentication-result pop-up pages. The default banner messages are as follows:

- *Authentication Successful*
- *Authentication Failed*
- *Authentication Expired*

The Local Web Authentication Banner can be configured as follows:

- Use the following global configuration command:

```
Device(config)# parameter map type webauth global
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# banner ?
file <file-name>
text <Banner text>
title <Banner title>
```

The default banner *Cisco Systems* and *Switch host-name Authentication* appear on the Login Page. *Cisco Systems* appears on the authentication result pop-up page.

***Figure 4: Authentication Successful Banner***




The banner can be customized as follows:

- Add a message, such as switch, router, or company name to the banner:
  - New-style mode—Use the following global configuration command:

    **parameter-map type webauth global**

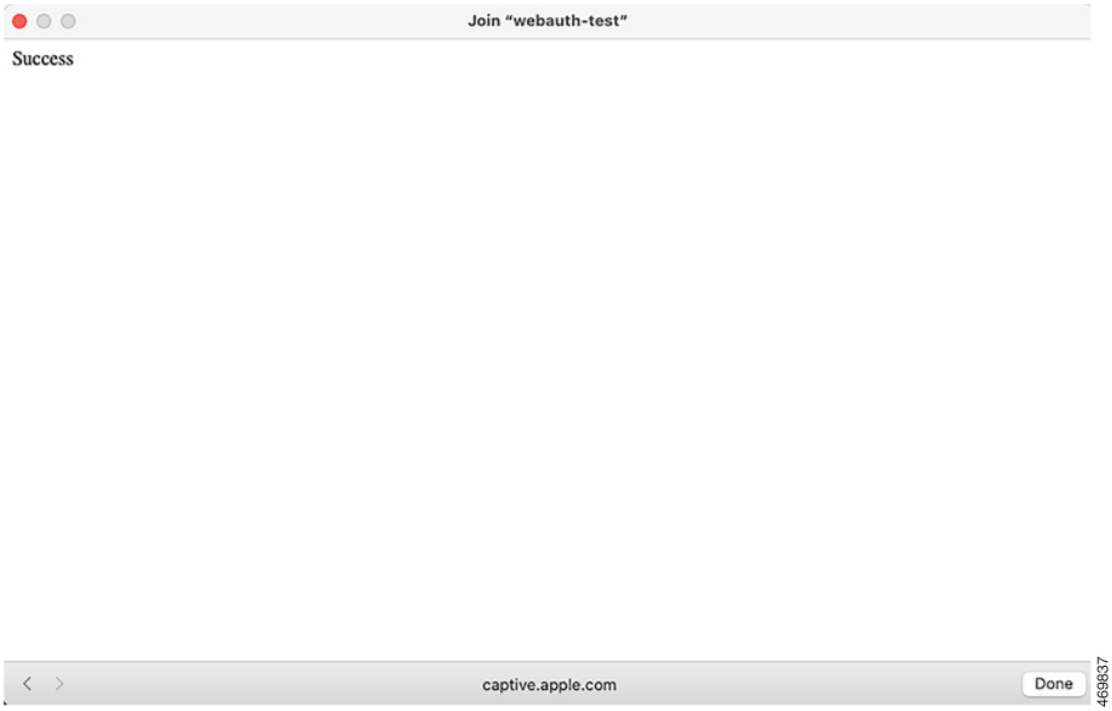
    **banner text <text>**

- Add a logo or text file to the banner:
  - New-style mode—Use the following global configuration command:

    **parameter-map type webauth global**

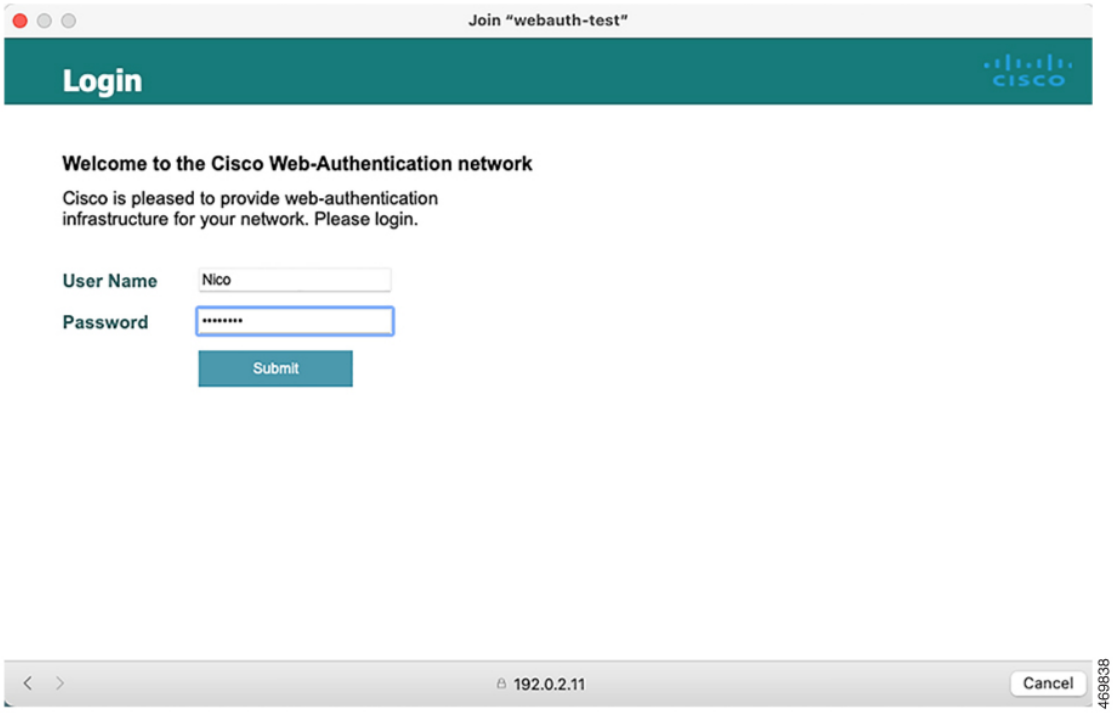
    **banner file <filepath>**

*Figure 5: Customized Web Banner*




If you do not enable a banner, only the username and password dialog boxes appear in the web authentication login screen, and no banner appears when you log into the switch.

*Figure 6: Login Screen With No Banner*




# Customized Local Web Authentication

During the local web authentication process, the switch's internal HTTP server hosts four HTML pages to deliver to an authenticating client. The server uses these pages to notify you of these four authentication process states:

- Login: Your credentials are requested
- Success: The login was successful
- Fail: The login failed
- Expire: The login session has expired because of excessive login failures

**Note** Virtual IP address is mandatory to configure custom web authentication.

From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1, special characters such as *ö* or *à* are supported in the login portal for banner title and banner text. The number of characters supported on the banner text has been doubled to 400. To support special characters, ensure that you configure the **exec-character-bits** command under the line console (for serial port) or line vty (for SSH).



**Note**

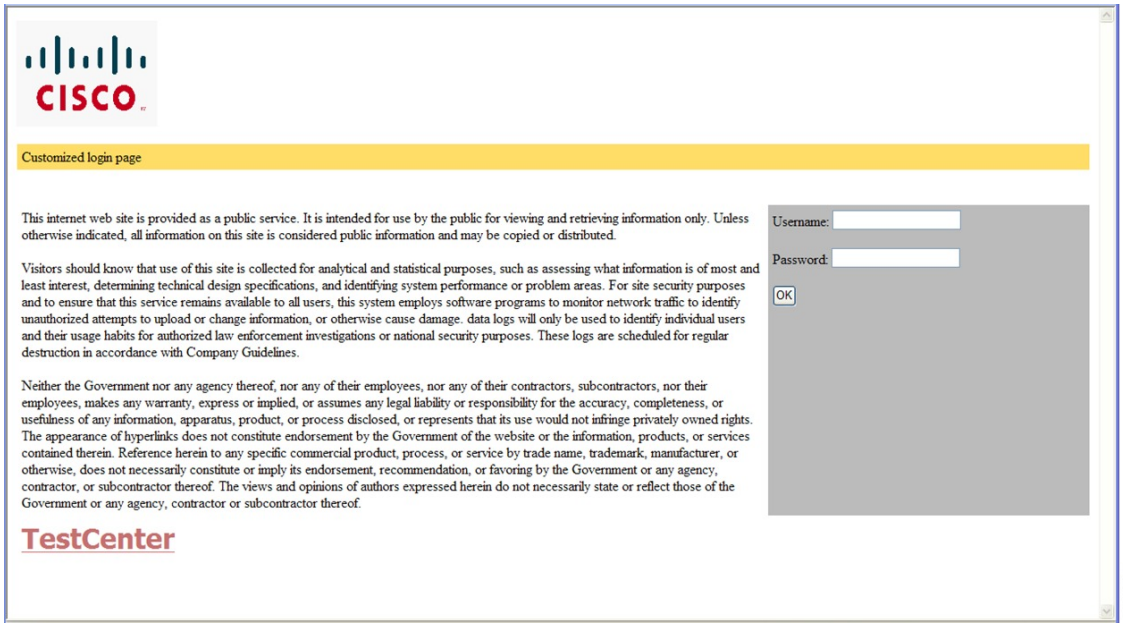
- If the banner text string exceeds the maximum limit of 400 characters, an error message is displayed and the configuration is rejected. Also, the parser has a limitation of 254 characters per line (including the CLI keywords). If you want to use more than 254 characters, ensure that you split it into two or multiple lines.
- The webauth login page displays only the default banner strings if banner command is not configured.

## Guidelines

- You can substitute your own HTML pages for the default internal HTML pages.
- You can use a logo or specify text in the *login*, *success*, *failure*, and *expire* web pages.
- On the banner page, you can specify text in the login page.
- The pages are in HTML.
- You must include an HTML redirect command in the success page to access a specific URL.
- The URL string must be a valid URL (for example, http://www.cisco.com). An incomplete URL might cause *page not found* or similar errors on a web browser.
- If you configure web pages for HTTP authentication, they must include the appropriate HTML commands (for example, to set the page time out, to set a hidden password, or to confirm that the same page is not submitted twice). The custom page samples in the webauth bundle are provided with the image and the details of what you can and cannot change.
- The CLI command to redirect users to a specific URL is not available when the configured login form is enabled. The administrator should ensure that the redirection is configured in the web page.
- If the CLI command redirecting users to specific URL after authentication occurs is entered and then the command configuring web pages is entered, the CLI command redirecting users to a specific URL does not take effect.
- Configured web pages can be copied to the switch boot flash or flash.
- The login page can be on one flash, and the success and failure pages can be another flash (for example, the flash on the active switch or a member switch).
- You must configure all four pages.
- All of the logo files (image, flash, audio, video, and so on) that are stored in the system directory (for example, flash, disk0, or disk) and that are displayed on the login page must use *web_auth_<filename>* as the file name.
- The configured authentication proxy feature supports both HTTP and SSL.

You can substitute your HTML pages for the default internal HTML pages. You can also specify a URL to which users are redirected after authentication occurs, which replaces the internal Success page.

*Figure 7: Customizable Authentication Page*




## Redirection URL for Successful Login Guidelines

When configuring a redirection URL for successful login, consider these guidelines:

- If the custom authentication proxy web pages feature is enabled, the redirection URL feature is disabled and is not available in the CLI. You can perform redirection in the custom-login success page.
- If the redirection URL feature is enabled, a configured auth-proxy-banner is not used
- To remove the specification of a redirection URL, use the **no** form of the command.
- If the redirection URL is required after the web-based authentication client is successfully authenticated, then the URL string must start with a valid URL (for example, http://) followed by the URL information. If only the URL is given without http://, then the redirection URL on successful authentication might cause page not found or similar errors on a web browser.

# How to Configure Local Web Authentication

## Configuring Default Local Web Authentication

The following table shows the default configurations required for local web authentication.

*Table 28: Default Local Web Authentication Configuration*

| Feature | Default Setting |
|---|---|
| AAA | Disabled |

| Feature | Default Setting |
|---|---|
| RADIUS server<br>• IP address<br>• UDP authentication port<br>• Key | • None specified |
| Default value of inactivity timeout | 3600 seconds |
| Inactivity timeout | Disabled |

# Configuring AAA Authentication (GUI)



**Note** The WebUI does not support the ipv6 radius source-interface under AAA radius server group configuration.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **AAA**.

**Step 2** In the **Authentication** section, click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Quick Setup: AAA Authentication** window that is displayed, enter a name for your method list.

**Step 4** Choose the type of authentication you want to perform before allowing access to the network, in the **Type** drop-down list.

**Step 5** Choose if you want to assign a group of servers as your access server, or if you want to use a local server to authenticate access, from the **Group** Type drop-down list.

**Step 6** To configure a local server to act as a fallback method when servers in the group are unavailable, check the **Fallback** to local check box.

**Step 7** Choose the server groups you want to use to authenticate access to your network, from the **Available Server Groups** list and click > icon to move them to the **Assigned Server Groups** list.

**Step 8** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring AAA Authentication (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **aaa new-model**<br>**Example:** | Enables AAA functionality. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# aaa new-model` | |
| **Step 2** | **aaa authentication login** {**default** \| *named_authentication_list*} **group** *AAA_group_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group group1` | Defines the list of authentication methods at login.<br>**named_authentication_list** refers to any name that is not greater than 31 characters.<br>**AAA_group_name** refers to the server group name. You need to define the server-group **server_name** at the beginning itself. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa authorization network** {**default** \| **named**} **group** *AAA_group_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group group1` | Creates an authorization method list for web-based authorization. |
| **Step 4** | **tacacs-server host** {*hostname* \| *ip_address*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# tacacs-server host 10.1.1.1` | Specifies a AAA server. |

# Configuring the HTTP/HTTPS Server (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Administration** > **Management** > **HTTP/HTTPS/Netconf**.

**Step 2** In the **HTTP/HTTPS Access Configuration** section, enable HTTP Access and enter the port that will listen for HTTP requests. The default port is 80. Valid values are 80, and ports between 1025 and 65535.

**Step 3** Enable **HTTPS Access** on the device and enter the designated port to listen for HTTPS requests. The default port is 1025. Valid values are 443, and ports between 1025 and 65535. On a secure HTTP connection, data to and from an HTTP server is encrypted before being sent over the Internet. HTTP with SSL encryption provides a secure connection to allow such functions as configuring a switch from a Web browser.

**Step 4** Choose the **Personal Identity Verification** as enabled or disabled.

**Step 5** In the **HTTP Trust Point Configuration** section, enable **Enable Trust Point** to use Certificate Authority servers as trustpoints.

**Step 6** From the **Trust Points** drop-down list, choose a trust point.

**Step 7** In the **Timeout Policy Configuration** section, enter the HTTP timeout policy in seconds. Valid values can range from 1 to 600 seconds.

**Step 8** Enter the number of minutes of inactivity allowed before the session times out. Valid values can range from 180 to 1200 seconds.

**Step 9** Enter the server life time in seconds. Valid values can range from 1 to 86400 seconds.

**Step 10** Enter the maximum number of requests the device can accept. Valid values range from 1 to 86400 requests.

**Step 11** Save the configuration.

# Configuring the HTTP Server (CLI)

To use local web authentication, you must enable the HTTP server within the device. You can enable the server for either HTTP or HTTPS.



**Note** The Apple psuedo-browser will not open if you configure only the **ip http secure-server** command. You should also configure the **ip http server** command.

Follow the procedure given below to enable the server for either HTTP or HTTPS:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ip http server**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip http server` | Enables the HTTP server. The local web authentication feature uses the HTTP server to communicate with the hosts for user authentication. |
| **Step 3** | **ip http secure-server**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip http secure-server` | Enables HTTPS.<br>You can configure custom authentication proxy web pages or specify a redirection URL for successful login.<br>**Note**<br>To ensure secure authentication when you enter the **ip http secure-server** command, the login page is always in HTTPS (secure HTTP) even if the user sends an HTTP request. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Exits configuration mode. |

# Allowing Special Characters for Serial Port

### Before you begin

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **line console** *line-num*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# line console 0` | Configures the primary terminal line number. |
| **Step 3** | **exec-timeout** *mins sec*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-line)# exec-timeout 12 0` | Configures the time to disconnect idle EXEC sessions. |
| **Step 4** | **login authentication** *word* **default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-line)# login authentication NO_LOGIN` | Configures login authentication checking. It can be authentication list with a name or the default authentication list. |
| **Step 5** | **exec-character-bit** {**7** \| **8**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-line)# exec-character-bit 8` | Configures the character widths of EXEC command characters. |
| **Step 6** | **stopbits** {**1** \| **1.5** \| **2**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-line)# stopbits 1` | Configures the stop bits for the console port. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-line)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Allowing Special Characters for VTY Port

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **parameter-map type webauth global**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global` | Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **banner text** *text*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# banner text #Hêllö#` | You can create a custom banner (of up to 400 characters) by entering *c* <*banner-text*> *c*, where *c* is a delimiting character.<br>If the string exceeds the maximum limit of 400 characters, an error message is displayed and the configuration is rejected. Also, the parser has a limitation of 254 characters per line (including the CLI keywords). If you want to use more than 254 characters, ensure that you split it into two or multiple lines.<br>The webauth login page displays only the default banner strings, if banner command is not configured. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Creating a Parameter Map (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Web Auth**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

**Step 3** Click **Policy Map**.

**Step 4** Enter **Parameter Name**, **Maximum HTTP connections**, **Init-State Timeout(secs)** and choose **webauth** in the **Type** drop-down list.

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring the Maximum Web Authentication Request Retries

Follow these steps to configure the maximum web authentication request retries:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless security web-auth retries** *number*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless security web-auth retries 2` | *number* is the maximum number of web auth request retries. The valid range is 0 to 20. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring a Local Banner in Web Authentication Page (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Web Auth**.

**Step 2** In the **Webauth Parameter Map** tab, click the parameter map name. The **Edit WebAuth Parameter** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab and choose the required Banner Type:

- If you choose **Banner Text**, enter the required banner text to be displayed.
- If you choose **File Name**, specify the path of the file from which the banner text has to be picked up.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply**.

# Configuring a Local Banner in Web Authentication Page (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a local banner in web authentication pages.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **parameter-map type webauth** *param-map*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth param-map` | Configures the web authentication parameters. Enters the parameter map configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **banner** [ *file* \| *banner-text* \| *title* ]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# banner http C My Switch C` | Enables the local banner.<br>Create a custom banner by entering *C banner-text C* (where *C* is a delimiting character), or *file* that indicates a file (for example, a logo or text file) that appears in the banner, or *title* that indicates the title of the banner. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuration Examples for Local Web Authentication

## Example: Obtaining Web Authentication Certificate

This example shows how to obtain web authentication certificate.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki import cert pkcs12 tftp://9.1.0.100/ldapserver-cert.p12 cisco
Device(config)# end
Device# show crypto pki trustpoints cert
 Trustpoint cert:
    Subject Name:
    e=rkannajr@cisco.com
    cn=sthaliya-lnx
```

```
    ou=WNBU
    o=Cisco
    l=SanJose
    st=California
    c=US
          Serial Number (hex): 00
    Certificate configured.
Device# show  crypto pki certificates cert
Certificate
  Status: Available
  Certificate Serial Number (hex): 04
  Certificate Usage: General Purpose
  Issuer:
    e=rkannajr@cisco.com
    cn=sthaliya-lnx
    ou=WNBU
    o=Cisco
    l=SanJose
    st=California
    c=US
  Subject:
    Name: ldapserver
    e=rkannajr@cisco.com
    cn=ldapserver
    ou=WNBU
    o=Cisco
    st=California
    c=US
  Validity Date:
    start date: 07:35:23 UTC Jan 31 2012
    end   date: 07:35:23 UTC Jan 28 2022
  Associated Trustpoints: cert ldap12
  Storage: nvram:rkannajrcisc#4.cer

CA Certificate
  Status: Available
  Certificate Serial Number (hex): 00
  Certificate Usage: General Purpose
  Issuer:
    e=rkannajr@cisco.com
    cn=sthaliya-lnx
    ou=WNBU
    o=Cisco
    l=SanJose
    st=California
    c=US
  Subject:
    e=rkannajr@cisco.com
    cn=sthaliya-lnx
    ou=WNBU
    o=Cisco
    l=SanJose
    st=California
    c=US
  Validity Date:
    start date: 07:27:56 UTC Jan 31 2012
    end   date: 07:27:56 UTC Jan 28 2022
  Associated Trustpoints: cert ldap12 ldap
  Storage: nvram:rkannajrcisc#0CA.cer
```

# Example: Displaying a Web Authentication Certificate

This example shows how to display a web authentication certificate.

```
Device# show crypto ca certificate verb
     Certificate
     Status: Available
     Version: 3
     Certificate Serial Number (hex): 2A9636AC00000000858B
     Certificate Usage: General Purpose
     Issuer:
    cn=Cisco Manufacturing CA
    o=Cisco Systems
    Subject:
    Name: WS-C3780-6DS-S-2037064C0E80
    Serial Number: PID:WS-C3780-6DS-S SN:FOC1534X12Q
    cn=WS-C3780-6DS-S-2037064C0E80
    serialNumber=PID:WS-C3780-6DS-S SN:FOC1534X12Q
    CRL Distribution Points:
    http://www.cisco.com/security/pki/crl/cmca.crl
    Validity Date:
    start date: 15:43:22 UTC Aug 21 2011
    end   date: 15:53:22 UTC Aug 21 2021
    Subject Key Info:
    Public Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption
    RSA Public Key: (1024 bit)
    Signature Algorithm: SHA1 with RSA Encryption
    Fingerprint MD5: A310B856 A41565F1 1D9410B5 7284CB21
    Fingerprint SHA1: 04F180F6 CA1A67AF 9D7F561A 2BB397A1 0F5EB3C9
    X509v3 extensions:
    X509v3 Key Usage: F0000000
      Digital Signature
      Non Repudiation
      Key Encipherment
      Data Encipherment
    X509v3 Subject Key ID: B9EEB123 5A3764B4 5E9C54A7 46E6EECA 02D283F7
    X509v3 Authority Key ID: D0C52226 AB4F4660 ECAE0591 C7DC5AD1 B047F76C
    Authority Info Access:
    Associated Trustpoints: CISCO_IDEVID_SUDI
    Key Label: CISCO_IDEVID_SUDI
```

# Example: Choosing the Default Web Authentication Login Page

This example shows how to choose a default web authentication login page.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth test
This operation will permanently convert all relevant authentication commands to their CPL
control-policy equivalents. As this conversion is irreversible and will
disable the conversion CLI 'authentication display [legacy|new-style]', you are strongly
advised to back up your current configuration before proceeding.
Do you wish to continue? [yes]: yes
Device(config)# wlan wlan50
Device(config-wlan)# shutdown
Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list test
Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map test
Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown
Device(config-wlan)# end
Device# show running-config | section wlan50
```

```
wlan wlan50 50 wlan50
 security wpa akm wpa2
 security wpa wpa1
 security wpa wpa1 ciphers aes
 security wpa wpa1 ciphers tkip
 security web-auth authentication-list test
 security web-auth parameter-map test
 session-timeout 1800
 no shutdown

Device# show running-config | section parameter-map type webauth test
parameter-map type webauth test
 type webauth
```

# Example: Choosing a Customized Web Authentication Login Page from an IPv4 External Web Server

This example shows how to choose a customized web authentication login page from an IPv4 external web server.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# virtual-ip ipv4 192.0.2.1.
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# parameter-map type webauth test
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type webauth
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect for-login http://9.1.0.100/login.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect portal ipv4 9.1.0.100
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end
Device# show running-config | section parameter-map
parameter-map type webauth global
virtual-ip ipv4 192.0.2.1.
parameter-map type webauth test
type webauth
redirect for-login http://9.1.0.100/login.html
redirect portal ipv4 9.1.0.100
security web-auth parameter-map rasagna-auth-map
security web-auth parameter-map test
```

# Example: Choosing a Customized Web Authentication Login Page from an IPv6 External Web Server

This example shows how to choose a customized web authentication login page from an IPv6 external web server.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# virtual-ip ipv6 2001:DB8::/48
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# parameter-map type webauth test
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type webauth
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect for-login http://9:1:1::100/login.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect portal ipv6 9:1:1::100
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end
Device# show running-config | section parameter-map
parameter-map type webauth global
virtual-ip ipv6 2001:DB8::/48
```

```
parameter-map type webauth test
type webauth
redirect for-login http://9:1:1::100/login.html
redirect portal ipv6 9:1:1::100
security web-auth parameter-map rasagna-auth-map
security web-auth parameter-map test
```

# Example: Assigning Login, Login Failure, and Logout Pages per WLAN

This example shows how to assign login, login failure and logout pages per WLAN.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth test
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# custom-page login device flash:loginsantosh.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# custom-page login expired device flash:loginexpire.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# custom-page failure device flash:loginfail.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# custom-page success device flash:loginsucess.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end
Device# show running-config | section parameter-map type webauth test
 parameter-map type webauth test
 type webauth
 redirect for-login http://9.1.0.100/login.html
 redirect portal ipv4 9.1.0.100
 custom-page login device flash:loginsantosh.html
 custom-page success device flash:loginsucess.html
 custom-page failure device flash:loginfail.html
 custom-page login expired device flash:loginexpire.html
```

# Example: Configuring Preauthentication ACL

This example shows how to configure preauthentication ACL.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wlan fff
Device(config-wlan)# shutdown
Device(config-wlan)# ip access-group web preauthrule
Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown
Device(config-wlan)# end
Device# show wlan name fff
```

# Example: Configuring Webpassthrough

This example shows how to configure webpassthrough.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth webparalocal
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type consent
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end
Device# show running-config | section parameter-map type webauth test
 parameter-map type webauth test
 type webauth
 redirect for-login http://9.1.0.100/login.html
 redirect portal ipv4 9.1.0.100
```

# Verifying Web Authentication Type

To verify the web authentication type, run the following command:

```
Device# show parameter-map type webauth all
Type Name
--------------------------------
Global global
Named webauth
Named ext
Named redirect
Named abc
Named glbal
Named ewa-2
```

```
Device# show parameter-map type webauth global
Parameter Map Name : global
Banner:
Text : CisCo
Type : webauth
Auth-proxy Init State time : 120 sec
Webauth max-http connection : 100
Webauth logout-window : Enabled
Webauth success-window : Enabled
Consent Email : Disabled
Sleeping-Client : Enabled
Sleeping-Client timeout : 60 min
Virtual-ipv4 : 192.0.2.1.
Virtual-ipv4 hostname :
Webauth intercept https : Disabled
Webauth Captive Bypass : Disabled
Webauth bypass intercept ACL :
Trustpoint name :
HTTP Port : 80
Watch-list:
Enabled : no
Webauth login-auth-bypass:
```

```
Device# show parameter-map type webauth name global
Parameter Map Name : global
Type : webauth
Auth-proxy Init State time : 120 sec
Webauth max-http connection : 100
Webauth logout-window : Enabled
Webauth success-window : Enabled
Consent Email : Disabled
Sleeping-Client : Disabled
Webauth login-auth-bypass:
```

# External Web Authentication (EWA)

## Configuring EWA with Single WebAuth Server Address and Default Ports (80/443) (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **aaa authentication login**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa authentication login WEBAUTH local` | Defines the authentication method at login. |
| **Step 3** | **parameter-map type webauth** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth ISE-Ext-Webauth_IP` | Creates the parameter map.<br>The *parameter-map-name* must not exceed 99 characters. |
| **Step 4** | **type webauth**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type webauth` | Configures the webauth type parameter. |
| **Step 5** | **redirect for-login** *URL-String*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect for-login https://192.168.0.98/portal/PortalSetup.action?portal=a6062108-1e78-11e5-b1d5-005056bf2f52` | Configures the URL string for redirect during login. |
| **Step 6** | **redirect portal ipv4** *ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect portal ipv4 192.168.0.98` | Configures the external portal IPv4 address. |
| **Step 7** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 8** | **wlan** *wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan EWLC3-GUEST 3 EWLC3-GUEST` | Configures a WLAN. |
| **Step 9** | **no security ft adaptive**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security ft adaptive` | Disables adaptive 11r. |
| **Step 10** | **no security wpa**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa` | Disables WPA security. |
| **Step 11** | **no security wpa wpa2**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2` | Disables WPA2 security. |
| **Step 12** | **no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes` | Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES. |
| **Step 13** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for dot1x. |
| **Step 14** | **security web-auth**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth` | Enables web authentication for WLAN. |
| **Step 15** | **security web-auth authentication-list** *authenticate-list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list WEBAUTH` | Enables authentication list for dot1x security. |
| **Step 16** | **security web-auth parameter-map** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map ISE-Ext-Webauth_IP` | Configures the parameter map.<br>**Note**<br>If parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 17** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring EWA with Multiple Web Servers and/or Ports Different than Default (80/443)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ip access-list extended** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip access-list extended preauth_ISE_Ext_WA` | Defines an extended IPv4 access list using a name, and enters access-list configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | *access-list-number* **permit tcp any host** *external_web_server_ip_address1* **eq** *port-number*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 10 permit tcp any host 192.168.0.98 eq 8443` | Permits access from any host to the external web server port number 8443. |
| **Step 4** | *access-list-number* **permit tcp any host** *external_web_server_ip_address2* **eq** *port-number*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 10 permit tcp any host 192.168.0.99 eq 8443` | Permits access from any host to the external web server port number 8443. |
| **Step 5** | *access-list-number* **permit udp any any eq domain**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 20 permit udp any any eq domain` | Permits DNS UDP traffic. |
| **Step 6** | *access-list-number* **permit udp any any eq bootpc**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 30 permit udp any any eq bootpc` | Permits DHCP traffic. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 7** | *access-list-number* **permit udp any any eq bootps**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 40 permit udp any any eq bootps` | Permits DHCP traffic. |
| **Step 8** | *access-list-number* **permit tcp host** *external_web_server_ip_address1* **eq** *port_number* **any**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 50 permit tcp host 192.168.0.98 eq 8443 any` | Permits the access from the external web server port 8443 to any host. |
| **Step 9** | *access-list-number* **permit tcp host** *external_web_server_ip_address2* **eq** *port_number* **any**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 50 permit tcp host 192.168.0.99 eq 8443 any` | Permits the access from the external web server port 8443 to any host. |
| **Step 10** | *access-list-number* **permit tcp any any eq domain**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 60 permit tcp any any eq domain` | Permits the DNS TCP traffic. |
| **Step 11** | *access-list-number* **deny ip any any**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 70 deny ip any any` | Denies all the other traffic. |
| **Step 12** | **wlan** *wlan-name wlan-id ssid*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan EWLC3-GUEST 3 EWLC3-GUEST` | Creates the WLAN. |
| **Step 13** | **ip access-group web** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# ip access-group web preauth_ISE_Ext_WA` | Configures the IPv4 WLAN web ACL. The variable *name* specifies the user-defined IPv4 ACL name. |
| **Step 14** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring Wired Guest EWA with Multiple Web Servers and/or Ports Different than Default (80/443)

### Before you begin

You cannot assign a manual ACL to a wired guest LAN configuration. The workaround is to use the bypass ACL in the global parameter map.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ip access-list extended** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip access-list extended BYPASS_ACL` | Defines an extended IPv4 access list using a name, and enters access-list configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | *access-list-number* **deny ip any host** *hostname*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 10 deny ip any host 192.168.0.45` | Allows the traffic to switch centrally. |
| **Step 4** | *access-list-number* **deny ip any host** *hostname*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# 20 deny ip any host 4.0.0.1` | Allows the traffic to switch centrally. |
| **Step 5** | **parameter-map type webauth global**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global` | Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode. |
| **Step 6** | **webauth-bypass-intercept** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# webauth-bypass-intercept BYPASS_ACL` | Creates a WebAuth bypass intercept using the ACL name.<br>**Note**<br>You cannot apply a manual ACL to the wired guest profile and configure an external web authentication with multiple IP addresses or different ports. The workaround is to use the bypass ACL for wired guest profile. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Authentication for Sleeping Clients

## Information About Authenticating Sleeping Clients

Clients with guest access that have had successful web authentication are allowed to sleep and wake up without having to go through another authentication process through the login page. You can configure the duration for which sleeping clients should be remembered for before reauthentication becomes necessary. The valid range is 10 minutes to 43200 minutes, with the default being 720 minutes. You can also configure this duration on WebAuth parameter map that is mapped to a WLAN. Note that the sleeping client timer comes into effect due to instances such as idle timeout, session timeout, disabling of the WLAN, and the AP being nonoperational.

This feature is supported in the following FlexConnect scenario: local switching and central authentication.



**Caution** If the MAC address of a client that goes to sleep mode is spoofed, the fake device such as a laptop can be authenticated.

### Mobility Scenarios

Following are some guidelines in a mobility scenario:

- L2 roaming in the same subnet is supported.
- Anchor sleeping timer is applicable.
- The sleeping client information is shared between multiple autoanchors when a sleeping client moves from one anchor to another.

A sleeping client does not require reauthentication in the following scenarios:

- Suppose there are two embedded wireless controllers in a mobility group. A client that is associated with one embedded wireless controller goes to sleep and then wakes up and gets associated with the other embedded wireless controller.
- Suppose there are three embedded wireless controllers in a mobility group. A client that is associated with the second embedded wireless controller that is anchored to the first controller goes to sleep, wakes up, and gets associated with the third embedded wireless controller.
- A client sleeps, wakes up and gets associated with the same or different export foreign embedded wireless controller that is anchored to the export anchor.

## Restrictions on Authenticating Sleeping Clients

- The sleep client feature works only for WLAN configured with WebAuth security.
- You can configure the sleeping clients only on a per WebAuth parameter-map basis.
- The authentication of sleeping clients feature is supported only on WLANs that have Layer 3 security enabled.

- With Layer 3 security, the Authentication, Passthrough, and On MAC Filter failure web policies are supported. The Splash Page Web Redirect web policy is not supported.
- The central web authentication of sleeping clients is not supported.
- The authentication of sleeping clients feature is not supported on guest LANs and remote LANs.
- A guest access sleeping client that has a local user policy is not supported. In this case, the WLAN-specific timer is applied.

# Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Web Auth**.

**Step 2** In the **Webauth Parameter Map** tab, click the parameter map name. The **Edit WebAuth Parameter** window is displayed.

**Step 3** Select **Sleeping Client Status** check box.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **[no] parameter-map type webauth** {*parameter-map-name* \| **global**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global` | Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **sleeping-client** [**timeout** *time*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# sleeping-client timeout 100` | Configures the sleeping client timeout to 100 minutes. Valid range is between 10 minutes and 43200 minutes.<br>**Note**<br>If you do not use the timeout keyword, the sleeping client is configured with the default timeout value of 720 minutes. |
| **Step 3** | **end** | Exits parameter-map webauth configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | (Optional) **show wireless client sleeping-client**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wireless client sleeping-client` | Shows the MAC address of the clients and the time remaining in their respective sessions. |
| **Step 5** | (Optional) **clear wireless client sleeping-client** [**mac-address** *mac-addr*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# clear wireless client sleeping-client mac-address 00e1.e1e1.0001` | • **clear wireless client sleeping-client**—Deletes all sleeping client entries from the sleeping client cache.<br>• **clear wireless client sleeping-client mac-address** *mac-addr*—Deletes the specific MAC entry from the sleeping client cache. |

# Multi Authentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication

## Feature History for Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 29: Feature History for Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication***

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1 | Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication | This feature supports the merging of applied policies during multiauthentication of 802.1X or MAC authentication bypass (MAB) and local web authentication (LWA). |

## Information About Multiauthentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication

In a wireless setup, for example, in a university, clients authenticate through 802.1X authentication. Because the 802.1X (dot1X) authentication process is secure and does not require user intervention, the end-users are unaware of the network that their devices are connected to. This could lead to serious concerns if they connect to the university's wireless network and post inappropriate content or access restricted content.

To avoid this situation, web authentication (webauth) and 802.1X authentication are configured in the network. End-user consent is used as a part of webauth to inform users that they are connected to the university's Wi-Fi network.

When the end-users accept the credentials for consent, AAA policies are not applied. The AAA policies that were applied earlier are deleted, resulting in a VLAN change and client disconnection.

A new command is introduced in Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1 to fix this issue. When you run the **consent activation-mode merge** command, the policy that is applied through consent is merged with the policy applied for 802.1X or MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) authentication, thereby allowing clients to access the network. This command is available in parameter-map mode, which is configured with **type consent** command.

# Limitations for Multi Authentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication

The following are the limitations for multiauthentication combination of 802.1X authentication and LWA:

- It is not possible to configure this feature on the controller GUI.
- SNMP is not supported.
- When the **consent activation-mode merge** command is not configured on the webauth parameter map, the default activation mode is Replace. This means that the user profile for consent replaces all the user profile policies that were previously applied.

# Enabling the Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication (CLI)

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have working knowledge of multiauthentication concepts, LWA (consent), and AAA override.

### Procedure

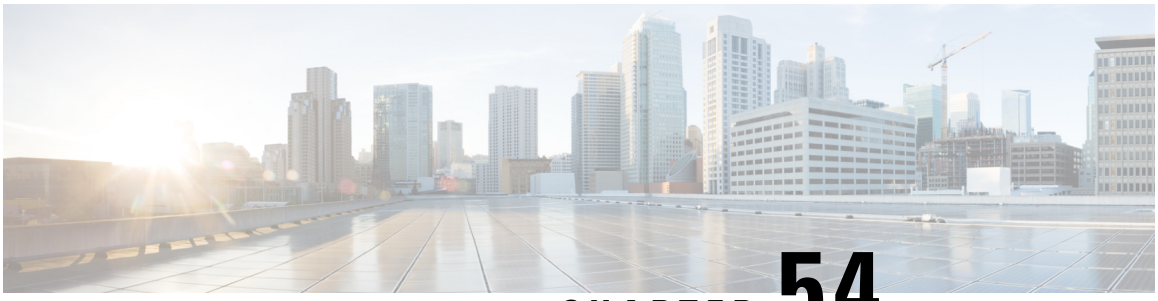
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enter global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **parameter-map type webauth** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth parameter-map1` | Configures the webauth type parameter. Enters the parameter map configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **type consent**<br>**Example:** | Configures the type as **consent**. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type consent` | |
| **Step 4** | **[no] consent** {**activation-mode merge** \| **email**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# consent activation-mode merge` | Enables policy activation mode and merges the previous policy. Run the **no** form of this command to disable the feature. |

# Verifying Multiauthentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication

To verify the multiauthentication combination with 802.1X authentication and LWA, run the following command:

```
Device# show parameter-map type webauth lwa-consent
Parameter Map Name               : lwa_consent
  Banner Title                   : Consent Title
  Banner Text                    : Please accept the consent
  Type                           : consent
  Auth-proxy Init State time     : 300 sec
  Webauth max-http connection    : 200
  Webauth logout-window          : Enabled
  Webauth success-window         : Enabled
  Consent Email                  : Disabled
  Activation Mode                : Merge
  Sleeping-Client                : Disabled
  Webauth login-auth-bypass:
```



CHAPTER 54

# Central Web Authentication


- Information About Central Web Authentication, on page 445
- How to Configure ISE, on page 446
- How to Configure Central Web Authentication on the Controller, on page 448
- Authentication for Sleeping Clients, on page 456


## Information About Central Web Authentication

Central web authentication offers the possibility to have a central device that acts as a web portal (in this example, the ISE). The major difference compared to the usual local web authentication is that it is shifted to Layer 2 along with MAC filtering or dot1x authentication. The concept also differs in that the radius server (ISE in this example) returns special attributes that indicate to the switch that a web redirection must occur. This solution eliminates any delay to start the web authentication.

The following are the different types of web authentication methods:

- Local Web Authentication (LWA): Configured as Layer 3 security on the controller, the web authentication page and the pre-authentication ACL are locally configured on the controller. The controller intercepts htttp(s) traffic and redirects the client to the internal web page for authentication. The credentials entered by the client on the login page is authenticated by the controller locally or through a RADIUS or LDAP server.
- External Web Authentication (EWA): Configured as Layer 3 security on the controller, the controller intercepts htttp(s) traffic and redirects the client to the login page hosted on the external web server. The credentials entered by the client on the login page is authenticated by the controller locally or through a RADIUS or LDAP server. The pre-authentication ACL is configured statically on the controller.
- Central Web Authentication (CWA): Configured mostly as Layer 2 security on the controller, the redirection URL and the pre-authentication ACL reside on ISE and are pushed during layer 2 authentication to the controller. The controller redirects all web traffic from the client to the ISE login page. ISE validates the credentials entered by the client through HTTPS and authenticates the user.

Globally, if the MAC address of the client station is not known by the radius server (but other criteria can also be used), the server returns the redirection attributes, and the embedded wireless controller authorizes the station (using the MAC filtering) but places an access list to redirect the web traffic to the portal.

Once the user logs into the guest portal, it is possible to re-authenticate the client so that a new Layer 2 MAC filtering occurs using the Change of Authorization (CoA). This way, the ISE remembers that it was a webauth

user and pushes the necessary authorization attributes to the embedded wireless controller for accessing the network.

**Note**

- In Central Web Authentication (CWA) with dual VLAN posture scenario, Cisco AireOS and IOS-XE controller performs 2 and 3 EAPOL handshakes respectively. If a client is stuck in a quarantine VLAN because of any break in EAPOL handshake due to client or network issue, you need to analyze the client or network issue.
- However, you can manually disconnect or reconnect the client to come out of the quarantine loop (or) click the Scan Again on AnyConnect (Or) enable posture lease (Or) use the ISE posture sync feature.
- If the controller has no switch virtual interface (SVI) in the client subnet or VLAN, the controller has to use any of the other SVIs and send traffic as defined in the routing table. This means that the traffic is sent to another gateway in the core of the network; this traffic then reaches the client subnet. Firewalls typically block traffic from and to the same switch, as seen in this scenario, so redirection might not work properly. Workarounds are to allow this behavior on the firewall.

## Prerequisites for Central Web Authentication

- Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE)

# How to Configure ISE

To configure ISE, proceed as follows:

1. Create an authorization profile.
2. Create an authentication rule.
3. Create an authorization rule.

## Creating an Authorization Profile

**Procedure**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Step 1** | Click **Policy**, and click **Policy Elements**. |
| **Step 2** | Click **Results**. |
| **Step 3** | Expand **Authorization**, and click **Authorization Profiles**. |
| **Step 4** | Click **Add** to create a new authorization profile for central webauth. |
| **Step 5** | In the **Name** field, enter a name for the profile. For example, CentralWebauth. |
| **Step 6** | Choose **ACCESS_ACCEPT** from the Access Type drop-down list. |
| **Step 7** | Check the **Web Redirection (CWA, MDM, NSP, CPP)** check box, and choose **Centralized Web Auth** from the drop-down list. |

**Step 8** In the **ACL** field, enter the name of the ACL that defines the traffic to be redirected. For example, redirect.

**Step 9** In the **Value** field, choose the default or customized values.

The Value attribute defines whether the ISE sees the default or a custom web portal that the ISE admin created.

**Step 10** Click **Save**.

# Creating an Authentication Rule

Follow the procedure given below to use the authentication profile and create the authentication rule:

**Procedure**

**Step 1** In the **Policy** > **Authentication** page, click **Authentication**.

**Step 2** Enter a name for your authentication rule. For example, MAB.

**Step 3** In the If condition field, select the plus (+) icon.

**Step 4** Choose **Compound condition**, and choose **Wireless_MAB**.

**Step 5** Click the arrow located next to **and ...** in order to expand the rule further.

**Step 6** Click the + icon in the Identity Source field, and choose **Internal endpoints**.

**Step 7** Choose **Continue** from the 'If user not found' drop-down list.

This option allows a device to be authenticated even if its MAC address is not known.

**Step 8** Click **Save**.

# Creating an Authorization Rule

You can configure many rules in the authorization policy. The *MAC not known* rule is configured in this section:

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Click **Policy** > **Authorization**.

**Step 2** In the Rule Name field, enter a name. For example: *Mac not known*.

**Step 3** In the Conditions field, click the plus (+) icon.

**Step 4** Choose **Compound Conditions**, and choose **Wireless_MAB**.

**Step 5** From the settings icon, select **Add Attribute/Value** from the options.

**Step 6** In the Description field, choose **Network Access** > **AuthenticationStatus** as the attribute from the drop-down list.

**Step 7** Choose the **Equals** operator.

**Step 8** From the right-hand field, choose **UnknownUser**.

**Step 9** In the Permissions field, choose the authorization profile name that you had created earlier.

The ISE continues even though the user (or MAC) is not known.

Unknown users are now presented with the Login page. However, once they enter their credentials, they are presented again with an authentication request on the ISE; therefore, another rule must be configured with a condition that is met if the user is a guest user. For example, if UseridentityGroup Equals Guest is used then it is assumed that all guests belong to this group.

**Step 10** In the Conditions field, click the plus (+) icon.

**Step 11** Choose **Compound Conditions**, and choose to create a new condition.

The new rule must come before the *MAC not known* rule.

**Step 12** From the settings icon, select **Add Attribute/Value** from the options.

**Step 13** In the Description field, choose **Network Access** > **UseCase** as the attribute from the drop-down list.

**Step 14** Choose the **Equals** operator.

**Step 15** From the right-hand field, choose **GuestFlow**.

**Step 16** In the Permissions field, click the plus (+) icon to select a result for your rule.

You can choose **Standard** > **PermitAccess** option or create a custom profile to return the attributes that you like.

When the user is authorized on the login page, the ISE triggers a COA that results in the restart of Layer 2 authentication. When the user is identified as a guest user, the user is authorized.

# How to Configure Central Web Authentication on the Controller

To configure central web authentication on the controller, proceed as follows:

1. Configure WLAN.
2. Configure policy profile.
3. Configure redirect ACL.
4. Configure AAA for central web authentication.
5. Configure redirect ACL in Flex profile.

## Configure WLAN (GUI)

Set up a new WLAN on your wireless controller using the GUI.

### Before you begin

You need to enable MAC filtering for Layer 2 authentication to download the redirect URL and ACL.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** In the **WLANs** window, click the name of the **WLAN** or click **Add** to create a new one.
The **Add/Edit WLAN** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Add/Edit WLAN** window, click the **General** tab to configure the following parameters.

- In the **Profile Name** field, enter or edit the name of the profile.
- In the **SSID** field, enter or edit the SSID name.

  The SSID name is alphanumeric, and up to 32 characters in length.
- In the **WLAN ID** field, enter or edit the ID number. The valid range is between one and 512.
- Select the **802.11** radio band from the **Radio Policy** drop-down list.
- Using the **Broadcast SSID** toggle button, change the status to either **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- Using the **Status** toggle button, change the status to either **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

**Step 4** Click the **Security** tab, and then select the **Layer 2** tab to configure the following parameters:

- Select **None** from the **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list. This setting disables Layer 2 security.
- Enter the **Reassociation Timeout** value, in seconds. This is the time a fast transition reassociation times out.
- Check the **Over the DS** check box to enable Fast Transition over a distributed system.
- Choose OWE. Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE) provides data confidentiality with encryption over the air between an AP radio and a wireless client. OWE Transition Mode ensures backwards compatibility.
- Choose Fast Transition (802.11r), the IEEE standard for fast roaming. This standard allows the initial handshake with a new AP to occur before the client roams to the target AP. This method is called Fast Transition.
- Check the check box to enable MAC filtering in the WLAN.

**Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring WLAN (CLI)

Configure WLAN using commands.

**Note** You need to enable MAC filtering for Layer 2 authentication to download the redirect URL and ACL.

After completing the WLAN configuration, if the changes are not pushed to all the APs, the following syslog message appears:

*2021/01/06 16:20:00.597927186 {wncd_x_R0-4}{1}: [wlanmgr-db] [20583]: UUID: 0, ra: 0, TID: 0 (note): Unable to push WLAN config changes to all APs, cleanup required for WlanId: 2, profile: wlan1 state: Delete pending*

If the above mentioned syslog message appears for more than six minutes, reload the controller.

If the controller does not reload and still the syslog message appears, then collect the archive logs, wncd core file, and raise a case by clicking the following link: Support Case Manager.

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **wlan `wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name`**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlanProfileName 1 ngwcSSID` | Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.<br>**wlan-name** is the name of the configured WLAN.<br>**wlan-id** is the wireless LAN identifier. The range is 1 to 512.<br>**SSID-name** is the SSID name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>**Note**<br>If you have already configured this command, enter **`wlan wlan-name`** command. |
| **Step 2** | **mac-filtering** [*name*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering name` | Enables MAC filtering on a WLAN.<br>**Note**<br>While configuring mac-filtering the default authentication list is considered, if the authentication list is not configured earlier. |
| **Step 3** | **no security wpa**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa` | Disable WPA security. |
| **Step 4** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

### Example

```
Device# config terminal
Device(config)# wlan wlanProfileName 1 ngwcSSID
Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering default
Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa
Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown
Device(config-wlan)# end
```

# Configuring Policy Profile (CLI)

Configure Policy Profile using commands.

**Note** You need a AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA or ISE servers. When a redirect URL and redirect ACL is received from the ISE server, NAC is used to trigger the Central Web Authentication (CWA).

Both NAC and AAA override must be available in the policy profile to which the client is being associated.

The default policy profile is associated to an AP, if the AP is not associated to any other policy profiles.

CWA clients may experience issues with VLAN assignment during the final RADIUS access-accept following successful authentication.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **wireless profile policy default-policy-profile**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Sets the policy profile. |
| **Step 2** | **vlan vlan-id**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 41` | Maps the VLAN to a policy profile. If vlan-id is not specified, the default native vlan 1 is applied. The valid range for vlan-id is 1 to 4096.<br>Management VLAN is applied if no VLAN is configured on the policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa-override**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override` | Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA or ISE servers. |
| **Step 4** | **nac**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# nac` | Configures Network Access Control in the policy profile. NAC is used to trigger the Central Web Authentication (CWA). |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 5** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

### Example

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile
Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 41
Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override
Device(config-wireless-policy)# nac
Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown
Device(config-wireless-policy)# end
```

# Configuring a Policy Profile (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.

**Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Add Policy Profile** window, in General Tab, enter a name and description for the policy profile.

**Step 4** To enable the policy profile, set **Status** as Enabled.

**Step 5** Use the slider to enable or disable **Passive Client** and **Encrypted Traffic Analytics**.

**Step 6** (Optional) In the **CTS Policy** section, choose the appropriate status for the following:

- Inline Tagging—a transport mechanism using which a embedded wireless controller or access point understands the source SGT.
- SGACL Enforcement

**Step 7** Specify a default **SGT**. The valid range is from 2 to 65519.

**Step 8** In the WLAN Switching Policy section, choose the following, as required:

- Central Switching
- Central Authentication
- Central DHCP
- Central Association Enable

- Flex NAT/PAT

**Step 9** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Creating Redirect ACL

The redirect ACL is a punt ACL that needs to be predefined on the controller (or the AP in case of FlexConnect local switching): the AAA server returns the name of the ACL and not its definition. The redirect ACL defines traffic (matching "deny"statements, as it denies redirection for it) that will be allowed through on the data plane and traffic (matching "permit" statements) that will be sent to the control plane towards the CPU for further processing (that is, the web interception and redirection in this case). The ACL has implicit (that is, the invisible) statements allowing DHCP and DNS traffic towards all IPs, just like it is the case with LWA. It also ends with a statement that a security ACL implicit deny.

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **ip access-list extended redirect**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip access-list extended redirect` | The HTTP and HTTPS browsing does not work without authentication (per the other ACL) as ISE is configured to use a redirect ACL (named **`redirect`**). |
| **Step 2** | **deny ip any host `ISE-IP-add`**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# deny ip any host 123.123.134.112` | Allows traffic to ISE and all other traffic is blocked. |
| **Step 3** | **deny ip host `ISE-IP-add` any**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# deny ip host 123.123.134.112 any` | Allows traffic to ISE and all other traffic is blocked.<br>**Note**<br>This ACL is applicable for both local and flex mode. |
| **Step 4** | **permit TCP any any eq `web address/port-number`**<br>**Example:**<br>In case of HTTP:<br>`Device(config)# permit TCP any any eq www`<br>`Device(config)# permit TCP any any eq 80`<br>**Example:**<br>In case of HTTPS:<br>`Device(config)# permit TCP any any eq 443` | Redirects all HTTP or HTTPS access to the ISE login page. port-number 80 is used for HTTP and port-number 443 is used for HTTPS.<br>For the ACE to allow traffic to ISE, ISE should be configured above the HTTP/HTTPS ACE. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring AAA for Central Web Authentication

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **aaa server radius dynamic-author**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author` | Configures the Change of Authorization (CoA) on the embedded wireless controller. |
| **Step 2** | **client `ISE-IP-add` server-key `radius-shared-secret`**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 123.123.134.112 server-key 0 SECRET` | Specifies a RADIUS client and the RADIUS key to be shared between a device and a RADIUS client.<br>**ISE-IP-add** is the IP address of the RADIUS client.<br>**server-key** is the radius client server-key.<br>**radius-shared-secret** covers the following:<br>• **0**—Specifies unencrypted key.<br>• **6**—Specifies encrypted key.<br>• **7**—Specifies HIDDEN key.<br>• **Word**—Unencrypted (cleartext) server key.<br>The RADIUS shared secret should not exceed 240 characters while configuring WSMA data in GUI.<br>**Note**<br>All these steps work only if the AAA configuration is in place. See the *Configuring AAA Authentication* for details. |

### Example

```
Device# config terminal
Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author
Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 123.123.134.112 server-key 0 SECRET
Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end
```

# Configuring Redirect ACL in Flex Profile (GUI)

The redirect ACL definition must be sent to the access point in the FlexConnect profile. For this, the redirect ACL associated with an AP must be configured in the FlexConnect profile where the client is hosted. If an access point is not configured with any of the FlexConnect profiles, the default FlexConnect profile is associated with it.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Flex**.

**Step 2** On the **Flex Profile** page, click the name of the FlexConnect profile or click **Add** to create a new FlexConnect profile.

**Step 3** In the **Add/Edit Flex Profile** window that is displayed, click the **Policy ACL** tab.

**Step 4** Click **Add** to map an ACL to the FlexConnect profile.

**Step 5** Choose the ACL name, enable central web authentication, and specify the preauthentication URL filter.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

**Step 7** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Redirect ACL in Flex Profile (CLI)

The redirect ACL definition must be sent to the access point in the Flex profile. For this, the redirect ACL associated to an AP must be configured in the Flex profile where the client is being hosted. If an access point is not configured with any of the Flex profiles, the default Flex profile is associated with it.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **wireless profile flex default-flex-profile**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile` | Creates a new flex policy. The default flex profile name is **`default-flex-profile`**. |
| **Step 2** | **acl-policy** *acl policy name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy acl1` | Configures ACL policy. |
| **Step 3** | **central-webauth**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# central-webauth` | Configures central web authentication. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Troubleshooting Central Web Authentication

Init-State timer running out

**Problem Issue**: The client devices are deauthenticated by the controller if users fail to enter their credentials in a limited time interval. The clients are deauthenticated after three times the time configured for the init-state timeout in the controller.

**Problem Explanation**: This is the expected functionality as the init-state timeout is not directly applicable for central web authentication; instead, it is the reap timer's value which is three times the init-state time plus five seconds (3*init-state timeout + 5) that determines the time interval in seconds for client deauthentication. For example, if you have configured the init-state timeout as 10 seconds, then the client devices are deuathenticated if users fail to enter their credentials after 35 seconds; that is (3*10 + 5) = 35 seconds.

# Authentication for Sleeping Clients

## Information About Authenticating Sleeping Clients

Clients with guest access that have had successful web authentication are allowed to sleep and wake up without having to go through another authentication process through the login page. You can configure the duration for which sleeping clients should be remembered for before reauthentication becomes necessary. The valid range is 10 minutes to 43200 minutes, with the default being 720 minutes. You can also configure this duration on WebAuth parameter map that is mapped to a WLAN. Note that the sleeping client timer comes into effect due to instances such as idle timeout, session timeout, disabling of the WLAN, and the AP being nonoperational.

This feature is supported in the following FlexConnect scenario: local switching and central authentication.



**Caution** If the MAC address of a client that goes to sleep mode is spoofed, the fake device such as a laptop can be authenticated.

### Mobility Scenarios

Following are some guidelines in a mobility scenario:

- L2 roaming in the same subnet is supported.
- Anchor sleeping timer is applicable.
- The sleeping client information is shared between multiple autoanchors when a sleeping client moves from one anchor to another.

A sleeping client does not require reauthentication in the following scenarios:

- Suppose there are two embedded wireless controllers in a mobility group. A client that is associated with one embedded wireless controller goes to sleep and then wakes up and gets associated with the other embedded wireless controller.
- Suppose there are three embedded wireless controllers in a mobility group. A client that is associated with the second embedded wireless controller that is anchored to the first controller goes to sleep, wakes up, and gets associated with the third embedded wireless controller.
- A client sleeps, wakes up and gets associated with the same or different export foreign embedded wireless controller that is anchored to the export anchor.

# Restrictions on Authenticating Sleeping Clients

- The sleep client feature works only for WLAN configured with WebAuth security.
- You can configure the sleeping clients only on a per WebAuth parameter-map basis.
- The authentication of sleeping clients feature is supported only on WLANs that have Layer 3 security enabled.
- With Layer 3 security, the Authentication, Passthrough, and On MAC Filter failure web policies are supported. The Splash Page Web Redirect web policy is not supported.
- The central web authentication of sleeping clients is not supported.
- The authentication of sleeping clients feature is not supported on guest LANs and remote LANs.
- A guest access sleeping client that has a local user policy is not supported. In this case, the WLAN-specific timer is applied.

# Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Web Auth**.

**Step 2** In the **Webauth Parameter Map** tab, click the parameter map name. The **Edit WebAuth Parameter** window is displayed.

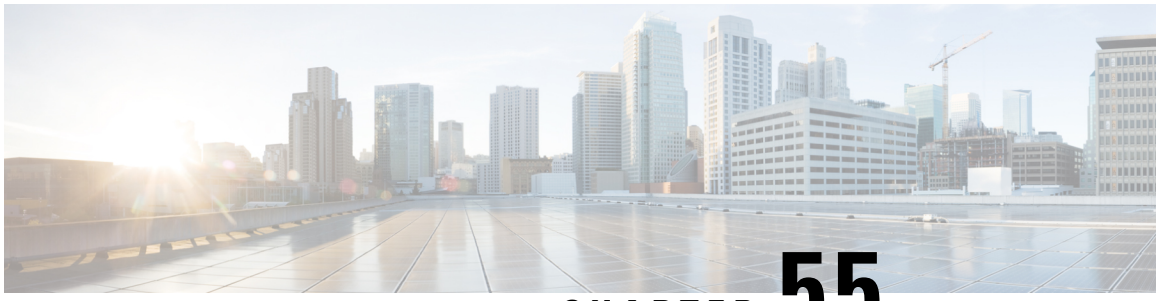
**Step 3** Select **Sleeping Client Status** check box.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **[no] parameter-map type webauth** {*parameter-map-name* \| **global**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global` | Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **sleeping-client** [**timeout** *time*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# sleeping-client timeout 100` | Configures the sleeping client timeout to 100 minutes. Valid range is between 10 minutes and 43200 minutes.<br>**Note**<br>If you do not use the timeout keyword, the sleeping client is configured with the default timeout value of 720 minutes. |
| **Step 3** | **end** | Exits parameter-map webauth configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 4** | (Optional) **show wireless client sleeping-client**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wireless client sleeping-client` | Shows the MAC address of the clients and the time remaining in their respective sessions. |
| **Step 5** | (Optional) **clear wireless client sleeping-client** [**mac-address** *mac-addr*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# clear wireless client sleeping-client mac-address 00e1.e1e1.0001` | • **clear wireless client sleeping-client**—Deletes all sleeping client entries from the sleeping client cache.<br>• **clear wireless client sleeping-client mac-address** *mac-addr*—Deletes the specific MAC entry from the sleeping client cache. |



CHAPTER 55

# ISE Simplification and Enhancements


- Utilities for Configuring Security, on page 459
- Configuring Captive Portal Bypassing for Local and Central Web Authentication, on page 461
- Sending DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE, on page 464
- Captive Portal, on page 467


## Utilities for Configuring Security

This chapter describes how to configure all the RADIUS server side configuration using the following command:

**wireless-default radius server** *ip* **key** *secret*

This simplified configuration option provides the following:

- Configures AAA authorization for network services, authentication for web auth and Dot1x.
- Enables local authentication with default authorization.
- Configures the default redirect ACL for CWA.
- Creates global parameter map with virtual IP and enables captive bypass portal.
- Configures all the AAA configuration for a default case while configuring the RADIUS server.
- The method-list configuration is assumed by default on the WLAN.
- Enables the radius accounting by default.
- Disables the radius aggressive failovers by default.
- Sets the radius request timeouts to 5 seconds by default.
- Enables captive bypass portal.

This command configures the following in the background:

```
aaa new-model
aaa authentication webauth default group radius
aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
aaa authorization network default group radius
aaa accounting identity default start-stop group radius
!
aaa server radius dynamic-author
```

```
 client <IP> server-key cisco123
!
radius server RAD_SRV_DEF_<IP>
 description Configured by wireless-default
 address ipv4 <IP> auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
 key <key>
!
aaa local authentication default authorization default
aaa session-id common
!
ip access-list extended CISCO-CWA-URL-REDIRECT-ACL-DEFAULT
remark " CWA ACL to be referenced from ISE "
deny udp any any eq domain
deny tcp any any eq domain
deny udp any eq bootps any
deny udp any any eq bootpc
deny udp any eq bootpc any
deny ip any host <IP>
permit tcp any any eq www
!
parameter-map type webauth global
  captive-bypass-portal
  virtual-ip ipv4 192.0.2.1
  virtual-ip ipv6 1001::1
!
wireless profile policy default-policy-profile
   aaa-override
   local-http-profiling
   local-dhcp-profiling
   accounting
```

Thus, you need not go through the entire Configuration Guide to configure wireless embedded wireless controller for a simple configuration requirement.

# Configuring Multiple Radius Servers

Use the following procedure to configure a RADIUS server.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless-default radius server** *ip* **key** *secret*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless-default radius server 9.2.58.90 key cisco123` | Configures a radius server.<br>**Note**<br>You can configure up to ten RADIUS servers. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Verifying AAA and Radius Server Configurations

To view details of AAA server, use the following command:

```
Device# show run aaa
!
aaa new-model
aaa authentication webauth default group radius
aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
aaa authorization network default group radius
aaa accounting Identity default start-stop group radius
!
aaa server radius dynamic-author
 client 9.2.58.90 server-key cisco123
!
radius server RAD_SRV_DEF_9.2.58.90
 description Configured by wireless-default
 address ipv4 9.2.58.90 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
 key cisco123
!
aaa local authentication default authorization default
aaa session-id common
!
!
ip access-list extended CISCO-CWA-URL-REDIRECT-ACL-DEFAULT
remark " CWA ACL to be referenced from ISE "
deny udp any any eq domain
deny tcp any any eq domain
deny udp any eq bootps any
deny udp any any eq bootpc
deny udp any eq bootpc any
deny ip any host 9.2.58.90
permit tcp any any eq www
!
parameter-map type webauth global
  captive-bypass-portal
  virtual-ip ipv4 192.0.2.1
  virtual-ip ipv6 1001::1
!
wireless profile policy default-policy-profile
   aaa-override
   local-http-profiling
   local-dhcp-profiling
   accounting
```

**Note** The **show run aaa** output may change when new commands are added to this utility.

# Configuring Captive Portal Bypassing for Local and Central Web Authentication

## Information About Captive Bypassing

WISPr is a draft protocol that enables users to roam between different wireless service providers. Some devices (For example, Apple iOS devices) have a mechanism using which they can determine if the device is connected

to Internet, based on an HTTP WISPr request made to a designated URL. This mechanism is used for the device to automatically open a web browser when a direct connection to the internet is not possible. This enables the user to provide his credentials to access the internet. The actual authentication is done in the background every time the device connects to a new SSID.

The client device (Apple iOS device) sends a WISPr request to the embedded wireless controller, which checks for the user agent details and then triggers an HTTP request with a web authentication interception in the embedded wireless controller. After verification of the iOS version and the browser details provided by the user agent, the embedded wireless controller allows the client to bypass the captive portal settings and provides access to the Internet.

This HTTP request triggers a web authentication interception in the embedded wireless controller as any other page requests are performed by a wireless client. This interception leads to a web authentication process, which will be completed normally. If the web authentication is being used with any of the embedded wireless controller splash page features (URL provided by a configured RADIUS server), the splash page may never be displayed because the WISPr requests are made at very short intervals, and as soon as one of the queries is able to reach the designated server, any web redirection or splash page display process that is performed in the background is cancelled, and the device processes the page request, thus breaking the splash page functionality.

For example, Apple introduced an iOS feature to facilitate network access when captive portals are present. This feature detects the presence of a captive portal by sending a web request on connecting to a wireless network. This request is directed to http://www.apple.com/library/test/success.html for Apple iOS version 6 and older, and to several possible target URLs for Apple iOS version 7 and later. If a response is received, then the Internet access is assumed to be available and no further interaction is required. If no response is received, then the Internet access is assumed to be blocked by the captive portal and Apple's Captive Network Assistant (CNA) auto-launches the pseudo-browser to request portal login in a controlled window. The CNA may break when redirecting to an ISE captive portal. The embedded wireless controller prevents this pseudo-browser from popping up.

You can now configure the embedded wireless controller to bypass WISPr detection process, so the web authentication interception is only done when a user requests a web page leading to splash page load in user context, without the WISPr detection being performed in the background.

# Configuring Captive Bypassing for WLAN in LWA and CWA (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Web Auth**.

**Step 2** In the **Webauth Parameter Map** tab, click the parameter map name. The **Edit WebAuth Parameter** window is displayed.

**Step 3** Select **Captive Bypass Portal** check box.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Captive Bypassing for WLAN in LWA and CWA (CLI)

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **parameter-map type webauth** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth WLAN1_MAP` | Creates the parameter map.<br>The *parameter-map-name* must not exceed 99 characters. |
| **Step 3** | **captive-bypass-portal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# captive-bypass-portal` | Configures captive bypassing. |
| **Step 4** | **wlan** *profile-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan WLAN1_NAME 4 WLAN1_NAME` | Specifies the WLAN name and ID.<br>• *profile-name* is the WLAN name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>• *wlan-id* is the wireless LAN identifier. The valid range is from 1 to 512.<br>• *ssid-name* is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. |
| **Step 5** | **security web-auth**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth` | Enables the web authentication for the WLAN. |
| **Step 6** | **security web-auth parameter-map** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP` | Maps the parameter map.<br>**Note**<br>If parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Sending DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE

## Information about DHCP Option 55 and 77

The DHCP sensors use the following DHCP options on the ISE for native and remote profiling:

- **Option 12**: Hostname
- **Option 6**: Class Identifier

Along with this, the following options needs to be sent to the ISE for profiling:

- **Option 55**: Parameter Request List
- **Option 77**: User Class

## Configuration to Send DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.

**Step 2** On the**Policy Profile** page, click **Add** to view the **Add Policy Profile** window.

**Step 3** Click **Access Policies** tab, choose the **RADIUS Profiling** and **DHCP TLV Caching** check boxes to configure radius profiling and DHCP TLV Caching on a WLAN.

**Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

## Configuration to Send DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1` | Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **dhcp-tlv-caching**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# dhcp-tlv-caching` | Configures DHCP TLV caching on a WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **radius-profiling**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# radius-profiling` | Configures client radius profiling on a WLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring EAP Request Timeout (GUI)

Follow the steps given below to configure the EAP Request Timeout through the GUI:

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Advanced EAP**.

**Step 2** In the **EAP-Identity-Request Timeout** field, specify the amount of time (in seconds) in which the device attempts to send an EAP identity request to wireless clients using local EAP.

**Step 3** In the **EAP-Identity-Request Max Retries** field, specify the maximum number of times that the device attempts to retransmit the EAP identity request to wireless clients using local EAP.

**Step 4** Set **EAP Max-Login Ignore Identity Response** to **Enabled** state to limit the number of clients that can be connected to the device with the same username. You can log in up to eight times from different clients (PDA, laptop, IP phone, and so on) on the same device. The default state is **Disabled**.

**Step 5** In the **EAP-Request Timeout** field, specify the amount of time (in seconds) in which the device attempts to send an EAP request to wireless clients using local EAP.

**Step 6** In the **EAP-Request Max Retries** field, specify the maximum number of times that the device attempts to retransmit the EAP request to wireless clients using local EAP.

**Step 7** In the **EAPOL-Key Timeout** field, specify the amount of time (in seconds) in which the device attempts to send an EAP key over the LAN to wireless clients using local EAP.

**Step 8** In the **EAPOL-Key Max Retries** field, specify the maximum number of times that the device attempts to send an EAP key over the LAN to wireless clients using local EAP.

**Step 9** In the **EAP-Broadcast Key Interval** field, specify the time interval between rotations of the broadcast encryption key used for clients and click **Apply**.

**Note**

After configuring the EAP-Broadcast key interval to a new time period, you must shut down or restart the WLAN for the changes to take effect. Once the WLAN is shut down or restarted, the M5 and M6 packets are exchanged when the configured timer value expires.

# Configuring EAP Request Timeout

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps client-exclusion dot1x-timeout**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps client-exclusion dot1x-timeout` | Enables exclusion on timeout and no response.<br>By default, this feature is enabled.<br>To disable, append a **no** at the beginning of the command. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring EAP Request Timeout in Wireless Security (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless security dot1x request** {**retries** *0 - 20* \| **timeout** *1 - 120*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless security dot1x request timeout 60` | Configures the EAP request retransmission timeout value in seconds. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode. |

# Captive Portal

## Captive Portal Configuration

This feature enables you to configure multiple web authentication URLs (including external captive URLs) for the same SSID based on an AP. The default setting is to use the Global URL for authentication. The override option is available at WLAN and AP level.

The order of precedence is:

- AP
- WLAN
- Global configuration

### Restrictions for Captive Portal Configuration

- This configuration is supported in a standalone controller only.
- Export-Anchor configuration is not supported.

## Configuring Captive Portal (GUI)

### Procedure

| | |
|---|---|
| **Step 1** | Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**. |
| **Step 2** | Click **Add**. |
| **Step 3** | In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**. |
| **Step 4** | In the **Security** > **Layer2** tab, uncheck the **WPA Policy**, **AES** and **802.1x** check boxes. |
| **Step 5** | In the **Security** > **Layer3** tab, choose the parameter map from the **Web Auth Parameter Map** drop-down list and authentication list from the **Authentication List** drop-down list. |
| **Step 6** | In the **Security** >**AAA** tab, choose the Authentication list from the **Authentication List** drop-down list. |
| **Step 7** | Click **Apply to Device**. |
| **Step 8** | Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Web Auth**. |
| **Step 9** | Choose a **Web Auth Parameter Map**. |
| **Step 10** | In the **General** tab, enter the **Maximum HTTP connections**, **Init-State Timeout(secs)** and choose **webauth** from the **Type** drop-down list. |
| **Step 11** | In the **Advanced** tab, under the **Redirect to external server** settings, enter the **Redirect for log-in** server. |
| **Step 12** | Click **Update & Apply**. |

# Configuring Captive Portal

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** {*profile-name* \| **shutdown**} *network-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan edc6 6 edc` | Configures the WLAN profile. Enables or Disables all WLANs and creates the WLAN identifier. The profile-name and the SSID network name should be up to 32 alphanumeric charcters. |
| **Step 3** | **ip** {**access-group** \| **verify**} **web** *IPv4-ACL-Name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# ip access-group web CPWebauth` | Configures the WLAN web ACL.<br>**Note**<br>WLAN needs to be disabled before performing this operation. |
| **Step 4** | **no security wpa**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa` | Disables WPA security. |
| **Step 5** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for dot1x. |
| **Step 6** | **no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes` | Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES. |
| **Step 7** | **security web-auth** {**authentication-list** *authentication-list-name* \| **authorization-list** *authorization-list-name* \| **on-macfilter-failure** \| **parameter-map** *parameter-map-name*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list cp-webauth`<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map parMap6` | Enables web authentication for WLAN. Here,<br>• **authentication-list**<br>*authentication-list-name*: Sets the authentication list for IEEE 802.1x.<br>• **authorization-list**<br>*authorization-list-name*: Sets the override-authorization list for IEEE 802.1x.<br>• **on-macfilter-failure**: Enables Web authentication on MAC filter failure. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | • **parameter-map**<br>*parameter-map-name*: Configures the parameter map.<br>**Note** When **security web-auth** is enabled, you get to map the default **authentication-list** and global **parameter-map**. This is applicable for authentication-list and parameter-map that are not explicitly mentioned. |
| **Step 8** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |
| **Step 9** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# exit` | Exits from the WLAN configuration. |
| **Step 10** | **parameter-map type webauth** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth parMap6` | Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode. |
| **Step 11** | **parameter-map type webauth** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth parMap6` | Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode. |
| **Step 12** | **type webauth**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type webauth` | Configures the webauth type parameter. |
| **Step 13** | **timeout init-state sec** <*timeout-seconds*><br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# timeout inti-state sec 3600` | Configures the WEBAUTH timeout in seconds. Valid range for the time in sec parameter is 60 seconds to 3932100 seconds. |
| **Step 14** | **redirect for-login** <*URL-String*><br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect for-login https://172.16.100.157/portal/login.html` | Configures the URL string for redirect during login. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 15** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-params-parameter-map)# exit` | Exits the parameters configuration. |
| **Step 16** | **wireless tag policy** *policy-tag-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless tag policy policy_tag_edc6` | Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode. |
| **Step 17** | **wlan** *wlan-profile-name* **policy** *policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan edc6 policy policy_profile_flex` | Attaches a policy profile to a WLAN profile. |
| **Step 18** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# end` | Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Captive Portal Configuration - Example

The following example shows how you can have APs at different locations, broadcasting the same SSID but redirecting clients to different redirect portals:

Configuring multiple parameter maps pointing to different redirect portal:

```
parameter-map type webauth parMap1
type webauth
timeout init-state sec 21600
redirect for-login
https://172.16.12.3:8080/portal/PortalSetup.action?portal=cfdbce00-2ce2-11e8-b83c-005056a06b27
redirect portal ipv4 172.16.12.3
!
!
parameter-map type webauth parMap11
type webauth
timeout init-state sec 21600
redirect for-login
https://172.16.12.4:8443/portal/PortalSetup.action?portal=094e7270-3808-11e8-9797-02421e4cae0c
redirect portal ipv4 172.16.12.4
!
```

Associating these parameter maps to different WLANs:

```
wlan edc1 1 edc
ip access-group web CPWebauth
no security wpa
no security wpa akm dot1x
no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes
security web-auth
security web-auth authentication-list cp-webauth
security web-auth parameter-map parMap11
```

```
no shutdown
wlan edc2 2 edc
ip access-group web CPWebauth
no security wpa
no security wpa akm dot1x
no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes
security web-auth
security web-auth authentication-list cp-webauth
security web-auth parameter-map parMap1
no shutdown
```



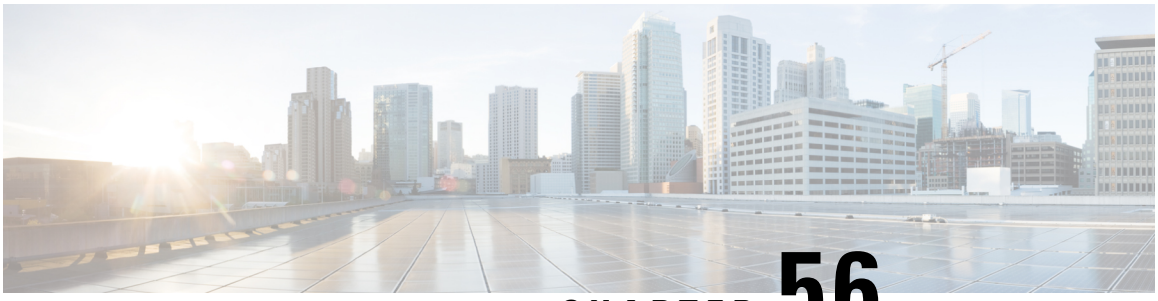
**Note** All WLANs have identical SSIDs.

Associating WLANs to different policy tags:

```
wireless tag policy policy_tag_edc1
wlan edc1 policy policy_profile_flex
wireless tag policy policy_tag_edc2
wlan edc2 policy policy_profile_flex
```

Assigning these policy tags to the desired APs:

```
ap E4AA.5D13.14DC
policy-tag policy_tag_edc1
site-tag site_tag_flex
ap E4AA.5D2C.3CAC
policy-tag policy_tag_edc2
site-tag site_tag_flex
```



CHAPTER 56

# Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers


- Information About Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers, on page 473
- Configuring 802.1X Security for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers, on page 474
- Configuring Web Authentication for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers, on page 481
- Verifying Split Authentication and Authorization Configuration, on page 482
- Configuration Examples, on page 483


## Information About Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers

Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points uses the approach of request and response transaction with a single RADIUS server that combines both authentication and authorization. You can split the authentication and authorization on the controller between multiple RADIUS servers.

A RADIUS sever can assume the role of either an authentication server, authorization server, or both. In cases where there are disparate RADIUS servers for authentication and authorization, the Session Aware Networking (SANet) component on the embedded wireless controller now allows authentication on one server and authorization on another when a client joins the embedded wireless controller.

Authentication can be done using the Cisco ISE, Cisco Catalyst Center, Free RADIUS, or any third-party RADIUS Server. After successful authentication from an authentication server, the embedded wireless controller relays attributes received from the authentication server to another RADIUS sever designated as authorization server.

The authorization server then performs the following:

- Processes received attributes with the other policies or rules defined on the server.
- Derives attributes as part of the authorization response and returns it to the embedded wireless controller.

**Note** In a split authentication and authorization configuration, both servers must be available and must successfully authenticate and authorize with an ACCESS-ACCEPT for a session to be accepted by the embedded wireless controller.

**Note** A maximum of 100 entries is supported in the Authentication/Authorization list created through Cisco Catalyst Center provisioning. The entries beyond 100 do not work even though they can be created.

# Configuring 802.1X Security for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers

## Configuring Explicit Authentication and Authorization Server List (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **AAA**.

**Step 2** On the **Authentication Authorization and Accounting** page, click the **Servers/Groups** tab.

**Step 3** Click the type of AAA server you want to configure from the following options:

- RADIUS
- TACACS+
- LDAP

In this procedure, the RADIUS server configuration is described.

**Step 4** With the **RADIUS** option selected, click **Add**.

**Step 5** Enter a name for the RADIUS server and the IPv4 or IPV6 address of the server.

**Step 6** Enter the authentication and encryption key to be used between the device and the key string RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. You can choose to use either a PAC key or a non-PAC key.

**Step 7** Enter the server timeout value; valid range is 1 to 1000 seconds.

**Step 8** Enter a retry count; valid range is 0 to 100.

**Step 9** Leave the **Support for CoA** field in **Enabled** state.

**Step 10** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

**Step 11** On the **Authentication Authorization and Accounting** page, with **RADIUS** option selected, click the **Server Groups** tab.

**Step 12** Click **Add**.

**Step 13** In the **Create AAA RADIUS Server Group** window that is displayed, enter a name for the RADIUS server group.

**Step 14** From the **MAC-Delimiter** drop-down list, choose the delimiter to be used in the MAC addresses that are sent to the RADIUS servers.

**Step 15** From the **MAC Filtering** drop-down list, choose a value based on which to filter MAC addresses.

**Step 16** To configure dead time for the server group and direct AAA traffic to alternative groups of servers that have different operational characteristics, in the **Dead-Time** field, enter the amount of time, in minutes, after which a server is assumed to be dead.

**Step 17** Choose the servers that you want to include in the server group from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list.

**Step 18** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Explicit Authentication Server List (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **AAA** > **Servers/Groups**.

**Step 2** Choose **RADIUS** > **Servers** tab.

**Step 3** Click **Add** to add a new server or click an existing server.

**Step 4** Enter the **Name**, the **Server Address**, **Key**, **Confirm Key**, **Auth Port** and **Acct Port.** Check the **PAC Key** checkbox and enter the **PAC key** and **Confirm PAC Key**

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

**Step 6** Choose **RADIUS** > **Server Groups** and click **Add** to add a new server group or click an existing server group.

**Step 7** Enter the **Name** of the server group and choose the servers that you want to include in the server group, from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list.

**Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Explicit Authentication Server List (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **radius server** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius server free-radius-authc-server` | Specifies the RADIUS server name. |
| **Step 4** | **address ipv4** *address* **auth-port** *auth_port_number* **acct-port** *acct_port_number*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 9.2.62.56 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813` | Specifies the RADIUS server parameters. |
| **Step 5** | [**pac**] **key** *key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# key cisco` | Specify the authentication and encryption key used between the Device and the key string RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. |
| **Step 6** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# exit` | Returns to the configuration mode. |
| **Step 7** | **aaa group server radius** *server-group*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa group server radius authc-server-group` | Creates a radius server-group identification.<br>*server-group* refers to the server group name. The valid range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>If the IP address of the RADIUS server is not added to the routes defined for the controller, the default route is used. We recommend that you define a specific route to source the traffic from the defined SVI in the AAA server group. |
| **Step 8** | **server name** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# server name free-radius-authc-server` | Configures the server name. |
| **Step 9** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode.<br>For more information, see **Configuring AAA for External Authentication**. |

# Configuring Explicit Authorization Server List (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **AAA** > **Servers/Groups**.

**Step 2** Choose **RADIUS** > **Servers** tab.

**Step 3** Click **Add** to add a new server or click an existing server.

**Step 4** Enter the **Name**, the **Server Address**, **Key**, **Confirm Key**, **Auth Port** and **Acct Port.** Check the **PAC Key** checkbox and enter the **PAC key** and **Confirm PAC Key**

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

**Step 6** Choose **RADIUS** > **Server Groups** and click **Add** to add a new server group or click an existing server group.

**Step 7** Enter the **Name** of the server group and choose the servers that you want to include in the server group, from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list.

**Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configure Explicit Authorization Server List (CLI)

You must direct AAA validation access requests to a specific server. Otherwise, the wireless controller selects any available AAA server from the configured pool to validate access requests. Because the controller cannot target a specific server for validation, you may face inefficiencies and potential security vulnerabilities.

To address this, an authorization method list is created to allow administrators to explicitly direct the controller to use a specific AAA server or the local database for validation. This configuration ensures a streamlined and secure validation process by eliminating randomness in server selection.

Benefits of this approach are:

- **Improved Control**: You can explicitly define which AAA server handles validation requests and ensure precise control over server selection.
- **Flexibility**: You can configure either an external AAA server or a local database based on the network's requirements.
- **Enhanced Security**: By specifying the AAA server, you can ensure that only trusted servers are used for validation, reducing the risk of unauthorized access.

Follow these steps to configure an explicit authorization server list using the command line interface:

**Procedure**

**Step 1** **enable**

**Example:**

```
Device> enable
```

Enables privileged EXEC mode.

Enter your password if prompted.

**Step 2** **configure terminal**

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 3** **aaa new-model**

Sets up the security framework by enabling AAA features for authentication, authorization, and accounting.

**Step 4** Configures a RADIUS server to enable centralized authentication, authorization, and accounting for secure and scalable network access control.

a) **radius server** *server-name*

Specifies the RADIUS server name.

b) **address ipv4** *address* **auth-port** *auth_port_number* **acct-port** *acct_port_number*

Specifies the RADIUS server parameters.

c) **pac key** *key*

Specify the authorization and encryption key used between the device and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server by key string encryption.

d) **exit**

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# radius server cisco-catalyst-center-authz-server
Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.4.62.32 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
Device(config-radius-server)# pac key cisco
Device(config-radius-server)# exit
```

**Step 5** Configure the RADIUS group.

a) **aaa group server radius** *server-group*

Creates a radius server-group identification.

b) **server name** *server-name*

c) **end**

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authz-server-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server name cisco-catalyst-center-authz-server
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
```

**Step 6** **aaa authorization network rogued group** *group-name*

Using the previously specified server group, defines a network-level authorization policy for access control.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# aaa authorization network rogued group authz-server-group
```

**Step 7** Creates an attribute list to apply custom authentication or authorization attributes.

a) **aaa attribute list** *aaa-attribute-list-name*

Creates an attribute list to specify policies for rogue AP detection and control and enters the attribute list configuration mode.

b) **aaa attribute type rogue-ap-state {alert | contain | threat }**

Identifies the device with a specific rogue state for network policies.

c) **aaa attribute type rogue-ap-class {unclassified | malicious | friendly }**

Identifies the device with a specific rogue class for network policies.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# aaa attribute list rogue-attributes
Device(config-attr-list)# attribute type rogue-ap-state "alert"
Device(config-attr-list)# attribute type rogue-ap-class "malicious"
Device(config-attr-list)# exit
```

**Step 8** **username** *user-name* **mac aaa attribute list** *aaa-attribute-list-name*

Defines a client with a specific MAC address as a *username* and associates it with the previously defined AAA attribute list. This allows for controlled access or applies policy decisions for that specific client.

**Important**
For rogue validation, the *username* must be a MAC address in the semicolon format.

**Example:**

In the example, you define a client with a specific MAC address (00:00:00:00:00:00) as a *username* and associate it with an AAA attribute list named **rogue-attributes** This allows for the use of specific AAA (authentication, authorization, and accounting) attributes to be applied to this MAC address, typically to control access or apply policy decisions for that client.

```
Device(config)# username 00:00:00:00:00:00 mac aaa attribute list rogue-attributes
```

**Step 9** **show running-config | include aaa**

Displays the AAA running configuration for review.

Setting up these configurations ensure that only authorized clients can access the network, and any suspicious activity is flagged and handled appropriately.

# Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for 802.1X Security (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**.

**Step 4** In the **Security** > **AAA** tab, choose the Authentication list from the **Authentication List** drop-down list.

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for 802.1X Security

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **wlan** *wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-foo 222 foo-ssid` | Enters WLAN configuration sub-mode.<br>• *wlan-name*: Is the name of the configured WLAN.<br>• *wlan-id*: Is the wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512.<br>• *SSID-name*: Is the SSID name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>**Note**<br>If you have already configured this command, enter **wlan** *wlan-name* command. |
| **Step 4** | **security dot1x authentication-list** *authenticate-list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list authc-server-group` | Enables authentication list for dot1x security. |
| **Step 5** | **security dot1x authorization-list** *authorize-list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authorization-list authz-server-group` | Specifies authorization list for dot1x security.<br>For more information on the **Cisco Catalyst Center**, see the **Cisco Catalyst Center documentation**. |
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Web Authentication for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers

## Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for Web Authentication (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**.

**Step 4** In the **Security** > **Layer2** tab, uncheck the **WPAPolicy**, **AES** and **802.1x** check boxes.

**Step 5** Check the **MAC Filtering** check box to enable the feature. With MAC Filtering enabled, choose the Authorization list from the **Authorization List** drop-down list.

**Step 6** In the **Security** > **AAA** tab, choose the Authentication list from the **Authentication List** drop-down list.

**Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.

## Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for Web Authentication

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **wlan** *wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-bar 1 bar-ssid` | Enters WLAN configuration sub-mode.<br>• *wlan-name*: Is the name of the configured WLAN.<br>• *wlan-id*: Is the wireless LAN identifier.<br>• *SSID-name*: Is the SSID name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | **Note** If you have already configured this command, enter **wlan** *wlan-name* command. |
| **Step 4** | **no security wpa**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa` | Disables WPA security. |
| **Step 5** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for dot1x. |
| **Step 6** | **no security wpa wpa2**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2` | Disables WPA2 security. |
| **Step 7** | **security web-auth** {**authentication-list** *authenticate-list-name* \| **authorization-list** *authorize-list-name*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list authc-server-group` | Enables authentication or authorization list for dot1x security.<br>**Note** You get to view the following error, if you do not disable WPA security, AKM for dot1x, and WPA2 security:<br>*% switch-1:dbm:wireless:web-auth cannot be enabled. Invalid WPA/WPA2 settings.* |
| **Step 8** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Verifying Split Authentication and Authorization Configuration

To view the WLAN details, use the following command:

```
Device# show run wlan
wlan wlan-foo 2 foo-ssid
security dot1x authentication-list authc-server-group
security dot1x authorization-list authz-server-group

wlan wlan-bar 3 bar-ssid
security web-auth authentication-list authc-server-group
security web-auth authorization-list authz-server-group
```

To view the AAA authentication and server details, use the following command:

```
Device# show run aaa
!
aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
```

```
username cisco privilege 15 password 0 cisco
!
!
radius server free-radius-authc-server
 address ipv4 9.2.62.56 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
 key cisco
!
radius server cisco-catalyst-center-authz-server
 address ipv4 9.4.62.32 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
 pac key cisco
!
!
aaa new-model
aaa session-id common
!
```

To view the authentication and authorization list for 802.1X security, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan name wlan-foo | sec 802.1x
802.1x authentication list name               : authc-server-group
802.1x authorization list name                : authz-server-group
            802.1x                            : Enabled
```

To view the authentication and authorization list for web authentication, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan name wlan-bar | sec Webauth
    Webauth On-mac-filter Failure             : Disabled
    Webauth Authentication List Name          : authc-server-group
    Webauth Authorization List Name           : authz-server-group
    Webauth Parameter Map                     : Disabled
```

# Configuration Examples

### Configuring Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points for Authentication with a Third-Party RADIUS Server: Example

This example shows how to configure Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points for authentication with a third-party RADIUS server:

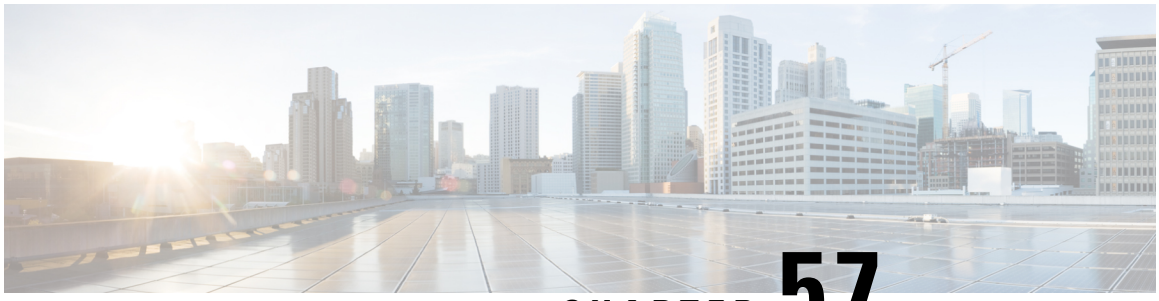
```
Device(config)# radius server free-radius-authc-server
Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 9.2.62.56 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
Device(config-radius-server)# key cisco
Device(config-radius-server)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authc-server-group
Device(config)# server name free-radius-authc-server
Device(config)# end
```

### Configuring Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points for Authorization with Cisco ISE or Cisco Catalyst Center: Example

This example shows how to configure Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points for authorization with Cisco ISE or Cisco Catalyst Center:

```
Device(config)# radius server cisco-catalyst-center-authz-server
Device (config-radius-server)# address ipv4 9.4.62.32 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
```

```
Device (config-radius-server)# pac key cisco
Device (config-radius-server)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authz-server-group
Device(config)# server name cisco-catalyst-center-authz-server
Device(config)# end
```



CHAPTER 57

# Secure LDAP


- Information About SLDAP, on page 485
- Prerequisite for Configuring SLDAP, on page 487
- Restrictions for Configuring SLDAP, on page 487
- Configuring SLDAP, on page 487
- Configuring an AAA Server Group (GUI), on page 488
- Configuring a AAA Server Group, on page 489
- Configuring Search and Bind Operations for an Authentication Request, on page 490
- Configuring a Dynamic Attribute Map on an SLDAP Server, on page 491
- Verifying the SLDAP Configuration, on page 491


# Information About SLDAP

### Transport Layer Security (TLS)

The Transport Layer Security (TLS) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data through privacy, authentication, and data integrity. TLS relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys to prove the identity of clients.

The certificates are issued by the Certificate Authorities (CAs).

Each certificate includes the following:

- The name of the authority that issued it.
- The name of the entity to which the certificate was issued.
- The public key of the entity.
- The timestamps of the entity that indicate the expiration date of the certificate.

You can find the TLS support for LDAP in the RFC2830 which is an extension to the LDAP protocol.

### LDAP Operations

*Bind*

The bind operation is used to authenticate a user to the server. It is used to start a connection with the LDAP server. LDAP is a connection-oriented protocol. The client specifies the protocol version and authentication information.

LDAP supports the following binds:

- Authenticated bind—An authenticated bind is performed when a root Distinguished Name (DN) and password are available.
- Anonymous bind—In the absence of a root DN and password, an anonymous bind is performed.

In LDAP deployments, the search operation is performed first and the bind operation later. This is because, if a password attribute is returned as part of the search operation, the password verification can be done locally on an LDAP client. Thus, there is no need to perform an extra bind operation. If a password attribute is not returned, the bind operation can be performed later. Another advantage of performing a search operation first and a bind operation later is that the DN received in the search result can be used as the user DN instead of forming a DN by prefixing the username (cn attribute) with the base DN. All entries stored in an LDAP server have a unique DN.

The DN consists of two parts:

- Relative Distinguished Name (RDN)
- Location in the LDAP server where the record resides.

Most of the entries that you store in an LDAP server will have a name, and the name is frequently stored in the Common Name (cn) attribute. Because every object has a name, most objects you store in an LDAP will use their cn value as the basis for their RDN.

*Search*

A search operation is used to search the LDAP server. The client specifies the starting point (base DN) of the search, the search scope (either the object, its children, or the subtree rooted at the object), and a search filter.

For authorization requests, the search operation is directly performed without a bind operation. The LDAP server can be configured with certain privileges for the search operation to succeed. This privilege level is established with the bind operation.

An LDAP search operation can return multiple user entries for a specific user. In such cases, the LDAP client returns an appropriate error code to AAA. To avoid these errors, you must configure appropriate search filters to match a single entry.

*Compare*

The compare operation is used to replace a bind request with a compare request for an authentication. The compare operation helps to maintain the initial bind parameters for the connection.

### LDAP Dynamic Attribute Mapping

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a powerful and flexible protocol for communication with AAA servers. LDAP attribute maps provide a method to cross-reference the attributes retrieved from a server to Cisco attributes supported by the security appliances.

When a user authenticates a security appliance, the security appliance, in turn, authenticates the server and uses the LDAP protocol to retrieve the record for that user. The record consists of LDAP attributes associated with fields displayed on the user interface of the server. Each attribute retrieved includes a value that was entered by the administrator who updates the user records.

# Prerequisite for Configuring SLDAP

If you are using a secure Transport Layer Security (TLS) secure connection, you must configure the X.509 certificates.

# Restrictions for Configuring SLDAP

- LDAP referrals are not supported.
- Unsolicited messages or notifications from the LDAP server are not handled.
- LDAP authentication is not supported for interactive (terminal) sessions.

# Configuring SLDAP

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **ldap server** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ldap server server1` | Defines a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server and enters LDAP server configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **ipv4** *ipv4-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ldap-server)# ipv4 9.4.109.20` | Specifies the LDAP server IP address using IPv4. |
| **Step 5** | **timeout retransmit** *seconds*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ldap-server)# timeout retransmit 20` | Specifies the number of seconds the embedded wireless controller waits for a reply to an LDAP request before retransmitting the request. |
| **Step 6** | **bind authenticate root-dn password** [**0** *string* \| **7** *string*] *string*<br>**Example:** | Specifies a shared secret text string used between the embedded wireless controller and an LDAP server. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-ldap-server)# bind authenticate root-dn CN=ldapipv6user,CN=Users,DC=ca,DC=ssh2,DC=com password Cisco12345` | Use the **0** line option to configure an unencrypted shared secret.<br>Use the **7** line option to configure an encrypted shared secret. |
| **Step 7** | **base-dn** *string*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ldap-server)# base-dn CN=Users,DC=ca,DC=ssh2,DC=com` | Specifies the base Distinguished Name (DN) of the search. |
| **Step 8** | **mode secure** [**no- negotiation**]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ldap-server)# mode secure no- negotiation` | Configures LDAP to initiate the TLS connection and specifies the secure mode. |
| **Step 9** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ldap-server)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring an AAA Server Group (GUI)

Configuring a device to use AAA server groups helps you to group existing server hosts, select a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. A server group is used with a global server-host list. The server group lists the IP addresses of the selected server hosts.

You can create the following server groups:

### Procedure

**Step 1** RADIUS

a) Choose **Services** > **Security** > **AAA** > **Server Groups** > **RADIUS**.
b) Click the **Add** button. The **Create AAA Radius Server Group** dialog box appears.
c) Enter a name for the RADIUS server group in the **Name** field.
d) Choose a desired delimiter from the **MAC-Delimiter** drop-down list. The available options are colon, hyphen, and single-hyphen.
e) Choose a desired filter from the **MAC-Filtering** drop-down list. The available options are mac and Key.
f) Enter a value in the **Dead-Time (mins)** field to make a server non-operational. You must specify a value between 1 and 1440.
g) Choose any of the available servers from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list by clicking the **>** button.
h) Click the **Save & Apply to Device** button.

**Step 2** TACACS+

a) Choose **Services** > **Security** > **AAA** > **Server Groups** > **TACACS+**.

b) Click the **Add** button. The **Create AAA Tacacs Server Group** dialog box appears.
c) Enter a name for the TACACS server group in the **Name** field.
d) Choose any of the available servers from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list by clicking the **>** button.
e) Click the **Save & Apply to Device** button.

**Step 3** LDAP

a) Choose **Services** > **Security** > **AAA** > **Server Groups** > **LDAP**.
b) Click the **Add** button. The **Create AAA Ldap Server Group** dialog box appears.
c) Enter a name for the LDAP server group in the **Name** field.
d) Choose any of the available servers from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list by clicking the **>** button.
e) Click the **Save & Apply to Device** button.

# Configuring a AAA Server Group

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa new-model**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa new-model` | Enables AAA. |
| **Step 4** | **aaa group server ldap** *group-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa group server ldap name1` | Defines the AAA server group with a group name and enters LDAP server group configuration mode.<br>All members of a group must be of the same type, that is, RADIUS, LDAP, or TACACS+. |
| **Step 5** | **server** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ldap-sg)# server server1` | Associates a particular LDAP server with the defined server group.<br>Each security server is identified by its IP address and UDP port number. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 6** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ldap-sg)# exit` | Exits LDAP server group configuration mode. |

# Configuring Search and Bind Operations for an Authentication Request

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa new-model**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa new-model` | Enables AAA. |
| **Step 4** | **ldap server** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ldap server server1` | Defines a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server and enters LDAP server configuration mode. |
| **Step 5** | **authentication bind-first**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ldap-server)# authentication bind-first` | Configures the sequence of search and bind operations for an authentication request. |
| **Step 6** | **authentication compare**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ldap-server)# authentication compare` | Replaces the bind request with the compare request for authentication. |
| **Step 7** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ldap-server)# exit` | Exits LDAP server group configuration mode. |

# Configuring a Dynamic Attribute Map on an SLDAP Server

You must create LDAP attribute maps that map your existing user-defined attribute names and values to Cisco attribute names and values that are compatible with the security appliance. You can then bind these attribute maps to LDAP servers or remove them as required.

**Note** To use the attribute mapping features correctly, you need to understand the Cisco LDAP and user-defined attribute names and values.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **ldap attribute-map** *map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ldap attribute-map map1` | Configures a dynamic LDAP attribute map and enters attribute-map configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **map type** *ldap-attr-type aaa-attr-type*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-attr-map)# map type department supplicant-group` | Defines an attribute map. |
| **Step 5** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-attr-map)# exit` | Exits attribute-map configuration mode. |

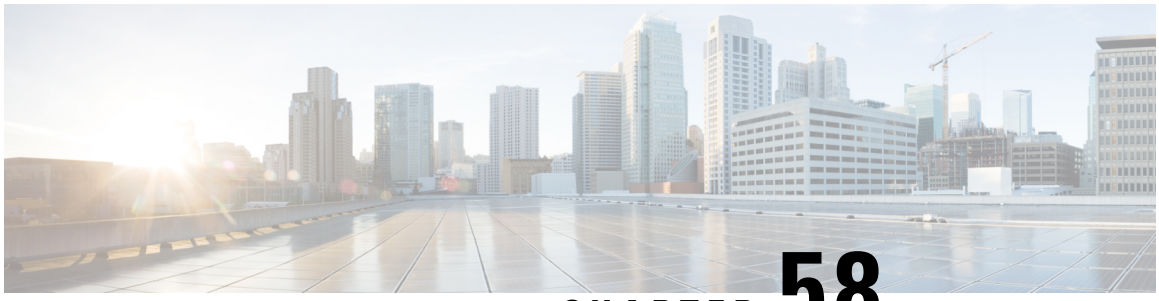
# Verifying the SLDAP Configuration

To view details about the default LDAP attribute mapping, use the following command:

```
Device# show ldap attributes
```

To view the LDAP server state information and various other counters for the server, use the following command:

```
Device# show ldap server
```



CHAPTER 58

# RADIUS DTLS


- Information About RADIUS DTLS, on page 493
- Prerequisites, on page 495
- Configuring RADIUS DTLS Server, on page 495
- Configuring DTLS Dynamic Author, on page 500
- Enabling DTLS for Client, on page 501
- Verifying the RADIUS DTLS Server Configuration, on page 504
- Clearing RADIUS DTLS Specific Statistics, on page 504


## Information About RADIUS DTLS

The Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a client or server protocol that provides centralized security for users attempting to gain management access to a network. The RADIUS protocol is a widely deployed authentication and authorization protocol that delivers a complete Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) solution.

### RADIUS DTLS Port

The RADIUS port (DTLS server) is used for authentication and accounting. The default DTLS server port is 2083.

You can change the RADIUS DTLS port number using **dtls port** *port_number*. For more information, see the Configuring RADIUS DTLS Port Number section.

### Shared Secret

You can use **radius/dtls** as the shared secret, if you have enabled DTLS for a specific server.

### Handling PAC for CTS Communication

You can download PAC from ISE for CTS communication. Once the PAC is downloaded, you need to encrypt all the CTS attributes with the PAC key instead of the shared secret.

The ISE then decrypts these attributes using PAC.

### Session Management

The RADIUS client purely depends on the response from the DTLS server. If the session is ideal for ideal timeout, then the session must be closed.

In case of invalid responses, the sessions must be deleted.

If you need to send the radius packets over DTLS, the DTLS session needs to be re-established with the specific server.

### Load Balancing

Multiple DTLS servers and load balancing methods are configured.

You need to select the AAA server to which the request needs to be sent. Then use the DTLS context of the specific server to encrypt the RADIUS packet and send it back.

### Connection Timeout

After the encrypted RADIUS packet is sent, you need to start the retransmission timer. If you do not get a response before the retransmission timer expires, the packet is re-encrypted and re-transmitted.

You can continue for number of times as per the **dtls retries** configuration or till the default value. Once the number of tries exceeds the limit, the server becomes unavailable and responses are sent back to the AAA clients.



**Note** The default connection timeout is 5 seconds.

### Connection Retries

As the RADIUS DTLS is UDP based, you need to retry the connection after a specific timeout interval for a specific number of retries.

RADSEC consists of two types: RADIUS-over-TLS (using TCP) and RADIUS-over-DTLS (using UDP). Cisco IOS-XE support RADIUS-over-DTLS (UDP) but does not support RADIUS-over-TLS (TCP), as outlined in RFC 7360.

After all retries are exhausted, the DTLS connection performs the following:

- Is marked as unsuccessful.
- Looks up for the next available server for processing the RADIUS requests.



**Note** The default connection retries is 5.

### Idle Timeout

When the idle timer expires and no transactions exists since the last idle timeout, the DTLS session remains closed.

After you establish the DTLS session, you can start the idle timer. If you start the idle timer for 30 seconds and one of the RADIUS DTLS packet is sent, then after 30 seconds, the idle timer expires and checks for number of RADIUS DTLS transactions.

If the idle timer value exceeds zero, the idle timer resets the transaction counter and restarts the timer.

**Note** The default idle timeout is 60 seconds.

### Handling Server and Server Group Failover

You can configure RADIUS servers with and without DTLS. It is recommended to create AAA server groups with DTLS enabled servers and non-DTLS servers. However, you will not find any such restriction while configuring AAA server groups.

Suppose you choose a DTLS server, the DTLS server establishes connection and RADIUS request packet is sent to the DTLS server. If the DTLS server does not respond after all RADIUS retries, it would fall over to the next configured server in the same server group. If the next server is a DTLS server, the processing of the RADIUS request packet continues with the next server. If the next server is a non-DTLS server, the processing of RADIUS request packet does not happen in that server group. Then the server group failover occurs and the same sequence continues with the next server group, if the next server group is available.

**Note** You need to use either only DTLS or non-DTLS servers in a server group.

# Prerequisites

### Support for IOS and BINOS AAA

The AAA server runs in IOS and BINOS platforms. Once you complete the RADIUS DTLS support in IOS, the same needs to be ported to BINOS.

# Configuring RADIUS DTLS Server

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **radius server** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius server R1` | Specifies the RADIUS server name. |
| **Step 4** | **dtls**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# dtls` | Configures DTLS parameters. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring RADIUS DTLS Connection Timeout

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **radius server** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius server R1` | Specifies the RADIUS server name. |
| **Step 4** | **dtls connectiontimeout** *timeout*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# dtls connectiontimeout 1` | Configures RADIUS DTLS connection timeout.<br>Here,<br>*timeout* refers to the DTLS connection timeout value. The valid range is from 1 to 65535. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring RADIUS DTLS Idle Timeout

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **radius server** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius server R1` | Specifies the RADIUS server name. |
| **Step 4** | **dtls idletimeout** *idle_timeout*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# dtls idletimeout 2` | Configures RADIUS DTLS idle timeout.<br>Here,<br>*idle_timeout* refers to the DTLS idle timeout value. The valid range is from 1 to 65535. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Source Interface for RADIUS DTLS Server

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **radius server** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius server R1` | Specifies the RADIUS server name. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **dtls ip** {**radius source-interface Ethernet-Internal** *interface_number*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# dtls ip radius source-interface Ethernet-Internal 0` | Configures source interface for RADIUS DTLS server.<br>Here,<br>• *interface_number* refers to the Ethernet-Internal interface number. The default value is 0. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring RADIUS DTLS Port Number

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **radius server** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius server R1` | Specifies the RADIUS server name. |
| **Step 4** | **dtls port** *port_number*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# dtls port 2` | Configures RADIUS DTLS port number.<br>Here,<br>*port_number* refers to the DTLS port number. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring RADIUS DTLS Connection Retries

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **radius server** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius server R1` | Specifies the RADIUS server name. |
| **Step 4** | **dtls retries** *retry_number*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# dtls retries 3` | Configures RADIUS connection retries.<br>Here,<br>*retry_number* refers to the DTLS connection retries. The valid range is from 1 to 65535. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring RADIUS DTLS Trustpoint

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **radius server** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius server R1` | Specifies the RADIUS server name. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **dtls trustpoint** {**client** *LINE* **dtls** \| **server** *LINE* **dtls**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# dtls trustpoint client client1 dtls`<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# dtls trustpoint server server1 dtls` | Configures trustpoint for client and server. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring RADIUS DTLS Match-Server-Identity

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`dtls match-server-identity hostname <name>` | Configure the RADSEC certification validation parameters. |
| **Step 2** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`dtls match-server-identity ip-address <IPv4 or IPv6>` | Configure the RADSEC certification validation parameters. |

# Configuring DTLS Dynamic Author

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **aaa server radius dynamic-author**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author` | Configures local server profile for RFC 3576 support. |
| **Step 4** | **dtls**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# dtls` | Configures DTLS source parameters. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Enabling DTLS for Client

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa server radius dynamic-author**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author` | Configures local server profile for RFC 3576 support. |
| **Step 4** | **client** *IP_addr* **dtls**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 10.104.49.14 dtls` | Enables DTLS for the client. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Client Trustpoint for DTLS

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa server radius dynamic-author**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author` | Configures local server profile for RFC 3576 support. |
| **Step 4** | **client** *IP_addr* **dtls** {**client-tp** *client-tp-name* \| **server-tp** *server-tp-name*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 10.104.49.14 dtls client-tp client_tp_name` | Configures client trustpoint for DTLS. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring DTLS Idle Timeout

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **aaa server radius dynamic-author**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author` | Configures local server profile for RFC 3576 support. |
| **Step 4** | **client** *IP_addr* **dtls idletimeout** *timeout-interval* {**client-tp** *client_tp_name* \| **server-tp** *server_tp_name*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 10.104.49.14 dtls idletimeout 62 client-tp dtls_ise` | Configures DTLS idle time.<br>Here,<br>*timeout-interval* refers to the idle timeout interval. The valid range is from 60 to 600. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Server Trustpoint for DTLS

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa server radius dynamic-author**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author` | Configures local server profile for RFC 3576 support. |
| **Step 4** | **client** *IP_addr* **dtls server-tp** *server_tp_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 10.104.49.14 dtls server-tp dtls_client` | Configures server trust point. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Verifying the RADIUS DTLS Server Configuration

To view information about the DTLS enabled servers, use the following command:

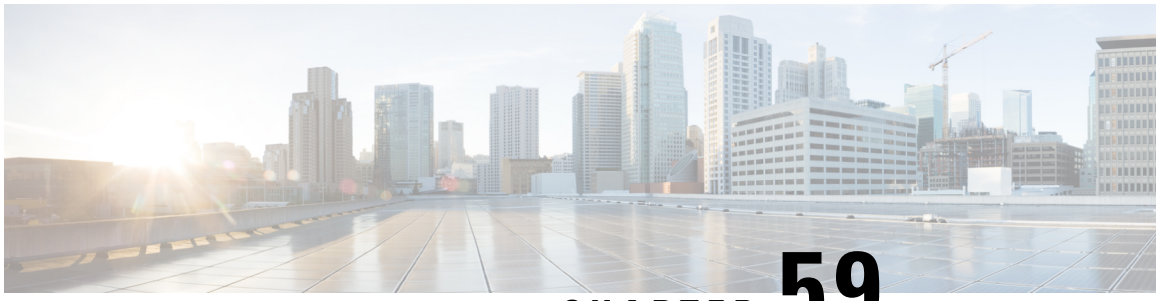
```
Device# show aaa servers
DTLS: Packet count since last idletimeout 1,
Send handshake count 3,
Handshake Success 1,
Total Packets Transmitted 1,
Total Packets Received 1,
Total Connection Resets 2,
Connection Reset due to idle timeout 0,
Connection Reset due to No Response 2,
Connection Reset due to Malformed packet 0,
```

# Clearing RADIUS DTLS Specific Statistics

To clear the radius DTLS specific statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# clear aaa counters servers radius {<server-id> | all}
```

**Note** Here, *server-id* refers to the server ID displayed by **show aaa servers**. The valid range is from 0 to 2147483647.



CHAPTER 59

# MAC Filtering


- MAC Filtering, on page 505
- Configuring MAC Filtering for Local Authentication (CLI), on page 506
- Configuring MAC Filtering (GUI), on page 508
- Configuring MAB for External Authentication (CLI), on page 508


# MAC Filtering

You can configure the embedded wireless controller to authorize clients based on the client MAC address by using the MAC filtering feature.

When MAC filtering is enabled, the embedded wireless controller uses the MAC address as the client identity. The authentication server has a database of client MAC addresses that are allowed network access. The embedded wireless controller sends the authentication server a RADIUS-access/request frame with a username and password based on the client MAC address as soon as it gets the association request from the client. If authorization succeeds, the embedded wireless controller sends a successful association response to the client. If authorization fails, the embedded wireless controller rejects the client association.

Clients that were authorized with MAC filtering can be re-authenticated through the WLAN session timeout feature.

## MAC Filtering Configuration Guidelines

- MAC filtering authentication occurs at the 802.11 association phase and delays the association response until authentication is done. If you use a RADIUS server for MAC filtering, it is advised to keep a low latency between the controller and the RADIUS server. When latency is too high, the client might timeout while waiting for the association response.
- MAC filtering can be combined with other authentication methods such as 802.1X, Pre-Shared Key or it can be used alone.
- MAC addresses can be spoofed and MAC filtering does not consist in a security measure.
- Many clients can use a private MAC address to connect and change it at every session, therefore making it harder to identify devices through their MAC address.

**Note** If wlan-profile-name is configured for a user, guest user authentication is allowed only from that WLAN.

If wlan-profile-name is not configured for a user, guest user authentication is allowed on any WLAN.

If you want the client to connect to SSID1, but not to SSID2 using mac-filtering, ensure that you configure **aaa-override** in the policy profile.

In the following example, when a client with MAC address 112233440001 tries to connect to a WLAN, the request is sent to the local RADIUS server, which checks the presence of the client MAC address in its attribute list (FILTER_1 and FILTER_2). If the client MAC address is listed in an attribute list (FILTER_1), the client is allowed to join the WLAN (WLAN_1) that is returned as *ssid attribute* from the RADIUS server. The client is rejected, if the client MAC address is not listed in the attribute list.

### Local RADIUS Server Configuration

```
!Configures an attribute list as FILTER_2
aaa attribute list FILTER_2
!Defines an attribute type that is to be added to an attribute list.
attribute type ssid "WLAN_2"

!Username with the MAC address is added to the filter
username 112233440001 mac aaa attribute list FILTER_2

!
aaa attribute list FILTER_1
attribute type ssid "WLAN_1"
username 112233440001 aaa attribute list FILTER_1
```

### Controller Configuration

```
! Sets authorization to the local radius server
aaa authorization network MLIST_MACFILTER local

!A WLAN with the SSID WLAN_2 is created and MAC filtering is set along with security
parameters.
wlan WLAN_2 2 WLAN_2
mac-filtering MLIST_MACFILTER
no security wpa
no security wpa wpa2 ciphers

!WLAN with the SSID WLAN_1 is created and MAC filtering is set along with security parameters.
wlan WLAN_1 1 WLAN_1
mac-filtering MLIST_MACFILTER
no security wpa
no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes
no security wpa akm dot1x
security web-auth
security web-auth authentication-list WEBAUTH

! Policy profile to be associated with the above WLANs
wireless profile policy MAC_FILTER_POLICY
aaa-override
vlan 504
no shutdown
```

# Configuring MAC Filtering for Local Authentication (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure MAB for local authentication.

### Before you begin

Configure AAA local authentication.

Configure the username for WLAN configuration (local authentication) using **username** *mac-address* **mac** command.



**Note** The mac-address must be in the following format: *abcdabcdabcd*

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **wlan** *profile-name wlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`wlan CR1_SSID_mab-local-default 1 CR1_SSID_mab-local-default` | Specifies the WLAN name and ID. |
| **Step 2** | **mac-filtering default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering default` | Sets MAC filtering support for the WLAN. |
| **Step 3** | **no security wpa**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa` | Disables WPA secuirty. |
| **Step 4** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for dot1x. |
| **Step 5** | **no security wpa wpa2**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2` | Disables WPA2 security. |
| **Step 6** | **no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes` | Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES. |
| **Step 7** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |

# Configuring MAC Filtering (GUI)

### Before you begin

Configure AAA external authentication.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **WLANs**.
**Step 2** On the **Wireless Networks** page, click the name of the WLAN.
**Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click the **Security** tab.
**Step 4** In the **Layer2** tab, check the **MAC Filtering** check box to enable the feature.
**Step 5** With MAC Filtering enabled, choose the **Authorization List** from the drop-down list.
**Step 6** Save the configuration.

# Configuring MAB for External Authentication (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure MAB for external authentication.

### Before you begin

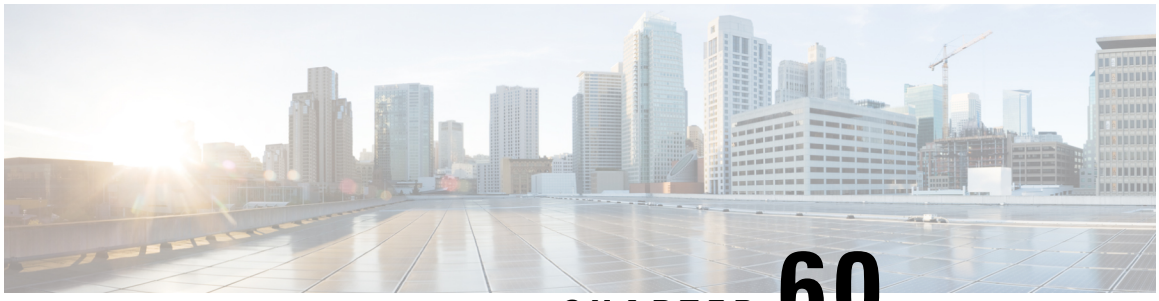
Configure AAA external authentication.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **wlan** *wlan-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`wlan CR1_SSID_mab-ext-radius 3 CR1_SSID_mab-ext-radius` | Specifies the WLAN name and ID. |
| **Step 2** | **mac-filtering** *list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering ewlc-radius` | Sets the MAC filtering parameters. Here, *ewlc-radius* is an example for the *list-name* |
| **Step 3** | **no security wpa**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa` | Disables WPA secuirty. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for dot1x. |
| **Step 5** | **no security wpa wpa2**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2` | Disables WPA2 security. |
| **Step 6** | **mab request format attribute** {**1 groupsize** *size* **separator** *separator* [**lowercase** \| **uppercase**] \| **2** {**0** \| **7** \| **LINE**} **LINE** *password* \| **32 vlan access-vlan**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mab request format attribute 1 groupsize 4 separator` | Optional. Configures the delimiter while using MAC filtering in a WLAN.<br>Here,<br>**1**- Specifies the username format used for MAB requests.<br>**groupsize** *size*- Specifies the number of hex digits per group. The valid values range from 1 to 12.<br>**separator** *separator*- Specifies how to separate groups. The separators are comma, semicolon, and full stop.<br>**lowercase**- Specifies the username in lowercase format.<br>**uppercase**- Specifies the username in uppercase format.<br>**2**- Specifies the global password used for all the MAB requests.<br>**0**- Specifies the unencrypted password.<br>**7**- Specifies the hidden password.<br>**LINE**- Specifies the encrypted or unencrypted password.<br>*password*- LINE password.<br>**32**- Specifies the NAS-Identifier attribute.<br>**vlan**- Specifies a VLAN.<br>**access-vlan**- Specifies the configured access VLAN. |
| **Step 7** | **no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes` | Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 8** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |



CHAPTER 60

# Dynamic Frequency Selection


- Information About Dynamic Frequency Selection, on page 511
- Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection (GUI), on page 511
- Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection, on page 511
- Verifying DFS, on page 512


## Information About Dynamic Frequency Selection

Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) is the process of detecting radar signals and automatically setting the frequency on a DFS-enabled 5.0-GHz (802.11a/h) radio to avoid interference with the radar signals. Radios configured for use in a regulatory domain must not interfere with radar systems.

In normal DFS, when a radar signal is detected on any of the channels in the 40-MHz or 80-MHz bandwidth, the whole channel is blocked. With Flex DFS, if the radar signals are not detected on the secondary channel, the AP is moved to a secondary channel with a reduction in the bandwidth, usually, by half.

## Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**

**Step 2** Choose a profile.

**Step 3** In **General** tab, check the **Full sector DFS status** check box.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

## Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection

Follow the procedure given below to configure DFS:

### Before you begin

- The corresponding AP must be on one of the DFS channels.
- Shut down the radio before applying the configuration changes.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **no ap dot11 5ghz dtpc**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz dtpc` | Disables the 802.11a Dynamic Transmit Power Control (DTPC) setting. |
| **Step 3** | **ap dot11 5ghz channelswitch mode** *mode-num*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz channelswitch mode 1` | Configures the 802.11h channel switch mode. |
| **Step 4** | **ap dot11 5ghz power-constraint** *value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz power-constraint 12` | Configures the 802.11h power-constraint value. |
| **Step 5** | **ap dot11 5ghz smart-dfs**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz smart-dfs` | Configures nonoccupancy time for the radar interference channel. |

# Verifying DFS

Use the following commands to verify the DFS configuration:

To display the 802.11h configuration, use the following command:

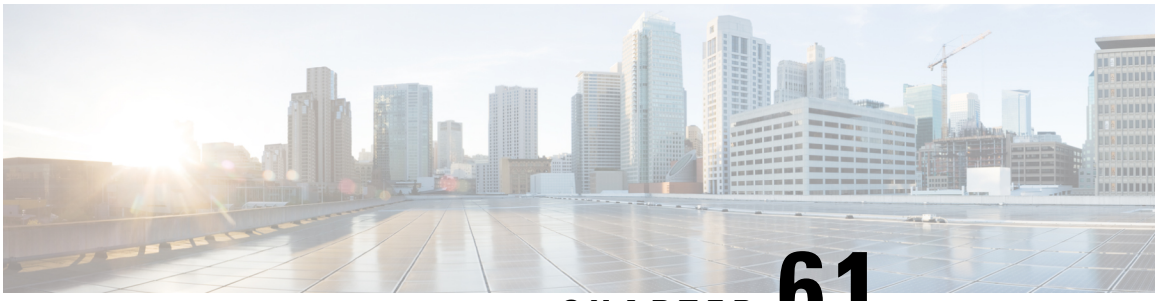
```
Device# show wireless dot11h
```

To display the auto-rF information for 802.11h configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap auto-rf dot11 5ghz
```

To display the auto-rF information for a Cisco AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap1 auto-rf dot11 5gh
```



CHAPTER 61

# Managing Rogue Devices


- Rogue Detection, on page 513
- Rogue Location Discovery Protocol (RLDP), on page 524
- Rogue Detection Security Level, on page 530
- Setting Rogue Detection Security-level , on page 531
- Wireless Service Assurance Rogue Events, on page 532


# Rogue Detection

## Rogue Devices

Rogue access points can disrupt wireless LAN operations by hijacking legitimate clients and using plain-text or other denial-of-service or man-in-the-middle attacks. That is, a hacker can use a rogue access point to capture sensitive information, such as usernames and passwords. The hacker can then transmit a series of Clear to Send (CTS) frames. This action mimics an access point, informing a particular client to transmit, and instructing all the other clients to wait, which results in legitimate clients being unable to access network resources. Wireless LAN service providers have a strong interest in banning rogue access points from the air space.

Because rogue access points are inexpensive and readily available, employees sometimes plug unauthorized rogue access points into existing LANs and build ad hoc wireless networks without their IT department's knowledge or consent. These rogue access points can be a serious breach of network security because they can be plugged into a network port behind the corporate firewall. Because employees generally do not enable any security settings on the rogue access point, it is easy for unauthorized users to use the access point to intercept network traffic and hijack client sessions. There is an increased chance of enterprise security breach when wireless users connect to access points in the enterprise network.

The following are some guidelines to manage rogue devices:

- The access points are designed to serve associated clients. These access points spend relatively less time performing off-channel scanning: about 50 milliseconds on each channel. If you want to detect a large number of rogue APs and clients with high sensitivity, a monitor mode access point must be used. Alternatively, you can reduce the scan intervals from 180 seconds to a lesser value, for example, 120 or 60 seconds, ensuring that the radio goes off-channel more frequently, which improves the chances of rogue detection. However, the access point continues to spend about 50 milliseconds on each channel.

- Rogue detection is disabled by default for OfficeExtend access points because these access points, which are deployed in a home environment, are likely to detect many rogue devices.
- Client card implementation might mitigate the effectiveness of containment. This normally happens when a client might quickly reconnect to the network after receiving a "de-association/de-authentication" frame, so it might still be able to pass some traffic. However, the browsing experience of the rogue client would be badly affected when it is contained.
- It is possible to classify and report rogue access points by using rogue states and user-defined classification rules that enable rogues to automatically move between states.
- Each controller limits the number of rogue containments to three and six per radio for access points in the monitor mode.
- When manual containment is performed using configuration, the rogue entry is retained even after the rogue entry expires.
- When a rogue entry expires, the managed access points are instructed to stop any active containment on it.
- To validate a Rogue Client against AAA, add the rogue client MAC to the AAA user-database with relevant delimiter, username, and password being the MAC address with relevant delimiter. The Access-Accept contains the Cisco-AV-pair with one of the following keywords:

  **rogue-ap-state**=*state*



**Note** Here, **state** can be of three types, namely: alert, threat, and contain.

For instance, **rogue-ap-state**=*threat*.

If Access-Accept has no AV-Pair rogue-ap-class or an invalid value of rogue-ap-class, such a rogue client state is set to either of the following:

- Contained, if the config is set to autocontain clients or untrusted AP.
- Threat

The Radius Access-Reject for rogue client AAA validation is ignored.

- When Validate Rogue Clients Against AAA is enabled, the controller requests the AAA server for rogue client validation only once. As a result, if rogue client validation fails on the first attempt then the rogue client will not be detected as a threat any more. To avoid this, add the valid client entries in the authentication server before enabling Validate Rogue Clients Against AAA.

### Restrictions on Rogue Detection

- Rogue containment is not supported on DFS channels.

A rogue access point is moved to a contained state either automatically or manually. The controller selects the best available access point for containment and pushes the information to the access point. The access point stores the list of containments per radio. For auto containment, you can configure the controller to use only the monitor mode access point. The containment operation occurs in the following two ways:

- The container access point goes through the list of containments periodically and sends unicast containment frames. For rogue access point containment, the frames are sent only if a rogue client is associated.
- Whenever a contained rogue activity is detected, containment frames are transmitted.

Individual rogue containment involves sending a sequence of unicast disassociation and deauthentication frames.

From 17.7.1 release onwards, Beacon DS Attack and Beacon Wrong Channel signatures were introduced.

**Beacon DS Attack**—When managed and rogue APs use the same BSSID, the rogue APs are termed as impersonators. An attacker can add the Direct-Sequence parameter set information element with any channel number. If the added channel number is different from the channel number used by the managed AP, the attack is termed as Beacon DS Attack.

**Beacon Wrong Channel**—When managed and rogue APs use the same BSSID, the rogue APs are termed as AP impersonators. If an AP impersonator uses a channel number that is different from the one used by the managed AP with the same BSSID, the attack is termed as Beacon Wrong Channel. In such a case, the Direct-Sequence Information Element might not even be present in the Beacon frame.

## Information About Rogue Containment (Protected Management Frames (PMF) Enabled)

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam, 17.3.1 onwards, rogue devices that are enabled with 802.11w Protected Management Frames (PMF) are not contained. Instead, the rogue device is marked as *Contained Pending*, and a WSA alarm is raised to inform about the Contained Pending event. Because the device containment is not performed, access point (AP) resources are not consumed unnecessarily.



**Note** This feature is supported only on the Wave 2 APs.

Run the **show wireless wps rogue ap detailed** command to verify the device containment, when PMF is enabled on a rogue device.

## AP Impersonation Detection

The various methods to detect AP impersonation are:

- AP impersonation can be detected if a managed AP reports itself as Rogue. This method is always enabled and no configuration is required.
- AP impersonation detection is based on MFP.
- AP impersonation detection based on AP authentication.

Infrastructure MFP protects 802.11 session management functions by adding message integrity check (MIC) information elements, to the management frames sent by APs (and not those sent by clients), which are then validated by other APs in the network. If infrastructure MFP is enabled, the managed APs check if the MIC information elements are present and if MIC information elements are as expected. If either of these conditions is not fulfilled, the managed AP sends rogue AP reports with updated AP authentication failure counter.

The AP Authentication functionality allows you to detect AP impersonation. When you enable this functionality, the controller creates an AP domain secret and shares it with other APs in the same network. This allows the APs to authenticate each other.

An AP Authentication information element is attached to beacon and probe response frames. If the AP Authentication information element has an incorrect Signature field, or the timestamp is off, or if the AP Authentication information element is missing, then the AP that has detected such a condition increments the **AP authentication failure count** field. An impersonation alarm is raised after the **AP authentication failure count** field breaches its threshold. The rogue AP is classified as **Malicious** with state **Threat**.

Run the **show wireless wps rogue ap detail** command to see when the impersonation is detected due to authentication errors.



**Note** Ensure that the **ccx aironet-iesupport** command is run in all the WLAN procedures, else the BSSID will be detected as a rogue.

For AP impersonation detection, Network Time Protocol (NTP) must be enabled instead of CAPWAP based time, under the AP profile.

# Configuring Rogue Detection (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **AP Join**.

**Step 2** Click the **AP Join Profile Name** to edit the AP join profile properties.

**Step 3** In the **Edit AP Join Profile** window, click the **Rogue AP** tab.

**Step 4** Check the **Rogue Detection** check box to enable rogue detection.

**Step 5** In the **Rogue Detection Minimum RSSI** field, enter the RSSI value.

**Step 6** In the **Rogue Detection Transient Interval** field, enter the interval in seconds.

**Step 7** In the **Rogue Detection Report Interval** field, enter the report interval value in seconds.

**Step 8** In the **Rogue Detection Client Number Threshold** field, enter the threshold for rogue client detection.

**Step 9** Check the **Auto Containment on FlexConnect Standalone** check box to enable auto containment.

**Step 10** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Rogue Detection (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *profile-name* **rogue detection min-transient-time** *time in seconds*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile profile1`<br>`Device(config)# rogue detection min-transient-time 120` | Specify the time interval at which rogues have to be consistently scanned for by APs after the first time the rogues are scanned.<br>Valid range for the time in sec parameter is 120 seconds to 1800 seconds, and the default value is 0.<br>**Note**<br>This feature is applicable to all AP modes.<br>Using the transient interval values, you can control the time interval at which APs should scan for rogues. APs can also filter the rogues based on their transient interval values.<br>This feature has thefollowing advantages:<br>• Rogue reports from APs to the controller are shorter<br>• Transient rogue entries are avoided in the controller<br>Unnecessary memory allocation fortransient rogues are avoided |
| **Step 3** | **ap profile** *profile-name* **rogue detection containment** {**auto-rate** \| **flex-rate**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile profile1`<br>`Device(config)# rogue detection containment flex-rate` | Specifies the rogue containment options. The **auto-rate** option enables auto-rate for containment of rogues. The **flex-rate** option enables rogue containment of standalone FlexConnect APs. |
| **Step 4** | **ap profile** *profile-name* **rogue detection enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile profile1` | Enables rogue detection on all APs. |
| **Step 5** | **ap profile** *profile-name* **rogue detection report-interval** *time in seconds*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile profile1`<br>`Device(config)# rogue detection report-interval 120` | Configures rogue report interval for monitor mode Cisco APs.<br>The valid range for reporting the interval in seconds is 10 seconds to 300 seconds.<br>In case the controller detects several thousands of rogue APs, it is possible to see the PUBD process causing sustained high CPU. This can be fixed by increasing the Rogue Detection Report Interval from the default 10 to something greater. |

# Configuring RSSI Deviation Notification Threshold for Rogue APs (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps rogue ap notify-rssi-deviation**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap notify-rssi-deviation` | Configures RSSI deviation notification threshold for Rogue APs. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Management Frame Protection (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Wireless Protection Policies**.

**Step 2** In the **Rogue Policy** tab, under the **MFP Configuration** section, check the **Global MFP State** check box and the **AP Impersonation Detection** check box to enable the global MFP state and the AP impersonation detection, respectively.

**Step 3** In the **MFP Key Refresh Interval** field, specify the refresh interval in hours.

**Step 4** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring Management Frame Protection (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps mfp**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps mfp` | Configures a management frame protection. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless wps mfp** {**ap-impersonation** \| **key-refresh-interval**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps mfp ap-impersonation`<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps mfp key-refresh-interval` | Configures ap impersonation detection (or) MFP key refresh interval in hours.<br>key-refresh-interval—Refers to the MFP key refresh interval in hours. The valid range is from 1 to 24. Default value is 24. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged **EXEC** mode. |

# Enabling Access Point Authentication

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps ap-authentication**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps ap-authentication` | Configures the wireless WPS AP authentication. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless wps ap-authentication threshold** *threshold*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps ap-authentication threshold 100` | Configures AP neighbor authentication and sets the threshold for AP authentication failures. |
| **Step 4** | **wlan** *wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-demo 1 ssid-demo` | Configures a WLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **ccx aironet-iesupport**<br>**Example:** | Enables support for Aironet Information Elements on this WLAN. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wlan)# ccx aironet-iesupport` | |
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Verifying Management Frame Protection

To verify if the Management Frame Protection (MFP) feature is enabled or not, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wps summary
Client Exclusion Policy
  Excessive 802.11-association failures   : unknown
  Excessive 802.11-authentication failures: unknown
  Excessive 802.1x-authentication         : unknown
  IP-theft                                : unknown
  Excessive Web authentication failure    : unknown
  Failed Qos Policy                       : unknown

Management Frame Protection
  Global Infrastructure MFP state : Enabled
  AP Impersonation detection      : Disabled
  Key refresh interval            : 15
```

To view the MFP details, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wps mfp summary
Management Frame Protection
  Global Infrastructure MFP state : Enabled
  AP Impersonation detection      : Disabled
  Key refresh interval            : 15
```

# Verifying Rogue Detection

This section describes the new command for rogue detection.

The following command can be used to verify rogue detection on the device.

***Table 30: Verifying Adhoc Rogues Information***

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show wireless wps rogue adhoc detailed** *mac_address* | Displays the detailed information for an Adhoc rogue. |
| **show wireless wps rogue adhoc summary** | Displays a list of all Adhoc rogues. |

***Table 31: Verifying Rogue AP Information***

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| **show wireless wps rogue ap clients** *mac_address* | Displays the list of all rogue clients associated with a rogue. |
| **show wireless wps rogue ap custom summary** | Displays the custom rogue AP information. |
| **show wireless wps rogue ap detailed** *mac_address* | Displays the detailed information for a rogue AP. |
| **show wireless wps rogue ap friendly summary** | Displays the friendly rogue AP information. |
| **show wireless wps rogue ap list** *mac_address* | Displays the list of rogue APs detected by a given AP. |
| **show wireless wps rogue ap malicious summary** | Displays the malicious rogue AP information. |
| **show wireless wps rogue ap summary** | Displays a list of all Rogue APs. |
| **show wireless wps rogue ap unclassified summary** | Displays the unclassified rogue AP information. |

***Table 32: Verifying Rogue Auto-Containment Information***

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show wireless wps rogue auto-contain** | Displays the rogue auto-containment information. |

***Table 33: Verifying Classification Rule Information***

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show wireless wps rogue rule detailed** *rule_name* | Displays the detailed information for a classification rule. |
| **show wireless wps rogue rule summary** | Displays the list of all rogue rules. |

***Table 34: Verifying Rogue Statistics***

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show wireless wps rogue stats** | Displays the rogue statistics. |

***Table 35: Verifying Rogue Client Information***

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show wireless wps rogue client detailed** *mac_address* | Displays detailed information for a Rogue client. |
| **show wireless wps rogue client summary** | Displays a list of all the Rogue clients. |

***Table 36: Verifying Rogue Ignore List***

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| **show wireless wps rogue ignore-list** | Displays the rogue ignore list. |

# Examples: Rogue Detection Configuration

This example shows how to configure the minimum RSSI that a detected rogue AP needs to be at, to have an entry created in the device:

```
Device# wireless wps rogue ap notify-min-rssi 100
```

This example shows how to configure the classification interval:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)#
Device(config)#
Device(config)# end
Device# show wireless wps rogue client /show wireless wps rogue ap summary
```

# Configuring Rogue Policies (GUI)

**Procedure**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Step 1** | Choose **Configuration > Security > Wireless Protection Policies**. |
| **Step 2** | In the **Rogue Policies** tab, use the **Rogue Detection Security Level** drop-down to select the security level. |
| **Step 3** | In the **Expiration timeout for Rogue APs (seconds)** field, enter the timeout value. |
| **Step 4** | Select the **Validate Rogue Clients against AAA** check box to validate rogue clients against AAA server. |
| **Step 5** | Select the **Validate Rogue APs against AAA** check box to validate rogue access points against AAA server. |
| **Step 6** | In the **Rogue Polling Interval (seconds)** field, enter the interval to poll the AAA server for rogue information. |
| **Step 7** | Select the **Detect and Report Adhoc Networks** check box to enable detection of rogue adhoc networks. |
| **Step 8** | In the **Rogue Detection Client Number Threshold** field, enter the threshold to generate SNMP trap. |
| **Step 9** | In the **Auto Contain** section, enter the following details. |
| **Step 10** | Use the **Auto Containment Level** drop-down to select the level. |
| **Step 11** | Select the **Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs** check box to limit the auto-containment only to monitor mode APs. |
| **Step 12** | Select the **Using our SSID** check box to limit the auto-containment only to rogue APs using one of the SSID configured on the controller. |
| **Step 13** | Select the **Adhoc Rogue AP** check box to limit the auto-containment only to adhoc rogue APs. |
| **Step 14** | Click **Apply**. |

# Configuring Rogue Policies (CLI)

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps rogue ap timeout** *number of seconds*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap timeout 250` | Configures the expiration time for rogue entries, in seconds. Valid range for the time in seconds 240 seconds to 3600 seconds. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless wps rogue client notify-min-rssi** *RSSI threshold*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue client notify-min-rssi -128` | Configures the minimum RSSI notification threshold for rogue clients. Valid range for the RSSI threshold in dB is -128 - dB to -70 dB. |
| **Step 4** | **wireless wps rogue client notify-min-deviation** *RSSI threshold*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue client notify-min-deviation 4` | Configures the RSSI deviation notification threshold for rogue clients. Valid range for the RSSI threshold in dB is 0 dB to 10 dB. |
| **Step 5** | **wireless wps rogue ap aaa polling-interval** *AP AAA Interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap aaa polling-interval 120` | Configures rogue AP AAA validation interval. The valid range for the AP AAA interval in seconds is 60 seconds to 86400 seconds. |
| **Step 6** | **wireless wps rogue adhoc**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue adhoc` | Enables detecting and reporting adhoc rogue (IBSS). |
| **Step 7** | **wireless wps rogue client client-threshold** *threshold*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue client client-threshold 100` | Configures the rogue client per a rogue AP SNMP trap threshold. The valid range for the threshold is 0 to 256. |

# Rogue Location Discovery Protocol (RLDP)

## Rogue Location Discovery Protocol

Rogue Location Discovery Protocol (RLDP) is an active approach, which is used when rogue AP has no authentication (Open Authentication) configured. This mode, which is disabled by default, instructs an active AP to move to the rogue channel and connect to the rogue as a client. During this time, the active AP sends de-authentication messages to all connected clients and then shuts down the radio interface. Then, it associates to the rogue AP as a client. The AP then tries to obtain an IP address from the rogue AP and forwards a User Datagram Protocol (UDP) packet (port 6352) that contains the local AP and rogue connection information to the controller through the rogue AP. If the controller receives this packet, the alarm is set to notify the network administrator that a rogue AP was discovered on the wired network with the RLDP feature. RLDP has 100 % accuracy in rouge AP detection. It detects Open APs and NAT APs.

Following are some guidelines to manage RLDP:

- Rogue Location Discovery Protocol (RLDP) detects rogue access points that are configured for open authentication.
- RLDP detects rogue access points that use a broadcast Basic Service Set Identifier (BSSID), that is, the access point broadcasts its Service Set Identifier in beacons.
- RLDP detects only those rogue access points that are on the same network. If an access list in the network prevents the sending of RLDP traffic from the rogue access point to the embedded wireless controller, RLDP does not work.
- RLDP does not work on 5-GHz Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) channels.
- If RLDP is enabled on mesh APs, and the APs perform RLDP tasks, the mesh APs are dissociated from the embedded wireless controller. The workaround is to disable RLDP on mesh APs.
- If RLDP is enabled on non-monitor APs, client connectivity outages occur when RLDP is in process.

The following steps describe the functioning of RLDP:

1. Identify the closest Unified AP to the rogue using signal strength values.
2. The AP then connects to the rogue as a WLAN client, attempting three associations before timing out.
3. If association is successful, the AP then uses DHCP to obtain an IP address.
4. If an IP address was obtained, the AP (acting as a WLAN client) sends a UDP packet to each of the embedded wireless controller's IP addresses.
5. If the embedded wireless controller receives even one of the RLDP packets from the client, that rogue is marked as on-wire.



**Note** The RLDP packets are unable to reach the embedded wireless controller if filtering rules are placed between the embedded wireless controller's network and the network where the rogue device is located.

The embedded wireless controller continuously monitors all the nearby access points and automatically discovers and collects information on rogue access points and clients. When the embedded wireless controller discovers a rogue access point, it uses the Rogue Location Discovery Protocol (RLDP), if RLDP is enabled, to determine if the rogue is attached to your network.

Embedded Wireless Controller initiates RLDP on rogue devices that have open . If RLDP uses FlexConnect or local mode access points, then clients are disconnected for that moment. After the RLDP cycle, the clients are reconnected to the access points. As and when rogue access points are seen , the RLDP process is initiated.

You can configure the embedded wireless controller to use RLDP on all the access points or only on the access points configured for the monitor (listen-only) mode. The latter option facilitates automated rogue access point detection in a crowded radio frequency (RF) space, allowing monitoring without creating unnecessary interference and without affecting the regular data access point functionality. If you configure the embedded wireless controller to use RLDP on all the access points, the embedded wireless controller always chooses the monitor access point for RLDP operation if a monitor access point and a local (data) access point are both nearby. If RLDP determines that the rogue is on your network, you can choose to contain the detected rogue either manually or automatically.

RLDP detects on wire presence of the rogue access points that are configured with open authentication only once, which is the default retry configuration. Retries can be configured using the .

You can initiate or trigger RLDP from embedded wireless controller in three ways:

1. Enter the RLDP initiation command manually from the embedded wireless controller CLI.
2. Schedule RLDP from the embedded wireless controller CLI.
3. Auto RLDP. You can configure auto RLDP on embedded wireless controller either from embedded wireless controller CLI or GUI but keep in mind the following guidelines:
    - The auto RLDP option can be configured only when the rogue detection security level is set to custom.
    - Either auto RLDP or schedule of RLDP can be enabled at a time.

### Restrictions for RLDP

- RLDP only works with open rogue APs broadcasting their SSID with authentication and encryption disabled.
- RLDP requires that the Managed AP acting as a client is able to obtain an IP address via DHCP on the rogue network.
- Manual RLDP can be used to attempt an RLDP trace on a rogue multiple number of times.
- During RLDP process, the AP is unable to serve clients. This negatively impacts performance and connectivity for local mode APs. To avoid this case, RLDP can be selectively enabled for Monitor Mode AP only.
- RLDP does not attempt to connect to a rogue AP operating in a 5GHz DFS channel.
- RLDP is supported only on Cisco IOS APs.

# Configuring RLDP for Generating Alarms (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Wireless Protection Policies**.

**Step 2** In the **RLDP** tab, use the **Rogue Location Discovery Protocol** drop-down to select one of the following options:

a) **Disable**: Disables RLDP on all the access points. **Disable** is the default option.

b) **All APs**: Enables RLDP on all APs.

c) **Monitor Mode APs**: Enables RLDP only on APs in the monitor mode.

**Note**
The **Schedule RLDP** check box is enabled only if the **Disable** option is selected. The Schedule RLDP check box remains disabled when you select the **All APs** option or the **Monitor Mode APs** option.

**Step 3** In the **Retry Count** field, specify the number of retries that should be attempted. The range allowed is between 1 and 5.

**Step 4** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring an RLDP for Generating Alarms (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps rogue ap rldp alarm-only <monitor-ap-only>**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap rldp alarm-only`<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap rldp alarm-only monitor-ap-only` | Enables RLDP to generate alarms. In this method, the RLDP is always enabled.<br>The **monitor-ap-only** keyword is optional.<br>The command with just the **alarm-only** keyword enables RLDP without any restriction on the AP mode.<br>The command with **alarm-only <monitor-ap-only>** keyword enables RLDP in monitor mode access points only. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring a Schedule for RLDP (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Wireless Protection Policies**.

**Step 2** In the **RLDP** tab, choose the following options from the **Rogue Location Discovery Protocol** drop-down list:

- **Disable (default)**: Disables RLDP on all the access points.

**Step 3** In the Retry Count field, specify the number of retries that should be attempted. Provide a valid range between 1 to 5.

**Step 4** Check the **Schedule RLDP** check box and then specify the days, start time, and end time for the process to take place.

**Step 5** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring a Schedule for RLDP (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps rogue ap rldp schedule day** *day* **start** *start-time* **end** *end-time*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap rldp schedule day Monday start 10:10:01 end 12:00:00` | Enables RLDP based on a scheduled day, start time, and end time.<br>Here,<br>*day* is the day when the RLDP scheduling can be done. The values are Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, and Sunday.<br>*start-time* is the start time for scheduling RLDP for the day. You need to enter start time in **HH:MM:SS** format.<br>*end-time* is the end time for scheduling RLDP for the day. You need to enter end time in **HH:MM:SS** format. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless wps rogue ap rldp schedule**<br>**Example:** | Enables the schedule. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap rldp schedule` | |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring an RLDP for Auto-Contain (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Wireless Protection Policies**.

**Step 2** In the **Rogue Policies** tab, under the **Auto Contain** section, check the **Rogue on Wire** checkbox.

**Step 3** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring an RLDP for Auto-Contain (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps rogue ap rldp auto-contain** [**monitor-ap-only**]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap rldp auto-contain`<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap rldp auto-contain monitor-ap-only` | Enables RLDP to perform auto-contain. In this method, the RLDP is always enabled.<br>The **monitor-ap-only** keyword is optional.<br>The command with just the **auto-contain** keyword enables RLDP without any restriction on the AP mode.<br>The command with **auto-contain <monitor-ap-only>** keyword enables RLDP in monitor mode access points only. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring RLDP Retry Times on Rogue Access Points (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Wireless Protection Policies**.

**Step 2** On the **Wireless Protection Policies** page, click the **RLDP** tab.

**Step 3** Enter the RLDP retry attempt value for rogue access points in the **Retry Count** field.

The valid range is between 1 and 5.

**Step 4** Save the configuration.

# Configuring RLDP Retry Times on Rogue Access Points (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps rogue ap rldp retries** *num-entries*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap rldp retries 2` | Enables RLDP retry times on rogue access points.<br>Here, *num-entries* is the number of RLDP retry times for each of the rogue access points.<br>The valid range is 1 to 5. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Verifying Rogue AP RLDP

The following commands can be used to verify rogue AP RLDP:

***Table 37: Verifying Rogue AP Information***

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show wireless wps rogue ap rldp detailed** *mac_address* | Displays the RLDP details for a rogue AP. |
| **show wireless wps rogue ap rldp in progress** | Displays the list of in-progress RLDP. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **show wireless wps rogue ap rldp summary** | Displays the summary of RLDP scheduling information. |

# Rogue Detection Security Level

The rogue detection security level configuration allows you to set rogue detection parameters.

The available security levels are:

- Critical: Basic rogue detection for highly sensitive deployments.
- High: Basic rogue detection for medium-scale deployments.
- Low: Basic rogue detection for small-scale deployments.
- Custom: Default security-level, where all detection parameters are configurable.



**Note** When in Critical, High or Low, some rogue parameters are fixed and cannot be configured.

The following table shows parameter details for the three predefined levels:

***Table 38: Rogue Detection: Predefined Levels***

| Parameter | Critical | High | Low |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cleanup Timer | 3600 | 1200 | 240 |
| AAA Validate Clients | Disabled | Disabled | Disabled |
| Adhoc Reporting | Enabled | Enabled | Enabled |
| Monitor-Mode Report Interval | 10 seconds | 30 seconds | 60 seconds |
| Minimum RSSI | -128 dBm | -80 dBm | -80 dBm |
| Transient Interval | 600 seconds | 300 seconds | 120 seconds |
| Auto Contain<br>Works only on Monitor Mode APs. | Disabled | Disabled | Disabled |
| Auto Contain Level | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Auto Contain Same-SSID | Disabled | Disabled | Disabled |
| Auto Contain Valid Clients on Rogue AP | Disabled | Disabled | Disabled |
| Auto Contain Adhoc | Disabled | Disabled | Disabled |

| Parameter | Critical | High | Low |
|---|---|---|---|
| Containment Auto-Rate | Enabled | Enabled | Enabled |
| Validate Clients with CMX | Enabled | Enabled | Enabled |
| Containment FlexConnect | Enabled | Enabled | Enabled |
| RLDP | Monitor-AP if RLDP scheduling is disabled. | Monitor-AP if RLDP scheduling is disabled | Disabled |
| Auto Contain RLDP | Disabled | Disabled | Disabled |

# Setting Rogue Detection Security-level

Follow the procedure given below to set the rogue detection security-level:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps rogue security-level custom**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue security-level custom` | Configures rogue detection security level as custom. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless wps rogue security-level low**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue security-level low` | Configures rogue detection security level for basic rogue detection setup for small-scale deployments. |
| **Step 4** | **wireless wps rogue security-level high**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue security-level high` | Configures rogue detection security level for rogue detection setup for medium-scale deployments. |
| **Step 5** | **wireless wps rogue security-level critical**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue security-level critical` | Configures rogue detection security level for rogue detection setup for highly sensitive deployments. |

# Wireless Service Assurance Rogue Events

Wireless Service Assurance (WSA) rogue events, supported in Release 16.12.x and later releases, consist of telemetry notifications for a subset of SNMP traps. WSA rogue events replicate the same information that is part of the corresponding SNMP trap.

For all the exported events, the following details are provided to the wireless service assurance (WSA) infrastructure:

- MAC address of the rogue AP
- Details of the managed AP and the radio that detected the rogue AP with strongest RSSI
- Event-specific data such as SSID, channel for potential honeypot event, and MAC address of the impersonating AP for impersonation event

The WSA rogue events feature can scale up to four times the maximum number of supported APs and half of the maximum number of supported clients.

The WSA rogue events feature is supported on Cisco Catalyst Center and other third-party infrastructure.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **network-assurance enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# network-assurance enable` | Enables wireless service assurance. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless wps rogue network-assurance enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wireless wps rogue network-assurance enable` | Enables wireless service assurance for rogue devices. This ensures that the WSA rogue events are sent to the event queue. |

## Monitoring Wireless Service Assurance Rogue Events

### Procedure

- **show wireless wps rogue stats**

  **Example:**

```
Device# show wireless wps rogue stats

WSA Events
  Total WSA Events Triggered            : 9
    ROGUE_POTENTIAL_HONEYPOT_DETECTED   : 2
    ROGUE_POTENTIAL_HONEYPOT_CLEARED    : 3
```

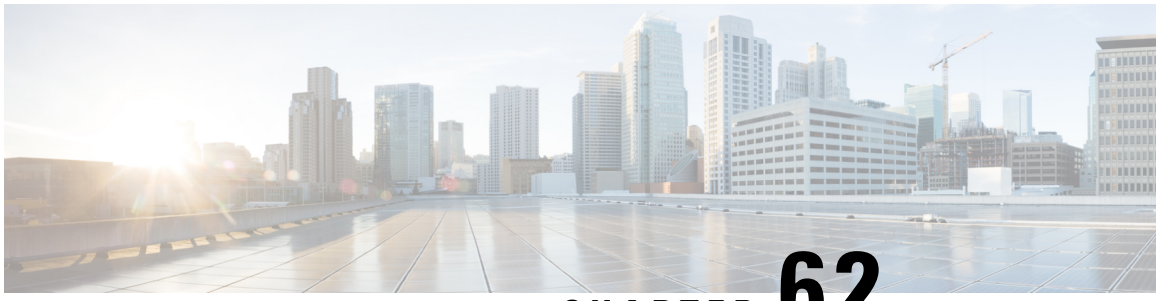
```
    ROGUE_AP_IMPERSONATION_DETECTED     : 4
  Total WSA Events Enqueued             : 6
    ROGUE_POTENTIAL_HONEYPOT_DETECTED   : 1
    ROGUE_POTENTIAL_HONEYPOT_CLEARED    : 2
    ROGUE_AP_IMPERSONATION_DETECTED     : 3
```

In this example, nine events have been triggered, but only six of them have been enqueued. This is because three events were triggered before the WSA rogue feature was enabled.

- **show wireless wps rogue stats internal**

  **show wireless wps rogue ap detailed** *rogue-ap-mac-addr*

  These commands show information related to WSA events into the event history.



CHAPTER 62

# Classifying Rogue Access Points


- Information About Classifying Rogue Access Points, on page 535
- Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs, on page 536
- Guidelines and Restrictions for Classifying Rogue Access Points, on page 537
- How to Classify Rogue Access Points, on page 538
- Monitoring Rogue Classification Rules, on page 543
- Examples: Classifying Rogue Access Points, on page 543


## Information About Classifying Rogue Access Points

The embedded wireless controller software enables you to create rules that can organize and display rogue access points as Friendly, Malicious, or Unclassified.

By default, none of the classification rules are used. You need to enable them. Therefore, all unknown access points are categorized as Unclassified. When you create or change a rule, configure conditions, and enable it, all rogue access points are then reclassified. Whenever you change a rule, it is applied to all the access points (friendly, malicious, and unclassified).

**Note**

- Rule-based rogue classification does not apply to ad hoc rogues and rogue clients.
- You can configure up to 64 rogue classification rules per embedded wireless controller.

When the embedded wireless controller receives a rogue report from one of its managed access points, it responds as follows:

- If the unknown access point is in the friendly MAC address list, the embedded wireless controller classifies the access point as Friendly.
- If the unknown access point is not in the friendly MAC address list, the embedded wireless controller starts applying the rogue classification rules to the access point.
- 
- If the rogue access point matches the configured rules criteria, the embedded wireless controller classifies the rogue based on the classification type configured for that rule.
- If the rogue access point does not match any of the configured rules, the rogue remains unclassified.

The embedded wireless controller repeats the previous steps for all the rogue access points.

- If the rogue access point is detected on the same wired network, the embedded wireless controller marks the rogue state as Threat and classifies it as Malicious automatically, even if there are no configured rules. You can then manually contain the rogue to change the rogue state to Contained. If the rogue access point is not available on the network, the embedded wireless controller marks the rogue state as Alert. You can then manually contain the rogue.
- If desired, you can manually move the access point to a different classification type and rogue state.

***Table 39: Classification Mapping***

| Rule-Based Classification Type | Rogue State |
|---|---|
| Friendly | • Internal—If the unknown access point poses no threat to WLAN security, you can manually configure it as Friendly, Internal. An example of this would be the access points in your lab network.<br>• External—If the unknown access point is outside the network and poses no threat to WLAN security, you can manually configure it as Friendly, External. An example of this would be the access point in your neighboring coffee shop.<br>• Alert— |
| Malicious | • Alert—<br>• Threat—The unknown access point is found to be on the network and poses a threat to WLAN security.<br>• Contained—The unknown access point is contained. |
| Unclassified | • Alert—<br>• Contained—The unknown access point is contained. |

As mentioned earlier, the embedded wireless controller can automatically change the classification type and rogue state of an unknown access point based on user-defined rules. Alternatively, you can manually move the unknown access point to a different classification type and rogue state.

# Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs

Local or FlexConnect mode APs still perform rogue containment even if the ‘Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs’ option is enabled.

There are three methods for rogue containment:

- Manual Rogue Containment - Priority 1 (Highest)
- Rule-Based Rogue Containment - Priority 2
- Auto-Containment - Priority 3

Auto-Containment works only if one of the following is enabled:

- Using our SSID
- A valid client on the Rogue AP
- Ad-hoc Rogue AP

If 'Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs' is enabled along with any one of the above options, Monitor mode APs perform the containment, not any other AP. In other words, 'Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs' is only applicable for Auto-containment configuration. It is not applicable for Manual or Rule-based containment.

Containment levels range from 1 to 4, indicating how many APs perform the containment. Manual rogue containment allows for levels 1 to 4, while rule-based containment is always set to 1.

Containment prioritizations: Manual containment has the highest priority, followed by rule-based, and then auto-containment. A rogue address that matches a manual or rule-based configuration is not subject to auto-containment.

# Guidelines and Restrictions for Classifying Rogue Access Points

- Classifying Custom type rogues is tied to rogue rules. Therefore, it is not possible to manually classify a rogue as Custom. Custom class change can occur only when rogue rules are used.
- Some are sent for containment by rule and every 30 minutes for rogue classification change.
- Rogue rules are applied on every incoming new rogue report in the embedded wireless controller in the order of their priority.
- After a rogue satisfies a rule and is classified, it does not move down the priority list for the same report.
- If a rogue AP is classified as friendly
- Until the controller discovers all the APs through neighbor reports from APs, the rogue APs are kept in unconfigured state for three minutes after they are detected. After 3 minutes, the rogue policy is applied on the rogue APs and the APs are moved to unclassified, friendly, malicious, or custom class. Rogue APs kept in unconfigured state means that no rogue policy has yet been applied on them.
- When a rogue BSSID is submitted for a containment on Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, if the controller has enough resources, it will contain. The APs that detect the particular contained rogue AP starts broadcasting the DEAUTH packets.

  Wireless client connected to the contained rogue BSSID will disconnect once DEAUTH packets are received. However, when the client assumes being in a connected state, repeatedly tries to reconnect and the wireless client's user browsing experience would be badly affected.

  Also, in a high RF environment like that of a stadium, though DEAUTH packets are broadcasted, client does not receive all of them because of RF disturbance. In this scenario, the client may not be fully disconnected but will be affected badly.
- The rouge AP manual classification limit has been enhanced from 625 to 10,000 configurations at a time. The rouge client manual classification limit has been enhanced from 625 to 10,000 configurations at a time.

# How to Classify Rogue Access Points

## Classifying Rogue Access Points and Clients Manually (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Monitoring** > **Wireless** > **Rogues**.

**Step 2** In the **Unclassified** tab, select an AP to view the detail in the lower pane.

**Step 3** Use the **Class Type** drop-down to set the status.

**Step 4** Click **Apply**.

## Classifying Rogue Access Points and Clients Manually (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps rogue adhoc** {**alert** *mac-addr* \| **auto-contain** \| **contain** *mac-addr containment-level* \| **internal** *mac-addr* \| **external** *mac-addr*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue adhoc alert 74a0.2f45.c520` | Detects and reports the ad hoc rogue.<br>Enter one of these options after you enter the **adhoc** keyword:<br>• **alert**—Sets the ad hoc rogue access point to alert mode. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the *mac-addr* parameter.<br>• **auto-contain**—Sets the automatically containing ad hoc rogue to auto-contain mode.<br>• **contain**—Sets the containing ad hoc rogue access point to contain mode. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the *mac-addr* parameter and containment level for the *containment-level* parameter. The valid range for *containment-level* is from 1 to 4. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | • **external**—Sets the ad hoc rogue access point as **external**. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the *mac-addr* parameter.<br>• **internal**—Sets the ad hoc rogue access point as **internal**. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the *mac-addr* parameter. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless wps rogue ap** {**friendly** *mac-addr* **state** [**external** \| **internal**] \| **malicious** *mac-addr* **state** [**alert** \| **contain** *containment-level*]}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap malicious 74a0.2f45.c520 state contain 3` | Configures the rogue access points.<br>Enter one of the following options after the **ap** keyword:<br>• **friendly**—Configures the friendly rogue access points. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the *mac-addr* parameter. After that enter the **state** keyword followed by either of these options: **internal** or **external**. If you select an **internal** option, it indicates that you trust a foreign access point. If you select an **external** option, it indicates that you acknowledge the presence of a rogue access point.<br>• **malicious**—Configures the malicious rogue access points. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the *mac-addr* parameter. After that enter the **state** keyword followed by either of these options: **alert** or **contain**.<br>• **alert**—Sets the malicious rogue access point to **alert** mode.<br>• **contain**—Sets the malicious rogue access point to **contain** mode. If you choose this option, enter the containment level for the *containment-level* parameter. The valid range is from 1 to 4. |
| **Step 4** | **wireless wps rogue client** {**contain** *mac-addr containment-level*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue client contain 74a0.2f45.c520 2` | Configures the rogue clients.<br>Enter the following option after you enter the **client** keyword:<br>**contain**—Contains the rogue client. After you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the *mac-addr* parameter and the containment |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | level for *containment-level* parameter. The valid range for *containment-level* is from 1 to 4. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Rogue Classification Rules (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Wireless Protection Policies**.

**Step 2** In the **Wireless Protection Policies** page, choose **Rogue AP Rules** tab.

**Step 3** On the **Rogue AP Rules** page, click the name of the **Rule** or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Step 4** In the **Add/Edit Rogue AP Rule** window that is displayed, enter the name of the rule in the **Rule Name** field.

**Step 5** Choose the rule type from the following **Rule Type** drop-down list options:

- Friendly
- Malicious
- Unclassified
- Custom

# Configuring Rogue Classification Rules (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless wps rogue rule** *rule-name* **priority** *priority*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3` | Creates or enables a rule. While creating a rule, you must enter the priority for the rule.<br>**Note** After creating a rule, you can edit the rule and change the priority only for the rogue rules that are disabled. You cannot change the priority for the rogue rules that are enabled. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | While editing, changing the priority for a rogue rule is optional. |
| **Step 3** | **classify** {**friendly state** {**alert** \| **external** \| **internal**} \| **malicious state** {**alert** \| **contained** }}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3`<br>`Device(config-rule)# classify friendly` | • **friendly**—Configures the friendly rogue access points. After that enter the **state** keyword followed by either of these options: **alert**, **internal**, or **external**. If you select an **internal** option, it indicates that you trust a foreign access point. If you select an **external** option, it indicates that you acknowledge the presence of a rogue access point.<br>• **malicious**—Configures the malicious rogue access points. After that enter the state keyword followed by either of these options: alert or contained.<br>• **alert**—Sets the malicious rogue access point to alert mode.<br>• **contained**—Sets the malicious rogue access point to contained mode. |
| **Step 4** | **condition** {**client-count** \| **duration** \| **encryption** \| **infrastructure** \| **rssi** \| **ssid**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3`<br>`Device(config-rule)# condition client-count 5` | Adds the following conditions to a rule, which the rogue access point must meet:<br>• **client-count**—Requires that a minimum number of clients be associated to the rogue access point. For example, if the number of clients associated to the rogue access point is greater than or equal to the configured value, the access point could be classified as Malicious. If you choose this option, enter the minimum number of clients to be associated to the rogue access point for the parameter. The valid range is from 1 to 10 (inclusive), and the default value is 0.<br>• **duration**—Requires that the rogue access point be detected for a minimum period of time. If you choose this option, enter a value for the minimum detection period for the parameter. The valid range is from 0 to 3600 seconds (inclusive), and the default value is 0 seconds.<br>• **encryption**—Requires that the advertised WLAN does not have encryption enabled. You can choose **any** for any type of encryption, **off** for no encryption, **wpa1** |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | for WPA encryption, **wpa2** for WPA2 encryption, **wpa3-owe** for WPA3 OWE encryption, or **wpa3-sae** for WPA3 SAE encryption.<br>• **infrastructure**—Requires the SSID to be known to the controller.<br>• **rssi**—The valid range is from –95 to –50 dBm (inclusive).<br>• **ssid**—Requires the rogue access point to have a specific SSID. You could specify up to 25 different SSIDs. You should specify an SSID that is not managed by the controller. If you choose this option, enter the SSID for the parameter.<br>• **wildcard-ssid**—Allows you to specify an expression that could match an SSID string. You can specify up to 25 of these SSIDs. |
| **Step 5** | **match** {**all** \| **any**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3`<br>`Device(config-rule)# match all` | Specifies whether a detected rogue access point must meet all or any of the conditions specified by the rule for the rule to be matched and the rogue access point to adopt the classification type of the rule. |
| **Step 6** | **default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3`<br>`Device(config-rule)# default` | Sets a command to its default. |
| **Step 7** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3`<br>`Device(config-rule)# exit`<br>`Device(config)#` | Exits the sub-mode. |
| **Step 8** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3`<br>`Device(config-rule)# shutdown` | Disables a particular rogue rule. In this example, the rule **rule_3** is disabled. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 9** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |
| **Step 10** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 11** | **wireless wps rogue rule shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule shutdown` | Disables all the rogue rules. |
| **Step 12** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Monitoring Rogue Classification Rules

You can monitor the rogue classification rules using the following commands:

*Table 40: Commands for Monitoring Rogue Classification Rules*

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show wireless wps rogue rule detailed** | Displays detailed information of a classification rule. |
| **show wireless wps rogue rule summary** | Displays a summary of the classification rules. |

# Examples: Classifying Rogue Access Points

This example shows how to classify a rogue AP with MAC address 00:11:22:33:44:55 as malicious and mark it for being contained by 2 managed APs:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap malicious 0011.2233.4455 state contain 2
```

This example shows how to create a rule that can categorize a rogue AP that is using SSID **my-friendly-ssid**, and it is seen for at least for 1000 seconds as friendly internal:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule ap1 priority 1
Device(config-rule)# condition ssid my-friendly-ssid
Device(config-rule)# condition duration 1000
Device(config-rule)# match all
```

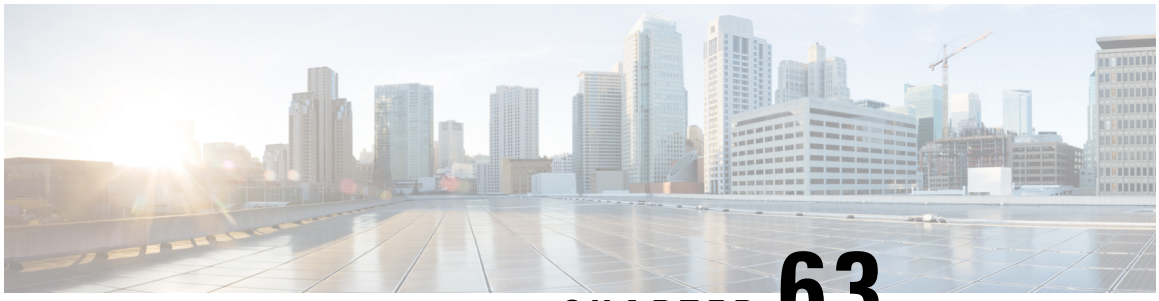
```
Device(config-rule)# classify friendly state internal
Device(config-rule)# no shutdown
```

This example shows how to apply a condition that a rogue access point must meet:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule ap1 priority 1
Device(config-rule)# condition client-count 5
Device(config-rule)# condition duration 1000
Device(config-rule)# no shutdown
Device(config-rule)# end
```

This example shows a condition to classify rogue devices with the controller SSIDs as malicious:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule ap1 priority 1
Device(config-rule)#  classify malicious state alert
Device(config-rule)#  condition duration 30
Device(config-rule)#  condition infrastructure ssid
Device(config-rule)#  match all
Device(config-rule)#  no shutdown
Device(config-rule)# end
```



CHAPTER 63

# Configuring Secure Shell


- Information About Configuring Secure Shell , on page 545
- Prerequisites for Configuring Secure Shell, on page 547
- Restrictions for Configuring Secure Shell, on page 548
- How to Configure SSH, on page 548
- Monitoring the SSH Configuration and Status, on page 551


# Information About Configuring Secure Shell

Secure Shell (SSH) is a protocol that provides a secure, remote connection to a device. SSH provides more security for remote connections than Telnet does by providing strong encryption when a device is authenticated. This software release supports SSH Version 1 (SSHv1) and SSH Version 2 (SSHv2).

## SSH and Device Access

Secure Shell (SSH) is a protocol that provides a secure, remote connection to a device. SSH provides more security for remote connections than Telnet does by providing strong encryption when a device is authenticated. This software release supports SSH Version 1 (SSHv1) and SSH Version 2 (SSHv2).

## SSH Servers, Integrated Clients, and Supported Versions

The Secure Shell (SSH) Integrated Client feature is an application that runs over the SSH protocol to provide device authentication and encryption. The SSH client enables a Cisco device to make a secure, encrypted connection to another Cisco device or to any other device running the SSH server. This connection provides functionality similar to that of an outbound Telnet connection except that the connection is encrypted. With authentication and encryption, the SSH client allows for secure communication over an unsecured network.

The SSH server and SSH integrated client are applications that run on the switch. The SSH server works with the SSH client supported in this release and with non-Cisco SSH clients. The SSH client works with publicly and commercially available SSH servers. The SSH client supports the ciphers of Data Encryption Standard (DES), 3DES, and password authentication.

The switch supports an SSHv1 or an SSHv2 server.

The switch supports an SSHv1 client.

**Note** The SSH client functionality is available only when the SSH server is enabled.

User authentication is performed like that in the Telnet session to the device. SSH also supports the following user authentication methods:

- TACACS+
- RADIUS
- Local authentication and authorization

# SSH Configuration Guidelines

Follow these guidelines when configuring the switch as an SSH server or SSH client:

- An RSA key pair generated by a SSHv1 server can be used by an SSHv2 server, and the reverse.
- If the SSH server is running on an active switch and the active switch fails, the new active switch uses the RSA key pair generated by the previous active switch.
- If you get CLI error messages after entering the **crypto key generate rsa** global configuration command, an RSA key pair has not been generated. Reconfigure the hostname and domain, and then enter the **crypto key generate rsa** command.
- When generating the RSA key pair, the message No host name specified might appear. If it does, you must configure a hostname by using the **hostname** global configuration command.
- When generating the RSA key pair, the message No domain specified might appear. If it does, you must configure an IP domain name by using the **ip domain-name** global configuration command.
- When configuring the local authentication and authorization authentication method, make sure that AAA is disabled on the console.

# Secure Copy Protocol Overview

The Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) feature provides a secure and authenticated method for copying switch configurations or switch image files. SCP relies on Secure Shell (SSH), an application and a protocol that provides a secure replacement for the Berkeley r-tools.

For SSH to work, the switch needs an RSA public/private key pair. This is the same with SCP, which relies on SSH for its secure transport.

Because SSH also relies on AAA authentication, and SCP relies further on AAA authorization, correct configuration is necessary.

- Before enabling SCP, you must correctly configure SSH, authentication, and authorization on the switch.
- Because SCP relies on SSH for its secure transport, the router must have an Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pair.

**Note** When using SCP, you cannot enter the password into the copy command. You must enter the password when prompted.

## Secure Copy Protocol

The Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) feature provides a secure and authenticated method for copying device configurations or switch image files. The behavior of SCP is similar to that of remote copy (rcp), which comes from the Berkeley r-tools suite, except that SCP relies on SSH for security. SCP also requires that authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authorization be configured so the device can determine whether the user has the correct privilege level. To configure the Secure Copy feature, you should understand the SCP concepts.

## SFTP Support

SFTP client support is introduced from Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1 release onwards. SFTP client is enabled by default and no separate configuration required.

The SFTP procedures can be invoked using the **copy** command, which is similar to that of **scp** and **tftp** commands. A typical file download procedure using **sftp** command can be carried out as shown below:

**copy sftp://***user* :*password* @*server-ip*/*file-name* **flash0://** *file-name*

For more details on the **copy** command, see the following URL:
https://www.cisco.com/c/m/en_us/techdoc/dc/reference/cli/nxos/commands/fund/copy.html

# Prerequisites for Configuring Secure Shell

The following are the prerequisites for configuring the switch for secure shell (SSH):

- For SSH to work, the switch needs an Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) public/private key pair. This is the same with Secure Copy Protocol (SCP), which relies on SSH for its secure transport.
- Before enabling SCP, you must correctly configure SSH, authentication, and authorization on the switch.
- Because SCP relies on SSH for its secure transport, the router must have an Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pair.
- SCP relies on SSH for security.
- SCP requires that authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authorization be configured so the router can determine whether the user has the correct privilege level.
- A user must have appropriate authorization to use SCP.
- A user who has appropriate authorization can use SCP to copy any file in the Cisco IOS File System (IFS) to and from a switch by using the **copy** command. An authorized administrator can also do this from a workstation.
- The Secure Shell (SSH) server requires an IPsec (Data Encryption Standard [DES] or 3DES) encryption software image; the SSH client requires an IPsec (DES or 3DES) encryption software image.)

- Configure a hostname and host domain for your device by using the **hostname** and **ip domain-name** commands in global configuration mode.

# Restrictions for Configuring Secure Shell

The following are restrictions for configuring the device for secure shell.

- From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.x, Key Exchange and MAC algorithms like diffie-hellman-group14-sha1, hmac-sha1, hmac-sha2-256, and hmac-sha2-512 are not supported by default and it may impact some SSH clients that only support these algorithms. However, you can add them manually if required. For information on manually adding these algorithms, see the **SSH Algorithms for Common Criteria Certification** document available at: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/routers/ios/config/17-x/sec-vpn/b-security-vpn/m_sec-secure-shell-algorithm-ccc.html
- The switch supports Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) authentication.
- SSH supports only the execution-shell application.
- The SSH server and the SSH client are supported only on Data Encryption Standard (DES) (56-bit) and 3DES (168-bit) data encryption software. In DES software images, DES is the only encryption algorithm available. In 3DES software images, both DES and 3DES encryption algorithms are available.
- The device supports the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption algorithm with a 128-bit key, 192-bit key, or 256-bit key. However, symmetric cipher AES to encrypt the keys is not supported.
- When using SCP, you cannot enter the password into the **copy** command. You must enter the password when prompted.
- The login banner is not supported in Secure Shell Version 1. It is supported in Secure Shell Version 2.
- The -l keyword and userid :{number} {ip-address} delimiter and arguments are mandatory when configuring the alternative method of Reverse SSH for console access.
- To authenticate clients with FreeRADIUS over RADSEC, you should generate an RSA key longer than 1024 bit. Use the **crypto key generate rsa general-keys exportable label** *label-name* command to achieve this.

# How to Configure SSH

## Setting Up the Device to Run SSH

Follow the procedure given below to set up your device to run SSH:

### Before you begin

Configure user authentication for local or remote access.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **hostname** *hostname*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# hostname your_hostname` | Configures a hostname and IP domain name for your device.<br>**Note** Follow this procedure only if you are configuring the device as an SSH server. |
| **Step 3** | **ip domain name** *domain_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip domain name your_domain` | Configures a host domain for your device. |
| **Step 4** | **crypto key generate rsa**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa` | Enables the SSH server for local and remote authentication on the device and generates an RSA key pair. Generating an RSA key pair for the device automatically enables SSH.<br>We recommend that a minimum modulus size of 1024 bits.<br>When you generate RSA keys, you are prompted to enter a modulus length. A longer modulus length might be more secure, but it takes longer to generate and to use.<br>**Note** Follow this procedure only if you are configuring the device as an SSH server. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Exits configuration mode. |

# Configuring the SSH Server

Follow the procedure given below to configure the SSH server:

**Note** This procedure is only required if you are configuring the device as an SSH server.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ip ssh version** [2]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip ssh version 2` | (Optional) Configures the device to run SSH Version 2. |
| **Step 3** | **ip ssh** {**timeout** *seconds* \| **authentication-retries** *number*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip ssh timeout 90 authentication-retries 2` | Configures the SSH control parameters:<br>• Specify the time-out value in seconds; the default is 120 seconds. The range is 0 to 120 seconds. This parameter applies to the SSH negotiation phase. After the connection is established, the device uses the default time-out values of the CLI-based sessions.<br>By default, up to five simultaneous, encrypted SSH connections for multiple CLI-based sessions over the network are available (session 0 to session 4). After the execution shell starts, the CLI-based session time-out value returns to the default of 10 minutes.<br>• Specify the number of times that a client can re-authenticate to the server. The default is 3; the range is 0 to 5.<br>Repeat this step when configuring both parameters. |
| **Step 4** | Use one or both of the following:<br>• `line vty` *line_number* [ *ending_line_number*]<br>• **transport input ssh**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# line vty 1 10`<br>or<br>`Device(config-line)# transport input ssh` | (Optional) Configures the virtual terminal line settings.<br>• Enters line configuration mode to configure the virtual terminal line settings. For *line_number* and *ending_line_number*, specify a pair of lines. The range is 0 to 15.<br>• Specifies that the device prevent non-SSH Telnet connections. This limits the router to only SSH connections.<br>**Note** |

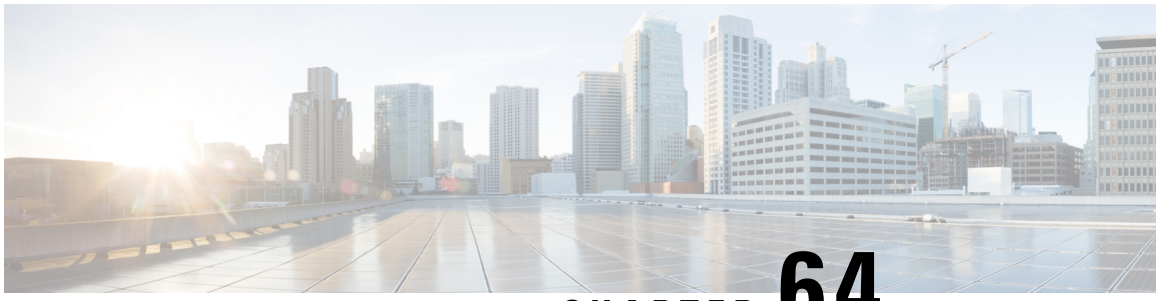
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | If the Virtual Terminal (VTY) lines are exhausted, Telnet or SSH will fail. You can either disconnect the Telnet or SSH sessions to free up the VTY lines, or follow the recovery steps given below to clear VTY lines and reload Telnet or SSH:<br>`Device# configure terminal`<br>`Device(config)# clear line line number` |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-line)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Monitoring the SSH Configuration and Status

This table displays the SSH server configuration and status.

***Table 41: Commands for Displaying the SSH Server Configuration and Status***

| Command | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show ip ssh** | Shows the version and configuration information for the SSH server. |
| **show ssh** | Shows the status of the SSH server. |



CHAPTER 64

# Private Shared Key


- Private preshared keys, on page 553
- Limitations, on page 553
- How identity PSK authentication works, on page 554
- Configure a PSK in a WLAN, on page 555
- Configure a PSK in a WLAN using GUI, on page 556
- Apply a policy profile to a WLAN (GUI), on page 556
- Apply a policy profile to a WLAN using CLI, on page 557
- Verify a private PSK, on page 558


## Private preshared keys

A private preshared key (PSK) is a security protocol for network authentication that

- enables devices to securely connect to wireless local area networks (WLANs),
- assigns unique keys to individual devices or user groups, reducing the risk of unauthorized access, and
- ensures compatibility with systems where advanced authentication methods like 802.1X are unsupported.

### Understanding identity PSKs

Identity PSKs are unique PSKs created for individuals or groups of users on the same SSID. They provide the same simplicity of PSK while enabling features such as:

- Stronger security for IoT by supporting devices that do not use 802.1X.
- Easy revocation of access for a specific device or individual without affecting others.
- Scalable management of thousands of keys distributed through the AAA server.

These features make Identiy PSKs ideal for IoT, BYOD, and guest deployments.

## Limitations

### SSID Preshared Key Special Characters

- Special characters, such as '<' and '>' are not supported in SSID Preshared key.

## SSID Preshared Key Whitespace Support

PSK supports whitespace in passwords (before or after or in-between) within double quotes only; single quotes for whitespaces are not supported.

# How identity PSK authentication works

### Summary

The key components involved in the process are:

- Client device: Sends an association request to connect to the access point.
- AP: Broadcasts the SSID and forwards association requests to the controller.
- Embedded Wireless Controller: Constructs RADIUS requests and relays them to the authentication server; manages computation of PSKs and applies received configuration parameters.
- RADIUS (AAA) server: Authenticates client MAC addresses, authorizes access, and returns passphrases or additional parameters as needed.

### Workflow

Here are the stages you will follow for Identity PSK authentication:

1. The client device attempts to connect to the wireless network by sending an association request to the SSID broadcast by the access point.
2. The access point forwards the association request to the Embedded Wireless Controller.
3. The controller creates a RADIUS authentication request packet containing the client's MAC address and relays it to the RADIUS (AAA) server.
4. The RADIUS server performs authentication and determines whether the client is authorized.
    - If authorized, the server sends an ACCESS-ACCEPT response; otherwise, it sends an ACCESS-REJECT.
5. If the client is authorized, the RADIUS server includes the AV-pair passphrase (the identity PSK) in the response, as well as optional parameters such as username, VLAN, and Quality of Service (QoS).
6. Upon receiving the response, the controller uses the passphrase to compute the Pairwise Master Key (PMK) and apply any additional attributes for the client's session.
7. If you have multiple devices, the same passphrase can apply to all of them.
8. If a configured PSK is shorter than 15 characters (when Federal Information Processing Standard, FIPS, is enabled), the controller allows the WLAN configuration but displays the following console warning:

**Note** AP is allowed to join but corresponding WLAN will not be pushed to the access point.

**Result**

Your device will either be granted access to the network with its assigned unique PSK and relevant settings, or access will be denied based on the authentication outcome. This information could be better presented in a separate paragraph or subsection to distinctively address the outcome of the process.

# Configure a PSK in a WLAN

Set up security for a pre-shared key (PSK) in a WLAN environment using command-line instructions.

**Before you begin**

- Configure security for a pre-shared key (PSK) in a WLAN.
- If there is no override from the AAA server, the system uses the WLAN value for authentication.
- In Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) and common criteria mode, ensure that the PSK WLAN uses at least 15 ASCII characters.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Configure terminal

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 2** Configure the WLAN and the SSID

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wlan test-profile 4 abc
```

Configures the WLAN and SSID.

**Step 3** Disable security AKM for 802.11

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x
```

Disables security AKM for 802.11x.

**Step 4** Configure the security type PSK

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk
```

Configures the security type PSK.

**Step 5** Configure PSK authenticated key management (AKM) shared key

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk set-key asci 0
```

Configures the PSK authenticated key management (AKM) shared key.

**Step 6** Configure PSK support

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk
```

Configures PSK support.

**Step 7** Specify MAC filtering in WLAN

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering test1
```

Specifies MAC filtering in a WLAN.

The WLAN is configured to use a pre-shared key for client authentication.

# Configure a PSK in a WLAN using GUI

Configure a pre-shared key (PSK) for a WLAN.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** On the **Wireless Networks** page, click **Security** tab.

**Step 3** In the **Layer 2** window that is displayed, go to the **WPA Parameters** section.

**Step 4** From the **Auth Key Mgmt** drop-down, select the PSK format and type.

**Step 5** Enter the Pre-Shared Key in hexadecimal characters.

- If you selected the PSK format as HEX, the key length must be exactly 64 characters.
- If you selected the PSK format as ASCII, ensure the key length ranges from 8 to 63 characters.

After configuring the key, these details are not visible due to security reasons. Even if you click on the eye icon next to the Pre-Shared Key box, the details remain hidden.

**Step 6** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

The PSK is configured and applied to the selected WLAN.

**What to do next**

Check the WLAN connectivity to ensure successful configuration.

# Apply a policy profile to a WLAN (GUI)

This task helps you configure WLAN by applying policy profiles for better network management.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags**.

**Step 2** On the **Manage Tags** page, click **Policy** tab.

**Step 3** Click **Add** to view the **Add Policy Tag** window.

**Step 4** Enter the policy tag name and its description.

**Step 5** Click **Add** to map WLAN and policy.

**Step 6** Choose the WLAN profile to map with the appropriate policy profile, then click the tick icon.

**Step 7** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Once the task is completed, you successfully map the WLAN to the chosen policy profile

### What to do next

Verify the changes by checking the applied profiles under Wireless Local Area Network (WLAN) settings.

Monitor network performance to confirm the policy effectiveness.

# Apply a policy profile to a WLAN using CLI

The goal of this task is to effectively apply a policy profile to a WLAN using CLI commands, which helps manage network configurations efficiently.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 2** Configure the default policy profile

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-iot
```

Configures the default policy profile.

**Step 3** Configure AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA server

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override
```

Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA server or ISE, the Cisco Identity Services Engine server.

Once you apply the policy profile, configure the WLAN with the specified policy settings to enable the expected network management and security features.

### What to do next

You should verify the applied configuration by checking the WLAN settings to ensure all policies are correctly enforced.

- Confirm connectivity and performance with the new settings.

# Verify a private PSK

To verify the configuration of a WLAN and a client, use the following **show** commands

### Verify wireless client configuration

```
Device# show wlan id 2


WLAN Profile Name     : test_ppsk
==================================================
Identifier                                       : 2
Network Name (SSID)                              : test_ppsk
Status                                           : Enabled
Broadcast SSID                                   : Enabled
Universal AP Admin                               : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN                  : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN           : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN     : 0
Number of Active Clients                         : 0
Exclusionlist Timeout                            : 60
CHD per WLAN                                     : Enabled
Interface                                        : default
Multicast Interface                              : Unconfigured
WMM                                              : Allowed
WifiDirect                                       : Invalid
Channel Scan Defer Priority:
  Priority (default)                             : 4
  Priority (default)                             : 5
  Priority (default)                             : 6
Scan Defer Time (msecs)                          : 100
Media Stream Multicast-direct                    : Disabled
CCX - AironetIe Support                          : Enabled
CCX - Diagnostics Channel Capability             : Disabled
Peer-to-Peer Blocking Action                     : Disabled
Radio Policy                                     : All
DTIM period for 802.11a radio                    : 1
DTIM period for 802.11b radio                    : 1
Local EAP Authentication                         : Disabled
Mac Filter Authorization list name               : test1
Accounting list name                             : Disabled
802.1x authentication list name                  : Disabled
Security
```

```
    802.11 Authentication                        : Open System
    Static WEP Keys                              : Disabled
    802.1X                                       : Disabled
    Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2)            : Enabled
        WPA (SSN IE)                             : Disabled
        WPA2 (RSN IE)                            : Enabled
            TKIP Cipher                          : Disabled
            AES Cipher                           : Enabled
        Auth Key Management
            802.1x                               : Disabled
            PSK                                  : Enabled
            CCKM                                 : Disabled
            FT dot1x                             : Disabled
            FT PSK                               : Disabled
            PMF dot1x                            : Disabled
            PMF PSK                              : Disabled
    CCKM TSF Tolerance                           : 1000
    FT Support                                   : Disabled
        FT Reassociation Timeout                 : 20
        FT Over-The-DS mode                      : Enabled
    PMF Support                                  : Disabled
        PMF Association Comeback Timeout         : 1
        PMF SA Query Time                        : 200
    Web Based Authentication                     : Disabled
    Conditional Web Redirect                     : Disabled
    Splash-Page Web Redirect                     : Disabled
    Webauth On-mac-filter Failure                : Disabled
    Webauth Authentication List Name             : Disabled
    Webauth Parameter Map                        : Disabled
    Tkip MIC Countermeasure Hold-down Timer      : 60
Call Snooping                                    : Disabled
Passive Client                                   : Disabled
Non Cisco WGB                                    : Disabled
Band Select                                      : Disabled
Load Balancing                                   : Disabled
Multicast Buffer                                 : Disabled
Multicast Buffer Size                            : 0
IP Source Guard                                  : Disabled
Assisted-Roaming
    Neighbor List                                : Disabled
    Prediction List                              : Disabled
    Dual Band Support                            : Disabled
IEEE 802.11v parameters
    Directed Multicast Service                   : Disabled
    BSS Max Idle                                 : Disabled
        Protected Mode                           : Disabled
    Traffic Filtering Service                    : Disabled
    BSS Transition                               : Enabled
        Disassociation Imminent                  : Disabled
            Optimised Roaming Timer              : 40
            Timer                                : 200
    WNM Sleep Mode                               : Disabled
802.11ac MU-MIMO                                 : Disabled
```

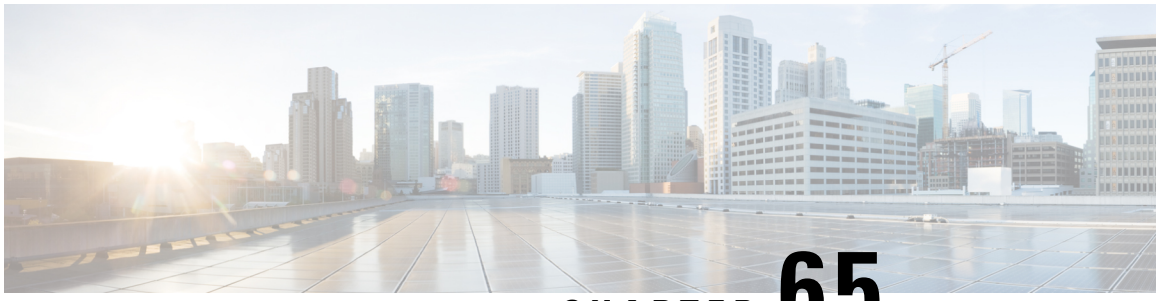
### Commands for PSK verification

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address a886.adb2.05f9 detail


Client MAC Address : a886.adb2.05f9
Client IPv4 Address : 9.9.58.246
Client Username : A8-86-AD-B2-05-F9
AP MAC Address : c025.5c55.e400
```

```
AP Name: saurabh-3600
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : default-policy-profile
Flex Profile : default-flex-profile
Wireless LAN Id : 6
Wireless LAN Name: SSS_PPSK
BSSID : c025.5c55.e40f
Connected For : 280 seconds
Protocol : 802.11n - 5 GHz
Channel : 60
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000001
Association Id : 1
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Client CCX version : No CCX support
Session Timeout : 320 sec (Remaining time: 40 sec)
Input Policy Name  :
Input Policy State : None
Input Policy Source : None
Output Policy Name  :
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Enabled
  U-APSD value : 0
  APSD ACs    : BK, BE, VI, VO
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Power Save : OFF
Current Rate : m22
Supported Rates : 9.0,18.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
Mobility:
  Move Count                  : 0
  Mobility Role               : Local
  Mobility Roam Type          : None
  Mobility Complete Timestamp : 09/27/2017 16:32:25 IST
Policy Manager State: Run
NPU Fast Fast Notified : No
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 280 seconds
Policy Type : WPA2
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : PSK
AAA override passphrase: Yes
Management Frame Protection : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : No
EAP Type : Not Applicable
VLAN : 58
Access VLAN : 58
Anchor VLAN : 0
WFD capable : No
Manged WFD capable : No
Cross Connection capable : No
Support Concurrent Operation : No
Session Manager:
  Interface        : capwap_90000005
  IIF ID           : 0x90000005
  Device Type      : Apple-Device
  Protocol Map     : 0x000001
  Authorized       : TRUE
  Session timeout  : 320
  Common Session ID: 1F3809090000005DC30088EA
  Acct Session ID  : 0x00000000
  Auth Method Status List
        Method : MAB
```

```
                SM State        : TERMINATE
                Authen Status   : Success
  Local Policies:
        Service Template : wlan_svc_default-policy-profile (priority 254)
                Absolute-Timer   : 320
                VLAN             : 58
  Server Policies:
  Resultant Policies:
                VLAN             : 58
                Absolute-Timer   : 320
Client Capabilities
  CF Pollable : Not implemented
  CF Poll Request : Not implemented
  Short Preamble : Not implemented
  PBCC : Not implemented
  Channel Agility : Not implemented
  Listen Interval : 0
Fast BSS Transition Details :
  Reassociation Timeout : 0
11v BSS Transition : Not implemented
FlexConnect Data Switching : Local
FlexConnect Dhcp Status : Local
FlexConnect Authentication : Central
FlexConnect Central Association : No
Client Statistics:
  Number of Bytes Received : 59795
  Number of Bytes Sent : 21404
  Number of Packets Received : 518
  Number of Packets Sent : 274
  Number of EAP Id Request Msg Timeouts :
  Number of EAP Request Msg Timeouts :
  Number of EAP Key Msg Timeouts :
  Number of Policy Errors : 0
  Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -32 dBm
  Signal to Noise Ratio : 58 dB
Fabric status : Disabled
```



CHAPTER 65

# Multi-Preshared Key


- Multi-preshared key, on page 563
- Restrictions, on page 565
- Configure a multi-preshared key (GUI), on page 565
- Configure a multi-preshared key (CLI), on page 568
- Verify multi-PSK configurations, on page 569


## Multi-preshared key

A multi-preshared key (multi-PSK) is a wireless security feature that

- Allows multiple pre-shared keys (PSKs) to be configured for a single SSID
- Enables any configured PSK to grant access to the same wireless network
- Improves network flexibility by supporting concurrent user groups or devices with different credentials.

**PSK**: A pre-shared key is a password or passphrase used to authenticate clients on a wireless network.

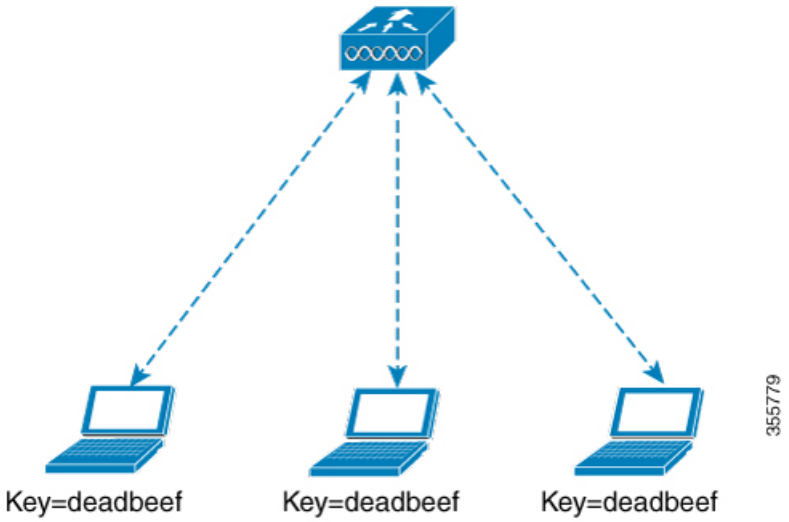
### Supporting analogy: keycards to the same door

Having multi-PSk keys for a single SSID is like giving different colored keycards to various teams. Each keycard opens the same door, but you can manage which card goes to which team. This approach increases flexibility and security compared to using one generic key.

### Comparing traditional PSK with

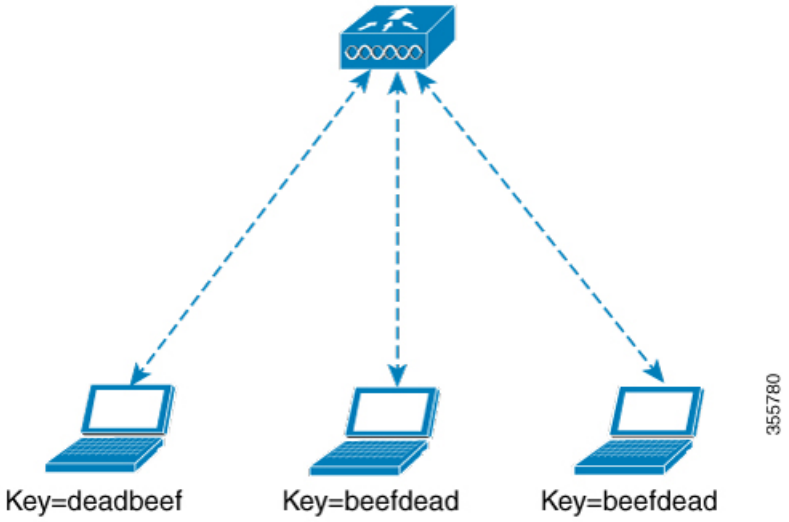
In a traditional PSK, all the clients joining the network use the same password as shown in the figure.

*Figure 8: Traditional PSK*




But with multi-PSK, client can use any of the configured pre-shared keys to connect to the network as shown in the figure.

*Figure 9: Multi-PSK*




In the Multi-PSK example, two passwords—deadbeef and beefdead—are configured for the same SSIDIn this scenario, clients can connect to the network using either of the passwords.

**Note**

- 
- Multi-PSK is different from iPSK. In iPSK, the PSK password comes from ISE authorization policy, so MAB is required. Multi-PSK uses a pool of passwords locally configured in WLAN, so Identity Service Engine is not used.

| Feature | Traditional PSK | Multi-PSK | Identity PSK (iPSK) |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Number of PSKs per SSID** | One shared key | Multiple keys (up to five) | Unique key per user or per group |
| **Use case flexibility** | All users share one credential | Separate keys for groups or devices | Per-user or per-group credentials for high granularity |
| **Example** | All staff share same key | Staff, guests, IoT devices have different keys | Each staff member, contractor, or device gets its own key |
| **Key management** | Single change affects all users | Changes can target specific groups or devices | Changes can target specific users or devices; policy-driven from ISE |
| **Security granularity** | Lowest — one compromise affects all | Better — compromise isolated to that PSK group | Highest — compromise isolated to individual user or device and fully policy-based |

# Restrictions

- In central authentication flex mode, the standalone AP allows client join with the highest priority PSK (priority 0 key). New clients that do not use the highest priority PSK are rejected during the standalone mode.
- Multi-PSK does not support local authentication.

# Configure a multi-preshared key (GUI)

Configure a WLAN to use a multi-PSK through the controller's GUI.

### Before you begin

Know the required security settings such as Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP), Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), PSK, and so on for your WLAN.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** On the **Wireless Networks** page, click the name of the WLAN.

**Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click the **Security** tab.

**Step 4** In the **Layer2** tab, choose the **Layer2 Security Mode** from the options:

- None: No Layer 2 security

- 802.1X: WEP 802.1X data encryption type
- WPA + WPA2: Wi-Fi Protected Access
- Static WEP: Static WEP encryption parameters
- Static WEP+802.1X: Both Static WEP and 802.1X parameters

| Parameters | Description |
|---|---|
| **802.1X** | |
| WEP Key Size | Choose the key size. The available values are:<br>• None<br>• 40 bits<br>• 104 bits |
| **WPA + WPA2** | |
| Protected Management Frame | Possible values are:<br>• Disabled<br>• Optional<br>• Required |
| WPA Policy | Check the check box to enable WPA policy. |
| WPA Encryption | Choose the WPA encryption standard. A WPA encryption standard must be specified if you have enabled WPA policy. |
| WPA2 Policy | Check the check box to enable WPA2 policy. |
| WPA2 Encryption | Choose the WPA2 encryption standard. A WPA encryption standard must be specified if you have enabled WPA policy. |

| Parameters | Description |
|---|---|
| Auth Key Mgmt | Possible rekeying mechanism options:<br>• 802.1X<br>• FT + 802.1X<br>• PSK: You must specify the PSK format and a preshared key<br>• Cisco Centralized Key Management: You must specify a Cisco Centralized Key Management Timestamp Tolerance value<br>• 802.1X + Cisco Centralized Key Management: You must specify a Cisco Centralized Key Management Timestamp Tolerance value<br>• FT + 802.1X + Cisco Centralized Key Management: You must specify a Cisco Centralized Key Management Timestamp Tolerance value |
| **Static WEP** | |
| Key Size | Possible key size options:<br>• 40 bits<br>• 104 bits |
| Key Index | Choose a key index from 1 to 4. One unique WEP key index can be applied to each WLAN. As there are only four WEP key indexes, only four WLANs can be configured for static WEP Layer2 encryption. |
| Key Format | Choose the encryption key format as either ASCII or HEX. |
| Encryption Key | Enter an encryption key that is 13 characters long. |
| **Static WEP + 802.1X** | |
| Key Size | Possible key size options:<br>• 40 bits<br>• 104 bits |
| Key Index | Choose a key index from 1 to 4. One unique WEP key index can be applied to each WLAN. As there are only four WEP key indexes, only four WLANs can be configured for static WEP Layer2 encryption. |

| Parameters | Description |
|---|---|
| Key Format | Choose the encryption key format as either ASCII or HEX. |
| Encryption Key | Enter an encryption key that is 13 characters long. |
| WEP Key Size | Choose from the WEP key sizes:<br>• None<br>• 40 bits<br>• 104 bits |

**Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

The WLAN is updated with the selected multi-PSK security settings.

# Configure a multi-preshared key (CLI)

Configure a WLAN to use a multi-PSK through the controller's CLI.

### Before you begin

Know the required security settings (WEP, WPA, PSK, and so on.) for your WLAN.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | Enter global configuration mode.<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | |
| **Step 2** | Configure WLAN and SSID.<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan mywlan 1 SSID_name` | |
| **Step 3** | Disable security AKM for dot1x.<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | |
| **Step 4** | Configure PSK.<br>**Example:** | |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk` | |
| **Step 5** | Configure multi-PSK.<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 mpsk` | |
| **Step 6** | Configure PSK priority and all its related passwords using the **priority** *priority_value* **set-key** {**ascii** [**0** \| **8**] *pre-shared-key* \| **hex** [**0** \| **8**] *pre-shared-key*} command.<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mpsk)# priority 0 set-key ascii 0 deadbeef` | The *priority_value* ranges from 0 to 4.<br>**Note**<br>You need to configure **priority 0** key for multi-PSK. |
| **Step 7** | Enable WLAN.<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mpsk)# no shutdown` | |
| **Step 8** | Exit WLAN configuration mode and returns to configuration mode.<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# exit` | |
| **Step 9** | Return to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode.<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | |

The WLAN is updated with the selected multi-PSK security settings.

# Verify multi-PSK configurations

To verify the configuration of a WLAN and a client, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan id 8
WLAN Profile Name     : wlan_8
================================================
Identifier                                       : 8
Network Name (SSID)                              : ssid_8
Status                                           : Enabled
```

```
Broadcast SSID                                  : Enabled
Universal AP Admin                              : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN                 : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN          : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN    : 200
Number of Active Clients                        : 0
CHD per WLAN                                    : Enabled
Multicast Interface                             : Unconfigured
WMM                                             : Allowed
WifiDirect                                      : Invalid
Channel Scan Defer Priority:
  Priority (default)                            : 5
  Priority (default)                            : 6
Scan Defer Time (msecs)                         : 100
Media Stream Multicast-direct                   : Disabled
CCX - AironetIe Support                         : Enabled
CCX - Diagnostics Channel Capability            : Disabled
Peer-to-Peer Blocking Action                    : Disabled
Radio Policy                                    : All
DTIM period for 802.11a radio                   : 1
DTIM period for 802.11b radio                   : 1
Local EAP Authentication                        : Disabled
Mac Filter Authorization list name              : Disabled
Mac Filter Override Authorization list name     : Disabled
Accounting list name                            :
802.1x authentication list name                 : Disabled
802.1x authorization list name                  : Disabled
Security
    802.11 Authentication                       : Open System
    Static WEP Keys                             : Disabled
    802.1X                                      : Disabled
    Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2/WPA3)      : Enabled
        WPA (SSN IE)                            : Disabled
        WPA2 (RSN IE)                           : Enabled
            MPSK                                : Enabled
            AES Cipher                          : Enabled
            CCMP256 Cipher                      : Disabled
            GCMP128 Cipher                      : Disabled
            GCMP256 Cipher                      : Disabled
        WPA3 (WPA3 IE)                          : Disabled
        Auth Key Management
            802.1x                              : Disabled
            PSK                                 : Enabled
            CCKM                                : Disabled
            FT dot1x                            : Disabled
            FT PSK                              : Disabled
            FT SAE                              : Disabled
            PMF dot1x                           : Disabled
            PMF PSK                             : Disabled
            SAE                                 : Disabled
            OWE                                 : Disabled
            SUITEB-1X                           : Disabled
            SUITEB192-1X                        : Disabled
    CCKM TSF Tolerance                          : 1000
    FT Support                                  : Adaptive
        FT Reassociation Timeout                : 20
        FT Over-The-DS mode                     : Enabled
    PMF Support                                 : Disabled
        PMF Association Comeback Timeout        : 1
        PMF SA Query Time                       : 200
    Web Based Authentication                    : Disabled
    Conditional Web Redirect                    : Disabled
    Splash-Page Web Redirect                    : Disabled
    Webauth On-mac-filter Failure               : Disabled
```

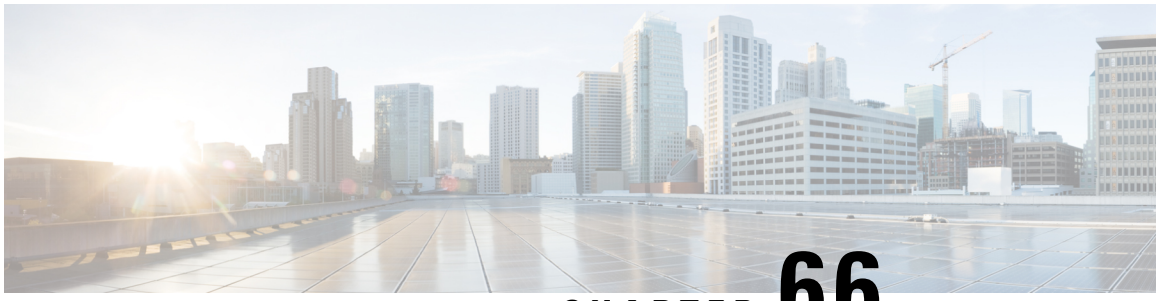
```
    Webauth Authentication List Name           : Disabled
    Webauth Authorization List Name            : Disabled
    Webauth Parameter Map                      : Disabled
    Tkip MIC Countermeasure Hold-down Timer    : 60
Non Cisco WGB                                  : Disabled
Band Select                                    : Enabled
Load Balancing                                 : Disabled
Multicast Buffer                               : Disabled
Multicast Buffer Size                          : 0
IP Source Guard                                : Disabled
Assisted-Roaming
    Neighbor List                              : Disabled
    Prediction List                            : Disabled
    Dual Band Support                          : Disabled
IEEE 802.11v parameters
    Directed Multicast Service                 : Disabled
    BSS Max Idle                               : Disabled
        Protected Mode                         : Disabled
    Traffic Filtering Service                  : Disabled
    BSS Transition                             : Enabled
        Disassociation Imminent                : Disabled
            Optimised Roaming Timer            : 40
            Timer                              : 200
    WNM Sleep Mode                             : Disabled
802.11ac MU-MIMO                               : Disabled
802.11ax paramters
    OFDMA Downlink                             : unknown
    OFDMA Uplink                               : unknown
    MU-MIMO Downlink                           : unknown
    MU-MIMO Uplink                             : unknown
    BSS Color                                  : unknown
    Partial BSS Color                          : unknown
    BSS Color Code                             :
```

To view the WLAN details, use the following command:

```
Device# show run wlan
wlan wlan_8 8 ssid_8
 security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 deadbeef
 no security wpa akm dot1x
 security wpa akm psk
 security wpa wpa2 mpsk
  priority 0 set-key ascii 0 deadbeef
  priority 1 set-key ascii 0 deaddead
  priority 2 set-key ascii 0 d123d123
  priority 3 set-key hex 0 0234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234

  priority 4 set-key hex 0 1234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234

 no shutdown
```



CHAPTER 66

# Multiple Authentications for a Client


- Information About Multiple Authentications for a Client, on page 573
- Configuring Multiple Authentications for a Client, on page 575
- Configuring 802.1x and Central Web Authentication on Controller (CLIs), on page 581
- Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication with Dot1x (GUI), on page 587
- Verifying Multiple Authentication Configurations, on page 590


## Information About Multiple Authentications for a Client

Multiple Authentication feature is an extension of Layer 2 and Layer 3 security types supported for client join.

**Note** You can enable both L2 and L3 authentication for a given SSID.

**Note** The Multiple Authentication feature is applicable for regular clients only.

## Information About Supported Combination of Authentications for a Client

The Multiple Authentications for a Client feature supports multiple combination of authentications for a given client configured in the WLAN profile.

The following table outlines the supported combination of authentications:

| Layer 2 | Layer 3 | Supported |
|---|---|---|
| MAB | CWA | Yes |
| MAB Failure | LWA | Yes |
| 802.1X | CWA | Yes |
| PSK | CWA | Yes |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| iPSK + MAB | CWA | Yes |
| iPSK | LWA | No |
| MAB Failure + PSK | LWA | No<br>Yes |
| MAB Failure + PSK | CWA | No |

From 16.10.1 onwards, 802.1X configurations on WLAN support web authentication configurations with WPA or WPA2 configuration.

The feature also supports the following AP modes:

- Local
- FlexConnect
- Fabric



**Note** For MAB authentication in APs in local mode, maintain a latency below 100 ms between the controller, acting as the Network Access Server (NAS), and the AAA server. This helps avoid timeouts when waiting for the AP's association response as the AP responds only after receiving feedback from the AAA server, emphasizing the importance of latency.

This recommendation does not apply to FlexConnect, where the AP responds immediately to client association requests. Deploy APs in FlexConnect mode if lower latency to AAA servers cannot be guaranteed.

# Jumbo Frame Support for RADIUS Packets

RADIUS packets will be fragmented according to the MTU of the egress interface if the following conditions are met:

- The command **ip radius source-interface** is configured under the relevant AAA group server radius group to point to the egress interface.
- The **ip mtu NNN** command is configured on the egress interface.



**Note** If the MTU of the source interface is set to a value lower than 1500, additional fragmentation might occur. This fragmentation can lead to packet drops by upstream network devices, such as firewalls and load balancers, potentially causing authentication failures. It is recommended to verify these configurations during upgrades to prevent such issues.

# Configuring Multiple Authentications for a Client

## Configuring WLAN for 802.1X and Local Web Authentication (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.
**Step 2** Select the required WLAN from the list of WLANs displayed.
**Step 3** Choose **Security** > **Layer2** tab.
**Step 4** Select the security method from the **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list.
**Step 5** In the **Auth Key Mgmt**, check the **802.1x** check box.
**Step 6** Check the **MAC Filtering** check box to enable the feature.
**Step 7** After MAC Filtering is enabled, from the **Authorization List** drop-down list, choose an option.
**Step 8** Choose **Security** > **Layer3** tab.
**Step 9** Check the **Web Policy** check box to enable web authentication policy.
**Step 10** From the **Web Auth Parameter Map** and the **Authentication List** drop-down lists, choose an option.
**Step 11** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

## Configuring WLAN for 802.1X and Local Web Authentication (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test` | Enters WLAN configuration sub-mode.<br>• *profile-name*: Profile name of the configured WLAN.<br>• *wlan-id*: Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512.<br>• *SSID_Name*: SSID that can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>**Note**<br>If you have already configured this command, enter the **wlan** *profile-name* command. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **security dot1x authentication-list** *auth-list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list default` | Enables security authentication list for dot1x security.<br>The configuration is similar for all dot1x security WLANs. |
| **Step 4** | **security web-auth**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth` | Enables web authentication. |
| **Step 5** | **security web-auth authentication-list** *authenticate-list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default` | Enables authentication list for dot1x security. |
| **Step 6** | **security web-auth parameter-map** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP` | Maps the parameter map.<br>**Note**<br>If a parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map. |
| **Step 7** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |

### Example

```
wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test
 security dot1x authentication-list default
 security web-auth
 security web-auth authentication-list default
 security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP
 no shutdown
```

# Configuring WLAN for Preshared Key (PSK) and Local Web Authentication (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Select the required WLAN.

**Step 3** Choose **Security** > **Layer2** tab.

**Step 4** Select the security method from the **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list.

**Step 5** In the Auth Key Mgmt, uncheck the **802.1x** check box.

**Step 6** Check the **PSK** check box.

**Step 7** Enter the **Pre-Shared Key** and choose the PSK Format from the **PSK Format** drop-down list and the PSK Type from the **PSK Type** drop-down list.

**Step 8** Choose **Security** > **Layer3** tab.

**Step 9** Check the **Web Policy** checkbox to enable web authentication policy.

**Step 10** Choose the Web Auth Parameter Map from the **Web Auth Parameter Map** drop-down list and the authentication list from the **Authentication List** drop-down list.

**Step 11** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring WLAN for Preshared Key (PSK) and Local Web Authentication

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test` | Enters WLAN configuration sub-mode.<br>• *profile-name*- Is the profile name of the configured WLAN.<br>• *wlan-id* - Is the wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512.<br>• *SSID_Name* - Is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>**Note**<br>If you have already configured this command, enter **wlan** *profile-name* command. |
| **Step 3** | **security wpa psk set-key** *ascii/hex key password*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 PASSWORD` | Configures the PSK shared key. |
| **Step 4** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:** | Disables security AKM for dot1x. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | |
| **Step 5** | **security wpa akm psk**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk` | Configures the PSK support. |
| **Step 6** | **security web-auth**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth` | Enables web authentication for WLAN. |
| **Step 7** | **security web-auth authentication-list** *authenticate-list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list webauth` | Enables authentication list for dot1x security. |
| **Step 8** | **security web-auth parameter-map** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP` | Configures the parameter map.<br>**Note** If parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map. |

### Example

```
wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test
 security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 PASSWORD
 no security wpa akm dot1x
 security wpa akm psk
 security web-auth
 security web-auth authentication-list webauth
 security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP
```

# Configuring WLAN for PSK or Identity Preshared Key (iPSK) and Central Web Authentication (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Select the required WLAN.

**Step 3** Choose **Security** > **Layer2** tab.

**Step 4** Select the security method from the **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list.

**Step 5** In the **Auth Key Mgmt**, uncheck the **802.1x** check box.

**Step 6** Check the **PSK** check box.

**Step 7** Enter the **Pre-Shared Key** and choose the PSK Format from the **PSK Format** drop-down list and the PSK Type from the **PSK Type** drop-down list.

**Step 8** Check the **MAC Filtering** check box to enable the feature.

**Step 9** With MAC Filtering enabled, choose the Authorization List from the **Authorization List** drop-down list.

**Step 10** Choose **Security** > **Layer3** tab.

**Step 11** Check the **Web Policy** checkbox to enable web authentication policy.

**Step 12** Choose the Web Auth Parameter Map from the **Web Auth Parameter Map** drop-down list and the authentication list from the **Authentication List** drop-down list.

**Step 13** Click **Update &Apply to Device**.

# Configuring WLAN for PSK or Identity Preshared Key (iPSK) and Central Web Authentication

## Configuring WLAN

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test` | Enters WLAN configuration sub-mode.<br>• *profile-name* - Is the profile name of the configured WLAN.<br>• *wlan-id* - Is the wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512.<br>• *SSID_Name* - Is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>**Note**<br>If you have already configured this command, enter **wlan** *profile-name* command. |
| **Step 3** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for dot1x. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **security wpa psk set-key** *ascii/hex key password*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 PASSWORD` | Configures the PSK AKM shared key. |
| **Step 5** | **mac-filtering** *auth-list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering test-auth-list` | Sets the MAC filtering parameters. |

### Example

```
wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test
 no security wpa akm dot1x
 security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 PASSWORD
 mac-filtering test-auth-list
```

## Applying Policy Profile to a WLAN

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-iot` | Configures the default policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa-override**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override` | Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA or ISE servers. |
| **Step 4** | **nac**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# nac` | Configures NAC in the policy profile. |
| **Step 5** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:** | Shutdown the WLAN. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | |
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

**Example**

```
wireless profile policy policy-iot
 aaa-override
 nac
 no shutdown
```

# Configuring 802.1x and Central Web Authentication on Controller (CLIs)

## Creating AAA Authentication

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **aaa new-model**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa new-model` | Creates a AAA authentication model. |

## Configuring AAA Server for External Authentication

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **radius-server attribute wireless authentication call-station-id ap-name-ssid**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius-server attribute wireless authentication call-station-id ap-name-ssid` | Configures a call station identifier sent in the RADIUS authentication messages. |
| **Step 3** | **radius server** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius server ISE2` | Sets the RADIUS server. |
| **Step 4** | **address ipv4** *radius-server-ip-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 111.111.111.111` | Specifies the RADIUS server address. |
| **Step 5** | **timeout** *seconds*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# timeout 10` | Specify the time-out value in seconds. The range is between 10 and 1000 seconds. |
| **Step 6** | **retransmit** *number-of-retries*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# retransmit 10` | Specify the number of retries to the server. The range is between 0 and 100. |
| **Step 7** | **key** *key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# key cisco` | Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the device and the key string RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.<br>*key* covers the following:<br>• 0—Specifies unencrypted key.<br>• 6—Specifies encrypted key.<br>• 7—Specifies HIDDEN key.<br>• Word—Unencrypted (cleartext) server key. |
| **Step 8** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-radius-server)# exit` | Returns to the configuration mode. |
| **Step 9** | **aaa group server radius** *server-group*<br>**Example:** | Creates a RADIUS server-group identification. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# aaa group server radius ISE2` | |
| **Step 10** | **server name** *server-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# server name ISE2` | Configures the server name. |
| **Step 11** | **radius-server deadtime** *time-in-minutes*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# radius-server deadtime 5` | Defines the time in minutes when a server marked as DEAD is held in that state. Once the deadtime expires, the controller marks the server as UP (ALIVE) and notifies the registered clients about the state change. If the server is still unreachable after the state is marked as UP and if the DEAD criteria is met, then server is marked as DEAD again for the deadtime interval.<br>*time-in-mins*—Valid values range from 1 to 1440 minutes. Default value is zero. To return to the default value, use the **no radius-server deadtime** command.<br>The **radius-server deadtime** command can be configured globally or per aaa group server level.<br>You can use the **show aaa dead-criteria** or **show aaa servers** command to check for dead-server detection. If the default value is zero, deadtime is not configured. |

# Configuring AAA for Authentication

### Before you begin

Configure the RADIUS server and AAA group server.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **aaa authentication login**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# aaa authentication login ISE_GROUP group ISE2 local` | Defines the authentication method at login. |
| **Step 2** | **aaa authentication dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa authentication network ISE_GROUP group ISE2 local` | Defines the authentication method at dot1x. |

# Configuring Accounting Identity List

### Before you begin

Configure the RADIUS server and AAA group server.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **aaa accounting identity** *named-list* **start-stop group** *server-group-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# aaa accounting identity ISE start-stop group ISE2` | Enables accounting to send a start-record accounting notice when a client is authorized and a stop-record at the end.<br>**Note**<br>You can also use the default list instead of the named list. |

# Configuring AAA for Central Web Authentication

### Before you begin

Configure the RADIUS server and AAA group server.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **aaa server radius dynamic-author**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# aaa server radius dynamic-author` | Configures the Change of Authorization (CoA) on the controller. |
| **Step 2** | **client** *client-ip-addr* **server-key** *key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 111.111.111.111 server-key ciscokey` | Configures a server key for a RADIUS client. |

# Defining an Access Control List for Radius Server

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ip access-list extended redirect**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ip access-list extended redirect` | The HTTP and HTTPS browsing does not work without authentication (per the other ACL) as ISE is configured to use a redirect ACL (named **redirect**). |
| **Step 3** | *sequence-number* **deny icmp any**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ext-nacl)# 10 deny icmp any` | Specifies packets to reject according to the sequence number.<br>**Note**<br>You must have the DHCP, DNS, and ISE servers in the reject sequences. Refer to Configuration Example to Define an Access Control List for Radius Server, wherein the *111.111.111.111* refers to the IP address of the ISE server. |
| **Step 4** | **permit TCP any any eq** *web-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit TCP any any eq www` | Redirects all HTTP or HTTPS access to the Cisco ISE login page. |

# Configuration Example to Define an Access Control List for Radius Server

This example shows how to define an access control list for RADIUS server:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 10 deny icmp any
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 20 deny udp any any eq bootps
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 30 deny udp any any eq bootpc
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 40 deny udp any any eq domain
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 50 deny tcp any host 111.111.111.111 eq 8443
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 55 deny tcp host 111.111.111.111 eq 8443 any
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 40 deny udp any any eq domain
Device(config-ext-nacl) # end
```

# Configuring WLAN

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-name*<br>**Example:** | Enters WLAN configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# wlan wlan30` | |
| **Step 3** | **security dot1x authentication-list ISE_GROUP**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list ISE_GROUP` | Configures 802.1X for a WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |

# Configuring Policy Profile

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy wireless-profile1` | Configures policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa-override**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override` | Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA or Cisco Identify Services Engine (ISE) server. |
| **Step 4** | **accounting-list** *list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# accounting-list ISE` | Sets the accounting list for IEEE 802.1x. |
| **Step 5** | **ipv4 dhcp required**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp required` | Configures DHCP parameters for WLAN. |
| **Step 6** | **nac**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# nac` | Configures Network Access Control (NAC) in the policy profile. NAC is used to trigger the Central Web Authentication (CWA). |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 7** | **vlan 25**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 25` | Configures guest VLAN profile. |
| **Step 8** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Enables policy profile. |

# Mapping WLAN and Policy Profile to Policy Tag

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless tag policy** *policy-tag-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# wireless tag policy xx-xre-policy-tag` | Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **wlan** *wlan-name* **policy** *profile-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan wlan30 policy wireless-profile1` | Maps a policy profile to a WLAN profile. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# end` | Saves the configuration and exits the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication with Dot1x (GUI)

## Defining Guest Portal

**Before you begin**

Define the guest portal or use the default guest portal.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
**Step 2** Choose **Work Centers** > **Guest Access** > **Portals & Components**.
**Step 3** Click **Guest Portal**.

# Defining Authorization Profile for a Client

**Before you begin**

You can define the authorization profile to use guest portal and other additional parameters as per the requirement. Authorization profile redirects the client to the authentication portal. In the latest Cisco ISE version, Cisco_Webauth authorization results exist already, and you can edit the same to modify the redirection ACL name to match the configuration in the controller.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
**Step 2** Choose **Policy** > **Policy Elements** > **Authorization** > **Authorization Profiles**.
**Step 3** Click **Add** to create your own custom or edit the Cisco_Webauth default result.

# Defining Authentication Rule

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
**Step 2** Choose **Policy** > **Policy Sets** and click on the appropriate policy set.
**Step 3** Expand **Authentication** policy.
**Step 4** Expand **Options** and choose an appropriate **User ID**.

# Defining Authorization Rule

### Procedure

**Step 1** Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).

**Step 2** Choose **Policy** > **Policy Sets** > **Authorization Policy**.

**Step 3** Create a rule that matches the condition for 802.1x with a specific SSID (using Radius-Called-Station-ID).

**Note**
You get to view the CWA redirect attribute.

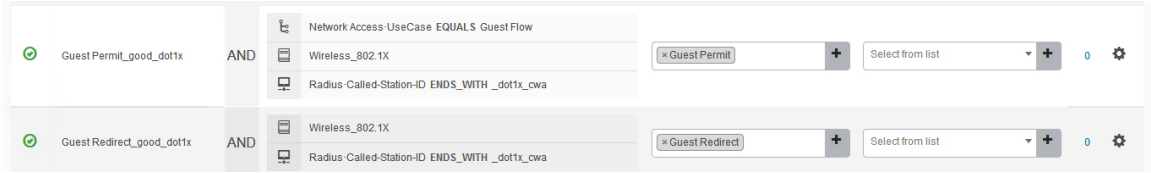
**Step 4** Choose the already created authorization profile.

**Step 5** From the **Result/Profile** column, choose the already created authorization profile.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

**Note**
The following image depicts the working configuration sample for your reference.

***Figure 10: Working Configuration Sample***




# Creating Rules to Match Guest Flow Condition

### Before you begin

You must create a second rule that matches the guest flow condition and returns to network access details once the user completes authentication in the portal.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).

**Step 2** Choose **Policy** > **Policy Sets** > **Authorization Policy**.

**Step 3** Create a rule that matches the condition for 802.1x with, Network Access-UseCase EQUALS Guest, and a specific SSID (using Radius-Called-Station-ID).

**Note**
You get to view the Permit Access.

**Step 4** From the **Result/Profile** column, choose the already created authorization profile.

**Step 5** Choose the default or customized Permit Access.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

# Verifying Multiple Authentication Configurations

### Layer 2 Authentication

After L2 authentication (Dot1x) is complete, the client is moved to *Webauth Pending* state.

To verify the client state after L2 authentication, use the following commands:

```
Device# show wireless client summary
Number of Local Clients: 1
MAC Address  AP Name  WLAN  State  Protocol  Method  Role
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

58ef.68b6.aa60 ewlc1_ap_1   3  Webauth Pending    11n(5)        Dot1x  Local
Number of Excluded Clients: 0
```

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address <mac_address> detail

Auth Method Status List

Method: Dot1x
Webauth State: Init
Webauth Method: Webauth
Local Policies:
Service Template: IP-Adm-V6-Int-ACL-global (priority 100)
URL Redirect ACL: IP-Adm-V6-Int-ACL-global
Service Template: IP-Adm-V4-Int-ACL-global (priority 100)
URL Redirect ACL: IP-Adm-V4-Int-ACL-global
Service Template: wlan_svc_default-policy-profile_local (priority 254)
Absolute-Timer: 1800
VLAN: 50
```

```
Device# show platform software wireless-client chassis active R0

        ID  MAC Address      WLAN  Client     State
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  0xa0000003      58ef.68b6.aa60    3             L3          Authentication
```

```
Device# show platform software wireless-client chassis active F0

    ID     MAC Address   WLAN  Client     State  AOM ID    Status
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0xa0000003    58ef.68b6.aa60    3           L3          Authentication.         730.
Done
```

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient cpp-client
summary

Client Type Abbreviations:
RG - REGULAR   BLE - BLE
HL - HALO    LI - LWFL INT

Auth State Abbrevations:
UK - UNKNOWN    IP - LEARN    IP IV - INVALID
L3 - L3 AUTH RN - RUN

Mobility State Abbreviations:
```

```
UK - UNKNOWN       IN - INIT
LC - LOCAL               AN - ANCHOR
FR - FOREIGN          MT - MTE
IV - INVALID


EoGRE Abbreviations:
N - NON EOGRE Y - EOGRE

CPP IF_H   DP IDX       MAC Address      VLAN   CT   MCVL AS MS E   WLAN      POA
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0X49     0XA0000003    58ef.68b6.aa60     50    RG     0  L3 LC N wlan-test 0x90000003
```

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath summary
Vlan   DP IDX         MAC Address      VLAN   CT   MCVL AS MS E   WLAN      POA
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0X49   0xa0000003    58ef.68b6.aa60     50    RG     0  L3 LC N wlan-test 0x90000003
```

### Layer 3 Authentication

Once L3 authentication is successful, the client is moved to *Run* state.

To verify the client state after L3 authentication, use the following commands:

```
Device# show wireless client summary

Number of Local Clients: 1
MAC Address  AP Name  WLAN  State  Protocol  Method  Role
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

58ef.68b6.aa60   ewlc1_ap_1  3     Run    11n(5)   Web Auth      Local
Number of Excluded Clients: 0
```

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 58ef.68b6.aa60 detail

Auth Method Status List

Method: Web Auth
Webauth State: Authz
Webauth Method: Webauth
Local Policies:
Service Template: wlan_svc_default-policy-profile_local (priority 254)
Absolute-Timer: 1800
VLAN: 50

Server Policies:

Resultant Policies:
VLAN: 50
Absolute-Timer: 1800
```

```
Device# show platform software wireless-client chassis active R0

ID          MAC Address     WLAN    Client State
-----------------------------------------------------
0xa0000001 58ef.68b6.aa60    3          Run
```

```
Device# show platform software wireless-client chassis active f0

ID         MAC Address       WLAN    Client State   AOM ID.  Status
-------------------------------------------------------------------
0xa0000001 58ef.68b6.aa60.   3          Run         11633    Done
```

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient cpp-client
summary
```

```
Client Type Abbreviations:
RG - REGULAR   BLE - BLE
HL - HALO      LI - LWFL INT

Auth State Abbrevations:
UK - UNKNOWN    IP - LEARN    IP IV - INVALID
L3 - L3 AUTH RN - RUN
Mobility State Abbreviations:
UK - UNKNOWN       IN - INIT
LC - LOCAL         AN - ANCHOR
FR - FOREIGN       MT - MTE
IV - INVALID
EoGRE Abbreviations:
N - NON EOGRE Y - EOGRE

CPP IF_H   DP IDX       MAC Address   VLAN  CT  MCVL AS MS E   WLAN     POA
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0X49     0XA0000003    58ef.68b6.aa60  50   RG   0   RN LC N wlan-test 0x90000003
```

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath summary

Vlan   pal_if_hd1        mac           Input Uidb     Output Uidb
-----------------------------------------------------------------
50     0xa0000003    58ef.68b6.aa60     95929            95927
```

## Verifying PSK+Webauth Configuration

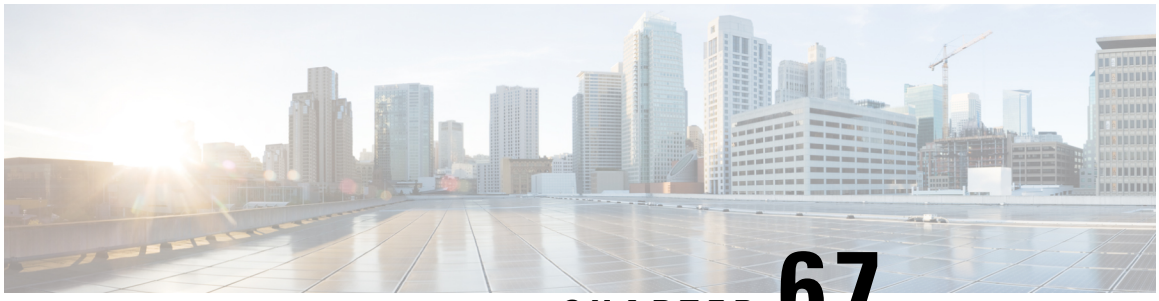
```
Device# show wlan summary

Load for five secs: 0%/0%; one minute: 0%; five minutes: 0%
Time source is NTP, 12:08:32.941 CEST Tue Oct 6 2020


Number of WLANs: 1

ID Profile Name SSID Status Security
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

23 Gladius1-PSKWEBAUTH Gladius1-PSKWEBAUTH UP [WPA2][PSK][AES],[Web Auth]
```



CHAPTER 67

# Support for Hash-to-Element for Password Element in SAE Authentication


- Hash-to-Element (H2E), on page 593
- YANG (RPC model), on page 593
- Configuring WPA3 SAE H2E, on page 594
- Verifying WPA3 SAE H2E Support in WLAN, on page 596


## Hash-to-Element (H2E)

Hash-to-Element (H2E) is a new SAE Password Element (PWE) method. In this method, the secret PWE used in the SAE protocol is generated from a password.

When a STA that supports H2E initiates SAE with an AP, it checks whether AP supports H2E. If yes, the AP uses the H2E to derive the PWE by using a newly defined Status Code value in the SAE Commit message.

If STA uses Hunting-and-Pecking, the entire SAE exchange remains unchanged.

While using the H2E, the PWE derivation is divided into the following components:

- Derivation of a secret intermediary element PT from the password. This can be performed offline when the password is initially configured on the device for each supported group.
- Derivation of the PWE from the stored PT. This depends on the negotiated group and MAC addresses of peers. This is performed in real-time during the SAE exchange.

**Note**

- The H2E method also incorporates protection against the Group Downgrade man-in-the-middle attacks. During the SAE exchange, the peers exchange lists of rejected groups binded into the PMK derivation. Each peer compares the received list with the list of groups supported, any discrepancy detects a downgrade attack and terminates the authentication.

## YANG (RPC model)

To create an RPC for SAE Password Element (PWE) mode, use the following RPC model:

```
<nc:rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:0a77124f-c563-469d-bd21-cc625a9691cc">
<nc:edit-config>
<nc:target>
<nc:running/>
</nc:target>
<nc:config>
<wlan-cfg-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-wlan-cfg">
<wlan-cfg-entries>
<wlan-cfg-entry>
<profile-name>test</profile-name>
<wlan-id>2</wlan-id>
<sae-pwe-mode>both-h2e-hnp</sae-pwe-mode>
</wlan-cfg-entry>
</wlan-cfg-entries>
</wlan-cfg-data>
</nc:config>
</nc:edit-config>
</nc:rpc>
```

**Note** The **delete** operation performs one action at a time due to the current infra limitation. That is, in YANG module, the **delete** operation on multiple nodes are not supported.

# Configuring WPA3 SAE H2E

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan WPA3 1 WPA3` | Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode. |
| **Step 3** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for dot1x. |
| **Step 4** | **no security ft over-the-ds**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security ft over-the-ds` | Disables fast transition over the data source on the WLAN. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 5** | **no security ft**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security ft` | Disables 802.11r fast transition on the WLAN. |
| **Step 6** | **no security wpa wpa2**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2` | Disables WPA2 security. PMF is disabled now. |
| **Step 7** | **security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes` | Configures WPA2 cipher.<br>**Note**<br>You can check whether cipher is configured using **no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes** command. If cipher is not reset, configure the cipher. |
| **Step 8** | **security wpa psk set-key ascii** *value preshared-key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 Cisco123` | Specifies a preshared key. |
| **Step 9** | **security wpa wpa3**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3` | Enables WPA3 support. |
| **Step 10** | **security wpa akm sae**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae` | Enables AKM SAE support. |
| **Step 11** | **security wpa akm sae pwe** {**h2e** \| **hnp** \| **both-h2e-hnp**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae pwe` | Enables AKM SAE PWE support.<br>PWE supports the following options:<br>• h2e—Hash-to-Element only; disables HnP.<br>• hnp—Hunting and Pecking only; disables H2E.<br>• Both-h2e-hnp—Both Hash-to-Element and Hunting and Pecking support (Is the default option). |
| **Step 12** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 13** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to the privileged EXEC mode. |

# Verifying WPA3 SAE H2E Support in WLAN

To view the WLAN properties (PWE method) based on the WLAN ID, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan id 1
WLAN Profile Name     : wpa3
================================================
Identifier                                       : 1
Description                                      :
Network Name (SSID)                              : wpa3
Status                                           : Enabled
Broadcast SSID                                   : Enabled
Advertise-Apname                                 : Disabled
Universal AP Admin                               : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN                  : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN           : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN     : 200
OKC                                              : Enabled
Number of Active Clients                         : 0
CHD per WLAN                                     : Enabled
WMM                                              : Allowed
WiFi Direct Policy                               : Disabled
Channel Scan Defer Priority:
  Priority (default)                             : 5
  Priority (default)                             : 6
Scan Defer Time (msecs)                          : 100
Media Stream Multicast-direct                    : Disabled
CCX - AironetIe Support                          : Disabled
Peer-to-Peer Blocking Action                     : Disabled
DTIM period for 802.11a radio                    : 1
DTIM period for 802.11b radio                    : 1
Local EAP Authentication                         : Disabled
Mac Filter Authorization list name               : Disabled
Mac Filter Override Authorization list name      : Disabled
Accounting list name                             :
802.1x authentication list name                  : Disabled
802.1x authorization list name                   : Disabled
Security
    802.11 Authentication                        : Open System
    Static WEP Keys                              : Disabled
    Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2/WPA3)       : Enabled
        WPA (SSN IE)                             : Disabled
        WPA2 (RSN IE)                            : Disabled
        WPA3 (WPA3 IE)                           : Enabled
            AES Cipher                           : Enabled
            CCMP256 Cipher                       : Disabled
            GCMP128 Cipher                       : Disabled
            GCMP256 Cipher                       : Disabled
        Auth Key Management
            802.1x                               : Disabled
            PSK                                  : Disabled
            CCKM                                 : Disabled
            FT dot1x                             : Disabled
```

```
            FT PSK                                : Disabled
            Dot1x-SHA256                          : Disabled
            PSK-SHA256                            : Disabled
            SAE                                   : Enabled
            OWE                                   : Disabled
            SUITEB-1X                             : Disabled
            SUITEB192-1X                          : Disabled
    SAE PWE Method                                : Hash to Element(H2E)
    Transition Disable                            : Disabled
    CCKM TSF Tolerance (msecs)                    : 1000
    OWE Transition Mode                           : Disabled
    OSEN                                          : Disabled
    FT Support                                    : Disabled
        FT Reassociation Timeout (secs)           : 20
        FT Over-The-DS mode                       : Disabled
    PMF Support                                   : Required
        PMF Association Comeback Timeout (secs): 1
        PMF SA Query Time (msecs)                 : 200
    Web Based Authentication                      : Disabled
    Conditional Web Redirect                      : Disabled
    Splash-Page Web Redirect                      : Disabled
    Webauth On-mac-filter Failure                 : Disabled
    Webauth Authentication List Name              : Disabled
    Webauth Authorization List Name               : Disabled
    Webauth Parameter Map                         : Disabled
Band Select                                       : Disabled
Load Balancing                                    : Disabled
Multicast Buffer                                  : Disabled
Multicast Buffers (frames)                        : 0
IP Source Guard                                   : Disabled
Assisted-Roaming
    Neighbor List                                 : Enabled
    Prediction List                               : Disabled
    Dual Band Support                             : Disabled
IEEE 802.11v parameters
    Directed Multicast Service                    : Enabled
    BSS Max Idle                                  : Enabled
        Protected Mode                            : Disabled
    Traffic Filtering Service                     : Disabled
    BSS Transition                                : Enabled
        Disassociation Imminent                   : Disabled
            Optimised Roaming Timer (TBTTS)       : 40
            Timer (TBTTS)                         : 200
        Dual Neighbor List                        : Disabled
    WNM Sleep Mode                                : Disabled
802.11ac MU-MIMO                                  : Enabled
802.11ax parameters
    802.11ax Operation Status                     : Enabled
    OFDMA Downlink                                : Enabled
    OFDMA Uplink                                  : Enabled
    MU-MIMO Downlink                              : Enabled
    MU-MIMO Uplink                                : Enabled
    BSS Target Wake Up Time                       : Enabled
    BSS Target Wake Up Time Broadcast Support  : Enabled
802.11 protocols in 2.4ghz band
    Protocol                                      : dot11bg
Advanced Scheduling Requests Handling             : Enabled
mDNS Gateway Status                               : Bridge
WIFI Alliance Agile Multiband                     : Disabled
Device Analytics
    Advertise Support                             : Enabled
    Advertise Support for PC analytics            : Enabled
    Share Data with Client                        : Disabled
Client Scan Report (11k Beacon Radio Measurement)
```

```
    Request on Association                    : Disabled
    Request on Roam                           : Disabled
WiFi to Cellular Steering                     : Disabled
Advanced Scheduling Requests Handling         : Enabled
Locally Administered Address Configuration
    Deny LAA clients                          : Disabled
```

To verify the client association who have used the PWE method as H2E or HnP, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address e884.a52c.47a5 detail
Client MAC Address : e884.a52c.47a5
Client MAC Type : Universally Administered Address
Client DUID: NA
Client IPv4 Address : 11.11.0.65
Client IPv6 Addresses : fe80::c80f:bb8c:86f6:f71f
Client Username: N/A
AP MAC Address : d4ad.bda2.e9e0
AP Name: APA453.0E7B.E73C
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : default-policy-profile
Flex Profile : N/A
Wireless LAN Id: 1
WLAN Profile Name: wpa3
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID): wpa3
BSSID : d4ad.bda2.e9ef
Connected For : 72 seconds
Protocol : 802.11ax - 5 GHz
Channel : 36
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000001
Association Id : 2
Authentication Algorithm : Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE)
Idle state timeout : N/A
Session Timeout : 1800 sec (Remaining time: 1728 sec)
Session Warning Time : Timer not running
Input Policy Name  : None
Input Policy State : None
Input Policy Source : None
Output Policy Name  : None
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Disabled
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Client Active State : Active
Power Save : OFF
Current Rate : m6 ss2
Supported Rates : 6.0,9.0,12.0,18.0,24.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
AAA QoS Rate Limit Parameters:
  QoS Average Data Rate Upstream             : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Upstream    : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Burst Data Rate Upstream               : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Upstream      : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Average Data Rate Downstream           : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Downstream  : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Burst Data Rate Downstream             : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Downstream    : 0 (kbps)
Mobility:
  Move Count                  : 0
  Mobility Role               : Local
  Mobility Roam Type          : None
  Mobility Complete Timestamp : 08/24/2021 04:39:47 Pacific
Client Join Time:
  Join Time Of Client : 08/24/2021 04:39:47 Pacific
Client State Servers : None
```

```
Client ACLs : None
Policy Manager State: Run
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 72 seconds
Policy Type : WPA3
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : SAE
AAA override passphrase : No
SAE PWE Method : Hash to Element(H2E)
Transition Disable Bitmap : None
User Defined (Private) Network : Disabled
User Defined (Private) Network Drop Unicast : Disabled
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : Yes
EAP Type : Not Applicable
VLAN Override after Webauth : No
VLAN : VLAN0011
Multicast VLAN : 0
WiFi Direct Capabilities:
  WiFi Direct Capable           : No
Central NAT : DISABLED
Session Manager:
  Point of Attachment : capwap_90000006
  IIF ID              : 0x90000006
  Authorized          : TRUE
  Session timeout     : 1800
  Common Session ID: 0000000000000000C76750C17
  Acct Session ID  : 0x00000000
  Auth Method Status List
   Method : SAE
  Local Policies:
   Service Template : wlan_svc_default-policy-profile_local (priority 254)
    VLAN              : VLAN0011
    Absolute-Timer    : 1800
  Server Policies:
  Resultant Policies:
                VLAN Name         : VLAN0011
    VLAN              : 11
    Absolute-Timer    : 1800
DNS Snooped IPv4 Addresses : None
DNS Snooped IPv6 Addresses : None
Client Capabilities
  CF Pollable : Not implemented
  CF Poll Request : Not implemented
  Short Preamble : Not implemented
  PBCC : Not implemented
  Channel Agility : Not implemented
  Listen Interval : 0
Fast BSS Transition Details :
  Reassociation Timeout : 0
11v BSS Transition : Implemented
11v DMS Capable : No
QoS Map Capable : Yes
FlexConnect Data Switching : N/A
FlexConnect Dhcp Status : N/A
FlexConnect Authentication : N/A
Client Statistics:
  Number of Bytes Received from Client : 21757
  Number of Bytes Sent to Client : 4963
  Number of Packets Received from Client : 196
  Number of Packets Sent to Client : 37
  Number of Policy Errors : 0
  Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -72 dBm
  Signal to Noise Ratio : 20 dB
```

```
Fabric status : Disabled
Radio Measurement Enabled Capabilities
  Capabilities: Neighbor Report, Passive Beacon Measurement, Active Beacon Measurement,
Table Beacon Measurement
Client Scan Report Time : Timer not running
Client Scan Reports
Assisted Roaming Neighbor List
```

To view the number of SAE authentications using the H2E and HnP, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client detail
Total Number of Clients : 0

Protocol Statistics

---------------------------------------------------------------------------
Protcol            Client Count
 802.11b              : 0
 802.11g              : 0
 802.11a              : 0
 802.11n-2.4GHz       : 0
 802.11n-5 GHz        : 0
 802.11ac             : 0
 802.11ax-5 GHz       : 0
 802.11ax-2.4 GHz     : 0
  802.11ax-6 GHz      : 0



Current client state statistics:
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
  Authenticating         : 0
  Mobility               : 0
  IP Learn               : 0
  Webauth Pending        : 0
  Run                    : 0
  Delete-in-Progress     : 0

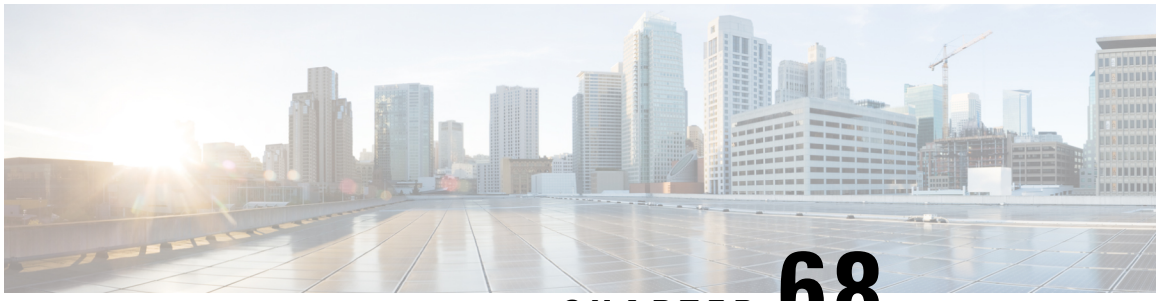

Client Summary
-----------------------------
Current Clients : 0
Excluded Clients: 0
Disabled Clients: 0
Foreign Clients : 0
Anchor Clients  : 0
Local Clients   : 0
Idle Clients    : 0
Locally Administered MAC Clients: 0

client global statistics:
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
Total association requests received              : 0
Total association attempts                       : 0
Total FT/LocalAuth requests                      : 0
Total association failures                       : 0
Total association response accepts               : 0
Total association response rejects               : 0
Total association response errors                : 0
Total association failures due to exclusion list      : 0
Total association drops due to multicast mac     : 0
Total association drops due to random mac        : 0
Total association drops due to throttling        : 0
Total association drops due to unknown bssid     : 0
```

```
Total association drops due to parse failure     : 0
Total association drops due to other reasons     : 0
Total association requests wired clients         : 0
Total association drops wired clients            : 0
Total association success wired clients          : 0
Total peer association requests wired clients    : 0
Total peer association drops wired clients       : 0
Total peer association success wired clients     : 0
Total association success wifi direct clients    : 0
Total association rejects wifi direct clients    : 0
Total association response errors                : 0
Total 11r ft authentication requests received    : 0
Total 11r ft authentication response success     : 0
Total 11r ft authentication response failure     : 0
Total 11r ft action requests received            : 0
Total 11r ft action response success             : 0
Total 11r ft action response failure             : 0
Total 11r PMKR0-Name mismatch                    : 0
Total 11r PMKR1-Name mismatch                    : 0
Total 11r MDID mismatch                          : 0
Total AID allocation failures                    : 0
Total AID free failures                          : 0
Total Roam Across Policy Profiles                : 0
Total roam attempts                              : 0
  Total CCKM roam attempts                       : 0
  Total 11r roam attempts                        : 0
  Total 11r slow roam attempts                   : 0
  Total 11i fast roam attempts                   : 0
  Total 11i slow roam attempts                   : 0
  Total other roam type attempts                 : 0
Total roam failures in dot11                     : 0

Total WPA3 SAE attempts                          : 0
Total WPA3 SAE successful authentications        : 0
Total WPA3 SAE authentication failures           : 0
  Total incomplete protocol failures             : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages received          : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages rejected                                    : 0
  Total unsupported group rejections                                       : 0
  Total PWE method mismatch for SAE Hash to Element commit received        : 0
  Total PWE method mismatch for SAE Hunting And Pecking commit received : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages sent              : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages received         : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages rejected         : 0
  Total WPA3 SAE message confirm field mismatch  : 0
  Total WPA3 SAE confirm message invalid length  : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages sent             : 0
Total WPA3 SAE Open Sessions                     : 0
Total SAE Message drops due to throttling        : 0
Total WPA3 SAE Hash to Element commit received   : 0
Total WPA3 SAE Hunting and Pecking commit received : 0

Total Flexconnect local-auth roam attempts       : 0
  Total AP 11i fast roam attempts                : 0
  Total AP 11i slow roam attempts                : 0
  Total 11r flex roam attempts                   : 0
```



CHAPTER 68

# Cisco Umbrella WLAN


- Information About Cisco Umbrella WLAN, on page 603
- Registering Embedded Wireless Controller to Cisco Umbrella Account, on page 604
- Configuring Cisco Umbrella WLAN, on page 605
- Verifying the Cisco Umbrella Configuration, on page 611


## Information About Cisco Umbrella WLAN

The Cisco Umbrella WLAN provides a cloud-delivered network security service at the Domain Name System (DNS) level, with automatic detection of both known and emergent threats.

This feature allows you to block sites that host malware, bot networks, and phishing before they actually become malicious.

Cisco Umbrella WLAN provides the following:

- Policy configuration per user group at a single point.
- Policy configuration per network, group, user, device, or IP address.

  The following is the policy priority order:

  1. Local policy
  2. AP group
  3. WLAN

- Visual security activity dashboard in real time with aggregated reports.
- Schedule and send reports through email.
- Support up to 60 content categories, with a provision to add custom allowed list and blocked list entries.

This feature does not work in the following scenarios:

- If an application or host use an IP address directly, instead of using DNS to query domain names.
- If a client is connected to a web proxy and does not send a DNS query to resolve the server address.

# Registering Embedded Wireless Controller to Cisco Umbrella Account

### Before you Begin

- You should have an account with Cisco Umbrella.
- You should have an API token from Cisco Umbrella.

The embedded wireless controller is registered to Cisco Umbrella server using the Umbrella parameter map. Each of the Umbrella parameter map must have an API token. The Cisco Umbrella responds with the device ID for the embedded wireless controller. The device ID has a 1:1 mapping with the Umbrella parameter map name.

### Fetching API token for Embedded Wireless Controller from Cisco Umbrella Dashboard

From Cisco Umbrella dashboard, verify that your embedded wireless controller shows up under Device Name, along with their identities.

### Applying the API Token on Embedded Wireless Controller

Registers the Cisco Umbrella API token on the network.

### DNS Query and Response

Once the device is registered and Umbrella parameter map is configured on WLAN, the DNS queries from clients joining the WLAN are redirected to the Umbrella DNS resolver.



**Note** This is applicable for all domains not configured in the local domain RegEx parameter map.

The queries and responses are encrypted based on the DNScrypt option in the Umbrella parameter map.

For more information on the Cisco Umbrella configurations, see the Integration for ISR 4K and ISR 1100 – Security Configuration Guide.

### Limitations and Considerations

The limitations and considerations for this feature are as follows:

- You will be able to apply the wireless Cisco Umbrella profiles to wireless entities, such as, WLAN or AP groups, if the device registration is successful.
- In case of L3 mobility, the Cisco Umbrella must be applied on the anchor embedded wireless controller always.
- When two DNS servers are configured under DHCP, two Cisco Umbrella server IPs are sent to the client from DHCP option 6. If only one DNS server is present under DHCP, only one Cisco Umbrella server IP is sent as part of DHCP option 6.

# Configuring Cisco Umbrella WLAN

To configure Cisco Umbrella on the embedded wireless controller, perform the following:

- You must have the API token from the Cisco Umbrella dashboard.
- You must have the root certificate to establish HTTPS connection with the Cisco Umbrella registration server: api.opendns.com. You must import the root certificate from **digicert.com** to the embedded wireless controller using the **crypto pki trustpool import terminal** command.

## Importing CA Certificate to the Trust Pool

### Before you begin

The following section covers details about how to fetch the root certificate and establish HTTPS connection with the Cisco Umbrella registration server:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | Perform either of the following tasks:<br>• **crypto pki trustpool import url** *url*<br>`Device(config)# crypto pki trustpool import url http://www.cisco.com/security/pki/trs/ios.p7b`<br>Imports the root certificate directly from the Cisco website.<br>**Note** The Trustpool bundle contains the root certificate of *digicert.com* together with other CA certificates.<br>• **crypto pki trustpool import terminal**<br>`Device(config)# crypto pki trustpool import terminal`<br>Imports the root certificate by executing the import terminal command.<br>• Enter PEM-formatted CA certificate from the following location: See the Related | |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | Information section to download the CA certificate.<br>-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----<br>MIIF6jCCA9KgAwIBAgIQCjUI1vkvyY9kMlwA3TANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADBhMQsw<br>CQYDVQQGEwJVUzEVMBMGA1UEChMMRGlnaUNlcnQgSW5jMRkwFwYDVQQLExB3d3cu<br>ZGlnaWNlcnQuY29tMSAwHgYDVQQDExdHZW9UcnVzdCBHbG9iYWwgUm9vdCBHMjAe<br>Fw0xNzA1MjMwMDAwMDBaFw0yNzA1MjMwMDAwMDBaMIGEMQswCQYDVQQGEwJVUzEV<br>MBMGA1UEChMMRGlnaUNlcnQgSW5jMRkwFwYDVQQLExB3d3cuZGlnaWNlcnQuY29t<br>MUMwQQYDVQQDEzpHZW9UcnVzdCBHbG9iYWwgVExTIFJTQSBDQSBPbmUgMjAyMiAt<br>IEcyMIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEAuzdwnbNwKz2lL1rF<br>mi1tb3pGd6L/fEaWp7/xzn+8jP8HjWpD/R3ZkF9S5ecbDUVk54lGcmviCr/rpDJJ<br>EMd6mr1BmpUyZYcC4LLZlx+FHCiodizVCVGw6ir85ANXzzOoE0a/5CT6MHbXWfgO<br>R4/k9A/5JbJvGSyr7HTkzgHNjWSi16hZLYKC6E+aUDAfSQsa8/4omhnHyrw5hSoK<br>/B8HttF8yHn1VpojGecWCL2SxMpwPzjI2MfjHdpbCDDsGIUFUlJAt/1bX0vwSvxP<br>nH2FDJlZgD7aRERI6wW/KpD1FRhQaXNUDdZGYtCgK1ocMzwvnjPCSo68CAwEAAaOC<br>AVowggFWMBIGA1UdEwEB/wQIMAYBAf8CAQAwHQYDVR0OBBYEFHSFgMBmx9833s+9<br>KTeC4jnGkY5PMB8GA1UdIwQYMBaAFAPeUDVW0Uy7ZvCj4hsj57gQ5QLUMA4GA1Ud<br>DwEB/wQEAwIBhjAdBgNVHSUEFjAUBggrBgEFBQcDAQYIKwYBBQUHAwIwdgYIKwYB<br>BQUHAQEEajBoMCQGCCsGAQUFBzABhhhodHRwOi8vb2NzcC5kaWdpY2VydC5jb20w<br>QAYIKwYBBQUHMAKGNGh0dHA6Ly9jYWNlcnRzLmRpZ2ljZXJ0LmNvbS9EaWdpQ2Vy<br>dEdsb2JhbFJvb3RHMi5jcnQwewYDVR0fBHQwcjA3oDWgM4YxaHR0cDovL2NybDMu<br>ZGlnaWNlcnQuY29tL0RpZ2lDZXJ0R2xvYmFsUm9vdEcyLmNybDA3oDWgM4YxaHR0<br>cDovL2NybDQuZGlnaWNlcnQuY29tL0RpZ2lDZXJ0R2xvYmFsUm9vdEcyLmNybDA9<br>BgNVHSAENjA0MAsGCWCGSAGG/WwCATAHBgVngQwBATAIBgZngQwBAgEwCAYGZ4EM<br>AQIBMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAA4IBAQCAMtN6iPiuvRnP9AzaaMq4+moLkT6a/7Cm<br>wF3m7ksYxNr9iTPcGRISvL9Yr1oYmZD0Fb1CbL+3X3bPbF6pK1rW6cdWSgAcGwnV<br>zBoKO/OY2EHXi9387FiSmUNtF8iYkMucz6laOZS89kfGLyir9CUacNcS10pP6Vkc<br>Tr7eOh5HumS0/ZVl8G5fY5vF56Y0pMH2SWJrfRStbyV5gkH43Hs73KENSAZwMQo1<br>utdMmnWvPcb6SmP1qquanYeVi/6OCBCSL6YJ0nuDTmkpJPl4ik3Kone+UWf12o+L<br>1CBViDwzv/SQF0fMssLaCVuWn1Ka/mct/tbZAdGDaQwLVLTzeuRkh1L1Wdka3g4Q<br>Xh8cZ7W0Z4eW1gYPd2EzgjLX7FdtK/E7gpFcWxSA5KhdMW9bSazVtXoKP2Tf0ijg<br>QBjSb7P7ex0DJ+mCcbNsbL54OmHVuKPVz/Bd5lo2PcWxDZ9SFN7fQbzUX1hVavV6<br>dZdpQr4h<br>-----END CERTIFICATE-----<br>Imports the root certificate by pasting the CA certificate from the **digicert.com**. | |
| **Step 3** | **quit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# quit` | Imports the root certificate by entering the **quit** command.<br>**Note**<br>You will receive a message after the certificate has been imported. |

# Creating a Local Domain RegEx Parameter Map

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **parameter-map type regex** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:** | Creates a regex parameter map. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# parameter-map type regex dns_wl` | |
| **Step 3** | **pattern** *regex-pattern*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-profile)# pattern www.google.com` | Configures the regex pattern to match.<br>**Note**<br>The following patterns are supported:<br>• Begins with `.*`. For example: **`.*facebook.com`**<br>• Begins with `.*` and ends with `*`. For example: **`.*google*`**<br>• Ends with `*`. For example: **`www.facebook*`**<br>• No special character. For example: **`www.facebook.com`** |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-profile)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.
**Step 2** Click on the Policy Profile Name. The **Edit Policy Profile** window is displayed.
**Step 3** Choose the **Advanced** tab.
**Step 4** In the **Umbrella** settings, from the **Umbrella Parameter Map** drop-down list, choose the parameter map.
**Step 5** Enable or disable **Flex DHCP Option for DNS** and **DNS Traffic Redirect** toggle buttons.
**Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring the Umbrella Parameter Map

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:** | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device# configure terminal` | |
| **Step 2** | **parameter-map type umbrella global**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type umbrella global` | Creates an umbrella global parameter map. |
| **Step 3** | **token** *token-value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-profile)# token 5XXXXXXXXCXXXXXXXAXXXXXXXFXXXXCXXXXXXXX` | Configures an umbrella token. |
| **Step 4** | **local-domain** *regex-parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-profile)# local-domain dns_wl` | Configures local domain RegEx parameter map. |
| **Step 5** | **resolver** {**IPv4** *X.X.X.X* \| **IPv6** *X:X:X:X::X*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-profile)# resolver IPv6 10:1:1:1::10` | Configures the Anycast address. The default address is applied when there is no specific address configured. |
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-profile)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

## Enabling or Disabling DNScrypt (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Threat Defence** > **Umbrella**.

**Step 2** Enter the **Registration Token** received from Umbrella. Alternatively, you can click on **Click here to get your Token**to get the token from Umbrella.

**Step 3** Enter the **Whitelist Domains** that you want to exclude from filtering.

**Step 4** Check or uncheck the **Enable DNS Packets Encryption** check box to encrypt or decrypt the DNS packets.

**Step 5** Click **Apply**.

## Enabling or Disabling DNScrypt

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **parameter-map type umbrella global**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type umbrella global` | Creates an umbrella global parameter map. |
| **Step 3** | [**no**] **dnscrypt**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-profile)# no dnscrypt` | Enables or disables DNScrypt.<br>By default, the DNScrypt option is enabled.<br>**Note**<br>Cisco Umbrella DNScrypt is not supported when DNS-encrypted responses are sent in the data-DTLS encrypted tunnel (either mobility tunnel or AP CAPWAP tunnel). |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-profile)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

## Configuring Timeout for UDP Sessions

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **parameter-map type umbrella global**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type umbrella global` | Creates an umbrella global parameter map. |
| **Step 3** | **udp-timeout** *timeout_value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-profile)# udp-timeout 2` | Configures timeout value for UDP sessions.<br>The *timeout_value* ranges from 1 to 30 seconds.<br>**Note** |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | The **public-key** and **resolver** parameter-map options are automatically populated with the default values. So, you need not change them. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-profile)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.
**Step 2** Click on the Policy Profile Name. The **Edit Policy Profile** window is displayed.
**Step 3** Choose the **Advanced** tab.
**Step 4** In the **Umbrella** settings, from the **Umbrella Parameter Map** drop-down list, choose the parameter map.
**Step 5** Enable or disable **Flex DHCP Option for DNS** and **DNS Traffic Redirect** toggle buttons.
**Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Creates policy profile for the WLAN.<br>The *profile-name* is the profile name of the policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **umbrella-param-map** *umbrella-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# umbrella-param-map global` | Configures the Umbrella OpenDNS feature for the WLAN. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Verifying the Cisco Umbrella Configuration

To view the Umbrella configuration details, use the following command:

```
Device# show umbrella config
Umbrella Configuration
=======================
Token: 5XXXXXXABXXXXXFXXXXXXXXXXDXXXXXXXXXXXXABXX
API-KEY: NONE
OrganizationID: xxxxxxx
Local Domain Regex parameter-map name: dns_bypass
DNSCrypt: Not enabled
Public-key: NONE
UDP Timeout: 5 seconds
Resolver address:
1. 10.1.1.1
2. 5.5.5.5
3. XXXX:120:50::50
4. XXXX:120:30::30
```

To view the Umbrella DNSCrypt details, use the following command:

```
Device# show umbrella dnscrypt
DNSCrypt: Enabled
   Public-key: B111:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:3E2B:XXXX:XXXX:XXXE:XXX3:3XXX:DXXX:XXXX:BXXX:XXXB:XXXX:FXXX

   Certificate Update Status: In Progress
```

To view the Umbrella global parameter map details, use the following command:

```
Device# show parameter-map type umbrella global
```

To view the regex parameter map details, use the following command:

```
Device# show parameter-map type regex <parameter-map-name>
```

To view the Umbrella details on the AP, use the following command:

```
AP#show client opendns summary
Server-IP role
208.67.220.220 Primary
208.67.222.222 Secondary

Server-IP role
2620:119:53::53 Primary
2620:119:35::35 Secondary

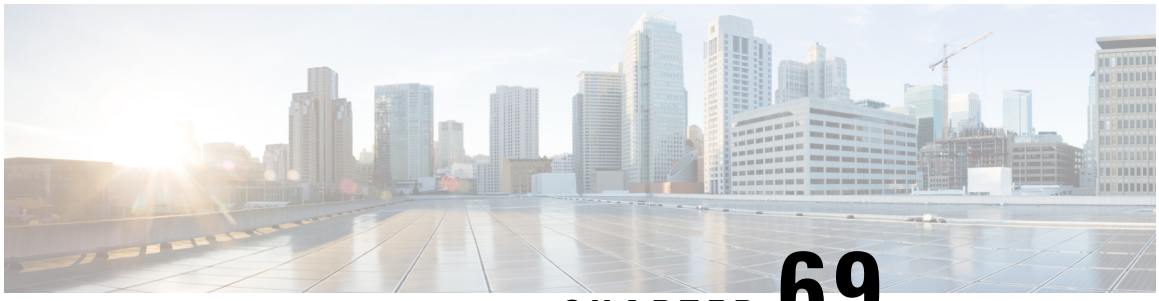
Wlan Id DHCP OpenDNS Override Force Mode
0 true false
1 false false
...

15 false false
Profile-name Profile-id
vj-1 010a29b176b34108
```

```
global 010a57bf502c85d4
vj-2 010ae385ce6c1256
AP0010.10A7.1000#

Client to profile command

AP#show client opendns address 50:3e:aa:ce:50:17
Client-mac Profile-name
50:3E:AA:CE:50:17 vj-1
AP0010.10A7.1000#
```



CHAPTER 69

# Locally Significant Certificates


- Information About Locally Significant Certificates, on page 613
- Restrictions for Locally Significant Certificates, on page 615
- Provisioning Locally Significant Certificates, on page 615
- Verifying LSC Configuration, on page 630
- Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC (GUI), on page 631
- Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC (CLI), on page 631
- Information About MIC and LSC Access Points Joining the Controller, on page 632
- LSC Fallback Access Points, on page 636


## Information About Locally Significant Certificates

This module explains how to configure the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points and Lightweight Access Points (LAPs) to use the Locally Significant Certificate (LSC). If you choose the Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) with LSC, you can generate the LSC on the APs and embedded wireless controllers. You can then use the certificates to mutually authenticate the embedded wireless controller and the APs.

In Cisco embedded wireless controllers, you can configure the embedded wireless controller to use an LSC. Use an LSC if you want your own PKI to provide better security, have control of your Certificate Authority (CA), and define policies, restrictions, and usages on the generated certificates.

You need to provision the new LSC certificate on the embedded wireless controller and then the Lightweight Access Point (LAP) from the CA Server.

The LAP communicates with the embedded wireless controller using the CAPWAP protocol. Any request to sign the certificate and issue the CA certificates for LAP and embedded wireless controller itself must be initiated from the embedded wireless controller. The LAP does not communicate directly with the CA server. The CA server details must be configured on the embedded wireless controller and must be accessible.

The embedded wireless controller makes use of the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) to forward certReqs generated on the devices to the CA and makes use of SCEP again to get the signed certificates from the CA.

The SCEP is a certificate management protocol that the PKI clients and CA servers use to support certificate enrollment and revocation. It is widely used in Cisco and supported by many CA servers. In SCEP, HTTP is used as the transport protocol for the PKI messages. The primary goal of SCEP is the secure issuance of certificates to network devices. SCEP is capable of many operations, but for our release, SCEP is utilized for the following operations:

- CA and Router Advertisement (RA) Public Key Distribution
- Certificate Enrollment

# Certificate Provisioning in Controllers

The new LSC certificates, both CA and device certificates, must be installed on the controller.

With the help of SCEP, CA certificates are received from the CA server. During this point, there are no certificates in the controller. After the **get** operation of obtaining the CA certificates, are installed on the controller. The same CA certificates are also pushed to the APs when the APs are provisioned with LSCs.



**Note** We recommend that you use a new RSA keypair name for the newly configured PKI certificate. If you want to reuse an existing RSA keypair name (that is associated with an old certificate) for a new PKI certificate, do either of the following:

- Do not regenerate a new RSA keypair with an existing RSA keypair name, reuse the existing RSA keypair name. Regenerating a new RSA keypair with an existing RSA keypair name will make all the certificates associated with the existing RSA keypair invalid.
- Manually remove the old PKI certificate configurations first, before reusing the existing RSA keypair name for the new PKI certificate.

# Device Certificate Enrollment Operation

For both the LAP and the controller that request a CA-signed certificate, the certRequest is sent as a PKCS#10 message. The certRequest contains the Subject Name, Public Key, and other attributes to be included in the X.509 certificate, and must be digitally signed by the Private Key of the requester. These are then sent to the CA, which transforms the certRequest into an X.509 certificate.

The CA that receives a PKCS#10 certRequest requires additional information to authenticate the requester's identity and verify if the request is unaltered. (Sometimes, PKCS#10 is combined with other approaches, such as PKCS#7 to send and receive the certificate request or response.)

The PKCS#10 is wrapped in a PKCS#7 Signed Data message type. This is supported as part of the SCEP client functionality, while the PKCSReq message is sent to the controller. Upon successful enrollment operation, both the CA and device certificates are available on the controller.

# Certificate Provisioning on Lightweight Access Point

In order to provision a new certificate on LAP, while in CAPWAP mode, the LAP must be able to get the new signed X.509 certificate. In order to do this, it sends a certRequest to the controller, which acts as a CA proxy and helps obtain the certRequest signed by the CA for the LAP.

The certReq and the certResponses are sent to the LAP with the LWAPP payloads.

Both the LSC CA and the LAP device certificates are installed in the LAP, and the system reboots automatically. The next time when the system comes up, because it is configured to use LSCs, the AP sends the LSC device certificate to the controller as part of the JOIN Request. As part of the JOIN Response, the controller sends the new device certificate and also validates the inbound LAP certificate with the new CA root certificate.

### What to Do Next

To configure, authorize, and manage certificate enrollment with the existing PKI infrastructure for controller and AP, you need to use the LSC provisioning functionality.

# Restrictions for Locally Significant Certificates

- LSC workflow is different in FIPS+WLANCC mode. CA server must support Enrollment over Secure Transport (EST) protocol and should be capable of issuing EC certificates in FIPS+WLANCC mode.
- Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) cipher works only if both AP and controller are having EC certificates, provisioned with LSC.
- EC certificates (LSC-EC) can be provisioned only if CA server supports EST (and not SCEP).
- FIPS + CC security modes is required to be configured in order to provision EC certificate.

# Provisioning Locally Significant Certificates

## Configuring RSA Key for PKI Trustpoint

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **crypto key generate rsa** [**exportable**] **general-keys modulus** *key_size* **label** *RSA_key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa exportable general-keys modulus 2048 label lsc-tp` | Configures RSA key for PKI trustpoint.<br>**exportable** is an optional keyword. You may or may not want to configure an exportable-key. If selected, you can export the key out of the box, if required<br>• *key_size*: Size of the key modulus. The valid range is from 2048 to 4096.<br>• *RSA_key*: RSA key pair label. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring PKI Trustpoint Parameters

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **crypto pki trustpoint** *trustpoint_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint microsoft-ca` | Creates a new trustpoint for an external CA server. Here, *trustpoint_name* refers to the trustpoint name. |
| **Step 3** | **enrollment url** *HTTP_URL*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://CA_server/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll` | Specifies the URL of the CA on which your router should send certificate requests.<br>**url** *url*: URL of the file system where your router should send certificate requests. An IPv6 address can be added in the URL enclosed in brackets. For example: http://[2001:DB8:1:1::1]:80. For more enrollment method options, see the enrollment url (ca-trustpoint) command page. |
| **Step 4** | **subject-name** *subject_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(ca-trustpoint)# subject-name C=IN, ST=KA, L=Bengaluru, O=Cisco, CN=eagle-eye/emailAddress=support@abc.com` | Creates subject name parameters for the trustpoint. |
| **Step 5** | **rsakeypair** *RSA_key key_size*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair ewlc-tp1` | Maps RSA key with that of the trustpoint.<br>• *RSA_key*: RSA key pair label.<br>• *key_size*: Signature key length. Range is from 360 to 4096. |
| **Step 6** | **revocation** {**crl** \| **none** \| **ocsp**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation none` | Checks revocation. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(ca-trustpoint)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Authenticating and Enrolling a PKI Trustpoint (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **PKI Management**.

**Step 2** In the **PKI Management** window, click the **Trustpoints** tab.

**Step 3** In the **Add Trustpoint** dialog box, provide the following information:

a) In the **Label** field, enter the RSA key label.
b) In the **Enrollment URL** field, enter the enrollment URL.
c) Check the **Authenticate** check box to authenticate the Public Certificate from the enrollment URL.
d) In the **Subject Name** section, enter the **Country Code**, **State**, **Location**, **Organization**, **Domain Name**, and **Email Address**.
e) Check the **Key Generated** check box to view the available RSA keypairs. Choose an option from the **Available RSA Keypairs** drop-down list.
f) Check the **Enroll Trustpoint** check box.
g) In the **Password** field, enter the password.
h) In the **Re-Enter Password** field, confirm the password.
i) Click **Apply to Device**.

The new trustpoint is added to the trustpoint name list.

# Authenticating and Enrolling the PKI Trustpoint with CA Server (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **crypto pki authenticate** *trustpoint_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# crypto pki authenticate microsoft-ca` | Fetches the CA certificate. |
| **Step 3** | **yes**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# % Do you accept this certificate? [yes/no]:`<br>`yes Trustpoint CA certificate accepted.` | |
| **Step 4** | **crypto pki enroll** *trustpoint_name*<br>**Example:** | Enrolls the client certificate. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | Device(config)# **crypto pki enroll microsoft-ca**<br>**%**<br>**% Start certificate enrollment ..**<br>**% Create a challenge password. You will need to verbally**<br>**provide this password to the CA Administrator in order to**<br>**revoke your certificate. For security reasons your password**<br>**will not be saved in the configuration.**<br>**Please make a note of it.** | |
| **Step 5** | **password**<br>**Example:**<br>Device(config)# **abcd123** | Enters a challenge password to the CA server. |
| **Step 6** | **password**<br>**Example:**<br>Device(config)# **abcd123** | Re-enters a challenge password to the CA server. |
| **Step 7** | **yes**<br>**Example:**<br>Device(config)# **% Include the router serial number**<br>**in the subject name? [yes/no]: yes** | |
| **Step 8** | **no**<br>**Example:**<br>Device(config)# **% Include an IP address**<br>**in the subject name? [no]: no** | |
| **Step 9** | **yes**<br>**Example:**<br>Device(config)#<br>**Request certificate from CA? [yes/no]: yes**<br>**% Certificate request sent to Certificate Authority**<br>**% The 'show crypto pki certificate verbose**<br>**client' command will show the fingerprint.** | |
| **Step 10** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>Device(config)# **end** | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring AP Join Attempts with LSC Certificate (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** In the **All Access Points** window, click the LSC Provision name.

**Step 3** From the **Status** drop-down list, choose a status to enable LSC.

**Step 4** From the **Trustpoint Name** drop-down list, choose the trustpoint.

**Step 5** In the **Number of Join Attempts** field, enter the number of retry attempts that will be permitted.

**Step 6** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring AP Join Attempts with LSC Certificate (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap lsc-provision join-attempt** *number_of_attempts*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap lsc-provision join-attempt 10` | Specifies the maximum number of AP join failure attempts with the newly provisioned LSC certificate.<br>When the number of AP joins exceed the specified limit, AP joins back with the Manufacturer Installed Certificate (MIC). |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Subject-Name Parameters in LSC Certificate

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ap lsc-provision subject-name-parameter country** *country-str* **state** *state-str* **city** *city-str* **domain** *domain-str* **org** *org-str* **email-address** *email-addr-str*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap lsc-provision subject-name-parameter country India state Karnataka city Bangalore domain domain1 org Right email-address adc@gfe.com` | Specifies the attributes to be included in the subject-name parameter of the certificate request generated by an AP. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring Key Size for LSC Certificate

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap lsc-provision key-size** { **2048** \| **3072** \| **4096**} }<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap lsc-provision key-size 2048` | Specifies the size of keys to be generated for the LSC on AP. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Trustpoint for LSC Provisioning on an Access Point

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ap lsc-provision trustpoint** *tp-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap lsc-provision trustpoint microsoft-ca` | Specifies the trustpoint with which the LCS is provisioned to an AP.<br>*tp-name*: The trustpoint name. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring an AP LSC Provision List (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** In the **All Access Points** window, click the corresponding LSC Provision name.

**Step 3** From the **Status** drop-down list, choose a status to enable LSC.

**Step 4** From the **Trustpoint Name** drop-down list, choose a trustpoint.

**Step 5** In the **Number of Join Attempts** field, enter the number of retry attempts that are allowed.

**Step 6** From the **Key Size** drop-down list, choose a key.

**Step 7** In the **Edit AP Join Profile** window, click the **CAPWAP** tab.

**Step 8** In the **Add APs to LSC Provision List** section, click **Select File** to upload the CSV file that contains AP details.

**Step 9** Click **Upload File**.

**Step 10** In the **AP MAC Address** field, enter the AP MAC address. and add them. (The APs added to the provision list are displayed in the **APs in provision List** .)

**Step 11** In the **Subject Name Parameters** section, enter the following details:

- **Country**
- **State**
- **City**
- **Organization**
- **Department**
- **Email Address**

**Step 12** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring an AP LSC Provision List (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap lsc-provision mac-address** *mac-addr*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap lsc-provision mac-address 001b.3400.02f0` | Adds the AP to the LSC provision list.<br>**Note**<br>You can provision a list of APs using the **ap lsc-provision provision-list** command.<br>(Or)<br>You can provision all the APs using the **ap lsc-provision** command. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring LSC Provisioning for all the APs (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** In the **Access Points** window, expand the **LSC Provision** section.

**Step 3** Set **Status** to **Enabled** state.

**Note**
If you set **Status** to **Provision List**, LSC provisioning will be configured only for APs that are a part of the provision list.

**Step 4** From the **Trustpoint Name** drop-down list, choose the appropriate trustpoint for all APs.

**Step 5** In the **Number of Join Attempts** field, enter the number of retry attempts that the APs can make to join the embedded wireless controller.

**Step 6** From the **Key Size** drop-down list, choose the appropriate key size of the certificate:

- **2048**
- **3072**
- **4096**

**Step 7** In the **Add APs to LSC Provision List** section, click **Select File** to upload the CSV file that contains the AP details.

**Step 8** Click **Upload File**.

**Step 9** In the **AP MAC Address** field, enter the AP MAC address. (The APs that are added to the provision list are displayed in the **APs in Provision List** section.)

**Step 10** In the **Subject Name Parameters** section, enter the following details:

a. **Country**

b. **State**

c. **City**

d. **Organization**

e. **Department**

f. **Email Address**

**Step 11** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring LSC Provisioning for All APs (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap lsc-provision**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap lsc-provision` | Enables LSC provisioning for all APs.<br>By default, LSC provisioning is disabled for all APs. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring LSC Provisioning for the APs in the Provision List

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap lsc-provision provision-list**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap lsc-provision provision-list` | Enables LSC provisioning for a set of APs configured in the provision list. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Unprovisioning Local Significant Certificates

To unprovision the Local Significant Certificates (LSC), complete the following steps:

1. Move the chassis to WLAN Common Criteria (WLANCC) mode.
2. Reload the APs by provisioning LSC and the wireless management trustpoint. For more information, refer to Configuring LSC Provisioning and Management Trustpoint, on page 624.
3. Remove Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) and WLANCC. For more information, refer to Removing FIPS and WLAN Common Criteria, on page 625.
4. Remove LSC provisioning. For more information, refer to Removal of LSC Provisioning, on page 626.

## Configuring LSC Provisioning and Management Trustpoint

### Before you begin

When EWC HA pair is used note the name of the Standby Access Point. Use the **show chassis** command.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ap lsc-provision**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap lsc-provision` | Configures the AP LSC Provisioning parameters. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless management trustpoint** *trustpoint_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless management trustpoint trustpoint-name` | Configures the management trustpoint to LSC. |
| **Step 4** | **copy running-config startup-config**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# copy running-config startup-config` | Saves the configuration.<br>Wait for the standby AP to join the controller. The HA pair will not be formed at this point. |
| **Step 5** | **wireless ewc-ap ap reload**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wireless ewc-ap ap reload` | Reloads the internal AP. This will also reload the controller on the AP.<br>Standby AP starts the controller and becomes new Active for HA pair. |

## Removing FIPS and WLAN Common Criteria

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dtls-version dtls_1_2**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dtls-version dtls_1_2` | Configures the AP DTLS version. |
| **Step 3** | **ap dtls-cipher** *ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dtls-cipher ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384` | Configures the AP DTLS ciphersuite. |
| **Step 4** | **no wireless wlancc**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no wireless wlancc` | Disables WLAN CC on the controller. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 5** | **no fips authorization-key**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no fips authorization-key` | Disables the authorization key for FIPS. |
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 7** | **write memory**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# write memory` | Saves the configuration. |
| **Step 8** | **reload**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# reload` | Reloads the internal AP to move on to non-FIPS and non-CC mode. |

## Removal of LSC Provisioning

### Before you begin

Wait for the standby AP to come up.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **no ap lsc-provision**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap lsc-provision` | Disables AP LSC provisioning parameters. |
| **Step 3** | **no ap dtls-cipher ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap dtls-cipher ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384` | Disables AP DTLS cipher suite. |
| **Step 4** | **no ap dtls-version dtls_1_2**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no ap dtls-version dtls_1_2` | Disables the DTLS version. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 5** | **no wireless management trustpoint**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no wireless management trustpoint` | Disables the wireless management trustpoint. |
| **Step 6** | **copy running-config startup-config**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# copy running-config startup-config` | Saves the configuration changes. |
| **Step 7** | **wireless ewc-ap ap reload**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wireless ewc-ap ap reload` | Reloads the internal AP. |

# Importing a CA Certificate to the Trustpool (GUI)

PKI Trustpool Management is used to store a list of trusted certificates (either downloaded or built in) used by the different services on the controller. This is also used to authenticate a multilevel CA certificate. The built in CA certificate bundle in the PKI trustpool receives automatic updates from Cisco if they are not current, are corrupt, or if certain certificates need to be updated.

Perform this task to manually update the CA certificates in the PKI trustpool.

**Note** If your LSC has been issued by an intermediate CA, you must import the complete chain of CA certificates into the trustpool. Otherwise, you will not be able to provision the APs without the complete chain being present on the controller. The import step is not required if the certificate has been issued by a root CA.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **PKI Management**.

**Step 2** In the **PKI Management** window, click the **Trustpool** tab.

**Step 3** Click **Import**.

**Step 4** In the **CA Certificate** field, copy and paste the CA certificate. Link together the multiple CA certificates in **.pem** format.

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Importing a CA Certificate to the Trustpool (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **crypto pki trust pool import terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# crypto pki trust pool import terminal`<br>`% Enter PEM-formatted CA certificate.`<br>`% End with a blank line or "quit" on a line by itself.`<br>`-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----`<br>`-----END CERTIFICATE-----`<br>`-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----`<br>`-----END CERTIFICATE-----`<br>`-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----`<br>`-----END CERTIFICATE-----`<br>`Aug 23 02:47:33.450:`<br>`%PKI-6-TRUSTPOOL_DOWNLOAD_SUCCESS:`<br>`Trustpool Download is successful` | Imports the root certificate. For this, you need to paste the CA certificate from the **digicert.com**. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Cleaning the CA Certificates Imported in Trustpool (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **PKI Management**.

**Step 2** In the **PKI Management** window, click the **Trustpool** tab.

**Step 3** Click **Clean**.

**Note**
This erases the downloaded CA certificate bundles. However, it does not erase the built-in CA certificate bundles.

**Step 4** Click **Yes**.

# Cleaning CA Certificates Imported in Trustpool (CLI)

You cannot delete a specific CA certificate from the trustpool. However, you can clear all the CA certificates that are imported to the Trustpool.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **crypto pki trustpool clean**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# crypto pki trustpool clean` | Erases the downloaded CA certificate bundles. However, it does not erase the built-in CA certificate bundles. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Creating a New Trustpoint Dedicated to a Single CA Certificate

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **crypto pki trustpoint** *tp-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint tp_name` | Creates a trustpoint. |
| **Step 3** | **enrollment terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment terminal` | Creates an enrollment terminal for the trustpoint. |
| **Step 4** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit` | Exits from the truspoint configuration. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 5** | **crypto pki authenticate** *tp-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# crypto pki authenticate tp_name`<br>`<<< PASTE CA-CERT in PEM format followed by quit >>>` | Authenticates the trustpoint. |

# Verifying LSC Configuration

To view the details of the wireless management trustpoint, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless management trustpoint

Trustpoint  Name : microsoft-ca
Certificate Info : Available
Certificate Type : LSC
Certificate Hash : 9e5623adba5307facf778e6ea2f5082877ea4beb
 Private key Info : Available
```

To view the LSC provision-related configuration details for an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap lsc-provision summary

AP LSC-provisioning : Disabled
Trustpoint used for LSC-provisioning : microsoft-ca
LSC Revert Count in AP reboots : 10

AP LSC Parameters :
Country : IN
State : KA
City : BLR
Orgn : ABC
Dept : ABC
Email : support@abc.com
Key Size : 2048

AP LSC-provision List : Enabled
Total number of APs in provision list: 3

Mac Address
-----------
0038.df24.5fd0
2c5a.0f22.d4ca
e4c7.22cd.b74f
```

```
Device# show ap lsc-provision summary

AP LSC-provisioning : Disabled
Trustpoint used for LSC-provisioning : lsc-root-tp
Certificate chain status : Available
Number of certs on chain : 2
Certificate hash : 7f9d05183deecac4e5a79db65d538245685e8e30
LSC Revert Count in AP reboots : 1

AP LSC Parameters :
Country : IN
State : KA
City : BLR
```

```
Orgn : ABC
Dept : ABC
Email : support@abc.com
Key Size : 2048
EC Key Size : 384 bit

AP LSC-provision List :

Total number of APs in provision list: 2

Mac Addresses :
--------------
1880.90f5.1540
2c5a.0f70.84dc
```

# Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Administration** > **Management** > **HTTP/HTTPS**.

**Step 2** In the **HTTP Trust Point Configuration** section, set **Enable Trust Point** to the **Enabled** state.

**Step 3** From the **Trust Points** drop-down list, choose the appropriate trustpoint.

**Step 4** Save the configuration.

# Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC (CLI)

After LSC provisioning, the APs will automatically reboot and join at the LSC mode after bootup. Similarly, if you remove the AP LSC provisioning, the APs reboot and join at non-LSC mode.

In EWC, the internal APs will not automatically reboot. You should manually reboot the internal AP to make it work in LSC and non-LSC mode.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless management trustpoint** *trustpoint_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless management trustpoint microsoft-ca` | Configures the management trustpoint to LSC.<br>The internal AP will not able to join before a reload, so follow the steps given below to reload the internal AP. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **copy running-config startup-config**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# copy running-config startup-config` | Saves the configuration. |
| **Step 5** | **wireless ewc-ap ap reload**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wireless ewc-ap ap reload` | Reloads the internal AP. This will also reload the controller on the AP. |

# Information About MIC and LSC Access Points Joining the Controller

## Overview of Support for MIC and LSC Access Points Joining the Controller

In Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.4.1 and earlier releases, APs with a default certificate (Manufacturing Installed Certificates [MIC]) or Secure Unique Device Identifier [SUDI]) fail to join a Locally Significant Certificate-deployed (LSC-deployed) controller, where the management certificate of the controller is an LSC. To resolve this issue, you must provision LSC on these APs using the provisioning controller before moving them to the LSC-deployed controller.

From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 onwards, the new authorization policy configuration allows MIC APs to join the LSC-deployed controller, so that the LSC and MIC APs can coexist in the controller at the same time.

## Recommendations and Limitations

- When the CA server is configured with manual enrollment (manual intervention) to accept Certificate Signing Request (CSR), the controller waits for the CA server to send the pending response. If there is no response from the CA server for 10 minutes, the fallback mode comes into effect.
  - Cisco Wave 2 APs regenerate CSR, and a fresh CSR is sent to the CA server.
  - Cisco IOS APs restart, and then Cisco IOS APs send a fresh CSR, which is in turn sent to the CA server.
- Locally significant certificate (LSC) on the controller does not work on the password challenge. Therefore, for LSC to work, you must disable password challenge on the CA server.
- If you are using Microsoft CA, we recommend that you use Windows Server 2012 or later as the CA server.

# Configuration Workflow

1. Configuring LSC on the Controller (CLI), on page 633
2. Enabling the AP Certificate Policy on the APs (CLI), on page 633
3. Configuring the AP Policy Certificate (GUI), on page 635
4. Configuring the Allowed List of APs to Join the Controller (CLI), on page 635

# Configuring LSC on the Controller (CLI)

The server certificate used by the controller for CAPWAP-DTLS is based on the following configuration.

### Before you begin

- Ensure that you enable LSC by setting the appropriate trustpoints for the following wireless management services:
  - AP join process: CAPWAP DTLS server certificate
  - Mobility connections: Mobility DTLS certificate
  - NMSP and CMX connections: NMSP TLS certificate

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **[no] wireless management trustpoint** *trustpoint-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless management trustpoint trustpoint-name` | Configures the LSC trustpoint in the LSC-deployed controller. |

# Enabling the AP Certificate Policy on the APs (CLI)

- If the management trustpoint is an LSC, by default, MIC APs fail to join the controller. This configuration acts as an enable or disable configuration knob that allows MIC APs to join the controller.
- This configuration is a controller authorization to allow APs to join MIC at the time of DTLS handshake.

To prevent manufacturing installed certificate (MIC) expiry failures, ensure that you configure a policy, as shown here:

- Create a certificate map and add the rules:

```
configure terminal
crypto pki certificate map map1 1
issuer-name co Cisco Manufacturing CA
```

**Note** You can add multiple rules and filters under the same map. The rule mentioned in the example above specifies that any certificate whose issuer-name contains *Cisco Manufacturing CA* (case insensitive) is selected under this map.

- Use the certificate map under the trustpool policy:

```
configure terminal
crypto pki trustpool policy
match certificate map1 allow expired-certificate
```

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap auth-list ap-cert-policy allow-mic-ap trustpoint** *trustpoint-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap auth-list ap-cert-policy allow-mic-ap trustpoint trustpoint-name` | Configures the trustpoint name for the controller certificate chain.<br>**Note** The **allow-mic-ap trustpoint** command is required only for the virtual controller (Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller for Cloud). In all the other appliance controller platforms, the default certificate is selected. This default certificate is manufacturer-installed SUDI. |
| **Step 3** | **ap auth-list ap-cert-policy allow-mic-ap**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap auth-list ap-cert-policy allow-mic-ap` | Enables the AP certificate policy during CAPWAP-DTLS handshake. |
| **Step 4** | **ap auth-list ap-cert-policy** {**mac-address** *H.H.H* \| **serial-number** *serial-number-ap*} **policy-type mic**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap auth-list ap-cert-policy mac-address 1111.1111.1111 policy-type mic` | Enables the AP certificate policy as MIC. |

# Configuring the AP Policy Certificate (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**

**Step 2** In the **All Access Points** window, click **AP Certificate Policy** .

**Step 3** In the **AP Policy Certificate** window, complete the following actions:

a) Click the **Authorize APs joining with MIC** toggle button to enable AP authorization.

b) From the **Trustpoint Name** drop-down list, choose the required trustpoint.

c) Click **Add MAC or Serial Number** to add a MAC address or a serial number manually or through a .csv file.
The **Add MAC or Serial Number** window is displayed.

d) Click the **AP Authlist Type** and enter the MAC address or the serial number. Upload the .csv file or enter the MAC address in the list box.
The newly added MAC address and serial numbers are displayed under **List of MAC Address and Serial Numbers**.

e) Click **Apply**.

The AP certificate policy is added to the **AP Inventory** window.

**Note**
To add a new AP with MIC, perform Step 1 to Step 3 described in Configuring the AP Policy Certificate (GUI) section. To add a new AP with LSC, perform the procedure described in the Configuring AP LSC Provision List (GUI) and Step 1 to Step 3 in the Configuring the AP Policy Certificate (GUI) section.

# Configuring the Allowed List of APs to Join the Controller (CLI)

The allowed list of APs can either be populated based on the Ethernet MAC address or based on the serial number of the APs.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap auth-list ap-cert-policy** {**mac-address** *AP-Ethernet-MAC-address* \| **serial-number** *AP-serial-number*} **policy-type mic**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap auth-list ap-cert-policy mac-address 00b0.e192.0d98 policy-type mic` | Configures the AP certificate policy based on the Ethernet MAC address or based on the assembly serial number of the AP. |

## Verifying the Configuration Status

To verify if the APs have been authorized by the AP certificate policy, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap auth-list ap-cert-policy
Authorize APs joining with MIC : ENABLED
MIC AP policy trustpoint
Name : CISCO_IDEVID_SUDI
Certificate status : Available
Certificate Type : MIC
Certificate Hash : xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx
```

To verify the AP certificate policy on the MAC address and the serial number of the AP, use the following commands:

```
Device# show ap auth-list ap-cert-policy mac-address
MAC address      AP cert policy
---------------------------------
1111.2222.3333   MIC
```

```
Device# show ap auth-list ap-cert-policy serial-number
Serial number    AP cert policy
--------------------------------
F1234567890      MIC
```

**Note** If you set an invalid trustpoint (not SSC), the **allow-mic-ap policy** is not enabled. If you set an invalid trustpoint, the following error is displayed on the console:

```
Device(config)# ap auth-list ap-cert-policy allow-mic-ap trustpoint lsc-root-tp
Dec 18 07:38:29.944: %CERT_MGR_ERRMSG-3-CERT_MGR_GENERAL_ERR: Chassis 1 R0/0: wncd: General
 error: MIC AP Policy trustpoint: 'lsc-root-tp' cert-chain type is LSC, It must be either
MIC or vWLC-SSC
```

# LSC Fallback Access Points

## Information About LSC Fallback APs

When an AP is configured with LSC for CAPWAP but fails to establish DTLS connection, the AP reboots and retries for certain number of times. For information on how an AP configures with LSC, see Configuring AP Join Attempts with LSC Certificate (CLI), on page 619.

The AP falls back to its default certificate (MIC) for CAPWAP after maximum number of failures. This state is referred to as the LSC fallback.

**Note** MIC is also known as SUDI certificate.

## Troubleshooting LSC Fallback State

When an AP in **LSC fallback** state joins the controller, the following syslog is generated:

```
Jun 15 23:24:14.836: %APMGR_TRACE_MESSAGE-3-WLC_GEN_ERR: Chassis 1 R0/0: wncd: Error
in AP: 'AP2c5a.0f70.84dc' with address 70db.9888.cc20 is joined with MIC, while configuration

requires LSC. No WLANs will be pushed.
```

The controller allows such an AP to be joined with MIC (when AP certificate policy allows it) and AP is held in misconfigured state.

**Note** The AP does not broadcast WLAN or SSID configurations in such state. This permits the admin to examine the reason for previous failures and recover APs.

You can identify the **LSC fallback** APs using **show wireless summary** as follows:

```
Device# show wireless summary
…
Access Point Summary
…
DTLS LSC fallback APs     20 (No WLANs will be pushed to these APs)
…
For more information on DTLS LSC fallback APs,
    execute 'wireless config validate' and look for reported errors in
    'show wireless config validation status' CLI output.

Use 'show ap config general | inc AP Name | LSC fallback' to list DTLS LSC fallback APs.
Examine LSC fallback reasons / DTLS handshake failures with LSC then
    issue 'ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-certificate / clear-flag' to recover APs
```

# Recovery Steps

- Use the **ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-flag** to clear the LSC fallback flag on AP and instruct AP to reload.

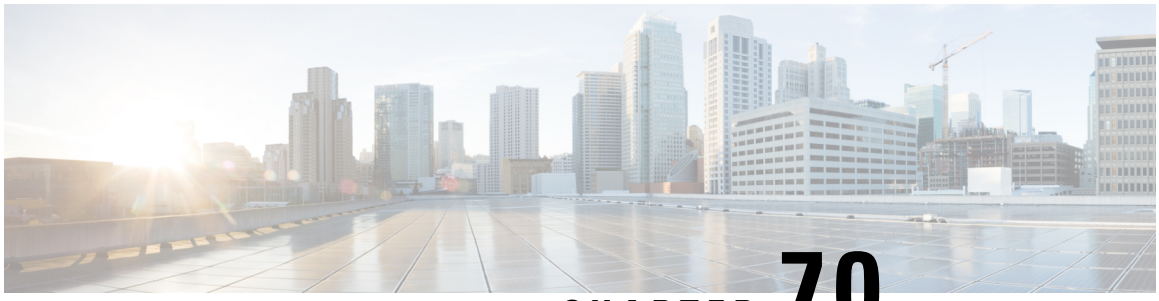
**Note** The AP reuses the LSC for CAPWAP DTLS connection post the reload.

- Use the **ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-certificate** to clear LSC and instruct AP to reload.

**Note** The AP uses MIC for CAPWAP-DTLS post the reload. If LSC is used for Dot1x port authentication then further recovery is needed on switch port for AP authentication.

**Note**

- The **ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-flag** command is sufficient to retain LSC on AP. Both **ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-flag** and **ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-certificate** commands are not required at the same time.
- APs must be in connected state when issuing the recovery command. You will need to reissue the command, if any **LSC fallback** AP joins afterwards.



CHAPTER 70

# Federal Information Processing Standard


- Federal Information Processing Standard , on page 639
- Guidelines and Restrictions for FIPS, on page 639
- FIPS Self-Tests, on page 640
- Configuring FIPS, on page 641
- Verifying FIPS Configuration, on page 641


## Federal Information Processing Standard

Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-2 is a security standard used to validate cryptographic modules. The cryptographic modules are produced by the private sector for use by the U.S. government and other regulated industries (such as financial and healthcare institutions) that collect, store, transfer, share and disseminate sensitive but unclassified (SBU) information.

**Note** Cisco TrustSec (CTS) is not supported when the controller is in FIPS mode.

For more information about FIPS, see

https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/solutions/industries/government/global-government-certifications/fips-140.html.

## Guidelines and Restrictions for FIPS

- In the controller, a legacy key is used to support the legacy APs. However, in FIPS mode, the crypto engine detects the legacy key as a weak key and rejects it by showing the following error message: "**% Error in generating keys: could not generate test signature.**" We recommend that you ignore such error messages that are displayed during the bootup of the controller (when operating in FIPS mode).
- SSH clients using SHA1 will not be able to access the controller when you enable FIPS. You need to use FIPS compliant SSH clients to access the controller.
- While configuring WLAN ensure that the SSID name contain a minimum of 15 characters. If not, the APs will not be able to join the controller after changing tags.
- TrustSec is not supported.

- PAC key configuration is not supported.
- APs would not reload immediately, if you change the FIPS status.
- With FIPS in enabled state, some passwords and pre-shared keys must have the minimum lengths, for example the ISAKMP key (Crypto ISAKMP key) must be at least 14 characters long.:
- We recommend a minimum RSA key size of 2048 bits under RADSEC when operating in FIPS mode. Otherwise, the RADSEC fails.

# FIPS Self-Tests

A cryptographic module must perform power-up self-tests and conditional self-tests to ensure that it is functional.

Power-up self-tests run automatically after the device powers up. A device goes into FIPS mode only after all self-tests are successfully completed. If any self-test fails, the device logs a system message and moves into an error state. Also, if the power-up self test fails, the device fails to boot.

Using a known-answer test (KAT), a cryptographic algorithm is run on data for which the correct output is already known, and then the calculated output is compared to the previously generated output. If the calculated output does not equal the known answer, the known-answer test fails.

Power-up self-tests include the following:

- Software integrity
- Algorithm tests

Conditional self-tests must be run when an applicable security function or operation is invoked. Unlike the power-up self-tests, conditional self-tests are executed each time their associated function is accessed.

The device uses a cryptographic algorithm known-answer test (KAT) to test FIPS mode for each FIPS 140-2-approved cryptographic function (encryption, decryption, authentication, and random number generation) implemented on the device. The device applies the algorithm to data for which the correct output is already known. It then compares the calculated output to the previously generated output. If the calculated output does not equal the known answer, the KAT fails.

Conditional self-tests run automatically when an applicable security function or operation is invoked. Unlike the power-up self-tests, conditional self-tests are executed each time their associated function is accessed.

Conditional self-tests include the following:

- Pair-wise consistency test—This test is run when a public or private key-pair is generated.
- Continuous random number generator test—This test is run when a random number is generated.
- Bypass
- Software load

# Configuring FIPS

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **fips authorization-key** [*option*] *key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# fips authorization-key 0 12345678901234567890123456789012` | Enables the FIPS mode.<br>The options are as follows:<br>• **0**: Specifies that an UNENCRYPTED password will follow.<br>• **7**: Specifies that an ENCRYPTED password will follow.<br>• **LINE**: Use the cleartext 128-bits (16 octet) key.<br>The *key* length should be of 32 hexadecimal characters.<br>To disable FIPS mode on the device, use the **no** form of this command. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

### What to do next

You must reboot the controller whenever you enable or disable the FIPS mode using the **reload** command.

After the system reloads, all the APs are FIPS enabled except the internal AP (Internal AP is the AP acting as the EWC). Therefore, reload the internal AP using the **wireless ewc-ap ap reload** command.

After the internal AP reload, the standby controller becomes the new active controller, and all APs are FIPS enabled.

# Verifying FIPS Configuration

You can verify FIPS configuration using the following commands:

Use the following **show** command to display the installed authorization key:

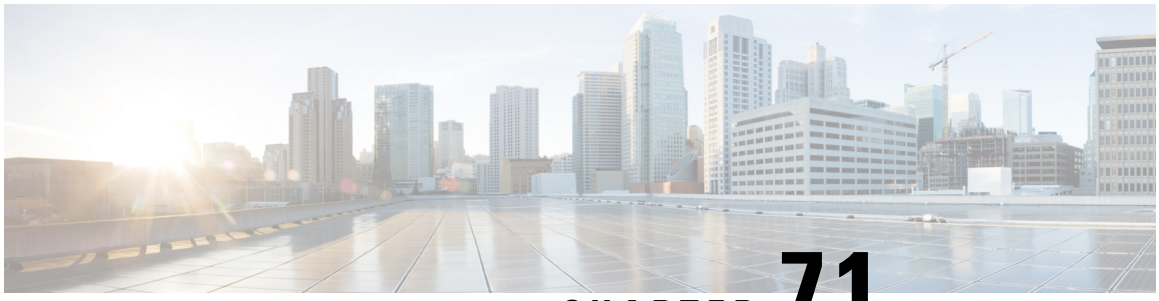
```
Device# show fips authorization-key
```

```
FIPS: Stored key (16) : 12345678901234567890123456789012
```

Use the following **show** command to display the status of FIPS on the device:

```
Device# show fips status

Chassis is running in fips mode
```



CHAPTER 71

# Certificate Management


- About Public Key Infrastructure Management (GUI), on page 643
- Authenticating and Enrolling a PKI Trustpoint (GUI), on page 643
- Adding the Certificate Authority Server (GUI), on page 644
- Adding an RSA or EC Key for PKI Trustpoint (GUI), on page 645
- Adding and Managing Certificates , on page 645


## About Public Key Infrastructure Management (GUI)

The Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) Management page displays the following tabs:

**Trustpoints** tab: Used to add, create or enroll a new trustpoint. This page also displays the current trustpoints configured on the controller and other details of the trustpoint. You can also view if the trustpoint is in use for any of the features. For example, Webadmin or AP join (Wireless Management Interface ), and others.

**CA Server** tab: Used to enable or disable the Certificate Authority (CA) server functionality on the controller. The CA server functionality should be enabled for the controller to generate a Self Signed Certificate (SSC).

**Key Pair Generation** tab: Used to generate key pairs.

**Certificate Management** tab: Used to generate and manage certificates, and perform all certificate related operations, on the controller.

## Authenticating and Enrolling a PKI Trustpoint (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **PKI Management**.

**Step 2** In the **PKI Management** window, click the **Trustpoints** tab.

**Step 3** In the **Add Trustpoint** dialog box, provide the following information:

a) In the **Label** field, enter the RSA key label.

b) In the **Enrollment URL** field, enter the enrollment URL.

c) Check the **Authenticate** check box to authenticate the Public Certificate from the enrollment URL.

d) In the **Subject Name** section, enter the **Country Code**, **State**, **Location**, **Organization**, **Domain Name**, and **Email Address**.
e) Check the **Key Generated** check box to view the available RSA keypairs. Choose an option from the **Available RSA Keypairs** drop-down list.
f) Check the **Enroll Trustpoint** check box.
g) In the **Password** field, enter the password.
h) In the **Re-Enter Password** field, confirm the password.
i) Click **Apply to Device**.

The new trustpoint is added to the trustpoint name list.

# Generating an AP Self-Signed Certificate (GUI)



**Note** This section is valid only for virtual controllers (Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller for Cloud) and not applicable for appliance based controllers (Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller (Copper Uplink), and Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller (Fiber Uplink)).

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **PKI Management**.
**Step 2** In the **AP SSC Trustpoint** area, click **Generate** to generate an AP SSC trustpoint.
**Step 3** From the **RSA Key-Size** drop-down list, choose a key size.
**Step 4** From the **Signature Algorithm** drop-down list, choose an option.
**Step 5** From the **Password Type** drop-down list, choose a password type.
**Step 6** In the **Password** field, enter a password. The valid range is between 8 and 32 characters.
**Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Adding the Certificate Authority Server (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **PKI Management**.
**Step 2** In the **PKI Management** window, click the **CA Server** tab.
**Step 3** In the **CA Server** section, click the **Shutdown Status** toggle button, to enable the status. If you choose the shutdown status as **Enabled**, you must enter the password and confirm the same.

**Step 4** If you choose the shutdown status as **Disabled**, you must enter the **Country Code**, **State**, **Location**, **Organization**, **Domain Name**, and **Email Address**.

**Step 5** Click **Apply** to add the CA server.

**Step 6** Click **Remove CA Server** to delete the CA server.

# Adding an RSA or EC Key for PKI Trustpoint (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **PKI Management**.

**Step 2** In the **PKI Management** window, click the **Key Pair Generation** tab.

**Step 3** In the **Key Pair Generation** section, click **Add**.

**Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, provide the following information:

a) In the **Key Name** field, enter the key name.

b) In the **Key Type** options, select either **RSA Key** or **EC Key**.

c) In the **Modulus Size** field, enter the modulus value for the RSA key or the EC key. The default modulus size for the RSA key is 4096 and the default value for the EC key is 521.

d) Check the **Key Exportable** check box to export the key. By default, this is checked.

e) Click **Generate**.

# Adding and Managing Certificates

To add and manage certificates, use one of the following methods:

**Note** While configuring a password for the .pfx file, do not use the following ASCII characters: "*, ^, (), [], \, ", and +"

Using these ASCII characters results in error with bad configuration and does not import the certificate to the controller.

**Method 1**

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **PKI Management** > **Add Certificate**.

**Step 2** Click **Generate Certificate Signing Request**.

a) In the **Certificate Name** field, enter the certificate name.

b) From the **Key Name** drop-down list, choose an RSA key pair. (Click the plus (+) icon under the **Key Pair Generation** tab to create new RSA key pairs.).
c) Enter values the **Country Code**, **Location**, **Organization**, **State**, **Organizational Unit**, and the **Domain Name** fields.
d) Click **Generate**.
The generated Certificate Signing Request (CSR) is displayed on the right. Click **Copy** to copy and save a local copy. Click **Save to Device** to save the generated CSR to the /bootflash/csr directory.

**Note**
If an IP address is used on the Domain Name field the controller creates the CSR without a Subject Alternative Name (SAN), since the IP address is not supported as an attribute in the SAN field of the CSR when the CSR is generated from the controller.

**Step 3** Click **Authenticate Root CA** .

a) From the **Trustpoint** drop-down list, choose the trustpoint label generated in Step 2, or any other trustpoint label that you want to authenticate.
b) In the **Root CA Certificate (.pem)** field, copy and paste the certificate that you have received from the CA.

**Note**
Ensure that you copy and paste the PEM Base64 certificate of the issuing CA of the device certificate.

c) Click **Authenticate**.

**Step 4** Click **Import Device Certificate** .

a) From the **Trustpoint** drop-down list, choose the trustpoint label that was generated in Step 2, or any other trustpoint label that you want to authenticate.
b) In the **Signed Certificate (.pem)** field, copy and paste the signed certificate that you received, from your CA.
c) Click **Import**.

This completes the device certificate import process and the certificate can now be assigned to features.

---

**Method 2**

**Procedure**

---

Click **Import PKCS12 Certificate** .

**Note**
You can import an entire certificate chain in the PKCS12 format using different transport types.

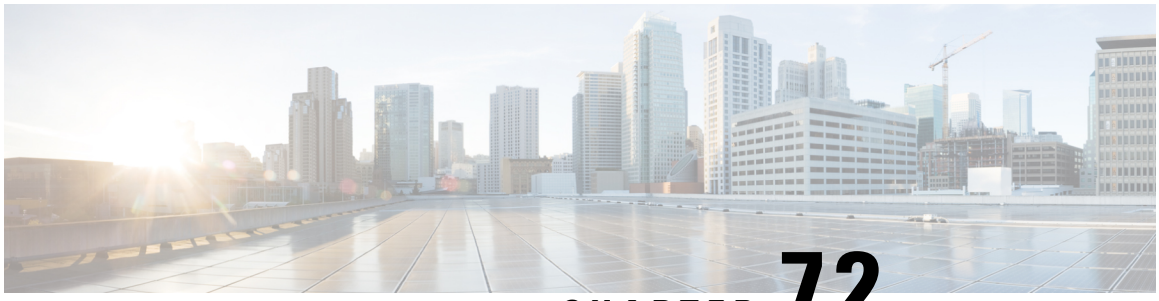
a) From the **Transport Type** drop-down list, choose either **FTP**, **SFTP**, **TFTP**, **SCP**, or **Desktop (HTTPS)**.

For **FTP**, **SFTP**, and **SCP**, enter values in the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **Username**, **Password**, **Certificate File Path**, **Certificate Destination File Name**, and **Certificate Password** fields.

For **TFTP**, enter values in the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **Certificate File Path**, **Certificate Destination File Name**, and **Certificate Password** fields.

For **Desktop (HTTPS)**, enter values in the **Source File Path** and **Certificate Password** fields.

b) Click **Import**.



CHAPTER 72

# User and Entity Behavior Analysis


•
• Information About User and Entity Behavior Analysis , on page 649
• Configuring User and Entity Behavior Analysis (Using UDP Collector), on page 649
• Configuring User and Entity Behavior Analysis (Using Stealthwatch Cloud), on page 650
• Mapping Stealthwatch Cloud to Flow Measurements, on page 651
• Example: Stealthwatch Cloud Configuration , on page 652
• Verifying Stealthwatch Cloud Details, on page 653


## Information About User and Entity Behavior Analysis

User and Entity Behavior Analysis (UEBA) is a solution that has a number of security techniques, which allow you to profile and track the behavior of users and devices, in order to identify potential inside threats and targeted attacks in networks, when anomalies occur.

For instance, employees of an enterprise may unintentionally download a malicious piece of software that might include some backdoor or leakage in company secrets. This is detected by the change in the pattern of communication from one or more devices or users in the network, compared to an established baseline.

User and Entity Behavior Analysis can be deployed using two methods:

- User Datagram Protocol (UDP) collector (Cisco Digital Network Architecture (DNA) Center is a UDP collector)
- Stealthwatch Cloud (SwC) - The Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC) directly uploads data to SwC.

## Configuring User and Entity Behavior Analysis (Using UDP Collector)

In a Cisco DNA Center-based deployment, the controller acts as the collector of NetFlow information that is sent to Cisco DNA Center. In turn, Cisco DNA Center compresses the information for SwC. The controller enables Application Visibility and Control (AVC) on the access points (APs) and maintains the communication channel with Cisco DNA Center.

In EWC, you can also send FnFv9 data through the UDP to a UDP collector.

In the Non-Cisco DNA-C based deployment, the FnF flow records are directly sent to SwC from the controller.

# Configuring User and Entity Behavior Analysis (Using Stealthwatch Cloud)

The following sections provide information about configuring the User and Entity Behavior Analysis solution using Stealthwatch Cloud (GUI and CLI).

## Configuring User and Entity Behavior Analysis Using Stealthwatch Cloud (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Threat Defense**.
**Step 2** Click **Cisco StealthWatch Integration**.
**Step 3** On the Stealthwatch page, in the **Service Key** field, enter the Stealthwatch cloud service key.
**Step 4** Click the cloud icon to view the detailed statistics of Stealthwatch.
**Step 5** In the **Sensor Name** field, enter a sensor name for Stealthwatch Cloud registration.
**Step 6** In the **URL** field, enter the Stealthwatch Cloud server URL.
**Step 7** Click **Apply**.
**Step 8** (Optional) Click **Unconfigure StealthWatch**, to unconfigure Stealthwatch Cloud.

### What to do next

You can view and verify the Stealthwatch Cloud's health status in the **Stealthwatch Health Status**

## Configuring Stealthwatch Cloud (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **stealthwatch-cloud-monitor**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# stealthwatch-cloud-monitor` | Configures the Stealthwatch Cloud monitor. Enters the Stealthwatch Cloud Monitor configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **service-key** *swc-service-key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-stealthwatch-cloud-monitor)# service-key xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx` | (Optional) Sets the Stealthwatch Cloud service key. Service key is provided by the SwC portal. The alternative to service key is the authentication through the IP address allowed list. For more information about service key and allowed lists, see the appropriate SwC guide. |
| **Step 4** | **sensor-name** *swc-sensor-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-stealthwatch-cloud-monitor)# sensor-name swc-sensor-name` | (Optional) Provides a sensor name for the Stealthwatch Cloud registration. The device serial number is the default value. |
| **Step 5** | **url** *SwC-server-url*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-stealthwatch-cloud-monitor)# url https://sensors.eu-2.obsrvbl.com` | Sets the Stealthwatch Cloud server URL. |

# Mapping Stealthwatch Cloud to Flow Measurements

There are two options to map Stealthwatch Cloud to flow measurements, namely the flow-exporter configuration and the flow-monitor configuration.

**Note** At any given period, there can be only one internal and one external active flow exporter. An active flow exporter is an exporter that is bound to the flow monitor that is bound to a wireless profile.

## Configuring Flow Exporter for Stealthwatch Cloud

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **flow exporter** *flow-exporter-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# flow exporter flow-exporter-name` | Defines the flow exporter.<br>**Note**<br>At a given moment, there can be only one internal and one external active flow exporter. An active flow exporter is an exporter that is bound to the flow monitor, which is bound to a wireless profile. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **destination stealthwatch-cloud**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-exporter)# destination stealthwatch-cloud` | Exports the flow information to Stealthwatch Cloud. |

# Configuring Flow Monitor for Stealthwatch Cloud

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **flow monitor** *flow-monitor-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# flow monitor flow-monitor-name` | Defines the flow monitor. |
| **Step 3** | **exporter** *flow-exporter-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-monitor)# exporter flow-exporter-name` | Exports the flow information to the exporter. |
| **Step 4** | **record wireless avc basic**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-monitor)# record wireless avc basic` | Specifies the flow record with basic IPv4 wireless AVC template. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-flow-monitor)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Example: Stealthwatch Cloud Configuration

The following example shows a complete CLI configuration of Stealthwatch Cloud:

```
stealthwatch-cloud-monitor
  service-key XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
  sensor-name ewc-sensor
  url https://sensors.eu-2.obsrvbl.com

flow exporter fexp-swc
 destination stealthwatch-cloud
```

```
flow monitor fm-avc-swc
 exporter fexp-swc
 record wireless avc basic

wireless profile policy swc-policy-profile
 ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc-swc input
 ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc-swc output
 ipv6 flow monitor fm-avc-swc input
 ipv6 flow monitor fm-avc-swc output

wlan my-wlan 1 my-wlan

wireless tag policy swc-policy-tag
 wlan my-wlan policy swc-policy-profile

ap 0000.0000.0001
 policy-tag swc-policy-tag
```

# Verifying Stealthwatch Cloud Details

To verify the state and statistics of Stealthwatch Cloud, use the **show stealthwatch-cloud wireless-shim** command:

```
Device# show stealthwatch-cloud wireless-shim
Stealthwatch-Cloud wireless shim

Total
 RX records        : 15
 RX bytes          : 2345
 TX records        : 10
 TX bytes          : 1234
 TX batches        : 1
 Failed batches    : 0
 Non-SWC records   : 5

Buffers
 Status        : TX
 Size          : 1272000
 Compressed    : 8
 Uncompressed  : 0
 Records       : 8

 Status        : Filling
 Size          : 1272000
 Compressed    : 2
 Uncompressed  : 0
 Records       : 2
```

To verify the Stealthwatch Cloud connection details, use the **show stealthwatch-cloud connection** command.

```
Device# show stealthwatch-cloud connection
Stealthwatch-Cloud details
  Registration
    #ID         : 0xe6000001
    URL         : https://sensors.eu-2.obsrvbl.com
    Service Key : XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
    Sensor Name : ewc-sensor
    Registered  : Yes
  Connection
    Status               : UP
    Last status update   : 03/17/2020 21:44:55
    # Flaps              : 0
```

```
    # Heartbeats         : 9
    # Lost heartbeats    : 1
    Total RX bytes       : 4567
    Total TX bytes       : 1234
    Upload Speed (B/s)   : 247
    Download Speed (B/s) : 269
    # Open sessions      : 0
    # Redirections       : 0
    # Timeouts           : 0

  HTTP Events
    GET response                  : 1
    GET request                   : 1
    GET Status Code 2XX           : 1
    PUT response                  : 1
    PUT request                   : 1
    PUT Status Code 2XX           : 1
    POST response                 : 12
    POST request                  : 12
    POST Status Code 2XX          : 11
    POST Status Code 4XX          : 1
API Events
    Abort                         : 1

  Event History
Timestamp               #Times   Event               RC Context
----------------------- -------- ------------------- --
----------------------------------------
03/21/2020 10:42:06.161 9        HEARTBEAT_OK         0

03/20/2020 06:49:05.717 1        HEARTBEAT_FAIL       0 HTTPCON_EV_TIMEOUT (6)

03/20/2020 06:47:05.717 1        SEND_START           0 ID:0001
03/20/2020 06:49:05.717 3        SIGNAL_DATA_FAIL     0 ID:0001, attempt : 3
03/18/2020 09:23:39.375 1        REGISTER_OK          0

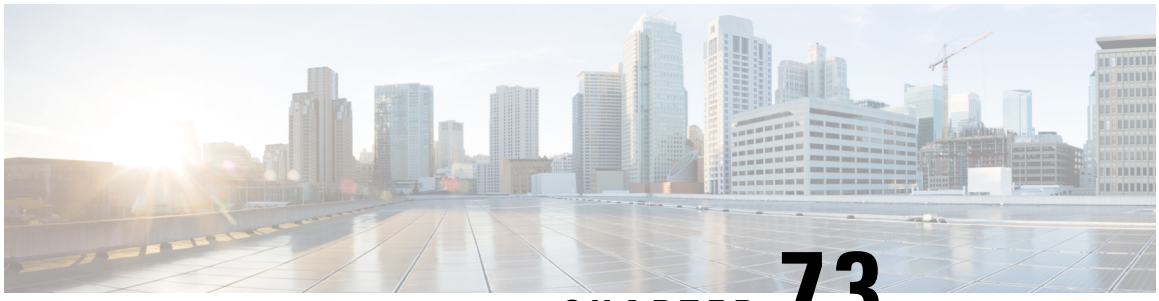
03/18/2020 09:23:13.276 1        REGISTER_SEND        0

03/18/2020 09:23:12.154 1        SEND_ABORT_ALL       0 config change

03/18/2020 09:23:12.154 1       OPTIONS_CONFIG      0 URL https://sensor.staging.obsrvbl.com

03/18/2020 09:23:12.154 1       OPTIONS_CONFIG      0 Service-key XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
03/18/2020 09:23:12.154 1        OPTIONS_CONFIG       0 Host ewc-sensor => reset

03/18/2020 09:23:12.154 1        OPTIONS_CONFIG       0 cfg-mode manual => reset
```



CHAPTER 73

# WPA3 Security Enhancements for Access Points


- Information about WPA3 Security Enhancements for Access Points, on page 655
- Guidelines and Limitations, on page 657
- GCMP-256 Cipher and SuiteB-192-1X AKM, on page 657
- SAE-EXT-KEY Support, on page 659
- AP Beacon Protection, on page 663
- Multiple Cipher Support per WLAN, on page 665
- Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE) Support with GCMP-256 Cipher, on page 667
- Verifying the SAE-EXT-KEY AKM Support , on page 668
- Verifying AP Beacon Protection, on page 671


# Information about WPA3 Security Enhancements for Access Points

### Cipher Suites

Cipher suites are sets of encryption and integrity algorithms designed to protect radio communication on your wireless LANs. You must use a cipher suite when using Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), WPA2, WPA3, or Cisco Centralized Key Management (CCKM). Wired Equivalent Privacy, or WEP, is a form of wireless authentication used for associating to 802.11 wireless networks.

### Wireless Encryption Methods for Data Protection

Encryption is used to protect data by using methods to obfuscate data to prevent unauthorized people from accessing it. The following encryption protocols are used in wireless authentication:

- **Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP)**: TKIP is the encryption method used by WPA and supports legacy WLAN equipment. TKIP addresses the original flaws associated with the 802.11 WEP encryption method. It makes use of WEP but encrypts the Layer 2 payload using TKIP and carries out a message integrity check (MIC) in encrypted packets to ensure that messages have not been altered.
- **Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)**: AES is a preferred method because of its strong encryption. AES uses Counter Cipher Mode with Block Chaining Message Authentication Code Protocol (CCMP), which allows destination hosts to recognize if the encrypted and non-encrypted bits have been altered.

  CCMP is the standard encryption protocol for use with Wi-Fi Protected Access 2 (WPA2) and is much more secure than the WEP protocol, and TKIP of WPA.

- **Galois/Counter Mode Protocol (GCMP):** GCMP is more secure and efficient than CCMP.

### Benefits of Using GCMP-Based Ciphers

- Provides secure communication and data transmission.
- Provides confidentiality and integrity protection.
- Provides parallel processing and fast encryption.

### CCMP-Based and GCMP-Based Ciphers in Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1

To improve the speed and security for extremely high throughput (EHT) devices, the CCMP-based ciphers and GCMP-based ciphers are enhanced, from Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1.

### Security Enhancements in Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1

The following are the security enhancements developed in Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1:

- GCMP-256 Cipher and Secure Agile Exchange (SAE) Autonomous Key Management (AKM)
- SAE-EXT Key Support
- AP Beacon Protection
- Multiple Cipher Support Per WLAN
- Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE) Support with GCMP-256 Cipher

### Supported Platforms

- Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller for Cloud
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches
- Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points

### Supported Access Points

- Cisco Aironet 2800 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 3800 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 4800 Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9117 Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series Access Points

- Cisco Aironet 1560 Series Outdoor Access Points

# Guidelines and Limitations

- WPA3 is not supported on Cisco Wave 1 APs.
- GCMP-256 is not supported on Cisco Catalyst 9105, 9110, 9115, 9120 APs and 802.11ac Wave2 QCA APs such as 1852.
- Beacon Protection is only supported on QCA-based APs such as 9130.

# GCMP-256 Cipher and SuiteB-192-1X AKM

There is a strong dependency between the GCMP-256 cipher with Suite-B-192-1X AKM. Therefore, until Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1, if you configure the GCMP-256 cipher, the Suite-B-192-1X AKM automatically gets enabled, as Suite-B-192-1X AKM cannot be enabled separately using commands.

However, in the Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1 release, the dependency between Suite-B-192-1X AKM and the GCMP-256 cipher is eliminated with the use of certain commands, and the GCMP-256 cipher can be configured with other supported AKMs

SuiteB-192-1X AKM is useful for enterprise networks such as, federal government and health care deployments which require highest level of security. Until Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1, the SuiteB-192-1X AKM had been tied with GCMP-256, and was enabled implicitly when GCMP-256 was enabled at the WLAN level. From Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1 onwards, a new AKM configuration is introduced to enable SuiteB-192-1X AKM separately and the GCMP-256 cipher configuration will configure only the cipher.

## Configuring SuiteB-192-1X AKM (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

The **Add WLAN** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**.

**Step 4** Choose **Security** > **Layer2**, select one of the following options:

- **WPA + WPA2**
- **WPA2 + WPA3**
- **WPA3**

The **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section will be populated with the possible AKMs that are supported by cipher selected in the **WPA2/WPA3 Encryption** section. Valid cipher and AKM combinations are displayed in the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section.

For example, to enable SuiteB-192-1x AKM,

- The valid security encryption and AKM combination for **WPA + WPA2** and **WPA2 + WPA3** is **CCMP256** and/or **GCMP256** cipher + **SuiteB-192-1X** AKM.

  **Note**
  CCMP256 cipher is not valid without the GCMP256 cipher for SuiteB-192-1X AKM.

- The valid security encryption and AKM combination for **WPA3** is **GCMP256** cipher + **SUITEB-192-1X** or **OWE** or **SAE-EXT-KEY** or **FT + SAE-EXT-KEY** AKM.

  **Note**
  At least one AKM should be enabled. To enable SuiteB-192-1X, check the SUITEB 192-1X check box.

**Step 5** In the **WPA2 Encryption** section, check the **GCMP256** check box.

Valid cipher and AKM combinations are displayed in the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section.

**Step 6** In the **Fast Transition** section, in the **Status** drop-down list, select **Disabled**.

**Note**
Disable **Fast Transition** when Suite-B cipher (GCMP256/CCMP256/GCMP128) is configured.

**Step 7** In the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section, check the **SUITEB192-1X** check box.

**Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring SuiteB-192-1X AKM (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-profile-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan suiteb192-akm-profile 17 suiteb192-akm-ssid01` | Configures the WLAN profile and SSID. Enters the WLAN configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **no security ft adaptive**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security ft adaptive` | Disables adaptive 802.11r. |
| **Step 4** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for 802.1X. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 5** | **security wpa akm suiteb-192**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm suiteb-192` | Configures the SuiteB-192-1X support. |
| **Step 6** | **security wpa wpa2 ciphers** {**aes** \| **ccmp256** \| **gcmp128** \| **gcmp256**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers gcmp256` | Configures the GCMP256 support. |

# SAE-EXT-KEY Support

New SAE AKMs, namely SAE-EXT-KEY (24) and FT-SAE-EXT-KEY (25) are introduced in the Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1 release. Devices can connect using the new SAE AKMs (24/25) and negotiate with the GCMP-256 cipher, or the CCMP-128 cipher, or a combination or both ciphers, for encryption.

**Note** Ensure that the WPA3 policy is enabled for the new AKMs to be displayed.

## Configuring SAE-EXT-KEY AKMs (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

The **Add WLAN** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**.

**Step 4** Choose **Security** > **Layer2** and select one of the following options:

- **WPA2 + WPA3**
- **WPA3**

The **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section will be populated with the possible AKMs that are supported by the cipher that is selected in the **WPA2/WPA3 Encryption** section. Valid AKMs are displayed in the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section.

**Note**
Ensure that the WPA3 policy is enabled for the new AKMs to be displayed.

**Step 5** In the **WPA2/WPA3 Encryption** section, check the **GCMP256** check box, or the **AES(CCMP128)** check box, or a combination of both these check boxes.

**Note**
The AES(CCMP128) cipher check box is selected by default.

The AKMs are displayed in the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section.

**Step 6** In the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section, check either the **SAE-EXT-KEY** check box or the **FT + SAE-EXT-KEY** check box, or select both the AKMs.

Complete the following steps:

a) Enter the **Anti Clogging Threshold** value. Valid range is 0 to 3000; default value is 1500.
b) Enter the number of allowed **Max Retries**. Valid range is 1 to 10; default value is 5.
c) Enter the **Retransmit Timeout** value in seconds. Valid range is 1 to 10000; default value is 400.
d) From the drop-down lists, select the **PSK Format** and the **PSK Type**.
e) Enter the **Pre-Shared Key**.
f) From the **SAE Password Element** drop-down list, select one of the following methods to generate the SAE password element:

- **Both H2E and HnP**: The password element is generated from both Hash-to Element (H2E) and Hunting and Pecking methods (HnP). This is the default option.
- **Hash to Element only**: In this method, the secret password element used in the SAE protocol is generated from a password. H2E is based on an non iterative algorithm that is more computationally efficient and provides robust resistance to side channel attack. If selected, HnP is disabled.
- **Hunting and Pecking only**: This method uses the iterative looping algorithm to generate the password element. As this method is prone to attacks, we recommend that you use the other two methods. If you select the Hunting and Pecking only option, H2E is disabled..

**Note**
SAE-EXT-KEY and FT + SAE-EXT-KEY requires the password element mode to be **Both H2E and HnP** or **Hash to Element only**.

**Note**
If you select an option with WPA2, configure MPSK by completing the following steps:

**a.** In the **MPSK Configuration** section, check the **Enable MPSK** check box.

**b.** In the **Auth Key Mgmt** section, choose the **PSK Format** (default is ASCII), PSK Type (default is unencrypted), and enter the **Pre-Shared Key**.

**c.** In the **MPSK Configuration** section, click **Add**.

Ensure that there are no warnings or error messages in the **Auth Key Mgmt** section, related to encryption and cipher combination.

**d.** Click **Apply**, and then click **Apply to Device**.

**Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring SAE-EXT-KEY AKMs (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-profile-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile 17 wlan-ssid01` | Configures the WLAN profile and SSID. Enters the WLAN configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **no security ft adaptive**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security ft adaptive` | Disables adaptive 802.11r. |
| **Step 4** | **security wpa psk set-key** {**ascii** \| **hex**} {**0** \| **8**} *pre-shared-key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 123456789` | Configures the pre-shared key (PSK) either in the ASCII format or the HEX format. |
| **Step 5** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security Auth Key Management (AKM) for 802.1X. |
| **Step 6** | **security wpa akm sae ext-key**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae ext-key` | Configures the SAE-EXT-KEY AKM support. |
| **Step 7** | **security wpa wpa3**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3` | Configures WPA3 support. |
| **Step 8** | **security wpa wpa2 ciphers**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers gcmp256` | Configures WPA2 and GCMP-256 cipher support. |

# Configuring FT-SAE-EXT-KEY AKMs (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-profile-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile 17 wlan-ssid01` | Configures the WLAN profile and SSID. Enters the WLAN configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **security ft**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security ft adaptive` | Configures fast transition |
| **Step 4** | **security wpa psk set-key** {**ascii** \| **hex**} {**0** \| **8**} *pre-shared-key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 123456789` | Configures the pre-shared key (PSK) either in the ASCII format or the HEX format. |
| **Step 5** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security Auth Key Management (AKM) for 802.1X. |
| **Step 6** | **security wpa akm ft sae ext-key**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm ft sae ext-key` | Configures the FT-SAE-EXT-KEY AKM support. |
| **Step 7** | **security wpa wpa3**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3` | Configures WPA3 support. |
| **Step 8** | **security wpa wpa2 ciphers**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers gcmp256` | Configures WPA2 and GCMP-256 cipher support. |

# AP Beacon Protection

The AP Beacon Protection feature helps to avoid attackers modifying the AP beacons and corresponding AP capabilities.

The following are the features of AP beacon protection:

- Avoids active attack and beacon modification by attackers.
- Genuine APs send a Beacon Integrity Key during the 4-way handshake.
- Genuine APs use the Beacon Integrity Key to generate MIC sent through beacons.
- Clients reject an attacker AP beacons based on the MIC validation.

## Configuring AP Beacon Protection (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

The **Add WLAN** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**.

**Step 4** Choose **Security** > **Layer 2**, select either the **WPA2 + WPA3** option or the **WPA3** option.

The **Beacon Protection** check box appears in the WPA parameters section when you enable the WPA3 policy.

**Step 5** Check the **Beacon Protection** check box.

**Note**
Protected Management Frame (PMF) is required for Beacon Protection to be enabled.

**Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.

## Configuring AP Beacon Protection (CLI)

Beacon protection can be enabled for any WPA3 AKM (SAE, FT-SAE, SAE-EXT-KEY, FT-SAE-EXT-KEY, OWE, DOT1X-SHA256, and FT-DOT1X). The SAE AKM configured in the example can be replaced with any WPA3 AKM.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-profile-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan ap-beacon-profile 17 ap-beacon-ssid01` | Configures the WLAN profile and SSID. Enters the WLAN configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **no security ft adaptive**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security ft adaptive` | Disables adaptive 802.11r. |
| **Step 4** | **security wpa psk set-key** {**ascii** \| **hex**} {**0** \| **8**} *pre-shared-key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 123456789` | Configures the pre-shared key (PSK) either in the ASCII format or the HEX format. |
| **Step 5** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security Auth Key Management (AKM) for 802.1X. |
| **Step 6** | **security wpa akm sae**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae` | Configures SAE support. |
| **Step 7** | **security wpa wpa3**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3` | Configures WPA3 support. |
| **Step 8** | **security wpa wpa3 beacon-protection**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3 beacon-protection` | Configures AP beacon protection. |
| **Step 9** | **no security wpa wpa2**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2` | Disables WPA2 security. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 10** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |

# Multiple Cipher Support per WLAN

Until Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1, only single ciphers were allowed in a WLAN, thereby enabling only a limited number of AKMs at the WLAN level. Only CCMP-128 cipher was used with multiple AKMs, while GCMP-128 was tightly coupled with the Suite-B-1x AKM and CCMP-256 / GCMP-256 were tightly coupled with the Suite-B-192-1x AKM.

As there are new AKMs for certain devices, these devices require GCMP-256 support. However, one WLAN serves both devices with GCMP-256, and devices with CCMP-128. Therefore, from Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1 onwards, there is support for multiple AKMs and multiple cipher combinations on the same WLAN.

### Pairwise Cipher Suite, Group Cipher Suite, and Management Cipher Suite Mapping

The configured cipher suite(s) for a WLAN is mapped to the Pairwise Cipher Suite, Group Cipher Suite, and Management Cipher Suite broadcasted in the Beacons or Probe Responses.

| Configured Cipher Suite | Pairwise Cipher Suite | Group Cipher Suite | Management Cipher Suite |
|---|---|---|---|
| CCMP-128 only | CCMP-128 | CCMP-128 | BIP-CMAC-128 |
| GCMP-256 only | GCMP-256 | GCMP-256 Management | BIP-GMAC-256 |
| CCMP-128 + GCMP-256 | CCMP-128 or GCMP-256 (client chooses) | CCMP-128 | BIP-CMAC-128 |

# Configuring Multiple Ciphers (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

The **Add WLAN** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**.

**Step 4** Choose **Security** > **Layer2**, select one of the following options:

- **WPA + WPA2**
- **WPA2 + WPA3**
- **WPA3**

The **AES(CCMP128)** cipher is selected by default.

The **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section will be populated with the possible AKMs that are supported by the cipher that is selected in the **WPA2/WPA3 Encryption** section. Valid cipher and AKM combinations are displayed in the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section.

**Step 5** In the **WPA2/WPA3 Encryption** check the **GCMP256** check box, or the **AES(CCMP128)** check box, or a combination of both these check boxes, to display the AKMs in the same WLAN.

**Step 6** In the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section, check the AKM check boxes to enable the required AKMs. At least one AKM should be enabled.

**Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Multiple Ciphers (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-profile-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile 17 wlan-ssid01` | Configures the WLAN profile and SSID. Enters the WLAN configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **no security ft adaptive**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security ft adaptive` | Disables adaptive 802.11r. |
| **Step 4** | **security wpa psk set-key** {**ascii** \| **hex**} {**0** \| **8**} *pre-shared-key*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 123456789` | Configures the pre-shared key (PSK) either in the ASCII format or the HEX format. |
| **Step 5** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for 802.1X. |
| **Step 6** | **security wpa akm sae**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae` | Configures the SAE support. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 7** | **security wpa akm sae ext-key**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae ext-key` | Configures the SAE-EXT-KEY AKM support. |
| **Step 8** | **security wpa wpa3**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3` | Configures WPA3 support. |
| **Step 9** | **security wpa wpa2 ciphers** {**aes** \| **ccmp256** \| **gcmp128** \| **gcmp256**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes` | Configures WPA2 cipher support. In this example, CCMP-128 cipher is configured. |
| **Step 10** | **security wpa wpa2 ciphers** {**aes** \| **ccmp256** \| **gcmp128** \| **gcmp256**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers gcmp256` | Configures another WPA2 cipher support (multiple cipher support). In this example, GCMP-256 cipher is configured. |

# Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE) Support with GCMP-256 Cipher

Until Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1, OWE was supported with the CCMP-128 cipher. From Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1 onwards, OWE association is supported on both CCMP-128 and GCMP-256 ciphers. If you configure both ciphers, a client will select its desired cipher suite while connecting in the association request.

## Configuring Opportunistic Wireless Encryption AKM (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

The **Add WLAN** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**.

**Step 4** Choose **Security** > **Layer 2** and click the **WPA3** option.

**Step 5** In the **WPA2/WPA3 Encryption** section, check the **GCMP256** check box, or the **AES(CCMP128)** check box, or a combination of both these check boxes. The **AES(CCMP128)** check box is selected by default.

**Step 6** In the **Fast Transition** section, from the **Status** drop-down list, select **Disabled**

**Step 7** In the **Auth Key Mgmt (AKM)** section, check the **OWE** check box.

The **Transition Mode WLAN ID** field is displayed.

**Step 8** Enter the **Transition Mode WLAN ID**. The transition-mode WLAN ID ranges are the same as the WLAN ID ranges, that is, the valid range is between 0 and 4096.

**Step 9** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Opportunistic Wireless Encryption AKM (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-profile-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile 17 wlan-ssid01` | Configures the WLAN profile and SSID. Enters the WLAN configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **no security ft adaptive**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security ft adaptive` | Disables adaptive 802.11r. |
| **Step 4** | **security wpa akm owe**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm owe` | Configures the OWE AKM. |

# Verifying the SAE-EXT-KEY AKM Support

### Summary of SAE-EXT-KEY AKMs

To view the summary of the SAE-EXT-KEY AKMs, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan summary
Number of WLANs: 5

ID   Profile Name                    SSID                              Status 2.4GHz/5GHz
Security                           6GHz Security
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1    wpa3-sae_profile                wpa3-sae                          UP     [WPA3][SAE][AES]
                                   [WPA3][SAE][AES]
2    wpa3-sae-ext_profile            wpa3-sae-ext                      UP
```

```
[WPA3][SAE-EXT-KEY][GCMP256]                    [WPA3][SAE-EXT-KEY][GCMP256]
3    wpa3-sae-ext-mab_profile         wpa3-sae-ext-mab                 UP
[WPA3][MAB][SAE-EXT-KEY][GCMP256]               [WPA3][MAB][SAE-EXT-KEY][GCMP256]
4    wpa3-sae-ext-webauth_profile     wpa3-sae-ext-webauth_profile     UP
[WPA3][SAE-EXT-KEY][Webauth][GCMP256]           [WPA3][SAE-EXT-KEY][Webauth][GCMP256]
5    wpa3-sae-ext-mab-webauth_profile wpa3-sae-ext-mab-webauth_profile UP
[WPA3][MAB][SAE-EXT-KEY][Webauth][GCMP256]      [WPA3][MAB][SAE-EXT-KEY][Webauth][GCMP256]
6    wpa3-ft-sae_profile              wpa3-ft-sae                      UP     [WPA3][FT +
SAE][AES]                            [WPA3][FT + SAE][AES]
7    wpa3-ft-sae-ext_profile          wpa3-ft-sae-ext                  UP     [WPA3][FT +
SAE-EXT-KEY][GCMP256]                [WPA3][FT + SAE-EXT-KEY][GCMP256]
8    wpa3-ft-sae-ext-mab_profile      wpa3-ft-sae-ext-mab             UP     [WPA3][MAB][FT
 + SAE-EXT-KEY][GCMP256]          [WPA3][MAB][FT + SAE-EXT-KEY][GCMP256]
9    wpa3-ft-sae-ext-webauth_profile  wpa3-ft-sae-ext-webauth          UP     [WPA3][FT +
SAE-EXT-KEY][Webauth][GCMP256]      [WPA3][FT + SAE-EXT-KEY][Webauth][GCMP256]
10   wpa3-ft-sae-ext-mab-webauth_pro  wpa3-ft-sae-ext-mab-webauth     UP     [WPA3][MAB][FT
 + SAE-EXT-KEY][Webauth][GCMP256] [WPA3][MAB][FT + SAE-EXT-KEY][Webauth][GCMP256]
```

### SAE-EXT-KEY and FT-SAE-EXT-KEY AKM in WLAN Profiles

To view the details of the SAE-EXT-KEY and FT-SAE-EXT-KEY AKMs, use the following commands:

```
Device# show wlan name wpa3-sae-ext-key-profile
WLAN Profile Name     : wpa3-sae-ext-key-profile
=================================================
Identifier                                 : 2
Description                                :
Network Name (SSID)                        : wpa3-sae-ext-key
<...>
Security
    802.11 Authentication                  : Open System
    Static WEP Keys                        : Disabled
    Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2/WPA3) : Enabled
        WPA (SSN IE)                       : Disabled
        WPA2 (RSN IE)                      : Disabled
        WPA3 (WPA3 IE)                     : Enabled
            AES Cipher                     : Disabled
            CCMP256 Cipher                 : Disabled
            GCMP128 Cipher                 : Disabled
            GCMP-256 Cipher                 : Enabled
        Auth Key Management
            802.1x                         : Disabled
            PSK                            : Disabled
            CCKM                           : Disabled
            FT dot1x                       : Disabled
            FT PSK                         : Disabled
            FT SAE                         : Disabled
            FT SAE-EXT-KEY                 : Disabled
            Dot1x-SHA256                   : Disabled
            PSK-SHA256                     : Disabled
            SAE                            : Disabled
            SAE-EXT-KEY                    : Enabled
            OWE                            : Disabled
            SUITEB-1X                      : Disabled
            SUITEB192-1X                   : Disabled
    SAE PWE Method                        : Hash to Element, Hunting and Pecking(H2E-HNP)
.
.
.

Device# show wlan name wpa3-ft-sae-ext-key-profile
WLAN Profile Name     : wpa3-ft-sae-ext-key-profile
=================================================
```

```
Identifier                                      : 7
Description                                     :
Network Name (SSID)                             : wpa3-ft-sae-ext-key
<...>
Security
    802.11 Authentication                       : Open System
    Static WEP Keys                             : Disabled
    Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2/WPA3)      : Enabled
        WPA (SSN IE)                            : Disabled
        WPA2 (RSN IE)                           : Disabled
        WPA3 (WPA3 IE)                          : Enabled
            AES Cipher                          : Disabled
            CCMP256 Cipher                      : Disabled
            GCMP128 Cipher                      : Disabled
            GCMP-256 Cipher                      : Enabled
        Auth Key Management
            802.1x                              : Disabled
            PSK                                 : Disabled
            CCKM                                : Disabled
            FT dot1x                            : Disabled
            FT PSK                              : Disabled
            FT SAE                              : Disabled
            FT SAE-EXT-KEY                      : Enabled
            Dot1x-SHA256                        : Disabled
            PSK-SHA256                          : Disabled
            SAE                                 : Disabled
            SAE-EXT-KEY                         : Disabled
            OWE                                 : Disabled
            SUITEB-1X                           : Disabled
            SUITEB192-1X                        : Disabled
    SAE PWE Method                             : Hash to Element, Hunting and Pecking(H2E-HNP)
.
.
.
```

### Cipher and AKMs based on Client MAC Address

To view the details of the cipher and AKMs based on the client MAC address, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 3089.4aXX.f0XX detail
Client MAC Address : 3089.4aXX.f0XX
.
.
.
Policy Type : WPA3
Encryption Cipher : GCMP-256
Authentication Key Management : SAE-EXT-KEY
.
.
.
Client MAC Address : 3089.4aXX.f0XX
.
.
.
Policy Type : WPA3
Encryption Cipher : GCMP-256
Authentication Key Management : FT-SAE-EXT-KEY
.
.
.
```

### AKM Support Statistics Report

To view the AKM support statistics report, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client detail
Total WPA3 SAE attempts                          :71
Total WPA3 SAE successful authentications        : 9
  Total SAE-EXT-KEY successful authentications   : 3
Total WPA3 SAE authentication failures           : 22
  Total incomplete protocol failures             : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages received          : 126
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages rejected                                    : 58
  Total unsupported group rejections                                       : 0
  Total PWE method mismatch for SAE Hash to Element commit received        : 0
  Total PWE method mismatch for SAE Hunting And Pecking commit received : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages sent              : 175
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages received         : 13
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages rejected         : 4
  Total WPA3 SAE message confirm field mismatch  : 4
  Total WPA3 SAE confirm message invalid length  : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages sent             : 13
Total WPA3 SAE Open Sessions                     : 0
Total SAE Message drops due to throttling        : 0
Total WPA3 SAE Hash to Element commit received   : 111
Total WPA3 SAE Hunting and Pecking commit received : 15
```

# Verifying AP Beacon Protection

To verify the AP beacon protection details, use the following command:

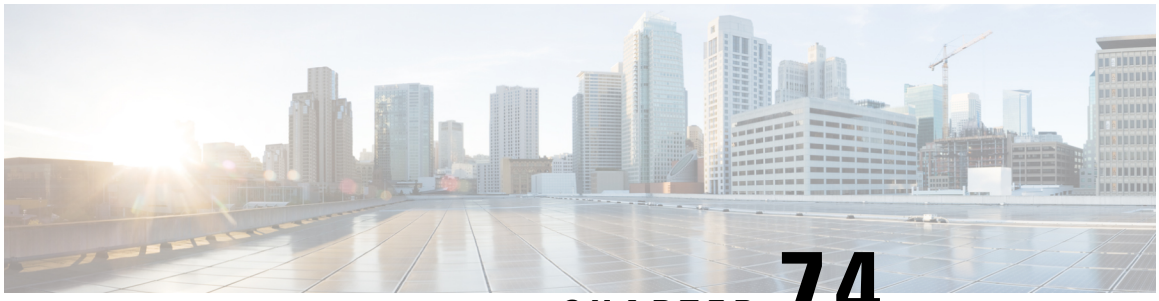
```
Device# show wlan name wl-sae
WLAN Profile Name     : wl-sae
=================================================
Identifier                                : 7
Description                               :
Network Name (SSID)                       : wl-sae
<...>
Security
    Security-2.4GHz/5GHz
        <...>
        Beacon Protection                 : Enabled
    Security-6GHz
        <...>
        Beacon Protection                 : Enabled
<...>
```



# PART VII

# Mobility


- NAT Support in Embedded Wireless Controllers, on page 675



CHAPTER 74

# NAT Support in Embedded Wireless Controllers


- Information About NAT Support, on page 675
- Restrictions for NAT Support , on page 675
- Enabling Centralized NAT on a VLAN, on page 676
- Verifying NAT Support, on page 676


## Information About NAT Support

Network Address Translation (NAT) allows a device to act as an agent between the Internet (public) and a local network (private). It maps the controller's intranet IP addresses to a corresponding external address. The AP-manager interface of the controller must be configured with the external NAT IP address so that the controller can send the correct IP address in the Discovery Response.

The master AP in an Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC) network performs NAT on the wireless client traffic. This is achieved by translating the public and private IP addresses of the clients. Depending on the placement and number of NATs, the translation may be required at one or both ends of the tunnel.

The master AP performs NAT for the guest WLAN. However, this is not required for the employee WLAN. The IP address for the clients connected to the guest WLAN is provided by the internal DHCP server running on the master AP, whereas the clients connected to the employee WLAN gets the IP address from an external DHCP server.

The master AP acts as a gateway to the traffic coming from the clients connected to the NAT-ed WLAN and performs address translation. The clients connected to the non NAT-ed WLAN uses the gateway provided by the external DHCP server to send the traffic.

For centralized NAT WLANs, the controller provisions the VLAN mapping to the specific WLAN. When performing NAT, both the private IP address (address in the network before the NAT device) and the public IP address (address in the public network) has to be configured.

The external DHCP server provides the IP addresses for the APs. The master AP requires two IP addresses, one for the internal AP and one for when it is acting as a wireless controller. The internal DHCP server is not used to assign IP addresses to the APs connected to the network. The external DHCP server is used to provide the IP address to the clients on non- NAT-ed WLANs.

## Restrictions for NAT Support

- When centralized NAT is enabled, wired to wireless client traffic on the same VLAN is not supported.

- The WLAN, where centralized NAT is enabled, must also be provisioned on the master AP.
- Client DHCP server must run on the EWC for centralized NAT to work. External DHCP servers are not supported.

# Enabling Centralized NAT on a VLAN

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless ewc-ap centralized-nat vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless ewc-ap centralized-nat test-vlan 10` | Enables centralized NAT on a VLAN. |
| **Step 3** | (Optional) **wireless ewc-ap centralized-nat vlan** *vlan-id* **peer-blocking**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless ewc-ap centralized-nat test-vlan 10 peer-blocking` | Configures peer to peer blocking. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Verifying NAT Support

To view the history of the AP datapath programming for centralized NAT, use the below command:

```
Device# show wireless mob-exp centralized-nat history

Centralized NAT Global event history:
Timestamp Event RC Context
------------------------- ----------- ---- -------
06/17/2019 05:28:39.962760 Route add 0 100.100.100.0/255.255.255.0 0.0.0.0 2
06/17/2019 05:28:39.961794 VLAN update 0 0-4095 0,10 1,100 1
06/17/2019 05:28:39.961162 Route add 0 10.10.10.0/255.255.255.0 0.0.0.0 1
Centralized NAT AP DP plumbing client event history:
Timestamp Event RC Context
------------------------- ----------- ---- -------
06/17/2019 05:37:55.827602 Client del 0 10.10.10.3
06/17/2019 05:37:55.826296 Client del 0 10.10.10.3
```

```
06/17/2019 05:37:32.160737 Client add 0 MAC b8:27:eb:27:f3:f6, IP 10.10.10.4, WLAN 2
06/17/2019 05:37:31.454851 Client del 0 10.10.10.4
06/17/2019 05:37:31.453479 Client del 0 10.10.10.4
06/17/2019 05:36:25.659639 Client add 0 MAC b8:27:eb:27:f3:f6, IP 10.10.10.4, WLAN 1
06/17/2019 05:35:52.513500 Client add 0 MAC b8:27:eb:be:08:ea, IP 10.10.10.3, WLAN 1
```

To view the NAT status, use the below command on the AP:

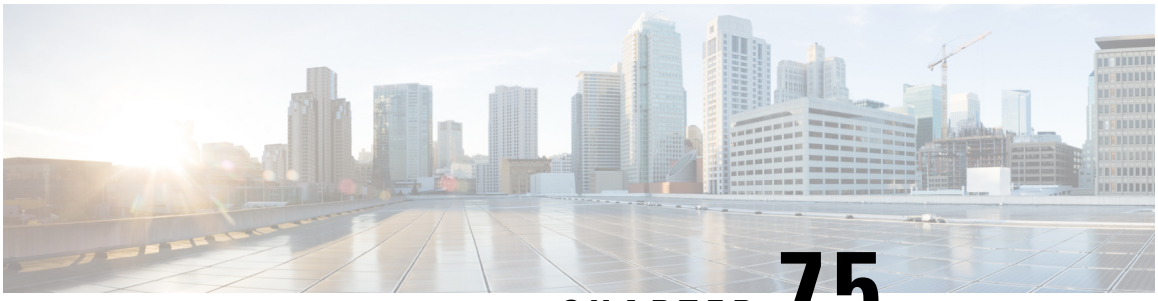
```
Device# show flexconnect ewc-ap nat status
Programmed WLC IP
9.9.71.50
Programmed Vlan Config
output 0: vlan 0-9,11-4095
output 1: vlan 10
Programmed Route Table
0.0.0.0/0 1.1.1.1                       0
10.10.10.0/24 -                         2
NAT and P2P Block Status:
WLAN    NAT-Enabled        P2P-Block
  0       false              false
  1       true               false
```



# PART VIII

# High Availability


- High Availability, on page 681



CHAPTER 75

# High Availability


- High Availability Active and Standby, on page 681
- Active Access Point election Process, on page 682


## High Availability Active and Standby

The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points (EWC), is supported on the Cisco Catalyst 9100 series APs. The active AP election process determines which of the Cisco Catalyst 9100 series APs is elected to run the EWC controller function. Once the active AP is elected and other subordinate EWC-capable Cisco Catalyst 9100 series APs join the active AP, it selects a standby AP and redundancy is formed.

This High Availability (HA) architecture is based on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 HA architecture, with a few additions:

HA pairing is different in EWC. For the initial bring-up, the EWC active AP waits until all the APs join the controller. The active AP then selects the designated standby AP (either by auto-selection or configuration), and communicates the role and the HA parameters (local/peer IP, keepalive interval, priority) to the selected AP, through a CAPWAP control message.

**Note** After a power outage, the standby AP does not come up in the EWC HA pair. The standby AP tries to come up but fails. Then another EWC capable AP is selected as standby, which fails to come up. To avoid this situation, ensure that the APs have the same IP version to be elected as a HA pair.

**Note** With FIPS and HA configuration, to choose a preferred standby EWC, after running the command, switch off the current standby AP and wait for the chosen preferred AP to become the standby AP. Then switch on the old standby AP.

The selected standby AP starts and dynamically configures the HA parameters without manual intervention.

## Monitoring Redundancy between Active and Standby Access Points

To view the redundancy between active AP and standby APs, follow the steps given below:

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Open the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller for Catalyst Access Points GUI.

**Step 2** Choose **Monitoring** > **General** > **System**.

**Step 3** Click the **Redundancy** tab.

In the **General** tab, you can view the current state, peer state, redundancy modes, and the chassis details of the active and standyby APs.

# Active Access Point election Process

The EWC election process is used to choose the AP on which the controller is started. Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) is used to elect the active AP. The logic used to elect the EWC active AP and standby AP is described in the following sections.

## Selecting the Active EWC Access Point

The following points are used to compare and select an Active EWC AP:

- If you have configured an AP to be a preferred controller, it takes the highest precedence.
- The AP type is compared next. The APs with higher model numbers have higher values. The AP having the highest value becomes the active AP.
- If the APs have the same AP type, the client load (number of associated clients) is compared, and the AP with the smallestclient load is selected.
- If all the methods mentioned above fail (all are equal among the APs), then the AP with the lowest MAC address becomes the active AP.

## Selecting the Standby EWC Access Points

The standby EWC AP is not selected using VRRP. The following is the selection process for the standby EWC AP, on day-1:

- After the active EWC AP is selected, the active AP waits for the external APs to join, to begin the standby AP selection.
- Once the external APs join, the active AP assigns a priority to all the joined APs. The AP with the highest priority is selected as the standby AP. If multiple APs match the same highest priority, the AP with the lowest MAC address gets selected. Only EWC-capable APs with an EWC image installed are considered for the selection process.
- Priority is calculated based on the following parameters:
  - Explicit user configuration to choose a particular AP as the next preferred controller (highest priority)
  - AP type

- AP join time

**Note** There is no concept of standby on day 0. On day 0, you there is only one active EWC AP. If the active EWC AP goes down for some reason, the VRRP election takes place again, to elect a new active EWC AP.

**Note** If a controller is running on an AP, this AP will have a higher priority compared to the other APs not running as the controller. For example, if you bring-up a Cisco Catalyst 9115AX Series AP, since there are no other APs to choose from, this AP become the active AP and starts the controller. Later, if you bring-up a Cisco Catalyst 9117AX Series AP on this network, although the Cisco Catalyst 9117AX Series AP has a higher model number, it does not become the controller, since you already have a controller running in the network. Election will take place only if you bring-up two APs at the same time.

# Selecting the Preferred Controller

To select the preferred controller and to make it the controller, follow the steps given below:

### Before you begin

The active EWC AP and standby EWC APs are selected by the process described in the earlier topics. For some reason, if you want to select another AP as the standby, you can select any EWC-capable AP as a preferred controller, from the GUI.

**Note** When you select another AP that is not the current standby AP to be the preferred controller, the current standby AP goes down and the new EWC AP you have selected becomes the standby EWC AP.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Open the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller for Catalyst Access Points GUI.

**Step 2** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 3** Click the AP that you want to make as the preferred controller.
The **Edit AP** window is displayed.

**Step 4** Click the **Advanced** tab.

**Step 5** In the **Embedded Wireless Controller** section, check the **Preferred Controller** check box.

**Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

### What to do next

Return to the **Advanced** tab, and click **Make Controller**. Then click **Update & Apply to Device**.



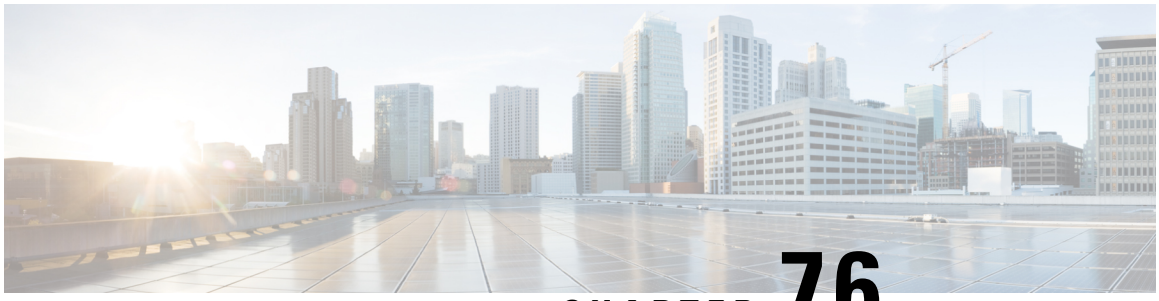
**Note** A warning message is displayed mentioning that this operation will disrupt the network, as the controller will reset.



PART IX

# Quality of Service


- Quality of Service, on page 687
- Wireless Auto-QoS, on page 715
- Native Profiling, on page 721



CHAPTER 76

# Quality of Service


- Wireless QoS Overview, on page 687
- Wireless QoS Targets, on page 687
- Precious Metal Policies for Wireless QoS, on page 688
- Prerequisites for Wireless QoS, on page 689
- Restrictions for QoS on Wireless Targets, on page 689
- Metal Policy Format, on page 690
- How to apply Bi-Directional Rate Limiting, on page 697
- How to apply Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting, on page 704
- How to Configure Wireless QoS, on page 708


## Wireless QoS Overview

Quality of Service (QoS), provides the ability to prioritize the traffic by giving preferential treatment to specific traffic over the other traffic types. Without QoS, the device offers best-effort service for each packet, regardless of the packet contents or size. The device sends the packets without any assurance of reliability, delay bounds, or throughput.

A target is the entity where the policy is applied. Wireless QoS policies for SSID and client are applied in the upstream and (or) downstream direction. The flow of traffic from a wired source to a wireless target is known as downstream traffic. The flow of traffic from a wireless source to a wired target is known as upstream traffic.

The following are some of the specific features provided by wireless QoS:

- SSID and client policies on wireless QoS targets
- Marking and Policing (also known as Rate Limiting ) of wireless traffic

## Wireless QoS Targets

This section describes the various wireless QoS targets available on a device.

### SSID Policies

You can create QoS policies on SSID in both the ingress and egress directions. If not configured, there is no SSID policy applied.

The policy is applicable per AP per SSID.

You can configure policing and marking policies on SSID.

# Client Policies

Client policies are applicable in the ingress and egress direction. You can configure policing and marking policies on clients. AAA override is also supported.

# Supported QoS Features on Wireless Targets

This table describes the various features available on wireless targets.

***Table 42: QoS Features Available on Wireless Targets***

| Target | Features | Direction Where Policies Are Applicable |
|---|---|---|
| SSID | • Set<br>• Police<br>• Drop | Upstream and downstream |
| Client | • Set<br>• Police<br>• Drop | Upstream and downstream |

**Note** For Drop support, the Drop action is achieved by the following configuration:

```
police <rate>
   conform-action drop
   exceed-action drop
```

Direct **action drop** is not supported.

# Precious Metal Policies for Wireless QoS

The precious metal policies are system-defined policies that are available on the embedded wireless controller. They cannot be removed or changed.

The following policies are available:

- Platinum—Used for VoIP clients.
- Gold—Used for video clients.
- Silver— Used for traffic that can be considered best-effort.

- Bronze—Used for NRT traffic.

These policies are pre-configured. They cannot be modified.

For client metal policies, they can be pushed using AAA.

Based on the policies applied, the 802.11e (WMM), and DSCP fields in the packets are affected.

For more information about metal policies format see the Metal Policy Format, on page 690 section.

For more information about DSCP to UP mapping, see the #unique_865 table.

# Prerequisites for Wireless QoS

Before configuring wireless QoS, you must have a thorough understanding of these items:

- Wireless concepts and network topologies.
- Understanding of QoS implementation.
- Modular QoS CLI (MQC). For more information on Modular QoS, see the MQC guide
- The types of applications used and the traffic patterns on your network.
- Bandwidth requirements and speed of the network.

# Restrictions for QoS on Wireless Targets

### General Restrictions

A target is an entity where a policy is applied. A policy can be applied to a wireless target, which can be an SSID or client target, in the downstream and/or upstream direction. Downstream indicates that traffic is flowing from the controller to the wireless client. Upstream indicates that traffic is flowing from wireless client to the controller.

- Hierarchical (Parent policy and child policy) QoS is not supported.
- One policy per target per direction is supported.
- Only BSSID and client targets are supported, on both directions.
- The following policy formats are supported:
  - QoS Policy Action
    - Police:

      ```
      police [cir | rate] bps [conform-action action] [exceed-action action]
      ```

      Policer action types are **transmit** or **drop**.

    - Set:

      ```
      set dscp
       set wlan user-priority
      ```

**Note** **set wlan user-priority** (downstream only; BSSID only)

- QoS Policy Classification

```
match [not] access-group
 match [not] dscp
 match [not] protocol
```

### AP Side Restrictions

- In Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller, FlexConnect local switching, and SDA deployments, the QoS policies are enforced on the AP. Due to this AP-side restriction, police actions (e.g., rate limiting) are only enforced at a per flow (5-tuple) level and not per client.
- For FlexConnect local switching (local authentication) with AAA override enabled and external AAA server, only air space VLAN and ACL are supported as part of the AAA override and not the QoS override or other overrides.

### Control Plane Rate Limiting and Policing

You need not explicitly configure control plane rate limiting or policing on the controller. The controller has embedded mechanisms (like policers) to protect the CPU by policing control plane traffic directed towards it. If you're migrating from AireOS to IOS-XE, this change is taken care of at the code level.

# Metal Policy Format

## Metal Policy Format

Metal Policies are system defined, and you cannot change it or delete it. There are four levels of metal policy - Platinum, Gold, Silver, and Bronze.

**Note** Each metal policy defines a DSCP ceiling so that the DSCP or the UP marking does not exceed a certain value.

For Platinum the value is 46, Gold is AF41, Silver is 22, and Bronze is CS1.

| Policy Name | Policy-map Format | Class-map Format |
|---|---|---|
| platinum | policy-map platinum<br> class cm-dscp-34<br>  set dscp af41<br> class cm-dscp-45<br>  set dscp 45<br> class cm-dscp-46<br>  set dscp ef<br> class cm-dscp-47<br>  set dscp 47 | class-map match-any cm-dscp-34<br> match dscp af41<br>class-map match-any cm-dscp-45<br> match dscp 45<br>class-map match-any cm-dscp-46<br> match dscp ef<br>class-map match-any cm-dscp-47<br> match dscp 47<br>class-map match-any cm-dscp-0<br> match dscp default |
| gold | policy-map gold<br> class cm-dscp-45<br>  set dscp af41<br> class cm-dscp-46<br>  set dscp af41<br> class cm-dscp-47<br>  set dscp af41 | |
| silver | policy-map silver<br> class cm-dscp-34<br>  set dscp default<br> class cm-dscp-45<br>  set dscp default<br> class cm-dscp-46<br>  set dscp default<br> class cm-dscp-47<br>  set dscp default | |
| bronze | policy-map bronze<br> class cm-dscp-0<br>  set dscp cs1<br> class cm-dscp-34<br>  set dscp cs1<br> class cm-dscp-45<br>  set dscp cs1<br> class cm-dscp-46<br>  set dscp cs1<br> class cm-dscp-47<br>  set dscp cs1 | |

| Policy Name | Policy-map Format | Class-map Format |
|---|---|---|
| platinum-up | policy-map platinum-up<br> class cm-dscp-set1-for-up-4<br>  set dscp af41<br> class cm-dscp-set2-for-up-4<br>  set dscp af41<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-5<br>  set dscp af41<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-6<br>  set dscp ef<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-7<br>  set dscp ef | class-map match-any cm-dscp-for-up-0<br>  match dscp default<br>  match dscp cs2<br>class-map match-any cm-dscp-for-up-1<br>  match dscp cs1<br>class-map match-any cm-dscp-set1-for-up-4<br>  match dscp cs3<br>  match dscp af31<br>  match dscp af32<br>  match dscp af33<br>class-map match-any cm-dscp-set2-for-up-4<br>  match dscp af41<br>  match dscp af42<br>  match dscp af43<br>class-map match-any cm-dscp-for-up-5<br>  match dscp cs4<br>  match dscp cs5<br>class-map match-any cm-dscp-for-up-6<br>  match dscp 44<br>  match dscp ef<br>class-map match-any cm-dscp-for-up-7<br>  match dscp cs6<br>  match dscp cs7 |
| gold-up | policy-map gold-up<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-6<br>  set dscp af41<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-7<br>  set dscp af41 | |
| silver-up | policy-map silver-up<br> class cm-dscp-set1-for-up-4<br>  set dscp default<br> class cm-dscp-set2-for-up-4<br>  set dscp default<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-5<br>  set dscp default<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-6<br>  set dscp default<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-7<br>  set dscp default | |
| bronze-up | policy-map bronze-up<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-0<br>  set dscp cs1<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-1<br>  set dscp cs1<br> class cm-dscp-set1-for-up-4<br>  set dscp cs1<br> class cm-dscp-set2-for-up-4<br>  set dscp cs1<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-5<br>  set dscp cs1<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-6<br>  set dscp cs1<br> class cm-dscp-for-up-7<br>  set dscp cs1 | |

| Policy Name | Policy-map Format | Class-map Format |
|---|---|---|
| clwmm-platinum | policy-map clwmm-platinum<br>class voice-plat<br>set dscp ef<br>class video-plat<br>set dscp af41<br>class class-default<br>set dscp default | class-map match-any voice-plat<br>match dscp ef<br>class-map match-any video-plat<br>match dscp af41<br>class-map match-any voice-gold<br>match dscp ef<br>class-map match-any video-gold<br>match dscp af41 |
| clwmm-gold | policy-map clwmm-gold<br>class voice-gold<br>set dscp af41<br>class video-gold<br>set dscp af41<br>class class-default<br>set dscp default | |
| clnon-wmm-platinum | policy-map clnon-wmm-platinum<br>class class-default<br>set dscp ef | |
| clnon-wmm-gold | policy-map clnon-wmm-gold<br>class class-default<br>set dscp af41 | |
| clsilver | policy-map clsilver<br>class class-default<br>set dscp default | |
| clbronze | policy-map clbronze<br>class class-default<br>set dscp cs1 | |

# Auto QoS Policy Format

| Policy Name | Policy-map Format | Class-map Format |
|---|---|---|
| enterprise-avc | policy-map AutoQos-4.0-wlan-ET-SSID-Input-AVC-Policy<br>class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Voip-Data-Class<br>set dscp ef<br>class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Voip-Signal-Class<br>set dscp cs3<br>class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Multimedia-Conf-Class<br>set dscp af41<br>class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Transaction-Class<br>set dscp af21<br>class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Bulk-Data-Class<br>set dscp af11<br>class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Scavanger-Class<br>set dscp cs1<br>class class-default<br>set dscp default<br>policy-map AutoQos-4.0-wlan-ET-SSID-Output-Policy<br>class AutoQos-4.0-RT1-Class<br>set dscp ef<br>class AutoQos-4.0-RT2-Class<br>set dscp af31<br>class class-default | |

| Policy Name | Policy-map Format | Class-map Format |
|---|---|---|
| | | class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Voip-Data-Class<br>  match dscp ef<br>class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Voip-Signal-Class<br> match protocol skinny<br> match protocol cisco-jabber-control<br> match protocol sip<br> match protocol sip-tls<br>class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Multimedia-Conf-Class<br> match protocol cisco-phone-video<br> match protocol cisco-jabber-video<br> match protocol ms-lync-video<br> match protocol webex-media<br>class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Transaction-Class<br> match protocol cisco-jabber-im<br> match protocol ms-office-web-apps<br> match protocol salesforce<br> match protocol sap<br>class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Bulk-Data-Class<br> match protocol ftp<br> match protocol ftp-data<br> match protocol ftps-data<br> match protocol cifs<br>class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Scavanger-Class<br> match protocol netflix<br> match protocol youtube<br> match protocol skype<br> match protocol bittorrent<br>class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-RT1-Class<br>match dscp ef |

| Policy Name | Policy-map Format | Class-map Format |
|---|---|---|
| | | match dscp cs6<br><br>class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-RT2-Class<br>match dscp cs4<br>match dscp cs3<br>match dscp af41 |
| voice | policy-map platinum-up<br>class dscp-for-up-4<br>set dscp 34<br>class dscp-for-up-5<br>set dscp 34<br>class dscp-for-up-6<br>set dscp 46<br>class dscp-for-up-7<br>set dscp 46<br><br>policy-map platinum<br>class cm-dscp-34<br>set dscp 34<br>class cm-dscp-46<br>set dscp 46 | |
| guest | Policy Map AutoQos-4.0-wlan-GT-SSID-Output-Policy<br>Class class-default<br>set dscp default<br><br>Policy Map AutoQos-4.0-wlan-GT-SSID-Input-Policy<br>Class class-default<br>set dscp default | |
| port<br><br>(only applies to Local Mode) | policy-map AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Port-Output-Policy<br>class AutoQos-4.0-Output-CAPWAP-C-Class<br>priority level 1<br>class AutoQos-4.0-Output-Voice-Class<br>priority level 2<br>class class-default<br><br>ip access-list extended AutoQos-4.0-Output-Acl-CAPWAP-C<br><br>permit udp any eq 5246 16666 any | class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-Output-CAPWAP-C-Class<br><br>match access-group name AutoQos-4.0-Output-Acl-CAPWAP-C<br><br>class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-Output-Voice-Class<br><br>match dscp ef |

# Architecture for Voice, Video and Integrated Data (AVVID)

| IETF DiffServ Service Class | DSCP | IEEE 802.11e | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | User Priority | Access Category |
| Network Control | (CS7)<br>CS6 | 0 | AC_BE |
| Telephony | EF | 6 | AC_VO |
| VOICE-ADMIT | 44 | 6 | AC_VO |
| Signaling | CS5 | 5 | AC_VI |

| IETF DiffServ Service Class | DSCP | IEEE 802.11e | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | User Priority | Access Category |
| Multimedia Conferencing | AF41<br>AF42<br>AF43 | 4 | AC_VI |
| Real-Time Interactive | CS4 | 5 | AC_VI |
| Multimedia Streaming | AF31<br>AF32<br>AF33 | 4 | AC_VI |
| Broadcast Video | CS3 | 4 | AC_VI |
| Low-Latency Data | AF21<br>AF22<br>AF23 | 3 | AC_BE |
| OAM | CS2 | 0 | AC_BE |
| High-Throughput Data | AF11<br>AF12<br>AF13 | 2 | AC_BK |
| Standard | DF | 0 | AC_BE |
| Low-Priority Data | CS1 | 1 | AC_BK |
| Remaining | Remaining | 0 | |

# How to apply Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

## Information about Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

Bi-Directional Rate Limiting (BDRL) feature defines rate limits on both upstream and downstream traffic. These rate limits are individually configured. The rate limits can be configured on WLAN directly instead of QoS profiles, which will override QoS profile values. The WLAN rate limiting will always supersede Global QoS setting for controller and clients.

BDRL feature defines throughput limits for clients on their wireless networks and allows setting a priority service to a particular set of clients.

The following four QoS profiles are available to configure the rate limits:

- Gold

- Platinum
- Silver
- Bronze

The QoS profile is applied to all clients on the associated SSID. Therefore all clients connected to the same SSID will have the same rate limits.

To configure BDRL, select the QoS profile and configure the various rate limiting parameters. When rate limiting parameters are set to *0*, the rate limiting feature is not functional. Each WLAN has a QoS profile associated with it in addition to the configuration in the QoS profile.

**Note** BDRL in a mobility Anchor-Foreign setup must be configured both on Anchor and Foreign controller. As a best practice, it is recommended to perform identical configuration on both the controllers to avoid breakage of any feature.

BDRL is supported on Guest anchor scenarios. The feature is supported on IRCM guest scenarios with AireOS as Guest anchor or Guest Foreign. Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller uses **Policing** option to rate limit the traffic.

To apply metal policy with BDRL, perform the following tasks:

- Configure Metal Policy on SSID
- Configure Metal Policy on Client
- #unique_873
- #unique_874
- #unique_875
- #unique_876

# Prerequisites for Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

- Client metal policy is applied through AAA-override.
- You must specify the metal policy on ISE server.
- AAA-override must be enabled on policy profile.

# Configure Metal Policy on SSID

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:** | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device# configure terminal` | |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile1` | Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **description** *description*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# description policy-profile1` | Adds a user defined description to the new wireless policy. |
| **Step 4** | **service-policy input** *input-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy input platinum-up` | Sets platinum policy for input. |
| **Step 5** | **service-policy output** *output-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy output platinum` | Sets platinum policy for output. |

# Configure Metal Policy on Client

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile1` | Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **description** *description*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# description profile with aaa override` | Adds a user defined description to the new wireless policy. |
| **Step 4** | **aaa-override**<br>**Example:** | Enables AAA override on the WLAN.<br>**Note** |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override` | After AAA-override is enabled and ISE server starts sending policy, client policy defined in service-policy client will not take effect. |

# Configure Bi-Directional Rate Limiting for All Traffic

Use the police action in the policy-map to configure BDRL.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **policy-map** *policy-map*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# policy-map policy-sample 1` | Creates a named object representing a set of policies that are to be applied to a set of traffic classes. Policy-map names can contain alphabetic, hyphen, or underscore characters, are case sensitive, and can be up to 40 characters. |
| **Step 3** | **class** *class-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap)# class class-default` | Associates a class map with the policy map, and enters policy-map class configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **police** *rate*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap-c)# police 500000` | Configures traffic policing (average rate, in bits per second). Valid values are 8000 to 200000000. |

# Configure Bi-Directional Rate Limiting Based on Traffic Classification

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **policy-map** *policy-map*<br>**Example:** | Creates a named object representing a set of policies that are to be applied to a set of traffic classes. Policy-map names can contain |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# policy-map policy-sample2` | alphabetic, hyphen, or underscore characters, are case sensitive, and can be up to 40 characters. |
| **Step 3** | **class** *class-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap)# class class-sample-youtube` | Associates a class map with the policy map, and enters policy-map class configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **police** *rate*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap-c)# police 1000000` | Configures traffic policing (average rate, in bits per second). Valid values are 8000 to 200000000. |
| **Step 5** | **conform-action drop**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap-c-police)# conform-action drop` | Specifies the drop action to take on packets that conform to the rate limit. |
| **Step 6** | **exceed-action drop**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap-c-police)# exceed-action drop` | Specifies the drop action to take on packets that exceeds the rate limit. |
| **Step 7** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap-c-police)# exit` | Exits the policy-map class configuration mode. |
| **Step 8** | **set dscp default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap-c)# set dscp default` | Sets the DSCP value to default. |
| **Step 9** | **police** *rate*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap-c)# police 500000` | Configures traffic policing (average rate, in bits per second). Valid values are 8000 to 200000000. |
| **Step 10** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap-c)# exit` | Exits the policy-map class configuration mode. |
| **Step 11** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap)# exit` | Exits the policy-map configuration mode. |
| **Step 12** | **class-map match-any** *class-map-name*<br>**Example:** | Selects a class map. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# class-map match-any class-sample-youtube` | |
| **Step 13** | **match protocol** *protocol*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-cmap)# match protocol youtube` | Configures the match criteria for a class map on the basis of the specified protocol. |

# Apply Bi-Directional Rate Limiting Policy Map to Policy Profile

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile3` | Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **description** *description*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# description policy-profile3` | Adds a user defined description to the new wireless policy. |
| **Step 4** | **service-policy client input** *input-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy client input platinum-up` | Sets the input client service policy as platinum. |
| **Step 5** | **service-policy client output** *output-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy client output platinum` | Sets the output client service policy as platinum. |
| **Step 6** | **service-policy input** *input-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy input platinum-up` | Sets the input service policy as platinum. |
| **Step 7** | **service-policy output** *output-policy*<br>**Example:** | Sets the output service policy as platinum. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy output platinum` | |

# Apply Metal Policy with Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile3` | Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **description** *description*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# description policy-profile3` | Adds a user defined description to the new wireless policy. |
| **Step 4** | **service-policy client input** *input-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy client input platinum-up` | Sets the input client service policy as platinum. |
| **Step 5** | **service-policy client output** *output-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy client output platinum` | Sets the output client service policy as platinum. |
| **Step 6** | **service-policy input** *input-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy input platinum-up` | Sets the input service policy as platinum. |
| **Step 7** | **service-policy output** *output-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy output platinum` | Sets the output service policy as platinum. |
| **Step 8** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit` | Exits the policy configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 9** | **policy-map** *policy-map*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# policy-map policy-sample 1` | Creates a named object representing a set of policies that are to be applied to a set of traffic classes. Policy map names can contain alphabetic, hyphen, or underscore characters, are case sensitive, and can be up to 40 characters. |
| **Step 10** | **class** *class-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap)# class class-default` | Associates a class map with the policy map, and enters configuration mode for the specified system class. |
| **Step 11** | **police** *rate*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-pmap-c)# police 500000` | Configures traffic policing (average rate, in bits per second). Valid values are 8000 to 200000000. |

# How to apply Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

## Information About Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

The Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting feature adds bi-directional rate limiting for each wireless clients on 802.11ac Wave 2 APs in a Flex local switching configuration. Earlier, the Wave 2 APs supported only per-flow rate limiting for a wireless client. When wireless client starts multiple streams of traffic, the client-based rate limiting does not work as expected. This limitation is addressed by this feature.

For instance, if the controller is configured with QoS policy and you expect each client to have a rate limiting cap of 1000 kbps. Due to per-flow rate limiting on the AP, if the wireless client starts a Youtube stream and FTP stream, each of them will be rate limited at 1000 Kbps, therefore the client will be 2000 Kbps rates. This is not desirable.

### Use Cases

The following are the use cases supported by the Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting feature:

**Use Case -1**

**Configuring only default class map**

If policy map is configured only with default class map and mapped only to QoS client policy, AP does a per client rate limit to the client connected to AP.

**Use Case-2**

**Changing from per client rate limit to per flow rate limit**

If policy map is configured with another different class map along with a default class map and mapped to QoS client policy, AP performs per flow rate limit to client. As policy map has different class map along with the default class map. The per client rate limit values are cleared, if the AP has previously configured per client rate limit.

If the policy map has more than one class map, then additional class map is configured along with the default class map. So, the rate limit is applied from per client to per flow. The per client rate limit value is deleted from the rate info token bucket.

**Use Case-3**

**Changing from per flow rate limit to per client limit**

If different class map is removed from policy map and policy map has only one default class map, AP performs a per client rate limit to client.

The following covers the high-level steps for Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting feature:

1. Configure a policy map to WLAN through policy profile.
2. Map the QoS related policy map to WLAN.
3. Configure policy map with the default class map.
4. Configure different police rate value for class Default map.



**Note** If policy map has class Default with valid police rate value, AP applies that rate limit to the overall client data traffic flow.

5. Apply the policy map with class Default to QoS client policy in WLAN policy profile.

# Prerequisites for Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

- This feature is exclusive to QoS client policy, that is, the policy profile must have only QoS Policy or policy target as client.
- If policy map has class default with valid police rate value, AP applies that rate limit value to the overall client data traffic flow.

# Restrictions on Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

- If policy map has class map other than the class Default map, the per client rate limit does not work in AP.

# Configuring Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.

**Step 2** Click the Policy Profile Name.

The **Edit Policy Profile** window is displayed.

**Note**

The **Edit Policy Profile** window is displayed and configured in default class map only.

**Step 3** Choose the **QOS And AVC** tab.

**Step 4** In the **QoS Client Policy** settings, choose the policies from the **Egress** and **Ingress** drop-down lists.

**Note**
You need to apply the default policy map to the QoS Client Policy.

**Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Verifying Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

To verify whether per client is applied in AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show rate-limit client
Config:
            mac vap rt_rate_out rt_rate_in rt_burst_out rt_burst_in nrt_rate_out nrt_rate_in
 nrt_burst_out nrt_burst_in
A0:D3:7A:12:6C:5E   0           0          0            0           0            0
   0             0            0
Statistics:
            name     up down
        Unshaped      0    0
  Client RT pass 697610 8200
 Client NRT pass      0    0
 Client RT drops      0    0
Client NRT drops      0   16
               9    180    0
Per client rate limit:
              mac vap rate_out rate_in            policy
A0:D3:7A:12:6C:5E   0       88      23 per_client_rate_2
```

# Configuring BDRL Using AAA Override

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device (config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Configures the WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa-override**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa` | Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA server or ISE the Cisco Identify Services Engine (ISE) server. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | The following attributes are available in the RADIUS server:<br>• Airespace-Data-Bandwidth-Average-Contract: 8001<br>• Airespace-Real-Time-Bandwidth-Average-Contract: 8002<br>• Airespace-Data-Bandwidth-Burst-Contract: 8003<br>• Airespace-Real-Time-Bandwidth-Burst-Contract: 8004<br>• Airespace-Data-Bandwidth-Average-Contract-Upstream: 8005<br>• Airespace-Real-Time-Bandwidth-Average-Contract-Upstream: 8006<br>• Airespace-Data-Bandwidth-Burst-Contract-Upstream: 8007<br>• Airespace-Real-Time-Bandwidth-Burst-Contract-Upstream: 8008<br>**Note**<br>8001, 8002, 8003, 8004, 8005, 8006, 8007, and 8008 are the desired rate-limit values configured as an example. |

# Verifying Bi-Directional Rate-Limit

To verify the bi-directional rate limit, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address E8-8E-00-00-00-71 detailClient MAC Address :
e88e.0000.0071
Client MAC Type     : Universally Administered Address
Client IPv4 Address : 100.0.7.94
Client Username     : e88e00000071
AP MAC Address      : 0a0b.0c00.0200
AP Name             : AP6B8B4567-0002
AP slot             : 0
Client State        : Associated
Policy Profile      : dnas_qos_profile_policy
Flex Profile        : N/A
Wireless LAN Id     : 10
WLAN Profile Name   : QoS_wlan
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID): QoS_wlan
BSSID : 0a0b.0c00.0200
Connected For       : 28 seconds
Protocol            : 802.11n - 2.4 GHz
Channel             : 1
Client IIF-ID       : 0xa0000034
Association Id      : 10
```

```
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Idle state timeout  : N/A
Session Timeout     : 1800 sec (Remaining time: 1777 sec)
Session Warning Time : Timer not running
Input Policy Name    : None
Input Policy State   : None
Input Policy Source  : None
Output Policy Name   : None
Output Policy State  : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support          : Enabled
U-APSD Support       : Disabled
Fastlane Support     : Disabled
Client Active State  : In-Active
Power Save           : OFF
Supported Rates : 1.0,2.0,5.5,6.0,9.0,11.0,12.0,18.0,24.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
AAA QoS Rate Limit Parameters:
  QoS Average Data Rate Upstream             : 8005 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Upstream    : 8006 (kbps)
  QoS Burst Data Rate Upstream               : 8007 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Upstream      : 8008 (kbps)
  QoS Average Data Rate Downstream           : 8001 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Downstream  : 8002 (kbps)
  QoS Burst Data Rate Downstream             : 80300 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Downstream    : 8004 (kbps)
```

To verify the rate-limit details from the AP terminal, use the following command

```
Device# show rate-limit client
Config:
mac vap rt_rate_out rt_rate_in rt_burst_out rt_burst_in nrt_rate_out nrt_rate_in nrt_burst_out
 nrt_burst_in
00:1C:F1:09:85:E7 0 8001 8002 8003 8004 8005 8006 8007 8008
Statistics:
name up down
Unshaped 0 0
Client RT pass 0 0
Client NRT pass 0 0
Client RT drops 0 0
Client NRT drops 0 0
Per client rate limit:
mac vap rate_out rate_in policy
```

# How to Configure Wireless QoS

## Configuring a Policy Map with Class Map (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Services** > **QoS**.

**Step 2** Click **Add** to view the **Add QoS** window.

**Step 3** In the text box next to the **Policy Name**, enter the name of the new policy map that is being added.

**Step 4** Click **Add Class-Maps**.

**Step 5** Configure **AVC** based policies or **User Defined** policies. To enable **AVC** based policies, and configure the following:

a) Choose either **Match Any** or **Match All**.
b) Choose the required **Mark Type**. If you choose **DSCP** or **User Priority**, you must specify the appropriate **Mark Value**.
c) Check the **Drop** check box to drop traffic from specific sources.

**Note**
When **Drop** is enabled, the **Mark Type** and **Police(kbps)** options are disabled.

d) Based on the chosen **Match Type**, select the required protocols from the **Available Protocol(s)** list and move them to the **Selected Protocol(s)** list. These selected protocols are the ones from which traffic is dropped.
e) Click **Save**.

**Note**
To add more Class Maps, repeat steps 4 and 5.

**Step 6** To enable **User-Defined** QoS policy, and the configure the following:

a) Choose either **Match Any** or **Match All**.
b) Choose either **ACL** or **DSCP** as the **Match Type** from the drop-down list, and then specify the appropriate **Match Value**.
c) Choose the required **Mark Type** to associate with the mark label. If you choose *DSCP*, you must specify an appropriate **Mark Value**.
d) Check the **Drop** check box to drop traffic from specific sources.

**Note**
When **Drop** is enabled, the **Mark Type** and **Police(kbps)** options are disabled.

e) Click **Save**.

**Note**
To define actions for all the remaining traffic, in the Class Default, choose **Mark** and/or **Police(kbps)** accordingly.

**Step 7** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring a Class Map (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure class maps for voice and video traffic:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **class-map** *class-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# class-map test` | Creates a class map. |
| **Step 3** | **match dscp** *dscp-value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-cmap)# match dscp 46` | Matches the DSCP value in the IPv4 and IPv6 packets.<br>**Note**<br>By default for the class map the value is match-all. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-cmap)# end` | Exits the class map configuration and returns to the privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 5** | **show class-map** *class-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show class-map class_map_name` | Verifies the class map details. |

# Configuring Policy Profile to Apply QoS Policy (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.

**Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, click the name of the policy profile.

**Step 3** In the **Edit Policy Profile** window, click the **QoS and AVC** tab.

**Step 4** Under **QoS SSID Policy**, choose the appropriate **Ingress** and **Egress** policies for WLANs.

**Note**
The ingress policies can be differentiated from the egress policies by the suffix *-up*. For example, the Platinum ingress policy is named *platinum-up*.

**Step 5** Under **QoS Client Policy**, choose the appropriate **Ingress** and **Egress** policies for clients.

**Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

**Note**
Only custom policies are displayed under **QoS Client Policy**. AutoQoS policies are auto generated and not displayed for user selection.

# Configuring Policy Profile to Apply QoS Policy (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy qostest` | Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **service-policy client** {**input** \| **output**} *policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy client input policy-map-client` | Applies the policy. The following options are available.<br>• **input**—Assigns the client policy for ingress direction on the policy profile.<br>• **output**—Assigns the client policy for egress direction on the policy profile. |
| **Step 4** | **service-policy** {**input** \| **output**} *policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy input policy-map-ssid` | Applies the policy to the BSSID. The following options are available.<br>• **input**—Assigns the policy-map to all clients in WLAN.<br>• **output**—Assigns the policy-map to all clients in WLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Enables the wireless policy profile. |

# Applying Policy Profile to Policy Tag (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Tags**.

**Step 2** On the **Manage Tags** page in the **Policy** tab, click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Add Policy Tag** window that is displayed, enter a name and description for the policy tag.

**Step 4** Map the required WLAN IDs and WLAN profiles with appropriate policy profiles.

**Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Applying Policy Profile to Policy Tag (CLI)

**Procedure**

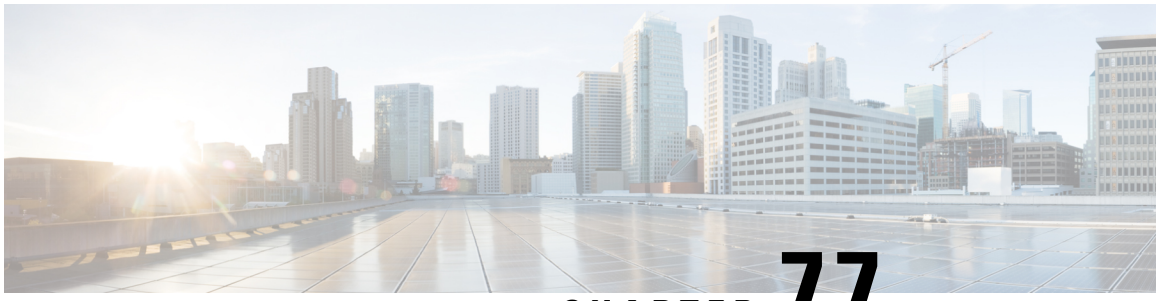
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless tag policy** *policy-tag-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# wireless tag policy qostag` | Configures policy tag and enters the policy tag configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **wlan** *wlan-name* **policy** *profile-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan test policy qostest` | Maps a policy profile to a WLAN profile. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# end` | Saves the configuration and exits the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 5** | **show wireless tag policy summary**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wireless tag policy summary` | Displays the configured policy tags.<br>**Note**<br>To view the detailed information of a policy tag, use the **show wireless tag policy detailed** *policy-tag-name* command. |

# Attaching Policy Tag to an AP

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ap** *mac-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap F866.F267.7DFB` | Configures Cisco APs and enters the ap profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **policy-tag** *policy-tag-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-tag)# policy-tag qostag` | Maps a Policy tag to the AP. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-tag)# end` | Saves the configuration and exits the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 5** | **show ap tag summary**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show ap tag summary` | Displays the ap details and tags associated to it. |



CHAPTER 77

# Wireless Auto-QoS


- Information About Auto QoS, on page 715
- How to Configure Wireless AutoQoS, on page 716


# Information About Auto QoS

Wireless Auto QoS automates deployment of wireless QoS features. It has a set of predefined profiles which can be further modified by the customer to prioritize different traffic flows. Auto-QoS matches traffic and assigns each matched packet to qos-groups. This allows the output policy map to put specific qos-groups into specific queues, including into the priority queue.

### AutoQoS Policy Configuration

*Table 43: AutoQoS Policy Configuration*

| Mode | Client Ingress | Client Egress | BSSID Ingress | BSSID Egress | Port Ingress | Port Egress | Radio |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Voice | N/A | N/A | P3 | P4 | N/A | P7 | ACM on |
| Guest | N/A | N/A | P5 | P6 | N/A | P7 | |
| Fastlane | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | P7 | edca-parameters fastlane |
| Enterprise-avc | N/A | N/A | P1 | P2 | N/A | P7 | |

| | |
|---|---|
| P1 | AutoQos-4.0-wlan-ET-SSID-Input-AVC-Policy |
| P2 | AutoQos-4.0-wlan-ET-SSID-Output-Policy |
| P3 | platinum-up |
| P4 | platinum |
| P5 | AutoQos-4.0-wlan-GT-SSID-Input-Policy |
| P6 | AutoQos-4.0-wlan-GT-SSID-Output-Policy |

| | |
|---|---|
| P7 | AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Port-Output-Policy |

# How to Configure Wireless AutoQoS

## Configuring Wireless AutoQoS on Profile Policy

You can enable AutoQoS on a profile policy.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless autoqos policy-profile** *policy-name* **mode { enterprise-avc \| fastlane \| guest \| voice}**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wireless autoqos policy-profile test-profile mode voice` | Configures AutoQoS wireless policy.<br>• **enterprise-avc**—Enables AutoQoS Wireless Enterprise AVC Policy.<br>• **fastlane**—Enable AutoQoS Wireless Fastlane Policy.<br>• **guest**—Enable AutoQoS Wireless Guest Policy.<br>• **voice**—Enable AutoQoS Wireless Voice Policy.<br>**Note**<br>AutoQoS MIB attribute does not support full functionality with service policy. Service policy must be configured manually. Currently, there is only support for AutoQoS mode. |

### What to do next

**Note** After enabling AutoQoS, we recommend that you wait for a few seconds for the policy to install and then try and modify the AutoQoS policy maps if required; or retry if the modification is rejected.

## Disabling Wireless AutoQoS

To globally disable Wireless AutoQoS:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# shutdown` | Shuts down the policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless autoqos disable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wireless autoqos disable` | Globally disables wireless AutoQoS. |
| **Step 4** | **[no] shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# no shutdown` | Enables the wireless policy profile.<br>**Note**<br>Disabling Auto QoS does not reset global radio configurations like CAC and EDCA parameters. |

# Rollback AutoQoS Configuration (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Services** > **QoS**.

**Step 2** Click **Disable AutoQoS**.

**Step 3** Click **Yes** to confirm.

# Rollback AutoQoS Configuration

**Before you begin**

**Note** AutoQoS MIB attribute does not support the full functionality with service policy. Currently, there is only support for AutoQoS mode. Service policy must be configured manually.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **clear platform software autoqos config template { enterprise_avc \| guest}**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# clear platform software autoqos config template guest` | Resets AutoQoS configuration.<br>• enterprise-avc—Resets AutoQoS Enterprise AVC Policy Template.<br>• guest—Resets AutoQoS Guest Policy Template. |

# Clearing Wireless AutoQoS Policy Profile (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.
**Step 2** Click on the **Policy Profile Name**.
**Step 3** Go to **QOS and AVC** tab.
**Step 4** From the **Auto Qos** drop-down list, choose **None**.
**Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Clearing Wireless AutoQoS Policy Profile

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# shutdown` | Shuts down the policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless autoqos policy-profile** *policy-name* **mode clear** | Clears the configured AutoQoS wireless policy. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | **Example:**<br>`Device# wireless autoqos policy-profile test-profile mode clear` | |
| **Step 4** | **[no] shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`no shutdown` | Enables the wireless policy profile. |

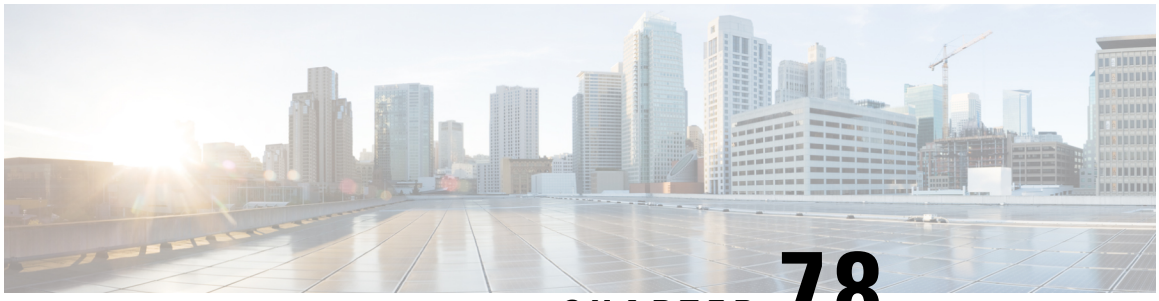
# Viewing AutoQoS on policy profile

### Before you begin

AutoQoS is supported on the local mode and flex mode. AutoQoS configures a set of policies and radio configurations depending on the template. It is possible to override the service-policy that is configured by AutoQoS. The latest configuration takes effect, with AAA override policy being of highest priority.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Deviceenable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **show wireless profile policy detailed** *policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wireless profile policy detailed testqos` | Shows policy-profile detailed parameters. |



CHAPTER 78

# Native Profiling


- Information About Native Profiling, on page 721
- Creating a Class Map (GUI), on page 722
- Creating a Class Map (CLI), on page 722
- Creating a Service Template (GUI), on page 724
- Creating a Service Template (CLI), on page 725
- Creating a Parameter Map, on page 726
- Creating a Policy Map (GUI), on page 726
- Creating a Policy Map (CLI), on page 727
- Configuring Native Profiling in Local Mode, on page 729
- Verifying Native Profile Configuration, on page 729


## Information About Native Profiling

You can profile devices based on HTTP and DHCP to identify the end devices on the network. You can configure device-based policies and enforce these policies per user or per device policy on the network.

Policies allow profiling of mobile devices and basic onboarding of the profiled devices to a specific VLAN. They also assign ACL and QoS or configure session timeouts.

You can configure policies as two separate components:

- Defining policy attributes as service templates that are specific to clients joining the network and applying policy match criteria
- Applying match criteria to the policy.

**Note** Before proceeding with the native profile configuration, ensure that HTTP Profiling and DHCP Profiling are enabled.

To configure Native Profiling, use one of the following procedures:

- Create a service template
- Create a class map

**Note** You can apply a service template using either a class map or parameter map.

- Create a parameter-map and associate the service template to parameter-map
  - Create a policy map
    1. If class-map has to be used: Associate the class-map to the policy-map and associate the service-template to the class-map.
    2. If parameter-map has to be used: Associate the parameter-map to the policy-map
  - Associate the policy-map to the policy profile.

# Creating a Class Map (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Click **Configuration** > **Services** > **QoS**.
**Step 2** In the **QoS – Policy** area, click **Add** to create a new QoS Policy or click the one you want to edit.
**Step 3** Add **Add Class Map** and enter the details.
**Step 4** Click **Save**.
**Step 5** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.

# Creating a Class Map (CLI)

**Note** Configuration of class maps via CLI offer more options and can be more granular than GUI.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **class-map type control subscriber match-any** *class-map-name* | Specifies the class map type and name. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | **Example:**<br>`Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-any cls_user` | |
| **Step 3** | **match username** *username*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match username ciscoise` | Specifies the class map attribute filter criteria. |
| **Step 4** | **class-map type control subscriber match-any** *class-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-any cls_userrole` | Specifies the class map type and name. |
| **Step 5** | **match user-role** *user-role*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match user-role engineer` | Specifies the class map attribute filter criteria. |
| **Step 6** | **class-map type control subscriber match-any** *class-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-any cls_oui` | Specifies the class map type and name. |
| **Step 7** | **match oui** *oui-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match oui 48.f8.b3` | Specifies the class map attribute filter criteria. |
| **Step 8** | **class-map type control subscriber match-any** *class-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-any cls_mac` | Specifies the class map type and name. |
| **Step 9** | **match mac-address** *mac-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match mac-address 0040.96b9.4a0d` | Specifies the class map attribute filter criteria. |
| **Step 10** | **class-map type control subscriber match-any** *class-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-any cls_devtype` | Specifies the class map type and name. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 11** | **match device-type** *device-type*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match device-type windows` | Specifies the class map attribute filter criteria. |
| **Step 12** | **match join-time-of-day** *start-time end-time*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match join-time-of-day 10:30 12:30` | Specifies a match to the time of day.<br>Here, join time is considered for matching. For example, if the match filter is set from 11:00 am to 2:00 pm, a device joining at 10:59 am is not considered, even if it acquires credentials after 11:00 am.<br>Here,<br>*start-time* and *end-time* specifies the 24-hour format.<br>Use the **show class-map type control subscriber name** *name* command to verify the configuration.<br>**Note**<br>You should also disable AAA override for this command to work. |

# Creating a Service Template (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Local Policy**.

**Step 2** On the **Local Policy** page, **Service Template** tab, click **ADD**.

**Step 3** In the **Create Service Template** window, enter the following parameters:

- **Service Template Name:** Enter a name for the template.
- **VLAN ID:** Enter the VLAN ID for the template. Valid range is between 1 and 4094.
- **Session Timeout (secs):** Sets the timeout duration for the template. Valid range is between 1 and 65535.
- **Access Control List:** Choose the Access Control List from the drop-down list.
- **Ingress QOS:** Choose the input QoS policy for the client from the drop-down list
- **Egress QOS:** Choose the output QoS policy for the client from the drop-down list.

**Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Creating a Service Template (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **service-template** *service-template-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# service-template svc1` | Enters service template configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **access-group** *access-list-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-service-template)# access-group acl-auto` | Specifies the access list to be applied. |
| **Step 4** | **vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-service-template)# vlan 10` | Specifies VLAN ID. Valid range is from 1-4094. |
| **Step 5** | **absolute-timer** *timer*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-service-template)# absolute-timer 1000` | Specifies session timeout value for a service template. Valid range is from 1-65535. |
| **Step 6** | **service-policy qos input** *qos-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-service-template)# service-policy qos input in_qos` | Configures an input QoS policy for the client. |
| **Step 7** | **service-policy qos output** *qos-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-service-template)# service-policy qos output out_qos` | Configures an output QoS policy for the client. |

# Creating a Parameter Map

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **parameter-map type subscriber attribute-to-service** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# parameter-map type subscriber attribute-to-service param` | Specifies the parameter map type and name. |
| **Step 3** | *map-index***map device-type eq***filter-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-parameter-map-filter)# 1 map device-type eq "windows" mac-address eq 3c77.e602.2f91 username eq "cisco"` | Specifies the parameter map attribute filter criteria. Multiple filters are used in the example provided here. |
| **Step 4** | *map-index***service-template***service-template-name* **precedence** *precedence-num*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-parameter-map-filter-submode)# 1 service-template svc1 precedence 150` | Specifies the service template and its precedence. |

# Creating a Policy Map (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Local Policy** > **Policy Map** tab..

**Step 2** Enter a name for the Policy Map in the **Policy Map Name** text field.

**Step 3** Click **Add**

**Step 4** Choose the service template from the **Service Template** drop-down list.

**Step 5** For the following parameters select the type of filter from the drop-down list and enter the required match criteria

- Device Type
- User Role

- User Name
- OUI
- MAC Address

**Step 6** Click **Add Criteria**

**Step 7** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Creating a Policy Map (CLI)

### Before you begin

Before removing a policy map or parameter map, you should remove it from the target or shut down the WLAN profile or delete the session.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **policy-map type control subscriber** *policy-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# policy-map type control subscriber polmap5` | Specifies the policy map type. |
| **Step 3** | **event identity-update match-all**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-event-control-policymap)# event identity-update match-all` | Specifies the match criteria to the policy map. |
| **Step 4** | You can apply a service template using either a class map or a parameter map, as shown here.<br>• *class-num* **class** *class-map-name* **do-until-failure**<br>• *action-index* **activate service-template** *service-template-name*<br>• *action-index* **map attribute-to-service table** *parameter-map-name*<br>**Example:**<br>The following example shows how a class-map with a service-template has to be applied: | Configures the local profiling policy class map number and specifies how to perform the action or activates the service template or maps an identity-update attribute to an auto-configured template. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-class-control-policymap)# 10 class cls_mac do-until-failure`<br>`Device(config-action-control-policymap)# 10 activate service-template svc1`<br>**Example:**<br>The following example shows how a parameter map has to be applied (service template is already associated with the parameter map 'param' while creating it):<br>`Device(config-action-control-policymap)#1 map attribute-to-service table param` | |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-action-control-policymap)# end` | Exits configuration mode. |
| **Step 6** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 7** | **wireless profile policy** *wlan-policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy wlan-policy-profilename` | Configures a wireless policy profile.<br>**Caution**<br>Do not configure aaa-override for native profiling under a named wireless profile policy. Native profiling is applied at a lower priority than AAA policy. If aaa-override is enabled, the AAA policies will override native profile policy. |
| **Step 8** | **description** *profile-policy-description*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# description "default policy profile"` | Adds a description for the policy profile. |
| **Step 9** | **dhcp-tlv-caching**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# dhcp-tlv-caching` | Configures DHCP TLV caching on a WLAN. |
| **Step 10** | **http-tlv-caching**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# http-tlv-caching` | Configures client HTTP TLV caching on a WLAN. |
| **Step 11** | **subscriber-policy-name** *policy-name*<br>**Example:** | Configures the subscriber policy name. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wireless-policy)# subscriber-policy-name polmap5` | |
| **Step 12** | **vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 1` | Configures a VLAN name or VLAN ID. |
| **Step 13** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Saves the configuration. |

# Configuring Native Profiling in Local Mode

To configure native profiling in the local mode, you must follow the steps described in #unique_917. In the policy profile, you must enable central switching as described in the step given below in order to configure native profiling.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **central switching**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching` | Enables central switching. |

# Verifying Native Profile Configuration

Use the following **show** commands to verify the native profile configuartion:

```
Device# show wireless client device summary

Active classified device summary
MAC Address       Device-type                      User-role
Protocol-map
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1491.82b8.f94b    Microsoft-Workstation            sales
          9
1491.82bc.2fd5    Windows7-Workstation             sales
          41


Device# show wireless client device cache

Cached classified device info

MAC Address       Device-type                      User-role
Protocol-map
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
2477.031b.aa18    Microsoft-Workstation
           9
30a8.db3b.a753    Un-Classified Device
           9
4400.1011.e8b5    Un-Classified Device
           9
980c.a569.7dd0    Un-Classified Device
```

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 4c34.8845.e32c detail | s
Session Manager:
  Interface :
  IIF ID            : 0x90000002
  Device Type       : Microsoft-Workstation
  Protocol Map      : 0x000009
  Authorized        : TRUE
  Session timeout   : 1800
  Common Session ID: 783802090000000174BF2B5B9
  Acct Session ID   : 0
  Auth Method Status List
   Method : MAB
    SM State         : TERMINATE
    Authen Status    : Success
  Local Polices:
   Service Template : wlan_svc_C414.3CCA.0A51 (priority 254)
    Absolute-Timer   : 1800
  Server Polices:
  Resultant Policies:
  Filter-ID         : acl-auto
  Input QOS         : in_qos
  Output QOS        : out_qos
  Idle timeout      : 60 sec
  VLAN               : 10
  Absolute-Timer    : 1000
```

Use the following **show** command to verify the class map details for a class map name:

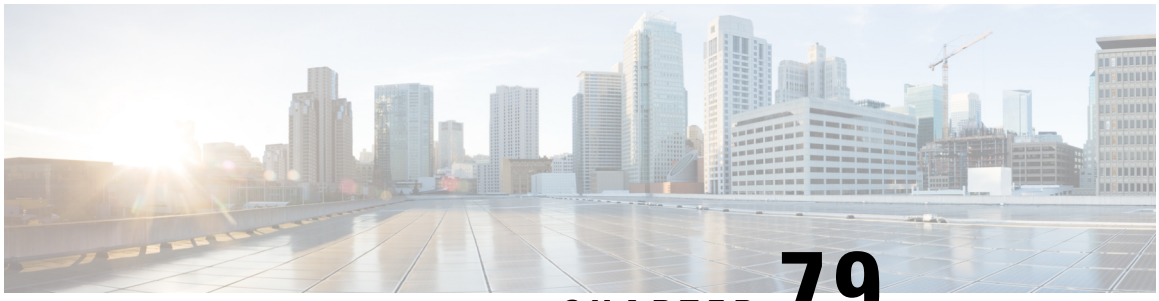
```
Device# show class-map type control subscriber name test
Class-map               Action                        Exec  Hit  Miss  Comp
---------                ------                       ----  ---  ----   ---
match-any test     match day Monday                     0     0    0     0
match-any test     match join-time-of-day 8:00 18:00    0     0    0     0
Key:
  "Exec" - The number of times this line was executed
  "Hit"  - The number of times this line evaluated to TRUE
  "Miss" - The number of times this line evaluated to FALSE
  "Comp" - The number of times this line completed the execution of its
       condition without a need to continue on to the end
```



PART X

# IPv6


- IPv6 Client Address Learning, on page 733
- IPv6 ACL, on page 743
- IPv6 Ready Certification, on page 753



CHAPTER 79

# IPv6 Client Address Learning


- Information About IPv6 Client Address Learning, on page 733
- Prerequisites for IPv6 Client Address Learning, on page 736
- Configuring IPv6 on Embedded Wireless Controller Interface, on page 736
- Native IPv6, on page 737


# Information About IPv6 Client Address Learning

Client Address Learning is configured on embedded wireless controller to learn the IPv4 and IPv6 address of wireless client, and the client's transition state maintained by the embedded wireless controller on association and timeout.

There are three ways for an IPv6 client to acquire IPv6 addresses:

- Stateless Address Auto-Configuration (SLAAC)
- Stateful DHCPv6
- Static Configuration

In all of these methods, the IPv6 client always sends a neighbor solicitation Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) request to ensure that there is no duplicate IP address on the network. The embedded wireless controller snoops on the Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) and DHCPv6 packets of the client to learn about its client IP addresses.

## Address Assignment Using SLAAC

The most common method for IPv6 client address assignment is SLAAC, which provides simple plug-and-play connectivity, where clients self-assign an address based on the IPv6 prefix.

SLAAC is configured as follows:

- A host sends a Router Solicitation message.
- The host waits for a Router Advertisement message.
- The host take the first 64 bits of the IPv6 prefix from the Router Advertisement message and combines it with the 64 bit EUI-64 address (in the case of Ethernet, this is created from the MAC address) to create a global unicast message. The host also uses the source IP address, in the IP header, of the Router Advertisement message, as its default gateway.

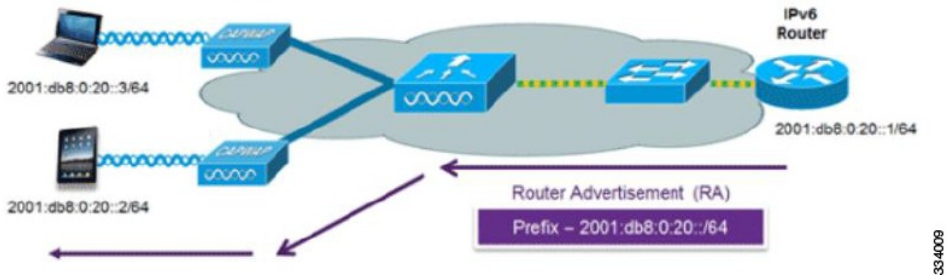
- Duplicate Address Detection is performed by the IPv6 clients to ensure that random addresses that are picked do not collide with other clients.

**Note** The choice of algorithm is up to the client and is often configurable.

The last 64 bits of the IPv6 address can be learned by using one of the following algorithms:

- EUI-64, which is based on the MAC address of the interface
- Private addresses that are randomly generated

***Figure 11: Address Assignment Using SLAAC***




The following Cisco IOS configuration commands from a Cisco-capable IPv6 router are used to enable SLAAC addressing and router advertisements:

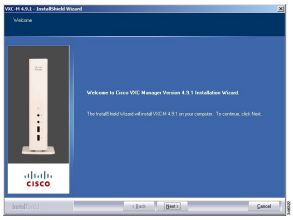
```
ipv6 unicast-routing
interface Vlan20
description IPv6-SLAAC
ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0
ipv6 address FE80:DB8:0:20::1 linklocal
ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:20::1/64
ipv6 enable
end
```

# Stateful DHCPv6 Address Assignment

The use of DHCPv6 is not required for IPv6 client connectivity if SLAAC is already deployed. There are two modes of operation for DHCPv6, that is, Stateless and Stateful.

The DHCPv6 Stateless mode is used to provide clients with additional network information that is not available in the router advertisement, but not an IPv6 address, becuase this is already provided by SLAAC. This information includes the DNS domain name, DNS servers, and other DHCP vendor-specific options.

***Figure 12: Stateful DHCPv6 Address Assignment***



The following interface configuration is for a Cisco IOS IPv6 router implementing stateless DHCPv6 with SLAAC enabled:

```
ipv6 unicast-routing
ipv6 dhcp pool IPV6_DHCPPOOL
address prefix 2001:db8:5:10::/64
domain-name cisco.com
dns-server 2001:db8:6:6::1
interface Vlan20
description IPv6-DHCP-Stateless
ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0
ipv6 nd other-config-flag
ipv6 dhcp server IPV6_DHCPPOOL
ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:20::1/64
end
```

# Static IP Address Assignment

Statically configured address on a client.

# Router Solicitation

A Router Solicitation message is issued by a host controller to facilitate local routers to transmit a Router Advertisement from which the controller can obtain information about local routing, or perform stateless auto configuration. Router Advertisements are transmitted periodically and the host prompts with an immediate Router Advertisement using a Router Solicitation such as - when it boots or following a restart operation.

# Router Advertisement

A Router Advertisement message is issued periodically by a router or in response to a Router Solicitation message from a host. The information contained in these messages is used by a host to perform stateless auto configuration and to modify its routing table.

# Neighbor Discovery

IPv6 Neighbor Discovery is a set of messages and processes that determine relationships between neighboring nodes. Neighbor Discovery replaces the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP), Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) Router Discovery, and ICMP Redirect used in IPv4.

IPv6 Neighbor Discovery inspection analyzes neighbor discovery messages in order to build a trusted binding table database, and IPv6 Neighbor Discovery packets that do not comply, are dropped. The neighbor binding table in the tracks each IPv6 address and its associated MAC address. Clients are removed from the table according to neighbor-binding timers.

# Neighbor Discovery Suppression

The IPv6 addresses of wireless clients are cached by a device. When the device receives an NS multicast looking for an IPv6 address, and if the target address is known to the device and belongs to one of its clients, the device will reply with an NA message on behalf of the client. At the end of this process, the equivalent of the ARP table of IPv4 is generated, but is more efficient because it uses fewer messages.

**Note** The device acts as a proxy and responds with NA, only when the **ipv6 nd suppress** command is configured.

If the device does not have the IPv6 address of a wireless client, the device does not respond with NA; instead, it forwards the NS packet to the wireless side. To resolve this, an NS Multicast Forwarding knob is provided. If this knob is enabled, the device gets the NS packet for the IPv6 address that it does not have (cache miss) and forwards it to the wireless side. This packet reaches the intended wireless client, and the client replies with NA.

Note that this cache miss scenario occurs rarely, and only very few clients who do not implement complete IPv6 stack may not advertise their IPv6 address during NDP.

## Router Advertisement Guard

- Port on which the frame is received
- IPv6 source address
- Prefix list
- Trusted or Untrusted ports for receiving the router advertisement guard messages
- Trusted/Untrusted IPv6 source addresses of the router advertisement sender
- Trusted/Untrusted Prefix list and Prefix ranges
- Router preference

## Router Advertisement Throttling

RA throttling allows the controller to enforce limits to the RA packets headed toward the wireless network. By enabling RA throttling, routers that send multiple RA packets can be trimmed to a minimum frequency that will still maintain an IPv6 client connectivity. If a client sends an RS packet, an RA is sent back to the client. This RA is allowed through the controller and unicast to the client. This process ensures that the new clients or roaming clients are not affected by the RA throttling.

# Prerequisites for IPv6 Client Address Learning

Before configuring IPv6 client address learning, configure the embedded wireless controller clients to support IPv6.

# Configuring IPv6 on Embedded Wireless Controller Interface

Follow the procedure given below to configure IPv6 on an interface:

### Before you begin

Enable IPv6 on the client and IPv6 support on the wired infrastructure.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **interface GigabitEthernet0**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0` | Creates the GigabitEthernet interface and enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **ip address fe80::1 link-local**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.0`<br>`Device(config-if)# ipv6 address fe80::1 link-local`<br>`Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:1:FFFF:1234::5/64`<br>`Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:0:E000::F/64` | Configures IPv6 address on the GigabitEthernet interface using the link-local option. |
| **Step 5** | **ipv6 enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ipv6 enable` | (Optional) Enables IPv6 on the GigabitEthernet interface. |
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Exits interface mode. |

# Native IPv6

## Information About IPv6

IPv6 is a packet-based protocol used to exchange data, voice, and video traffic over digital networks. IPv6 is based on IP, but with a much larger address space, and improvements such as a simplified main header and extension headers. The architecture of IPv6 has been designed to allow existing IPv4 users to transition easily

to IPv6 while continuing to use services such as end-to-end security, quality of service (QoS), and globally unique addresses. The larger IPv6 address space allows networks to scale and provide global reachability.

**Note** The features and functions that work on IPv4 networks with IPv4 addresses also work on IPv6 networks with IPv6 addresses.

### General Guidelines

- You must configure the **ipv6 unicast-routing** command on the embedded wireless controller for the IPv6 feature to work.
- The Wireless Management interface should have only one static IPv6 address.
- Router advertisement should be suppressed on the wireless management interface and client VLANs (if IPv6 is configured on the client VLAN).
- Preferred mode is part of an AP join profile. When you configure the preferred mode as IPv6, an AP attempts to join over IPv6 first. If it fails, the AP falls back to IPv4.
- You should use MAC addresses for RA tracing of APs and clients.

### Unsupported Features

- UDP Lite is not supported.
- AP sniffer over IPv6 is not supported.
- IPv6 is not supported for the HA port interface.
- Auto RF grouping over IPv6 is not supported. Only static RF grouping is supported.

# Configuring IPv6 Addressing

Follow the procedure given below to configure IPv6 addressing:

**Note** All the features and functions that work on IPv4 networks with IPv4 addresses will work on IPv6 networks with IPv6 addresses too.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ipv6 unicast-routing**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ipv6 unicast-routing` | Configures IPv6 for unicasting. |
| **Step 3** | **interface GigabitEthernet0**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0` | Creates the GigabitEthernet interface and enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **ipv6 address** *ipv6-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ipv6 address FD09:9:2:49::53/64` | Specifies a global IPv6 address. |
| **Step 5** | **ipv6 enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ipv6 enable` | Enables IPv6 on the interface. |
| **Step 6** | **ipv6 nd ra suppress all**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd ra suppress all` | Suppresses IPv6 router advertisement transmissions on the interface. |
| **Step 7** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |
| **Step 8** | **wireless management interface gigabitEthernet** *gigabitEthernet-interface-vlan 64*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless management interface gigabitEthernet vlan 64` | Configures the ports that are connected to the supported APs with the wireless management interface. |
| **Step 9** | **ipv6 route** *ipv6-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ipv6 route ::/0 FD09:9:2:49::1` | Specifies IPv6 static routes. |

# Creating an AP Join Profile (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **AP Join**.

**Step 2** On the **AP Join Profile** window, click the **General** tab and click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Name** field enter, a name for the AP join profile.

**Step 4** (Optional) Enter a description for the AP join profile.

**Step 5** Choose **CAPWAP** > **Advanced**.

**Step 6** Under the **Advanced** tab, from the **Preferred Mode** drop-down list, choose **IPv6**. This sets the preferred mode of APs as IPv6.

**Step 7** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Creating an AP Join Profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *ap-profile*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile` | Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **description** *ap-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# description "xyz ap profile"` | Adds a description for the AP profile. |
| **Step 4** | **preferred-mode ipv6**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# preferred-mode ipv6` | Sets the preferred mode of APs as IPv6. |

# Configuring the Primary and Backup Embedded Wireless Controller (GUI)

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an AP join profile prior to configuring the primary and backup embedded wireless controllers.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **AP Join**.

**Step 2** On the **AP Join Profile** window, click the AP join profile name.

**Step 3** In the **Edit AP Join Profile** window, click the **CAPWAP** tab.

**Step 4** In the **High Availability** tab, under **Backup Controller Configuration**, check the **Enable Fallback** check box.

**Step 5** Enter the primary and secondary controller names and IP addresses.

**Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Primary and Backup Controller (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure the primary and secondary controllers for a selected AP:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile yy-ap-profile` | Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **capwap backup primary** *primary-controller-name primary-controller-ip*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# capwap backup primary WLAN-Controller-A 2001:DB8:1::1` | Configures AP CAPWAP parameters with the primary backup controller's name.<br>**Note**<br>You need to enable fast heartbeat for **capwap backup primary** and **capwap backup secondary** to work.<br>AP disconnection may occur if the link between the controller and AP is not reliable and fast heartbeat is enabled. |

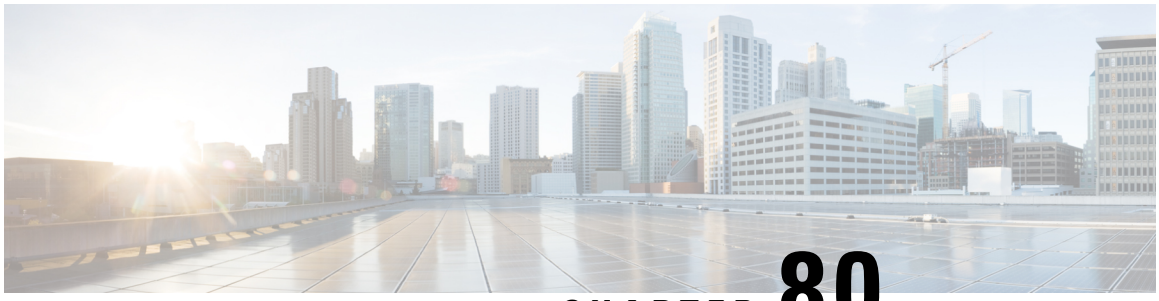
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **ap capwap backup secondary** *secondary-controller-name secondary-controller-ip*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# capwap backup secondary WLAN-Controller-B 2001:DB8:1::1` | Configures AP CAPWAP parameters with the secondary backup controller's name. |
| **Step 5** | **syslog host** *ipaddress*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# syslog host 2001:DB8:1::1` | Configures the system logging settings for the APs. |
| **Step 6** | **tftp-downgrade** *tftp-server-ip imagename*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# tftp-downgrade 2001:DB8:1::1 testimage` | Initiates AP image downgrade from a TFTP server for all the APs. |

# Verifying IPv6 Configuration

Use the following **show** command to verify the IPv6 configuration:

```
Device# show wireless interface summary

Interface Name   Interface Type VLAN ID IP Address   IP Netmask     NAT-IP Address   MAC
Address
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
GigabitEthernet0 Management     0       0.0.0.0     255.255.255.0  0.0.0.0
d4c9.3ce6.b854
                                      fd09:9:2:49::54/64
```



CHAPTER 80

# IPv6 ACL


- Information About IPv6 ACL, on page 743
- Prerequisites for Configuring IPv6 ACL, on page 744
- Restrictions for Configuring IPv6 ACL, on page 744
- Configuring IPv6 ACLs , on page 745
- How To Configure an IPv6 ACL, on page 746
- Verifying IPv6 ACL, on page 749
- Configuration Examples for IPv6 ACL, on page 750


# Information About IPv6 ACL

An access control list (ACL) is a set of rules used to limit access to a particular interface (for example, if you want to restrict a wireless client from pinging the management interface of the embedded wireless controller). ACLs are configured on the devicend applied to the management interface, the AP-manager interface, any of the dynamic interfaces, or a WLAN to control data traffic to and from wireless clients or to the embedded wireless controller central processing unit (CPU) to control all traffic destined for the CPU.

You can also create a preauthentication ACL for web authentication. Such an ACL is used to allow certain types of traffic before authentication is complete.

IPv6 ACLs support the same options as IPv4 ACLs including source, destination, source and destination ports.

**Note** You can enable only IPv4 traffic in your network by blocking IPv6 traffic. That is, you can configure an IPv6 ACL to deny all IPv6 traffic and apply it on specific or all WLANs.

## Understanding IPv6 ACLs

## Types of ACL

### Per User IPv6 ACL

For the per-user ACL, the full access control entries (ACE) as the text strings are configured on the Cisco Secure Access Control Server (Cisco Secure ACS).

The ACE is not configured on the Controller Embedded Wireless Controller. The ACE is sent to the device in the `ACCESS-Accept` attribute and applies it directly for the client. When a wireless client roams into an foreign device, the ACEs are sent to the foreign device as an AAA attribute in the mobility Handoff message. Output direction, using per-user ACL is not supported.

### Filter ID IPv6 ACL

For the filter-Id ACL, the full ACEs and the `acl name(filter-id)` is configured on the device and only the `filter-id` is configured on the Cisco Secure ACS.

The `filter-id` is sent to the device in the ACCESS-Accept attribute, and the device looks up the filter-id for the ACEs, and then applies the ACEs to the client. When the client L2 roams to the foreign device, only the filter-id is sent to the foreign device in the mobility Handoff message. Output filtered ACL, using per-user ACL is not supported. The foreign device has to configure the filter-id and ACEs beforehand.

### Downloadable IPv6 ACL

For the downloadable ACL (dACL), all the full ACEs and the `dacl` name are configured only on the Cisco Secure ACS.

The Cisco Secure ACS sends the `dacl` name to the device in its `ACCESS-Accept` attribute, which takes the `dacl` name and sends the `dACL` name back to the Cisco Secure ACS for the ACEs, using the `ACCESS-request` attribute.

## Prerequisites for Configuring IPv6 ACL

You can filter IP Version 6 (IPv6) traffic by creating IPv6 access control lists (ACLs) and applying them to interfaces similarly to the way that you create and apply IP Version 4 (IPv4) named ACLs. You can also create and apply input router ACLs to filter Layer 3 management traffic when the switch is running the Network Essentials license.

## Restrictions for Configuring IPv6 ACL

With IPv4, you can configure standard and extended numbered IP ACLs, named IP ACLs, and MAC ACLs. IPv6 supports only named ACLs.

The device supports most of the Cisco IOS-supported IPv6 ACLs with some exceptions:

- The device does not support matching on these keywords: **flowlabel**, **routing header**, and **undetermined-transport**.
- The device does not support reflexive ACLs (the **reflect** keyword).
- The device does not apply MAC-based ACLs on IPv6 frames.
- When configuring an ACL, there is no restriction on keywords entered in the ACL, regardless of whether or not they are supported on the platform. When you apply the ACL to an interface that requires hardware forwarding (physical ports or SVIs), the device checks to determine whether or not the ACL can be supported on the interface. If not, attaching the ACL is rejected.

- If an ACL is applied to an interface and you attempt to add an access control entry (ACE) with an unsupported keyword, the device does not allow the ACE to be added to the ACL that is currently attached to the interface

# Configuring IPv6 ACLs

Follow the procedure given below to filter IPv6 traffic:

1. Create an IPv6 ACL, and enter IPv6 access list configuration mode.
2. Configure the IPv6 ACL to block (deny) or pass (permit) traffic.
3. Apply the IPv6 ACL to the interface where the traffic needs to be filtered.
4. Apply the IPv6 ACL to an interface. For router ACLs, you must also configure an IPv6 address on the Layer 3 interface to which the ACL is applied.

## Default IPv6 ACL Configuration

There are no IPv6 ACLs configured or applied.

## Interaction with Other Features and Switches

- If an IPv6 router ACL is configured to deny a packet, the packet is not routed. A copy of the packet is sent to the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) queue to generate an ICMP unreachable message for the frame.
- If a bridged frame is to be dropped due to a port ACL, the frame is not bridged.
- You can create both IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs on a switch or switch stack, and you can apply both IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs to the same interface. Each ACL must have a unique name; an error message appears if you try to use a name that is already configured.

  You use different commands to create IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs and to attach IPv4 or IPv6 ACLs to the same Layer 2 or Layer 3 interface. If you use the wrong command to attach an ACL (for example, an IPv4 command to attach an IPv6 ACL), you receive an error message.

- You cannot use MAC ACLs to filter IPv6 frames. MAC ACLs can only filter non-IP frames.
- If the hardware memory is full, for any additional configured ACLs, packets are dropped to the CPU, and the ACLs are applied in software. When the hardware is full a message is printed to the console indicating the ACL has been unloaded and the packets will be dropped on the interface.

# How To Configure an IPv6 ACL

## Creating an IPv6 ACL

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **ipv6 access-list** *acl_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ipv6 access-list access-list-name` | Use a name to define an IPv6 access list and enter IPv6 access-list configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **{deny\|permit} protocol**<br>**Example:**<br>`{deny \| permit} protocol {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length \| any \| host source-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] {destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length \| any \|host destination-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]][dscp value] [fragments][log] [log-input] [routing][sequence value] [time-range name]` | Enter deny or permit to specify whether to deny or permit the packet if conditions are matched. These are the conditions:<br>• For protocol, enter the name or number of an Internet protocol: ahp, esp, icmp, ipv6, pcp, stcp, tcp, or udp, or an integer in the range 0 to 255 representing an IPv6 protocol number.<br>• The source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length or destination-ipv6-prefix/ prefix-length is the source or destination IPv6 network or class of networks for which to set deny or permit conditions, specified in hexadecimal and using 16-bit values between colons (see RFC 2373).<br>• Enter any as an abbreviation for the IPv6 prefix ::/0.<br>• For host source-ipv6-address or destination-ipv6-address, enter the source or destination IPv6 host address for which to set deny or permit conditions, specified |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | in hexadecimal using 16-bit values between colons.<br>• (Optional) For operator, specify an operand that compares the source or destination ports of the specified protocol. Operands are lt (less than), gt (greater than), eq (equal), neq (not equal), and range.<br>If the operator follows the source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length argument, it must match the source port. If the operator follows the destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length argument, it must match the destination port.<br>• (Optional) The port-number is a decimal number from 0 to 65535 or the name of a TCP or UDP port. You can use TCP port names only when filtering TCP. You can use UDP port names only when filtering UDP.<br>• (Optional) Enter dscp value to match a differentiated services code point value against the traffic class value in the Traffic Class field of each IPv6 packet header. The acceptable range is from 0 to 63.<br>• (Optional) Enter fragments to check noninitial fragments. This keyword is visible only if the protocol is ipv6.<br>• (Optional) Enter log to cause an logging message to be sent to the console about the packet that matches the entry. Enter log-input to include the input interface in the log entry. Logging is supported only for router ACLs.<br>• (Optional) Enter routing to specify that IPv6 packets be routed.<br>• (Optional) Enter sequence value to specify the sequence number for the access list statement. The acceptable range is from 1 to 4294967295<br>• (Optional) Enter time-range name to specify the time range that applies to the deny or permit statement. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 5** | **{deny\|permit} tcp**<br>**Example:**<br>`{deny \| permit} tcp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length \| any \| hostsource-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]]{destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length \| any \|hostdestination-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]][ack] [dscp value][established] [fin] [log][log-input] [neq {port \|protocol}] [psh] [range{port \| protocol}] [rst][routing] [sequence value] [syn] [time-range name][urg]` | (Optional) Define a TCP access list and the access conditions.<br>Enter tcp for Transmission Control Protocol. The parameters are the same as those described in Step 3, with these additional optional parameters:<br>• ack—Acknowledgment bit set.<br>• established—An established connection. A match occurs if the TCP datagram has the ACK or RST bits set.<br>• fin—Finished bit set; no more data from sender.<br>• neq {port \| protocol}—Matches only packets that are not on a given port number.<br>• psh—Push function bit set.<br>• range {port \| protocol}—Matches only packets in the port number range.<br>• rst—Reset bit set.<br>• syn—Synchronize bit set.<br>• urg—Urgent pointer bit set. |
| **Step 6** | **{deny\|permit} udp**<br>**Example:**<br>`{deny \| permit} udp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length \| any \| hostsource-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]]{destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length \| any \| hostdestination-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]][dscp value] [log][log-input] [neq {port \|protocol}] [range {port \|protocol}] [routing][sequence value][time-range name]` | (Optional) Define a UDP access list and the access conditions.<br>Enter udp for the User Datagram Protocol. The UDP parameters are the same as those described for TCP, except that the operator [port]] port number or name must be a UDP port number or name, and the established parameter is not valid for UDP. |
| **Step 7** | **{deny\|permit} icmp**<br>**Example:**<br>`{deny \| permit} icmp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length \| any \| hostsource-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] {destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length \| any \| hostdestination-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]][icmp-type` | (Optional) Define an ICMP access list and the access conditions.<br>Enter icmp for Internet Control Message Protocol. The ICMP parameters are the same as those described for most IP protocols in Step 3a, with the addition of the ICMP message type and code parameters. These optional keywords have these meanings: |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `[icmp-code] \|icmp-message] [dscpvalue] [log] [log-input] [routing] [sequence value][time-range name]` | • icmp-type—Enter to filter by ICMP message type, a number from 0 to 255.<br>• icmp-code—Enter to filter ICMP packets that are filtered by the ICMP message code type, a number from 0 to 255.<br>• icmp-message—Enter to filter ICMP packets by the ICMP message type name or the ICMP message type and code name. To see a list of ICMP message type names and code names, use the ? key or see command reference for this release. |
| **Step 8** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |
| **Step 9** | **show ipv6 access-list**<br>**Example:**<br>`show ipv6 access-list` | Verify the access list configuration. |
| **Step 10** | **copy running-config startup-config**<br>**Example:**<br>`copy running-config startup-config` | (Optional) Save your entries in the configuration file. |

## Creating WLAN IPv6 ACL

# Verifying IPv6 ACL

## Displaying IPv6 ACLs

To display IPv6 ACLs, perform this procedure:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password if prompted. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **show access-list**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show access-lists` | Displays all access lists configured on the device |
| **Step 4** | **show ipv6 access-list** *acl_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show ipv6 access-list [access-list-name]` | Displays all configured IPv6 access list or the access list specified by name. |

# Configuration Examples for IPv6 ACL

## Example: Creating an IPv6 ACL

This example configures the IPv6 access list named CISCO. The first deny entry in the list denies all packets that have a destination TCP port number greater than 5000. The second deny entry denies packets that have a source UDP port number less than 5000. The second deny also logs all matches to the console. The first permit entry in the list permits all ICMP packets. The second permit entry in the list permits all other traffic. The second permit entry is necessary because an implicit deny -all condition is at the end of each IPv6 access list.

**Note** Logging is supported only on Layer 3 interfaces.

```
Device(config)# ipv6 access-list CISCO
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# deny tcp any any gt 5000
Device (config-ipv6-acl)# deny ::/0 lt 5000 ::/0 log
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit icmp any any
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit any any
```

## Example: Displaying IPv6 ACLs

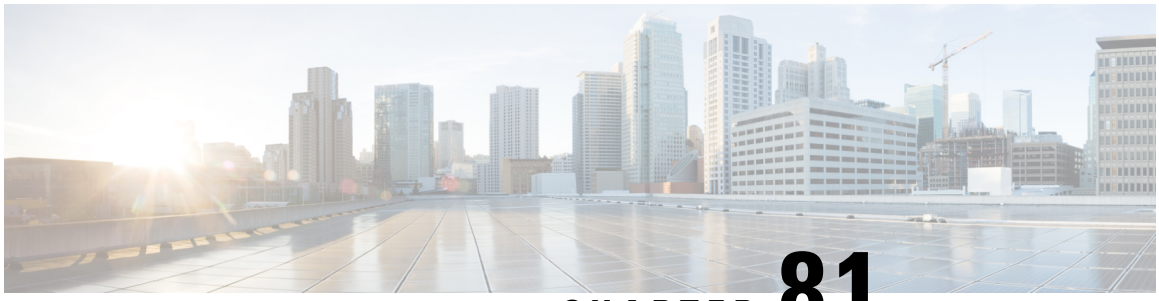
This is an example of the output from the **show access-lists** privileged EXEC command. The output shows all access lists that are configured on the switch or switch stack.

```
Device #show access-lists
Extended IP access list hello
10 permit ip any any
IPv6 access list ipv6
permit ipv6 any any sequence 10
```

This is an example of the output from the **show ipv6 access-lists** privileged EXEC command. The output shows only IPv6 access lists configured on the switch or switch stack.

```
Device# show ipv6 access-list
IPv6 access list inbound
permit tcp any any eq bgp (8 matches) sequence 10
permit tcp any any eq telnet (15 matches) sequence 20
permit udp any any sequence 30

IPv6 access list outbound
deny udp any any sequence 10
deny tcp any any eq telnet sequence 20
```



CHAPTER 81

# IPv6 Ready Certification


- Feature History for IPv6-Ready Certification, on page 753
- IPv6 Ready Certification, on page 753
- Configuring IPv6 Route Information, on page 754
- Verifying IPv6 Route Information, on page 754


## Feature History for IPv6-Ready Certification

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which it is introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 44: Feature History for IPv6-Ready Certification***

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1 | IPv6-Ready Certification | This feature is enhanced with the implementation of various IPv6 functionalities that are required to comply with the latest RFC specifications. |

## IPv6 Ready Certification

Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru, 17.6.1 has implemented various IPv6 functionalities that are required for compliance with the latest RFC specifications for IPv6 Ready Certification. The newly implemented IPv6 functionalities are:

- **Fragment Processing and Reassembly (RFC8200)**: The first fragment must contain the mandatory extension header up to the first upper level protocol (ULP) header as specified in RFC 8200.
- **Handling Atomic Fragments in Neighbor Discovery (RFC6980)**: Fragmented neighbor discovery packets must be dropped.
- **Packet too Big (RFC8201)**: Atomic fragmentation is not supported. Packets failing to meet the IPv6 MTU requirement of 1280 are dropped.

- **Route Information Options (RIO) in IPv6 Router Advertisements (RFC4191)**: A new RIO is added to the IPv6 Router Advertisement message for communicating specific routes from routers to hosts. Explicit route configuration ensures that only necessary routes are advertised to the hosts.
- **IPv6 Hop-by-Hop Processing (RFC 8200)**: This enhancement allows explicit configuration of the nodes, along the delivery path of the packets that require hop-by-hop options header processing.

# Configuring IPv6 Route Information

The Route Information Option (RIO) in the IPv6 router advertisement messages helps in communicating specific routes from routers to hosts. This improves a host's ability to pick up an appropriate default router, when the host is multihomed and the routers are on different links. The explicit route configuration ensures that only necessary routes are advertised to the hosts.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **interface** *interface*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1.1` | Specifies the interface and enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **ipv6 nd ra specific-route** *prefix/length* **lifetime** *lifetime/infinity* [**preference** *preference* ]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd ra specific-route 3::3/116 lifetime 11 preference medium` | Configures RIO in IPv6 router advertisement messages.<br>For more information, see the ipv6 nd ra specific route command. |

# Verifying IPv6 Route Information

To identify the specific routes that are sent in the router advertisements, use the following command:

```
Device# show ipv6 nd ra specific-route

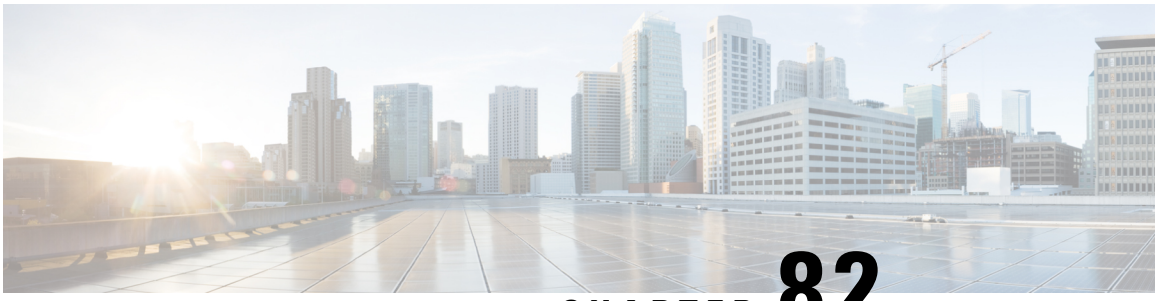
IPv6 Prefix/Length Lifetime Preference Interface
---------------------------------------- -------- ---------- ---------
1234::12/127 1000 High GigabitEthernet2
```



# PART XI

# CleanAir


- Cisco CleanAir, on page 757
- Spectrum Intelligence, on page 771



CHAPTER 82

# Cisco CleanAir


- Information About Cisco CleanAir, on page 757
- Prerequisites for CleanAir, on page 760
- Restrictions for CleanAir, on page 760
- How to Configure CleanAir, on page 761
- Verifying CleanAir Parameters, on page 768
- Configuration Examples for CleanAir, on page 769
- CleanAir FAQs, on page 770


# Information About Cisco CleanAir

Cisco CleanAir is a solution designed to proactively manage the challenges of a shared wireless spectrum. It allows you to see all the users of a shared spectrum (both native devices and foreign interferers). It also enables the network to act upon this information. For example, you can manually remove the interfering device, or the system can automatically change the channel away from the interference. CleanAir provides spectrum management and Radio Frequency (RF) visibility.

A Cisco CleanAir system consists of CleanAir-enabled access points. These access points collect information about all the devices that operate in the industrial, scientific, and medical (ISM) bands, identify and evaluate the information as a potential interference source, and forward it to the embedded wireless controller. The controller embedded wireless controller controls the access points.

For every device operating in the unlicensed band, Cisco CleanAir provides information about what it is, how it is impacting your wireless network, and what actions you or your network should take. It simplifies RF.

Wireless LAN systems operate in unlicensed 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz ISM bands. Many devices, such as microwave ovens, cordless phones, and Bluetooth devices also operate in these bands and can negatively affect the Wi-Fi operations.

Some of the most advanced WLAN services, such as voice-over-wireless and IEEE 802.11 radio communications, might be significantly impaired by the interference caused by other legal users of the ISM bands. The integration of Cisco CleanAir functionality addresses this problem of RF interference.

# Cisco CleanAir-Related Terms

*Table 45: CleanAir-Related Terms*

| Term | Description |
|---|---|
| AQI | Air Quality Index. The AQI is an indicator of air quality, based on the RF interferences. An AQI of 0 is bad and an AQI > 85 is good. |
| AQR | Air Quality Report. AQRs contain information about total interference from all the identified sources represented by AQI and the summary of the most severe interference categories. AQRs are sent every 15 minutes to the Mobility Controller and every 30 seconds in the Rapid mode. |
| DC | Duty Cycle. Percentage of time that the channel is utilized by a device. |
| EDRRM | Event-Driven RRM. EDRRM allows an access point in distress to bypass normal RRM intervals and immediately change channels. |
| IDR | Interference Device Reports that an access point sends to the embedded wireless controller. |
| ISI | Interference Severity Index. The ISI is an indicator of the severity of the interference. |
| RSSI | Received Signal Strength Indicator. RSSI is a measurement of the power present in a received radio signal. It is the power at which an access point sees the interferer device. |

# Cisco CleanAir Components

The basic Cisco CleanAir architecture consists of Cisco CleanAir-enabled APs and device.

An access point equipped with Cisco CleanAir technology collects information about Wi-Fi interference sources processes it. The access point sends the Air Quality Report (AQR) and Interference Device Report (IDR) to the embedded wireless controller.

The controller controls and configures CleanAir-capable access points, and collects and processes spectrum data. The provides local user interfaces (GUI and CLI) to configure basic CleanAir features and services and display current spectrum information. The also detects, merges, and mitigates interference devices using RRM TPC and DCA For details, see Interference Device Merging.

The device performs the following tasks in a Cisco CleanAir system:

- Configures Cisco CleanAir capabilities on the access point.
- Provides interfaces ( CLI) for configuring Cisco CleanAir features and retrieving data.
- Displays spectrum data.
- Collects and processes AQRs from the access point and stores them in the air quality database. AQRs contain information about the total interference from all the identified sources represented by the Air Quality Index (AQI) and the summary for the most severe interference categories. The CleanAir system can also include unclassified interference information under per-interference type reports that enable you to take action in scenarios where interference because of unclassified interfering devices is more.
- Collects and processes IDRs from the access point and stores them in the interference device database.

# Interference Types that Cisco CleanAir can Detect

Cisco CleanAir .

Wi-Fi chip-based RF management systems share these characteristics:

- Any RF energy that cannot be identified as a Wi-Fi signal is reported as noise.
- Noise measurements that are used to assign a channel plan tend to be averaged over a period of time to avoid instability or rapid changes that can be disruptive to certain client devices.
- Averaging measurements reduces the resolution of the measurement. As such, a signal that disrupts clients might not look like it needs to be mitigated after averaging.
- All RF management systems available today are reactive in nature.

Cisco CleanAir is different and can positively identify not only the source of the noise but also its potential impact to a WLAN. Having this information allows you to consider the noise within the context of the network and make intelligent and, where possible, proactive decisions.

**Note** Spectrum event-driven RRM can be triggered only by Cisco CleanAir-enabled access points in local mode.

Spontaneous interference is interference that appears suddenly on a network, perhaps jamming a channel or a range of channels completely. The Cisco CleanAir spectrum event-driven RRM feature allows you to set a threshold for air quality (AQ) which, if exceeded, triggers an immediate channel change for the affected access point. Most RF management systems can avoid interference, but this information takes time to propagate through the system. Cisco CleanAir relies on AQ measurements to continuously evaluate the spectrum and can trigger a move within 30 seconds. For example, if an access point detects interference from a video camera, it can recover by changing channels within 30 seconds of the camera becoming active. Cisco CleanAir also identifies and locates the source of interference so that more permanent mitigation of the device can be performed at a later time.

Microwave Ovens, Outdoor Ethernet bridges are two classes of devices that qualify as persistent, since once detected, it is likely that these devices will continue to be a random problem and are not likely to move. For these types of devices we can tell RRM of the detection and Bias the affected channel so that RRM "remembers" that there is a high potential for client impacting interference for the Detecting AP on the detected channel. For more information, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/technotes/8-3/b_RRM_White_Paper/b_RRM_White_Paper_chapter_0100.html?bookSearch=true#id_15217.

CleanAir PDA devices include:

- Microwave Oven
- WiMax Fixed
- WiMax Mobile
- Motorola Canopy

In the case of Bluetooth devices, Cisco CleanAir-enabled access points can detect and report interference only if the devices are actively transmitting. Bluetooth devices have extensive power-save modes. For example, interference can be detected when data or voice is being streamed between the connected devices.

# EDRRM and AQR Update Mode

EDRRM is a feature that allows an access point that is in distress to bypass normal RRM intervals and immediately change channels. A CleanAir access point always monitors AQ and reports the AQ every 15 minutes. AQ only reports classified interference devices. The key benefit of EDRRM is fast action time. If an interfering device is operating on an active channel and causes enough AQ degradation to trigger an EDRRM, then no clients will be able to use that channel or the access point. You must remove the access point from the channel. EDRRM is not enabled by default, you must first enable CleanAir and then enable EDRRM.

# Prerequisites for CleanAir

You can configure Cisco CleanAir only on CleanAir-enabled access points.

Only Cisco CleanAir-enabled access points using the following access point modes can perform Cisco CleanAir spectrum monitoring:

- Local—In this mode, each Cisco CleanAir-enabled access point radio provides air quality and interference detection reports for the current operating channel only. An AP can only measure air quality and interference when the AP is not busy transmitting Wi-Fi frames. This implies that CleanAir detections will be drastically lower if the AP is having a high channel utilization.
- Monitor—When Cisco CleanAir is enabled in monitor mode, the access point provides air quality and interference detection reports for all monitored channels.

  The following options are available:

  - All—All channels
  - DCA—Channel selection governed by the DCA list
  - Country—All channels are legal within a regulatory domain

# Restrictions for CleanAir

- Access points in monitor mode do not transmit Wi-Fi traffic or 802.11 packets. They are excluded from radio resource management (RRM) planning and are not included in the neighbor access point list. IDR clustering depends on the device's ability to detect neighboring in-network access points. Correlating interference device detections from multiple access points is limited between monitor-mode access points.
- For 4800 AP slot 1 5 GHz is dedicated and cannot be individually moved to monitor mode. However, slot 0 is XOR and can be moved to monitor as well as 2.4/5 GHz. Slot 2 is dedicated monitor and will operate in 5GHz and in AP monitor mode, slot 2 will be disabled because a monitor radio is already available in both 2.4/5GHz. 3700 AP has dedicated 2.4GHz (slot0) and 5GHz (slot1).
- Do not connect access points in SE connect mode directly to any physical port on the controller.
- CleanAir is not supported wherein the channel width is 160 MHz.

# How to Configure CleanAir

## Enabling CleanAir for the 2.4-GHz Band (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **CleanAir**

**Step 2** On the **CleanAir** page, click the me**2.4 GHz Band** > **General** tab.

**Step 3** Check the **Enable CleanAir** checkbox.

**Step 4** Click **Apply**.

## Enabling CleanAir for the 2.4-GHz Band (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 24ghz cleanair**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz cleanair`<br>`Device(config)#no ap dot11 24ghz cleanair` | Enables the CleanAir feature on the 802.11b network. Run the **no** form of this command to disable CleanAir on the 802.11b network. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

## Configuring Interference Reporting for a 2.4-GHz Device (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **CleanAir**.

**Step 2** Click the **2.4 GHz Band** tab.

**Step 3** Choose the interference types and add them to the **Interference Types to detect** section.

The following interference types are available:

- BLE Beacon—Bluetooth low energy beacon
- Bluetooth Discovery
- Bluetooth Link
- Canopy
- Continuous Transmitter
- DECT-like Phone—Digital Enhanced Cordless Technology phone
- 802.11 FH—802.11 frequency hopping device
- WiFi Inverted—Device using spectrally inverted Wi-Fi signals
- Jammer
- Microwave Oven
- WiFi Invalid Channel—Device using nonstandard Wi-Fi channels
- TDD Transmitter
- Video Camera
- SuperAG—802.11 SuperAG device
- WiMax Mobile
- WiMax Fixed
- 802.15.4
- Microsoft Device
- SI_FHSS

**Step 4** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring Interference Reporting for a 2.4-GHz Device (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device** {**bt-discovery** \| **bt-link** \| **canopy** \| **cont-tx** \| **dect-like** \| **fh** \| **inv** \| **jammer** \| **mw-oven** \| **nonstd** \| **report** \| **superag** \| **tdd-tx** \| **video** \| **wimax-fixed** \| **wimax-mobile** \| **xbox** \| **zigbee** }<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device bt-discovery`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device bt-link`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device canopy`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device cont-tx`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device dect-like`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device fh`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device inv`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device jammer`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device mw-oven`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device nonstd`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device report`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device superag`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device tdd-tx`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device video`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device wimax-fixed`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device wimax-mobile`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device xbox` | Configures the 2.4-GHz interference devices to report to the device. Run the **no** form of this command to disable the configuration.<br>The following is a list of the keyword descriptions:<br>• **bt-discovery**—Bluetooth discovery<br>• **bt-link**—Bluetooth link<br>• **canopy**—Canopy device<br>• **cont-tx**—Continuous transmitter<br>• **dect-like**—Digital Enhanced Cordless Communication-like phone<br>• **fh**—802.11-frequency hopping device<br>• **inv**—Device using spectrally inverted Wi-Fi signals<br>• **jammer**—Jammer<br>• **mw-oven**—Microwave oven<br>• **nonstd**—Device using nonstandard Wi-Fi channels<br>• **report**—Interference device reporting<br>• **superag**—802.11 SuperAG device<br>• **tdd-tx**—TDD transmitter<br>• **video**—Video camera<br>• **wimax-fixed**—WiMax Fixed<br>• **wimax-mobile**—WiMax Mobile<br>• **microsoft xbox**—Microsoft Xbox device<br>• **zigbee**—802.15.4 device |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device zigbee`<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device alarm` | |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Enabling CleanAir for the 5-GHz Band (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **CleanAir**

**Step 2** On the **CleanAir** page, click the me**5 GHz Band** > **General** tab.

**Step 3** Check the **Enable CleanAir** checkbox.

**Step 4** Click **Apply**.

# Enabling CleanAir for the 5-GHz Band (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 5ghz cleanair**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair`<br>`Device(config)#no ap dot11 5ghz cleanair` | Enables the CleanAir feature on a 802.11a network. Run the **no** form of this command to disable CleanAir on the 802.11a network. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Interference Reporting for a 5-GHz Device (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **CleanAir**.

**Step 2** Click the **5 GHz Band** tab.

**Step 3** Choose the interference types and add them to the **Interference Types to detect** section.

The following interference types are available:

- Canopy
- Continuous Transmitter
- DECT-like Phone—Digital Enhanced Cordless Technology phone
- 802.11 FH—802.11 frequency hopping device
- WiFi Inverted—Device using spectrally inverted Wi-Fi signals
- Jammer
- WiFi Invalid Channel—Device using nonstandard Wi-Fi channels
- SuperAG—802.11 SuperAG device
- TDD Transmitter
- WiMax Mobile
- WiMax Fixed
- Video Camera

**Step 4** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring Interference Reporting for a 5-GHz Device (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device**{**canopy** \| **cont-tx** \| **dect-like** \| **inv** \| **jammer** \| **nonstd** \| **report** \| **superag** \| **tdd-tx** \| **video** \| **wimax-fixed** \| **wimax-mobile**} | Configures a 5-GHz interference device to report to the device. Run the **no** form of this command to disable interference device reporting. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | **Example:**<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device canopy`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device cont-tx`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device dect-like`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device inv`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device jammer`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device nonstd`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device report`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device superag`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device tdd-tx`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device video`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device wimax-fixed`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device wimax-mobile`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device si_fhss`<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device alarm` | The following is a list of the keyword descriptions:<br>• **canopy**—Canopy device<br>• **cont-tx**—Continuous transmitter<br>• **dect-like**—Digital Enhanced Cordless Communication-like phone<br>• **fh**—802.11-frequency hopping device<br>• **inv**—Device using spectrally-inverted Wi-Fi signals<br>• **jammer**—Jammer<br>• **nonstd**—Device using nonstandard Wi-Fi channels<br>• **superag**—802.11 SuperAG device<br>• **tdd-tx**—TDD transmitter<br>• **video**—Video camera<br>• **wimax-fixed**—WiMax fixed<br>• **wimax-mobile**—WiMax mobile |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Event Driven RRM for a CleanAir Event (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **RRM**.
The **Radio Resource Management** page is displayed.

**Step 2** Click the **DCA** tab.

**Step 3** In the **Event Driven RRM** section, check the **EDRRM** check box to run RRM when CleanAir-enabled AP detects a significant level of interference.

**Step 4** Configure the **Sensitivity Threshold** level at which RRM has to be invoked from the following options:

- **Low**: Represents a decreased sensitivity to changes in the environment and its value is set at 35.
- **Medium**: Represents medium sensitivity to changes in the environment at its value is set at 50.
- **High**: Represents increased sensitivity to changes in the environment at its value is set at 60.
- **Custom**: If you choose this option, you must specify a custom value in the **Custom Threshold** box.

**Step 5** To configure rogue duty cycle, check the **Rogue Contribution** check box and then specify the **Rogue Duty-Cycle** in terms of percentage. The default value of rogue duty cycle is 80 percent.

**Note**
Rogue Contribution is a new component included in ED-RRM functionality. Rogue Contribution allows ED-RRM to trigger based on identified Rogue Channel Utilization, which is completely separate from CleanAir metrics. Rogue Duty Cycle comes from normal off channel RRM metrics, and invokes a channel change based on neighboring rogue interference. Because this comes from RRM metrics and not CleanAir, the timing - assuming normal 180 second off channel intervals - would be within 3 minutes or 180 seconds worst case. It is configured separately from CleanAir ED-RRM and is disabled by default. This allows the AP to become reactive to Wi-Fi interference that is not coming from own network and is measured at each individual AP.

**Step 6** Save the configuration.

# Configuring EDRRM for a CleanAir Event (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **rrm channel cleanair-event**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel` | Enables EDRRM CleanAir event. Run the **no** form of this command to disable EDRRM. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | **cleanair-event**<br><br>`Device(config)#no ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel cleanair-event` | |
| **Step 3** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **rrm channel cleanair-event** [**sensitivity** {**high** \| **low** \| **medium**}]<br>**Example:**<br><br>`Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel cleanair-event sensitivity high` | Configures the EDRRM sensitivity of the CleanAir event.<br>The following is a list of the keyword descriptions:<br>• **High**—Specifies the most sensitivity to non-Wi–Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value.<br>• **Low**—Specifies the least sensitivity to non-Wi–Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value.<br>• **Medium**—Specifies medium sensitivity to non-Wi–Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Verifying CleanAir Parameters

You can verify CleanAir parameters using the following commands:

***Table 46: Commands for verifying CleanAir***

| Command Name | Description |
|---|---|
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type all | Displays all the CleanAir interferers for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type bt-discovery | Displays CleanAir interferers of type BT Discovery for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type bt-link | Displays CleanAir interferers of type BT Link for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type canopy | Displays CleanAir interferers of type Canopy for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type cont-tx | Displays CleanAir interferers of type Continuous transmitter for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type dect-like | Displays CleanAir interferers of type DECT Like for the 2.4-GHz band. |

| Command Name | Description |
|---|---|
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type fh | Displays CleanAir interferers of type 802.11FH for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type inv | Displays CleanAir interferers of type Wi-Fi Inverted for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type jammer | Displays CleanAir interferers of type Jammer for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type mw-oven | Displays CleanAir interferers of type MW Oven for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type nonstd | Displays CleanAir interferers of type Wi-Fi inverted channel for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type superag | Displays CleanAir interferers of type SuperAG for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type tdd-tx | Displays CleanAir interferers of type TDD Transmit for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type video | Displays CleanAir interferers of type Video Camera for the 2.4-GHz band. |
| show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type wimax-fixed | Displays CleanAir interferers of type WiMax Fixed for the 2.4-GHz band. |

## Monitoring Interference Devices

When a CleanAir-enabled access point detects interference devices, detections of the same device from multiple sensors are merged together to create clusters. Each cluster is given a unique ID. Some devices conserve power by limiting the transmit time until actually needed, which results in the spectrum sensor to stop detecting the device temporarily. This device is then correctly marked as down. Such a device is correctly removed from the spectrum database. In cases when all the interferer detections for a specific device are reported, the cluster ID is kept alive for an extended period of time to prevent possible device-detection bouncing. If the same device is detected again, it is merged with the original cluster ID and the device-detection history is preserved.

For example, some Bluetooth headsets operate on battery power. These devices employ methods to reduce power consumption, such as turning off the transmitter when not actually needed. Such devices can appear to come and go from the classification. To manage these devices, CleanAir keeps the cluster IDs for longer and they are remerged into a single record upon detection. This process smoothens the user records and accurately represents the device history.

# Configuration Examples for CleanAir

This example shows how to enable CleanAir on the 2.4-GHz band and an access point operating in the channel:

```
Device#configure terminal
Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz cleanair
```

```
Device(config)#exit
Device#ap name TAP1 dot11 24ghz cleanair
Device#end
```

This example shows how to enable an EDRRM CleanAir event in the 2.4-GHz band and configure high sensitivity to non-Wi–Fi interference:

```
Device#configure terminal
Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel cleanair-event
Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel cleanair-event sensitivity high
Device(config)#end
```

# CleanAir FAQs

**Q.** Multiple access points detect the same interference device. However, the device shows them as separate clusters or different suspected devices clustered together. Why does this happen?

**A.** Access points must be RF neighbors for the device to consider merging the devices that are detected by these access points. An access point takes time to establish neighbor relationships. A few minutes after the device reboots or after there is a change in the RF group, and similar events, clustering will not be very accurate.

**Q.** How do I view neighbor access points?

**A.** To view neighbor access points, use the **show ap** *ap_name* **auto-rf dot11** {**24ghz** | **5ghz**} command.

This example shows how to display the neighbor access points:

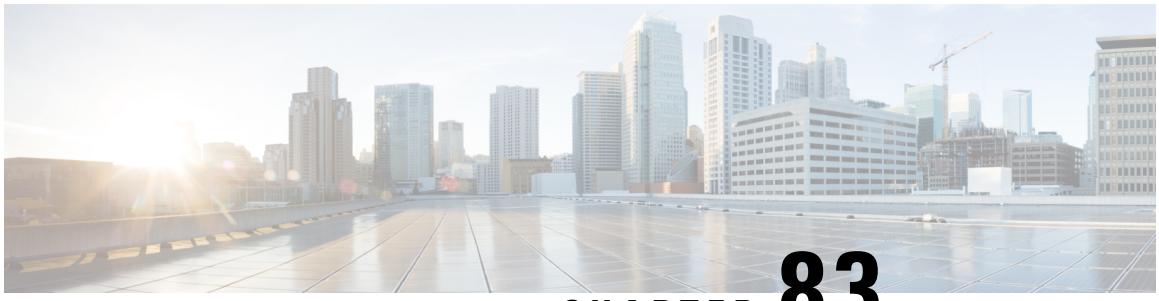
```
Device#show ap name AS-5508-5-AP3 auto-rf dot11 24ghz

<snippet>
Nearby APs
  AP 0C85.259E.C350 slot 0                          :  -12 dBm on   1 (10.10.0.5)
  AP 0C85.25AB.CCA0 slot 0                          :  -24 dBm on   6 (10.10.0.5)
  AP 0C85.25C7.B7A0 slot 0                          :  -26 dBm on  11 (10.10.0.5)
  AP 0C85.25DE.2C10 slot 0                          :  -24 dBm on   6 (10.10.0.5)
  AP 0C85.25DE.C8E0 slot 0                          :  -14 dBm on  11 (10.10.0.5)
  AP 0C85.25DF.3280 slot 0                          :  -31 dBm on   6 (10.10.0.5)
  AP 0CD9.96BA.5600 slot 0                          :  -44 dBm on   6 (10.0.0.2)
  AP 24B6.5734.C570 slot 0                          :  -48 dBm on  11 (10.0.0.2)
<snippet>
```

**Q.** What are the AP debug commands available for CleanAir?

**A.** The AP debug commands for CleanAir are:

- 
- 



CHAPTER 83

# Spectrum Intelligence


- Spectrum Intelligence, on page 771
- Configuring Spectrum Intelligence, on page 772
- Verifying Spectrum Intelligence Information, on page 772


## Spectrum Intelligence

The Spectrum Intelligence feature scans for non-Wi-Fi radio interference on 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands. Spectrum intelligence provides basic functions to detect interferences of three types, namely microwave, continuous wave (like video bridge and baby monitor), wi-fi and frequency hopping (Bluetooth and frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) cordless phone).

For information about APs that support this feature see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.

**Note** You must enable Spectrum Intelligence feature on the Cisco Aironet 1832 and 1852 series APs to get radio details, such as noise, air-quality, interference, and radio utilization on the Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance AP health.

### Restrictions

- SI APs only report a single interference type in Local mode.
- SI does not support high availability for air quality or interference reports. High Availability is not supported because interference report/device reported will not be copied to standby after switchover. We expect AP to send it again, if at all interferer is still there.
- Spectrum Intelligence detects only three types of devices:
  - Microwave
  - Continuous wave—(video recorder, baby monitor)
  - SI-FHSS—(Bluetooth, Frequency hopping Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) phones)

# Configuring Spectrum Intelligence

Follow the procedure given below to configure spectrum intelligence:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} **SI**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz SI` | Configures the 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz Spectrum Intelligence feature on the 802.11a or 802.11b network.<br>Add **no** form of the command to disable SI on the 802.11a or 802.11b network. |

# Verifying Spectrum Intelligence Information

Use the following commands to verify spectrum intelligence information:

To display the SI information for a 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz band, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz SI config

SI Solution..................................... : Enabled
Interference Device Settings:
        SI_FHSS............................... : Enabled
    Interference Device Types Triggering Alarms:
        SI_FHSS............................... : Disabled
```

To display SI interferers of type Continuous transmitter for a 2.4-GHz band, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz SI device type cont_tx

DC    = Duty Cycle (%)
ISI = Interference Severity Index (1-Low Interference, 100-High Interference)
RSSI  = Received Signal Strength Index (dBm)
DevID = Device ID
AP type = CA, clean air, SI spectrum intelligence

No  ClusterID       DevID  Type     AP Type AP Name                ISI  RSSI  DC   Channel
--- --------------- ------ -------- ------- ------------------ ---- ----- ----  ---  ------
   xx:xx:xx:xx  0014  BT     CA    myAP1              --   -69 00  133
   xx:xx:xx:xx  0014  BT     SI    myAP1              --   -69 00  133
```

To display 802.11a interference devices information for the given AP for 5-GHz, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 5ghz SI device type ap

DC    = Duty Cycle (%)
ISI   = Interference Severity Index (1-Low Interference, 100-High Interference)
RSSI  = Received Signal Strength Index (dBm)
```

```
DevID = Device ID
AP type = CA, clean air, SI spectrum intelligence

No  ClusterID/BSSID    DevID  Type    AP Type AP Name                ISI  RSSI  DC   Channel
--- ------------------ ------ ------- ------  ---------------------- ---- ----- ---- ----------
```

To display all Cisco CleanAir interferers for a 2.4-GHz band, use the following command:

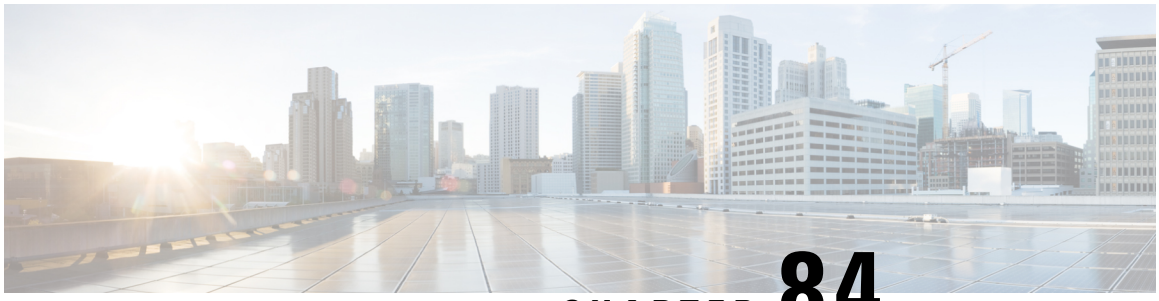
```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type all
```



# PART XII

# Mesh Access Points


- Mesh Access Points, on page 777



CHAPTER 84

# Mesh Access Points


- 
- Introduction to Mesh, on page 778
- Restrictions and Limitations, on page 779
- Mesh Deployments, on page 779
- MAC Authorization, on page 780
- Preshared Key Provisioning, on page 782
- EAP Authentication, on page 784
- Bridge Group Names, on page 785
- Mesh Backhaul at 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz , on page 786
- Information About Mesh Backhaul RRM, on page 787
- Dynamic Frequency Selection, on page 789
- Country Codes, on page 791
- Intrusion Detection System, on page 791
- Mesh Interoperability Between Controllers, on page 792
- Mesh Convergence, on page 792
- Ethernet Bridging, on page 793
- Mesh Daisy Chaining, on page 796
- Multicast Over Mesh Ethernet Bridging Network, on page 798
- Radio Resource Management on Mesh, on page 799
- Mesh Leaf Node, on page 800
- Flex+Bridge Mode, on page 801
- Backhaul Client Access, on page 802
- Background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode (Concept), on page 803
- Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul Per Access Point (GUI), on page 805
- Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul in Mesh Profile (GUI), on page 805
- Configuring Data Rate Per AP (CLI), on page 806
- Configuring Data Rate Using Mesh Profile (CLI), on page 806
- Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (GUI), on page 807
- Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (CLI), on page 807
- Configuring Wireless Backhaul Data Rate (CLI), on page 808
- Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul (GUI), on page 809
- Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul, on page 809
- Mesh CAC, on page 809

- Speeding up Mesh Network Recovery Through Fast Detection of Uplink Gateway Reachability Failure, on page 811
- Fast Teardown for a Mesh Deployment, on page 811
- Configuring Subset Channel Synchronization , on page 814
- Selecting a Preferred Parent (GUI), on page 815
- Selecting a Preferred Parent (CLI), on page 815
- Changing the Role of an AP (GUI), on page 816
- Changing the Role of an AP (CLI), on page 816
- Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP (GUI), on page 817
- Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP, on page 817
- Verifying Mesh Configuration in Embedded Wireless Controller, on page 818


# Introduction to Mesh

In Cisco IOS XE 17.6.1 Release, the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC) runs on the Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Series outdoor access points, acting as a Root Access Point (RAP) in a mesh deployment. Mesh networking employs Cisco Aironet outdoor mesh access points along with Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC) to provide scalability, central management, and mobility between deployments. Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP) protocol manages the connection of mesh access points to the network.

Access points within a mesh network operate in one of the following ways:

- Root access point (RAP)
- Mesh access point (MAP)

EWC works on RAPs. RAPs have wired connections, whereas MAPs have wireless connection to the controller. Mesh APs communicate with their parent and child mesh APs using wireless connections over the 802.11a/n radio backhaul. MAPs use the Cisco Adaptive Wireless Path Protocol (AWPP) to determine the best path through the other mesh access points to the controller. A mesh access point establishes AWPP link with a parent Mesh AP, which is already connected to the controller before starting CAPWAP discovery.

The wireless mesh terminates on two points on the wired network. The first location is where the root access point (RAP) is attached to the wired network, and where all bridged traffic connects to the wired network. The second location is where the CAPWAP controller connect to the wired network; this location is where the WLAN client traffic from the mesh network is connected to the wired network. The WLAN client traffic from CAPWAP is tunneled to Layer 2. Matching WLANs should terminate on the same switch VLAN on which the wireless controllers are co-located. The security and network configuration for each of the WLANs on the mesh depend on the security capabilities of the network to which the wireless controller is connected.

End-to-end security within the mesh network is supported by employing Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption between wireless mesh access points and Wi-Fi Protected Access 2 (WPA2) clients. For connections to a mesh access point (MAP) wireless client, such as MAP-to-MAP and MAP-to-root access point, WPA2 is applicable.

In the new configuration model, the controller has a default mesh profile. This profile is mapped to the default AP-join profile, which is in turn is mapped to the default site tag. If you are creating a named mesh profile, ensure that these mappings are put in place, and the corresponding AP is added to the corresponding site-tag.

**Note** If you change the configuration for Security Mode, BGN, Client-Access, and Range change in mesh profile, the mesh APs will reload. In EWC, you can not reload the internal AP to an active EWC, automatically. You must reload the internal AP manually, after the standby EWC node begins to work after the reload.

From this release, mesh support is included in the Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series Access Points. All traditional capabilities of mesh are included in the Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series APs operating in Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1.

### Scale Numbers

Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series Outdoor Access Points support a scale of 100 APs and 2000 clients.

# Restrictions and Limitations

- The mesh feature is supported only in Cisco Catalyst 9124 series Access Points, for Cisco Embedded Wireless Controllers.
- EWC supports AP roaming between parent mesh APs within the same controller, only.
- In an EWC mesh topology, any FlexConnect EWC capable AP should be in the CAPWAP mode, when deployed as a child to a MAP, for extending wireless network. The controller will be spawned, if the AP is not in the CAPWAP mode.

# Mesh Deployments

Following are the mesh deployments:

- **Wireless Bridging**: Wireless bridging can be point-to-point or point-to-multipoint. Wireless bridges extend the network over the air when a cable is not available. The over-the-air link between the RAP and MAP(s) is treated as a pipe. This type of deployment is usually with RAP and one level of MAP. There are no child MAPs present under the first level of MAP. SSIDs are not deployed.
  - **Point-to-Point Wireless Bridging**: In a point-to-point bridging scenario, a Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series Mesh AP can be used to extend a remote network by using the backhaul radio to bridge two segments of a switched network. This is fundamentally a wireless mesh network with one MAP and no WLAN clients. Just as in point-to-multipoint networks, client access can still be provided with Ethernet bridging enabled, although if bridging between buildings, MAP coverage from a high rooftop might not be suitable for client access.
  - **Point-to-Multipoint**: In the point-to-multipoint bridging scenario, a RAP acting as a root bridge connects multiple MAPs as non-root bridges with their associated wired LANs. By default, this feature is disabled for all MAPs. If Ethernet bridging is used, you must enable it on the controller for the respective MAP and for the RAP.
- **Mesh with Wi-Fi Clients**: Mesh deployments with multilevel MAPs and wireless clients, for extending Wi-Fi network. In a Cisco wireless outdoor mesh network, multiple mesh access points comprise a network that provides secure, scalable outdoor wireless LAN.

# MAC Authorization

You must enter the MAC address of an AP in the controller to make a MAP join the controller. The controller responds only to those CAPWAP requests from MAPs that are available in its authorization list. Remember to use the MAC address provided at the back of the AP.

MAC authorization for MAPs connected to the controller over Ethernet occurs during the CAPWAP join process. For MAPs that join the controller over radio, MAC authorization takes place when the corresponding AP tries to secure an adaptive wireless path protocol (AWPP) link with the parent MAP. The AWPP is the protocol used in Cisco mesh networks.

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller supports MAC authorization internally as well as using an external AAA server.

## Configuring MAC Authorization (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **AAA** > **AAA Advanced** > **Device Authentication**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Quick Step: MAC Filtering** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Quick Step: MAC Filtering** window, complete the following:

a) Enter the **MAC Address**.
b) Choose the **Attribute List Name** from the drop-down list.
c) Choose the **WLAN Profile Name** from the drop-down list.
d) Click **Apply to Device**.

Both WebUI and CLI support mac user configuration in one of these formats: xxxxxxxxxxxx, xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx, xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx, or xxxx.xxxx.xxxx where AP sends the default mac address without delimiter. If the mac address is configured with delimiter, then AP authorization will fail unless it is configured in the format: xxxxxxxxxxxx.

**Step 4** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **AAA** > **AAA Method List** > **Authorization**.

**Step 5** Click **Add**.
The **Quick Step: AAA Authorization** window is displayed.

**Step 6** In the **Quick Step: AAA Authorization** window, complete the following:

a) Enter the **Method List Name**.
b) Choose the **Type** from the drop-down list.
c) Choose the **Group Type** from the drop-down list.
d) Check the **Fallback to Local** check box.
e) Check the **Authenticated** check box.
f) Move the required servers from the **Available Server Groups** to the **Assigned Server Groups.**
g) Click **Apply to Device**.

**Step 7** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**.

**Step 8** Click the mesh profile.

The **Edit Mesh Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 9** Click the **Advanced** tab.

**Step 10** In the **Security** settings, from the **Method** drop-down list, choose **EAP**.

**Step 11** Choose the **Authentication Method** from the drop-down list.

**Step 12** Choose the **Authorization Method** from the drop-down list.

**Step 13** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring MAC Authorization (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to add the MAC address of a bridge mode AP to the controller.

### Before you begin

- MAC filtering for bridge mode APs are enabled by default on the controller. Therefore, only the MAC address need to be configured. The MAC address that is to be used is the one that is provided at the back of the corresponding AP.
- MAC authorization is supported internally, as well as using an external AAA server.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **username** *user-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# username username1` | Configures user name authentication for MAC filtering where username is MAC address. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa authorization credential-download** *method-name* **local**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa authorization credential-download list1 local` | Sets an authorization method list to use local credentials. |
| **Step 4** | **aaa authorization credential-download** *method-name* **radius group** *server-group-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# aaa authorization credential-download auth1 radius group radius-server-1` | Sets an authorization method list to use a RADIUS server group. |
| **Step 5** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:** | Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | |
| **Step 6** | **method authorization** *method-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# method authorization auth1` | Configures the authorization method for mesh AP authorization. |

# Preshared Key Provisioning

Customers with mesh deployments can see their MAPs moving out of their network and joining another mesh network when both these mesh deployments use AAA with wild card MAC filtering to allow the association of MAPs. Since MAPs might use EAP-FAST, this cannot be controlled because a security combination of MAC address and type of AP is used for EAP, and no controlled configuration is available. The preshared key (PSK) option with a default passphrase also presents a security risk.

This issue is prominently seen in overlapping deployments of two service providers when the MAPs are used in a moving vehicle (public transportation, ferry, ship, and so on.). This way, there is no restriction on MAPs to remain with the service providers' mesh network, and MAPs can get hijacked or getting used by another service provider's network and cannot serve the intended customers of the original service providers in the deployment.

The PSK key provisioning feature enables a PSK functionality from the controller which helps make a controlled mesh deployment and enhance MAPs security beyond the default one. With this feature the MAPs that are configured with a custom PSK, will use the PSK key to do their authentication with their RAPs and controller.

## Configuring PSK Provisioning (GUI)

To configure PSK provisioning, follows these steps:

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** .

**Step 2** Click the **Global Config** tab.

**Step 3** In the **Security** settings, check the **PSK Provisioning** check box and complete the following steps:

a) Choose the **PSK Inuse Index** from the numbers in the drop-down list.
b) In the **Keys Configuration** settings, click the add icon '+' to configure the keys.
c) Choose the **Key** from the drop-down list.
d) Enter the **Name** and the **Description** of the key that is to be configured.
e) Choose the **Password Type** as **UNENCRYPTED** or **AES Encrypted**.
f) Click **Apply**. The key is listed in the list of configured keys.

**Step 4** Check the **Default PSK** check box.

**Step 5** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring PSK Provisioning (CLI)

When PSK provisioning is enabled, the APs join with default PSK initially. After that PSK provisioning key is set, the configured key is pushed to the newly joined AP.

Follow the procedure given below to configure a PSK:

### Before you begin

The provisioned PSK should have been pushed to all the APs that are configured with PSK as mesh security.

**Note**
- PSKs are saved across reboots in the controller as well as on the corresponding mesh AP.
- A controller can have total of five PSKs and one default PSK.
- A mesh AP deletes its provisioned PSK only on factory reset.
- A mesh AP never uses the default PSK after receiving the first provisioned PSK.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless mesh security psk provisioning**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless mesh security psk provisioning` | Configures the security method for wireless as PSK.<br>**Note**<br>The provisioned PSK is pushed only to those APs that are configured with PSK as the mesh security method. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless mesh security psk provisioning key** *index* {**0** \| **8**} *pre-shared-key description*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless mesh security psk provisioning key 1 0 secret secret-key` | Configures a new PSK for mesh APs. |
| **Step 4** | **wireless mesh security psk provisioning default-psk**<br>**Example:** | Enables default PSK-based authentication. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# wireless mesh security psk provisioning default-psk` | |
| **Step 5** | **wireless mesh security psk provisioning inuse** *index*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless mesh security psk provisioning inuse 1` | Specifies the PSK to be actively used.<br>**Note** You should explicitly set the in-use key index in the global configuration pointing to the PSK index. |

# EAP Authentication

Local EAP is an authentication method that allows users and wireless clients to be authenticated locally on the controller. It is designed for use in remote offices that want to maintain connectivity with wireless clients when the backend system gets disrupted or the external authentication server goes down. When you enable local EAP, the controller serves as the authentication server and the local user database, which in turn, removes dependence on an external authentication server. Local EAP retrieves user credentials from the local user database or the LDAP backend database to authenticate users. Local EAP supports only the EAP-FAST authentication method for MAP authentication between the controller and wireless clients.

Local EAP uses an LDAP server as its backend database to retrieve user credentials for MAP authentication between the controller and wireless clients. An LDAP backend database allows the controller to query an LDAP server for the credentials (username and password) of a particular user. These credentials are then used to authenticate the user.

**Note** If RADIUS servers are configured on the controller, the controller tries to authenticate the wireless clients using the RADIUS servers first. Local EAP is attempted only if RADIUS servers are not found, timed out, or were not configured.

### EAP Authentication with LSC

Locally significant certificate-based (LSC-based) EAP authentication is also supported for MAPs. To use this feature, you should have a public key infrastructure (PKI) to control certification authority, define policies, validity periods, and restrictions and usages on the certificates that are generated, and get these certificates installed on the APs and controller.

After these customer-generated certificates or LSCs are available on the APs and controller, the devices can start using these LSCs, to join, authenticate, and derive a session key.

LSCs do not remove any preexisting certificates from an AP. An AP can have both LSC and manufacturing installed certificates (MIC). However, after an AP is provisioned with an LSC, the MIC certificate is not used during boot-up. A change from an LSC to MIC requires the corresponding AP to reboot.

The controller also supports mesh security with EAP authentication to a designated server in order to:

- Authenticate the mesh child AP
- Generate a master session key (MSK) for packet encryption.

# Bridge Group Names

Bridge group names (BGNs) control the association of MAPs to the parent mesh AP. BGNs can logically group radios to avoid two networks on the same channel from communicating with each other. The setting is also useful if you have more than one RAP in your network in the same sector (area). BGN is a string comprising a maximum of 10 characters.

A BGN of *NULL VALUE* is assigned by default during manufacturing. Although not visible to you, it allows a MAP to join the network prior to your assignment of your network-specific BGN.

If you have two RAPs in your network in the same sector (for more capacity), we recommend that you configure the two RAPs with the same BGN, but on different channels.

When Strict Match BGN is enabled on a MAP, it will scan ten times to find a matching BGN parent. After ten scans, if the AP does not find the parent with matching BGN, it will connect to the nonmatched BGN and maintain the connection for 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, the AP will again scan ten times, and this cycle continues. The default BGN functionalities remain the same when Strict Match BGN is enabled.

In Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, the BGN is configured on the mesh profile. Whenever a MAP joins the controller, the controller pushes the BGN that is configured on the mesh profile to the AP.



**Note** In the EWC HA pair, switchover happens if you change the BGN configuration. If you remove the configured BGN from the mesh profile, a switchover is triggered.

### Preferred Parent Selection

The preferred parent for a MAP enables you to enforce a linear topology in a mesh environment. With this feature, you can override the Adaptive Wireless Path Protocol-defined (AWPP-defined) parent selection mechanism and force a MAP to go to a preferred parent.

For Cisco Wave 1 APs, when you configure a preferred parent, ensure that you specify the MAC address of the actual mesh neighbor for the desired parent. This MAC address is the base radio MAC address that has the letter "f" as the final character. For example, if the base radio MAC address is 00:24:13:0f:92:00, then you must specify 00:24:13:0f:92:0f as the preferred parent.

```
Device# ap name ap1 mesh parent preferred 00:24:13:0f:92:0f
```

For Cisco Wave 2 APs, when you configure a preferred parent, the MAC address is the base radio MAC address that has "0x11" added to the last two characters. For example, if the base radio MAC address is 00:24:13:0f:92:00, then you must specify 00:24:13:0f:92:11 as the preferred parent.

```
Device# ap name ap1 mesh parent preferred 00:24:13:0f:92:11
```

# Configuring a Bridge Group Name (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Advanced** tab, under the **Bridge Group** settings, enter the **Bridge Group Name**.

**Step 4** Under the **Bridge Group** settings, check the **Strict Match** check box to enable the feature. When Strict Match BGN is enabled on a MAP, it scans ten times to find a matching BGN parent.

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring a Bridge Group Name (CLI)

- If a bridge group name (BGN) is configured on a mesh profile, whenever a MAP joins the controller, it pushes the BGN configured on the mesh profile to the AP.
- Whenever a mesh AP moves from AireOS controller to the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, the BGN configured on the mesh profile is pushed to that AP and stored there.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **bridge-group name** *bridge-grp-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# bridge-group name bgn1` | Configures a bridge group name. |
| **Step 4** | **bridge-group strict-match**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# bridge-group strict-match` | Configures bridge group strict matching. |

# Mesh Backhaul at 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz

A backhaul is used to create only the wireless connection between MAPs. The backhaul interface is 802.11a/n/ac/g depending upon the AP. The default backhaul interface is 5-GHz. The rate selection is important for effective use of the available radio frequency spectrum. The rate can also affect the throughput of client devices. (Throughput is an important metric used by industry publications to evaluate vendor devices.)

Mesh backhaul is supported at 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz. However, in certain countries it is not allowed to use mesh network with a 5-GHz backhaul network. The 2.4-GHz radio frequencies allow you to achieve much larger mesh or bridge distances. When a RAP gets a slot-change configuration, it gets propagated from the RAP to all its child MAPs. All the MAPs get disconnected and join the new configured backhaul slot.

## Configuring Mesh Backhaul (CLI)

This section describes how to configure mesh backhaul at 2.4 GHz.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **ap name** *ap_name* **mesh backhaul radio dot11** *24ghz*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device # ap name test-ap mesh backhaul radio dot11 24ghz` | Changes the mesh backhaul to 2.4 GHz. |

# Information About Mesh Backhaul RRM

Root access points (RAPs) choose backhaul channels to operate in mesh networks. Until Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1, this operation occurred by an explicit configuration, a least congested scan during RAP boot time, during the initial radio resource management (RRM) run without mesh access points (MAPs) connected, or a backhaul channel that was chosen at random. As a result, a poor backhaul channel selection resulted in poor performance.

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1 onwards, RRM DCA is run on mesh backhaul, in auto mode, in FlexConnect or centralized networks. For APs that do not have dedicated (RHL) radios, DCA is triggered by running commands in the privilege EXEC mode.

RRM continuously evaluates the channel conditions to ensure that the network utilizes the least congested channels. The network uses the transmission static power if it is configured, or falls back to the default level. This is supported on APs that have dedicated radios to scan channel conditions, without any user perceptible interruption to the mesh network traffic.

In the mesh backhaul RRM feature, the RRM DCA decides all the downlink channels in a steady network. However, if an AP detects a change in its uplink roam or radar detection response, the AP chooses the best downlink to converge faster.



**Note** APs choosing the best possible downlink is limited to serial backhaul enabled APs only.

## Configuring RRM Channel Assignment for an Access Point

To trigger RRM DCA for an AP, complete the following procedure:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *Cisco-ap-name* **dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz** \| **6ghz**} **rrm channel update mesh**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name Cisco-ap-name dot11 5ghz rrm channel update mesh` | Triggers RRM DCA for the specific AP. |

# Configuring RRM Channel Assignment for Root Access Points Globally

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured RRM for mesh backhaul before RRM DCA is triggered.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless mesh backhaul rrm**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless mesh backhaul rrm` | Configures RRM for mesh backhaul. |
| **Step 3** | (Optional) **wireless mesh backhaul rrm auto-dca**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless mesh backhaul rrm auto-dca` | Configures auto DCA for RF Application Specific Integrated Circuit (ASIC) integrated RAPs. |

To configure the initial channel assignment of the RAP in privileged EXEC mode through RRM, and to initiate channel selection for each bridge group, complete the following steps.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz** \| **6ghz**} **rrm channel-update mesh**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel-update mesh` | Initiates update of the 802.11, 802.11a, or 802.11b channel selection for every mesh Cisco AP. |
| **Step 3** | **ap dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz** \| **6ghz**} **rrm channel-update mesh bridge-group** *bridge-group-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel-update mesh bridge-group cisco-bridge-group` | Initiates update of the 802.11, 802.11a, or 802.11b channel selection for mesh AP in the bridge group. |

# Verifying the RRM DCA Status

To view the status of the DCA that is run for mesh APs, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap name Cisco-AP config general | inc Mesh
Mesh profile name                               : default-mesh-profile
Mesh DCA Run Status:                            : Not Running
Last Mesh DCA Run                               : 02/07/2022 01:21:56
```

To verify the status of the last DCA run per radio, run the following command:

```
Device# show wireless mesh rrm dca status
```

# Dynamic Frequency Selection

To protect the existing radar services, the regulatory bodies require that devices that have to share the newly opened frequency sub-band behave in accordance with the Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) protocol. DFS dictates that in order to be compliant, a radio device must be capable of detecting the presence of radar signals. When a radio detects a radar signal, the radio should stop transmitting for at least 30 minutes to protect that service. The radio should then select a different channel to transmit on, but only after monitoring it. If no radar is detected on the projected channel for at least one minute, the new radio service device can begin transmissions on that channel. The DFS feature allows mesh APs to immediately switch channels when a radar event is detected in any of the mesh APs in a sector.

# Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Mesh Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Add Mesh Profile** window, click the **General** tab.

**Step 4** Enter a profile name.

**Step 5** Check the **Full sector DFS status** check box to enable dynamic frequency selection.

**Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection (CLI)

DFS specifies the types of radar waveforms that should be detected along with certain timers for an unlicensed operation in the DFS channel.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **full-sector-dfs**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# full-sector-dfs` | Enables DFS.<br>**Note**<br>DFS functionality allows a MAP that detects a radar signal to transmit that up to the RAP, which then acts as if it has experienced radar and moves the sector. This process is called the coordinated channel change. The coordinated channel change is always enabled for Cisco Wave 2 and the later versions. The coordinated channel change can be disabled only for Cisco Wave 1 APs. |

# Country Codes

Controllers and APs are designed for use in many countries having varying regulatory requirements. The radios within the APs are assigned to a specific regulatory domain at the factory (such as -E for Europe), but the country code enables you to specify a particular country of operation (such as FR for France or ES for Spain). Configuring a country code ensures that each radio's broadcast frequency bands, interfaces, channels, and transmit power levels are compliant with country-specific regulations.

In certain countries, there is a difference in the following for indoor and outdoor APs:

- Regulatory domain code
- Set of channels supported
- Transmit power level

# Intrusion Detection System

The Cisco Intrusion Detection System/Intrusion Prevention System (CIDS/CIPS) instructs controllers to block certain clients from accessing a wireless network when attacks involving these clients are detected in Layer 3 through Layer 7. This system offers significant network protection by helping to detect, classify, and stop threats, including worms, spyware or adware, network viruses, and application abuse.

## Configuring the Intrusion Detection System (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Mesh Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Add Mesh Profile** window, click the **General** tab.

**Step 4** Enter a profile name.

**Step 5** Check the **IDS (Rogue/Signature Detection)** check box to enable the Intrusion Detection System.

**Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.

## Configuring the Intrusion Detection System (CLI)

When enabled, the intrusion detection system generates reports for all the traffic on the client access. However, this is not applicable for the backhaul traffic.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **ids**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# ids` | Configures intrusion detection system reporting for mesh APs. |

# Mesh Interoperability Between Controllers

Interoperability can be maintained between AireOS and the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller with the following support:

- MAPs can join an AireOS controller through a mesh network formed by APs connected to a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller.
- MAPs can join a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller through a mesh network formed by APs connected to as AireOS controller.
- MAP roaming is supported between parent mesh APs connected to AireOS and the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller by using PMK cache.

**Note** For seamless interoperability, AireOS controller and the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller should be in the same mobility group and use the image versions that support IRCM.

# Mesh Convergence

Mesh convergence allows MAPs to reestablish connection with the controller, when it loses backhaul connection with the current parent. To improve the convergence time, each mesh AP maintains a subset of channels that is used for future scan-seek and to identify a parent in the neighbor list subset.

The following convergence methods are supported.

*Table 47: Mesh Convergence*

| Mesh Convergence | Parent Loss Detection / Keepalive Timers |
|---|---|
| Standard | 21 / 3 seconds |
| Fast | 7 / 3 seconds |
| Very Fast | 4 / 2 seconds |
| Noise-tolerant-fast | 21 / 3 seconds |

# Noise-Tolerant Fast

Noise-tolerant fast detection is based on the failure to get a response for an AWPP neighbor request, which evaluates the current parent every 21 seconds in the standard method. Each neighbor is sent a unicast request every 3 seconds along with a request to the parent. Failure to get a response from the parent initiates either a roam if neighbors are available on the same channel or a full scan for a new parent.

# Configuring Mesh Convergence (CLI)

This section provides information about how to configure mesh convergence.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | Creates a mesh profile. |
| **Step 3** | **convergence {fast \| noise-tolerant-fast \| standard \| very-fast}**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# convergence fast` | Configures mesh convergence method in a mesh profile. |

# Ethernet Bridging

For security reasons, the Ethernet port on all the MAPs are disabled by default. They can be enabled only by configuring Ethernet bridging on the root and its respective MAP.

Both tagged and untagged packets are supported on secondary Ethernet interfaces.

In a point-to-point bridging scenario, a Cisco Aironet 1500 Series MAP can be used to extend a remote network by using the backhaul radio to bridge multiple segments of a switched network. This is fundamentally a wireless mesh network with one MAP and no WLAN clients. Just as in point-to-multipoint networks, client access can still be provided with Ethernet bridging enabled, although if bridging between buildings, MAP coverage from a high rooftop might not be suitable for client access. To use an Ethernet-bridged application, enable the bridging feature on the RAP and on all the MAPs in that sector.

Ethernet bridging should be enabled for the following scenarios:

- Use mesh nodes as bridges.
- Connect Ethernet devices, such as a video camera on a MAP using its Ethernet port.

**Note** Ensure that Ethernet bridging is enabled for every parent mesh AP taking the path from the mesh AP to the controller.

In a mesh environment with VLAN support for Ethernet bridging, the secondary Ethernet interfaces on MAPs are assigned a VLAN individually from the controller. All the backhaul bridge links, both wired and wireless, are trunk links with all the VLANs enabled. Non-Ethernet bridged traffic, as well as untagged Ethernet bridged traffic travels along the mesh using the native VLAN of the APs in the mesh. It is similar for all the traffic to and from the wireless clients that the APs are servicing. The VLAN-tagged packets are tunneled through AWPP over wireless backhaul links.

### VLAN Tagging for MAP Ethernet Clients

The backhaul interfaces of mesh APs are referred to as primary interfaces, and other interfaces are referred to as secondary interfaces.

Ethernet VLAN tagging allows specific application traffic to be segmented within a wireless mesh network and then forwarded (bridged) to a wired LAN (access mode) or bridged to another wireless mesh network (trunk mode).

# Configuring Ethernet Bridging (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

**Step 3** In **General** tab, enter the **Name** of the mesh profile.

**Step 4** In the **Advanced** tab, check the **VLAN Transparent** check box to enable VLAN transparency.

**Step 5** In **Advanced** tab, check the **Ethernet Bridging** check box.

**Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Ethernet Bridging (CLI)

The Ethernet port on the MAPs are disabled by default. It can be enabled only by configuring Ethernet bridging on the Root AP and the other respective MAPs.

Ethernet bridging can be enabled for the following scenarios:

- To use the mesh nodes as bridges.
- To connect Ethernet devices, such as a video camera, on a MAP using the MAP's Ethernet port.

### Before you begin

- Ensure that you configure the following commands under the mesh profile configuration for Ethernet bridging to be enabled:
  - **ethernet-bridging**: Enables the Ethernet Bridging feature on an AP.
  - **no ethernet-vlan-transparent**: Makes the wireless mesh bridge VLAN aware. Allows VLAN filtering with the following AP command: **[no] mesh ethernet** {**0** | **1** | **2** | **3**} **mode trunk vlan allowed**.

**Note** If you wish to have all the VLANs bridged (where bridge acts like a piece of wire), then you must enable VLAN transparency, which allows all VLANS to pass. If you choose to use VLAN transparent mode, it is best to filter the VLANS on the wired side of the network to avoid unnecessary traffic from flooding the network.

- The switch port to which the Root AP is connected should be configured as the trunk port for Ethernet bridging to work.
- For Bridge mode APs, use the **ap name** *name-of-rap* **mesh vlan-trunking native** *vlan-id* command to configure a trunk VLAN on the corresponding RAP. The Ethernet Bridging feature will not be enabled on the AP without configuring this command.
- For FlexConnect+Brigde APs, configure the native VLAN ID under the corresponding flex profile.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.<br>Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mesh ethernet** {**0** \| **1** \| **2** \| **3**}**mode access** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 mesh ethernet 1 mode access 21` | Configures the Ethernet port of the AP and sets the mode as trunk. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mesh ethernet** {**0** \| **1** \| **2** \| **3**}**mode trunk vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 mesh ethernet 1 mode trunk vlan native 21` | Sets the native VLAN for the trunk port. |
| **Step 4** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mesh ethernet** {**0** \| **1** \| **2** \| **3**}**mode trunk vlan allowed** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 mesh ethernet 1 mode trunk vlan allowed 21` | Configures the allowed VLANs for the trunk port.<br>Permits VLAN filtering on an ethernet port of any Mesh or Root Access Point. Active only when VLAN transparency is disabled in the mesh profile. |

# Mesh Daisy Chaining

Mesh APs have the capability to *daisy chain* APs when they function as MAPs. The *daisy chained* MAPs can either operate the APs as a serial backhaul, allowing different channels for uplink and downlink access, thus improving backhaul bandwidth, or extend universal access. Extending universal access allows you to connect a local mode or FlexConnect mode Mesh AP to the Ethernet port of a MAP, thus extending the network to provide better client access.

Daisy chained APs must be cabled differently depending on how the APs are powered. If an AP is powered using DC power, an Ethernet cable must be connected directly from the LAN port of the Primary AP to the PoE in a port of the Subordinate AP.

The following are the guidelines for the daisy chaining mode:

- Primary MAP should be configured as mesh AP.
- Subordinate MAP should be configured as root AP.
- Daisy chaining should be enabled on both primary and subordinate MAP.
- Ethernet bridging should be enabled on all the APs in the Bridge mode. Enable Ethernet bridging in the mesh profile and map all the bridge mode APs in the sector to the same mesh profile.
- VLAN support should be enabled on the wired root AP, subordinate MAP, and primary MAP along with proper native VLAN configuration.

## Restrictions for Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining

- This feature is applicable to the Cisco Industrial Wireless 3702 AP and Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series APs.
- This feature is applicable to APs operating in Bridge mode and Flex+Bridge mode only.
- In Flex+Bridge mode, if local switching WLAN is enabled, the work group bridge (WGB) multiple VLAN is not supported.

- To support the Ethernet daisy chain topology, you must not connect the Cisco Industrial Wireless 3702 PoE out port to other Cisco Industrial Wireless 3702 PoE in the port, and the power injector must be used as power supply for the AP.
- The network convergence time increases when the number of APs increase in the chain.
- Any EWC capable AP which is part of daisy chaining and has been assigned the RAP role, must be in CAPWAP mode (ap-type capwap).

# Prerequisites for Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining

- Ensure that you have configured the AP role as root AP.
- Ensure that you have enabled Ethernet Bridging and Strict Wired Uplink on the corresponding AP.
- Ensure that you have disabled VLAN transparency.
- To enable VLAN support on each root AP for bridge mode APs, use the **ap name** *name-of-rap* **mesh vlan-trunking [native]** *vlan-id* command to configure a trunk VLAN on the corresponding RAP.
- To enable VLAN support on each root AP, for Flex+Bridge APs, you must configure the native VLAN ID under the corresponding flex profile.
- Ensure that you use a 4-pair cables that support 1000 Mbps. This feature does not work properly with 2-pair cables supporting 100 Mbps.

# Configuring Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining (CLI)

The following section provides information about how to configure the Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining feature on a mesh AP.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile default-ap-profile**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile` | Specifies an AP profile. |
| **Step 3** | **ssid broadcast persistent**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# ssid broadcast persistent` | Configures persistent SSID broadcast and ensures strict wired uplink. RAP will not switch to wireless backhaul when you configure this command. |

# Multicast Over Mesh Ethernet Bridging Network

Mesh multicast modes determine how bridging-enabled APs such as MAP and RAP, send multicast packets among Ethernet LANs within a mesh network. Mesh multicast modes manage only non-CAPWAP multicast traffic. CAPWAP multicast traffic is governed by a different mechanism.

Different mesh multicast modes are available to manage multicast and broadcast packets on all MAPs. When enabled, these modes reduce unnecessary multicast transmissions within the mesh network and conserve backhaul bandwidth.

The mesh multicast modes are:

- Regular mode: Regular mode for multicast is not supported on Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series Outdoor Access Points on EWC.
- In-only mode: Multicast packets received from the Ethernet by a MAP are forwarded to the corresponding RAP's Ethernet network. No additional forwarding occurs, which ensures that non-CAPWAP multicasts received by the RAP are not sent back to the MAP Ethernet networks within the mesh network (their point of origin), and MAP to MAP multicasts do not occur because such multicasts are filtered out.
- In-out mode: The RAP and MAP both multicast but in a different manner.
  - If multicast packets are received at a MAP over Ethernet, they are sent to the RAP; however, they are not sent to other MAP over Ethernet, and the MAP-to-MAP packets are filtered out of the multicast.
  - If multicast packets are received at a RAP over Ethernet, they are sent to all the MAPs and their respective Ethernet networks. When the in-out mode is in operation, it is important to properly partition your network to ensure that a multicast sent by one RAP is not received by another RAP on the same Ethernet segment and then sent back into the network.

# Configuring Multicast Modes Over Mesh (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Mesh Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Add Mesh Profile** window, click the **General** tab.

**Step 4** Enter a profile name.

**Step 5** Choose one of the following **Multicast Modes**, from the drop-down list:

a) **Regular**: In this mode, data is multicast across the entire mesh network and all its segments by bridging-enabled RAP and MAP.

b) **In**: In this mode, the multicast packets received from the Ethernet by a MAP are forwarded to the corresponding RAP's Ethernet network.

c) **In-Out**: In this mode, both RAP and MAP multicast but in a different manner.

**Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Multicast Modes over Mesh

- If multicast packets are received at a MAP over Ethernet, they are sent to the RAP. However, they are not sent to other MAPs. MAP-to-MAP packets are filtered out of the multicast.
- If multicast packets are received at a RAP over Ethernet, they are sent to all the MAPs and their respective Ethernet networks.
- The *in-out* mode is the default mode. When this *in-out* mode is in operation, it is important to properly partition your network to ensure that a multicast sent by one RAP is not received by another RAP on the same Ethernet segment, and then sent back into the network.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **multicast** {**in-only** \| **in-out** \| **regular**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# multicast regular` | Configures mesh multicast mode. |

# Radio Resource Management on Mesh

The Radio Resource Management (RRM) software embedded in the controller acts as a built-in RF engineer to consistently provide real-time RF management of your wireless network. RRM enables the controller to continually monitor the associated lightweight APs for information on traffic load, interference, noise, coverage, and other nearby APs:

The RRM measurement in the mesh AP backhaul is enabled based on the following conditions:

- Mesh AP has the Root AP role.
- Root AP has joined using Ethernet link.
- Root AP is not serving any child AP.

# Configuring RRM on Mesh Backhaul (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Global Config**.

**Step 2** In the **Backhaul** section, check the **RRM** check box to enable radio resource management on mesh.

**Step 3** Click **Apply**.

# Configuring RRM on Mesh Backhaul (CLI)

The RRM measurement in the mesh AP backhaul is enabled based on the following conditions:

- Mesh AP has the Root AP role.
- Root AP has joined using an Ethernet link.
- Root AP is not serving any child AP.

**Note** After RRM is enabled on the mesh backhaul, the RRM noise information reported by the APs is only available for the RAP that has joined over an Ethernet link and which has no child MAPs connected.

Follow the procedure given below to enable RRM in the mesh backhaul:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless mesh backhaul rrm**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless mesh backhaul rrm` | Configures RRM on the mesh backhaul. |

# Mesh Leaf Node

You can configure a MAP with lower performance to work only as a leaf node. When the mesh network is formed and converged, the leaf node can only work as a child MAP, and cannot be selected by other MAPs as a parent MAP, thus ensuring that the wireless backhaul performance is not downgraded.

# Configuring the Mesh Leaf Node (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** Click the Access Point.

**Step 3** In the **Mesh** tab, check the **Block Child** check box.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring the Mesh Leaf Node (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mesh block-child**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# #ap name ap1 mesh block-child` | Sets the AP to work only as a leaf node. This AP cannot be selected by other MAPs as a parent MAP.<br>**Note**<br>Use the **no** form of this command to change it to a regular AP. |

# Flex+Bridge Mode

Flex+Bridge mode is used to enable FlexConnect capabilities on mesh (bridge mode) APs. Mesh APs inherit VLANs from the root AP that is connected to it.

Any EWC capable AP in Flex mode connected to a MAP, should be in CAPWAP mode (AP-type CAPWAP).

You can enable or disable VLAN trunking and configure a native VLAN ID on each AP for any of the following modes:

- FlexConnect
- Flex+Bridge (FlexConnect+Mesh)

# Backhaul Client Access

When Backhaul Client Access is enabled, it allows wireless client association over the backhaul radio. The backhaul radio can be a 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz radio. This means that a backhaul radio can carry both backhaul traffic and client traffic.

When Backhaul Client Access is disabled, only backhaul traffic is sent over the backhaul radio, and client association is performed only over the access radio.



**Note** Backhaul Client Access is disabled by default. After the Backhaul Client Access is enabled, all the MAPs, except subordinate AP and its child APs in daisy-chained deployment, reboot.

## Configuring Backhaul Client Access (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**

**Step 2** Choose a profile.

**Step 3** In **General** tab, check the **Backhaul Client Access** check box.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

## Configuring Backhaul Client Access (CLI)



**Note** Backhaul client access is disabled by default. After it is enabled, all the MAPs, except subordinate AP and its child APs in daisy-chained deployment, reboot.

Follow the procedure given below to enable backhaul client access on a mesh profile:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:** | Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | |
| **Step 3** | **client-access**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# client-access` | Configures backhaul with client access AP. |

# Background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode (Concept)

Cisco mesh access points (MAPs) perform the following functions:

- Interconnects over wireless links in a tree topology,
- Uses Adaptive Wireless Path Protocol (AWPP) to create and maintain their topology, and
- Supports additional features: Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Finding.

When a MAP comes up, it tries to look for another MAP (parent) to join and reach the gateway through a RAP. The same happens when a MAP loses connectivity with its existing parent. This procedure is known as mesh tree convergence.

### Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Finding feature

The Background Scanning feature:

- Updates MAPs about neighboring channels and helps find new parents swiftly by scanning all available channels.
- Minimizes the time spent during scan-and-seek phases when a MAP loses its current parent.
- Does not speed up the authentication process to the new parent.

A child MAP maintains its uplink with its parent by using the AWPP adjacency request/response messages, which act as keepalive signals. If consecutive response messages are lost, the parent is considered lost, and the child MAP searches for a new parent. A MAP maintains a list of neighbors on the current ON channel. If the AP loses its current parent, it roams to the next best potential neighbor. If no other neighbors are found, the AP scans or seeks across all the channels or subset channels to find a parent. This process is time-consuming.

The MAP Fast Ancestor Finding feature enables a method to reduce the need for sending or receiving beacons during network formation, while starting or deploying a new mesh network.

# Configure AP fast ancestor find mode (GUI)

Enable a child MAP to synchronize with any neighbor parent MAP across all channels.

Use the GUI to configure the MAP Fast Ancestor Find feature within a mesh profile.

Follow these steps to configure AP fast ancestor find mode through the GUI:

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Mesh Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Add Mesh Profile** window, click the **General** tab.

**Step 4** In the **Name** field, enter the mesh profile name.

**Step 5** In the **Description** field, enter a description for the mesh profile.

**Step 6** Check the **MAP Fast Ancestor Find** check box to enable a MAP (child) to synchronize with any neighbor MAP (parent) across all channels.

**Step 7** Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.

The MAP Fast Ancestor Find feature is enabled for the specified mesh profile.

# Configuring Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Find Mode (Task)

Configure background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode using the CLI within a mesh profile for detailed configuration options.

Follow these steps to configure background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode through the CLI:

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Configure a mesh profile and enter mesh profile configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# wireless profile mesh default-mesh-profile
```

**Step 3** Enable background scanning in mesh deployments.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# background-scanning
```

**Note**
In Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series Access Points, a dedicated RF ASIC radio is used for background scanning.

**Step 4** Enable fast ancestor find mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# map-fast-ancestor-find
```

Background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode are enabled for the specified mesh profile.

# Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul Per Access Point (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.
The **All Access Points** section, which lists all the configured APs in the network, is displayed with their corresponding details.

**Step 2** Click the configured mesh AP.
The **Edit AP** window is displayed.

**Step 3** Choose the **Mesh** tab.

**Step 4** In the **General** section, under the **Backhaul** section, the default **Backhaul Radio Type**, **Backhaul Slot ID**, and **Rate Types** field details are displayed. Note that the values for **Backhaul Radio Type** and **Backhaul Slot ID** can be changed only for a root AP.

**Step 5** From the **Rate Types** drop-down list, choose the backhaul rate type.

Based on the choice, enter the details for the corresponding fields that are displayed. The backhaul interface varies between auto and 802.11a/b/g/n/ac/ax rates depending upon the AP. Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Outdoor Access Point is the only AP that support 11ax backhaul rates on the mesh backhaul.

**Step 6** In the **Backhaul MCS Index** field, enter the Modulation Coding Scheme (MCS) rate, that can be transmitted between the APs. The valid range is from 0 to 11, on both the bands.

**Step 7** In the **Spatial Stream** field, enter the number of spatial streams that are supported. The maximum number of spatial streams supported on a single radio in a 5-GHz radio band is 8, while 2.4-GHz radio band supports 4 spatial streams.

**Step 8** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul in Mesh Profile (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Mesh Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Add Mesh Profile** window, click the **General** tab.

**Step 4** In the **Name** field, enter the mesh profile name.

**Step 5** Click the **Advanced** tab.

**Step 6** In the **5 GHz Band Backhaul** section and the **2.4 GHz Band Backhaul** section, choose the **dot11ax** backhaul rate type from **Rate Types** the drop-down list.

**Note**
Cisco Catalyst 9124AXI/D Series outdoor Access Point is the only AP to support 11ax backhaul rates on the mesh backhaul.

**Step 7** In the **Dot11ax MCS index** field, specify the MCS rate at which data can be transmitted between the APs. The value range is between 0 to 11, on both the radio bands.

**Step 8** In the **Spatial Stream** field, enter a value. The maximum number of spatial streams supported on a single radio in a 5-GHz radio band is 8, while 2.4- GHz radio band supports 4 spatial streams.

**Step 9** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Data Rate Per AP (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mesh backhaul rate dot11ax mcs** *<0-11>* **ss** *<1-8>*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 mesh backhaul rate dot11ax 5 ss 4` | Configures mesh backhaul 11ax rates for 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands. |

# Configuring Data Rate Using Mesh Profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:** | Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | |
| **Step 3** | **backhaul rate dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**}**dot11ax mcs** *<0-11>* **spatial-stream** *<1-8>*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# backhaul rate dot11 5ghz dot11ax mcs 5 spatial-stream 6`<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# backhaul rate dot11 24ghz dot11ax mcs 5 spatial-stream 4` | Configures backhaul transmission rate for 2.4-GHz band and 5-GHz band. The 802.11ax spatial stream value for 2.4-GHz band is from 1 to 4, and the spatial stream value for the 5-GHz band is from 1to 8. |

# Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

**Step 3** In **General** tab, enter the **Name** of the mesh profile.

**Step 4** In **Advanced** tab, choose the rate types from the **Rate Types** drop-down list for **5 GHz Band Backhaul** and **2.4 GHz Band Backhaul**.

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to set the mesh backhaul rate.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *rap-name* **mesh backhaul radio dot11**{**24ghz** \| **5ghz**} [**slot** *slot-id*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name rap1 mesh backhaul radio dot11 24ghz slot 2` | Sets the mesh backhaul radio slot. |

# Configuring Wireless Backhaul Data Rate (CLI)

Backhaul is used to create a wireless connection between APs. A backhaul interface can be 802.11bg/a/n/ac depending on the AP. The rate selection provides for effective use of the available RF spectrum. Data rates can also affect the RF coverage and network performance. Lower data rates, for example, 6 Mbps, can extend farther from the AP than can have higher data rates, for example, 1300 Mbps. As a result, the data rate affects cell coverage, and consequently, the number of APs required.



**Note** You can configure backhaul data rate, preferably, through the mesh profile. In certain cases, where a specific data rate is needed, use the command to configure the data rate per AP.

Follow the procedure given below to configure wireless backhaul data rate in privileged EXEC mode or in mesh profile configuration mode.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mesh backhaul rate** {**auto** \| **dot11abg** \| **dot11ac** \|**dot11n**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# #ap name ap1 mesh backhaul rate auto` | Configures backhaul transmission rate. |
| **Step 3** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **backhaul rate dot11** {**24ghz** \| **5ghz**}**dot11n RATE_6M**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# backhaul rate dot11 5ghz dot11n mcs 31` | Configures backhaul transmission rate.<br>**Note**<br>Note that the rate configured on the AP (step 2) should match with the rate configured on the mesh profile (step4). |

# Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Monitoring** > **Wireless** > **AP Statistics** > **General**.

**Step 2** Click the Access Point.

**Step 3** Choose **Mesh** > **Neighbor** > **Linktest**.

**Step 4** Choose the desired values from the **Date Rates**, **Packets to be sent (per second)**, **Packet Size (bytes)** and **Test Duration (seconds)** drop-down lists..

**Step 5** Click **Start**.

# Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul

Follow the procedure given below to trigger linktest between neighbor mesh APs.



**Note** Use the **test mesh linktest mac-address** *neighbor-ap-mac* **rate** *data-rate* **fps** *frames-per-second* **frame-size** *frame-size* command to perform link test from an AP.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mesh linktest** *dest-ap-mac data-rate packet-per-sec packet-size test-duration*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# #ap name ap1 mesh linktest F866.F267.7DFB 24 234 1200 200` | Sets link test parameters. |

# Mesh CAC

The Call Admission Control (CAC) enables a mesh access point to maintain controlled quality of service (QoS) on the controller to manage voice quality on the mesh network. Bandwidth-based, or static CAC enables the client to specify how much bandwidth or shared medium time is required to accept a new call. Each access

point determines whether it is capable of accommodating a particular call by looking at the bandwidth available and compares it against the bandwidth required for the call. If there is not enough bandwidth available to maintain the maximum allowed number of calls with acceptable quality, the mesh access point rejects the call.

- When client roams from one MAP to another in same site, bandwidth availability is checked again in the new tree for the active calls.
- When MAP roams to new parent, the active calls are not terminated and it continues to be active with other active calls in the sub tree.
- High Availability (HA) for MAPs is not supported; calls attached to MAP's access radio are terminated on HA switchover.
- HA for RAP is supported, hence calls attached to RAP's access radio continues to be active in new controller after switchover.
- Mesh CAC algorithm is applicable only for voice calls.
- For Mesh backhaul radio bandwidth calculation, static CAC is applied. Load-based CAC is not used as the APs do not support load-based CAC in Mesh backhaul.
- Calls are allowed based on available bandwidth on a radio. Airtime Fairness (ATF) is not accounted for call admission and the calls that fall under ATF policy are given bandwidth as per ATF weight.

Mesh CAC is not supported for the following scenarios.

- APs in a Mesh tree assigned with different site tags.
- APs in a Mesh tree assigned with the default site tag.

# Configuring Mesh CAC (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless mesh cac**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless mesh cac` | Enables mesh CAC mode. |

# Speeding up Mesh Network Recovery Through Fast Detection of Uplink Gateway Reachability Failure

In all 802.11ac Wave 2 APs, the speed of mesh network recovery mechanism is increased through fast detection of uplink gateway reachability failure. The uplink gateway reachability of the mesh APs is checked using ICMP ping to the default gateway, either IPv4 or IPv6.

Mesh AP triggers the reachability check in the following two scenarios:

- After a new uplink is selected, until the mesh AP joins the controller

  After a new uplink is selected, the mesh AP has a window of 45 seconds to reach gateway (via static IP or DHCP) through the selected uplink. If the mesh AP still fails to reach the gateway after 45 seconds, the current uplink is in blocked list and the uplink selection process is restarted. If the AP joins the controller within this 45-second window, the reachability check is stopped. Subsequently, there is no gateway reachability check during normal operations.

- As soon as the mesh AP times out its connection with the controller

  After the mesh AP times out its connection with the controller and the AP fails to reach the gateway in 5 seconds, the current uplink is immediately added to the blocked list and the uplink selection process is restarted.

# Fast Teardown for a Mesh Deployment

In mesh deployments, sometimes a root access point connects to the controller through a nonreliable link such as a wireless microwave link. If a data uplink failure occurs, client loses connectivity to detect the cause of the failure. The feature allows you to detect the root access point uplink failure faster in a mesh deployment and address fast teardown of the mesh network when uplink failure occurs on the root access point.

**Note** Fast Teardown for Mesh APs is not supported on Cisco Industrial Wireless (IW) 3702 Access Points.

## Enabling Wireless Mesh Profile

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:** | Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | |
| **Step 3** | **fast-teardown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-profile-mesh)# fast-teardown` | Enables the fast teardown of mesh network and configures the feature's parameter. |

# Associating Wireless Mesh to an AP Profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap profile** *ap-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile` | Configures the AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **mesh-profile** *mesh-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-profile)# mesh-profile test1` | Configures the mesh profile in AP profile configuration mode. |

# Configuring Fast Teardown for a Mesh AP Profile (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Add Mesh Profile** window, click **Advanced**.

**Step 4** Select a security mode, authentication method, and authorization method.

**Step 5** Enable **Ethernet bridging**, if required.

**Step 6** Enter the bridge group name and enable Strict Match BGN.

**Step 7** Select a band backhaul transmission rate for your radio.

**Step 8** Preform the following action in the **Fast Roaming** section:

- Check the **Fast Teardown** check box to detect the root access point uplink failure faster in a mesh deployment and to address fast teardown of the mesh network when an uplink failure occurs.
- In the **Number of Retries** field, enter the number of retries allowed until gateway is considered unreachable. The valid range is between 1 to 10.
- In the **Interval value** field, enter the retry value. The valid range is between 1 to 10 seconds.
- In the **Latency Threshold** field, enter the threshold for a round-trip latency between the AP and the controller. The valid range is between 1 and 500 milliseconds.
- In the **Latency Exceeded Threshold** field, enter the latency interval in which at least one ping must succeed in less than the specified time. The valid range is between 1 to 30 seconds.
- In the **Uplink Recovery Interval** field, enter the time during which root access point uplink must be stable in order to accept the child connections. The valid range is between 1 and 3600 seconds.

**Step 9** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Fast Teardown for a Mesh AP Profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | Configures a mesh profile and enters the mesh profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **fast-teardown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# fast-teardown` | Enables the fast teardown of mesh network and configures the feature's parameter. |
| **Step 4** | **enabled**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# enabled` | Enables the fast teardown feature. |
| **Step 5** | **interval** *duration*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# interval 5` | (Optional) Configures the retry interval. The valid values range between 1 and 10 seconds. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 6** | **latency-exceeded-threshold** *duration*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# latency-exceeded-threshold 20` | (Optional) Specifies the latency interval at which at least one ping must succeed in less than threshold time. The valid values range between 1 and 30 seconds. |
| **Step 7** | **latency-threshold** *threshold range*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# latency-threshold 20` | (Optional) Specifies the latency threshold. The valid values range between 1 and 500 milliseconds. |
| **Step 8** | **retries** *retry limit*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# retries 1` | (Optional) Specifies the number of retries until the gateway is considered unreachable. The valid values range between 1 and 10. |
| **Step 9** | **uplink-recovery-intervals** *recovery interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# uplink-recovery-intervals 1` | (Optional) Specifies the time during which root access point uplink has to be stable to accept child connections. The valid values range between 1 and 3600 seconds. |

## Verifying Fast Teardown with Default Mesh Profile

To verify the fast teardown with the default-mesh-profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed default-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name            default-mesh-profile
------------------------------------------------
Fast Teardown                          : ENABLED
Number of Retries                      : 4
Interval in sec                        : 1
Latency Threshold in msec              : 10
Latency Exceeded Threshold in sec      : 8
Uplink Recovery Interval in sec        : 60
```

# Configuring Subset Channel Synchronization

All the channels used by all the RAPs in a controller are sent to all the MAPs for future seek and convergence. The controller keeps a list of the subset channels for each Bridge Group Name (BGN). The list of subset channels are also shared across all the controllers in a mobility group.

Subset channel list is list of channels where RAP of particular BGN are operating. This list is communicated to all the MAPs within and across the controllers. The idea of subset channel list is for faster convergence of the Mesh APs. Convergence method can be selected in mesh profile. If the convergence method is not standard then subset channel list is pushed to MAPs.

Follow the procedure given below to configure subset channel synchronization for mobility group.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless mesh subset-channel-sync mac**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless mesh subset-channel-sync` | Configures subset channel synchronization for a mobility group. |

# Selecting a Preferred Parent (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** Click the Access Point.

**Step 3** In the **Mesh** tab, enter the **Preferred Parent MAC**.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Selecting a Preferred Parent (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a preferred parent for a MAP.

Using this mechanism, you can override the AWPP-defined parent selection mechanism and force a mesh AP to go to a preferred parent.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mesh parent preferred** *mac-address*<br>**Example:** | Configures mesh parameters for the AP and sets the mesh-preferred parent MAC address.<br>**Note** |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device# ap name ap1 mesh parent preferred 00:0d:ed:dd:25:8F` | Ensure that you use the radio MAC address of the preferred parent.<br>For Cisco Wave 1 APs, when you configure a preferred parent, ensure that you specify the MAC address of the actual mesh neighbor for the desired parent. This MAC address is the base radio MAC address that has the letter "f" as the final character. For example, if the base radio MAC address is 00:24:13:0f:92:00, then you must specify 00:24:13:0f:92:0f as the preferred parent.<br>`Device# ap name ap1 mesh parent preferred 00:24:13:0f:92:0f`<br>For Cisco Wave 2 APs, when you configure a preferred parent, the MAC address is the base radio MAC address that has "0x11" added to the last two characters. For example, if the base radio MAC address is 00:24:13:0f:92:00, then you must specify 00:24:13:0f:92:11 as the preferred parent.<br>`Device# ap name ap1 mesh parent preferred 00:24:13:0f:92:11` |

# Changing the Role of an AP (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.

**Step 2** Click the **Access Point**.

**Step 3** In the **Mesh** tab, choose **Root** or **Mesh** from the **Role** drop-down list.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

After the role change is triggered, the AP reboots.

# Changing the Role of an AP (CLI)

Follow the procedure to change the AP from MAP to RAP or vice-versa.

By default, APs join the controller in a mesh AP role.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap name** *ap-name* **role** {**mesh-ap** \| **root-ap**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# #ap name ap1 root-ap` | Changes the role for the Cisco bridge mode APs. After the role change is triggered, the AP reboots. |

# Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Mesh** > **Profiles**

**Step 2** Choose a profile.

**Step 3** In **General** tab, check the **Battery State for an AP** check box.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP

Some Cisco outdoor APs come with the option of battery backup. There is also a POE-out port that can power a video surveillance camera. The integrated battery can be used for temporary backup power during external power interruptions.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile mesh** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1` | Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **battery-state**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# battery-state` | Configures the battery state for an AP. |

# Verifying Mesh Configuration in Embedded Wireless Controller

## Verifying Mesh Configuration

Use the following **show** commands to verify the various aspects of mesh configuration.

- **show wireless mesh stats** *ap-name*
- **show wireless mesh security-stats** {*all* | *ap-name*}
- **show wireless mesh queue-stats** {*all* | *ap-name*}
- **show wireless mesh per-stats summary** {*all* | *ap-name*}
- **show wireless mesh neighbor summary** {*all* | *ap-name*}
- **show wireless mesh neighbor detail** *ap-name*
- **show wireless mesh ap summary**
- **show wireless mesh ap tree**
- **show wireless mesh ap backhaul**
- **show wireless mesh config**
- **show wireless mesh convergence detail** *bridge-group-name*
- **show wireless mesh convergence subset-channels**
- **show wireless mesh neighbor**
- **show wireless profile mesh detailed** *mesh-profile-name*
- **show wireless stats mesh security**
- **show wireless stats mesh queue**
- **show wireless stats mesh packet error**
- **show wireless mesh ap summary**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh backhaul**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh neighbor detail**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh path**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh stats packet error**

- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh stats queue**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh stats security**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh stats**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh bhrate**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **config ethernet**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **cablemodem**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **environment**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **gps location**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **environment**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh linktest data** *dest-mac*
- **show ap environment**
- **show ap gps location**

For details about these commands, see the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Command Reference document.

### MAC Authorization

Use the following **show** command to verify the MAC authorization configuration:

```
Device# show run aaa
aaa authentication dot1x CENTRAL_LOCAL local
aaa authorization credential-download CENTRAL_AUTHOR local
username 002cc8de4f31 mac
username 00425a0a53b1 mac

ewlc_eft#sh wireless profile mesh detailed madhu-mesh-profile

Mesh Profile Name             : abc-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                   :
Bridge Group Name             : bgn-abbc
Strict match BGN              : ENABLED
Amsdu                         : ENABLED
...
Battery State                 : ENABLED
Authorization Method          : CENTRAL_AUTHOR
Authentication Method         : CENTRAL_LOCAL
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg)    : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)     : 802.11n mcs15
```

### PSK Provisioning

Use the following **show** command to verify PSK provisioning configuration:

```
Device# show wireless mesh config
Mesh Config
  Backhaul RRM                                  : ENABLED
  Mesh CAC                                      : DISABLED
  Outdoor Ext. UNII B Domain channels(for BH)   : ENABLED
  Mesh Ethernet Bridging STP BPDU Allowed       : ENABLED
```

```
  Rap Channel Sync                              : ENABLED

Mesh Alarm Criteria
  Max Hop Count                                 :  4
  Recommended Max Children for MAP              : 10
  Recommended Max Children for RAP              : 20
  Low Link SNR                                  : 12
  High Link SNR                                 : 60
  Max Association Number                        : 10
  Parent Change Number                          :  3

Mesh PSK Config
  PSK Provisioning                              : ENABLED
  Default PSK                                   : ENABLED
  PSK In-use key number                         : 1
  Provisioned PSKs(Maximum 5)

  Index    Description
  ------   ------------
  1         key1
```

### Bridge Group Name

Use the following **show** command to verify the bridge group name configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name             : abc-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                   :
Bridge Group Name             : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN              : ENABLED
Amsdu                         : ENABLED
Background Scan               : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification   : DISABLED
Backhaul client access        : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging             : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent     : DISABLED
Full Sector DFS               : ENABLED
IDS                           : ENABLED
Multicast Mode                : In-Out
Range in feet                 : 12000
Security Mode                 : EAP
Convergence Method            : Fast
LSC only Authentication       : DISABLED
Battery State                 : ENABLED
Authorization Method          : CENTRAL_AUTHOR
Authentication Method         : CENTRAL_LOCAL
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg)    : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)     : 802.11n mcs15
```

### Backhaul Client Access

Use the following **show** command to verify the backhaul client access configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name             : abc-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                   :
Bridge Group Name             : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN              : ENABLED
Amsdu                         : ENABLED
Background Scan               : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification   : DISABLED
```

```
Backhaul client access        : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging             : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent     : DISABLED
...
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg)    : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)     : 802.11n mcs15
```

### Wireless Backhaul Data Rate

Use the following **show** command to verify the wireless backhaul data rate configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name             : abc-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                   :
Bridge Group Name             : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN              : ENABLED
...
Authorization Method          : CENTRAL_AUTHOR
Authentication Method         : CENTRAL_LOCAL
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg)    : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)     : 802.11n mcs15
```

### Dynamic Frequency Selection

Use the following **show** command to verify the dynamic frequency selection configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name             : abc-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                   :
Bridge Group Name             : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN              : ENABLED
Amsdu                         : ENABLED
Background Scan               : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification   : DISABLED
Backhaul client access        : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging             : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent     : DISABLED
Full Sector DFS               : ENABLED
...
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)     : 802.11n mcs15
```

### Intrusion Detection System

Use the following **show** command to verify the wireless backhaul data rate configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name             : abc-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                   :
Bridge Group Name             : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN              : ENABLED
Amsdu                         : ENABLED
Background Scan               : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification   : DISABLED
Backhaul client access        : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging             : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent     : DISABLED
Full Sector DFS               : ENABLED
IDS                           : ENABLED
Multicast Mode                : In-Out
```

```
...
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)     : 802.11n mcs15
```

### Ethernet Bridging

Use the following **show** command to verify ethernet bridging configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name             : abc-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                   :
Bridge Group Name             : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN              : ENABLED
Amsdu                         : ENABLED
Background Scan               : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification   : DISABLED
Backhaul client access        : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging             : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent     : DISABLED
Full Sector DFS               : ENABLED
IDS                           : ENABLED
Multicast Mode                : In-Out
...
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)     : 802.11n mcs15
```

### Multicast over Mesh

Use the following **show** command to verify multicast over Mesh configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name             : abc-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                   :
Bridge Group Name             : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN              : ENABLED
Amsdu                         : ENABLED
Background Scan               : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification   : DISABLED
Backhaul client access        : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging             : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent     : DISABLED
Full Sector DFS               : ENABLED
IDS                           : ENABLED
Multicast Mode                : In-Out
...
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)     : 802.11n mcs15
```

### RRM on Mesh Backhaul

Use the following **show** command to verify RRM on Mesh backhaul configuration:

```
Device# show wireless mesh config
Mesh Config
  Backhaul RRM                                  : ENABLED
  Mesh CAC                                      : DISABLED
  Outdoor Ext. UNII B Domain channels(for BH)   : ENABLED
  Mesh Ethernet Bridging STP BPDU Allowed       : ENABLED
  Rap Channel Sync                              : ENABLED

Mesh Alarm Criteria
  Max Hop Count                                 :  4
  Recommended Max Children for MAP              : 10
  Recommended Max Children for RAP              : 20
```

```
  Low Link SNR                                    : 12
  High Link SNR                                   : 60
  Max Association Number                          : 10
  Parent Change Number                            :  3

Mesh PSK Config
  PSK Provisioning                                : ENABLED
  Default PSK                                     : ENABLED
  PSK In-use key number                           : 1
  Provisioned PSKs(Maximum 5)

  Index    Description
  ------   ------------
  1         key1
```

### Preferred Parent Selection

Use the following **show** command to verify preferred parent configuration:

```
Device# show wireless mesh ap tree
=====================================================================
AP Name [Hop Ctr,Link SNR,BG Name,Channel,Pref Parent,Chan Util,Clients]
=====================================================================

[Sector 1]
-----------
1542-RAP [0, 0, bgn-madhu, (165), 0000.0000.0000, 1%, 0]
   |-MAP-2700 [1, 67, bgn-madhu, (165), 7070.8b7a.6fb8, 0%, 0]

Number of Bridge APs : 2
Number of RAPs : 1
Number of MAPs : 1

(*)  Wait for 3 minutes to update or Ethernet Connected Mesh AP.
(**) Not in this Controller
```

### AP Role Change

Use the following **show** command to verify AP role change configuration:

```
Device# show wireless mesh ap summary
AP Name                          AP Model BVI MAC        BGN        AP Role
-------                          -------- -------        ---        -------
1542-RAP                         1542D    002c.c8de.1338 bgn-abc  Root AP
MAP-2700                         2702I    500f.8095.01e4 bgn-abc  Mesh AP

Number of Bridge APs         :   2
Number of RAPs               :   1
Number of MAPs               :   1
Number of Flex+Bridge APs    :   0
Number of Flex+Bridge RAPs   :   0
Number of Flex+Bridge MAPs   :   0
```

### Mesh Leaf Node

Use the following **show** command to verify mesh leaf node configuration:

```
Device# show ap name MAP-2700 config general
Cisco AP Name   : MAP-2700
================================================

Cisco AP Identifier                             : 7070.8bbc.d3e0
Country Code                                    : Multiple Countries : IN,US,IO,J4
```

```
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country            : 802.11bg:-AEJPQU   802.11a:-ABDJNPQU
AP Country Code                                 : IN  - India
AP Regulatory Domain
  Slot 0                                        : -A
  Slot 1                                        : -D
MAC Address                                     : 500f.8095.01e4
...
AP Mode                                         : Bridge
Mesh profile name                               : abc-mesh-profile
AP Role                                         : Mesh AP
Backhaul radio type                             : 802.11a
Backhaul slot id                                : 1
Backhaul tx rate                                : auto
Ethernet Bridging                               : Enabled
Daisy Chaining                                  : Disabled
Strict Daisy Rap                                : Disabled
Bridge Group Name                               : bgn-abc
Strict-Matching BGN                             : Enabled
Preferred Parent Address                        : 7070.8b7a.6fb8
Block child state                               : Disabled
PSK Key Timestamp                               : Not Configured
...
FIPS status                                     : Disabled
WLANCC status                                   : Disabled
GAS rate limit Admin status                     : Disabled
WPA3 Capability                                 : Disabled
EWC-AP Capability                                : Disabled
AWIPS Capability                                : Disabled
Proxy Hostname                                  : Not Configured
Proxy Port                                      : Not Configured
Proxy NO_PROXY list                             : Not Configured
GRPC server status                              : Disabled
```

### Subset Channel Synchronization

Use the following **show** command to verify the subset channel synchronization configuration:

```
Device# show wireless mesh config
Mesh Config
  Backhaul RRM                                  : ENABLED
  Mesh CAC                                      : DISABLED
  Outdoor Ext. UNII B Domain channels(for BH)   : ENABLED
  Mesh Ethernet Bridging STP BPDU Allowed       : ENABLED
  Rap Channel Sync                              : ENABLED

Mesh Alarm Criteria
  Max Hop Count                                 :  4
  Recommended Max Children for MAP              : 10
  Recommended Max Children for RAP              : 20
  Low Link SNR                                  : 12
  High Link SNR                                 : 60
  Max Association Number                        : 10
  Parent Change Number                          :  3

Mesh PSK Config
  PSK Provisioning                              : ENABLED
  Default PSK                                   : ENABLED
  PSK In-use key number                         : 1
  Provisioned PSKs(Maximum 5)

  Index    Description
  ------   ------------
  1         key1
```

### Provisioning LSC for Bridge-Mode and Mesh APs

Use the following **show** command to verify the provisioning LSC for Bridge-Mode and Mesh AP configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed default-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name             : default-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                   : default mesh profile
Bridge Group Name             : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN              : DISABLED
Amsdu                         : ENABLED
Background Scan               : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification   : ENABLED
Backhaul client access        : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging             : DISABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent     : ENABLED
Full Sector DFS               : ENABLED
IDS                           : DISABLED
Multicast Mode                : In-Out
Range in feet                 : 12000
Security Mode                 : EAP
Convergence Method            : Fast
LSC only Authentication       : DISABLED
Battery State                 : ENABLED
Authorization Method          : default
Authentication Method         : default
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg)    : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)     : auto
```

### Specify the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP

Use the following **show** command to verify the backhaul slot for the Root AP configuration:

```
Device# show ap name 1542-RAP mesh backhaul
MAC Address : 380e.4d85.5e60
  Current Backhaul Slot: 1
  Radio Type: 0
  Radio Subband: All
  Mesh Radio Role: DOWNLINK
  Administrative State: Enabled
  Operation State: Up
  Current Tx Power Level:
  Current Channel: (165)
  Antenna Type: N/A
  Internal Antenna Gain (in .5 dBm units): 18
```

### Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul

Use the following **show** command to verify the use of link test on mesh backhaul configuration:

```
Device# show ap name 1542-RAP mesh linktest data 7070.8bbc.d3ef
380e.4d85.5e60 ==> 7070.8bbc.d3ef

Started at : 05/11/2020 20:56:28
Status: In progress

Configuration:
==============
Data rate:  Mbps
Packets per sec: : 234
Packet Size: : 1200
Duration: : 200
```

### Mesh CAC

Use the following **show** command to verify mesh CAC configuration:

```
Device# show wireless mesh config
Mesh Config
  Backhaul RRM                                    : ENABLED
  Mesh CAC                                        : DISABLED
  Outdoor Ext. UNII B Domain channels(for BH)     : ENABLED
  Mesh Ethernet Bridging STP BPDU Allowed         : ENABLED
  Rap Channel Sync                                : ENABLED

Mesh Alarm Criteria
  Max Hop Count                                   :  4
  Recommended Max Children for MAP                : 10
  Recommended Max Children for RAP                : 20
  Low Link SNR                                    : 12
  High Link SNR                                   : 60
  Max Association Number                          : 10
  Parent Change Number                            :  3

Mesh PSK Config
  PSK Provisioning                                : ENABLED
  Default PSK                                     : ENABLED
  PSK In-use key number                           : 1
  Provisioned PSKs(Maximum 5)

  Index    Description
  ------   ------------
  1         key1
```

# Verifying Mesh Convergence

The following is a sample output of the **show wireless profile mesh detailed** command that displays the mesh convergence method used:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed default-mesh-profile

Mesh Profile Name             : default-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                 : default mesh profile
Convergence Method          : Fast
```

The following is a sample output of the **show wireless mesh convergence subset-channels** command that displays the subset channels of the selected bridge group name:

```
Device# show wireless mesh convergence subset-channels

Bridge group name                Channel
-----------------------------------------
Default                          132
```

# Verifying Mesh Backhaul

The following is a sample output of the **show ap name mesh backhaul** command that shows details of the mesh backhaul at 2.4 GHz:

```
Device# show ap name test-ap mesh backhaul

MAC Address : xxxx.xxxx.xxxx
Current Backhaul Slot: 0
```

```
Radio Type: 0
Radio Subband: All
Mesh Radio Role: DOWNLINK
Administrative State: Enabled
Operation State: Up
Current Tx Power Level:
Current Channel: (11)
Antenna Type: N/A
Internal Antenna Gain (in .5 dBm units): 0
```

The following is a sample output of the **show wireless mesh ap backhaul** command that shows the mesh backhaul details:

```
Device# show wireless mesh ap backhaul

MAC Address : xxxx.xxxx.0x11
Current Backhaul Slot: 1
Radio Type: Main
Radio Subband: All
Mesh Radio Role: Downlink
Administrative State: Enabled
Operation State: Up
Current Tx Power Level: 6
Current Channel: (100)*
Antenna Type: N/A
Internal Antenna Gain (in .5 dBm units): 10
```

The following is a sample output of the **show ap summary** command that shows the radio MAC address and the corresponding AP name:

```
Device# show ap summary
Number of APs: 1
AP Name    Slots  AP Model         Ethernet       MAC Radio MAC  Location         Country
IP Address   State
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
AP-Cisco-1  2     AIR-APXXXXX-E-K9 xxxx.xxxx.xxd4 xxxx.xxxx.0x11 default location  DE
10.11.70.170 Registered
```

# Verifying Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining

- The following is a sample output of the **show ap config general** command that displays whether a persistent SSID is configured for an AP.

  ```
  Device# show ap 3702-RAP config general

  Persistent SSID Broadcast                  Enabled/Disabled
  ```

- The following is a sample output of the **show wireless mesh persistent-ssid-broadcast summary** command that displays the persistent SSID broadcast status of all the bridge RAPs.

  ```
  Device# show wireless mesh persistent-ssid-broadcast summary

   AP Name     AP Model BVI MAC        BGN        AP Role               Persistent SSID
  state
  -------     -------- -------       ---       -------             ----------------------
  3702-RAP     3702     5c71.0d07.db50 ap_name    Root AP              Enabled
  1560-RAP    1562E    380e.4dbf.c6b0 ap_name    Root AP             Disabled
  ```

# Verifying Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul

To verify the 802.11ax rates on mesh backhaul in the mesh profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed default-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name             : default-mesh-profile
-------------------------------------------------
Description                   : default mesh profile
.
.
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg)    : 802.11ax mcs7 ss1
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)     : 802.11ax mcs9 ss2
```

To verify the 802.11ax rates on mesh backhaul in the general configuration of an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general
Cisco AP Identifier            : 5c71.0d17.49e0
.
.
Backhaul slot id               : 1
Backhaul tx rate               : 802.11ax mcs7 ss1
```

# Verify background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find

To verify if the Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Find features are enabled, run the **show wireless profile mesh detailed** command:

### Verify background scan

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed Mesh_Profile | i Background Scan
Background Scan               : ENABLED
```

### Verify MAP fast ancestor find

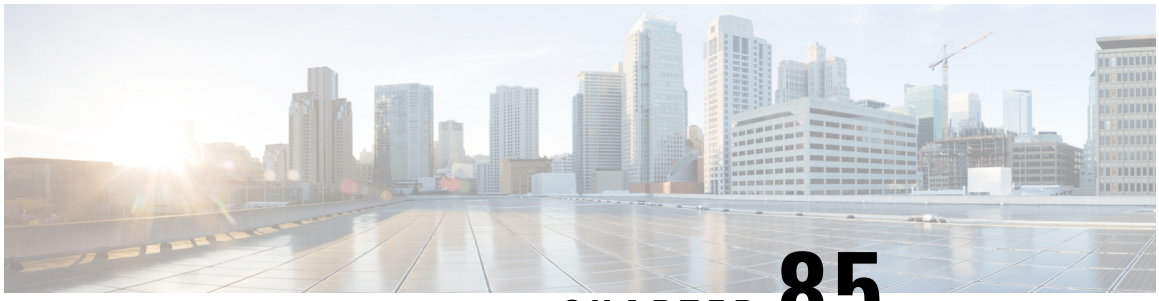
```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed Mesh_Profile | i MAP fast ancestor find
MAP fast ancestor find        : ENABLED
```



# PART XIII

# WLAN


- WLANs, on page 831
- Network Access Server Identifier, on page 845
- DHCP for WLANs, on page 851
- WLAN Security, on page 853
- Workgroup Bridges, on page 857
- Device Analytics, on page 865
- Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support, on page 871
- Peer-to-Peer Client Support, on page 879
- 802.11r BSS Fast Transition, on page 881
- Assisted Roaming, on page 889
- 802.11v, on page 893
- 802.11w, on page 897
- 802.11ax Per WLAN, on page 905
- Deny Wireless Client Session Establishment Using Calendar Profiles, on page 909
- Ethernet over GRE Tunnels, on page 919
- Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE, on page 935



CHAPTER 85

# WLANs


- Information About WLANs, on page 831
- Prerequisites for WLANs, on page 834
- Restrictions for WLANs, on page 834
- How to Configure WLANs, on page 835
- Verifying WLAN Properties (CLI), on page 843


# Information About WLANs

This feature enables you to control WLANs for lightweight access points. Each WLAN has a separate WLAN ID, a separate profile name, and a WLAN SSID. All access points can advertise up to 16 WLANs. However, you can create up to 4096 WLANs and then selectively advertise these WLANs (using profiles and tags) to different APs for better manageability.

You can configure WLANs with different SSIDs or with the same SSID. An SSID identifies the specific wireless network that you want the controller to access.

## Band Selection

Band select enables client radios that are capable of dual-band (2.4 and 5-GHz) operations to move to a less congested 5-GHz access point. The 2.4-GHz band is often congested. Clients on this band typically experience interference from Bluetooth devices, microwave ovens, and cordless phones as well as co-channel interference from other access points because of the 802.11b/g limit of 3 nonoverlapping channels. To prevent these sources of interference and improve overall network performance, configure band selection on the device.

## Off-Channel Scanning Deferral

A lightweight access point, in normal operational conditions, periodically goes off-channel and scans another channel. This is in order to perform RRM operations such as the following:

- Transmitting and receiving Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) packets with other APs.
- Detecting rogue APs and clients.
- Measuring noise and interference.

During the off-channel period, which normally is about 70 milliseconds, the AP is unable to transmit or receive data on its serving channel. Therefore, there is a slight impact on its performance and some client transmissions might be dropped.

While the AP is sending and receiving important data, it is possible to configure off-channel scanning deferral so that the AP does not go off-channel and its normal operation is not impacted. You can configure off-channel scanning deferral on a per-WLAN basis, per WMM UP class basis, with a specified time threshold in milliseconds. If the AP sends or receives, on a particular WLAN, a data frame marked with the given UP class within the specified threshold, the AP defers its next RRM off-channel scan. For example, by default, off-channel scanning deferral is enabled for UP classes 4, 5, and 6, with a time threshold of 100 milliseconds. Therefore, when RRM is about to perform an off-channel scan, a data frame marked with UP 4, 5, or 6 is received within the last 100 milliseconds, RRM defers going off-channel. The AP radio does not go off-channel when a voice call sending and receiving audio samples are marked as UP class 6 for every active 20 milliseconds.

Off-channel scanning deferral does come with a tradeoff. Off-channel scanning can impact throughput by 2 percent or more, depending on the configuration, traffic patterns, and so on. Throughput can be slightly improved if you enable off-channel scanning deferral for all traffic classes and increase the time threshold. However, by not going off-channel, RRM can fail to identify AP neighbors and rogues, resulting in negative impact to security, DCA, TPC, and 802.11k messages.

# DTIM Period

In the 802.11 networks, lightweight access points broadcast a beacon at regular intervals, which coincides with the Delivery Traffic Indication Map (DTIM). After the access point broadcasts the beacon, it transmits any buffered broadcast and multicast frames based on the value set for the DTIM period. This feature allows power-saving clients to wake up at the appropriate time if they are expecting broadcast or multicast data.

Typically, the DTIM value is set to 1 (to transmit broadcast and multicast frames after every beacon) or 2 (to transmit broadcast and multicast frames after every other beacon). For instance, if the beacon period of the 802.11 network is 100 ms and the DTIM value is set to 1, the access point transmits buffered broadcast and multicast frames for 10 times every second. If the beacon period is 100 ms and the DTIM value is set to 2, the access point transmits buffered broadcast and multicast frames for 5 times every second. Either of these settings are suitable for applications, including Voice Over IP (VoIP), that expect frequent broadcast and multicast frames.

However, the DTIM value can be set as high as 255 (to transmit broadcast and multicast frames after every 255th beacon). The only recommended DTIM values are 1 and 2; higher DTIM values will likely cause communications problems.



**Note** A beacon period, which is specified in milliseconds on the device, is converted internally by the software to 802.11 Time Units (TUs), where 1 TU = 1.024 milliseconds. Depending on the AP model, the actual beacon period may vary slightly; for example, a beacon period of 100 ms may in practice equate to 104.448 ms.

# Session Timeouts

You can configure a WLAN with a session timeout. The session timeout is the maximum time for a client session to remain active before requiring reauthorization.

If a WLAN is configured with Layer 2 security, for example WPA2-PSK, and a Layer 3 authentication is also configured, the WLAN session timeout value is overridden with the 802.1X reauthentication timeout value. If APF reauthentication timeout value is greater than 65535, the WLAN session timeout is by default set to 65535; else, the configured 802.1X reauthentication timeout value is applied as the WLAN session timeout.

This section contains the following subsections:

# Cisco Client Extensions

The Cisco Client Extensions (CCX) software is licensed to manufacturers and vendors of third-party client devices. The CCX code resident on these clients enables them to communicate wirelessly with Cisco access points and to support Cisco features that other client devices do not, including those features that are related to increased security, enhanced performance, fast roaming, and power management.

- The software supports CCX versions 1 through 5, which enables devices and their access points to communicate wirelessly with third-party client devices that support CCX. CCX support is enabled automatically for every WLAN on the device and cannot be disabled. However, you can configure Aironet information elements (IEs).
- If Aironet IE support is enabled, the access point sends an Aironet IE 0x85 (which contains the access point name, load, number of associated clients, and so on) in the beacon and probe responses of this WLAN, and the device sends Aironet IEs 0x85 and 0x95 (which contains the management IP address of the device and the IP address of the access point) in the reassociation response if it receives Aironet IE 0x85 in the reassociation request.

# Peer-to-Peer Blocking

Peer-to-peer blocking is applied to individual WLANs, and each client inherits the peer-to-peer blocking setting of the WLAN to which it is associated. Peer-to-Peer enables you to have more control over how traffic is directed. For example, you can choose to have traffic bridged locally within the device, dropped by the device, or forwarded to the upstream VLAN.

Peer-to-peer blocking is supported for clients that are associated with local and central switching WLANs.



**Note** Peer-to-peer blocking feature is VLAN-based. WLANs using the same VLAN has an impact, if Peer-to-peer blocking feature is enabled.

# Diagnostic Channel

You can choose a diagnostic channel to troubleshoot why the client is having communication problems with a WLAN. You can test the client and access points to identify the difficulties that the client is experiencing and allow corrective measures to be taken to make the client operational on the network. You can use the device GUI or CLI to enable the diagnostic channel, and you can use the device **diag-channel** CLI to run the diagnostic tests.



**Note** We recommend that you enable the diagnostic channel feature only for non-anchored SSIDs that use the management interface. CCX Diagnostic feature has been tested only with clients having Cisco ADU card

# Prerequisites for WLANs

- You can associate up to 16 WLANs with each policy tag.
- We recommend that you assign one set of VLANs for WLANs and a different set of VLANs for management interfaces to ensure that devices properly route VLAN traffic.

# Restrictions for WLANs

- Do not configure PSK as this configuration is not supported and impacts client join flow.
- Ensure that TKIP or AES ciphers are enabled with WPA1 configuration, else ISSU may break during upgrade process.
- When you change the WLAN profile name, then FlexConnect APs (using AP-specific VLAN mapping) will become WLAN-specific. If FlexConnect Groups are configured, the VLAN mapping will become Group-specific.
- Do not enable IEEE 802.1X Fast Transition on Flex Local Authentication enabled WLAN, as client association is not supported with Fast Transition 802.1X key management.
- Peer-to-peer blocking does not apply to multicast traffic.
- In FlexConnect, peer-to-peer blocking configuration cannot be applied only to a particular FlexConnect AP or a subset of APs. It is applied to all the FlexConnect APs that broadcast the SSID.
- The WLAN name and SSID can have up to 32 characters.
- WLAN and SSID names support only the following ASCII characters:
  - Numerals: 48 through 57 hex (0 to 9)
  - Alphabets (uppercase): 65 through 90 hex (A to Z)
  - Alphabets (lowercase): 97 through 122 hex (a to z)
  - ASCII space: 20 hex
  - Printable special characters: 21 through 2F, 3A through 40, and 5B through 60 hex, that is: ! " # $ % & ' ( ) * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [ \ ] ^ _ ` { | } ~
- WLAN name cannot be a keyword; for example, if you try to create a WLAN with the name as 's' by entering the **wlan s** command, it results in shutting down all WLANs because 's' is used as a keyword for shutdown.
- You cannot map a WLAN to VLAN 0. Similarly, you cannot map a WLAN to VLANs 1002 to 1006.
- Dual stack clients with a static-IPv4 address is not supported.
- In a dual-stack with IPv4 and IPv6 configured in the Cisco 9800 controller, if an AP tries to join controller with IPv6 tunnel before its IPv4 tunnel gets cleaned, you would see a traceback and AP join will fail.
- When creating a WLAN with the same SSID, you must create a unique profile name for each WLAN.

- When multiple WLANs with the same SSID get assigned to the same AP radio, you must have a unique Layer 2 security policy so that clients can safely select between them.
- If the newly configured SSID is on a 5-GHz DFS channel, beaconing does not start immediately.
- RADIUS server overwrite is not configured on a per WLAN basis, but rather on a per AAA server group basis.
- Downloadable ACL (DACL) is supported only on the central switching mode. It is not supported for Flex Local switching or on the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller.
- Wi-Fi 6E APs support up to 8 WLANs. If more than 8 WLANs are already configured under the policy tag and a new 6-GHz WLAN is configured, CAPWAP disconnect is required for a Wi-Fi 6E AP. Otherwise, the newly configured 6-GHz WLAN is not pushed to applicable Wi-Fi 6E APs.



**Note** After AP reconnects, the controller will re-evaluate the first eight 6-GHz applicable WLANs for Wi-Fi 6E AP. This limitation is irrelevant from the 17.15 release onwards, where the controller supports 16 WLANs on 6-GHz radio.



**Caution** Some clients might not be able to connect to WLANs properly if they detect the same SSID with multiple security policies. Use this WLAN feature with care.

# How to Configure WLANs

## Creating WLANs (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** In the **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs** page, click **Add**.

The **Add WLAN** window is displayed.

**Step 2** Under the **General** tab and **Profile Name** field, enter the name of the WLAN. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.

**Step 3** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Creating WLANs (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name wlan-id* [*ssid*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan mywlan 34 mywlan-ssid` | Specifies the WLAN name and ID:<br>• For the *profile-name*, enter the profile name. The range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>• For the *wlan-id*, enter the WLAN ID. The range is from 1 to 512.<br>• For the *ssid*, enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) for this WLAN. If the SSID is not specified, the WLAN profile name is set as the SSID.<br>**Note**<br>• You can create SSID using GUI or CLI. However, we recommend that you use CLI to create SSID.<br>• By default, the WLAN is disabled. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Deleting WLANs (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** In the **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs** page, check the checkbox adjacent to the WLAN you want to delete.

To delete multiple WLANs, select multiple WLANs checkboxes.

**Step 2** Click **Delete**.

**Step 3** Click **Yes** on the confirmation window to delete the WLAN.

# Deleting WLANs

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **no wlan** *wlan-name wlan-id ssid*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no wlan test2` | Deletes the WLAN. The arguments are as follows:<br>• The *wlan-name* is the WLAN profile name.<br>• The *wlan-id* is the WLAN ID.<br>• The *ssid* is the WLAN SSID name configured for the WLAN. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Searching WLANs (CLI)

To verify the list of all WLANs configured on the controller, use the following show command:

```
Device# show wlan summary
Number of WLANs: 4

WLAN Profile Name                     SSID                           VLAN Status
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1    test1                             test1-ssid                     137  UP
3    test2                             test2-ssid                     136  UP
2    test3                             test3-ssid                     1    UP
45   test4                             test4-ssid                     1    DOWN
```

To use wild cards and search for WLANs, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show wlan summary | include test-wlan-ssid
1    test-wlan                      test-wlan-ssid                   137   UP
```

# Enabling WLANs (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** On the **WLANs** page, click the WLAN name.

**Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, toggle the **Status** button to **ENABLED**.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Enabling WLANs (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan test4` | Enters WLAN configuration submode. The *profile-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN. |
| **Step 3** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Disabling WLANs (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** In the **WLANs** window, click the WLAN name.

**Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, set the **Status** toggle button as **DISABLED**.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Disabling WLANs (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan test4` | Enters WLAN configuration submode. The *profile-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN. |
| **Step 3** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# shutdown` | Disables the WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 5** | **show wlan summary**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wlan summary` | Displays the list of all WLANs configured on the device. You can search for the WLAN in the output. |

# Configuring General WLAN Properties (CLI)

You can configure the following properties:

- Media stream
- Broadcast SSID
- Radio

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan test4` | Enters WLAN configuration submode. The *profile-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN. |
| **Step 3** | **shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# shutdown` | Disables the WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **broadcast-ssid**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# broadcast-ssid` | Broadcasts the SSID for this WLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **dot11bg 11g**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# dot11bg 11g` | Configures the WLAN radio policy for dot11 radios. |
| **Step 6** | **media-stream multicast-direct**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# media-stream multicast-direct` | Enables multicast VLANs on this WLAN. |
| **Step 7** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |
| **Step 8** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring Advanced WLAN Properties (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan test4` | Enters WLAN configuration submode. The *profile-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **chd**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# chd` | Enables coverage hole detection for this WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **ccx aironet-iesupport**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# ccx aironet-iesupport` | Enables support for Aironet IEs for this WLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **client association limit** {*clients-per-wlan* \| **ap** *clients-per-ap-per-wlan* \| **radio***clients-per-ap-radio--per-wlan*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# client association limit ap 400` | Sets the maximum number of clients, clients per AP, or clients per AP radio that can be configured on a WLAN. |
| **Step 6** | **ip access-group web** *acl-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# ip access-group web test-acl-name` | Configures the IPv4 WLAN web ACL. The variable *acl-name* specifies the user-defined IPv4 ACL name. |
| **Step 7** | **peer-blocking** [**drop** \| **forward-upstream**]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# peer-blocking drop` | Configures peer to peer blocking parameters. The keywords are as follows:<br>• **drop**—Enables peer-to-peer blocking on the drop action.<br>• **forward-upstream**—No action is taken and forwards packets to the upstream. |
| **Step 8** | **channel-scan** {**defer-priority** {**0-7**} \| **defer-time** {**0 - 6000**}}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# channel-scan defer-priority 6` | Sets the channel scan defer priority and defer time. The arguments are as follows:<br>• **defer-priority**—Specifies the priority markings for packets that can defer off-channel scanning. The range is from 0 to 7. The default is 3.<br>• **defer-time**—Deferral time in milliseconds. The range is from 0 to 6000. The default is 100. |
| **Step 9** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Configuring Advanced WLAN Properties (GUI)

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an AP Join Profile prior to configuring the primary and backup controllers.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **WLANs** > **Wireless Networks**.

**Step 2** In the **Wireless Networks** window, click **Add**.

**Step 3** Under the **Advanced** tab, check the **Coverage Hole Detection** check box.

**Step 4** Check the **Aironet IE** check box to enable Aironet IE on the WLAN.

**Step 5** Check the **Diagnostic Channel** check box to enable diagnostic channel on the WLAN.

**Step 6** From the **P2P Blocking Action** drop-down list, choose the required value.

**Step 7** Set the **Multicast Buffer** toggle button as enabled or diabled.

**Step 8** Check the **Media Stream Multicast-Direct** check box to enable the feature.

**Step 9** In the **Max Client Connections** section, specify the maximum number of client connections for the following:

- In the **Per WLAN** field, enter a value. The valid range is between 0 and 10000.
- In the **Per AP Per WLAN** field, enter a value. The valid range is between 0 and 400.
- In the **Per AP Radio Per WLAN** field, enter a value. The valid range is between 0 and 200.

**Step 10** In the **11v BSS Transition Support** section, perform the following configuration tasks:

a) Check the BSS Transition check box to enable 802.11v BSS Transition support.
b) In the **Disassociation Imminent** field, enter a value. The valid range is between 0 and 3000.
c) In the **Optimized Roaming Disassociation Timer** field, enter a value. The valid range is between 0 and 40.
d) Select the check box to enable the following:

- BSS Max Idle Service
- BSS Max Idle Protected
- Disassociation Imminent Service
- Directed Multicast Service
- Universal Admin
- Load Balance
- Band Select
- IP Source Guard

**Step 11** From the **WMM Policy** drop-down list, choose the policy as Allowed, Disabled, or Required. By default, the WMM policy is Allowed.

**Step 12** In the **Off Channel Scanning Defer** section, choose the appropriate **Defer Priority** values and then specify the required Scan Defer Time value in milliseconds.

**Step 13** In the **Assisted Roaming (11k)** section, choose the appropriate status for the following:

- Prediction Optimization
- Neighbor List
- Dual-Band Neighbor List

**Step 14** In the **DTIM Period (in beacon intervals)** section, specify a value for 802.11a/n and 802.11b/g/n radios. The valid range is from 1 to 255.

**Step 15** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Verifying WLAN Properties (CLI)

To verify the WLAN properties based on the WLAN ID, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show wlan id wlan-id
```

To verify the WLAN properties based on the WLAN name, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show wlan name wlan-name
```

To verify the WLAN properties of all the configured WLANs, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show wlan all
```

To verify the summary of all WLANs, use the following `show` command:

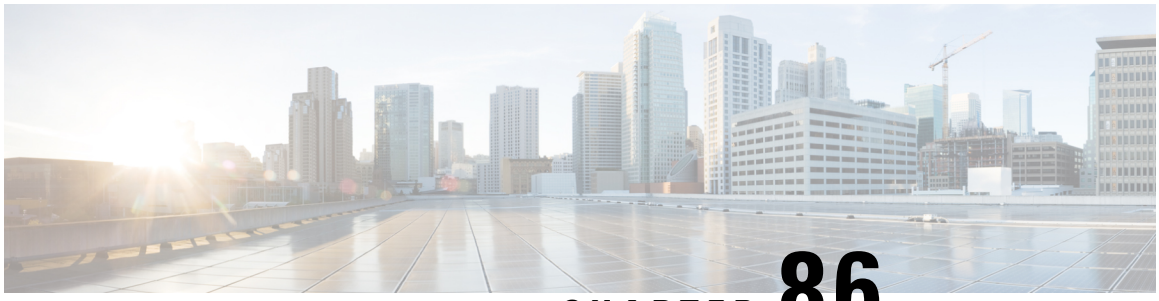
```
Device# show wlan summary
```

To verify the running configuration of a WLAN based on the WLAN name, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show running-config wlan wlan-name
```

To verify the running configuration of all WLANs, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show running-config wlan
```



CHAPTER 86

# Network Access Server Identifier


- Information About Network Access Server Identifier, on page 845
- Creating a NAS ID Policy(GUI), on page 846
- Creating a NAS ID Policy, on page 846
- Attaching a Policy to a Tag (GUI), on page 847
- Attaching a Policy to a Tag (CLI), on page 848
- Verifying the NAS ID Configuration, on page 848


## Information About Network Access Server Identifier

Network access server identifier (NAS-ID) is used to notify the source of a RADIUS access request, which enables the RADIUS server to choose a policy for that request. You can configure one on each WLAN profile, or VLAN interface. The NAS-ID is sent to the RADIUS server by the embedded wireless controller through an authentication request to classify users to different groups. This enables the RADIUS server to send a customized authentication response.

**Note** The acct-session-id is sent with the RADIUS access request only when accounting is enabled on the policy profile.

If you configure a NAS-ID for a WLAN profile, it overrides the NAS-ID that is configured for the VLAN interface.

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1, a new string named custom-string (custom string) is added.

The following options can be configured for a NAS ID:

- sys-name (System Name)
- sys-ip (System IP Address)
- sys-mac (System MAC Address)
- ap-ip (AP's IP address)
- ap-name (AP's Name)
- ap-mac (AP's MAC Address)

- ap-eth-mac (AP's Ethernet MAC Address)
- ap-policy-tag (AP's policy tag name)
- ap-site-tag (AP's site tag name)
- ssid (SSID Name)
- ap-location (AP's Location)
- custom-string (custom string)

# Creating a NAS ID Policy(GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Wireless AAA Policy**.

**Step 2** On the **Wireless AAA Policy** page, click the name of the **Policy** or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Step 3** In the **Add/Edit Wireless AAA Policy** window that is displayed, enter the name of the policy in the **Policy Name** field.

**Step 4** Choose from one of the NAS ID options from the **Option 1** drop-down list.

**Step 5** Choose from one of the NAS ID options from the **Option 2** drop-down list.

**Step 6** Choose from one of the NAS ID options from the **Option 3** drop-down list.

**Step 7** Save the configuration.

# Creating a NAS ID Policy

Follow the procedure given below to create NAS ID policy:

**Before you begin**

- NAS ID can be a combination of multiple NAS ID options; the maximum options are limited to 3.
- The maximum length of the NAS ID attribute is 253. Before adding a new attribute, the attribute buffer is checked, and if there is no sufficient space, the new attribute is ignored.
- By default, a wireless aaa policy (default-aaa-policy) is created with the default configuration (sys-name). You can update this policy with various NAS ID options. However, the default-aaa-policy cannot be deleted.
- If a NAS ID is not configured, the default sys-name is considered as the NAS ID for all wireless-specific RADIUS packets (authentication and accounting) from the embedded wireless controller.
- Starting with Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1, you can configure a custom string with various combinations of option1, option2 and option3 (**nas-id option3 custom-string** *custom-string*) as NAS ID in RADIUS packets.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless aaa policy** *policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless aaa policy test` | Configures a new AAA policy. |
| **Step 3** | **nas-id option1 sys-name**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-aaa-policy)# nas-id option1 sys-name` | Configures NAS ID for option1. |
| **Step 4** | **nas-id option2 sys-ip**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-aaa-policy)# nas-id option2 sys-ip` | Configures NAS ID for option2. |
| **Step 5** | **nas-id option3 sys-mac**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-aaa-policy)# nas-id option3 sys-mac` | Configures NAS ID for option3. |

# Attaching a Policy to a Tag (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.

**Step 2** Click **Add** and enter a name for the new policy, for example, test1, in the **General** tab.

**Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab, and under **AAA Policy**, from the **Policy Name** drop-down list, select the policy name that you had created in the **General** tab.

**Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.

**Step 5** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags** page, click **Policy** tab.

**Step 6** Click **Add** to view the **Add Policy Tag** window.

**Step 7** Enter a name and description for the policy tag.

**Step 8** Click **Add** to map WLAN profile and Policy profile.

**Step 9** Choose the **WLAN Profile** to map with the appropriate **Policy Profile**, and click the tick icon.

**Step 10** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Attaching a Policy to a Tag (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to attach a NAS ID policy to a tag:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy test1` | Configures a WLAN policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **aaa-policy** *aaa-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-policy test` | Configures a AAA policy profile. |
| **Step 4** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |
| **Step 5** | **wireless tag policy** *policy-tag*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless tag policy policy-tag1` | Configures a wireless policy tag. |
| **Step 6** | **wlan wlan1 policy** *policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan1 policy test1` | Maps a WLAN profile to a policy profile.<br>**Note**<br>You can also use the **ap-tag** option to configure a NAS ID for an AP group, which will override the NAS ID that is configured for a WLAN profile or the VLAN interface. |

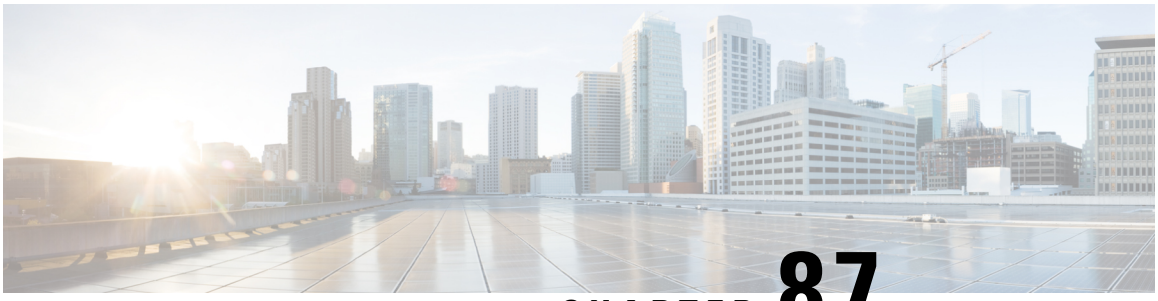
# Verifying the NAS ID Configuration

Use the following **show** command to verify the NAS ID configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed test1

Policy Profile Name           : test1
Description                   :
Status                        : ENABLED
VLAN                          : 1
Client count                  : 0

:
:
AAA Policy Params
  AAA Override                : DISABLED
  NAC                         : DISABLED
  AAA Policy name             : test
```



CHAPTER 87

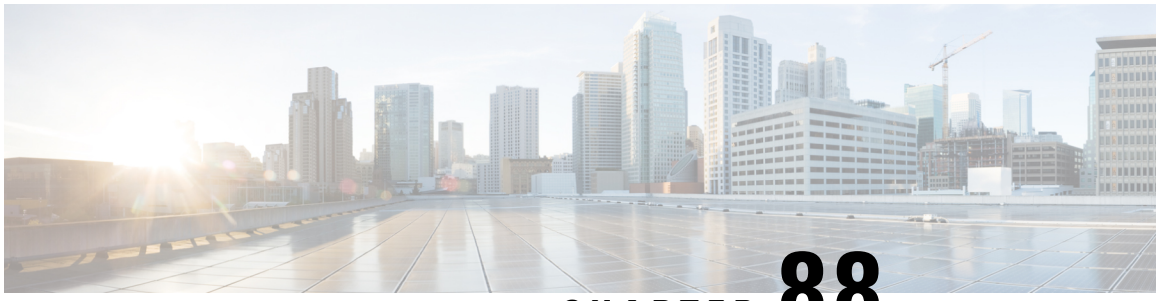
# DHCP for WLANs


• DHCP for WLANs, on page 851


# DHCP for WLANs

DHCP packets sent by the wireless clients are released in their respective VLANs as broadcast by the AP and relies on the fact that the network gateway of that VLAN forwards the requests to the DHCP server.

**Note** Internal DHCP server is not supported in EWC.



CHAPTER 88

# WLAN Security


- Information About AAA Override, on page 853
- Prerequisites for Layer 2 Security, on page 853
- How to Configure WLAN Security, on page 854


## Information About AAA Override

The AAA Override option of a WLAN enables you to configure the WLAN for identity networking. It enables you to apply VLAN tagging, Quality of Service (QoS), and Access Control Lists (ACLs) to individual clients based on the returned RADIUS attributes from the AAA server.

## Prerequisites for Layer 2 Security

WLANs with the same SSID must have unique Layer 2 security policies so that clients can make a WLAN selection based on the information advertised in beacon and probe responses. The available Layer 2 security policies are as follows:

- None (open WLAN)
- WPA+WPA2

**Note**

- Although WPA and WPA2 cannot be used by multiple WLANs with the same SSID, you can configure two WLANs with the same SSID with WPA/TKIP with PSK and Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)/Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) with 802.1X, or with WPA/TKIP with 802.1X or WPA/AES with 802.1X.
- A WLAN configured with TKIP support will not be enabled on an RM3000AC module.

- Static WEP (not supported on Wave 2 APs)

# How to Configure WLAN Security

## Configuring Static WEP Layer 2 Security Parameters (CLI)

### Before you begin

You must have administrator privileges.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

## Configuring WPA + WPA2 Layer 2 Security Parameters (CLI)

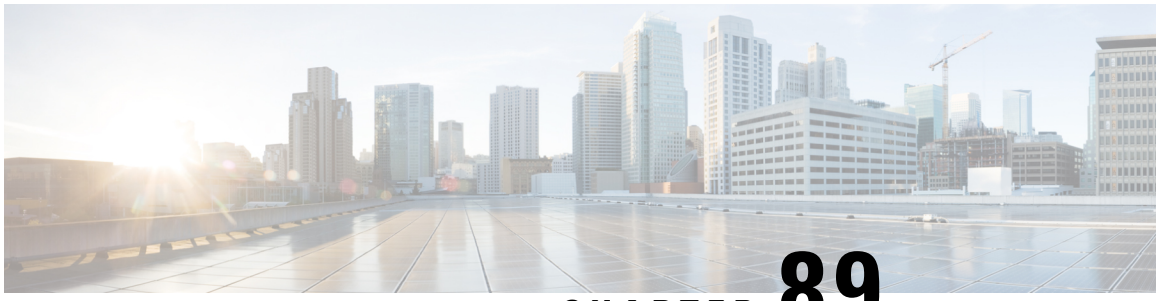
### Before you begin

You must have administrator privileges.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **security wpa**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa` | |
| **Step 3** | **security wpa wpa1**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa1` | Enables . |
| **Step 4** | **security wpa wpa1 ciphers** [**aes** \| **tkip**]<br>**Example:** | Specifies the WPA1 cipher. Choose one of the following encryption types: |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa1 ciphers aes` | • **aes**—Specifies WPA/AES support.<br>• **tkip**—Specifies WPA/TKIP support. |
| **Step 5** | **security wpa wpa2**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2` | Enables WPA2. |
| **Step 6** | **security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2`<br>**Example:** | Configure WPA2 cipher. |



CHAPTER 89

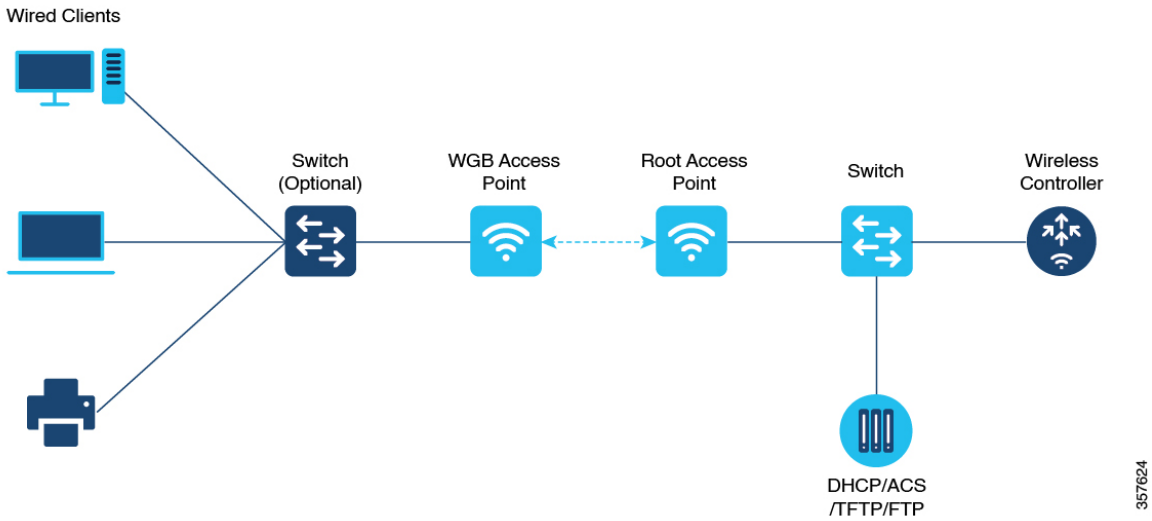
# Workgroup Bridges


- Cisco Workgroup Bridges, on page 857
- Configuring Workgroup Bridge on a WLAN, on page 859
- Verifying the Status of Workgroup Bridges, on page 860
- Information About Simplifying WGB Configuration, on page 860
- Configuring Multiple WGBs (CLI), on page 861
- Verifying WGB Configuration, on page 862


## Cisco Workgroup Bridges

A workgroup bridge (WGB) is an Access Point (AP) mode to provide wireless connectivity to wired clients that are connected to the Ethernet port of the WGB AP. A WGB connects a wired network over a single wireless segment by learning the MAC addresses of its wired clients on the Ethernet interface and reporting them to the WLC through infrastructure AP using Internet Access Point Protocol (IAPP) messaging. The WGB establishes a single wireless connection to the root AP, which in turn, treats the WGB as a wireless client.

***Figure 13: Example of a WGB***



The mode supported in WGB for Embedded Wireless Controller is:

- Flex Mode: Central authentication and local switching.

**Note** Cenral authentication is supported on Wave 1 and Wave 2 APs, whereas local switching is supported only on Wave 2 APs.

The following features are supported for use with a WGB:

***Table 48: WGB Feature Matrix***

| Feature | Cisco Wave 1 APs | Cisco Wave 2 |
|---|---|---|
| 802.11r | Supported | Supported |
| QOS | Supported | Supported |
| UWGB mode | Supported | Supported on Wave 2 APs |
| IGMP Snooping or Multicast | Supported | Supported |
| 802.11w | Supported | Supported |
| PI support (without SNMP) | Supported | Not supported |
| IPv6 | Supported | Supported |
| VLAN | Supported | Supported |
| 802.11i (WPAv2) | Supported | Supported |
| Broadcast tagging/replicate | Supported | Supported |
| Unified VLAN client | Implicitly supported (No CLI required) | Supported |
| WGB client | Supported | Supported |
| 802.1x – PEAP, EAP-FAST, EAP-TLS | Supported | Supported |
| NTP | Supported | Supported |
| Wired client support on all LAN ports | Supported in Wired-0 and Wired-1 interfaces | Supported in all Wired-0, 1 and LAN ports 1, 2, and 3 |

***Table 49: Supported Access Points and Requirements***

| Access Points | Requirements |
|---|---|
| Cisco Aironet 2700, 3700, and 1572 Series | Requires autonomous image. |

| Access Points | Requirements |
|---|---|
| Cisco Aironet 2800, 3800, 4800, 1562, and Cisco Catalyst 9105, 9115, IW6300 and ESW6300 Series | CAPWAP image starting from Cisco AireOS 8.8 release. |

- MAC filtering is not supported for wired clients.
- Idle timeout is not supported for both WGB and wired clients.
- Session timeout is not applicable for wired clients.
- Web authentication is not supported.
- WGB supports only up to 20 clients.
- If you want to use a chain of certificates, copy all the CA certificates to a file and install it under a trust point on the WGB, else server certificate validation may fail.
- Wired clients connected to the WGB are not authenticated for security. Instead, the WGB is authenticated against the access point to which it associates. Therefore, we recommend that you physically secure the wired side of the WGB.
- Wired clients connected to a WGB inherit the WGB's QoS and AAA override attributes.
- To enable the WGB to communicate with the root AP, create a WLAN and make sure that Aironet IE is enabled under the Advanced settings.

# Configuring Workgroup Bridge on a WLAN

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile` | Enters WLAN configuration submode. The *wlan-profile* is the profile name of the configured WLAN. |
| **Step 3** | **ccx aironet-iesupport**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# ccx aironet-iesupport` | Enables support for Aironet IEs for this WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Restarts the WLAN. |

# Verifying the Status of Workgroup Bridges

- To verify the number of WGBs, use the following command:

  **show wireless wgb summary**

  The following is a sample output:

```
Device#show wireless wgb summary
Number of WGBs: 1
MAC Address    AP Name                          WLAN State              Clients
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
7070.8b7a.7030 Ed2-JFW-AP1                      1    Run                1
```

- To verify WGB details, use the following command:

  **show wireless wgb mac-address** *MAC-address* **detail**

  The following is a sample output:

```
Device#show wireless wgb mac-address 7XXX.8XXa.7XXX detail

Work Group Bridge

MAC Address        : 7XXX.8XXa.7XXX
AP Name            : Ed2-JFW-AP1
WLAN ID            : 1
State              : Run

Number of Clients: 1

MAC Address
------------
d8XX.97XX.bXXX
```

- To view the client details on the controller, use the following command:

  **show wireless client mac-address** *MAC-address* **detail**

  The following is a sample output:

```
Device#show wireless client mac-address 7XXX.8bXX.70XX detail

Workgroup Bridge
Wired Client count : 1
```

- The following is a sample output:

```
Device#show wireless client mac-address d8XX.97XX.b0XX detail
Workgroup Bridge Client
WGB MAC Address : 7XXX.8bXX.70XX
```

# Information About Simplifying WGB Configuration

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1, it is possible to configure WGB in multiple Cisco access points (APs) simultaneously. By importing a running configuration, you can deploy multiple WGBs in a network and make them operational quicker. When new Cisco APs are added to the network, you can transfer an existing or

working configuration to the new Cisco APs to make them operational. This enhancement eliminates the need to configure multiple Cisco APs using CLIs, after logging into them.

A network administrator can onboard Cisco APs using either of the following methods:

- Upload the working configuration from an existing Cisco AP to a server and download it to the newly deployed Cisco APs.
- Send a sample configuration to all the Cisco APs in the deployment.

This feature is supported only on the following Cisco APs:

- Cisco Aironet 1562 Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 2800 Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 3800 Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9105 Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9115 Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9120 Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst IW6300 Series Heavy Duty Access Points

For latest support information on various features in Cisco Wave 2 and 802.11ax (Wi-Fi 6) Access Points in Cisco IOS XE releases, see the Feature Matrix for Wave 2 and 802.11ax (Wi-Fi 6) Access Points document.

# Configuring Multiple WGBs (CLI)

Perform the following procedure on the APs in WGB mode.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 2** | **copy configuration upload**{**sftp:**\| **tftp:**} *ip-address* [*directory*] [*file-name*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# copy configuration upload sftp: 10.10.10.1 C:sample.txt` | Creates upload configuration file and uploads to the SFTP or TFTP server using the specified path. |
| **Step 3** | **copy configuration download**{**sftp:**\| **tftp:**} *ip-address* [*directory*] [*file-name*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# copy configuration download sftp: 10.10.10.1 C:sample.txt` | Downloads the configuration file and replaces the old configuration in the AP and reboots the WGB. When the device restarts, new configuration is applied. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **show wgb dot11 association**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wgb dot11 association` | Lists the WGB uplink information. |
| **Step 5** | **show version**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show version` | Displays the AP software information. |

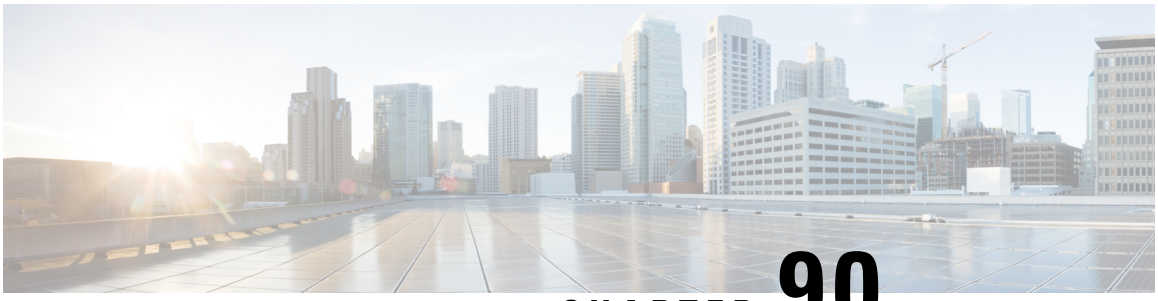
# Verifying WGB Configuration

After completing the configuration download and reboot of the AP, the WGB rejoins the network. Use the **show logging** command to list and verify the download events that are captured in the debug logs:

```
Device# show logging

Jan 13 18:19:17 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:17.4880] WGB - Applying download config...
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure clock timezone UTC
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure dot1x credential dot1x_profile username wifiuser
 password U2FsdGVkX1+8PWmAOnFO8BXyk5EAphMy2PmhPPhWV0w=
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure eap-profile eap_profile method PEAP
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure eap-profile eap_profile dot1x-credential
dot1x_profile
Jan 13 18:19:18 chpasswd: password for user changed
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7260] chpasswd: password for user changed
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7610]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7610]  Management user configuration saved
successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7610]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7650] Warning!!! Attach SSID profile with the
 radio to use the new changes.
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7650]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7650]  Dot1x credential configuration has
been saved successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7650]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7740] Warning!!! Attach SSID profile with the
 radio to use the new changes.
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7740]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7740]  EAP profile configuration has been
saved successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7740]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7790] Warning!!! Attach SSID profile with the
 radio to use the new changes.
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7790]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7790]  EAP profile configuration has been
saved successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7790]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7830] Warning!!! Attach SSID profile with the
 radio to use the new changes.
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7830]
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure ssid-profile psk ssid alpha_psk authentication
psk U2FsdGVkX18meBfFFeiC4sgkEmbGPNH/ul1dne6h/m8= key-management wpa2
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7930] Warning!!! Attach SSID profile with the
 radio to use the new changes.
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7930]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7930]  EAP profile configuration has been
saved successfully
```

```
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7930]
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure ssid-profile open ssid alpha_open authentication
 open
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure ssid-profile openax ssid alpha_open_ax
authentication open
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.8650]  SSID-Profile dot1xpeap has been saved
 successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.8650]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.9270]  SSID-Profile psk has been saved
successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.9270]
Jan 13 18:19:19 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:19.0380]  SSID-Profile open has been saved
successfully
Jan 13 18:19:19 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:19.0380]
Jan 13 18:19:19 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:19.0380]  SSID-Profile openax has been saved
successfully
Jan 13 18:19:19 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:19.0380]
Jan 13 18:19:22 download_config: configure wgb broadcast tagging disable
Jan 13 18:19:22 download_config: configure wgb packet retries 64 drop
Jan 13 18:19:22 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:22.9710] Broadcast tagging 0 successfully
Jan 13 18:19:22 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:22.9710]
Jan 13 18:19:23 download_config: configure dot11Radio 1 mode wgb ssid-profile open
Jan 13 18:19:23 download_config: configure dot11Radio 1 enable
Jan 13 18:19:23 download_config: configure ap address ipv6 disable
```



CHAPTER 90

# Device Analytics


- Device Analytics, on page 865
- Adaptive 802.11r, on page 868


# Device Analytics

## Information About Device Analytics

The Device Analytics feature enhances the enterprise Wi-Fi experience for client devices to ensure seamless connectivity. This feature provides a set of data analytics tools for analyzing wireless client device behavior. With device profiling enabled on the controller, information is exchanged between the client device and the controller and AP. This data is encrypted using AES-256-CBC to ensure device security.

**Note**

- From 17.1.1 release onwards, this feature is applicable to Samsung devices.

**Note** From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1, MacBook Analytics is supported on the controller when the MacBook device sends 11k action frames along with the model information.

**Note** Apple clients such as iPhones and iPads use 802.11k action frames to send device information to the controller. When they fail to send 802.11k action frames, the controller will not perform device classification based on the 802.11 protocol. Hence, this falls back to legacy device classification which is based on HTTP and DHCP protocols.

## Restrictions for Device Analytics

- This feature is applicable only for Cisco device ecosystem partners.
- This feature is supported only on the 802.11ax and Wave 2 APs.

- This feature is supported using central authentication in either local mode or FlexConnect mode.

# Configuring Device Analytics (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** On the **WLANs** page, click the name of the WLAN.

**Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click the **Advanced** tab.

**Step 4** In the **Device Analytics** section, select the **Advertise Support** check box.

**Step 5** (Optional) In the **Device Analytics** section, select the **Share Data with Client** check box.

**Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Device Analytics (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan device_analytics 1 device_analytics` | Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.<br>• *wlan-name*—Enter the profile name. The range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>• *wlan-id*—Enter the WLAN ID. The range is from 1 to 512.<br>• *SSID-name*—Enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) for this WLAN. If the SSID is not specified, the WLAN profile name is set as the SSID.<br>**Note**<br>If you have already configured WLAN, enter **wlan** *wlan-name* command. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **client association limit** {*clients-per-wlan* \| **ap***clients-per-ap-per-wlan* \| **radio** *clients-per-ap-radio-per-wlan*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# client association limit 1 1` | Sets the maximum number of clients, clients per AP, or clients per AP radio that can be configured on a WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **[no] device-analytics**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# device-analytics` | This is enabled by default.<br>Enables or disables device analytics. WLANs advertise analytics capability in beacons & probe responses. |
| **Step 5** | **[no] device-analytics** [**export**]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# device-analytics export` | When **export** option is set, the information from Cisco devices are shared with compatible clients (such as, Samsung devices). Here, information from Cisco devices refer to the Cisco controller details, AP version, and model number.<br>This configuration is disabled by default. |
| **Step 6** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Verifying Device Analytics Configuration

To view the status of device analytics export, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan 1 test-wlan

WLAN Profile Name     : test-wlan
================================================
Identifier                       : 1
Description                      :
Network Name (SSID)              : test-open-ssid
Status                           : Enabled
Broadcast SSID                   : Enabled
Advertise-Apname                 : Disabled
Universal AP Admin               : Disabled

Device Analytics
    Advertise Support            : Enabled
    Share Data with Client       : Disabled
```

To view client device information, use the following command:

```
Device# show device classifier mac-address 0040.96ae.xxx detail
```

```
Client Mac: 0040.96ae.xxxx
Device Type: Samsung Galaxy S10e(Phone)
Confidence Level: 40
Device Name: android-dhcp-9
Software Version(Carrier Code): SD7(TMB)
Device OS: Android 9
Device Vendor: android-dhcp-9
Country: US
```

To view the last disconnect reason, use the following command:

```
Device# show device classifier mac-address 0040.96ae.xxxx detail

Client MAC Address : 0040.96ae.xxxx
Client IPv4 Address : 12.1.0.52
Client IPv6 Addresses : fe80::631b:5b4f:f9b6:53cc
Client Username: N/A
AP MAC Address : 7069.5a51.53c0
AP Name: AP4C77.6D9E.61B2
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated

Assisted Roaming Neighbor List
Nearby AP Statistics:
EoGRE : No/Simple client
Last Disconnect Reason : User initiated disconnection - Device was powered off or Wi-Fi
turned off
```

# Adaptive 802.11r

## Information About Adaptive 802.11r

The Cisco device ecosystem partner now supports 11r functionality on an adaptive 802.11r SSID. Samsung is one of the partners.

**Note** The Adaptive 802.11r is enabled by default. This means that when you create a WLAN, the adaptive 802.11r is configured by default.

Client device information such as its model number, supported operating system is shared with the controller and AP while the device receives information such as controller and AP type, software release, etc. Also, this enables 802.11r-compatible devices to benefit from adaptive 802.11r on Cisco networks. This ecosystem comes handy especially for troubleshooting device disconnection from the AP as the controller receives information such as the disconnect reason code from the client device.

**Note** Devices without 11r support cannot join an SSID where 11r is enabled.

To use the 11r functionality on devices, you need to create a separate SSID with 11r enabled and another with 11r disabled to support the non-11r devices in the network.

Adaptive dot11r is supported by Apple iPad, Apple iPhone, and Samsung S10 devices. However; some software update creates a MIC mismatch error in these devices. But these errors are transient and clients will successfully be able to associate to the SSID in subsequent results.

# Configuring Adaptive 802.11r (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** On the **WLANs** page, click the name of the WLAN.

**Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click the **Security** > **Layer2** tab.

**Step 4** In the **WPA Parameters** section and **Fast Transition** drop-down list, choose **Adaptive Enabled**.

**Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Verifying Adaptive 802.11r

To view the details, use the following command:

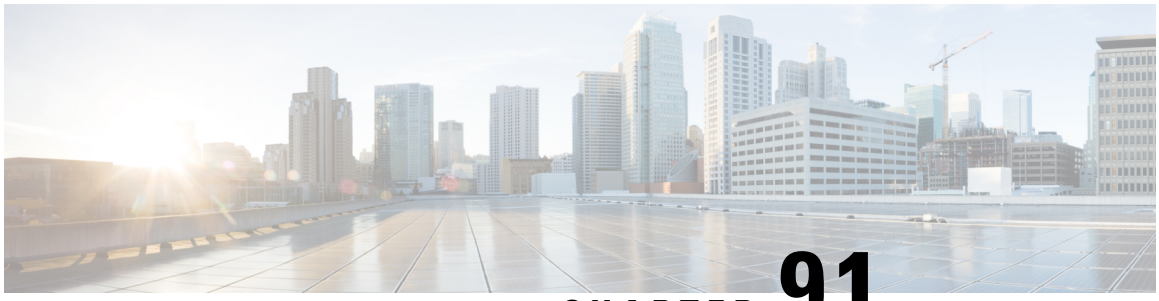
```
Device# show running-config all
wlan test-psk 2 test-psk
 security ft adaptive
"adaptive" is  optional
```

**Note** The following command is used to enable or disable adaptive 11r:

**[no] security ft adaptive**

The following command is used to enable or disable 802.11r:

**[no] security ft**



CHAPTER 91

# Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support


- Feature History for Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support, on page 871
- Information About Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support, on page 872
- Enabling Device Classifier (CLI), on page 875
- Updating Dynamic XML File, on page 875
- Verifying TLV Values, on page 876
- Clearing Old Classification Cache, on page 876


## Feature History for Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 50: Feature History for Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support***

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1 | Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support | You can do the following:<br>• Add rules, checks, and profile name to an XML file.<br>• Upload the XML file to the device file system.<br><br>This feature enables better device classification without upgrading the device to a new release.<br><br>**Note**<br>Device classifier dynamic XML support is applicable for the following:<br>• Devices that are not classified previously: The classification takes effect from the latest file without any reboot.<br>• Devices that are already classified: The clients have to rejoin for the classification to take effect.<br>• Client previously classified with higher protocol values such as DHCP + HTTP: If the same client wants to be classified with only DHCP, use the **clear wireless client device cache** command. |

# Information About Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support

The current device classifier uses static XML file wherein you define checks, rules, and profiles based on MAC, DHCP, and HTTP TLVs in wireless devices. The static XML file is converted to a text file and integrated with the image. When you enable the device classified functionality using **device classifier** command, the contents in the text file is read and populated into the device classifier structures.

**Note** The subsequent device classification is based on the populated device classifier structures.

Presently, if you find any unclassified devices in a controller, the static XML file is updated with the new rules, checks, and profiles to get the devices classified. You will need to wait till the subsequent release as the static XML file is integrated with the image and cannot be changed from the controller.

### Workflow: To Classify Unclassified Devices with Dynamic XML File

1. The dynamic XML filename must be **dc_user_profiles.xml**.

**Note** Files with any other name are not read and parsed even if they have the correct schema.

2. Copy the sample dynamic XML file to your system using the following command:

   **copy {flash:} {ftp: | tftp:}**

3. Provide a new version for the dynamic XML file:

   **<Version>1.1</Version>**

4. Edit the dynamic XML file with the new rules, checks, and profiles as defined in the schema after examining the TLV values of the unclassified devices.

**Note** To check the TLV values, use the following command:

**show wireless client mac-address** *mac* **detail**

5. Copy the dynamic XML file to the device flash using the following command:

   **copy {ftp: | tftp:} {flash:}**

Once the file is copied to the device file system, the newly connected clients are classified according to the new profiles defined in the dynamic XML file. You need to reconnect the already unclassified devices to send the DHCP and HTTP TLVs, and then classify them according to the new profiles. The already classified devices remain as classified until they are reconnected.

### Dynamic XML File

The device classifier dynamic XML support enhancement addresses this problem for device classifier dynamic XML file.

With the introduction of dynamic XML support, you are provided with a new dynamic device classifier XML file support.



**Note** The filename will be **dc_user_profiles.xml** and you can update the dynamic XML file with the new rules, checks, and profiles based on the devices connected and according to the provided schema.You can then copy this XML file to the device file system to enable better device classification without the need to upgrade the device to a new release.

The static XML file support is still available. If a device is connected, its TLVs are checked with the dynamic XML user profiles first and if it matches it is classified as per that profile. If you search for non-static XML profiles and if it matches it is classified as per that profile.

**Note** The sample dynamic XML file is available in the device at ***flash:dc_profile_dir/.***. You can consider the following sample dynamic XML file schema and copy this to your system using **copy {flash:} {ftp: | tftp:}** command, and append or replace the content with your own profiles, rules, and checks:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<DeviceList>
             <CopyRight>Copyright (c) 2021-2022 by Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights
reserved.</CopyRight>
             <Version>1.0</Version>
             <Device>
                   <DeviceType>Sample_Profile_1</DeviceType>
                   <RuleName>Sample_Rule_1</RuleName>
                   <RuleOperator>OR</RuleOperator>
                   <RuleCertaintyMetric>20</RuleCertaintyMetric>
                   <Check>
                              <Protocol>DHCP</Protocol>
                              <TLV-Type>12</TLV-Type>
                              <TLV-Value-Type>String</TLV-Value-Type>
                              <TLV-Value>test</TLV-Value>
                   </Check>
                   <Check>
                              <Protocol>HTTP</Protocol>
                              <TLV-Type>3</TLV-Type>
                              <TLV-Value-Type>Integer</TLV-Value-Type>
                              <TLV-Value>23</TLV-Value>
                    </Check>
             </Device>
             <Device>
                  <DeviceType>Sample_Profile_2</DeviceType>
                  <RuleName>Sample_Rule_2</RuleName>
                  <RuleOperator>AND</RuleOperator>
                  <RuleCertaintyMetric>30</RuleCertaintyMetric>
                  <Check>
                         <Protocol>DHCP</Protocol>
                        <TLV-Type>12</TLV-Type>
                        <TLV-Value-Type></TLV-Value-Type>
                        <TLV-Value>test</TLV-Value>
                  </Check>
                  <Check>
                         <Protocol>MAC</Protocol>
                         <TLV-Value-Type>String</TLV-Value-Type>
                         <TLV-Value>Cisco</TLV-Value>
                   </Check>
</Device>
</DeviceList>
```

Each time you copy a new dynamic XML file, the older user profiles are erased completely and newer profiles are populated. After copying the dynamic XML files, only the newly connected clients are classified based on the new dynamic file whereas the already classified devices still remain as classified with older profiles until they are reconnected.

### MAC OUI-Based Profiles

The Organizational Unique Identifier (OUI) of a MAC address is part of the MAC address that identifies the vendor of the network adapter. The OUI is the first three bytes of the six-byte field and administered by the IEEE.

To define MAC-based profiles in the dynamic XML file, see https://standards-oui.ieee.org/.

For example, if the Client MAC address is **7035.094d.000**, then OUI is **0x703509**. You can find the corresponding entry in the https://standards-oui.ieee.org/ as follows:

```
70-35-09   (hex)  Cisco Systems, Inc
703509     (base 16)    Cisco Systems, Inc
      80 West Tasman Drive
      San Jose  CA  94568
      US
```

# Enabling Device Classifier (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **device classifier**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# device classifier` | Enables the classification of attached devices. |
| **Step 3** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Updating Dynamic XML File

To classify a device, add the following lines in the dynamic XML file:

```
<DeviceList>
           <CopyRight>Copyright (c) 2021-2022 by Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights
reserved.</CopyRight>
           <Version>1.1</Version>
           <Device>
                  <DeviceType>Device-test”</DeviceType>
                <RuleName>Rule-Test</RuleName>
               <RuleOperator>AND</RuleOperator>
               <RuleCertaintyMetric>20</RuleCertaintyMetric>
               <Check>
                       <Protocol>DHCP</Protocol>
                       <TLV-Type>12</TLV-Type>
                      <TLV-Value-Type>String</TLV-Value-Type>
                      <TLV-Value>test</TLV-Value>
                </Check>
          </Device>

.............................
</DeviceList>
```

# Verifying TLV Values

To verify the TLV values, use the following command:

```
Device# show  wireless  client  mac-address 7035.094d.0001 detail
Client MAC Address : 7035.094d.0001

.....

Nearby AP Statistics:

EoGRE : Pending Classification

Device Classification Information:

  Device Type         : Un-Classified Device

  Device Name      : Unknown Device

  Protocol Map     : 0x000009  (OUI, DHCP)

  Device Protocol  : DHCP                      -→ <Protocol>DHCP</Protocol>

    Type             : 12   14                          --> <TLV-Type>12</TLV-Type>

    Data             : 0e

    00000000  00 0c 00 0a 74 65 73 74  2d 30 30 30 30 31         |....test-00001  |
    ---><TLV-Value>test</TLV-Value>

    Type             : 60   8

    Data             : 08

    00000000  00 3c 00 04 74 65 73 74                           |.<..test        |

    Type             : 55   11

    Data             : 0b

    00000000  00 37 00 07 01 1c 02 03  0f 06 0c                 |.7.........     |

Max Client Protocol Capability: Wi-Fi6 (802.11ax)
```

# Clearing Old Classification Cache

If an already classified client uses any of the three type-length-values (TLVs) [OUI, DHCP, or HTTP] and if the combination value is lower, the existing value is ignored. To avoid such a scenario, use the following command:

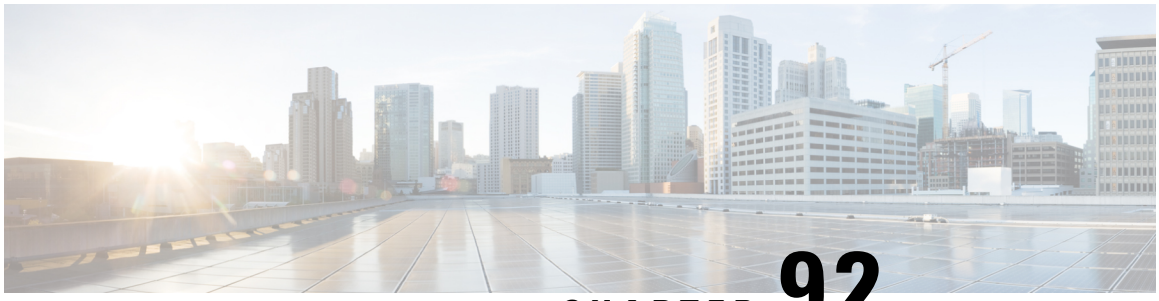
```
Device# clear wireless client device cache
```



**Note** The priority of the TLVs is as follows:

- OUI
- DHCP
- HTTP

After executing the clear command, you must rejoin the client to get it classified as per the latest XML file.



CHAPTER 92

# Peer-to-Peer Client Support


- Information About Peer-to-Peer Client Support, on page 879
- Configure Peer-to-Peer Client Support, on page 879


# Information About Peer-to-Peer Client Support

Peer-to-peer client support can be applied to individual WLANs, with each client inheriting the peer-to-peer blocking setting of the WLAN to which it is associated. The peer-to-Peer Client Support feature provides a granular control over how traffic is directed. For example, you can choose to have traffic bridged locally within a device, dropped by a device, or forwarded to the upstream VLAN.

Peer-to-peer blocking is supported for clients that are associated with local and central switching WLANs.

### Restrictions

- Peer-to-peer blocking does not apply to multicast traffic.
- Peer-to-peer blocking is not enabled by default.
- In FlexConnect, peer-to-peer blocking configuration cannot be applied only to a particular FlexConnect AP or a subset of APs. It is applied to all the FlexConnect APs that broadcast the SSID.
- FlexConnect central switching clients supports peer-to-peer upstream-forward. However, this is not supported in the FlexConnect local switching. This is treated as peer-to-peer drop and client packets are dropped.

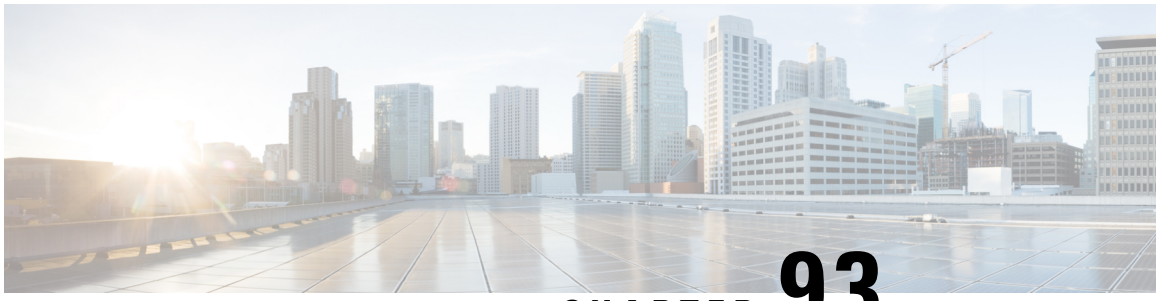
  FlexConnect central switching clients supports peer-to-peer blocking for clients associated with different APs. However, for FlexConnect local switching, this solution targets only clients connected to the same AP. FlexConnect ACLs can be used as a workaround for this limitation.

# Configure Peer-to-Peer Client Support

Follow the procedure given below to configure Peer-to-Peer Client Support:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan1` | Enters WLAN configuration submode. The *profile-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN. |
| **Step 3** | **peer-blocking** [**drop** \| **forward-upstream**]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# peer-blocking drop` | Configures peer to peer blocking parameters. The keywords are as follows:<br>• **drop**—Enables peer-to-peer blocking on the drop action.<br>• **forward-upstream**—No action is taken and forwards packets to the upstream. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Step 5** | **show wlan id** *wlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wlan id 12` | Displays the details of the selected WLAN. |



CHAPTER 93

# 802.11r BSS Fast Transition


- Information About 802.11r Fast Transition, on page 881
- Restrictions for 802.11r Fast Transition, on page 882
- Monitoring 802.11r Fast Transition (CLI), on page 883
- Configuring 802.11r BSS Fast Transition on a Dot1x Security Enabled WLAN (CLI), on page 884
- Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition in an Open WLAN (CLI), on page 885
- Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on a PSK Security–Enabled WLAN (CLI), on page 886
- Disabling 802.11r Fast Transition (GUI), on page 887
- Disable 802.11r Fast Transition (CLI), on page 888


# Information About 802.11r Fast Transition

802.11r, which is the IEEE standard for fast roaming, introduces a new concept of roaming where the initial handshake with a new AP is done even before the corresponding client roams to the target access point. This concept is called Fast Transition. The initial handshake allows a client and the access points to do the Pairwise Transient Key (PTK) calculation in advance. These PTK keys are applied to the client and the access points after the client responds to the reassociation request or responds to the exchange with new target AP.

The FT key hierarchy is designed to allow clients to make fast BSS transitions between APs without requiring reauthentication at every AP. WLAN configuration contains a new Authenticated Key Management (AKM) type called FT (Fast Transition).

### Client Roaming

For a client to move from its current AP to a target AP using the FT protocols, message exchanges are performed using one of the following methods:

- Over-the-Air—The client communicates directly with the target AP using IEEE 802.11 authentication with the FT authentication algorithm.
- Over-the-Distribution System (DS)—The client communicates with the target AP through the current AP. The communication between the client and the target AP is carried in FT action frames between the client and the current AP and is then sent through the device.

*Figure 14: Message Exchanges when Over–the–Air Client Roaming is Configured*

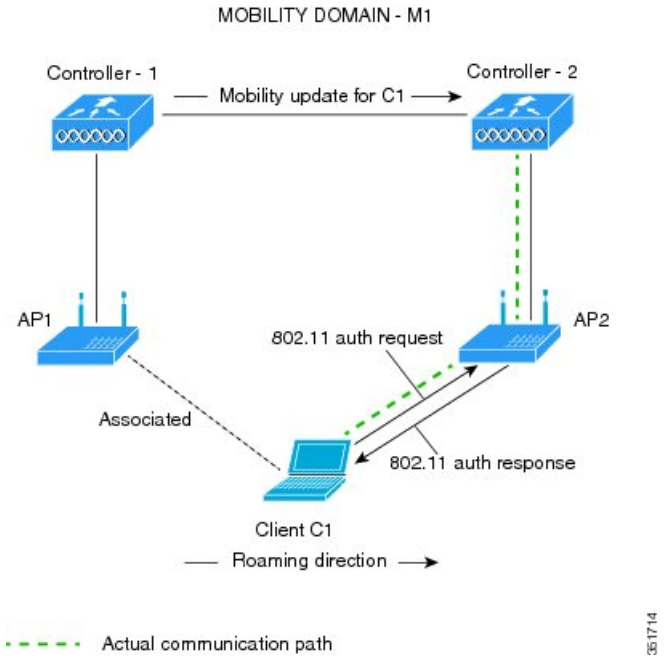
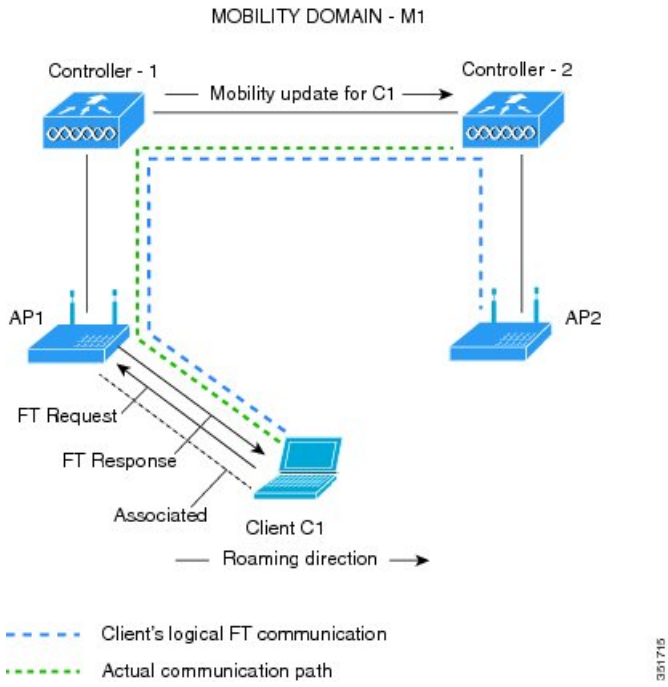



*Figure 15: Message Exchanges when Over–the–DS Client Roaming is Configured*




# Restrictions for 802.11r Fast Transition

- EAP LEAP method is not supported.

- Traffic Specification (TSPEC) is not supported for 802.11r fast roaming. Therefore, RIC IE handling is not supported.
- If WAN link latency exists, fast roaming is also delayed. Voice or data maximum latency should be verified. The Cisco WLC handles 802.11r Fast Transition authentication requests during roaming for both Over-the-Air and Over-the-DS methods.
- Legacy clients cannot associate with a WLAN that has 802.11r enabled if the driver of the supplicant that is responsible for parsing the Robust Security Network Information Exchange (RSN IE) is old and not aware of the additional AKM suites in the IE. Due to this limitation, clients cannot send association requests to WLANs. These clients, however, can still associate with non-802.11r WLANs. Clients that are 802.11r-capable can associate as 802.11i clients on WLANs that have both 802.11i and 802.11r Authentication Key Management Suites enabled.

  The workaround is to enable or upgrade the driver of the legacy clients to work with the new 802.11r AKMs, after which the legacy clients can successfully associate with 802.11r-enabled WLANs.

  Another workaround is to have two SSIDs with the same name, but with different security settings (FT and non-FT).
- Fast Transition resource–request protocol is not supported because clients do not support this protocol. Also, the resource–request protocol is an optional protocol.
- To avoid any Denial of Service (DoS) attack, each Cisco WLC allows a maximum of three Fast Transition handshakes with different APs.
- Non-802.11r–capable devices will not be able to associate with FT-enabled WLAN.
- We recommend 802.11r FT Over-the-Air roaming for FlexConnect deployments.

# Monitoring 802.11r Fast Transition (CLI)

The following command can be used to monitor 802.11r Fast Transition:

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| **show wlan name** *wlan-name* | Displays a summary of the configured parameters on the WLAN. |

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| **show wireless client mac-address** *mac-address* | Displays the summary of the 802.11r authentication key management configuration on a client.<br><br>. . .<br>. . .<br>Client Capabilities<br>CF Pollable : Not implemented<br>CF Poll Request : Not implemented<br>Short Preamble : Not implemented<br>PBCC : Not implemented<br>Channel Agility : Not implemented<br>Listen Interval : 15<br>Fast BSS Transition : Implemented<br>Fast BSS Transition Details :<br>Client Statistics:<br>Number of Bytes Received : 9019<br>Number of Bytes Sent : 3765<br>Number of Packets Received : 130<br>Number of Packets Sent : 36<br>Number of EAP Id Request Msg Timeouts : 0<br>Number of EAP Request Msg Timeouts : 0<br>Number of EAP Key Msg Timeouts : 0<br>Number of Data Retries : 1<br>Number of RTS Retries : 0<br>Number of Duplicate Received Packets : 1<br>Number of Decrypt Failed Packets : 0<br>Number of Mic Failured Packets : 0<br>Number of Mic Missing Packets : 0<br>Number of Policy Errors : 0<br>Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -48 dBm<br>Signal to Noise Ratio : 40 dB<br>. . .<br>. . . |

# Configuring 802.11r BSS Fast Transition on a Dot1x Security Enabled WLAN (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wlan test4` | Enters WLAN configuration submode. The *profile-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **client vlan** *vlan-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# client vlan 0120` | Associates the client VLAN to this WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **security dot1x authentication-list default**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list default` | Enables security authentication list for dot1x security. The configuration is similar for all dot1x security WLANs. |
| **Step 5** | **security ft**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security ft` | Enables 802.11r Fast Transition on the WLAN. |
| **Step 6** | **security wpa akm ft dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm ft dot1x` | Enables 802.1x security on the WLAN. |
| **Step 7** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |
| **Step 8** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-z** to exit global configuration mode |

# Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition in an Open WLAN (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wlan test4` | Enters WLAN configuration submode. The *profile-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN. |
| **Step 3** | **client vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# client vlan 0120` | Associates the client VLAN to the WLAN. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **no security wpa**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa` | Disables WPA security. |
| **Step 5** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for dot1x. |
| **Step 6** | **no security wpa wpa2**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2` | Disables WPA2 security. |
| **Step 7** | **no wpa wpa2 ciphers aes**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes` | Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES. |
| **Step 8** | **security ft**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security ft` | Specifies the 802.11r Fast Transition parameters. |
| **Step 9** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# shutdown` | Shuts down the WLAN. |
| **Step 10** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-z** to exit global configuration mode |

# Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on a PSK Security–Enabled WLAN (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wlan test4` | Enters WLAN configuration submode. The *profile-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN. |
| **Step 3** | **client vlan** *vlan-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# client vlan 0120` | Associates the client VLAN to this WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **no security wpa akm dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x` | Disables security AKM for dot1x. |
| **Step 5** | **security wpa akm ft psk**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm ft psk` | Configures Fast Transition PSK support. |
| **Step 6** | **security wpa akm psk set-key** {**ascii** {**0** \| **8**} \| **hex** {**0** \| **8**}}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk set-key ascii 0 test` | Configures PSK AKM shared key. |
| **Step 7** | **security ft**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security ft` | Configures 802.11r Fast Transition. |
| **Step 8** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN. |
| **Step 9** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-z** to exit global configuration mode |

# Disabling 802.11r Fast Transition (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** On the **WLANs** page, click the WLAN name.

**Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click the **Security** > **Layer2** tab.

**Step 4** From the **Fast Transition** drop-down list, choose **Disabled**. Note that you cannot enable or disable Fast Transition, if you have configured an SSID with Open Authentication.

**Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Disable 802.11r Fast Transition (CLI)

Prevent fast transitions in 802.11r-enabled WLANs using commands.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Enter the WLAN configuration submode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# profile-name wlan test4
```

**Step 3** Disable the FT AKMs that are enabled before disabling FT.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm ft dot1x
```

The available FT AKMs are: SAE-FT, SAE-EXT-FT and 802.1x-FT.

**Step 4** Disable 802.11r Fast Transition on the WLAN.

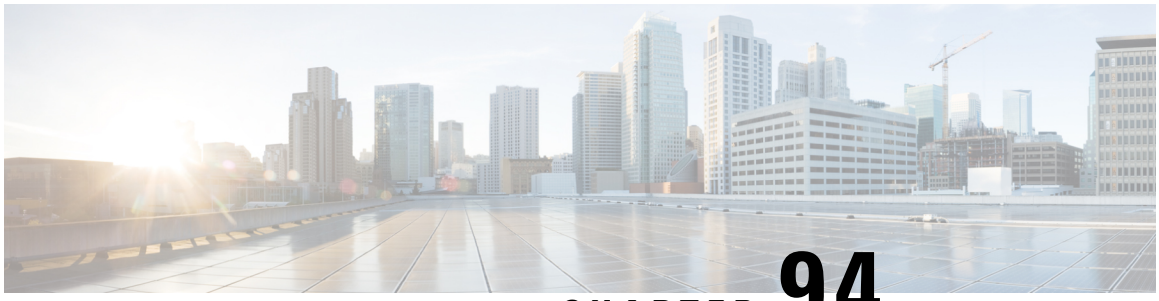
**Example:**

```
Device(config-wlan)# no security ft { adaptive | over-the-ds | reassociation-timeout
timeout-in-seconds }
```

**Step 5** Return to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```



CHAPTER 94

# Assisted Roaming


- 802.11k Neighbor List and Assisted Roaming, on page 889
- Restrictions for Assisted Roaming, on page 890
- How to Configure Assisted Roaming, on page 890
- Verifying Assisted Roaming, on page 891
- Configuration Examples for Assisted Roaming, on page 891


## 802.11k Neighbor List and Assisted Roaming

The 802.11k standard allows an AP to inform 802.11k-capable clients of neighboring BSSIDs (APs in the same SSID). This can help the client to optimize its scanning and roaming behavior. Additionally, the Assisted Roaming Prediction Optimization feature can be used with non-802.11k clients, to discourage them from roaming to suboptimal APs.

**Note** We recommend not configuring two SSIDs with the same name in the controller, which may cause roaming issues.

### Prediction Based Roaming - Assisted Roaming for Non-802.11k Clients

You can optimize roaming for non-802.11k clients by generating a prediction neighbor list for each client without sending an 802.11k neighbor list request. When prediction based roaming enables a WLAN, after each successful client association/re-association, the same neighbor list optimization applies on the non-802.11k client to generate and store the neighbor list in the mobile station software data structure. Clients at different locations have different lists because the client probes are seen with different RSSI values by the different neighbors as the clients usually probe before any association or re-association. This list is created with the most updated probe data and predicts the next AP that the client is likely to roam to.

The wireless infrastructure discourages clients from roaming to those less desirable neighbors by denying association if the association request to an AP does not match the entries on the stored prediction neighbor list.

- Denial count: Maximum number of times a client is refused association.
- Prediction threshold: Minimum number of entries required in the prediction list for the assisted roaming feature to activate.

For more information, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/8-5/Enterprise-Mobility-8-5-Design-Guide/Enterprise_Mobility_8-5_Deployment_Guide/Chapter-11.html#pgfId-1140097.

# Restrictions for Assisted Roaming

- This feature is supported only on 802.11n capable indoor access points. For a single band configuration, a maximum of 6 neighbors are visible in a neighbor list. For dual band configuration, a maximum of 12 neighbors are visible.
- You can configure assisted roaming only using the device CLI.

# How to Configure Assisted Roaming

## Configuring Assisted Roaming (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless assisted-roaming floor-bias** *dBm*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless assisted-roaming floor-bias 20` | Configures neighbor floor label bias. The valid range is from 5 to 25 dBm, and the default value is 15 dBm. |
| **Step 3** | **wlan** *wlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan1` | Enters the WLAN configuration submode. The *wlan-name* is the profile name of the configured WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **assisted-roaming neighbor-list**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(wlan)# assisted-roaming neighbor-list` | Configures an 802.11k neighbor list for a WLAN. By default, assisted roaming is enabled on the neighbor list when you create a WLAN. The **no** form of the command disables assisted roaming neighbor list. |
| **Step 5** | **assisted-roaming dual-list**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(wlan)# assisted-roaming dual-list` | Configures a dual-band 802.11k dual list for a WLAN. By default, assisted roaming is enabled on the dual list when you create a WLAN. The **no** form of the command disables assisted roaming dual list. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 6** | **assisted-roaming prediction**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(wlan)# assisted-roaming prediction` | Configures assisted roaming prediction list feature for a WLAN. By default, the assisted roaming prediction list is disabled.<br>**Note**<br>A warning message is displayed and load balancing is disabled for the WLAN if load balancing is already enabled for the WLAN. |
| **Step 7** | **wireless assisted-roaming prediction-minimum** *count*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wireless assisted-roaming prediction-minimum` | Configures the minimum number of predicted APs required for the prediction list feature to be activated. The default value is 3.<br>**Note**<br>If the number of the AP in the prediction assigned to the client is less than the number that you specify, the assisted roaming feature will not apply on this roam. |
| **Step 8** | **wireless assisted-roaming denial-maximum** *count*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wireless assisted-roaming denial-maximum 8` | Configures the maximum number of times a client can be denied association if the association request is sent to an AP does not match any AP on the prediction. The valid range is from 1 to 10, and the default value is 5. |
| **Step 9** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Verifying Assisted Roaming

The following command can be used to verify assisted roaming configured on a WLAN:

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| **show wlan id** *wlan-id* | Displays the WLAN parameters on the WLAN. |

# Configuration Examples for Assisted Roaming

This example shows how to configure the neighbor floor label bias:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless assisted-roaming floor-bias 10
Device(config)# end
Device# show wlan id 23
```

This example shows how to disable neighbor list on a specific WLAN:

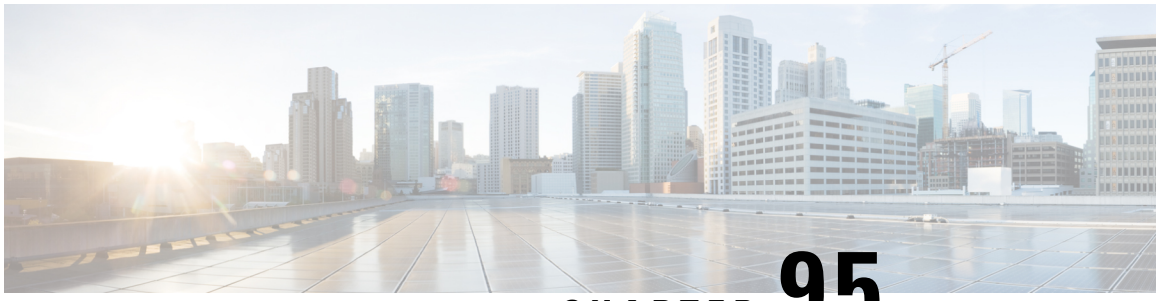
```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wlan test1
Device(config (wlan)# no assisted-roaming neighbor-list
Device(config)(wlan)# end
Device# show wlan id 23
```

This example shows how to configure the prediction list on a specific WLAN:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wlan test1
Device(config)(wlan)# assisted-roaming prediction
Device(config)(wlan)# end
Device# show wlan id 23
```

This example shows how to configure the prediction list based on assisted roaming prediction threshold and maximum denial count on a specific WLAN:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless assisted-roaming prediction-minimum 4
Device(config)# wireless assisted-roaming denial-maximum 4
Device(config)(wlan)# end
Device# show wlan id 23
```



CHAPTER 95

# 802.11v


- Information About 802.11v, on page 893
- Prerequisites for Configuring 802.11v, on page 894
- Restrictions for 802.11v, on page 894
- Enabling 802.11v BSS Transition Management, on page 894
- Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management (GUI), on page 895
- Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management (CLI), on page 895


# Information About 802.11v

The embedded wireless controller supports 802.11v amendment for wireless networks, which describes numerous enhancements to wireless network management.

One such enhancement is Network assisted Power Savings which helps clients to improve the battery life by enabling them to sleep longer. As an example, mobile devices typically use a certain amount of idle period to ensure that they remain connected to access points and therefore consume more power when performing the following tasks while in a wireless network.

Another enhancement is Network assisted Roaming which enables the WLAN to send requests to associated clients, advising the clients as to better APs to associate to. This is useful for both load balancing and in directing poorly connected clients.

## Enabling 802.11v Network Assisted Power Savings

Wireless devices consume battery to maintain their connection to the clients, in several ways:

- By waking up at regular intervals to listen to the access point beacons containing a DTIM, which indicates buffered broadcast or multicast traffic that the access point delivers to the clients.
- By sending null frames to the access points, in the form of keepalive messages– to maintain connection with access points.
- Devices also periodically listen to beacons (even in the absence of DTIM fields) to synchronize their clock to that of the corresponding access point.

All these processes consume battery and this consumption particularly impacts devices (such as Apple), because these devices use a conservative session timeout estimation, and therefore, wake up often to send keepalive messages. The 802.11 standard, without 802.11v, does not include any mechanism for the controller or the access points to communicate to wireless clients about the session timeout for the local client.

To save the power of clients due to the mentioned tasks in wireless network, the following features in the 802.11v standard are used:

- Directed Multicast Service
- Base Station Subsystem (BSS) Max Idle Period

### Directed Multicast Service

Using Directed Multicast Service (DMS), the client requests the access point to transmit the required multicast packet as unicast frames. This allows the client to receive the multicast packets it has ignored while in sleep mode and also ensures Layer 2 reliability. Furthermore, the unicast frame is transmitted to the client at a potentially higher wireless link rate which enables the client to receive the packet quickly by enabling the radio for a shorter duration, thus also saving battery power. Since the wireless client also does not have to wake up at each DTIM interval in order to receive multicast traffic, longer sleeping intervals are allowed.

### BSS Max Idle Period

The BSS Max Idle period is the timeframe during which an access point (AP) does not disassociate a client due to nonreceipt of frames from the connected client. This helps ensure that the client device does not send keepalive messages frequently. The idle period timer value is transmitted using the association and reassociation response frame from the access point to the client. The idle time value indicates the maximum time that a client can remain idle without transmitting any frame to an access point. As a result, the clients remain in sleep mode for a longer duration without transmitting the keepalive messages often. This in turn contributes to saving battery power.

# Prerequisites for Configuring 802.11v

- Applies for Apple clients like Apple iPad, iPhone, and so on, that run on Apple iOS version 7 or later.
- Supports local mode; also supports FlexConnect access points in central authentication modes only.

# Restrictions for 802.11v

Client needs to support 802.11v BSS Transition.

# Enabling 802.11v BSS Transition Management

802.11v BSS Transition is applied in the following three scenarios:

- Solicited request—Client can send an 802.11v Basic Service Set (BSS) Transition Management Query before roaming for a better option of AP to reassociate with.
- Unsolicited Load Balancing request—If an AP is heavily loaded, it sends out an 802.11v BSS Transition Management Request to an associated client.
- Unsolicited Optimized Roaming request—If a client's RSSI and rate do not meet the requirements, the corresponding AP sends out an 802.11v BSS Transition Management Request to this client.

**Note** 802.11v BSS Transition Management Request is a suggestion (or advice) given to a client, which the client can choose to follow or ignore. To force the task of disassociating a client, turn on the disassociation-imminent function. This disassociates the client after a period if the client is not reassociated to another AP.

# Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add** to create WLANs.

The **Add WLAN** page is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Advanced** tab and **11v BSS Transition Support** section, select the **BSS Transition** check box to enable BSS transition per WLAN.

**Step 4** Enable the **Dual Neighbor List** check box to include the neighbors of other radio slots of the same AP in the BSS transition response.

**Note**
This is applicable only for 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz radio slots.

**Step 5** Enable the **BSS Max Idle Service** check box to help clients and APs efficiently decide how long to remain associated when no traffic is being transmitted. The device uses this information to preserve device battery life.

**Step 6** Enable the **BSS Max Idle Protected** check box to enable the AP to accept only authenticated frames (encrypted with Robust Security Network (RSN) information) from the client to reset the BSS Max Idle period counter. Without protected mode, any data or management frame (encrypted or unencrypted) sent by the client will reset the idle timer for the client.

**Step 7** Enable the **Directed Multicast Service** check box to request the AP to send a multicast stream as unicast, to any DMS capable client on this WLAN.

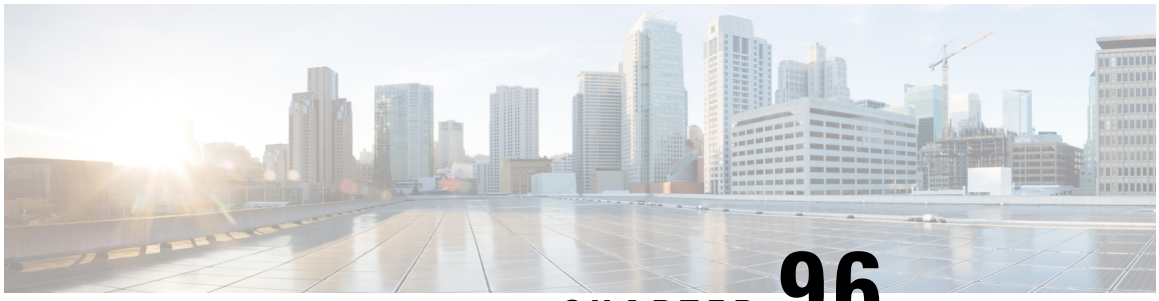
**Step 8** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

# Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management (CLI)

802.11v BSS Transtion is applied in the following three scenarios:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan test-wlan` | Configures WLAN profile and enters the WLAN profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **shut**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# shut` | Shutdown the WLAN profile. |
| **Step 4** | **bss-transition**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# bss-transition` | Configure BSS transition per WLAN. |
| **Step 5** | **bss-transition disassociation-imminent**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# bss-transition disassociation-imminent` | Configure BSS transition disassociation Imminent per WLAN. |
| **Step 6** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown` | Enables the WLAN profile. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# end` | Return to privilege EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can press **CTRL + Z** to exit global configuration mode. |



CHAPTER 96

# 802.11w


- Information About 802.11w, on page 897
- Prerequisites for 802.11w, on page 900
- Restrictions for 802.11w, on page 900
- How to Configure 802.11w, on page 901
- Disabling 802.11w, on page 902
- Monitoring 802.11w, on page 903


## Information About 802.11w

Wi-Fi is a broadcast medium that enables any device to eavesdrop and participate either as a legitimate or rogue device. Management frames such as authentication, de-authentication, association, dissociation, beacons, and probes are used by wireless clients to initiate and tear down sessions for network services. Unlike data traffic, which can be encrypted to provide a level of confidentiality, these frames must be heard and understood by all clients and therefore must be transmitted as open or unencrypted. While these frames cannot be encrypted, they must be protected from forgery to protect the wireless medium from attacks. For example, an attacker could spoof management frames from an AP to attack a client associated with the AP.

The 802.11w protocol applies only to a set of robust management frames that are protected by the Protected Management Frames ( PMF) service. These include Disassociation, De-authentication, and Robust Action frames.

Management frames that are considered as robust action and therefore protected are the following:

- Spectrum Management
- QoS
- DLS
- Block Ack
- Radio Measurement
- Fast BSS Transition
- SA Query
- Protected Dual of Public Action
- Vendor-specific Protected

When 802.11w is implemented in the wireless medium, the following occur:

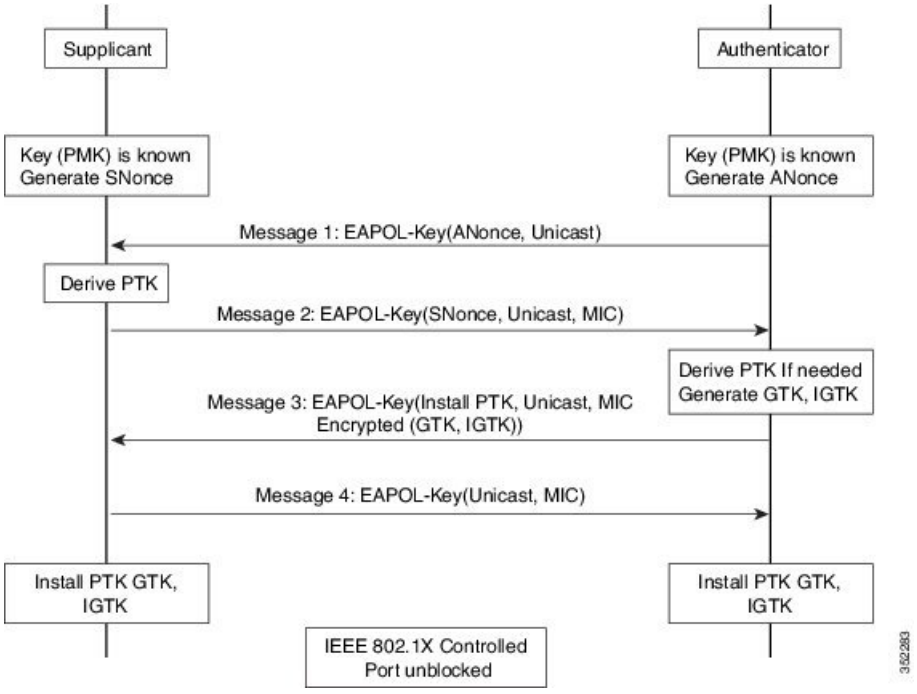
- Client protection is added by the AP adding cryptographic protection to de-authentication and dissociation frames preventing them from being spoofed in a DOS attack.
- Infrastructure protection is added by adding a Security Association (SA) tear down protection mechanism consisting of an Association Comeback Time and an SA-Query procedure preventing spoofed association request from disconnecting an already connected client.

802.11w has introduced a new IGTK Key, which is used to protect broadcast/multicast robust management frames:

- IGTK is a random value assigned by the authenticator STA (WLC) and used to protect MAC management protocol data units (MMPDUs) from that source STA.

When Management Frame Protection is negotiated, the AP encrypts the GTK and IGTK values in the EAPOL-Key frame, which is delivered in Message 3 of 4-way handshake.

***Figure 16: IGTK Exchange in 4-way Handshake***

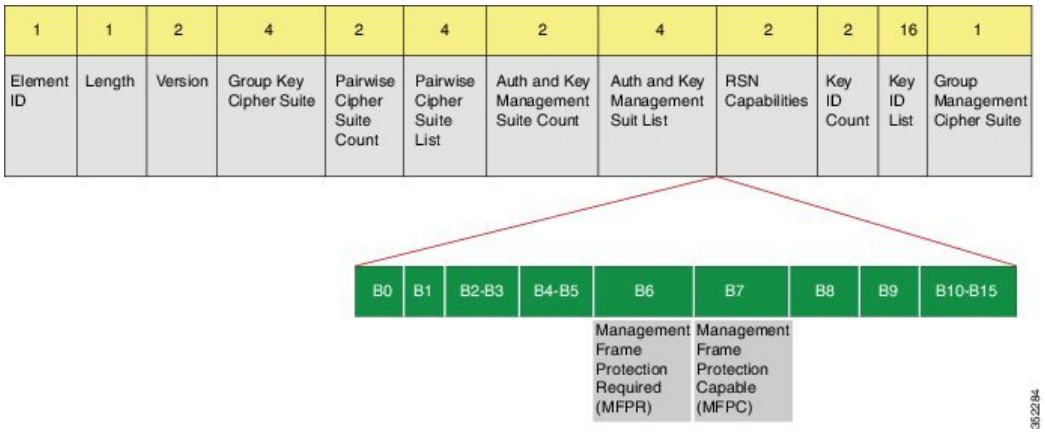



- If the AP later changes the GTK, it sends the new GTK and IGTK to the client using the Group Key Handshake .

802.11w defines a new Broadcast/Multicast Integrity Protocol (BIP) that provides data integrity and replay protection for broadcast/multicast robust management frames after successful establishment of an IGTKSA - It adds a MIC that is calculated using the shared IGTK key.

### 802.11w Information Elements (IEs)

*Figure 17: 802.11w Information Elements*

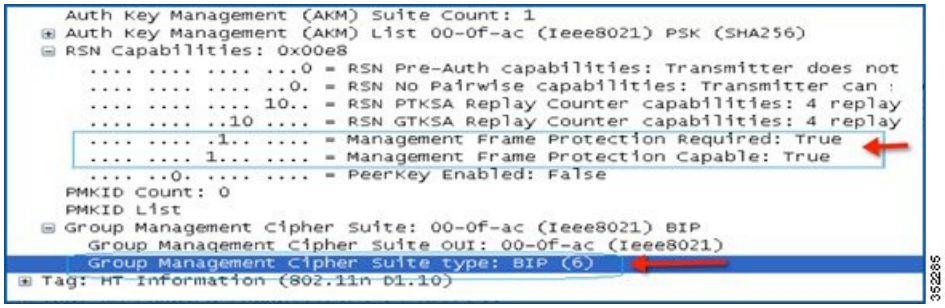



1. Modifications made in the RSN capabilities field of RSNIE.
   a. Bit 6: Management Frame Protection Required (MFPR)
   b. Bit 7: Management Frame Protection Capable (MFPC)
2. Two new AKM Suites, 5 and 6 are added for AKM Suite Selectors.
3. New Cipher Suite with type 6 is added to accommodate BIP.

The WLC adds this modified RSNIE in association and re-association responses and the APs add this modified RSNIE in beacons and probe responses.

The following Wireshark captures shows the RSNIE capabilities and the Group Management Cipher Suite elements.

*Figure 18: 802.11w Information Elements*




### Security Association (SA) Teardown Protection

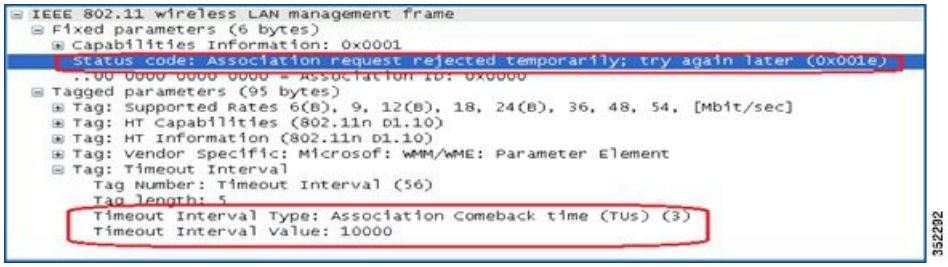
SA teardown protection is a mechanism to prevent replay attacks from tearing down the session of an existing client. It consists of an Association Comeback Time and an SA-Query procedure preventing spoofed association requests from disconnecting an already connected client.

If a client has a valid security association, and has negotiated 802.11w, the AP shall reject another Association Request with status code 30. This status code stands for "Association request rejected temporarily; Try again later". The AP should not tear down or otherwise modify the state of the existing association until the SA-Query

procedure determines that the original SA is invalid and shall include in the Association Response an Association Comeback Time information element, specifying a comeback time when the AP would be ready to accept an association with this client.

The following capture shows the Association Reject message with status code 0x1e (30) and the Association comeback time set to 10 seconds.

***Figure 19: Association Reject with Comeback Time***




Following this, if the AP is not already engaged in an SA Query with the client, the AP shall issue an SA Query until a matching SA Query response is received or the Association Comeback time expires. An AP may interpret reception of a valid protected frame as an indication of a successfully completed SA Query.

If a SA QUERY response with a matching transaction identifier within the time period, the AP shall allow the association process to be started without starting additional SA Query procedures.

# Prerequisites for 802.11w

- To configure 802.11w feature for optional and mandatory, you must have WPA and AKM configured.

**Note** The RNS (Robust Secure Network) IE must be enabled with an AES Cipher.

# Restrictions for 802.11w

- 802.11w cannot be applied on an open WLAN, WEP-encrypted WLAN, or a TKIP-encrypted WLAN.
- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller supports 802.11w + PMF combination for non-Apple clients. But Apple iOS version 11 and earlier require fix from the Apple iOS side to resolve the association issues.
- The controller will ignore disassociation or deauthentication frames sent by the clients if they are not using 802.11w PMF. The client entry will only get deleted immediately upon reception of such a frame if the client uses PMF. This is to avoid denial of service by malicious device since there is no security on those frames without PMF.

# How to Configure 802.11w

## Configuring 802.11w (GUI)

### Before you begin

WPA and AKM must be configured.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add** to create WLANs.

The **Add WLAN** page is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Security** > **Layer2** tab, navigate to the **Protected Management Frame** section.

**Step 4** Choose **PMF** as *Disabled*, *Optional*, or *Required*. By default, the PMF is *disabled*.

If you choose **PMF** as *Optional* or *Required*, you get to view the following fields:

- **Association Comeback Timer**—Enter a value between 1 and 10 seconds to configure 802.11w association comeback time.
- **SA Query Time**—Enter a value between 100 to 500 (milliseconds). This is required for clients to negotiate 802.11w PMF protection on a WLAN.

**Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

## Configuring 802.11w (CLI)

### Before you begin

WPA and AKM must be configured.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name wlan-id ssid*<br>**Example:** | Configures a WLAN and enters configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 12 alpha` | |
| **Step 3** | **security wpa akm pmf dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)#security wpa akm pmf dot1x` | Configures 802.1x support. |
| **Step 4** | **security pmf association-comeback** *comeback-interval*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security pmf association-comeback 10` | Configures the 802.11w association comeback time. |
| **Step 5** | **security pmf mandatory**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security pmf mandatory` | Requires clients to negotiate 802.11w PMF protection on a WLAN. |
| **Step 6** | **security pmf saquery-retry-time** *timeout*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# security pmf saquery-retry-time 100` | Time interval identified in milliseconds before which the SA query response is expected. If the device does not get a response, another SQ query is tried. |

# Disabling 802.11w

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name wlan-id ssid*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 12 alpha` | Configures a WLAN and enters configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **no security wpa akm pmf dot1x**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm pmf dot1x` | Disables 802.1x support. |
| **Step 4** | **no security pmf association-comeback** *comeback-interval*<br>**Example:** | Disables the 802.11w association comeback time. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wlan)# no security pmf association-comeback 10` | |
| **Step 5** | **no security pmf mandatory**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security pmf mandatory` | Disables client negotiation of 802.11w PMF protection on a WLAN. |
| **Step 6** | **no security pmf saquery-retry-time** *timeout*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no security pmf saquery-retry-time 100` | Disables SQ query retry. |

# Monitoring 802.11w

Use the following commands to monitor 802.11w.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** **show wlan name** *wlan-name*

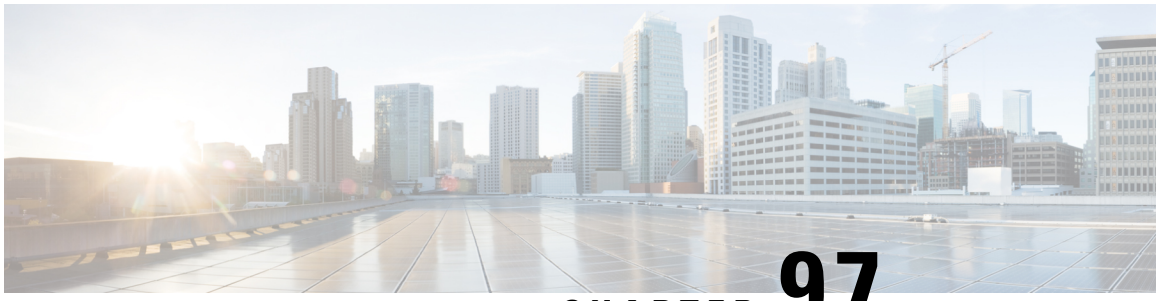
Displays the WLAN parameters on the WLAN. The PMF parameters are displayed.

```
. . . .
. . . .
Auth Key Management
            802.1x                          : Disabled
            PSK                             : Disabled
            CCKM                            : Disabled
            FT dot1x                        : Disabled
            FT PSK                          : Disabled
            FT SAE                          : Disabled
            Dot1x-SHA256                    : Enabled
            PSK-SHA256                      : Disabled
            SAE                             : Disabled
            OWE                             : Disabled
            SUITEB-1X                       : Disabled
            SUITEB192-1X                    : Disabled
    CCKM TSF Tolerance                      : 1000
    FT Support                              : Adaptive
        FT Reassociation Timeout            : 20
        FT Over-The-DS mode                 : Enabled
    PMF Support                             : Required
        PMF Association Comeback Timeout    : 1
        PMF SA Query Time                   : 500
. . . .
. . . .
```

**Step 2** **show wireless client mac-address** *mac-address* **detail**

Displays the summary of the 802.11w authentication key management configuration on a client.

```
. . . .
. . . .
Policy Manager State: Run
NPU Fast Fast Notified : No
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 497 seconds
Policy Type : WPA2
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : 802.1x-SHA256
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Management Frame Protection : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : Yes
EAP Type : LEAP
VLAN : 39
Multicast VLAN : 0
Access VLAN : 39
Anchor VLAN : 0
WFD capable : No
Manged WFD capable : No
. . . .
. . . .
```



CHAPTER 97

# 802.11ax Per WLAN


- Information About 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN, on page 905
- Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN (GUI), on page 905
- Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN (CLI), on page 906
- Verifying 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN, on page 906


## Information About 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN

Prior to Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru Release 17.4.1, the 802.11ax mode was configured per radio band. In this configuration, the 11ax mode was either enabled or disabled for all WLANs (AP) that were configured per radio, all at once. When 11ax was enabled per radio, the 11ac clients were not able to scan or connect to the SSID if the beacon had 11ax information elements. Client could not probe an access point (AP), if the beacon has 11ax IE.

Therefore, a 11ax configuration knob per AP is introduced, from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru Release 17.5.1. This knob is introduced under the WLAN profile. By default, the 11ax knob per WLAN is now enabled on the controller.

**Note** For 6-GHz radio, the 802.11ax parameters are taken from the multi BSSID profile tagged to the corresponding 6-GHz RF profile of the AP. So, the WLAN dot11ax parameters are overridden by multi BSSID profile parameters in the case of 6-GHz. There are no changes for 2.4 and 5-GHz band WLANs. They continue to use the WLAN parameters for 802.11ax.

## Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add WLAN** window is displayed.

**Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.

**Step 4** In the **11ax** section, check the **Enable 11ax** check box to enable 802.11ax operation status on the WLAN.

**Note**
When 11ax is disabled, beacons will not display 11ax IE, and all the 11ax features will be operationally disabled on the WLAN.

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN (CLI)

**Procedure**

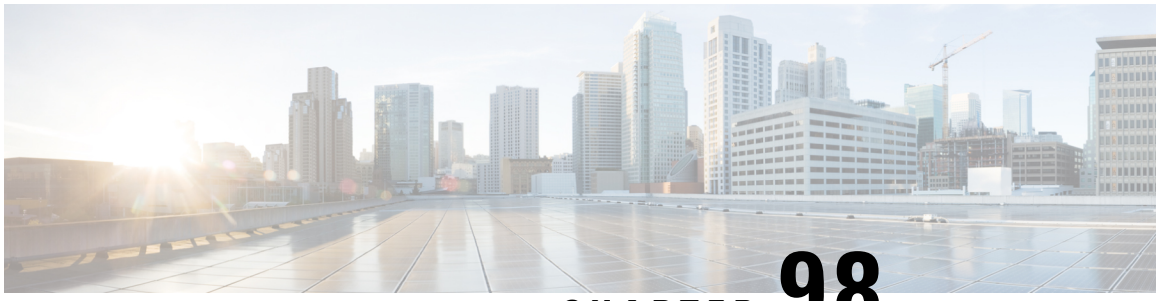
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *wlan-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile` | Specifies the WLAN name and enters the WLAN configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **dot11ax**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# dot11ax` | Configures 802.11ax on a WLAN. |
| **Step 4** | **no dot11ax**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# no dot11ax` | Disables 802.11ax on the WLAN profile. |

# Verifying 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN

To display the status of the 11ax parameter, run the following command:

```
Device# show wlan id 6
WLAN Profile Name     : power
================================================
Identifier                                    : 6
Description                                   :
Network Name (SSID)                           : power
Status                                        : Enabled
Broadcast SSID                                : Enabled
Advertise-Apname                              : Disabled
Universal AP Admin                            : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN               : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN        : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN  : 200
.
```

```
.
.
802.11ac MU-MIMO                                : Enabled
802.11ax parameters
    802.11ax Operation Status                   : Enabled
    OFDMA Downlink                              : Enabled
    OFDMA Uplink                                : Enabled
    MU-MIMO Downlink                            : Enabled
    MU-MIMO Uplink                              : Enabled
    BSS Target Wake Up Time                     : Enabled
    BSS Target Wake Up Time Broadcast Support   : Enabled
.
.
.
```



CHAPTER 98

# Deny Wireless Client Session Establishment Using Calendar Profiles


- Information About Denial of Wireless Client Session Establishment, on page 909
- Configuring Daily Calendar Profile, on page 910
- Configuring Weekly Calendar Profile, on page 911
- Configuring Monthly Calendar Profile, on page 912
- Mapping a Daily Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile, on page 913
- Mapping a Weekly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile, on page 914
- Mapping a Monthly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile, on page 915
- Verifying Calendar Profile Configuration, on page 916
- Verifying Policy Profile Configuration, on page 916


## Information About Denial of Wireless Client Session Establishment

Denial of client session establishment feature allows the controller to stop client session establishment based on a particular time. This helps control the network in efficient and controlled manner without any manual intervention.

In Embedded Wireless Controller, you can deny the wireless client session based on the following recurrences:

- Daily
- Weekly
- Monthly

The Calendar Profiles created are then mapped to the policy profile. By attaching the calendar profile to a policy profile, you will be able to create different recurrences for the policy profile using different policy tag.

**Note** You need to create separate Calendar Profile for Daily, Weekly, and Monthly sub-categories.

The following is the workflow for denial of wireless client session establishment feature:

- Create a calendar profile.
- Apply the calendar profile to a policy profile.

**Note** A maximum of 100 calendar profile configuration and 5 calendar profile association to policy profile is supported.

### Points to Remember

If you boot up your controller, the denial of client session establishment feature kicks in after a minute from the system boot up.

If you change the system time after the calendar profile is associated to a policy profile, you can expect a maximum of 30 second delay to adapt to the new clock timings.

**Note** You cannot use the **no action deny-client** command to disable action while associating the calendar profile to a policy profile.

If you want to disable the action command, you need to disassociate the calendar profile from the policy profile, and re-configure again.

# Configuring Daily Calendar Profile

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile calendar-profile name** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile calendar-profile name daily_calendar_profile` | Configures a calendar profile.<br>Here,<br>*name* refers to the name of the calendar profile. |
| **Step 3** | **start** *start_time* **end** *end_time*<br>**Example:** | Configures start and end time for the calendar profile. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-calendar-profile)# start 09:00:00 end 17:00:00` | Here,<br>*start_time* is the start time for the calendar profile. You need to enter start time in **HH:MM:SS** format.<br>*end_time* is the end time for the calendar profile. You need to enter end time in **HH:MM:SS** format. |
| **Step 4** | **recurrence daily**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# recurrence daily` | Configures daily recurrences for a calendar profile. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.<br>Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode.<br>**Note**<br>When the calendar profile kicks in, the AP power profile rules (for example, radio state and USB device state) that are defined for the Ethernet speed are not applied and continue to be as per the fixed power profile. |

# Configuring Weekly Calendar Profile

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile calendar-profile name** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile calendar-profile name weekly_calendar_profile` | Configures a calendar profile.<br>Here,<br>*name* refers to the name of the calendar profile. |
| **Step 3** | **start** *start_time* **end** *end_time*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# start 18:00:00 end 19:00:00` | Configures start and end time for the calendar profile.<br>Here, |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | *start_time* is the start time for the calendar profile. You need to enter start time in **HH:MM:SS** format.<br>*end_time* is the end time for the calendar profile. You need to enter end time in **HH:MM:SS** format. |
| **Step 4** | **recurrence weekly**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# recurrence weekly` | Configures weekly recurrences for the calendar profile. |
| **Step 5** | **day** {**friday** \| **monday** \| **saturday** \| **sunday** \| **thursday** \| **tuesday** \| **wednesday**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# day friday`<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# day monday` | Configure days when the weekly calendar needs to be active.<br>**Note** You can configure multiple days using this command. |
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.<br>Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring Monthly Calendar Profile

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile calendar-profile name** *name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile calendar-profile name monthly_calendar_profile` | Configures a calendar profile.<br>Here,<br>*name* refers to the name of the calendar profile. |
| **Step 3** | **start** *start_time* **end** *end_time*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# start 18:00:00 end 19:00:00` | Configures start and end time for the calendar profile.<br>Here, |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | *start_time* is the start time for the calendar profile. You need to enter start time in **HH:MM:SS** format.<br>*end_time* is the end time for the calendar profile. You need to enter end time in **HH:MM:SS** format. |
| **Step 4** | **recurrence monthly**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# recurrence monthly` | Configures monthly recurrences for the calendar profile. |
| **Step 5** | **date** *value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# date 25` | Configures a date for the calendar profile.<br>**Note** If the requirement is to perform denial of service in certain timing, such as, 2,10, and 25 of every month, all three days need to be configured using the **date** command. There is no range for date. You need to configure the dates as per your requirement. |
| **Step 6** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-calendar-profile)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.<br>Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Mapping a Daily Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Creates policy profile for the WLAN.<br>The *profile-name* is the profile name of the policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **calender-profile name** *calendar-profile-name*<br>**Example:** | Maps a calendar profile to a policy profile.<br>The *calendar-profile-name* is the name of the calendar profile name created in #unique_1182. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wireless-policy)# calender-profile name daily_calendar_profile` | **Note** You need to disable Policy Profile before associating a calendar profile to a policy profile. The following needs to be done: `Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown` |
| **Step 4** | **action deny-client** **Example:** `Device(config-policy-profile-calender)# action deny-client` | Configures deny client session establishment during calendar profile interval. **Note** Client associations are denied daily between timeslot 9:00:00 to 17:00:00. For start and end time details, see #unique_1182. |
| **Step 5** | **end** **Example:** `Device(config-policy-profile-calender)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Mapping a Weekly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal** **Example:** `Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-name* **Example:** `Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Creates policy profile for the WLAN. The *profile-name* is the profile name of the policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **calender-profile name** *calendar-profile-name* **Example:** `Device(config-wireless-policy)# calender-profile name weekly_calendar_profile` | Maps a calender profile to a policy profile. The *calendar-profile-name* is the name of the calendar profile name created in #unique_1184. **Note** You need to disable Policy Profile before associating a calendar profile to a policy profile. The following needs to be done: `Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown` |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **action deny-client**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-profile-calender)# action deny-client` | Configures deny client session establishment during calendar profile interval.<br>**Note**<br>Client associations are denied daily between timeslot 9:00:00 to 17:00:00. For start and end time details, see #unique_1184.<br>On Monday and Tuesday, clients are denied between 17:30:00 and 19:00:00 besides regular time 9:00:00 to 17:00:00.<br>On 25th of every month, clients are denied between 18:00:00 and 19:00:00 besides regular time 9:00:00 to 17:00:00. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-profile-calender)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.<br>Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Mapping a Monthly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Creates policy profile for the WLAN.<br>The *profile-name* is the profile name of the policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **calender-profile name** *calendar-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# calender-profile name monthly_calendar_profile` | Maps a calender profile to a policy profile.<br>The *calendar-profile-name* is the name of the calendar profile name created in #unique_1186. |
| **Step 4** | **action deny-client**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-profile-calender)# action deny-client` | Configures deny client session establishment for the defined calendar profile interval.<br>**Note** |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | Every day client associations are denied between timeslot 9:00:00 to 17:00:00. For start and end time details, see #unique_1186.<br>On Monday and Tuesday, clients are denied between 17:30:00 and 19:00:00 besides regular time 9:00:00 to 17:00:00.<br>On 25th of every month, clients are denied between 18:00:00 and 19:00:00 besides regular time 9:00:00 to 17:00:00. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-profile-calender)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.<br>Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Verifying Calendar Profile Configuration

To view the summary of calendar profiles, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile calendar-profile summary
Number of Calendar Profiles: 3

Profile-Name
--------------------------------
monthly_25_profile
weekly_mon_profile
daily_calendar_profile
```

To view the calendar profile details for a specific profile name, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile calendar-profile detailed daily_calendar_profile
Calendar profiles                          : daily_calendar_profile
-------------------------------------------------------------------
Recurrence                                 : DAILY
Start Time                                 : 09:00:00
End Time                                   : 17:00:00
```

# Verifying Policy Profile Configuration

To view the detailed parameters for a specific policy profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed default-policy-profile
Tunnel Profile
  Profile Name                      : Not Configured
Calendar Profile
  Profile Name                      : monthly_25_profile
  Wlan Enable                       : Not Configured
  Client Block                      : Client Block Configured
  ------------------------------------------------
  Profile Name                      : weekly_mon_profile
```

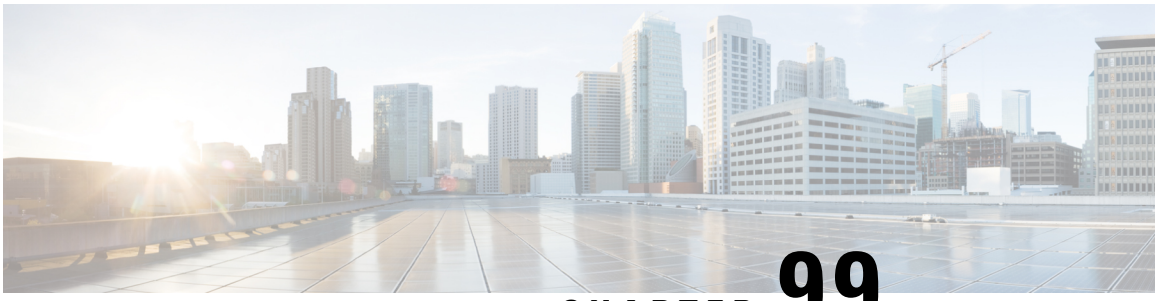
```
  Wlan Enable                      : Not Configured
  Client Block                     : Client Block Configured
  ---------------------------------------------------
  Profile Name                     : daily_calendar_profile
  Wlan Enable                      : Not Configured
  Client Block                     : Client Block Configured
  ---------------------------------------------------
Fabric Profile
  Profile Name                     : Not Configured
```

To view the configured calendar profile information under policy profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy all
Tunnel Profile
Profile Name : Not Configured
Calendar Profile
Profile Name : daily_calendar_profile
Wlan Enable : Not Configured
Client Block : Client Block Configured
---------------------------------------------------
Profile Name : weekly_calendar_profile
Wlan Enable : Not Configured
Client Block : Client Block Configured
---------------------------------------------------
Fabric Profile
Profile Name : Not Configured
```



**Note** The anchor priority is always displayed as local. Priorities can be assigned on the foreign controller.



CHAPTER 99

# Ethernet over GRE Tunnels


- Introduction to EoGRE, on page 919
- Create a Tunnel Gateway, on page 921
- Configuring a Tunnel Domain, on page 922
- Configuring EoGRE Global Parameters, on page 923
- Configuring a Tunnel Profile, on page 923
- Associating WLAN to a Wireless Policy Profile, on page 925
- Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an AP, on page 926
- Verifying the EoGRE Tunnel Configuration, on page 926


# Introduction to EoGRE

Ethernet over GRE (EoGRE) is an aggregation solution for grouping Wi-Fi traffic from hotspots. This solution enables customer premises equipment (CPE) devices to bridge the Ethernet traffic coming from an end-host, and encapsulate the traffic in Ethernet packets over an IP Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) tunnel. When the IP GRE tunnels are terminated on a service provider's broadband network gateway, the end-host traffic is forwarded and subscriber sessions are initiated.

### Client IPv6

### EoGRE for WLAN

To enable EoGRE for a WLAN, the wireless policy profile should be mapped to a tunnel profile, which may contain the following:

- AAA override: Allows you to bypass rule filtering for a client.
- Gateway RADIUS proxy: Allows forwarding of AAA requests to tunnel gateways.
- Tunnel rules: Defines the domain to use for each realm. They also define VLAN tagging for the client traffic towards tunnel gateways.
- DHCP option 82: Provides a set of predefined fields.

### EoGRE Deployment with Multiple Tunnel Gateways

The embedded wireless controller sends keepalive pings to the primary and secondary tunnel gateways and keeps track of the missed pings. When a certain threshold level is reached for the missed pings, switchover

is performed and the secondary tunnel is marked as active. This switchover deauthenticates all the clients to enable them to rejoin the access points (APs). When the primary tunnel come back online, all the client traffic are reverted to the primary tunnel. However, this behavior depends on the type of redundancy.

### Load Balancing in EtherChannels

Load balancing of tunneled traffic over Etherchannels works by hashing the source or destination IP addresses or mac addresses of the tunnel endpoint pair. Because the number of tunnels is very limited when compared to clients (each tunnel carries traffic for many clients), the spreading effect of hashing is highly reduced and optimal utilization of Etherchannel links can be hard to achieve.

Using the EoGRE configuration model, you can use the *tunnel source* option of each tunnel interface to adjust the load-balancing parameters and spread tunnels across multiple links.

You can use different source interfaces on each tunnel for load balancing based on the source or destination IP address. For that choose the source interface IP address in such a way that traffic flows take different links for each src-dest IP pair. The following is an example with four ports:

```
Client traffic on Tunnel1 – Src IP: 40.143.0.72  Dest IP: 40.253.0.2
Client traffic on Tunnel2 – Src IP: 40.146.0.94  Dest IP: 40.253.0.6
Client traffic on Tunnel3 – Src IP: 40.147.0.74  Dest IP: 40.253.0.10
```

Use the **show platform software port-channel link-select interface port-channel 4 ipv4** *src_ip dest_ip* command to determine the link that a particular flow will take.

# EoGRE Configuration Overview

The EoGRE solution can be deployed in two different ways:

- Central-Switching: EoGRE tunnels connect the embedded wireless controller to the tunnel gateways.
- Flex or Local-Switching: EoGRE tunnels are initiated on the APs and terminated on the tunnel gateways.

To configure EoGRE, perform the following tasks:

1. Create a set of tunnel gateways.
2. Create a set of tunnel domains.
3. Create a tunnel profile with rules that define how to match clients to domains.
4. Create a policy profile and attach the tunnel profile to it.
5. Map the policy profile to WLANs using policy tags.



**Note** The EoGRE tunnel fallback to the secondary tunnel is triggered after the *max-skip-count* ping fails in the last measurement window. Based on the starting and ending instance of the measurement window, the fall-back may take more time than the duration that is configured.

*Table 51: EoGRE Authentication Methods*

| Method Name | First Supported Release | Mode |
|---|---|---|
| PSK | 17.2.1 | Local/Flex (central authentication) |
| Open | 16.12.1 | Local/Flex (central authentication) |
| LWA | 16.12.1 | Local/Flex (central authentication) |
| Dot1x | 16.12.1 | Local/Flex (central authentication) |
| CWA | 16.12.1 | Local/Flex (central authentication) |

# Create a Tunnel Gateway

**Note** In the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points, a tunnel gateway is modeled as a tunnel interface.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **interface tunnel** *tunnel_number*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# interface tunnel 21` | Configures a tunnel interface and enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **tunnel source** *source_intf*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# tunnel source 22` | Sets the source address of the tunnel interface. The source interface can be VLAN, Gigabit Ethernet or loopback. |
| **Step 4** | **tunnel destination** *tunnel-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# tunnel destination 10.11.12.13` | Sets the destination address of the tunnel. |
| **Step 5** | **tunnel mode ethernet gre** {**ipv4** \| **ipv6**} **p2p**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-if)# tunnel mode ethernet gre ipv4 p2p` | Sets the encapsulation mode of the tunnel to Ethernet over GRE IPv4 or Ethernet over GRE IPv6. |

# Configuring a Tunnel Domain

**Note** Tunnel domains are a redundancy grouping of tunnels. The following configuration procedure specifies a primary and a secondary tunnel, along with a redundancy model.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **tunnel eogre domain** *domain*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# tunnel eogre domain dom1` | Configures EoGRE redundancy domain. |
| **Step 3** | **primary tunnel** *primary-tunnel_intf*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-eogre-domain)# primary tunnel 21` | Configures the primary tunnel. |
| **Step 4** | **secondary tunnel** *secondary-tunnel_intf*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-eogre-domain)# secondary tunnel 22` | Configures the secondary tunnel. |
| **Step 5** | **redundancy revertive**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-eogre-domain)# redundancy revertive` | Sets the redundancy model as revertive.<br>When redundancy is set to revertive and the primary tunnel goes down, a switchover to secondary tunnel is performed. When the primary tunnel comes back up, a switchover to the primary tunnel is performed, because the primary tunnel has priority over the secondary tunnel.<br>When redundancy is not set to revertive, tunnels will have the same priority, and a switchover to the primary tunnel is not performed if the active tunnel is the secondary tunnel and the primary tunnel comes back up. |

# Configuring EoGRE Global Parameters

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **tunnel eogre heartbeat interval** *interval-value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# tunnel eogre heartbeat interval 600` | Sets EoGRE tunnel heartbeat periodic interval. |
| **Step 3** | **tunnel eogre heartbeat max-skip-count** *skip-count*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# tunnel eogre heartbeat max-skip-count 7` | Sets the maximum number of tolerable dropped heartbeats.<br>After reaching the maximum number of heartbeats that can be dropped, the tunnel is declared as down and a switchover is performed. |
| **Step 4** | **tunnel eogre source loopback** *tunnel_source*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# tunnel eogre source loopback 12` | Sets the tunnel EoGRE source interface. |
| **Step 5** | **tunnel eogre interface tunnel** *tunnel-intf* **aaa proxy key** *key key-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# tunnel eogre interface tunnel 21 aaa proxy key 0 mykey` | (Optional) Configures AAA proxy RADIUS key for the AAA proxy setup.<br>**Note**<br>When the tunnel gateway is behaving as the AAA proxy server, only this step is required for the configuration. |

# Configuring a Tunnel Profile

### Before you begin

Ensure that you define the destination VLAN on the controller. If you do not define the VLAN, clients will not be able to connect.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy eogre_policy` | Configures a WLAN policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **tunnel-profile** *tunnel-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# tunnel-profile tunnel1` | Creates a tunnel profile. |
| **Step 4** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |
| **Step 5** | **wireless profile tunnel** *tunnel-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile tunnel wl-tunnel-1` | Configures a wireless tunnel profile. |
| **Step 6** | **dhcp-opt82 enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-tunnel-profile)# dhcp-opt82 enable` | Activates DHCP Option 82 for the tunneled clients. |
| **Step 7** | **dhcp-opt82 remote-id** *remote-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-tunnel-profile)# dhcp-opt82 remote-id vlan` | Configures Remote ID options.<br>Choose from the comma-separated list of options such as **ap-mac**, **ap-ethmac**, **ap-name**, **ap-group-name**, **flex-group-name**, **ap-location**, **vlan**, **ssid-name**, **ssid-type**, and **client-mac**. |
| **Step 8** | **aaa-override**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-tunnel-profile)# aaa-override` | Enables AAA policy override. |
| **Step 9** | **gateway-radius-proxy**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-tunnel-profile)# gateway-radius-proxy` | Enables the gateway RADIUS proxy. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 10** | **gateway-accounting-radius-proxy**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-tunnel-profile)# gateway-accounting-radius-proxy` | Enables the gateway accounting RADIUS proxy. |
| **Step 11** | **rule** *priority* **realm-filter** *realm* **domain** *domain-name* **vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-tunnel-profile)# rule 12 realm-filter realm domain dom1 vlan 5` | Creates a rule to choose a domain, using the realm filter, for client Network Access Identifier (NAI), tunneling domain name, and destination VLAN. |

# Associating WLAN to a Wireless Policy Profile

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless tag policy** *policy-tag-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless tag policy eogre_tag` | Configures a policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **wlan** *wlan-name* **policy** *profile-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan eogre_open_eogre policy eogre_policy` | Maps an EoGRE policy profile to a WLAN profile. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-policy-tag)# end` | Saves the configuration, exits configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an AP

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **ap** *mac-address*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# ap 80E8.6FD4.0BB0` | Configures an AP and enters AP profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **policy-tag** *policy-tag-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-tag)# policy-tag eogre_tag` | Maps the EoGRE policy tag to the AP. |
| **Step 4** | **site-tag** *site-tag-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-tag)# site-tag sp-flex-site` | Maps a site tag to the AP. |
| **Step 5** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-ap-tag)# end` | Saves the configuration, exits configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

# Verifying the EoGRE Tunnel Configuration

The `show tunnel eogre` command displays the EoGRE clients, domains, gateways, global-configuration, and manager information in the local mode.

To display the EoGRE domain summary in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre domain summary

Domain Name          Primary GW   Secondary GW      Active GW      Redundancy
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
domain1              Tunnel1      Tunnel2           Tunnel1        Non-Revertive
eogre_domain         Tunnel1      Tunnel2           Tunnel1        Non-Revertive
```

To display the details of an EoGRE domain in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre domain detailed domain-name

Domain Name    : eogre_domain
 Primary GW    : Tunnel1
```

```
 Secondary GW  : Tunnel2
 Active GW     : Tunnel1
 Redundancy    : Non-Revertive
```

To view the EoGRE tunnel gateway summary and statistics in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre gateway summary

Name               Type  Address                                  AdminState  State  Clients
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Tunnel1             IPv4  9.51.1.11                                 Up          Up     0

Tunnel2             IPv4  9.51.1.12                                 Up          Down   0

Tunnel10            IPv6  fd09:9:8:21::90                           Down        Down   0

Tunnel11            IPv4  9.51.1.11                                 Up          Up     0

Tunnel12            IPv6  fd09:9:8:21::90                           Up          Down   0

Tunnel100           IPv4  9.51.1.100                                Up          Down   0
```

To view the details of an EoGRE tunnel gateway in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre gateway detailed gateway-name

Gateway : Tunnel1
 Mode   : IPv4
 IP     : 9.51.1.11
 Source : Vlan51 / 9.51.1.1
 State  : Up
 SLA ID : 56
 MTU    : 1480
 Up Time: 4 minutes 45 seconds

 Clients
  Total Number of Wireless Clients      : 0
 Traffic
  Total Number of Received Packets      : 0
  Total Number of Received Bytes        : 0
  Total Number of Transmitted Packets   : 0
  Total Number of Transmitted Bytes     : 0
 Keepalives
  Total Number of Lost Keepalives       : 0
  Total Number of Received Keepalives   : 5
  Total Number of Transmitted Keepalives: 5
  Windows                               : 1
  Transmitted Keepalives in last window : 2
  Received Keepalives in last window    : 2
```

To view the client summary of EoGRE in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre client summary

Client MAC      AP MAC          Domain                          Tunnel        VLAN  Local
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
74da.3828.88b0  80e8.6fd4.9520  eogre_domain                     N/A           2121   No
```

To view the details of an EoGRE global configuration in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre global-configuration

Heartbeat interval       : 60
Max Heartbeat skip count : 3
Source Interface         : (none)
```

To view the details of the global tunnel manager statistics in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre manager stats global

Tunnel Global Statistics
Last Updated                     : 02/18/2019 23:50:35
EoGRE Objects
  Gateways                       : 6
  Domains                        : 2

EoGRE Flex Objects
  AP Gateways                    : 2
  AP Domains                     : 1
  AP Gateways HA inconsistencies : 0
  AP Domains HA inconsistencies  : 0

Config events
  IOS Tunnel updates             : 806
  IOS Domain updates             : 88
  Global updates                 : 48
  Tunnel Profile updates         : 120
  Tunnel Rule updates            : 16
  AAA proxy key updates          : 0

AP events
  Flex AP Join                   : 1
  Flex AP Leave                  : 0
  Local AP Join                  : 0
  Local AP leave                 : 0
  Tunnel status (rx)             : 4
  Domain status (rx)             : 1
  IAPP stats msg (rx)            : 3
  Client count (rx)              : 6
  VAP Payload msg (tx)           : 4
  Domain config (tx)             : 1
  Global config (tx)             : 1
  Client delete (tx)             : 1
  Client delete per domain (tx)  : 3
  DHCP option 82 (tx)            : 4

Client events
  Add-mobile                     : 2
  Run-State                      : 3
  Delete                         : 1
  Cleanup                        : 0
  Join                           : 2
  Plumb                          : 0
  Join Errors                    : 0
  HandOff                        : 0
  MsPayload                      : 2
  FT Recover                     : 0
  Zombie GW counter increase     : 0
  Zombie GW counter decrease     : 0
  Tunnel Profile reset           : 88
  Client deauth                  : 0
  HA reconciliation              : 0

Client Join Events
```

```
  Generic Error                 : 0
  MSPayload Fail                : 0
  Invalid VLAN                  : 0
  Invalid Domain                : 0
  No GWs in Domain              : 0
  Domain Shut                   : 0
  Invalid GWs                   : 0
  GWs Down                      : 0
  Rule Match Error              : 0
  AAA-override                  : 0
  Flex No Active GW             : 0
  Open Auth join attempt        : 2
  Dot1x join attempt            : 2
  Mobility join attempt         : 0
  Tunnel Profile not valid      : 2
  Tunnel Profile valid          : 2
  No rule match                 : 0
  Rule match                    : 2
  AAA proxy                     : 0
  AAA proxy accounting          : 0
  AAA eogre attributes          : 0
  Has aaa override              : 0
  Error in handoff payload      : 0
  Handoff AAA override          : 0
  Handoff no AAA override       : 0
  Handoff payload received      : 0
  Handoff payload sent          : 0

SNMP Traps
  Client                        : 0
  Tunnel                        : 2
  Domain                        : 0

IPC
  IOSd TX messages              : 0

Zombie Client
  Entries                       : 0
```

To view the tunnel manager statistics of a specific process instance in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre manager stats instance instance-number

Tunnel Manager statistics for process instance : 0
Last Updated                    : 02/18/2019 23:50:35
EoGRE Objects
  Gateways                      : 6
  Domains                       : 2

EoGRE Flex Objects
  AP Gateways                   : 2
  AP Domains                    : 1
  AP Gateways HA inconsistencies : 0
  AP Domains HA inconsistencies  : 0

Config events
  IOS Tunnel updates            : 102
  IOS Domain updates            : 11
  Global updates                : 6
  Tunnel Profile updates        : 15
  Tunnel Rule updates           : 2
  AAA proxy key updates         : 0
```

```
AP events
  Flex AP Join                    : 1
  Flex AP Leave                   : 0
  Local AP Join                   : 0
  Local AP leave                  : 0
  Tunnel status (rx)              : 4
  Domain status (rx)              : 1
  IAPP stats msg (rx)             : 3
  Client count (rx)               : 6
  VAP Payload msg (tx)            : 4
  Domain config (tx)              : 1
  Global config (tx)              : 1
  Client delete (tx)              : 1
  Client delete per domain (tx)   : 3
  DHCP option 82 (tx)             : 4

Client events
  Add-mobile                      : 2
  Run-State                       : 3
  Delete                          : 1
  Cleanup                         : 0
  Join                            : 2
  Plumb                           : 0
  Join Errors                     : 0
  HandOff                         : 0
  MsPayload                       : 2
  FT Recover                      : 0
  Zombie GW counter increase      : 0
  Zombie GW counter decrease      : 0
  Tunnel Profile reset            : 11
  Client deauth                   : 0
  HA reconciliation               : 0

Client Join Events
  Generic Error                   : 0
  MSPayload Fail                  : 0
  Invalid VLAN                    : 0
  Invalid Domain                  : 0
  No GWs in Domain                : 0
  Domain Shut                     : 0
  Invalid GWs                     : 0
  GWs Down                        : 0
  Rule Match Error                : 0
  AAA-override                    : 0
  Flex No Active GW               : 0
  Open Auth join attempt          : 2
  Dot1x join attempt              : 2
  Mobility join attempt           : 0
  Tunnel Profile not valid        : 2
  Tunnel Profile valid            : 2
  No rule match                   : 0
  Rule match                      : 2
  AAA proxy                       : 0
  AAA proxy accounting            : 0
  AAA eogre attributes            : 0
  Has aaa override                : 0
  Error in handoff payload        : 0
  Handoff AAA override            : 0
  Handoff no AAA override         : 0
  Handoff payload received        : 0
  Handoff payload sent            : 0

SNMP Traps
```

```
  Client                          : 0
  Tunnel                          : 2
  Domain                          : 0

IPC
  IOSd TX messages                : 0

Zombie Client
  Entries                         : 0
```

The `show ap tunnel eogre` command displays the tunnel domain information, EoGRE events, and the tunnel gateway status on the APs, in the flex mode.

To view the summary information of an EoGRE tunnel gateway in the flex mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre domain summary

AP MAC          Domain                              Active Gateway
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
80e8.6fd4.9520  eogre_domain                        Tunnel1
```

To view the wireless tunnel profile summary, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile tunnel summary

Profile Name                     AAA-Override AAA-Proxy DHCP Opt82 Enabled
-------------------------------- ------------ --------- ---------- ---------
eogre_tunnel                              No        No        Yes       Yes
eogre_tunnel_set                          No        No        Yes        No
eogre_tunnel_snmp                         No        No         No        No
```

To view a wireless tunnel profile's details, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile tunnel detailed profile-name

Profile Name : eogre_tunnel
Status : Enabled
 AAA-Proxy/Accounting-Proxy: Disabled / Disabled
 AAA-Override : Disabled
 DHCP Option82 : Enabled
  Circuit-ID : ap-mac,ap-ethmac,ap-location,vlan
  Remote-ID : ssid-name,ssid-type,client-mac,ap-name

Tunnel Rules

Priority Realm                Vlan Domain (Status/Primary GW/Secondary GW)
-------- -------------------- ---- ---------------------------------------------
1        *                    2121 eogre_domain (Enabled/Tunnel1/Tunnel2)
```

To view detailed information about an EoGRE tunnel domain's status, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre domain detailed

Domain     : eogre_domain
AP MAC     : 80e8.6fd4.9520
Active GW  : Tunnel1
```

To view the EoGRE events on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre events

AP 80e8.6fd4.9520  Event history
```

```
Timestamp               #Times   Event               RC Context
----------------------- -------- ------------------- --
----------------------------------------
02/18/2019 23:50:26.341 6        IAPP_STATS           0 GW Tunnel2 uptime:0s

02/18/2019 23:49:40.222 2        CLIENT_JOIN          0 74da.3828.88b0, (eogre_domain/2121)

02/18/2019 23:48:43.549 1        CLIENT_LEAVE         0 74da.3828.88b0, (eogre_domain/2121)

02/18/2019 23:47:33.127 1        DOMAIN_STATUS        0 eogre_domain Active GW: Tunnel1

02/18/2019 23:47:33.124 4        AP_TUNNEL_STATUS     0 Tunnel2 Dn

02/18/2019 23:47:33.124 1        MSG_CLIENT_DEL       0 GW Tunnel2 (IP: 9.51.1.12)

02/18/2019 23:47:33.124 2        TUNNEL_ADD           0 GW Tunnel2

02/18/2019 23:47:33.120 3        MSG_CLIENT_DEL_PD    0 GW Tunnel1 (IP: 9.51.1.11)

02/18/2019 23:47:31.763 2        AP_DOMAIN_PUSH       0 Delete:eogre_domain_set, 0 GWs

02/18/2019 23:47:31.753 4        AP_VAP_PUSH          0 profile:'eogre_tunnel',
wlan:pyats_eogre
```

To view the summary information of the EoGRE tunnel gateway, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre gateway summary

AP MAC          Gateway          Type  IP                                        State  Clients
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
80e8.6fd4.9520  Tunnel1          IPv4  9.51.1.11                                   Up     1

80e8.6fd4.9520  Tunnel2          IPv4  9.51.1.12                                   Down   0
```

To view detailed information about an EoGRE tunnel gateway, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre gateway detailed gateway-name

Gateway : Tunnel1
 Mode   : IPv4
 IP     : 9.51.1.11
 State  : Up
 MTU    : 1476
 Up Time: 14 hours 25 minutes 2 seconds
 AP MAC : 80e8.6fd4.9520

 Clients
  Total Number of Wireless Clients      : 1
 Traffic
  Total Number of Received Packets      : 6
  Total Number of Received Bytes        : 2643
  Total Number of Transmitted Packets   : 94
  Total Number of Transmitted Bytes     : 20629
  Total Number of Lost Keepalive        : 3
```

To view summary information about the EoGRE tunnel gateway status, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre domain summary

AP MAC          Domain                          Active Gateway
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
80e8.6fd4.9520  eogre_domain                    Tunnel1
```

To view information about EoGRE events on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap-name tunnel eogre events

AP 80e8.6fd4.9520  Event history
Timestamp               #Times   Event               RC Context
----------------------- -------- ------------------- --
---------------------------------------
02/18/2019 23:50:26.341 6        IAPP_STATS           0 GW Tunnel2 uptime:0s

02/18/2019 23:49:40.222 2        CLIENT_JOIN         0 74da.3828.88b0, (eogre_domain/2121)

02/18/2019 23:48:43.549 1        CLIENT_LEAVE        0 74da.3828.88b0, (eogre_domain/2121)

02/18/2019 23:47:33.127 1        DOMAIN_STATUS        0 eogre_domain Active GW: Tunnel1

02/18/2019 23:47:33.124 4        AP_TUNNEL_STATUS     0 Tunnel2 Dn

02/18/2019 23:47:33.124 1        MSG_CLIENT_DEL       0 GW Tunnel2 (IP: 9.51.1.12)

02/18/2019 23:47:33.124 2        TUNNEL_ADD           0 GW Tunnel2

02/18/2019 23:47:33.120 3        MSG_CLIENT_DEL_PD    0 GW Tunnel1 (IP: 9.51.1.11)

02/18/2019 23:47:31.763 2        AP_DOMAIN_PUSH       0 Delete:eogre_domain_set, 0 GWs

02/18/2019 23:47:31.753 4        AP_VAP_PUSH          0 profile:'eogre_tunnel',
wlan:pyats_eogre
```

To view the summary information about EoGRE tunnel domain's status on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap-name tunnel eogre domain summary

AP MAC          Domain                          Active Gateway
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
80e8.6fd4.9520  eogre_domain
```

To view the detailed information about EoGRE tunnel domain on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap-name tunnel eogre domain detailed

Domain Name    : eogre_domain
 Primary GW    : Tunnel1
 Secondary GW  : Tunnel2
 Active GW     : Tunnel1
 Redundancy    : Non-Revertive
 AdminState    : Up
```

To view the summary information about EoGRE tunnel gateways on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap-name tunnel eogre gateway summary

AP MAC          Gateway          Type  IP                                      State  Clients
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
80e8.6fd4.9520  Tunnel1          IPv4  9.51.1.11                                 Up     1

80e8.6fd4.9520  Tunnel2          IPv4  9.51.1.12                                 Down   0
```

To view detailed information about an EoGRE tunnel gateway's status on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap-name tunnel eogre gateway detailed gateway-name
```

```
Gateway : Tunnel2
 Mode   : IPv4
 IP     : 9.51.1.12
 State  : Down
 MTU    : 0
 AP MAC : 80e8.6fd4.9520

 Clients
  Total Number of Wireless Clients      : 0
 Traffic
  Total Number of Received Packets      : 0
  Total Number of Received Bytes        : 0
  Total Number of Transmitted Packets   : 0
  Total Number of Transmitted Bytes     : 0
  Total Number of Lost Keepalive        : 151
```



CHAPTER 100

# Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE


- Feature History for Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE , on page 935
- Information About Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE, on page 935
- Guidelines and Limitations for Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE, on page 936
- Enabling Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE, on page 936
- Verifying Centralized EoGRE Guest Clients, on page 939


## Feature History for Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

***Table 52: Feature History for Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE***

| Release | Feature | Feature Information |
|---|---|---|
| Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1 | Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE | The Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE feature for Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC) allows you to provide internet services to wireless guest clients. |

## Information About Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE

You can provide internet services to guest wireless clients and also safeguard your company's internal information and infrastructure assets by using the Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE feature on the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC). The guest anchor feature on EWC uses EoGRE as the tunnel between the primary access point (AP) on the EWC platform and the gateway router. Client traffic flows from the subordinate APs to the primary AP and then to the EoGRE tunnel gateway.

# Guidelines and Limitations for Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE

Cisco EWC does not support AP and client SSO. After the switchover, guest clients are cleaned up, causing interruption in the client traffic. Guest clients rejoin after switchover and traffic is then re-established.

# Enabling Guest Anchor with Centralized EoGRE

To support guest anchoring using centralized EoGRE, complete the following configurations in the given order.

- Required Configuration
  1. Configuring Wireless Profile Tunnel Under Wireless Profile Policy (CLI), on page 936
  2. Configuring Central Forwarding (CLI), on page 938
  3. Configuring DHCP Required Under Policy Profile (CLI), on page 938
- Example of Recommended Configurations
  - Configuration Examples of ACLs for Guest Clients, on page 938

## Configuring Wireless Profile Tunnel Under Wireless Profile Policy (CLI)

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy_profile_name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy open_policy` | Configures wireless policy profile and goes into wireless policy configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **no central dhcp**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central dhcp` | Configures local DHCP mode, where the DHCP is performed in an AP. |
| **Step 4** | **no central switching**<br>**Example:** | Configures a WLAN for local switching. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central switching` | |
| **Step 5** | **ipv4 dhcp required**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp required` | Enables the FlexConnect DHCP-Required feature. |
| **Step 6** | **tunnel-profile** *tunnel-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# tunnel-profile eogre_central` | Configures a tunnel profile. |
| **Step 7** | **vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 2121` | Configures the VLAN name or ID. |
| **Step 8** | **no shutdown**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown` | Enables the profile policy. |

# Configuring Central Forwarding (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** From the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller for Catalyst Access Points GUI, choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **EoGRE**.

**Step 2** Click the **Tunnel Profiles** tab.

**Step 3** Under the **Tunnel Profiles** tab, click **Add**.
The **Add Tunnel Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 4** Click the **Central Forwarding** toggle button to enable the feature.

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring Central Forwarding (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile tunnel** *tunnel-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile tunnel tunnel-profile-name` | Configures wireless tunnel profile and goes into tunnel profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **central-forwarding**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-tunnel-profile)# central-forwarding` | Enables centralized forwarding. |

# Configuring DHCP Required Under Policy Profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *policy-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile-name` | Configures a policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **ipv4 dhcp required**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp required` | Configures the DHCP parameters for a WLAN. |

# Configuration Examples of ACLs for Guest Clients

Guest clients and local clients use the same network resources. Therefore, to safeguard the local client traffic with respect to the guest traffic, default ACLs are pushed for guest clients.

If a WLAN has an EoGRE guest tunnel profile, you can push the default ACLs to block traffic to the local subnet and ACLs to block the multicast traffic for guest clients.

The following example shows you the recommended configuration of ACLs for guest clients:

IPv4 ACL

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended igmp
Device(config-ext-nacl)# 10 deny igmp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# 20 permit ip any any

Device(config)# wireless profile flex igmp-flex
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy igmp

Device(config)# wireless tag site sp-flex-site
Device(config-site-tag)# flex-profile igmp-flex
Device(config-site-tag)# no local-site

Device# show ip access-lists
Extended IP access list igmp
    1 deny igmp any any
    2 permit ip any any
```

IPv6 ACL

```
Device(config)# wireless profile flex igmp-flex
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy igmp
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy mldv6

Device(config)# ipv6 access-list igmp
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# sequence 10 deny icmp any any mld-query
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# sequence 20 deny icmp any any mld-reduction
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# sequence 30 deny icmp any any mld-report
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# sequence 40 deny icmp any any mld-v2-report
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# sequence 50 permit ipv6 any any
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# acl-policy mldv6

Device# show ipv6 access-list
Extended IPv6 access list mldv6
    10 deny 58 any any
    20 deny 58 any any
    30 deny 58 any any
    40 deny 58 any any
    50 permit ipv6 any any

Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-name
Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 acl igmp
Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv6 acl mldv6
```

# Verifying Centralized EoGRE Guest Clients

To verify the centralized EoGRE guest clients, run the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre client central-forwarding summary
Client MAC      AP MAC          Domain                          Tunnel        VLAN
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
74xx.38xx.88xx  0cxx.f8xx.9cxx  domain1                         N/A           2121
74xx.38xx.88xx  0cd0.f8xx.9cxx  domain1                         N/A           2121
74xx.38xx.88xx  0cd0.f8xx.9cxx  domain1                         N/A           2121
```



# PART XIV

# Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour


- Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution Overview, on page 943
- Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller Access Point Mode, on page 955



CHAPTER 101

# Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution Overview


- About the Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution, on page 943
- Solution Components, on page 944
- Supported Platforms, on page 945
- Supported Network Design, on page 946

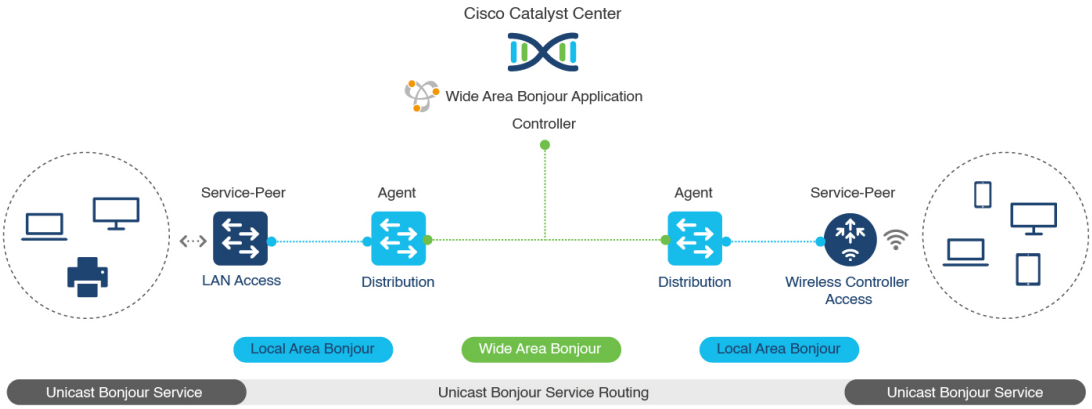

## About the Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution

The Apple Bonjour protocol is a zero-configuration solution that simplifies rich services and enables intuitive experience between connected devices, services, and applications. Using Bonjour, you can discover and use IT-managed, peer-to-peer, audio and video, or Internet of Things (IoT) services with minimal intervention and technical knowledge. Bonjour is originally designed for single Layer 2 small to mid-size networks, such as home or branch networks. The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour solution eliminates the single Layer 2 domain constraint and expands the matrix to enterprise-grade traditional wired and wireless networks, including overlay networks such as Cisco Software-Defined Access (SD-Access) and industry-standard BGP EVPN with VXLAN. The Cisco Catalyst 9000 Series LAN switches, Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches, and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller follow the industry standard, RFC 6762-based multicast DNS (mDNS) specification to support interoperability with various compatible wired and wireless consumer products in enterprise networks.

The Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application on Catalyst Center enables mDNS service routing to advertise and discover services across enterprise-grade wired and wireless networks. The new-distributed architecture is designed to eliminate mDNS flood boundaries and transition to unicast-based service routing, providing policy enforcement points and enabling the management of Bonjour services.

The following figure illustrates how the Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application operates across two integrated service-routing domains.

*Figure 20: Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Solution Architecture*




- **Local Area Service Discovery Gateway Domain - Unicast Mode**: The new enhanced Layer 2 unicast policy-based deployment model. The new mDNS service discovery and distribution using the Layer 2 unicast address enables flood-free LAN and wireless networks. Cisco Catalyst 9000 Series Switches and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller in Layer 2 mode introduce a new service-peer role, replacing the classic flood-n-learn, for new unicast-based service routing support in the network. The service-peer switch and wireless controller also replace mDNS flood-n-learn with unicast-based communication with any RFC 6762 mDNS-compatible wired and wireless endpoints.
- **Wide-Area Service Discovery Gateway Domain**: The Wide Area Bonjour domain is a controller-based solution. The Bonjour gateway role and responsibilities of Cisco Catalyst and Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches are extended from a single SDG switch to an SDG agent, enabling Wide Area Bonjour service routing beyond a single IP gateway. The network-wide distributed SDG agent devices establish a lightweight, stateful, and reliable communication channel with a centralized Catalyst Center controller running the Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application. The SDG agents route locally discovered services based on the export policy.

**Note** The classic Layer 2 multicast flood-n-learn continues to be supported on wired and wireless networks with certain restrictions to support enhanced security and location-based policy enforcement. The Cisco Catalyst and Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches at Layer 3 boundary function as an SDG to discover and distribute services between local wired or wireless VLANs based on applied policies.

# Solution Components

The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour solution is an end-to-end solution that includes the following key components and system roles to enable unicast-based service routing across the local area and Wide Area Bonjour domain:

- **Cisco Service Peer**: Cisco Catalyst Switches and Cisco Wireless Controllers in Layer 2 access function in service peer mode to support unicast-based communication with local attached endpoints and export service information to the upstream Cisco Catalyst SDG agent in the distribution layer.

**Note** Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches don't support unicast-based service routing with downstream Layer 2 access network devices.

- **Cisco SDG Agent**: Cisco Catalyst and Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches function as an SDG agent and communicate with the Bonjour service endpoints in Layer 3 access mode. At the distribution layer, the SDG agent aggregates information from the downstream Cisco service peer switch and wireless controller, or local Layer 2 networks, and exports information to the central Catalyst Center controller.

**Note** Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches don't support multilayer LAN-unicast deployment mode.

- **Catalyst Center controller**: The Catalyst Center controller builds the Wide Area Bonjour domain with network-wide and distributed trusted SDG agents using a secure communication channel for centralized services management and controlled service routing.
- **Endpoints**: A Bonjour endpoint is any device that advertises or queries Bonjour services conforming to RFC 6762. The Bonjour endpoints can be in either LANs or WLANs. The Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application is designed to integrate with RFC 6762-compliant Bonjour services, including AirPlay, Google Chrome cast, AirPrint, and so on.

# Supported Platforms

The following table lists the supported controllers, along with the supported hardware and software versions.

*Table 53: Supported Controllers with Supported Hardware and Software Versions*

| Supported Controller | Hardware | Software Version |
|---|---|---|
| Catalyst Center appliance | DN2-HW-APL<br>DN2-HW-APL-L<br>DN2-HW-APL-XL | Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.7.6 |
| Catalyst Center on ESXi | — | Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.7.6 |
| Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application on Catalyst Center | — | 2.4.718.75196 |
| Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application on Catalyst Center on ESXi | — | 2.718.77018 |

The following table lists the supported SDG agents along with their licenses and software requirements.

*Table 54: Supported SDG Agents with Supported License and Software Requirements*

| Supported Platform | Supported Role | Local Area SDG | Wide Area SDG | Minimum Software |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches | SDG agent<br>Service peer | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9200L Series Switches | SDG agent<br>Service peer | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9300 and 9300-X Series Switches | Service peer<br>SDG agent | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9400 and 9400-X Series Switches | Service peer<br>SDG agent | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9500 and 9500-X Series Switches | Service peer<br>SDG agent | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9500 High Performance Series Switches | Service peer<br>SDG agent | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9600 and 9600-X Series Switches | Service peer<br>SDG agent | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller | Service peer | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller | Service peer | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1 |
| Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches | SDG agent | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco DNA Advantage | Cisco NX-OS Release 10.2(3)F |

# Supported Network Design

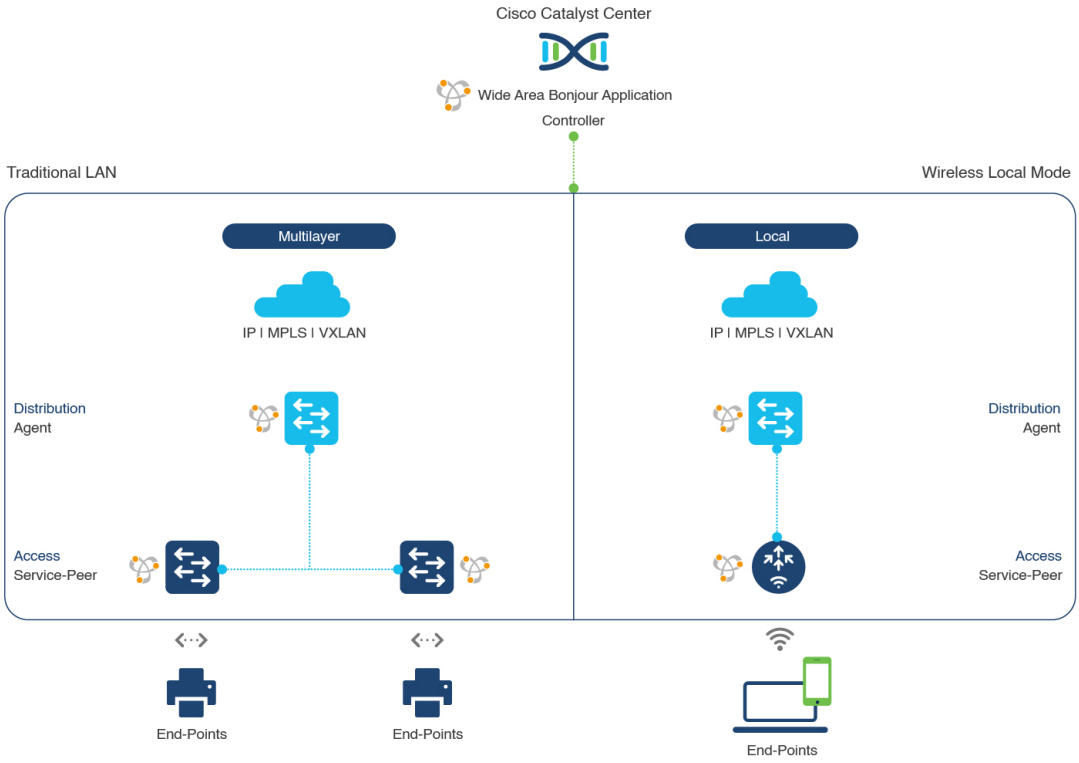
The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour supports a broad range of enterprise-grade networks. The end-to-end unicast-based Bonjour service routing is supported on traditional, Cisco SD-Access, and BGP EVPN-enabled wired and wireless networks.

# Traditional Wired and Wireless Networks

Traditional networks are classic Layer 2 or Layer 3 networks for wired and wireless modes deployed in enterprise networks. Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour supports a broad range of network designs to enable end-to-end service routing and replace flood-n-learn-based deployment with a unicast mode-based solution.

The following figure illustrates traditional LAN and central-switching wireless local mode network designs that are commonly deployed in an enterprise.

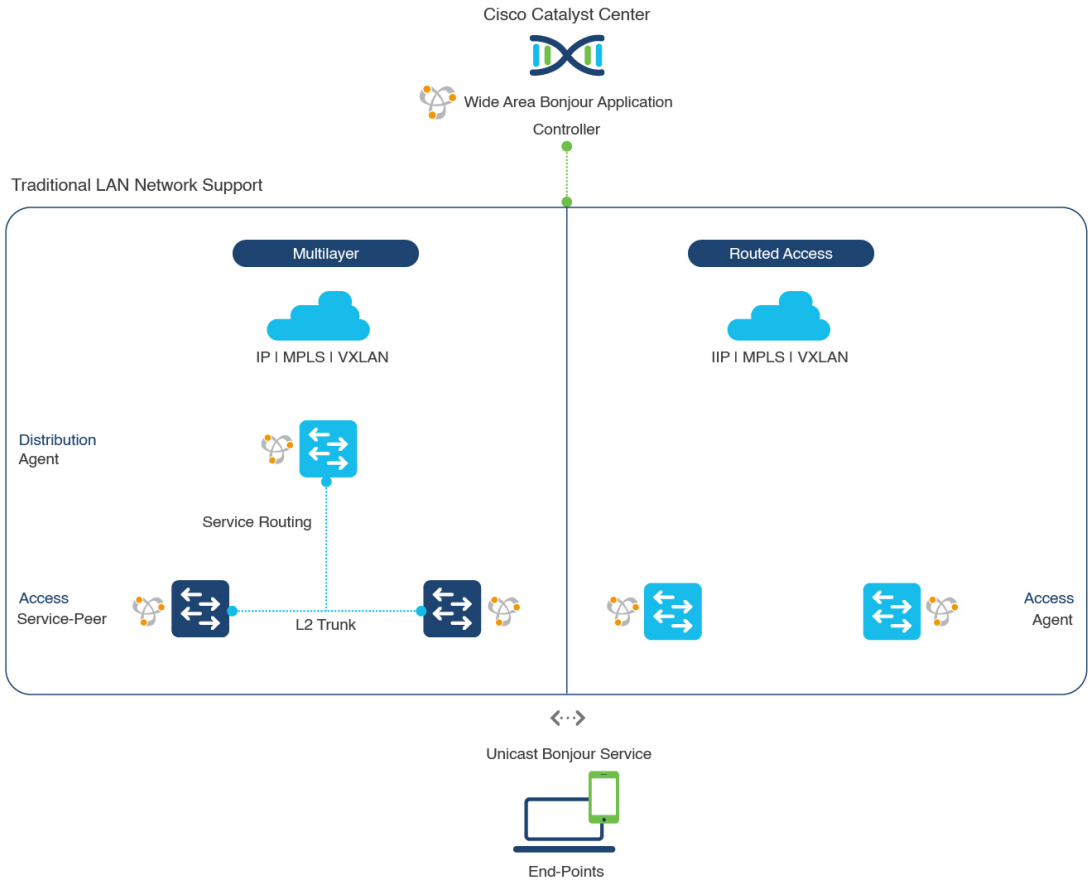
***Figure 21: Enterprise Traditional LAN and Wireless Local Mode Network Design***




## Wired Networks

The following figure shows the supported traditional LAN network designs that are commonly deployed in an enterprise.

*Figure 22: Enterprise Wired Multilayer and Routed Access Network Design*




The Cisco Catalyst or Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches in SDG agent role that provide Bonjour gateway functions are typically IP gateways for wired endpoints that could reside in the distribution layer in multilayer network designs, or in the access layer in Layer 3 routed access network designs:

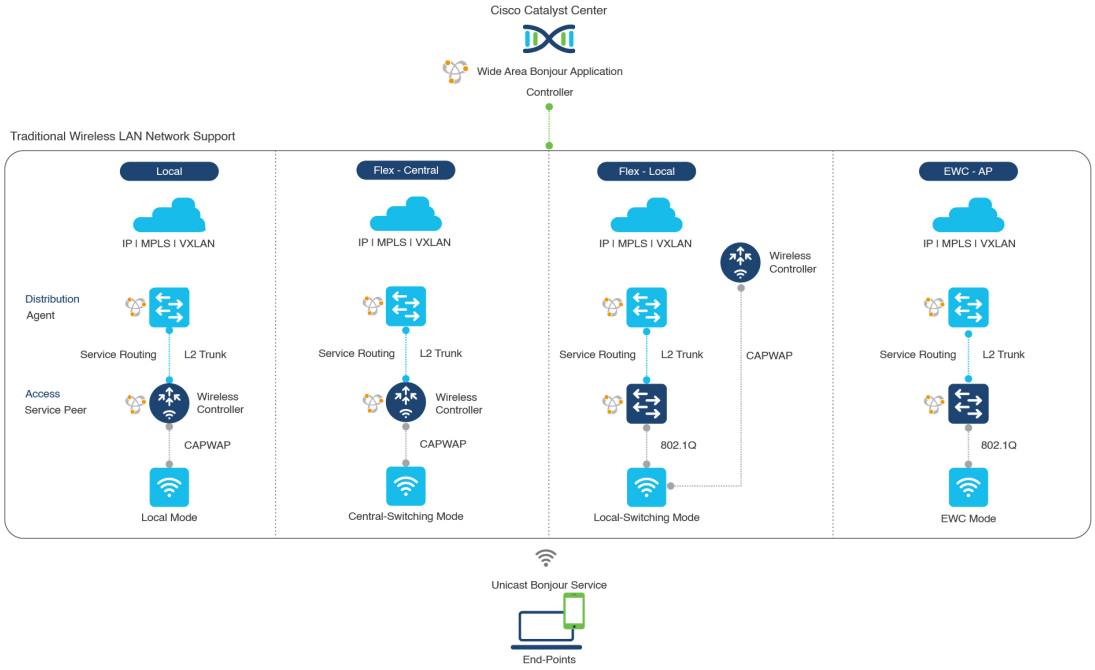
- **Multilayer LAN—Unicast Mode**: In this deployment mode, the Layer 2 access switch provides the first-hop mDNS gateway function to locally attached wired endpoints. In unicast mode, the mDNS services are routed to the distribution layer systems providing IP gateway and SDG agent mode. The policy-based service routing between the SDG agents is performed by the Catalyst Center controller.
- **Multilayer LAN—Flood-n-Learn Mode**: In this deployment mode, the Layer 2 access switch or wireless controller are in mDNS passthrough modes with the Cisco Catalyst or Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches operating in the SDG agent mode. The mDNS gateway function at distribution layer in a network enables inter-VLAN mDNS local proxy. It also builds stateful Wide Area Bonjour unicast service routing with the Catalyst Center to discover or distribute mDNS services beyond a single IP gateway.
- **Routed Access**: In this deployment mode, the first-hop Cisco Catalyst or Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switch is an IP gateway boundary and, therefore, it must also perform the SDG agent role. The policy-based service routing between the SDG agents is performed by the Catalyst Center controller.

# Wireless Networks

The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour extends the single wireless controller mDNS gateway function into the Wide Area Bonjour solution. The mDNS gateway on Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller can be deployed in an enhanced mode as a service peer. In this mode, the wireless controller builds unicast service routing with an upstream Cisco Catalyst gateway switch for end-to-end mDNS service discovery. It replaces the classic flood-n-learn mDNS services from wired network using mDNS AP or other methods.

The following figure shows the supported traditional wireless LAN network designs that are commonly deployed in an enterprise. Based on the wireless network design, the mDNS gateway function may be on the wireless controller, or first-hop Layer 2 or Layer 3 Ethernet switch of an Access Point in local-switching mode.

***Figure 23: Enterprise Traditional Wireless LAN Network Design***




The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour supports the following modes for wireless LAN networks:

- **Local Mode**: In the central switching wireless deployment mode, the m-DNS traffic from local mode Cisco access points is terminated on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller. The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller extends the mDNS gateway function to the new service peer mode. The wireless controller can discover and distribute services to local wireless users and perform unicast service routing over a wireless management interface to the upstream Cisco Catalyst Switch in the distribution layer, which acts as the IP gateway and the SDG agent.
- **FlexConnect—Central**: The mDNS gateway function for Cisco access point in FlexConnect central switch SSID functions consistently as described in **Local Mode**. The new extended mDNS gateway mode on the Cisco Wireless Controller and upstream service routing with SDG agent operate consistently to discover services across network based on policies and locations.
- **FlexConnect—Local**: In FlexConnect local switching mode, the Layer 2 access switch in mDNS gateway service peer mode provides the policy-based mDNS gateway function to locally attached wired and wireless users. The Cisco Catalyst Switches in the distribution layer function as SDG agents and enable

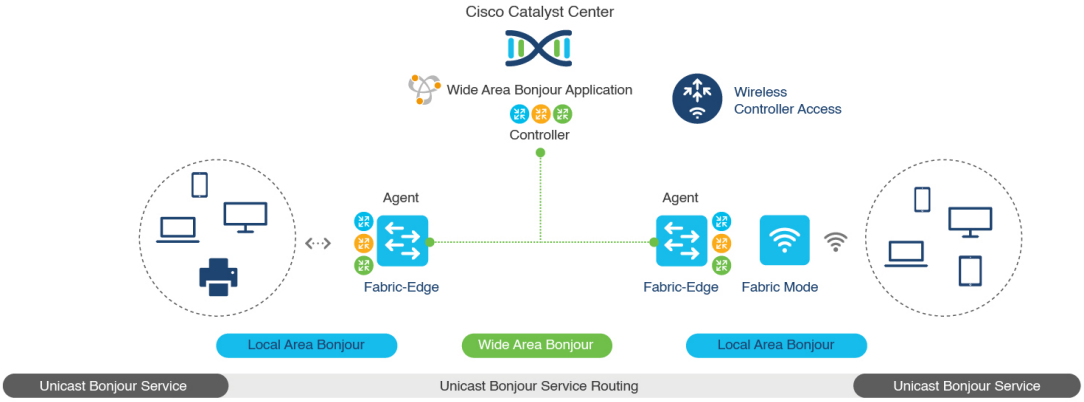
mDNS service-routing across all Layer 2 ethernet switches to support unicast-based service routing to LAN and wireless LAN user groups.

- **Embedded Wireless Controller—Access Point**: The Layer 2 access switch in service peer mode provides unified mDNS gateway function to wired and wireless endpoints associated with Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Cisco Catalyst 9100 Series Access Points. The SDG agent in the distribution layer provides unicast service routing across all Layer 2 service peer switches in the Layer 2 network block without any mDNS flooding.

# Cisco SD-Access Wired and Wireless Networks

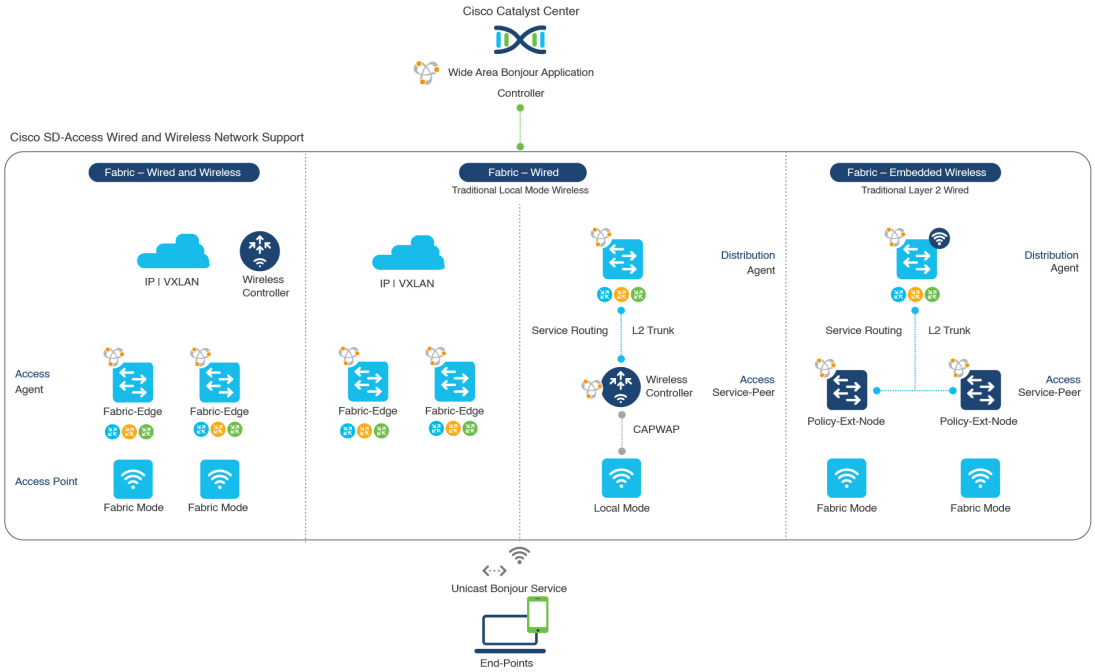
Cisco SD-Access-enabled wired and wireless networks support Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour across fabric networks. The Cisco Catalyst 9000 Series Switches support VRF-aware Wide Area Bonjour service routing to provide secure and segmented mDNS service discovery and distribution management for virtual networks. The VRF-aware unicast service routing eliminates the need to extend Layer 2 flooding, and improves the scale and performance of the fabric core network and endpoints.

***Figure 24: Cisco SD-Access Wired and Wireless Network Design***




Cisco SD-Access supports flexible wired and wireless network design alternatives to manage fully distributed, integrated, and backward-compatible traditional network infrastructure. Wide Area Bonjour service routing is supported in all network designs providing intuitive user experience. The following figure illustrates the various SD-Access enabled wired and wireless network design alternatives.

*Figure 25: Cisco SD-Access Wired and Wireless Network Design Alternatives*




The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour for SD-Access enabled wired and fabric, or traditional mode-wireless networks use two-tier service routing providing end-to-end unicast-based mDNS solution. Based on the network design, each solution component is enabled in a unique role to support the Wide Area Bonjour domain:

- **Fabric Edge SDG Agent**: The Layer 3 Cisco Catalyst Fabric Edge switch in the access layer configured as SDG agent provides unicast-based mDNS gateway function to the locally attached wired and wireless endpoints. The VRF-aware mDNS service policy provides network service security and segmentation in a virtual network environment. The mDNS services can be locally distributed and routed through centralized Catalyst Center.
- **Policy Extended Node**: The Layer 2 Cisco Catalyst access layer switch enables first-hop mDNS gateway function without flooding across the Layer 2 broadcast domain. The unicast-based service routing with upstream Fabric Edge switch in the distribution layer enables mDNS service routing within the same Layer 2 network block. It can also perform remote service discovery and distribution from centralized Catalyst Center.
- **Cisco Wireless Controller**: Based on the following wireless deployment modes, Cisco Wireless Controller supports unique function to enable mDNS service routing in Cisco SD-Access enabled network:
  - **Fabric-Enabled Wireless**: Cisco Wireless Controller doesn't require any mDNS gateway capability to be enabled in distributed fabric-enabled wireless deployments.
  - **Local Mode Wireless**: As Cisco Wireless Controller provides central control and data plane termination, it provides mDNS gateway in service peer mode for wireless endpoints. The wireless controller provides mDNS gateway between locally associated wireless clients. The wireless controller builds service routing with upstream SDG agent Catalyst switch providing IP gateway and service routing function for wireless endpoints.
  - **Embedded Wireless Controller—Switch**: The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller solution enables the lightweight integrated wireless controller function within the Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series

Switch. The Cisco Catalyst switches in the distribution layer function as SDG agents to the wired and wireless endpoints. The SDG agent in the distribution layer provides unicast service routing across all wireless access points and Layer 2 service peer switches without mDNS flooding.

- **Catalyst Center Controller**: The Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application on Catalyst Center supports policy and location-based service discovery, and distribution between network-wide distributed Fabric Edge switches in SDG agent mode.

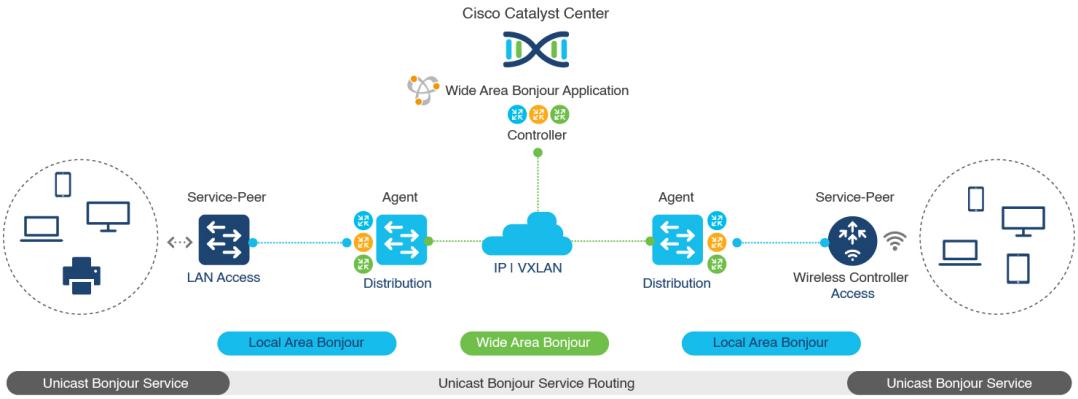
The Wide Area Bonjour communication between the SDG agent and controller takes place through the network underlay. Based on policies, the SDG agent forwards the endpoint announcements or queries to the Catalyst Center. After discovering a service, the endpoints can establish direct unicast communication through the fabric overlay in the same virtual network. The inter-virtual network unicast communication takes place through the Fusion router or external Firewall system. This communication is subject to the configured overlay IP routing and Security Group Tag (SGT) policies.

# BGP EVPN Networks

The BGP EVPN-based technology provides a flexible Layer 3 segmentation and Layer 2 extension overlay network. The VRF and EVPN VXLAN-aware Wide Area Bonjour service routing provides secure and segmented mDNS service solution. The overlay networks eliminate mDNS flooding over EVPN-enabled Layer 2 extended networks and solve the service reachability challenges for Layer 3 segmented routed networks in the fabric.

The following figure shows the BGP EVPN leaf switch in the distribution layer, supporting overlay Bonjour service routing for a BGP EVPN-enabled traditional Layer 2 wired access switch and traditional wireless local mode enterprise network interconnected through various types of Layer 2 networks and Layer 3 segmented VRF-enabled networks.

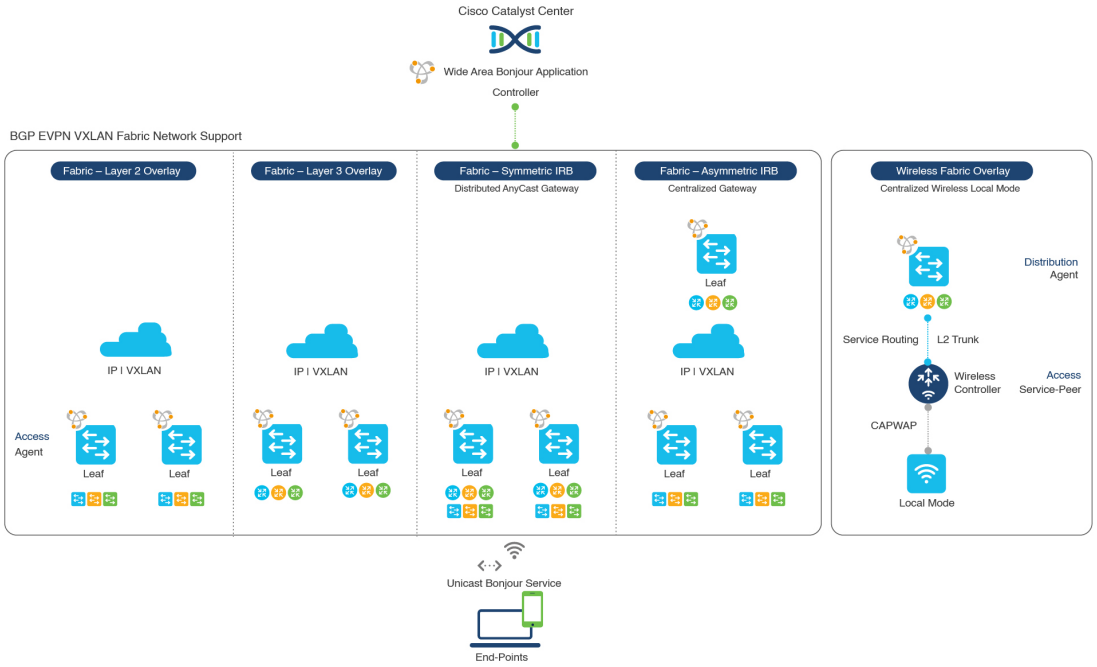
***Figure 26: Overlay Bonjour Service for a BGP EVPN-Enabled Enterprise Network***




Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour supports all the industry-standard overlay network designs enabling end-to-end unicast-based mDNS service routing, and preventing flooding and service boundary limitation across wired and wireless networks.

The following figure illustrates the various BGP EVPN VXLAN reference overlay network design alternatives. This network design enables end-to-end mDNS service discovery and distribution based on overlay network policies.

*Figure 27: BGP EVPN VXLAN Wired and Wireless Design Alternatives*




The Cisco Catalyst and Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Switches can be deployed in Layer 2 or Layer 3 leaf roles supporting mDNS service routing for a broad range of overlay networks. In any role, the mDNS communication is limited locally and supports end-to-end unicast-based service routing across Wide Area Bonjour domain:

- **Layer 2 Leaf SDG Agent**: The Cisco Catalyst or Cisco Nexus switches can be deployed as Layer 2 leaf supporting end-to-end bridged network with IP gateway within or beyond BGP EVPN VXLAN fabric network. By default, the mDNS is flooded as Broadcast, Unknown Unicast, Multicast (BUM) over the fabric-enabled core network. This mDNS flooding may impact network performance and security. The Layer 2 leaf, enabled as SDG agent, prevents mDNS flooding over VXLAN and supports unicast-based service routing.
- **Layer 3 Leaf SDG Agent**: The Cisco Catalyst or Cisco Nexus switches can be deployed as SDG agent supporting Layer 3 overlay network in BGP EVPN VXLAN fabric. The IP gateway and mDNS service boundary is terminated at the SDG agent switches and remote services can be discovered or distributed through centralized Catalyst Center.
- **Local Mode Wireless**: The centralized wireless local mode network can be terminated within or outside the EVPN VXLAN fabric domain to retain network segmentation and service discovery for wireless endpoints. The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller in service peer mode can build unicast service routing with distribution layer IP and SDG agent Cisco Catalyst switch to discover services from BGP EVPN VXLAN fabric overlay network.
- **Catalyst Center**: Catalyst Center supports Wide Area Bonjour capability to dynamically discover and distribute mDNS services based on Layer 2 or Layer 3 Virtual Network ID (VNID) policies to route the mDNS services between SDG agent switches in the network.

For more information about BGP EVPN networks, see *Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)*.



CHAPTER 102

# Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller Access Point Mode


- Overview of Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller - Access Point Mode, on page 955
- Restrictions for Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller - Access Point Mode, on page 956
- Prerequisites for Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller - Access Point Mode, on page 956
- Understanding EWC Mode mDNS Gateway Alternatives, on page 957
- Understanding Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller Access Point Mode, on page 958
- Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller Access Point Mode, on page 959
- Verifying Local Area Bonjour in Service-Peer Mode, on page 973
- Verifying Local Area Bonjour in SDG Agent Mode, on page 974
- Reference, on page 976


## Overview of Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller - Access Point Mode

The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points introduces unicast mode function in Local Area Bonjour network domain. The enhanced gateway function at the first hop of wired and wireless networks communicate directly with any industry standard RFC 6762 compliant multicast DNS (mDNS) end point in Layer 2 unicast mode.

The Cisco Catalyst 9100 series Access Points (AP) support distributed wireless forwarding with Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC) in Local-Switching mode. The Catalyst 9000 series LAN switch introduces new Service-Peer mode to support mDNS gateway for locally attached wired and wireless endpoints in Unicast mode. The mDNS service discovery and distribution boundary is expanded from single-gateway to end-to-end service-routing with upstream SDG Agent switch to enable unicast-mode, increased scale, performance, and resiliency in the network.

# Restrictions for Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller - Access Point Mode

- The mDNS gateway on EWC Cisco Catalyst 9100 series Access Points does not support service-peer mode to enable service-routing and unicast mode mDNS communication.
- The mDNS gateway on EWC Catalyst 9100 series Access Points must be in disabled state.
- The mDNS bridging is required, allowing mDNS service discovery and distribution from locally attached mDNS gateway Layer 2 access switch in Service-Peer mode.
- The Catalyst 9000 series switches in Service-Peer mode supports per Layer 2 access switch level Location-Based service for wireless users connected to EWC mode Access Point and Wired endpoints.

# Prerequisites for Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller - Access Point Mode

The EWC mode Cisco Catalyst 9100 series Access Points must be successfully configured and operational before implementing Cisco Local Area Bonjour for EWC AP mode wireless networks.

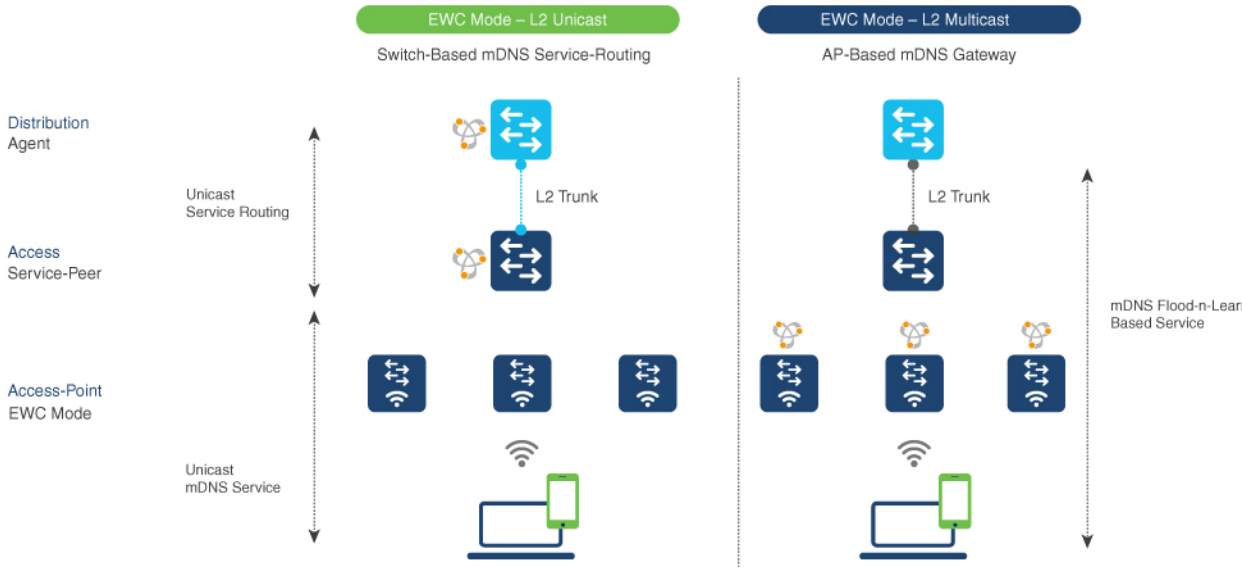
The following are the pre-requisites verified on EWC mode AP and the Layer 2 access Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switches deployed in Service-Peer mode supporting mDNS gateway for wired and wireless users:

- The EWC mode Cisco Catalyst 9100 series Access Point must be pre-configured to implement wireless network and other advanced parameters. For more information, see the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points Configuration Guide .
- The EWC mode Cisco Catalyst 9100 series Access Point may run operate recommended IOS-XE software version. There are no mDNS requirements and software version dependency on EWC mode AP to enable Local Area Bonjour gateway.
- Ensure that the targeted controller for Service-Peer role has the required Cisco IOS XE software version.
- Ensure that the controller runs a valid Cisco DNA-Advantage license.
- Ensure that the upstream distribution-layer Cisco Catalyst switch in SDG-Agent mode runs a valid Cisco DNA-Advantage license.
- Ensure that the controller is interconnected as Layer 2 trunk in multi-layer network, when Layer 2 Unicast service-routing is running between SDG-Agent in distribution-layer and the controller service-peer.
- Ensure the Catalyst 9000 access layer switches have IP reachability to upstream Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switches in SDG Agent mode over IPv4 subnet. that is, switch management IP network

# Understanding EWC Mode mDNS Gateway Alternatives

The Cisco Catalyst controllers continue to innovate mDNS gateway function to address evolving business and technical requirements in enterprise networks. The EWC mode Access Point based wireless networks can implement mDNS gateway using following two methods as displayed in figure below:

***Figure 28: EWC Mode Access Point mDNS Gateway Alternatives***




The mDNS gateway for EWC mode Access Point wireless network can be implemented using in either mode to address service discovery and distribution based on operating network environment:

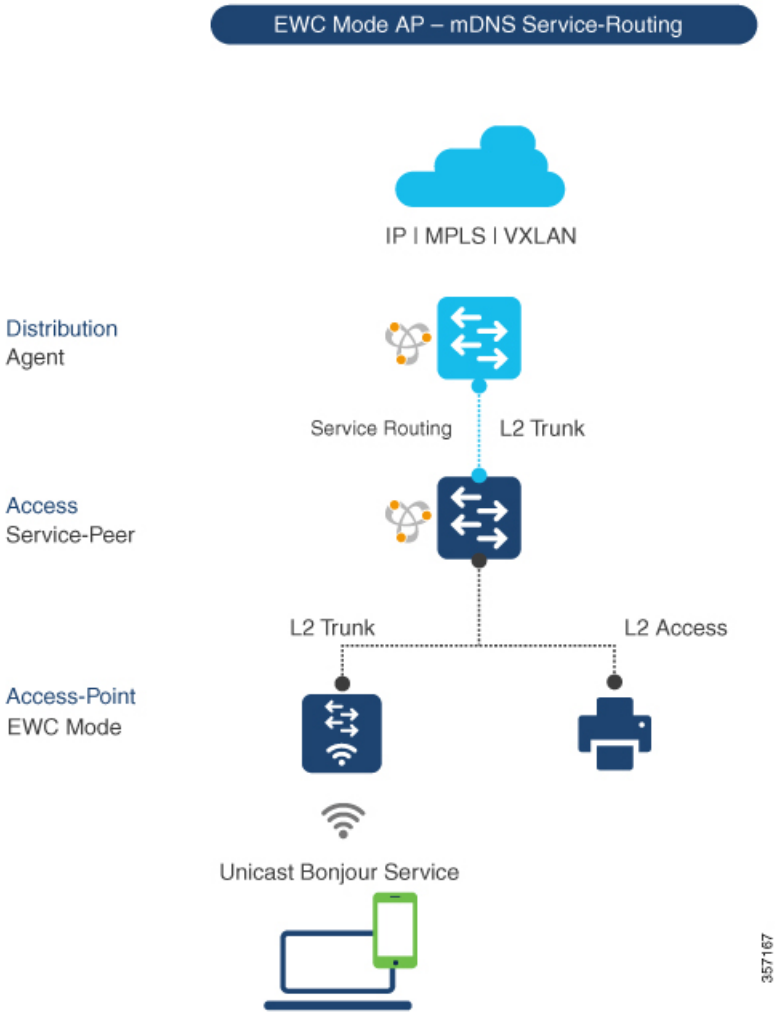
- **Switch Based mDNS Gateway**– Catalyst 9000 series switch in Layer 2 access can be implemented as mDNS gateway in Service-Peer role supporting following key benefits:
  - Replaces flood-n-learn with new enhanced Unicast-based mDNS communication with locally attached wired and EWC mode Access Point wireless users.
  - The Catalyst 9000 eliminates mDNS flood with Unicast service-routing to LAN distribution. The Unicast service-routing between LAN distribution and Layer 2 access layer switches forms Local Area Bonjour domain to enable policy and location-based service discovery and distribution. The unicast based service-routing over Layer 2 trunk eliminates mDNS flood-free and enables service-oriented wired and wireless networks.
  - The switch-based mDNS gateway solution eliminates requirement to forward wired network traffic to wireless APs improving wireless scale, performance and network reliability.
- **AP Based mDNS Gateway** – The Cisco EWC mode Access Point can alternatively be implemented as mDNS gateway in case if connected to unsupported LAN access switch. In this classic method the mDNS service discovery and distribution follows flood-n-learn mechanic over the Layer 2 wired and wireless network. Refer to Multicast Domain Name System chapter module for Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller Configuration Guide, Release 17.3.1 to implement AP based mDNS gateway.

# Understanding Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller Access Point Mode

The Cisco Catalyst LAN switches and WLC supported mDNS gateway function with various advancements for broad range of Wired and Wireless network types. As the enterprise requirements expands it drives IT organization to introduce new network deployment models, supporting mobile devices and distributed zero-configuration services following increased scale, granular security control and resiliency for mission critical networks. The common unified Cisco IOS-XE operating system across Catalyst 9000 series LAN switches and EWC mode Catalyst 9100 series Access Points enables distributed Bonjour gateway function at network edge and with end-to-end Wide Area Bonjour service-routing the new solution enables service-oriented enterprise networks with intuitive user-experience.

The figure below displays the Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switches connected to EWC mode Access Points that supports the mDNS gateway function to the locally attached EWC mode wireless users and wired users.

***Figure 29: Cisco Catalyst Switch and EWC Mode Access Point***



The Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switches in Layer 2 access layer and at Layer 3 distribution layer must be configured in following mDNS gateway mode to enable Unicast-based mDNS service-routing between wired and EWC mode Access Points mode wireless users within same Layer 2 network block.

- **Service-Peer**- The Layer 2 access switch connecting Wireless Access-Point in EWC mode must be configured with mDNS gateway in Service-Peer mode. Each Layer 2 access switch provides mDNS gateway function between locally attached wired and EWC mode Access Point wireless users. The Unicast-based mDNS service discovery and distribution within same or different VLANs is supported with bi-directional mDNS policies on single Layer 2 access switch.
- **SDG Agent**- The mDNS flood-n-learn based method in Layer 2 network is replaced with simple Unicast based service-routing between Layer 2 access switch in Service-Peer mode and upstream distribution-layer in mDNS gateway SDG Agent mode. The Unicast based mDNS service-routing eliminates mDNS flood over Layer 2 trunk ports providing increase bandwidth, enhanced security, location-based services and flood control management in wired and EWC mode Access Point wireless network.

# Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Embedded Wireless Controller Access Point Mode

This topic describes the configuration steps to implement Layer 2 access layer Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switch as mDNS gateway and enable Service-Peer on Layer 2 access layer switch and the SDG Agent mode. To enable mDNS service discovery and distribution between multiple Layer 2 access switches, service-routing must be enabled with upstream distribution-layer Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switch in SDG Agent mode to build Local Area Bonjour service-routing domain.



**Note** mDNS gateway must be globally disabled on Catalyst 9100 series Access Point in EWC mode.

## Configuring mDNS Gateway Mode (CLI)

To enable mDNS gateway and service-peer mode on Layer 2 access switch and SDG Agent mode on Layer 3 distribution layer switch, follow the procedure given below:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables Privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters the global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd gateway**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway` | Enables mDNS on the Layer 2 Catalyst switch and enters the mDNS gateway configuration mode.<br>(Optional) You can configure the following additional parameters:<br>• **air-print-helper**: Enables communication between Apple iOS devices like iPhone or iPad to discover and use older printers that does not support driverless AirPrint function.<br>• **cache-memory-max**: Configures the percentage memory for cache.<br>• **ingress-client**: Configures Ingress client packet tuners.<br>• **rate-limit**: Enables rate limiting of incoming mDNS packets.<br>• **service-announcement-count**: Configures maximum advertisements.<br>• **service-announcement-timer**: Configures advertisements announcement timer periodicity.<br>• **service-query-count**: Configures maximum queries.<br>• **service-query-timer**: Configures query forward timer periodicity.<br>• **service-type-enumeration**: Configures service enumeration.<br>**Note**<br>For **cache-memory-max**, **ingress-client**, **rate-limit**, **service-announcement-count**, **service-announcement-timer**, **service-query-count**, **service-query-timer**, and **service-type-enumeration** commands, you can retain the default value of the respective parameter for general deployments. Configure a different value, if required, for a specific deployment. |
| **Step 4** | **mode** {**service-peer** \| **sdg-agent**}<br>**Example:** | Configures mDNS gateway in one of the following modes based on the system settings: |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-mdns-sd)# mode service-peer` | • **Service-Peer**– Enables Layer 2 Catalyst access switch in mDNS Service-Peer mode.<br>• **SDG Agent**– Default. Enables Layer 3 distribution layer Catalyst switch in SDG Agent mode to peer with central Cisco DNA Center controller for Wide Area Bonjour service routing. |
| **Step 5** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-sd)# exit` | Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode. |

# Configuring mDNS Service Policy (CLI)

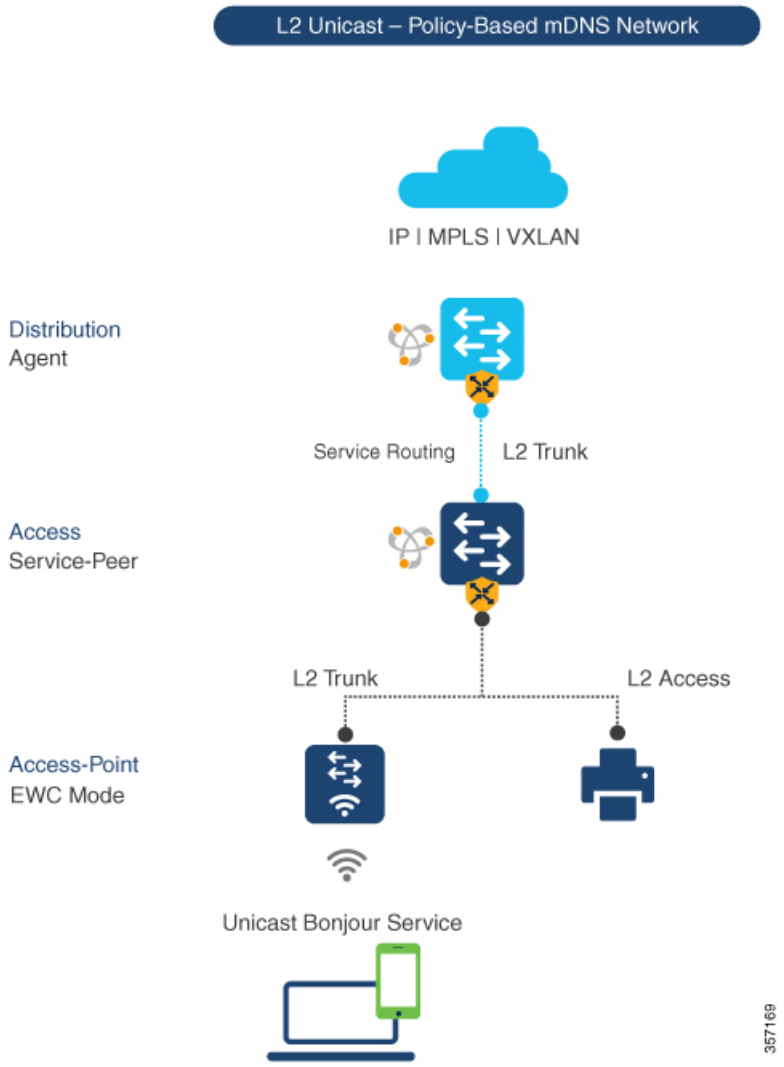
To configure an mDNS service policy, follow the steps given below:

1. Create service-list to permit built-in or user-defined custom service types.
2. Associate service-list to a service-policy to enforce ingress or egress direction.
3. Apply the service policy to the new VLAN configuration mode.

**Note** You will need this configuration in service-peer mode for Layer 2 Catalyst switch and SDG agent mode for Layer 3 Catalyst switch.

The figure given below displays how to configure mDNS policies on the Catalyst switch in service-peer and SDG agent modes:

*Figure 30: Catalyst Service-Peer and SDG Agent mDNS Service Policy Configuration*




To build and apply service-policies on target VLAN in service-peer and SDG agent modes, follow the procedure given below:

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables Privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters the global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd service-list** *service-list-name* {**in** \| **out**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-IN in`<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out` | Configure mDNS service-list to classify one or more service types. Unique service-list is required to process incoming mDNS message and outbound response to request locally locally connected wired or EWC mode Access Point wireless end points. |
| **Step 4** | **match** *service-definition-name* [**message-type** {**any** \| **announcement** \| **query**}]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-IN in`<br>`Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match APPLE-TV`<br>`Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match PRINTER-IPPS message-type announcement` | Matches inbound service-list.<br>The Catalyst switch validates to accept or drop incoming mDNS service-type (such as, Apple TV) advertisement or query matching message type from locally connected wired or EWC mode Access Point wireless end points. The service-list contains implicit deny at the end.<br>The default message-type used is **any**. |
| **Step 5** | **match** *service-definition-name* [**message-type** {**any** \| **announcement** \| **query**}]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out`<br>`Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match APPLE-TV`<br>`Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match PRINTER-IPPS` | Matches outbound service-list.<br>The Catalyst switch provides local service proxy function by responding matching service-type to the requesting end point(s). For example, the Apple-TV and Printer learnt from VLAN 100 will be distributed to EWC mode Access Point wireless in same VLAN 100. The service-list contains implicit deny at the end.<br>The message-type for outbound service-list is not required. |
| **Step 6** | **mdns-sd service-policy** *service-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY` | Creates a unique mDNS service-policy in the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 7** | **service-list** *service-list-name* {**in** \| **out**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY`<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# service-list VLAN100-LIST-IN in`<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out` | Configures an mDNS service-policy to associate service-list for each direction. |
| **Step 8** | **vlan configuration** *ID*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# vlan configuration 100` | Enables wired or wireless EWC mode Access Point user VLAN configuration for advanced service parameters. One or more VLANs can be created for the same settings. |

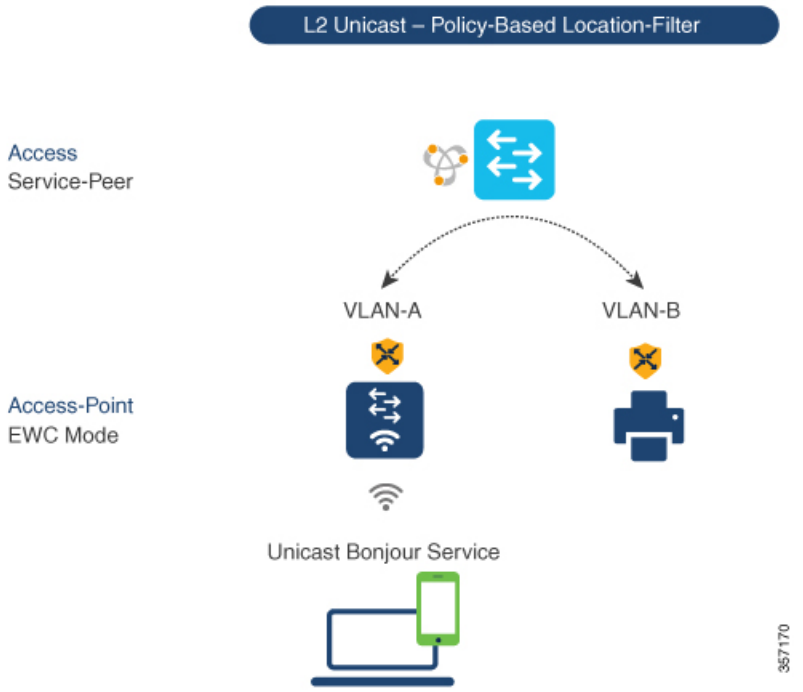
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | Here, *ID* refers to the VLAN configuration ID. For example, *vlan configuration 101-110,200* range allows you to configure consecutive and non-consecutive VLAN ID(s) range. |
| **Step 9** | **mdns-sd gateway**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-vlan)# mdns-sd gateway` | Enables mDNS gateway on configured wired or EWC mode Access Point wireless user VLAN ID(s). |
| **Step 10** | **service-policy** *service-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-vlan-mdns)# service-policy VLAN100-POLICY` | Associates mDNS service-policy to the configured wired or EWC mode Access Point wireless user VLAN ID(s). |
| **Step 11** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-vlan-mdns)# exit` | Exits the mDNS gateway configuration mode. |

# Configuring mDNS Location-Filter (CLI)

The Layer 2 Cisco Catalyst access-layer switch in the service-peer mode, by default provides local service proxy between mDNS service provider and receiver connected in the same Layer 2 VLAN associated to wired or EWC mode Access Point wireless user networks. Optionally, you can configure mDNS location-filter to allow service discovery and distribution between locally configured VLAN IDs associated to wired or EWC mode Access Point wireless user networks.

The following figure displays and references location-filter policy on Catalyst switch in service-peer mode permitting discovery and distribution of mDNS services between wired and EWC mode Access Point wireless user VLANs.

*Figure 31: Catalyst Service-Peer mDNS Location-Filter Configuration*




To enable local service proxy on Cisco Catalyst switch in service-peer mode and to discover mDNS services between local wired and wireless EWC mode Access Point user VLANs, follow the procedure given below:

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables Privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd location-filter** *location-filter-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd location-filter LOCAL-PROXY` | Configures a unique location-filter in the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **match location-group** {**all** \| **default** \| **ID**} **vlan** [*ID*]<br>**Example:** | Configures the match criteria to mutually distribute the permitted services between grouped VLANs. For example, mDNS services can be discovered and distributed using the |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-mdns-loc-filter)# match location-group default vlan 100`<br>`Device(config-mdns-loc-filter)# match location-group default vlan 101` | unicast-mode between Wireless EWC mode Access Point user VLAN ID 100 and wired user VLAN ID 101. |
| **Step 5** | **mdns-sd service-list** *service-list-name* {**in** \| **out**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out` | Configures the mDNS service-list to classify one or more service types.<br>Unique service-list is required to process incoming mDNS message and response outbound requesting wired or EWC mode Access Point user end points. |
| **Step 6** | **match** *service-definition-name* [**message-type** {**any** \| **announcement** \| **query**}]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out`<br>`Device(config-mdns-sl-out)# match APPLE-TV location-filter LOCAL-PROXY` | Associates location-filter to one or more service types to enable local proxy between local VLANs. For example, the Apple-TV learnt from VLAN 100 and VLAN 101 will be distributed to receiver in VLAN 100.<br>**Note**<br>The service-list contains implicit deny at the end.<br>You do not require a **message-type** for the outbound service-list. |
| **Step 7** | **mdns-sd service-policy** *service-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY` | Creates a unique mDNS service-policy in the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 8** | **service-list** *service-list-name* {**in** \| **out**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY`<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out` | Configures an mDNS service-policy to associate the service-list for each direction. |
| **Step 9** | **vlan configuration** *ID*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# vlan configuration 100` | Enables VLAN configuration for advanced service parameters. You can create one or more VLANs with the same settings.<br>Here, *ID* refers to the VLAN configuration ID. For example, *vlan configuration 101-110,200* range allows you to configure consecutive and non-consecutive VLAN ID range. |
| **Step 10** | **mdns-sd gateway**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-vlan-config)# mdns-sd gateway` | Enables the mDNS gateway on the configured VLAN ID(s). |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 11** | **service-policy** *service-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-vlan-mdns-sd)# service-policy VLAN100-POLICY` | Associates mDNS service-policy to the configured VLAN ID(s). |
| **Step 12** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-vlan-mdns-sd)# exit` | Exits the mDNS gateway configuration mode. |

# Configuring Custom Service Definition (CLI)

The Cisco IOS-XE supports various built-in mDNS service-definition types that map to key mDNS PTR records and user-friendly names. For example, built-in Apple-TV service-type is associated with _airplay._tcp.local and _raop._tcp.local PTR records to successfully enable service in the network. Network administrators create custom service-definition with matching mDNS PTR records to enable end mDNS service-routing in the network.

To associate the custom service-definition to the service-list, follow the procedure given below:

### Procedure

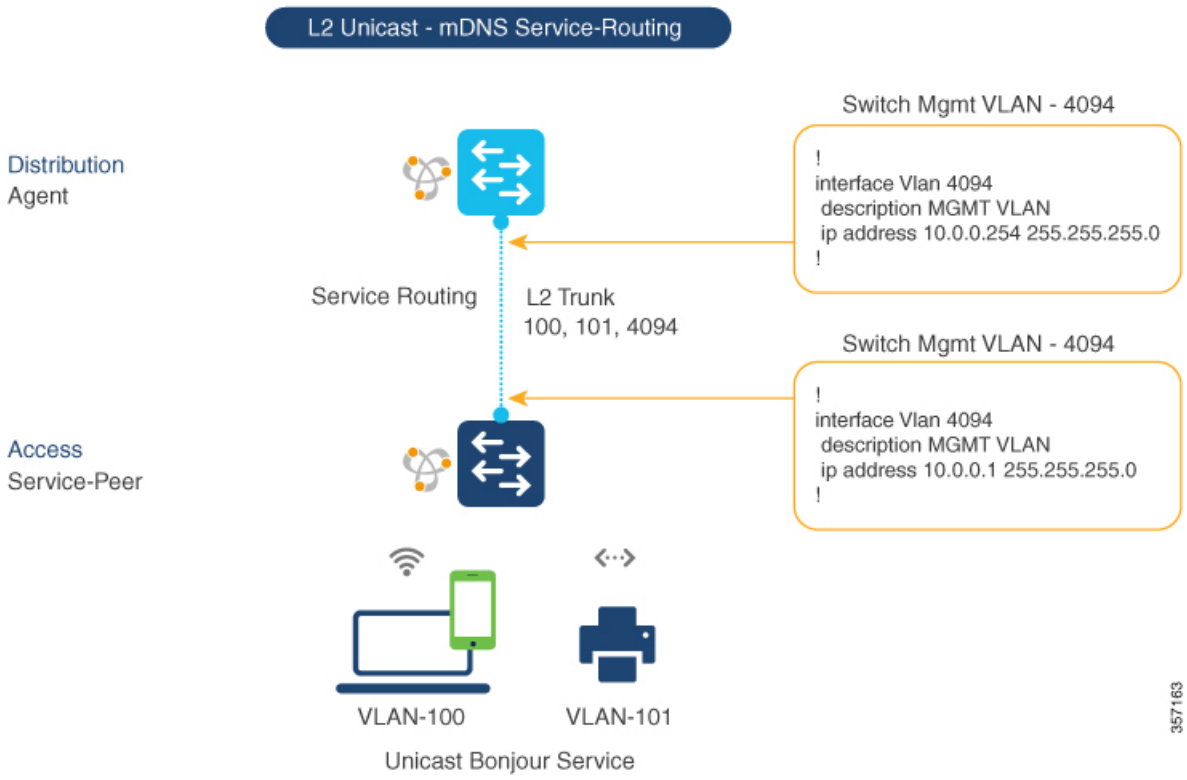
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables Privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd service-definition** *service-definition-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-definition APPLE-CLASSROOM` | Creates a unique service-definition name for custom service-types. |
| **Step 4** | **service-type** *custom-mDNS-PTR*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# service-type _classroom._tcp.local` | Configures a regular-expression string for custom mDNS PoinTeR(PTR) record. |
| **Step 5** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# exit` | Exits the mDNS gateway configuration mode. |

# Configuring Service-Routing on Service-Peer (CLI)

The Layer 2 Cisco Catalyst switch in service-peer mode builds a service-routing with an upstream distribution-layer switch in the SDG Agent mode. To build service-routing, the Layer 2 Cisco Catalyst switch requires at least one interface with valid IP address to reach the upstream SDG Agent Catalyst switch. The switch management port is unsupported.

The following figure displays the topology to enable unicast-based service-routing over Layer 2 trunk between access-layer Catalyst switch in the service-peer mode and distribution-layer Catalyst switch in SDG Agent mode.

***Figure 32: Catalyst Service-Peer Service-Routing Configuration***




To enable service-routing on Cisco Catalyst switch in service-peer mode and setup mDNS trust interface settings, follow the procedure given below:

## Procedure

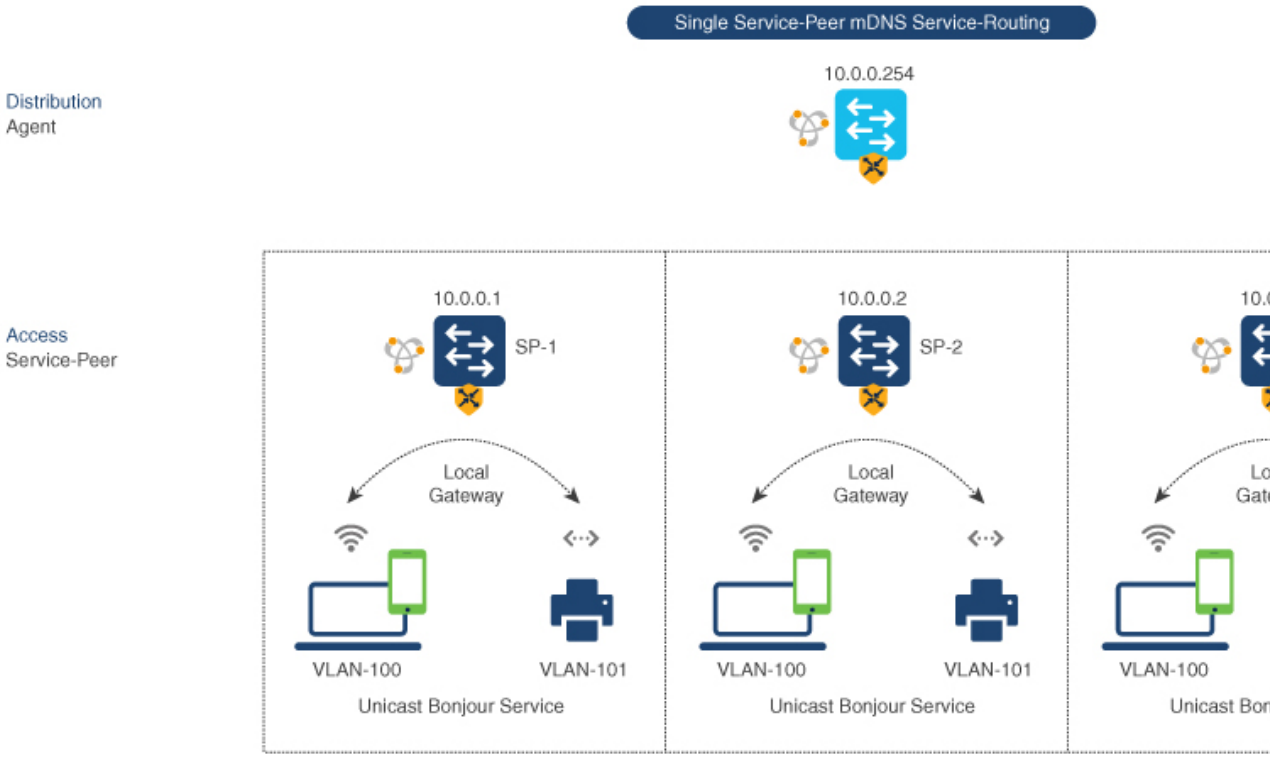
| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables Privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:** | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device# configure terminal` | |
| **Step 3** | **vlan configuration** *ID*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# vlan configuration 100` | Enables wired and EWC mode AP wireless user VLAN configuration for advanced service parameters. One or more VLANs can be created for the same settings.<br>Here, *ID* refers to the VLAN configuration ID. For example, *vlan configuration 101-110, 200* range, allows to configure consecutive and non-consecutive VLAN ID(s). |
| **Step 4** | **mdns-sd gateway**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-vlan-config)# mdns-sd gateway` | Enables mDNS gateway on configured VLAN ID(s).<br>To enable the respective functionalities, enter the following commands in the mDNS gateway configuration mode:<br>• **active-query timer [sec]**: Configure to enable refresh discovered services and their records with periodic mDNS Query message for permitted service types. The valid range is from 60 to 3600 seconds. The recommended value is 3600 seconds.<br>• **service-mdns-query {ptr \| srv \| txt}**: Permits processing specific Query type. The default query type is PTR.<br>• **transport {ipv4 \| ipv6 \| both}**: Permits processing for IPv4, IPv6, or both. It is recommended to use one network type to reduce redundant processing and respond with the same information over two network types. The default network type is IPv4. |
| **Step 5** | **source-interface** *ID*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-vlan-mdns-sd)# source-interface vlan 4094` | Selects the interface with a valid IP address to source service-routing session with the upstream Cisco Catalyst SDG Agent switch. Typically, the management VLAN interface can be used. |
| **Step 6** | **sdg-agent** [*IPv4_address*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-vlan-mdns-sd)# sdg-agent 10.0.0.254` | Configures the SDG Agent IPv4 address, typically, the management VLAN gateway address. If FHRP mode, then use the FHRP virtual IP address of the management VLAN. |
| **Step 7** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-vlan-mdns-sd)# exit` | Exits the mDNS gateway configuration mode. |

# Configuring Location-Based mDNS

By default, the Layer 2 Catalyst switch in the service-peer mode enables per-switch mDNS discovery and distribution between wired and EWC mode Access Point wireless users attached locally to the switch. This default per-switch location-based mDNS is supported even when wired and EWC mode Access Point wireless users VLANs may be extended between multiple Layer 2 Catalyst switches for user mobility purpose. The mDNS service-policy configuration SDG Agent is required to accept policy-based mDNS service provider and receiver information from downstream service-peer access-layer switch.

***Figure 33: Per-Switch Location-Based Wired and EWC Mode Access Point Configuration***




**Note** Configure the mDNS service policy on the distribution layer SDG Agent switch before proceeding to the next configuration step. For more information, see the Configuring mDNS Service Policy (CLI), on page 961 section.

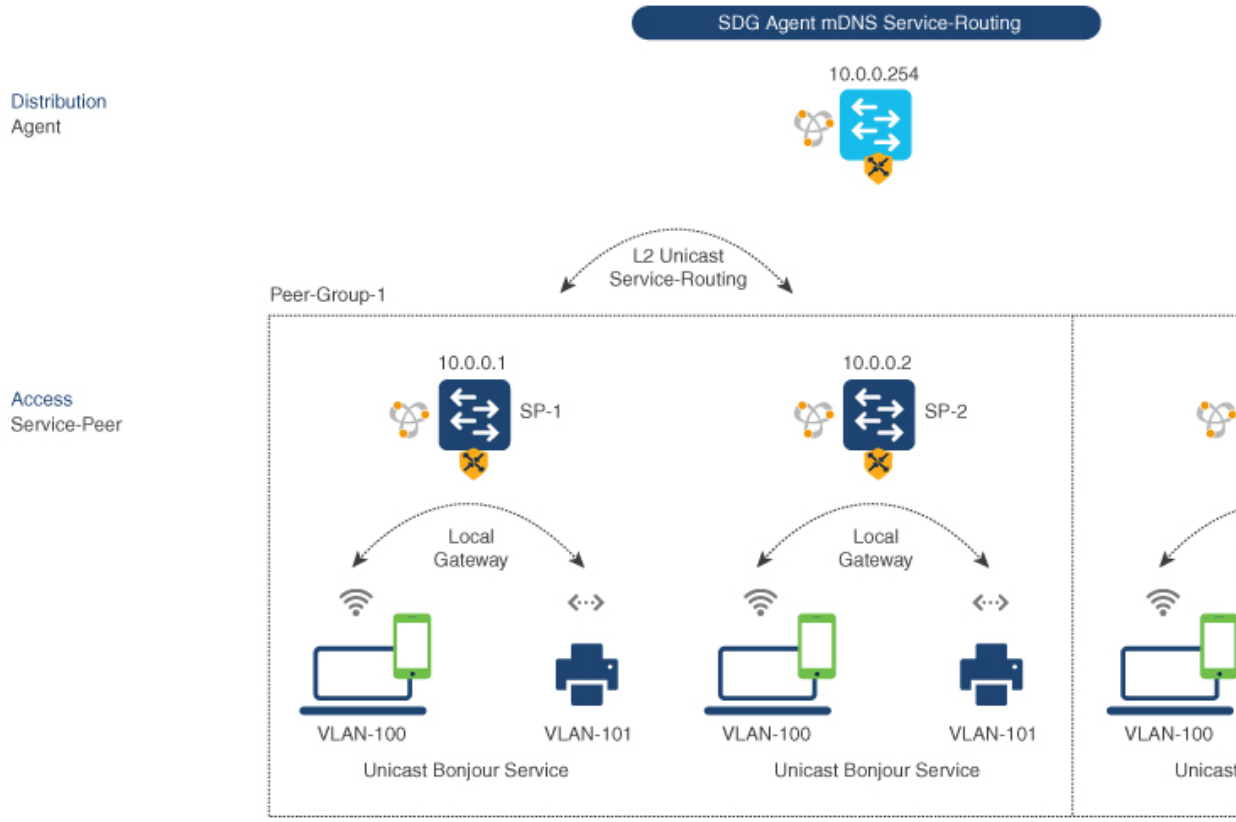
# Configuring Service-Routing on SDG Agent (CLI)

The Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switches support SDG Agent mode automatically at the distribution layer and enables Unicast mode Bonjour service-routing with the downstream Layer 2 access-layer Ethernet switches connected to wired and EWC mode Access Point wireless users. The SDG Agent must be configured with mDNS service-policy on wired or EWC mode Access Point wireless user VLAN to accept mDNS service cache from downstream service-peer switches.

This section provides the step-by-step configuration to enable policy-based service discovery and distribution between locally paired Layer 2 access network switches in the service-peer mode.

The following figure displays the unicast service-routing on SDG Agent and downstream Layer 2 access network switches in the service-peer mode:

***Figure 34: Catalyst SDG Agent Service-Routing Configuration***




**Note** Configure the mDNS service policy on the distribution layer SDG Agent switch before proceeding to the next configuration step. For more information, see the Configuring mDNS Service Policy (CLI), on page 961 section.

To enable the mDNS service policy and peer-group on SDG Agent switch, and enable unicast mode service-routing with Layer 2 access network switches in Service-Peer mode, follow the steps given below:

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# enable` | Enables Privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd service-peer group** *service-peer-group-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-peer group service-peer-group-name` | Configures a unique service-peer group in the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | **peer-group** [*ID*]<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-svc-peer)# peer-group 1` | Assigns a unique peer-group ID to the service-peers pair permitting mDNS service discovery and distribution within the assigned group list.<br>The valid peer-group range is from 1 to 1000 for each SDG Agent switch. |
| **Step 5** | **service-policy** *service-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-svc-peer-grp)# service-policy VLAN100-POLICY` | Associates an mDNS service policy to accept service advertisements and query from the paired service-peers. |
| **Step 6** | **service-peer** [*IPv4_address*] **location-group** {**all** \| **default** \| **id**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-svc-peer-grp)# service-peer 10.0.0.1 location-group default`<br>`Device(config-mdns-svc-peer-grp)# service-peer 10.0.0.2 location-group default` | Configures atleast one service-peer to accept the mDNS service advertisement or query message. When a group has more than one service-peers, the SDG Agent provides Layer 2 unicast mode routing between the configured peers.<br>For example, the SDG Agent provides unicast based service gateway function between three (10.0.0.1 and 10.0.0.2) Layer 2 service-peer switches matching the associated service-policy.<br>The mDNS service information from the unpaired Layer 2 service-peer (10.0.0.3) cannot announce or receive mDNS services with the other grouped service-peers (10.0.0.1 and 10.0.0.2). |
| **Step 7** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-svc-peer-grp)# exit` | Exits the mDNS gateway configuration mode. |

# Verifying Local Area Bonjour in Service-Peer Mode

This section provides guidelines to verify various Local Area Bonjour domain mDNS service configuration parameters, cache records, statistics and more on the controller in service-peer mode

***Table 55:***

| Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show mdns-sd cache {all \| interface \| mac \| name \| service-peer \| static \| type \| vlan}** | Displays available mDNS cache records supporting multiple variables providing granular source details received from wired or EWC mode AP wireless user VLANs. The variables are as follows:<br>• all – Displays all available cache records discovered from multiple source connections of a system.<br>• interface – Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 3 interface.<br>• mac - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified MAC address.<br>• name - Displays available cache records based on the service provider announced name.<br>• service-peer - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 2 Service-Peer.<br>• static – Displays locally configured static mDNS cache entry.<br>• type – Displays available cache records based on the specific mDNS record type, such as, PTR, SRV, TXT, A or AAAA.<br>• vlan - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 2 VLAN ID in the Unicast mode. |
| **show mdns-sd service-definition {name \| type}** | Displays built-in and user-defined custom service-definition that maps service name to the mDNS PTR records. The service-definition can be filtered by name or type. |
| **show mdns-sd service-list {direction \| name}** | Displays inbound or outbound direction list of configured service-list to classify matching service-types for service-policy. The list can be filtered by name or specific direction. |

| Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show mdns-sd service-policy {interface \| name}** | Displays list of mDNS service-policy mapped with inbound or outbound service-list. The service-policy list can be filtered by an associated specified interface or name. |
| **show mdns-sd statistics {all \| cache \| debug \| interface \| service-list \| service-policy \| services \| vlan}** | Displays detailed mDNS statistics processed bi-directionally by the system on each mDNS gateway enabled VLAN configured mDNS in Unicast mode. The expanded keyword for mDNS statistics can provide detailed view on interface, policy, service-list, and services. |
| **show mdns-sd summary {interface \| vlan}** | Displays brief information about mDNS gateway and key configuration status on all wired and EWC mode AP wireless user VLANs, and interfaces of the system. |

# Verifying Local Area Bonjour in SDG Agent Mode

This section provides guidelines to verify various Local Area Bonjour domain mDNS service configuration parameters, cache records, statistics and more on the controller in SDG Agent mode.

*Table 56:*

| Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show mdns-sd cache {all \| interface \| mac \| name \| service-peer \| static \| type \| vlan \| vrf}** | Displays available mDNS cache records supporting multiple variables providing granular source details. The variables are as follows:<br>• all – Displays all available cache records discovered from multiple source connections of a system.<br>• interface – Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 3 interface.<br>• mac - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified MAC address.<br>• name - Displays available cache records based on the service provider announced name.<br>• service-peer - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 2 Service-Peer.<br>• static – Displays locally configured static mDNS cache entry.<br>• type – Displays available cache records based on the specific mDNS record type, such as, PTR, SRV, TXT, A or AAAA.<br>• vlan - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 2 VLAN ID in the Unicast mode.<br>• vrf - Displays per-VRF available cache records based on specific mDNS record type, that is, PTR, SRV, TXT, A or AAAA. |
| **show mdns-sd service-definition {name \| type}** | Displays built-in and user-defined custom service-definition that maps service name to the mDNS PTR records. The service-definition can be filtered by name or type. |
| **show mdns-sd service-list {direction \| name}** | Displays inbound or outbound direction list of the configured service-list to classify matching service-types for service-policy. The list can be filtered by name or specific direction. |
| **show mdns-sd service-policy {interface \| name}** | Displays list of mDNS service-policy mapped with inbound or outbound service-list. The service-policy list can be filtered by an associated specified interface or name. |

| Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|
| **show mdns-sd statistics {all \| cache \| debug \| interface \| service-list \| service-policy \| services \| vlan}** | Displays detailed mDNS statistics processed bi-directionally by the system on each mDNS gateway enabled VLAN configured mDNS in Unicast mode. The expanded keyword for mDNS statistics can provide detailed view on interface, policy, service-list, and services. |
| **show mdns-sd summary {interface \| vlan}** | Displays brief information about mDNS gateway and key configuration status on all VLANs and interfaces of the system. |

# Reference

*Table 57: Reference*

| Related Topic | Document Title |
|---|---|
| Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points CCO Configuration Guide | Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points Configuration Guide, IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.x |
| DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9600 Switch | Cisco Catalyst 9600 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.4.X |
| DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9500 Switch | Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.4.X |
| DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Switch | Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.4.X |
| DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9300 Switch | Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.4.X |
| DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless LAN Controller | Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.x |
| Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco DNA Center User Guide | Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco DNA Center User Guide, Release 2.2.x |



# PART XV

# Multicast Domain Name System


- Multicast Domain Name System, on page 979



CHAPTER 103

# Multicast Domain Name System


- Introduction to mDNS Gateway, on page 979
- Enabling mDNS Gateway (GUI), on page 980
- Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway (CLI), on page 980
- Creating Custom Service Definition (GUI), on page 982
- Creating Custom Service Definition, on page 982
- Creating Service List (GUI), on page 983
- Creating Service List, on page 983
- Creating Service Policy (GUI), on page 985
- Creating Service Policy, on page 985
- Configuring a Local or Native Profile for an mDNS Policy, on page 986
- Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (GUI), on page 987
- Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (CLI), on page 987
- Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (GUI), on page 988
- Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (CLI), on page 988
- Location-Based Service Filtering, on page 989
- Configuring mDNS AP, on page 992
- Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy (GUI), on page 993
- Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy, on page 993
- Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN (GUI), on page 995
- Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN, on page 995
- Verifying mDNS Gateway Configurations, on page 996


# Introduction to mDNS Gateway

Multicast Domain Name System (mDNS) is an Apple service discovery protocol which locates devices and services on a local network with the use of mDNS service records.

The Bonjour protocol operates on service announcements and queries. Each query or advertisement is sent to the Bonjour multicast address ipv4 224.0.0.251 (ipv6 FF02::FB). This protocol uses mDNS on UDP port 5353.

The address used by the Bonjour protocol is link-local multicast address and therefore is only forwarded to the local L2 network. As, multicast DNS is limited to an L2 domain for a client to discover a service it has to be part of the same L2 domain, This is not always possible in any large scale deployment or enterprise.

In order to address this issue, the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller acts as a Bonjour Gateway. The controller then listens for Bonjour services, caches these Bonjour advertisements (AirPlay, AirPrint, and so on) from the source or host. For example, Apple TV responds back to Bonjour clients when asked or requested for a service. This way you can have sources and clients in different subnets.

By default, the mDNS gateway is disabled on the controller. To enable mDNS gateway functionality, you must explicitly configure mDNS gateway using CLI or Web UI.

### Prerequisite

Since the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller will respond and advertise for services cached when acting as a Bonjour Gateway, it must have an SVI interface with a valid IP address on every VLAN where mDNS is allowed or used. This will be the source IP address of those mDNS packets that are coming out from the controller acting as mDNS Gateway.

# Enabling mDNS Gateway (GUI)

### Procedure

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.

**Step 2** In the **Global** section, toggle the slider to enable or disable the **mDNS Gateway**.

**Step 3** From the **Transport** drop-down list, choose one of the following types:

- **ipv4**
- **ipv6**
- **both**

**Step 4** Enter an appropriate timer value in **Active-Query Timer**. The valid range is between 15 to 120 minutes. The default is 30 minutes.

**Step 5** From the **mDNS-AP Service Policy** drop-down list, choose an mDNS service policy.

**Note**
Service policy is optional only if mDNS-AP is configured. If mDNS-AP is not configured, the system uses default-service-policy.

**Step 6** Click **Apply**.

# Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway (CLI)



**Note**

- mDNS gateway is disabled by default globally on the controller.
- You need both global and WLAN configurations to enable mDNS gateway.

## Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged **EXEC** mode.<br>Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd gateway**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway` | Enables mDNS gateway. |
| **Step 4** | **transport** {**ipv4** \| **ipv6** \| **both**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-sd)# transport ipv4` | Processes mDNS message on a specific transport.<br>Here,<br>**ipv4** signifies that the IPv4 mDNS message processing is enabled. This is the default value.<br>**ipv6** signifies that the IPv6 mDNS message processing is enabled.<br>**both** signifies that the IPv4 and IPv6 mDNS message is enabled for each network. |
| **Step 5** | **active-query timer** *active-query-periodicity*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-sd)# active-query timer 15` | Changes the periodicity of mDNS multicast active query.<br>**Note**<br>An active query is a periodic mDNS query to refresh dynamic cache.<br>Here,<br>*active-query-periodicity* refers to the active query periodicity in Minutes. The valid range is from 15 to 120 minutes. Active query runs with a default periodicity of 30 minutes. |
| **Step 6** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-sd)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |

# Creating Custom Service Definition (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.

**Step 2** In the **Service Definition** section, click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Quick Setup: Service Definition** page that is displayed, enter a name and description for the service definition.

**Step 4** Enter a service type and click + to add the service type.

**Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Creating Custom Service Definition

Service definition is a construct that provides an admin friendly name to one or more mDNS service types or A pointer (PTR) Resource Record Name.

By default, few built-in service definitions are already predefined and available for admin to use.

In addition to built-in service definitions, admin can also define custom service definitions.

You can execute the following command to view the list of all the service definitions (built-in and custom):

```
Device# show mdns-sd master-service-list
```

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged **EXEC** mode.<br>Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd service-definition** *service-definition-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-definition CUSTOM1` | Configures mDNS service definition.<br>**Note**<br>• All the created custom service definitions are added to the primary service list.<br>• Primary service list comprises of a list of custom and built-in service definitions. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **service-type** *string*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# service-type _custom1._tcp.local` | Configures mDNS service type. |
| **Step 5** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |

# Creating Service List (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.

**Step 2** In the **Service List** section, click **Add**.

**Step 3** In the **Quick Setup: Service List** page that is displayed, enter a name for the service list.

**Step 4** From the **Direction** drop-down list, choose **IN** for inbound filtering or **OUT** for outbound filtering.

**Step 5** From the **Available Services** drop-down list, choose a service type to match the service list.

**Note**
To allow all services, choose the **all** option.

**Step 6** Click **Add Services**.

**Step 7** From the **Message Type** drop-down list, choose the message type to match from the following options:

- **any**—To allow all messages.
- **announcement**—To allow only service advertisements or announcements for the device.
- **query**—To allow only a query from the client for a service in the network.

**Step 8** Click **Save** to add services.

**Step 9** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Creating Service List

mDNS service list is a collection of service definitions.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged **EXEC** mode.<br>Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd service-list** *service-list-name* {**IN** \| **OUT**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list Basic-In IN`<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list Basic-Out OUT` | Configures mDNS service list.<br>• **IN**: Provides inbound filtering.<br>• **Out**: Provides outbound filtering. |
| **Step 4** | **match** *service-definition-name* **message-type** {**announcement** \| **any** \| **query**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match CUSTOM1 message-type query` | Matches the service to the message type.<br>Here, *service-definition-name* refers to the names of services, such as, airplay, airserver, airtunes, and so on.<br>**Note**<br>To add a service, the service name must be part of the primary service list.<br>If the mDNS service list is set to IN, you get to view the following command: **match service-definition-name message-type {announcement \| any \| query}**.<br>If the mDNS service list is set to Out, you get to view the following command: **match service-definition-name**. |
| **Step 5** | **show mdns-sd service-list {direction \| name }** | Displays inbound or outbound direction list of the configured service-list to classify matching service-types for service-policy. The list can be filtered by name or specific direction. |
| **Step 6** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |

# Creating Service Policy (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.
**Step 2** In the **Service Policy** section, click **Add**.
**Step 3** In the **Quick Setup: Service Policy** page that is displayed, enter a name for the service policy.
**Step 4** From the **Service List Input** drop-down list, choose one of the types.
**Step 5** From the **Service List Output** drop-down list, choose one of the types.
**Step 6** From the **Location** drop-down list, choose the location you want to associate with the service list.
**Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Creating Service Policy

mDNS service policy is used for service filtering while learning services or responding to queries.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **enable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device> enable` | Enables privileged **EXEC** mode.<br>Enter your password, if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd service-policy** *service-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1` | Enables mDNS service policy. |
| **Step 4** | **location** {**lss** \| **site-tag**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location lss` | Filters mDNS service types based on LSS or site-tag.<br>**Note**<br>In Location Specific Services (LSS) based filtering, the mDNS gateway responds with the service instances learnt from the neighboring APs of the querying client AP. Other service instances for the rest of APs are filtered. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | In Site tag based filtering, the mDNS gateway responds with the service instances that belong to the same site-tag as that of querying client.<br>The mDNS gateway responds back with wired services even if the location based filtering is configured. |
| **Step 5** | **service-list** *service-list-name* {**IN** \| **OUT**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list VLAN100-list IN` | Configures various service-list names for IN and OUT directions.<br>**Note** If an administrator decides to create or use a custom service policy, then the custom service policy must be configured with service-lists for both directions (IN and OUT); otherwise, the mDNS Gateway will not work (will not learn services if there is no IN service-list, or will not reply or announce services learned if there is no OUT service-list). |
| **Step 6** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |

# Configuring a Local or Native Profile for an mDNS Policy

When an administrator configures local authentication and authorization and does not expect to get any mDNS policy from the AAA server, the administrator can configure a local or native profile to select a mDNS policy based on user, role, or device type. When this local or native profile is mapped to the wireless profile policy, mDNS service policy is applied on the mDNS packets that are processed on that WLAN.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **service-template** *template-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# service-template mdns` | Configures the service-template or identity policy. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-service-policy** *mdns-policy-name*<br>**Example:** | Configures the mDNS policy. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-service-template)# mdns-service-policy mdnsTV` | |
| **Step 4** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-service-template)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |

# Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.

**Step 2** In the **mDNS Flex Profile** section, click **Add**.
The **Add mDNS Flex Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 3** In the **Profile Name** field, enter the flex mDNS profile name.

**Step 4** In the **Service Cache Update Timer** field, specify the service cache update time. The default value is 1 minute. The valid range is from 1 to 100 minutes.

**Step 5** In the **Statistics Update Timer** field, specify the statistics update timer. The default value is 1 minute. The valid range is from 1 to 100 minutes.

**Step 6** In the **VLANs** field, specify the VLAN ID. You can enter multiple VLAN IDs separated by commas, or enter a range of VLAN IDs. Maximum number of VLANs allowed is 16.

**Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **mdns-sd flex-profile** *mdns-flex-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd flex-profile mdns-flex-profile-name` | Enters the mDNS Flex Profile mode. |
| **Step 3** | **update-timer service-cache** *service-cache timer-value <1-100>* | Configures the mDNS update service cache timer for the flex profile. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | **Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-flex-profile)# update-timer service-cache 60` | The default value is 1 minute. Value range is between 1 minute and 100 minutes. |
| **Step 4** | **update-timer statistics** *statistics timer-value <1-100>*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-flex-profile)# update-timer statistics 65` | Configures the mDNS update statistics timer for the flex profile.<br>The default value is 1 minute. The valid range is from 1 to 100 minutes. |
| **Step 5** | **wired-vlan-range** *wired-vlan-range value*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-flex-profile)# wired-vlan-range 10 - 20` | Configures the mDNS wired VLAN range for the flex profile between 10 - 20. |

# Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex**.

**Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Flex Profile** window is displayed.

**Step 3** Under the **General** tab, from the **mDNS Flex Profile** drop-down list, choose a flex profile name from the list.

**Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.

# Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (CLI)

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile flex** *wireless-flex-profile-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# wireless profile flex wireless-flex-profile-name` | Enters wireless flex profile configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd** *mdns-flex-profile*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# mdns-sd mdns-flex-profile-name` | Enables the mDNS features for all the APs in the profile |

# Location-Based Service Filtering

## Prerequisite for Location-Based Service Filtering

You need to create the Service Definition and Service Policy. For more information, see Creating Custom Service Definition section and Creating Service Policy section.

## Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using SSID

When a service policy is configured with the SSID as the location name, the response to the query will be the services that were learnt on that SSID.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **mdns-sd service-policy** *service-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1` | Configures the service policy. |
| **Step 3** | **location ssid**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location ssid` | Configures location-based filtering using SSID. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.<br>Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using AP Name

When a service policy is configured with the AP name as the location, the response to the query will be the services that were learnt on that AP.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **mdns-sd service-policy** *service-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1` | Configures the service policy. |
| **Step 3** | **location ap-name**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location ap-name` | Configures location-based filtering using an AP name. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.<br>Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using AP Location

When a service policy is configured with location as the AP-location, the response to the query will be the services that were learnt on all the APs using the same AP "location" name (not to be confused with "site-tag").

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **mdns-sd service-policy** *service-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1` | Configures the service policy. |
| **Step 3** | **location ap-location**<br>**Example:** | Configures location-based filtering using the AP location. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | `Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location ap-location` | |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.<br>Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

# Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Regular Expression

- When a service policy is configured with the location as a regular expression that matches the corresponding AP name, the response to the query will be the services that were learnt on a group of APs based on the AP name.
- When a service policy is configured with the location as a regular expression that matches the corresponding AP location, the response to the query will be the services that were learnt on a group of APs based on the AP location.

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **mdns-sd service-policy** *service-policy-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1` | Configures the service policy. |
| **Step 3** | **location regex** {**ap-location** *regular-expression* \| **ap-name** *regular-expression*}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location regex ap-location dns_location`<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location regex ap-name dns_name` | Configures location-based filtering using regular expression. |
| **Step 4** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# end`<br>**Note**<br>To filter the services for which AP names have the specific keyword such as *AP-2FLR-SJC-123*, you can use the regex AP | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.<br>Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | name as *AP-2FLR-* to match the services that are learnt from the set of access points. | |

# Configuring mDNS AP

In most of the deployments, the services may be available in VLANs that the APs can hear in the wired side (allowed in the switchport where the AP is directly connected: its own VLAN, or even more VLANs if switchport is a trunk).

The following procedure shows how to configure mDNS AP:

### Procedure

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **mdns-sd gateway**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway` | Configures the mDNS gateway. |
| **Step 3** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mdns-ap enable vlan** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 mdns-ap enable vlan 22` | Enables mDNS on the AP, and configures a VLAN for the mDNS AP. |
| **Step 4** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mdns-ap vlan add** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 mdns-ap vlan add 200` | Adds a VLAN to the mDNS AP. *vlan-id* ranges from 1 to 4096. |
| **Step 5** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mdns-ap vlan del** *vlan-id*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 mdns-ap vlan del 2` | Deletes a VLAN from the mDNS AP. |
| **Step 6** | **ap name** *ap-name* **mdns-ap disable**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# ap name ap1 mdns-ap disable` | (Optional) Disables the mDNS AP. |
| **Step 7** | **end**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# end` | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.<br>Alternatively, you can also press **Ctrl-Z** to exit global configuration mode. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | | **Note** You can configure a maximum of 10 VLANs per AP. |

# Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.

**Step 2** Click the **policy profile** name.

**Step 3** In the **Advanced** tab, choose the mDNS service policy from the **mDNS Service Policy** drop-down list.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy

**Note** You must globally configure the mDNS service policy before associating it with the wireless profile policy.

A default mDNS service policy is already attached once the wireless profile policy is created. You can use the following commands to override the default mDNS service policy with any of your service policy:

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wireless profile policy** *profile-policy*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile` | Configures wireless profile policy.<br>Here, *profile-policy* refers to the name of the WLAN policy profile. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd service-policy** *custom-mdns-service-policy* | Associates an mDNS service policy with the wireless profile policy. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | **Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# mdns-sd service-policy custom-mdns-service-policy` | The default mDNS service policy name is **default-mdns-service-policy**.<br>**Note** The **default-mdns-profile-policy** uses **default-mdns-service-list** configuration for filtering mDNS service announcement and queries.<br>In wireless network, the mDNS packets are consumed by the mDNS gateway and clients or device is deprived of learning this service. To share the service with the device and provide ease of configuration to the administrator, a list of few standard service types are shared by default on the wireless network. The list of such standard service types is termed as default service policy that comprises a set of service types.<br>The table covers a sample service list in the default service policy.<br>***Table 58: Default Name and mDNS Service Type***<br>**Default Name** / **mDNS Service Type**<br>Apple HomeSharing / _home-sharing._tcp.local<br>Printer-IPPS / _ipps._tcp.local<br>Google-chromecast / _googlecast._tcp.local<br>**Note**<br>• Location would be disabled on mDNS default service policy.<br>• You cannot change the contents of the mDNS default service policy. However, you can create separate mDNS service policies and associate them under the wireless policy profile. |
| **Step 4** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |

# Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN (GUI)

**Procedure**

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.

**Step 2** Click on the WLAN.

**Step 3** In the **Advanced** tab, choose the mode in **mDNS Mode** drop-down list.

**Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

# Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN

**Note** Bridging is the default behaviour. This means that the mDNS packets are always bridged.

**Procedure**

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **wlan** *profile-name wlan-id ssid-name*<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config)# wlan test 24 ssid1` | Specifies the WLAN name and ID.<br>• *profile-name* is the WLAN name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters<br>• *wlan-id* is the wireless LAN identifier. The valid range is from 1 to 512.<br>• *ssid-name* is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.<br>**Note**<br>Global configuration must be in place for mDNS gateway to work. |
| **Step 3** | **mdns-sd-interface** {**gateway** \| **drop**}<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# mdns-sd gateway`<br>`Device(config-wlan)# mdns-sd drop` | Enables or disables mDNS gateway and bridge functions on WLAN. |

| | Command or Action | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| **Step 4** | **exit**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device(config-wlan)# exit` | Returns to global configuration mode. |
| **Step 5** | **show wlan name** *wlan-name* \| **show wlan all**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wlan name test \| show wlan all` | Verifies the status of mDNS on WLAN. |
| **Step 6** | **show wireless profile policy**<br>**Example:**<br>`Device# show wireless profile policy` | Verifies the service policy configured in WLAN. |

# Verifying mDNS Gateway Configurations

To verify the mDNS summary, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd summary
mDNS Gateway: Enabled
Active Query: Enabled
  Periodicity (in minutes): 30
Transport Type: IPv4
```

To verify the mDNS cache, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache
------------------------------------------------------------ PTR Records
----------------------------------------
RECORD-NAME                     TTL      WLAN   CLIENT-MAC       RR-RECORD-DATA

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
_airplay._tcp.local             4500     30     07c5.a4f2.dc01   CUST1._airplay._tcp.local

_ipp._tcp.local                 4500     30     04c5.a4f2.dc01   CUST3._ipp._tcp.local2

_ipp._tcp.local                 4500     15     04c5.a4f2.dc01   CUST3._ipp._tcp.local4

_ipp._tcp.local                 4500     10     04c5.a4f2.dc01   CUST3._ipp._tcp.local6

_veer_custom._tcp.local         4500     10     05c5.a4f2.dc01
CUST2._veer_custom._tcp.local8
```

To verify the mDNS cache from wired service provider, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache wired
------------------------------------------------------------ PTR Records
----------------------------------------
RECORD-NAME                               TTL      VLAN      CLIENT-MAC       RR-RECORD-DATA

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
_airplay._tcp.local                         4500     16        0866.98ec.97af
wiredapple._airplay._tcp.local
_raop._tcp.local                            4500     16        0866.98ec.97af
086698EC97AF@wiredapple._raop._tcp.local
```

```
------------------------------------------------------------ SRV Records
----------------------------------------
RECORD-NAME                                TTL      VLAN      CLIENT-MAC       RR-RECORD-DATA

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
wiredapple._airplay._tcp.local               4500     16        0866.98ec.97af   0 0 7000
wiredapple.local
086698EC97AF@wiredapple._raop._tcp.local   4500     16        0866.98ec.97af   0 0 7000
wiredapple.local

------------------------------------------------------------ A/AAAA Records
----------------------------------------
RECORD-NAME                                TTL      VLAN      CLIENT-MAC       RR-RECORD-DATA

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
wiredapple.local                             4500     16        0866.98ec.97af
2001:8:16:16:e5:c446:3218:7437

------------------------------------------------------------ TXT Records
----------------------------------------
RECORD-NAME                                TTL      VLAN      CLIENT-MAC       RR-RECORD-DATA

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
wiredapple._airplay._tcp.local               4500     16        0866.98ec.97af
[343]'acl=0''deviceid=08:66:98:EC:97:AF''features=
086698EC97AF@wiredapple._raop._tcp.local   4500     16        0866.98ec.97af
[193]'cn=0,1,2,3''da=true''et=0,3,5''ft=0x5A7FFFF7
```

To verify the mdns-sd type PTR, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache type {PTR | SRV | A-AAA | TXT}
RECORD-NAME                                TTL      WLAN      CLIENT-MAC
RR-Record-Data
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
_custom1._tcp.local                          4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
service_t1._custom1._tcp.local
_custom1._tcp.local                          4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
vk11._custom1._tcp.local
_ipp._tcp.local                              4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
service-4._ipp._tcp.local
```

To verify the mdns-sd cache for a client MAC, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache {ap-mac <ap-mac> | client-mac <client-mac> | wlan-id <wlan-id>
| wired}
RECORD-NAME                                TTL      WLAN      CLIENT-MAC
RR-Record-Data
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
_custom1._tcp.local                          4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
service_t1._custom1._tcp.local
_custom1._tcp.local                          4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
vk11._custom1._tcp.local
_ipp._tcp.local                              4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
service-4._ipp._tcp.local

------------------------------------------------------------ SRV Records
----------------------------------------
RECORD-NAME                                TTL      WLAN      CLIENT-MAC
RR-Record-Data
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
service-4._ipp._tcp.local                    4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6   0 0 1212
 mDNS-Client1s-275.local
vk11._custom1._tcp.local                     4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6   0 0 987
 mDNS-Client1s-275.local
```

```
service_t1._custom1._tcp.local                  4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6   0 0 197
 mDNS-Client1s-275.local

------------------------------------------------------------ A/AAAA Records
------------------------------------------------------------
RECORD-NAME                                      TTL      WLAN      CLIENT-MAC
RR-Record-Data
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
mDNS-Client1s-275.local                         4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6   120.1.1.33


------------------------------------------------------------ TXT Records
------------------------------------------------------------
RECORD-NAME                                      TTL      WLAN      CLIENT-MAC
RR-Record-Data
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
service-4._ipp._tcp.local                       4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6   'CLient1'

vk11._custom1._tcp.local                         4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
'txtvers=11'
service_t1._custom1._tcp.local                   4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
'txtvers=12'
```

To verify the mdns-sd cache in detail, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache detail

Name: _custom1._tcp.local
  Type: PTR
  TTL: 4500
  WLAN: 2
  WLAN Name: mdns120
  VLAN: 120
  Client MAC: c869.cda8.77d6
  AP Ethernet MAC: 7069.5ab8.33d0
  Expiry-Time: 09/09/18 21:50:47
  Site-Tag: default-site-tag
  Rdata: service_t1._custom1._tcp.local
```

To verify the mdns-sd statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd statistics

------------------------------------------------------
Consolidated mDNS Packet Statistics
------------------------------------------------------
mDNS stats last reset time: 03/11/19 04:17:35
mDNS packets sent: 61045
  IPv4 sent: 30790
    IPv4 advertisements sent: 234
    IPv4 queries sent: 30556
  IPv6 sent: 30255
    IPv6 advertisements sent: 17
    IPv6 queries sent: 30238
  Multicast sent: 57558
    IPv4 sent: 28938
    IPv6 sent: 28620
mDNS packets received: 72796
  advertisements received: 13604
  queries received: 59192
  IPv4 received: 40600
    IPv4 advertisements received: 6542
    IPv4 queries received: 34058
  IPv6 received: 32196
    IPv6 advertisements received: 7062
```

```
    IPv6 queries received: 25134
mDNS packets dropped: 87

-------------------------------------------------------
Wired mDNS Packet Statistics
-------------------------------------------------------
mDNS stats last reset time: 03/11/19 04:17:35
mDNS packets sent: 61033
  IPv4 sent: 30778
    IPv4 advertisements sent: 222
    IPv4 queries sent: 30556
  IPv6 sent: 30255
    IPv6 advertisements sent: 17
    IPv6 queries sent: 30238
  Multicast sent: 57558
    IPv4 sent: 28938
    IPv6 sent: 28620
mDNS packets received: 52623
  advertisements received: 1247
  queries received: 51376
  IPv4 received: 32276
    IPv4 advertisements received: 727
    IPv4 queries received: 31549
  IPv6 received: 20347
    IPv6 advertisements received: 520
    IPv6 queries received: 19827
mDNS packets dropped: 63

-------------------------------------------------------
mDNS Packet Statistics, for WLAN: 2
-------------------------------------------------------
mDNS stats last reset time: 03/11/19 04:17:35
mDNS packets sent: 12
  IPv4 sent: 12
    IPv4 advertisements sent: 12
    IPv4 queries sent: 0
  IPv6 sent: 0
    IPv6 advertisements sent: 0
    IPv6 queries sent: 0
  Multicast sent: 0
    IPv4 sent: 0
    IPv6 sent: 0
mDNS packets received: 20173
  advertisements received: 12357
  queries received: 7816
  IPv4 received: 8324
    IPv4 advertisements received: 5815
    IPv4 queries received: 2509
  IPv6 received: 11849
    IPv6 advertisements received: 6542
    IPv6 queries received: 5307
mDNS packets dropped: 24
```

To verify the default service list details, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd default-service-list

-------------------------------------------
        mDNS Default Service List
-------------------------------------------

Service Definition: airplay
Service Names: _airplay._tcp.local

Service Definition: airtunes
```

```
Service Names: _raop._tcp.local

Service Definition: homesharing
Service Names: _home-sharing._tcp.local

Service Definition: printer-ipp
Service Names: _ipp._tcp.local

Service Definition: printer-lpd
Service Names: _printer._tcp.local

Service Definition: printer-ipps
Service Names: _ipps._tcp.local

Service Definition: printer-socket
Service Names: _pdl-datastream._tcp.local

Service Definition: google-chromecast
Service Names: _googlecast._tcp.local

Service Definition: itune-wireless-devicesharing2
Service Names: _apple-mobdev2._tcp.local
```

To verify the primary service list details, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd master-service-list

-----------------------------------------
        mDNS Master Service List
-----------------------------------------

Service Definition: fax
Service Names: _fax-ipp._tcp.local

Service Definition: roku
Service Names: _rsp._tcp.local

Service Definition: airplay
Service Names: _airplay._tcp.local

Service Definition: scanner
Service Names: _scanner._tcp.local

Service Definition: spotify
Service Names: _spotify-connect._tcp.local

Service Definition: airtunes
Service Names: _raop._tcp.local

Service Definition: airserver
Service Names: _airplay._tcp.local
               _airserver._tcp.local

.
.
.

Service Definition: itune-wireless-devicesharing2
Service Names: _apple-mobdev2._tcp.local
```

To verify the mDNS-AP configured on the controller and VLAN(s) associated with it, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd ap
```

```
Number of mDNS APs.............................. 1

AP Name   Ethernet MAC   Number of Vlans   Vlanidentifiers
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
AP3600-1   7069.5ab8.33d0          1      300
```

### Further Debug

To debug mDNS further, use the following procedure:

1. Run this command at the controller:

   ```
   set platform software trace wncd <0-7> chassis active R0 mdns debug
   ```

2. Reproduce the issue.
3. Run this command to gather the traces enabled:

```
show wireless loadbalance ap affinity wncd 0

AP MAC   Discovery Timestamp  Join Timestamp                Tag    Vlanidentifiers
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0cd0.f894.0600      06/30/21 12:39:48    06/30/21 12:40:021 default-site-tag     300
```